FOR MORE EXCLUSIVE

(Civil, Mechanical, EEE, ECE)

ENGINEERING & GENERAL STUDIES

(Competitive Exams)

TEXT BOOKS, IES GATE PSU's TANCET & GOVT EXAMS
NOTES & ANNA UNIVERSITY STUDY MATERIALS

VISIT

AN EXCLUSIVE WEBSITE FOR ENGINEERING STUDENTS & GRADUATES

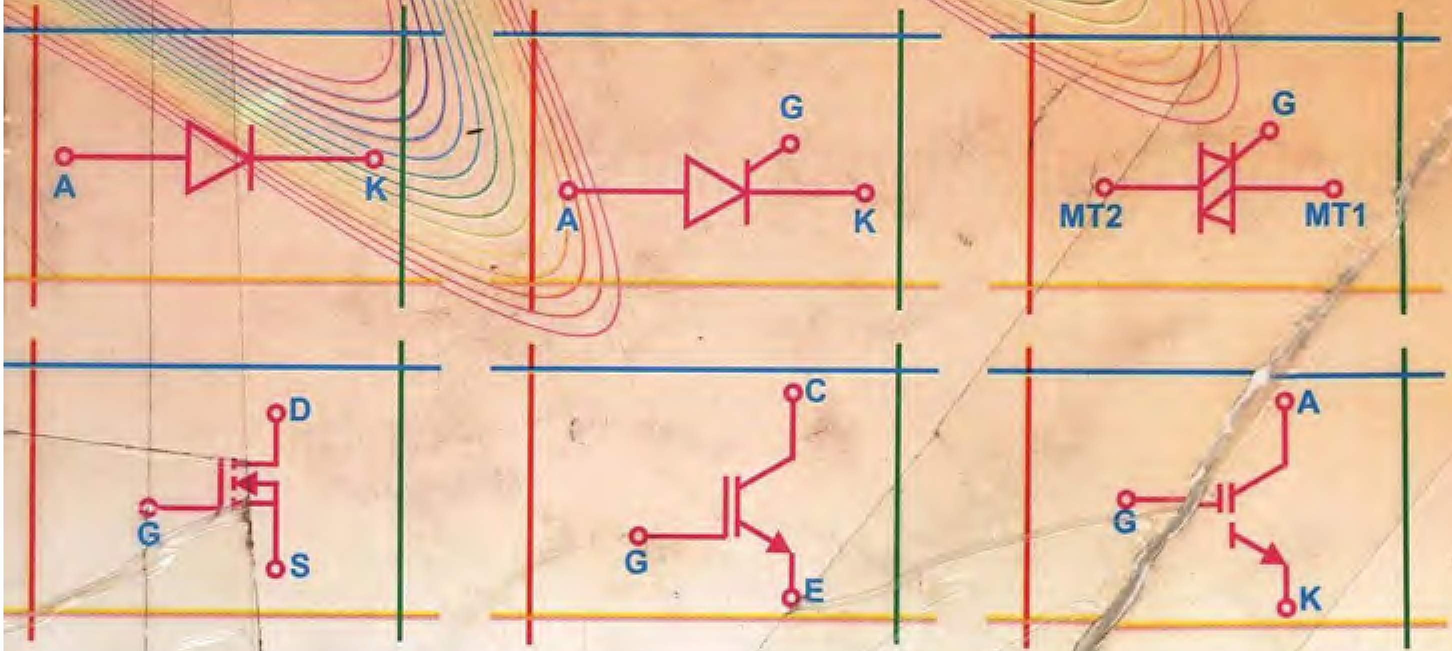
EASY ENGINEERING
Apprise Education, Reprise Innovations

**Note: Other Websites/Blogs Owners Please do not Copy (or) Republish this Materials without Legal Permission of the Publishers.

**Disclimers : **EasyEngineering not the original publisher of this Book/Material on net. This e-book/Material has been collected from other sources of net.**

# Power Electronics

**Dr. P. S. BIMBHRA**



KHANNA PUBLISHERS

# POWER ELECTRONICS

621.317
BIM
1999
C2

037474

**Dr. P.S. BIMBHRA**
*Ph.D., M.E. (Hons.), F.I.E. (India), M.I.S.T.E., M.I.E.E. (U.K.)*
*Professor & Head of Electrical and Electronics Engineering Department*
*Thapar Institute of Engineering and Technology*
PATIALA-147001

*With the Assistance of :*
**Mrs. Surinder Kaur**

**THROUGHLY REVISED AND ENLARGED EDITION**

KHANNA PUBLISHERS
2-B NATH MARKET, NAI SARAK
DELHI-110006
**Phones : 391 23 80 ; 722 41 79 ● Fax : 3980311**

*Published by :*
Romesh Chander Khanna,
*for*, KHANNA PUBLISHERS
2-B, Nath Market, Nai Sarak
Delhi-110006.

*All Rights Reserved*
[This book or part thereof cannot be translated or reproduced in any form (except for review or criticism) without the written permission of the Author and the Publishers]

ናዝሬት የቴክኒክ መምህራን ት/ኮሌጅ
Nazareth College of Technical
Teacher Education
ቤተ መጻሕፍት
LIBRARY

**ISBN No. : 81-7409-056-8**

***Third Edition :***
*Thirteenth Reprint : 2004*

***Price : Rs. 160.00***

*Computer Typeset at :*
Softserve Computer Systems
Phone : 2462423

*Printed at :*
**HINDUSTAN OFFSET PRESS**, New Delhi-28

In

Loving Memory

of My Late Parents

# PREFACE

The advent of thyristors has revolutionized the art of electric power conversion and its control. Many more semiconductor devices such as triacs, asymmetrical thyristors, gate-turn-off thyristors, power MOSFET, insulated gate bipolar transistor and MOS-controlled thyristors are now available. The use of these semiconductor devices has pervaded the industrial applications relating to the field of Electrical, Electronics, Instrumentation and Control Engineering. In other words, power-electronic components find their use in low as well as high power applications. The purpose of this book is to provide a good understanding of the power-electronic components and the behaviour of power-electronic controllers by presenting systematically all important aspects of semiconductor devices and the common types of electric power controllers. The book begins with the study of salient features of power diodes, power transistors, MOS-controlled thyristor and other members of thyristor family. Then their applications in the different types of power converter configurations are presented in a lucid detail. This book is intended to serve as an introductory course to the undergraduate students of Electrical, Electronics, Instrumentation and control disciplines. It is presumed that the reader is familiar with the basics of elementary electronics and circuit theory. The material presented here can be covered in one semester with the omission of some topics. The instructor, after browsing through the book for some time, can plan the course contents and its sequence without loss of continuity.

The book contains twelve chapters. Chapter 1 gives an overview of merits and demerits of power-electric controllers and briefly discusses the topics covered in this book. This chapter also touches upon the significance of power electronics. Chapter 2 describes the characteristics of power diodes, power transistors and MOS-controlled thyristor. In Chapter 3 are presented diode circuits and rectifiers. Chapter 4 explains the characteristics of thyristors in detail and of triacs, GTOs etc. in brief. Thyristor commutation techniques are given in Chapter 5. In Chapter 6, the principles of conversion from ac to dc involving single-phase as well as three-phase converters are presented. Chapters 7 to 10 pertain to the treatment of dc choppers, inverters, ac voltage controllers and cycloconverters respectively. While chapter 11 gives study of several applications of power electronics, Chapter 12 discusses electric drives. A large number of illustrative diagrams and a wide variety of worked examples add to the clarity of the subject matter. The material given in this book is class-room tested. In the appendix, large number of objective-type questions relating to Chapter 2 to 10 are given.

The material added in the present edition includes Chapter 11 and Chapter 12. Some topics have been re-written to make the presentation more lucid. Many more illustrative examples to reinforce the understanding of the subject matter are also included. It is hoped that the book in its present form will serve the purpose of students for the courses on Power Electronics of all Indian Universities.

The author is grateful to all those students who interacted with the author, in the class-room or outside, during the teaching of this subject. This interaction has greatly influenced the author's style of teaching and writing to a great extent and every effort has gone into making the subject matter presentation as easily comprehensible as possible.

Finally, the author expresses his gratitude to his wife for her perennial encouragement, understanding and patience during the preparation of this book. The author also places on record the assistance rendered by his two sons during the gruelling task of proof-reading.

Suggestions leading to the improvement of the book will be gratefully acknowledged.

Patiala
14th November, 1999

***Dr. P.S. Bimbhra***

## CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION . . . . . . . . . . 1–6
- 1.1. Concept of Power Electronics . . . . . . . . . . 1
- 1.2. Applications of Power Electronics . . . . . . . . . . 1
- 1.3. Advantages and Disadvantages of Power-Electronic Converters . . . . . . . . . . 2
- 1.4. Power Electronic Systems . . . . . . . . . . 3
- 1.5. Power Semiconductor Devices . . . . . . . . . . 4
- 1.6. Types of Power Electronic Converters . . . . . . . . . . 4
- 1.7. Power Electronic Modules . . . . . . . . . . 5

2. POWER SEMICONDUCTOR DIODES AND TRANSISTORS . . . . . . . . . . 7–31
- 2.1. Characteristics of Power Diodes . . . . . . . . . . 7
  - 2.1.1. Diode V-I Characteristics . . . . . . . . . . 7
  - 2.1.2. Diode Reverse Recovery Characteristics . . . . . . . . . . 8
- 2.2. Types of Power Diodes . . . . . . . . . . 10
  - 2.2.1. General-purpose Diodes . . . . . . . . . . 10
  - 2.2.2. Fast-recovery Diodes . . . . . . . . . . 10
  - 2.2.3. Schottky Diodes . . . . . . . . . . 10
- 2.3. Power Transistors . . . . . . . . . . 10
  - 2.3.1. Bipolar Junction Transistors . . . . . . . . . . 11
    - 2.3.1.1. Steady-state Characteristics . . . . . . . . . . 11
    - 2.3.1.2. Transistor Switching Performance . . . . . . . . . . 14
    - 2.3.1.3. Safe Operating Area . . . . . . . . . . 15
- 2.4. Power MOSFETS . . . . . . . . . . 20
  - 2.4.1. MOSFET Characteristics . . . . . . . . . . 22
  - 2.4.2. Comparison of MOSFET with BJT . . . . . . . . . . 23
- 2.5. Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistor (IGBT) . . . . . . . . . . 24
  - 2.5.1. Basic Structure and Working . . . . . . . . . . 24
  - 2.5.2. IGBT Characteristics . . . . . . . . . . 25
  - 2.5.3. Switching Characteristics . . . . . . . . . . 26
  - 2.5.4. Applications of IGBT . . . . . . . . . . 27
- 2.6. Mos-controlled Thyristor (MCT) . . . . . . . . . . 27
- 2.7. New Semiconducting Materials . . . . . . . . . . 29

3. DIODE CIRCUITS AND RECTIFIERS . . . . . . . . . . 32–61
- 3.1. Diode Circuits with DC Source . . . . . . . . . . 32
  - 3.1.1. Resistive Load . . . . . . . . . . 32
  - 3.1.2. RC Load . . . . . . . . . . 33
  - 3.1.3. RL Load . . . . . . . . . . 34
  - 3.1.4. LC Load . . . . . . . . . . 34
  - 3.1.5. RLC Load . . . . . . . . . . 39
- 3.2. Freewheeling Diodes . . . . . . . . . . 41
- 3.3. Diode and L-Circuit . . . . . . . . . . 42
- 3.4. Recovery of Trapped Energy . . . . . . . . . . 42
- 3.5. Single-phase Diode Rectifiers . . . . . . . . . . 43
  - 3.5.1. Single-phase Half-wave Rectifier . . . . . . . . . . 43
- 3.6. Zener Diodes . . . . . . . . . . 57

**4. THYRISTORS** . . . . . . . . 62–159

4.1. Terminal Characteristics of Thyristors . . . . . . . . 62

  4.1.1. Static V-I Characteristics of a Thyristor . . . . . . . . 63

4.2. Thyristor Turn-on Methods . . . . . . . . 65

4.3. Switching Characteristics of Thyristors . . . . . . . . 68

  4.3.1. Switching Characteristics during Turn-on . . . . . . . . 68

  4.3.2. Switching Characteristics During Turn-off . . . . . . . . 70

4.4. Thyristor Gate Characteristics . . . . . . . . 72

4.5. Two-transistor Model of a Thyristor . . . . . . . . 79

4.6. Thyristor Ratings . . . . . . . . 82

  4.6.1. Anode Voltage Ratings . . . . . . . . 83

  4.6.2. Current Ratings . . . . . . . . 84

4.7. Thyristor Protection . . . . . . . . 93

  4.7.1. Design of Snubber Circuits . . . . . . . . 94

  4.7.2. Overvoltage Protection . . . . . . . . 98

    4.7.2.1. Suppression of Overvoltages . . . . . . . . 99

  4.7.3. Overcurrent Protection . . . . . . . . 100

  4.7.4. Gate Protection . . . . . . . . 101

4.8. Heating, Cooling and Mounting of Thyristors . . . . . . . . 103

  4.8.1. Thermal Resistance . . . . . . . . 104

  4.8.2. Heat Sink Specifications . . . . . . . . 105

  4.8.3. Thyristor Mounting Techniques . . . . . . . . 106

4.9. Series and Parallel Operation of Thyristors . . . . . . . . 110

  4.9.1. Series Operation . . . . . . . . 111

  4.9.2. Parallel Operation . . . . . . . . 116

4.10. Other Members of the Thyristor Family . . . . . . . . 120

  4.10.1. PUT (Programmable Unijunction Transistor) . . . . . . . . 120

  4.10.2. SUS (Silicon Unilateral Switch) . . . . . . . . 120

  4.10.3. SCS (Silicon Controlled Switch) . . . . . . . . 121

  4.10.4. Light Activated Thyristors . . . . . . . . 122

  4.10.5. Static Induction Thyristors (SITHs) . . . . . . . . 122

  4.10.6. The Diac (Bidirectional Thyristor Diode) . . . . . . . . 122

  4.10.7. The Triac . . . . . . . . 123

  4.10.8. Asymmetrical Thyristor (ASCR) . . . . . . . . 125

  4.10.9. Reverse Conducting Thyristor (RCT) . . . . . . . . 126

  4.10.10. Other Thyristor Devices . . . . . . . . 126

4.11. Gate Turn Off (G.T.O.) Thyristor . . . . . . . . 126

  4.11.1. Static V-I Characteristics of GTOs . . . . . . . . 127

  4.11.2. Switching Performance . . . . . . . . 127

4.12. Firing Circuits for Thyristors . . . . . . . . 129

  4.12.1. Main Features of Firing Circuits . . . . . . . . 129

  4.12.2. Resistance and Resistance-Capacitance Firing Circuits . . . . . . . . 130

  4.12.3. Unijunction Transistor (UJT) . . . . . . . . 134

4.13. Pulse Transformer in Firing Circuits . . . . . . . . 141

4.14. Triac Firing Circuit . . . . . . . . 144

4.15. Gating Circuits for Single-phase Converters . . . . . . . . 146

  4.15.1. Gate Pulse Amplifiers . . . . . . . . 148

  4.15.2. Pulse Train Gating . . . . . . . . 149

4.16. Cosine Firing Scheme . . . . . . . . 150

**5. THYRISTOR COMMUTATION TECHNIQUES . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 160–174**
- 5.1. Class A Commutation : Load Commutation . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 160
- 5.2. Class B Commutation : Resonant-Pulse Commutation . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 162
- 5.3. Class C Commutation : Complementary Commutation . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 165
- 5.4. Class D Commutation : Impulse Commutation . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 167
- 5.5. Class E Commutation : External Pulse Commutation . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 169
- 5.6. Class F Commutation : Line Commutation . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 170

√**6. PHASE CONTROLLED RECTIFIERS . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 175–247**
- 6.1. Principle of Phase Control . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 176
  - 6.1.1. Single-phase Half-wave Circuit With RL Load . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 178
  - 6.1.2. Single-phase Half-wave Circuit With RL Load And Freewheeling Diode . . 180
  - 6.1.3. Single-phase Half-wave Circuit With RLE Load . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 182
- 6.2. Full-wave Controlled Converters . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 187
- 6.3. Single-phase Full-wave Converters . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 188
  - 6.3.1. Single-phase Full-wave Mid-point Converter . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 189
  - 6.3.2. Single-phase Full-wave Bridge Converters . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 191
    - 6.3.2.1. Single-phase Full Converter . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 191
    - 6.3.2.2. Single-phase Semiconverter. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 194
    - 6.3.2.3. Analysis of Two-pulse Bridge Converter With Continuous Conduction. 196
- 6.4. Single-phase Two-pulse Converters with Discontinuous Load Current . . . . . . . . 200
  - 6.4.1. Single-phase Full Converter With Discontinuous Current . . . . . . . . . . . 200
  - 6.4.2. Single-phase Semiconverter With Discontinuous Current . . . . . . . . . . . 201
- 6.5. Three-phase Converter Systems using Diodes . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 203
- 6.6. Three-phase Thyristor Converter Circuits . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 209
  - 6.6.1. Three-phase Full Converters . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 210
  - 6.6.2. Three-phase Semiconverters . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 214
- 6.7. Effect of Source Impedance on the Performance of Converters . . . . . . . . . . 221
  - 6.7.1. Single-phase Full Converter . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 222
  - 6.7.2. Three-phase Full Converter Bridge . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 224
- 6.8. Dual Converters . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 228
  - 6.8.1. Ideal Dual Converter . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 230
  - 6.8.2. Practical Dual Converter . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 231
- 6.9. Some Worked Examples . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 236

**7. CHOPPERS . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 248–308**
- 7.1. Principle of Chopper Operation . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 249
- 7.2. Control Strategies . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 250
  - 7.2.1. Constant Frequency System . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 250
  - 7.2.2. Variable Frequency System . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 250
- 7.3. Step-up Choppers . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 251
- 7.4. Types of Chopper Circuits . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 254
  - 7.4.1. First-quadrant, or Type-A, Chopper . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 255
  - 7.4.2. Second-quadrant, or Type-B, Chopper . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 255
  - 7.4.3. Two-quadrant Type-a Chopper, or Type-C Chopper . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 256
  - 7.4.4. Two-quadrant Type-b Chopper, or Type-D Chopper . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 256
  - 7.4.5. Four-quadrant Chopper, or Type-E Chopper . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 257
- 7.5. Steady State Time-domain Analysis of Type-A Chopper . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 259
  - 7.5.1. Steady State Ripple . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 263

7.5.2. Limit of Continuous Conduction . . . . . 264
7.5.3. Computation of Extinction Time $t_x$ . . . . . 265
7.5.4. Fourier Analysis of Output Voltage . . . . . 266
7.6. Thyristor Chopper Circuits . . . . . 274
7.6.1. Voltage-commutated Chopper . . . . . 276
7.6.2. Current-commutated Chopper . . . . . 285
7.6.3. Load-commutated Chopper . . . . . 293
7.7. Multiphase Choppers . . . . . 296

---

**8. INVERTERS . . . . . 309–391**
8.1. Single-phase Voltage Source Inverters : Operating Principle . . . . . 310
8.1.1. Single-phase Bridge Inverters . . . . . 310
8.1.2. Steady-state Analysis of Single-phase Inverter . . . . . 311
8.2. Fourier Analysis of Single-phase Inverter Output Voltage . . . . . 319
8.3. Force-commutated Thyristor Inverters . . . . . 326
8.3.1. Modified Mcmurray Half-bridge Inverter . . . . . 326
8.3.2. Modified McMurray Full-bridge Inverter . . . . . 332
8.3.3. Modified McMurray-Bedford Half-bridge Inverter . . . . . 332
8.3.4. Modified McMurray-Bedford Full-bridge Inverter . . . . . 336
8.4. Three Phase Bridge Inverters . . . . . 337
8.4.1. Three-phase 180 Degree Mode VSI . . . . . 338
8.4.2. Three-phase 120 Degree Mode VSI . . . . . 342
8.5. Voltage Control In Single-phase Inverters . . . . . 347
8.5.1. External Control of AC Output Voltage . . . . . 347
8.5.2. External Control of DC Input Voltage . . . . . 348
8.5.3. Internal Control of Inverter . . . . . 349
8.6. Pulse-width Modulated Inverters . . . . . 349
8.6.1. Single-pulse Modulation . . . . . 350
8.6.2. Multiple-pulse Modulation . . . . . 351
8.6.3. Sinusoidal-Pulse Modulation (sin M) . . . . . 354
8.6.4. Realization of PWM in Single-phase Bridge Inverters . . . . . 356
8.7. Reduction of Harmonics in the Inverter Output Voltage . . . . . 359
8.7.1. Harmonic Reduction by PWM . . . . . 359
8.7.2. Harmonic Reduction by Transformer Connections . . . . . 360
8.7.3. Harmonic Reduction by Stepped-wave Inverters . . . . . 362
8.8. Current Source Inverters . . . . . 363
8.8.1. Single-phase CSI With Ideal Switches . . . . . 363
8.8.2. Single-phase Capacitor-commutated CSI With R-Load . . . . . 365
8.8.3. Single-phase Auto-sequential Commutated Inverter (1-Phase ASCI) . . . . . 369
8.9. Series Inverters . . . . . 377
8.9.1. Basic Series Inverter . . . . . 377
8.9.2. Analysis of Basic Series Inverter . . . . . 378
8.10. Single-phase Parallel Inverter . . . . . 382
8.10.1. Analysis of Parallel Inverter . . . . . 383

---

**9. AC VOLTAGE CONTROLLERS . . . . . 392–413**
9.1. Types of AC Voltage Controllers . . . . . 392
9.2. Integral Cycle Control . . . . . 393
9.3. Single-phase Voltage Controllers . . . . . 396
9.3.1. Single-phase Voltage Controller With R Load . . . . . 397

9.3.2. Single-phase Voltage Controller With RL Load . . . . . . 402
9.4. Sequence Control of AC Voltage Controllers (Transformer Tap Changers) . . . . . . 407
9.4.1. Two-stage Sequence Control of Voltage Controllers . . . . . . 408
9.4.2. Multistage Sequence Control of Voltage Controllers . . . . . . 409
9.4.3. Single-phase Sinusoidal Voltage Controller . . . . . . 410

---

10. CYCLOCONVERTERS . . . . . . 414–427
10.1. Principle of Cycloconverter Operation . . . . . . 414
10.1.1. Single-phase to Single-phase Circuit–step-up Cycloconverter . . . . . . 415
10.1.1.1. Mid-point Cycloconverter. . . . . . . 415
10.1.1.2. Bridge-type Cycloconverter. . . . . . . 416
10.1.2. Single-phase to Single-phase Circuit–step-down Cycloconverter . . . . . . 416
10.1.2.1. Mid-point Cycloconverter. . . . . . . 416
10.1.2.2. Bridge-type Cycloconverter. . . . . . . 418
10.2. Three-phase Half-wave Cycloconverters . . . . . . 418
10.2.1. Three-phase to Single-phase Cycloconverters . . . . . . 418
10.2.2. Three-phase to Three-phase Cycloconverters . . . . . . 421
10.3. Output Voltage Equation for a Cycloconverter . . . . . . 423
10.4. Load-commutated Cycloconverter . . . . . . 425

---

11. SOME APPLICATIONS . . . . . . 428–459
11.1. Switched Mode Power Supply (SMPS) . . . . . . 428
11.1.1. Flyback Converter . . . . . . 428
11.1.2. Push-pull Converter . . . . . . 431
11.1.3. Half-bridge Converter . . . . . . 432
11.1.4. Full-bridge Converter . . . . . . 433
11.2. Uninterruptible Power Supplies . . . . . . 434
11.3. High Voltage DC Transmission . . . . . . 436
11.3.1. Types of HVDC Link . . . . . . 437
11.3.2. Bipolar HVDC System . . . . . . 438
11.3.3. Control of HVDC Converters . . . . . . 439
11.4. Static Switches . . . . . . 441
11.4.1. Single-phase AC Switches . . . . . . 442
11.4.2. DC Switches . . . . . . 444
11.4.3. Design of Static Switches . . . . . . 444
11.5. Static Circuit Breakers . . . . . . 445
11.5.1. Static AC Circuit Breakers . . . . . . 445
11.5.2. Static DC Circuit Breakers . . . . . . 446
11.6. Solid State Relays . . . . . . 447
11.6.1. DC Solid State Relays . . . . . . 448
11.6.2. AC Solid State Relays . . . . . . 448
11.7. Resonant Converters . . . . . . 448
11.7.1. Zero-Current Switching Resonant Converters . . . . . . 449
11.7.1.1. L-type ZCS Resonant Converters. . . . . . . 449
11.7.1.2. M-type ZCS Resonant Converter. . . . . . . 452
11.7.2. Zero-Voltage-Switching Resonant Converters . . . . . . 455
11.7.3. Comparison between ZCS and ZVS Converters . . . . . . 458

**12. ELECTRIC DRIVES** . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . **460–542**
- 12.1. Concept Of Electric Drive . . . . . . . . . . 460
- 12.2. DC Drives . . . . . . . . . . 461
  - 12.2.1. Basic Performance Equations of DC Motors . . . . . . . . . . 461
- 12.3. Single-phase DC Drives . . . . . . . . . . 464
  - 12.3.1. Single-phase Half-wave Converter Drives . . . . . . . . . . 464
  - 12.3.2. Single-phase Semiconverter Drives . . . . . . . . . . 466
  - 12.3.3. Single-phase Full Converter Drives . . . . . . . . . . 469
  - 12.3.4. Single-phase Dual Converter Drives . . . . . . . . . . 473
- 12.4. Three-phase DC Drives . . . . . . . . . . 474
  - 12.4.1. Three-phase half-wave converter drives. . . . . . . . . . . 474
  - 12.4.2. Three-phase Semiconverter Drives . . . . . . . . . . 475
  - 12.4.3. Three-phase Full-converter Drives . . . . . . . . . . 479
  - 12.4.4. Three-phase Dual Converter Drives . . . . . . . . . . 486
- 12.5. Chopper Drives . . . . . . . . . . 487
  - 12.5.1. Power Control or Motoring Control . . . . . . . . . . 487
  - 12.5.2. Regenerative-Braking Control . . . . . . . . . . 492
  - 12.5.3. Two-quadrant Chopper Drives . . . . . . . . . . 495
  - 12.5.4. Four-quadrant Chopper Drives . . . . . . . . . . 495
- 12.6. A.C. Drives . . . . . . . . . . 496
- 12.7. Induction-motor Drives . . . . . . . . . . 497
- 12.8. Speed Control of Three-phase Induction Motors . . . . . . . . . . 500
  - 12.8.1. Stator Voltage Control . . . . . . . . . . 500
  - 12.8.2. Stator Frequency Control . . . . . . . . . . 502
  - 12.8.3. Stator Voltage and Frequency Control . . . . . . . . . . 505
  - 12.8.4. Stator Current Control . . . . . . . . . . 509
  - 12.8.5. Static Rotor-resistance Control . . . . . . . . . . 516
  - 12.8.6. Slip-Power Recovery Schemes . . . . . . . . . . 521
    - 12.8.6.1. Static Kramer Drive. . . . . . . . . . . 521
    - 12.8.6.2. Static Scherbius Drive. . . . . . . . . . . 528
- 12.9. Synchronous Motor Drives . . . . . . . . . . 529
  - 12.9.1. Cylindrical Rotor Motors . . . . . . . . . . 530
  - 12.9.2. Salient-pole Motors . . . . . . . . . . 533
  - 12.9.3. Reluctance Motors . . . . . . . . . . 535
  - 12.9.4. Permanent-magnet Motors . . . . . . . . . . 536

**APPENDIX – OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS** . . . . . . . . . . **543–579**
- Power Semiconductor Diodes and Transistors . . . . . . . . . . 544
- Diode Circuits and Rectifiers . . . . . . . . . . 546
- Thyristors . . . . . . . . . . 550
- Thyristor Commutation Techniques . . . . . . . . . . 556
- Phase Controlled Rectifiers . . . . . . . . . . 559
- Choppers . . . . . . . . . . 567
- Inverters . . . . . . . . . . 571
- Single-Phase Voltage Controllers . . . . . . . . . . 574
- Cycloconverters . . . . . . . . . . 577

**REFERENCES** . . . . . . . . . . **580**

**INDEX** . . . . . . . . . . **581**

# ONE

# Introduction

The object of this chapter is to discuss briefly the concept of power electronics, applications of power electronics and the types of power converters described in this book.

## 1.1. CONCEPT OF POWER ELECTRONICS

Power electronics belongs partly to power engineers and partly to electronics engineers [2]. Power engineering is mainly concerned with generation, transmission, distribution and utilization of electric energy at high efficiency. Electronics engineering, on the other hand, is guided by distortionless production, transmission and reception of data and signals of very low power level of the order of a few watts, or milliwatts without much consideration to the efficiency. In addition, apparatus associated with power engineering is based mainly on electromagnetic principles whereas that in electronics engineering is based upon physical phenomena in vacuum, gases/vapours and semiconductors.

Power electronics is a subject that concerns the application of electronic-principles into situations that are rated at power level rather than signal level. It may also be defined as a subject that deals with the apparatus and equipment working on the principle of *electronics* but rated at *power* level rather than signal level. For example, semiconductor power switches such as thyristors, GTOs etc. work on the principle of electronics (movement of holes and electrons), but have the name power attached to them only as a description of their power ratings. Similarly, diodes, mercury-arc rectifiers and thyratrons (gas-filled triode), high-power level devices, form a part of the subject power electronics ; because their working is based on the physical phenomena in gases and vapours, an electronic process. As the inclusion of all such power-rated electronic equipments would be a voluminous task, the present book is devoted to the study of semi-conductor-based power-electronic components and systems only. It should be understood that the techniques used in the design of high-efficiency and high-energy level power electronic circuits are quite different from those employed in the design of low-efficiency electronic circuits at signal levels.

## 1.2. APPLICATIONS OF POWER ELECTRONICS

The era of modern power electronics began with the invention of silicon-controlled-rectifier (SCR) by Bell Laboratories in 1956. Its protoytpe was introduced by GEC in 1957 and subsequently, GEC introduced SCR-based systems commercially in 1958. Since then, there have been emergence of many new power semiconductor devices. Power electronic systems today incorporate power semiconductor devices as well as microelectronic integrated circuits.

The term, 'converter system', in general, is used to denote a static device that converts ac to dc, dc to ac, dc to dc or ac to ac. Conventional power controllers based on thyratrons, mercury-arc rectifiers, magnetic amplifiers, rheostatic controllers etc. have been replaced by power electronic controllers using semiconductor devices in almost all applications. The development of new power-semiconductor devices, new circuit topologies with their improved performance and their fall in prices have opened up wide field for the new applications of power electronic converters. A judicious use of power-semiconductor devices in conjunction with microprocessors or microcomputers has further enhanced the control strategies and synthesizing capabilities of the power electronic converters. It is said that power semiconductor devices can be regarded as the muscle and the microelectronics as the intelligent brain in the modern power electronic systems.

Table 1.1 lists various applications of power electronics. This list is however not exhaustive. No boundaries can be earmarked for the applications of power electronics, especially with the present trend of integrated design of power-semiconductor devices, microprocessors and the controlled equipment. The power ratings of power-electronic systems range from a few watts in lamps to several hundred megawatts in HVDC transmission systems. It is believed that by the turn of the century, almost 80% of the electric power consumed in utility systems will pass through power-electronics and this figure will eventually reach 100% in the future.

**Table 1.1. Some Applications of Power Electronics**

**1. Aerospace :**

Space shuttle power supplies, satellite power supplies, aircraft power systems.

**2. Commercial :**

Advertising, heating, airconditioning, central refrigeration, computer and office equipment, uninterruptible power supplies, elevators, light dimmers and flashers.

**3. Industrial :**

Arc and industrial furnaces, blowers and fans, pumps and compressors, industrial lasers, transformer-tap changers, rolling mills, textile mills, excavators, cement mills, welding.

**4. Residential :**

Airconditioning, cooking, lighting, space heating, refrigerators, electric-door openers, dryers, fans, personal computers, other entertainment equipment, vacuum cleaners, washing and sewing machines, light dimmers, food mixers, electric blankets, food-warmer trays.

**5. Telecommunication :**

Battery chargers, power supplies ( dc and UPS ).

**6. Transportation :**

Battery chargers, traction control of electric vehicles, electric locomotives, street cars, trolley buses, subways, automotive electronics.

**7. Utility systems :**

High voltage dc transmission (HVDC), excitation systems, VAR compensation, static circuit breakers, fans and boiler-feed pumps, supplementary energy systems ( solar, wind ).

## 1.3. ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF POWER-ELECTRONIC CONVERTERS

The advantages possessed by power-electronic systems are as under :

(*i*) High efficiency due to low loss in power-semiconductor devices.

(*ii*) High reliability of power-electronic converter systems.

(*iii*) Long life and less maintenance due to the absence of any moving parts.

(*iv*) Fast dynamic response of the power-electronic systems as compared to electromechanical converter systems.

(*v*) Small size and less weight result in less floor space and therefore lower installation cost.

(*vi*) Mass production of power-semiconductor devices has resulted in lower cost of the converter equipment.

Systems based on power electronics, however, suffer from the following disadvantages :

(*a*) Power-electronic converter circuits have a tendency to generate harmonics in the supply system as well as in the load circuit.

In the load circuit, the performance of the load is influenced, for example, a high harmonic content in the load circuit causes commutation problems in dc machines, increased motor heating and more accoustical noise in both dc and ac machines. So steps must be taken to filter these out from the output side of a converter.

In the supply system, the harmonics distort the voltage waveform and seriously influence the performance of other equipment connected to the same supply line. In addition, the harmonics in the supply line can also cause interference with communication lines. It is, therefore, necessary to insert filters on the input side of a converter.

(*b*) Ac to dc and ac to ac converters operate at a low input power factor under certain operating conditions. In order to avoid a low pf, some special measures have to be adopted.

(*c*) Power-electronic controllers have low overload capacity. These converters must, therefore, be rated for taking momentary overloads. As such, cost of power electronic controller may increase.

(*d*) Regeneration of power is difficult in power electronic converter systems.

The advantages possessed by power electronic converters far outweigh their disadvantages mentioned above. As a consequence, semiconductor-based converters are being extensively employed in systems where power flow is to be regulated. As already stated, conventional power controllers used in many installations have already been replaced by semiconductor-based power electronic controllers.

## 1.4. POWER ELECTRONIC SYSTEMS

The major components of a power electronic system are shown in the form of a block diagram in Fig. 1.1. Main power source may be an ac supply system or a dc supply system.

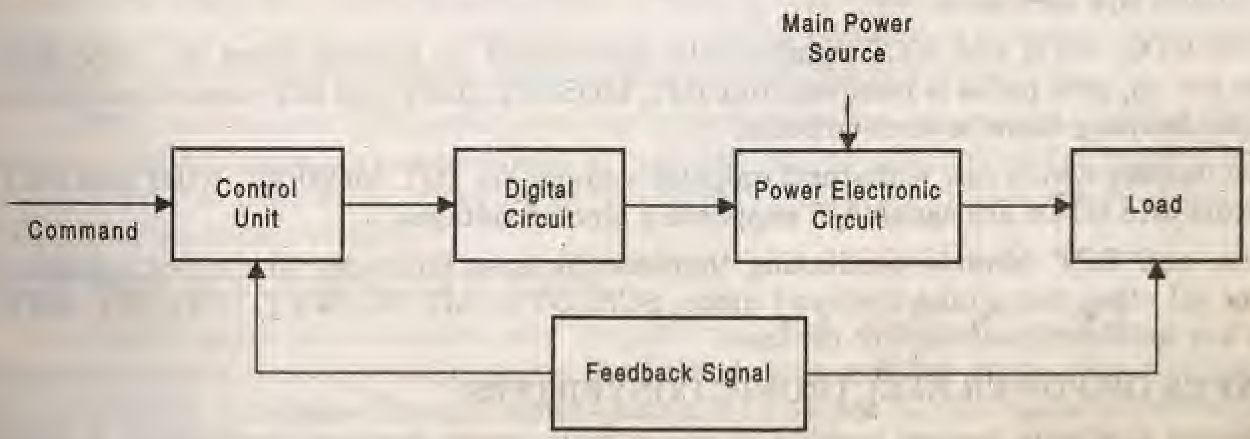


Fig. 1.1 Block diagram of a typical power electronic system.

The output from the power electronic circuit may be variable dc, or ac voltage, or it may be a variable voltage and frequency. In general, the output of a power electronic convertor circuit depends upon the requirements of the load. For example, if the load is a dc motor, the converter output must be adjustable direct voltage. In case the load is a 3-phase induction motor, the converter may have adjustable voltage and frequency at its output terminals.

The feedback component in Fig. 1.1 measures a parameter of the load, say speed in case of a rotating machine, and compares it with the command. The difference of the two, through the digital circuit components, controls the instant of turn-on of semiconductor devices forming the solid-state power converter system. In this manner, behaviour of the load circuit can be controlled, as desired, over a wide range with the adjustment of the command.

## 1.5. POWER SEMICONDUCTOR DEVICES

Silicon controlled rectifier (SCR) was introduced first in 1957. Since then, several other power semiconductor devices have been developed. All these semiconductor devices are enumerated below along with their ratings.

Power diodes are available up to 3000 V, 3500 A, 1 kHz. Thyristors have ratings up to 6000 V, 3500 A, 1 kHz. SITHs (static induction thyristors) can operate up to 4000 V, 2200 A, 20 kHz. GTOs (gate-turn off thyristors) have ratings of 4000 V, 3000 A, 10 kHz. MCTs (MOS controlled thyristors) can work up to 600 V, 60 A, 20 kHz. Triacs have power ratings of 1200 V, 300 A, 400 Hz.

BJTs are used up to power ratings of 1200 V, 400 A, 10 kHz.

Power MOSFETs (metal oxide semiconductor field effect transistors) and SITs (static induction transistors) have relatively low range of 1000 V, 50 A and 1200 V, 300 A respectively. Both these devices can, however, operate satisfactorily up to a frequency range of 100 kHz.

IGBTs (insulated gate bipolar transistors) are available up to 1200 V, 400 A and 20 kHz.

Based on (*i*) turn-on and turn-off characteristics and (*ii*) gate signal requirements, the power semiconductor devices can be classified as under :

(*a*) *Diodes* : These are uncontrolled rectifying devices. Their on and off states are controlled by power supply.

(*b*) *Thyristors* : These have controlled turned-on by a gate signal. After thyristors are turned-on, they remain latched-in on-state due to internal regenerative action.

(*c*) *Controllable switches* : These devices are turned-on and turned-off by the application of control signals. The devices which behave as controllable switches are BJT, MOSFET, GTO, SITH, IGBT, SIT and MCT.

SCR, GTO, SITH and MCT require pulse-gate signal for turning them on ; once these devices are on, gate pulse is removed. But BJT, MOSFET, IGBT and SIT require continuous signal for keeping them in turn-on state.

The devices which can withstand unipolar voltage are BJT, MOSFET, IGBT and MCT. Thyristors and GTOs are capable of supporting bipolar voltages.

Triac and RCT (reverse conducting thyristor) possess bidirectional current capability whereas all other remaining devices ( diode, SCR, GTO, BJT, MOSFET, IGBT, SIT, SITH, MCT ) are unidirectional current devices.

## 1.6. TYPES OF POWER ELECTRONIC CONVERTERS

A power electronic system consists of one or more power electronic converters. A power electronic converter is made up of some power semiconductor devices controlled by integrated circuits. The switching characteristics of power semiconductor devices permit a power electronic converter to shape the input power of one form to output power of some other form. Static power converters perform these functions of power conversion very efficiently. Broadly speaking, power electronic converters (or circuits) can be classified into six types as under:

1. **Diode Rectifiers :** A diode rectifier circuit converts ac input voltage into a fixed dc voltage. The input voltage may be single-phase or three phase. Diode rectifiers find wide use in electric traction, battery charging, electroplating, electrochemical processing, power supplies, welding and uninterruptible power supply (UPS) systems.

2. **Ac to dc converters ( Phase-controlled rectifiers ) :** These convert constant ac voltage to variable dc output voltage. These rectifiers use line voltage for their commutation, as such these are also called line-commutated or naturally-commutated ac to dc converters. Phase-controlled converters may be fed from 1-phase or 3-phase source. These are used in dc drives, metallurgical and chemical industries, excitation systems for synchronous machines etc.

3. **DC to dc converters ( DC Choppers )** : A dc chopper converts fixed dc input voltage to a controllable dc output voltage. The chopper circuits require forced, or load, commutation to turn-off the thyristors. For lower power circuits, thyristors are replaced by power transistors. Classification of chopper circuits is dependent upon the type of commutation and also on the direction of power flow. Choppers find wide applications in dc drives, subway cars, trolley trucks, battery-driven vehicles etc.

4. **DC to ac converters ( inverters ) :** An inverter converts fixed dc voltage to a variable ac voltage. The output may be a variable voltage and variable frequency. These converters use line, load or forced commutation for turning-off the thyristors. Inverters find wide use in induction-motor and synchronous-motor drives, induction heating, UPS, HVDC transmission etc. At present, conventional thyristors are also being replaced by GTOs in high-power applications and by power transistors in low-power applications.

5. **AC to ac converters :** These convert fixed ac input voltage into variable ac output voltage. These are of two types as under :

(*a*) *AC voltage controllers* (AC voltage regulators) : These converter circuits convert fixed ac voltage directly to a variable ac voltage at the same frequency. AC voltage controller employ two thyristors in antiparallel or a triac. Turn-off of both the devices is obtained by line commutation. Output voltage is controlled by varying the firing angle delay. AC voltage controllers are widely used for lighting control, speed control of fans, pumps etc.

(*b*) *Cycloconverters* : These circuits convert input power at one frequency to output power at a different frequency through one-stage conversion. Line commutation is more common in these converters, though forced and load commutated cycloconverters are also employed. These are primarily used for slow-speed large ac drives like rotary kiln etc.

6. **Static switches** : The power semiconductor devices can operate as static switches or contactors. Static switches possess many advantages over mechanical and electromechanical circuit breakers. Depending upon the input supply, the static switches are called ac static switches or dc static switches.

## 1.7. POWER ELECTRONIC MODULES

A power electronic converter may require two, four or more semiconductor devices depending upon the circuit configuration. Power modules consisting of two, four or six devices are, at present, available. Thus, a power electronic converter can be assembled from power modules instead of from individual semiconductor devices. A power module has better performance characteristics as compared to conventional devices so far as their switching characteristics, operating speed and losses are concerned. Gate drive circuits for individual devices or power modules are also commercially available. As a result of these developments, now intelligent modules have come in the market.

*Intellegent module,* also called *smart-power,* is state-of-the-art power electronics and it consists of power module and a peripheral circuit. The peripheral circuit comprises of interfacing of power module with the input/output through proper isolation from low-voltage signal and from high-voltage power circuit, a drive circuit, protection and diagnostic circuitry against maloperation like excess current, over voltage etc, microcomputer control and controlled power supply. The user has merely to connect the existing supply and the load terminals to the smart-power. At present, intelligent modules are being used extensively in power electronics. It is reported that there are more than twenty manufacturers of intelligent modules.

## SUMMARY

Power semiconductor devices form the heart of modern power electronics. A power electronics engineer must understand the device thoroughly for efficient, reliable and cost-effective design of power converters. For this purpose, chapter 2 is devoted to the study of power semiconductor diodes, transistors and MCT. Chapter 3 deals with diode circuits and rectifiers. In chapter 4, are discussed in detail the thyristor characteristics and its control strategies. Thyristor commutation techniques are described in chapter 5. Other power electronic converters mentioned in this chapter are described in detail in chapter 6 onwards.

## PROBLEMS

**1.1** (*a*) What is power electronics ? Discuss briefly the concept of power electronics.

(*b*) What is a converter ? Illustrate your answer with examples.

(*c*) Enumerate at least ten applications of power electronics.

(*d*) Give the advantages and disadvantages of power electronic converters.

**1.2** (*a*) Discuss the various types of power electronic converters.

(*b*) Describe a power electronic system with its general block diagram.

(*c*) Compare a diode with a thyristor.

(*d*) Give the differences between a triac and a thyristor.

**1.3** (*a*) List the semiconductor devices which can withstand (*i*) unipolar voltages and (*ii*) bipolar voltages.

(*b*) Give the differences between an ac voltage controller and a cycloconveter.

(*c*) What are the differences in the gating requirements of thyristors and transistors ?

(*d*) Give the differences between a triac and an IGBT.

(*e*) What is power-electronic module ? Describe smart-power.

# TWO

# *Power Semiconductor Diodes and Transistors*

Power semiconductor diodes are similar to low-power *p-n* junction diodes, called signal diodes. Similarly, power transistors are identical with *npn* or *pnp* signal transistors. As a matter of fact, power semi conductor devices are more complex in structure and in operation than their low-power counterparts. This complexity arises because low-power devices must be modified in order to make them suitable for high-power applications, for example, power diodes are constructed with $n^-$ layer, called drift region, between $p^+$ layer (anode) and $n^+$ layer or substrate (cathode). This is done to support large blocking voltages. This $n^-$ type layer is, however, not present in signal diodes.

The voltage, current and power ratings of power diodes and transistors are much higher than the corresponding ratings for signal devices. In addition, power devices operate at lower switching speeds whereas signal diodes and transistors operate at higher switching speeds.

Power semiconductor devices are used extensively in power-electronic circuits. Some applications of power diodes include their use as freewheeling diodes, for ac to dc conversion, for recovery of trapped energy etc. Power transistors, used as a switching device in power-electronic circuits, must operate in the saturation region in order that their on-state voltage drop is low. Their applications as switching elements include dc choppers and inverters.

The object of this chapter is to describe power diodes, power transistors and MOS-controlled thyristor (MCT). A thyristor is more important component of power semiconductor devices, it is, therefore, discussed in detail in Chapter 4.

## 2.1. CHARACTERISTICS OF POWER DIODES

Power diode is a two-layer, two-terminal, *p-n* semiconductor device. It has one *pn*-junction formed by alloying, diffusing or epitaxial growth. The two terminals of diode are called anode and cathode, Fig. 2.1 (*a*). Two important characteristics of power diodes are now described.

### 2.1.1. Diode V-I Characteristics

When anode is positive with respect to cathode, diode is said to be *forward biased*. With increase of the source voltage $V_s$ from zero value, initially diode current is zero. From $V_s = 0$ to cut-in voltage, the forward-diode current is very small. *Cut-in voltage* is also known as *threshold voltage* or *turn-on voltage*. Beyond cut-in voltage, the diode current rises rapidly and the diode is said to conduct. For silicon diode, the cut-in voltage is around 0.7 V. When diode conducts, there is a forward voltage drop of the order of 0.8 to 1 V.

When cathode is positive with respect to anode, the diode is said to be *reverse biased.* In the *reverse biased* condition of the diode, a small reverse current, called leakage current, of the order of microamperes or milliamperes (for large diodes) flows. The leakage current increases slowly with the reverse voltage until breakdown or avalanche voltage is reached. At this breakdown voltage, diode is turned on in the reversed direction. If current in the reversed direction is not limited by a series resistance, the current will become quite high to destroy the diode. The reverse avalanche breakdown of a diode is avoided by operating the diode below specified peak repetitive reverse voltage $V_{RRM}$. Fig. 2.1 (*c*) illustrates diode characteristics where $V_{RRM}$ and cut-in voltage are shown.

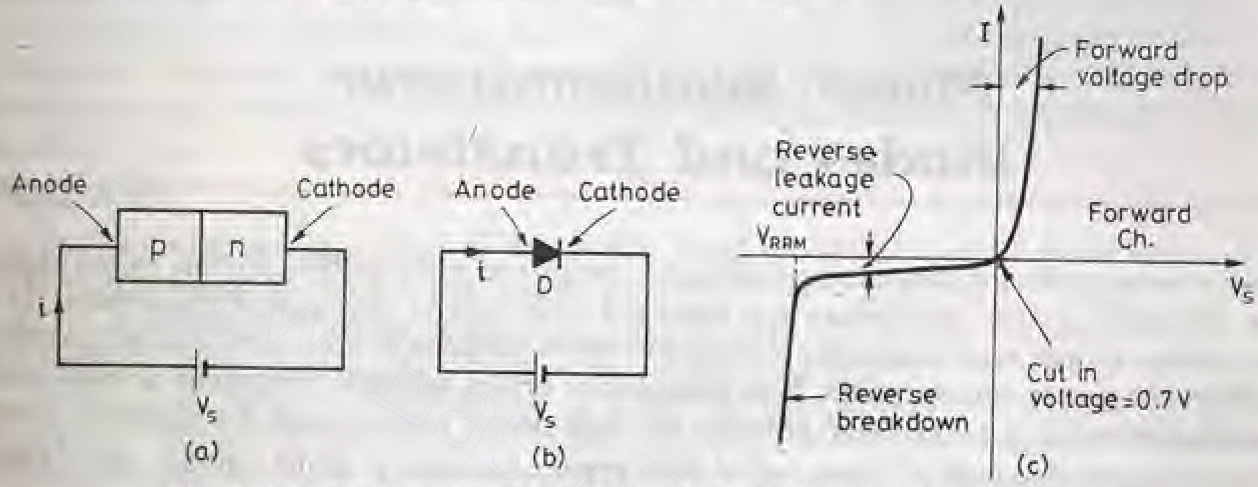


Fig. 2.1. (*a*) *p-n* junction (*b*) diode symbol (*c*) V-I characteristics of diode.

Diode manufacturers also indicate the value of peak inverse voltage (PIV) of a diode. This is the largest reverse voltage to which a diode may be subjected during its working. PIV is the same as $V_{RRM}$.

The power diodes are now available with forward current ratings of 1 A to several thousand amperes and with reverse voltage ratings of 50 V to 3000 V or more.

### 2.1.2. Diode Reverse Recovery Characteristics

After the forward diode current decays to zero, the diode continues to conduct in the reverse direction because of the presence of stored charges in the two layers. The reverse current flows for a time called reverse recovery time $t_{rr}$. The diode regains its blocking capability until reverse recovery current decays to zero. The *reverse recovery time* $t_{rr}$ is defined as the time between the instant forward diode current becomes zero and the instant reverse recovery current decays to 25% of its reverse peak value $I_{RM}$ as shown in Fig. 2.2 (*a*).

The reverse recovery time is composed of two segments of time $t_a$ and $t_b$, *i.e.*, $t_{rr} = t_a + t_b$. Time $t_a$ is the time between zero crossing of forward current and peak reverse current $I_{RM}$. During the time $t_a$, charge stored in depletion region is removed. Time $t_b$ is measured from the instant of $I_{RM}$ to the instant where 0.25 $I_{RM}$ is reached, Fig. 2.2 (*a*). During $t_b$, charge from the two semiconductor layers is removed. The shaded area in Fig. 2.2 (*a*) represents the stored charge, or reverse recovery charge, $Q_R$ which must be removed during the reverse recovery time $t_{rr}$. The ratio $t_b/t_a$ is called the *softness factor* or S-factor. This factor is a measure of the voltage transients that occur during the time diode recovers. Its usual value is unity and this indicates low oscillatory reverse recovery process. In case S-factor is small, diode has large oscillatory over voltages. A diode with S-factor equal to one is called soft-recovery diode and a diode with S-factor less than one is called snappy-recovery diode or fast-recovery diode. In Fig. 2.2 (*b*) is shown the waveform of forward-voltage drop $v_f$ across the diode. The product of $v_f$ and $i_f$ gives the power loss in a diode. Its variation is shown in Fig. 2.2 (*c*). The average value of $v_f\, i_f$ gives the total power loss in a diode. Fig. 2.2 (*c*) reveals that major power loss in a diode occurs during the period $t_b$.

It is noticed from Fig. 2.2 (*a*) that peak inverse current $I_{RM}$ can be expressed as

$$I_{RM} = t_a \frac{di}{dt} \qquad \ldots(2.1)$$

where $\frac{di}{dt}$ is the rate of change of reverse current. The reverse recovery characteristics of Fig. 2.2 (*a*) can be taken to be triangular. Under this assumption, storage charge $Q_R$, from Fig. 2.2 (*a*), is given by

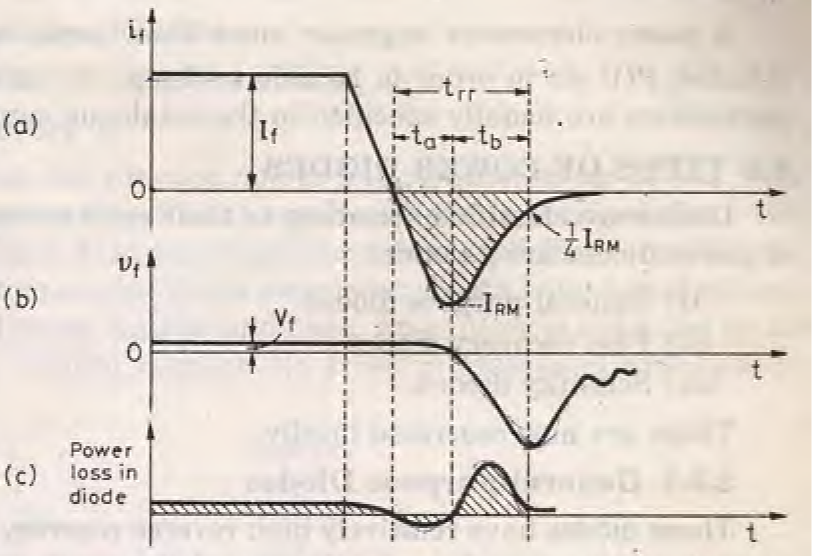


Fig. 2.2. Reverse recovery characteristics (*a*) variation of forward current $i_f$ (*b*) forward voltage drop $v_f$ and (*c*) power loss in a diode.

$$Q_R = \frac{1}{2} I_{RM} \cdot t_{rr}$$ = 7r(3.5)

or
$$I_{RM} = \frac{2\,Q_R}{t_{rr}} \qquad \ldots(2.2)$$

If $t_{rr} \cong t_a$, then from Eq. (2.1),

$$I_{RM} = t_{rr} \cdot \frac{di}{dt} \qquad \ldots(2.3)$$

From Eqs. (2.2) and (2.3), we get

$$t_{rr} \cdot \frac{di}{dt} = \frac{2\,Q_R}{t_{rr}}$$

or
$$t_{rr} = \left[\frac{2\,Q_R}{(di/dt)}\right]^{1/2} \qquad \ldots(2.4)$$

From Eq. (2.1), with $t_a \cong t_{rr}$, we get

$$I_{RR} = t_{rr} \cdot \frac{di}{dt} = \left[\frac{2\,Q_R}{(di/dt)}\right]^{1/2} \cdot \frac{di}{dt}$$

$$= \left[2\,Q_R \left(\frac{di}{dt}\right)\right]^{1/2} \qquad \ldots(2.5)$$

It is seen from Eqs. (2.4) and (2.5) that reverse recovery time and peak inverse current are dependent on storage charge and rate of change of current $\frac{di}{dt}$. The storage charge depends upon the forward diode current $I_F$. This shows that reverse recovery time and peak inverse current depend on forward field current.

A power-electronics engineer must know peak reverse current $I_{RM,}$ stored charge $Q_R$, S-factor, *PIV* etc in order to be able to design the circuitry employing power diodes. These parameters are usually specified in the catalogue supplied by the diode manufacturers.

## 2.2. TYPES OF POWER DIODES

Diodes are classified according to their reverse recovery characteristics. The three types of power diodes are as under :

(*i*) General purpose diodes
(*ii*) Fast recovery diodes
(*iii*) Schottky diodes.

These are now described briefly.

### 2.2.1. General-purpose Diodes

These diodes have relatively high reverse recovery time, of the order of about 25 μs. Their current ratings vary from 1 A to several thousand amperes and the range of voltage rating is from 50 V to about 5 kV. Applications of power diodes of this type include battery charging, electric traction, electroplating, welding and uninterruptible power supplies (UPS).

### 2.2.2. Fast-recovery Diodes

The diodes with low reverse recovery time, of about 5 μs or less, are classified as fast-recovery diodes. These are used in choppers, commutation circuits, switched mode power supplies, induction heating etc. Their current ratings vary from about 1 A to several thousand amperes and voltage ratings from 50 V to about 3 kV.

For voltage ratings below about 400 V, the epitaxial process is used for diode fabrication. These diodes have fast recovery time, as low as 50 ns.

For voltage ratings above 400 V, diffusion technique is used for the fabrication of diodes. In order to shorten the reverse-recovery time, platinum or gold doping is carried out. But this doping may increase the forward voltage drop in a diode.

### 2.2.3. Schottky Diodes

This class of diodes use metal-to-semiconductor junction for rectification purposes instead of *pn*-junction. Schottky diodes are characterised by very fast recovery time and low forward voltage drop. Rectified current flow is by majority carriers only and this avoids the turn-off delay accompanied with minority carrier recombination. Their reverse voltage ratings are limited to about 100 V and forward current ratings vary from 1 A to 300 A. Applications of Schottky diodes include high-frequency instrumentation and switching power supplies.

The electrical and thermal characteristics of power diodes are similar to those of thyristors and these are described in Chapter 4.

## 2.3. POWER TRANSISTORS

Power diodes are uncontrolled devices. In other words, their turn-on and turn-off characteristics are not under control. Power transistors, however, possess controlled characteristics. These are turned on when a current signal is given to base, or control, terminal. The transistor remains in the on-state so long as control signal is present. When this control signal is removed, a power transistor is turned off.

Power transistors are of three types as under :

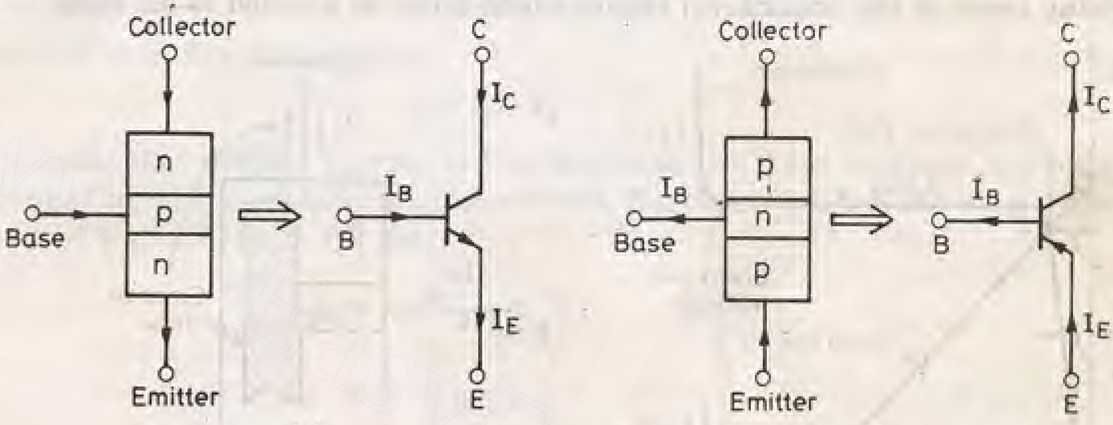
(*i*) Bipolar junction transistors (BJTs)
(*ii*) Metal-oxide-semiconductor field-effect transistors (MOSFETs)

(*iii*) Insulated gate bipolar transistors (IGBTs)

These three types are now described one after the other.

### 2.3.1. Bipolar Junction Transistors

A bipolar transistor is a three-layer, two junction *npn* or *pnp* semiconductor device. With one *p*-region sandwiched by two *n*-regions, Fig. 2.3 (*a*), *npn* transistor is obtained. With two *p*-regions sandwiching one *n*-region, Fig. 2.3 (*b*), *pnp* transistor is obtained. The term ' bipolar ' denotes that the current flow in the device is due to the movement of both holes and electrons. A BJT has three terminals named collector, emitter and base. An emitter is indicated by an arrowhead indicating the direction of emitter current. No arrow is associated with base or collector.

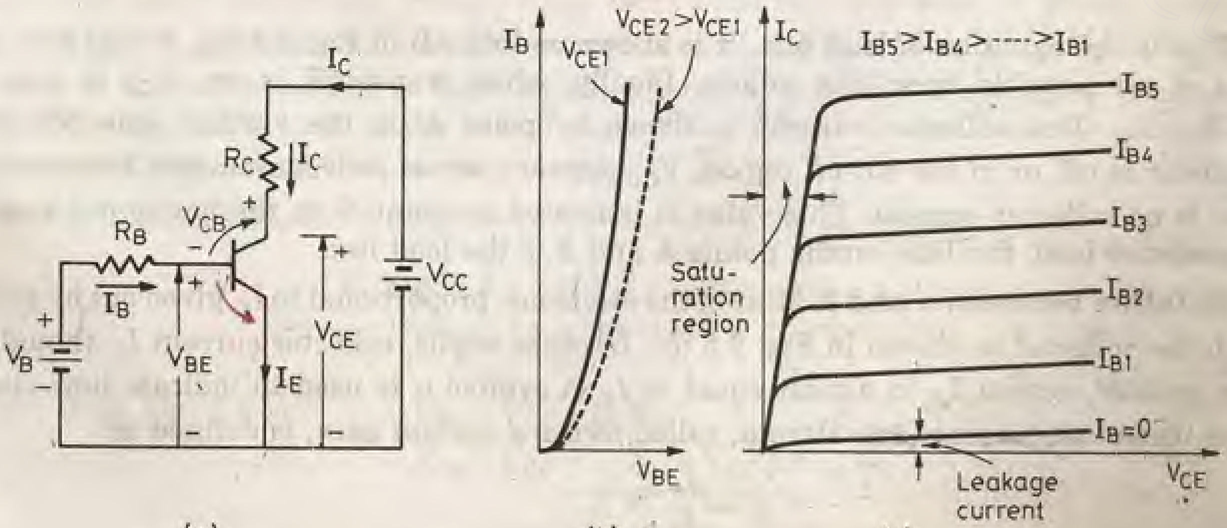


(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 2.3. Bipolar junction transistors (*a*) *npn* type and (*b*) *pnp* type.

**2.3.1.1. Steady-state Characteristics.** Out of the three possible circuit configurations for a transistor, common-emitter arrangement is more common in switching applications. So, henceforth, *npn* transistors will only be considered.

**Input characteristics.** A graph between base current $I_B$ and base-emitter voltage $V_{BE}$ gives input characteristics. As the base-emitter junction of a transistor is like a diode, $I_B$ versus $V_{BE}$ graph resembles a diode curve. When collector-emitter voltage $V_{CE2}$ is more than $V_{CE1}$, base current decreases as shown in Fig. 2.4 (*b*).

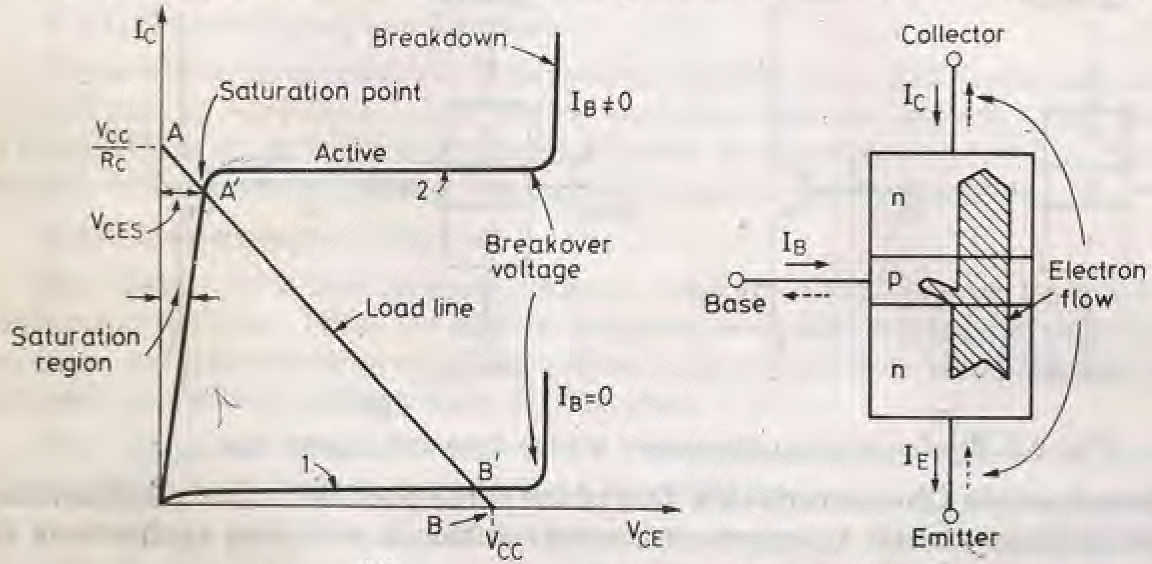


(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 2.4. (*a*) *npn* transistor circuit characteristics, (*b*) input characteristics and (*c*) output characteristics.

**Output characteristics.** A graph between collector current $I_c$ and collector-emitter voltage $V_{CE}$ gives output characteristics of a transistor. For zero base current, *i.e.* for $I_B = 0$, as $V_{CE}$ is increased, a small leakage (collector) current exists as shown in Fig. 2.4 (*c*). As the base current is increased from $I_B = 0$ to $I_{B1}, I_{B2}$ etc, collector current also rises as shown in Fig. 2.4 (*c*).

Fig. 2.5 (*a*) shows two of the output characteristic curves, 1 for $I_B = 0$ and 2 for $I_B \neq 0$. The initial part of curve 2 , characterised by low $V_{CE}$, is called the saturation region. In this region, the transistor acts like a switch. The falt part of curve 2, indicated by increasing $V_{CE}$ and almost constant $I_C$, is the active region. In this region, transistor acts like an amplifier. Almost vertically rising curve is the breakdown region which must be avoided at all costs.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 2.5. (*a*) Output characteristics and load line for *npn* transistor and (*b*) electron flow in an *npn* transistor.

For load resistor $R_C$, Fig. 2.4 (*a*), the collector current $I_C$ is given by

$$I_C = \frac{V_{CC} - V_{CE}}{R_C} \qquad \text{...(2.6)}$$

This is the equation of load line. It is shown as line AB in Fig. 2.5 (*a*). A load line is the locus of all possible operating points. Ideally, when transistor is on, $V_{CE}$ is zero and $I_C = V_{CC}/R_C$. This collector current is shown by point *A* on the vertical axis. When the transistor is off, or in the cut-off region, $V_{CC}$ appears across collector-emitter terminals and there is no collector current. This value is indicated by point *B* on the horizontal axis. For the resistive load, the line joining points *A* and *B* is the load line.

**Relation between α and β.** Most of the electrons, proportional to $I_E$, given out by emitter, reach the collector as shown in Fig. 2.5 (*b*). In other words, collector current $I_C$, though less than emitter current $I_E$, is almost equal to $I_E$. A symbol α is used to indicate how close in value these two currents are. Here α, called *forward current gain*, is defined as

$$\alpha = \frac{I_C}{I_E}$$

As $I_C < I_E$, value of α varies from 0.95 to 0.99.

In a transistor, base current is effectively the input current and collector current is the output current. The ratio of collector (output) current $I_C$ to base (input) current $I_B$ is known as the *current gain* β.

$$\therefore \qquad \beta = \frac{I_C}{I_B} \qquad \text{...(2.7)}$$

As $I_B$ is much smaller, β is much more than unity ; its value varies from 50 to 300. In another system of analysis, called *h* parameters, $h_{FE}$ is used in place of β.

$$\therefore \qquad \beta = h_{FE} = \frac{I_C}{I_B}$$

Use of KCL in Fig. 2.4 (*a*) gives

$$I_E = I_C + I_B \qquad \text{...(2.8)}$$

Remember that emitter current is the largest of the three currents, collector current is almost equal to, but less than, emitter current. Base current has the least value. Dividing both sides of Eq. (2.8) by $I_C$, we get

$$\frac{I_E}{I_C} = 1 + \frac{I_B}{I_C}$$

$$\frac{1}{\alpha} = 1 + \frac{1}{\beta}$$

$$\text{or} \qquad \beta = \frac{\alpha}{1 - \alpha} \qquad \text{...(2.9)}$$

$$\text{and} \qquad \alpha = \frac{\beta}{\beta + 1} \qquad \text{...(2.10)}$$

**Transistor Switch.** Transistor operation as a switch means that transistor operates either in the saturation region or in the cut-off region and nowhere also on the load line. As an ideal switch, the transistor operates at point *A* in the saturated state as closed switch with $V_{CE} = 0$ and at point *B* in the cut-off state as an open switch with $I_C = 0$, Fig. 2.5 (*a*). In practice, the large base current will cause the transistor to work in the saturation region at point *A′* with small saturation voltage $V_{CES}$. Here subscript S is used to denote saturated value. Voltage $V_{CES}$ represents on-state voltage drop of the transistor which is of the order of about 1 V. When the control, or base, signal is reduced to zero, the transistor is turned off and its operation shifts to *B′* in the cut-off region, Fig. 2.5 (*a*). A small leakage current $I_{CEO}$ flows in the collector circuit when the transistor is off.

For Fig. 2.4 (*a*), KVL for the circuit consisting of $V_B$, $R_B$ and emitter gives

$$V_B - R_B I_B \cancel{=} - V_{BE} = 0$$

$$\text{or} \qquad I_B = \frac{V_B - V_{BE}}{R_B}$$

Also, from Fig. 2.4 (*a*), $V_{CC} = V_{CE} + I_C R_C$

$$\text{or} \qquad V_{CE} = V_{CC} - I_C R_C = V_{CC} - \beta I_B R_C$$

$$= V_{CC} - \frac{\beta R_C}{R_B}(V_B - V_{BE}) \qquad \text{...(2.11)}$$

Also $V_{CE} = V_{CB} + V_{BE}$

or $$V_{CB} = V_{CE} - V_{BE} \qquad ...(2.12)$$

If $V_{CES}$ is the collector-emitter saturation voltage, then collector current $I_{CS}$ is given by

$$I_{CS} = \frac{V_{CC} - V_{CES}}{R_C} \qquad ...(2.13)$$

and $$I_{BS} = \frac{I_{CS}}{\beta} \qquad ...(2.14)$$

where $I_{BS}$ is the base current that produces saturation.

If base current is less than $I_{BS,}$ the transistor operates in the active region, *i.e* . somewhere between the saturation and cut-off points. If base current is more than $I_{BS,}$ $V_{CES}$ is almost zero and collector current from Eq. (2.13) is given by $I_{CS} = V_{CC}/R_{C.}$ This shows that collector current at saturation remains substantially constant even if base current is increased.

With base current more than $I_{BS}$, *hard drive* of transistor is obtained. With hard saturation, $V_{CES}$ becomes low and on-state losses of transistor are reduced. Under hard-drive conditions, the ratio of $I_B$ and $I_{BS}$ is defined as the overdrive factor (ODF).

$$\therefore \qquad ODF = \frac{I_B}{I_{BS}} \qquad ...(2.15)$$

The ratio of $I_{CS}$ to $I_B$ is called *forced current gain* $\beta_f$ where

$$\beta_f = \frac{I_{CS}}{I_B} < \text{natural current gain } \beta \text{ or } h_{FE} \qquad ...(2.16)$$

The total power loss in the two junctions of a transistor is

$$P_T = V_{BE} I_B + V_{CE} I_C \qquad ...(2.17)$$

Under saturated state, $V_{BES}$ is greater than $V_{CES}$ and Eq. (2.12) shows that $V_{CB}$ is negative. It means both transistor junctions are forward biased under saturated condition.

**2.3.1.2. Transistor Switching Performance.** A transistor cannot be turned on instantly because of the presence of internal capacitances. Fig. 2.6 (*b*) shows switching waveforms of an *npn* transistor with resistive load between collector and emitter Fig. 2.6 (*a*). When base-emitter voltage $V_{BE}$ is applied, the base current rises to $I_{BS}$ ; the collector current, however, remains zero or equal to collector-emitter leakage current $I_{CEO}$ as shown. After some time delay $t_d$, called *delay time*, the collector current begins to rise. This delay is due to the time required to charge base-emitter capacitance to $V_{BES} = 0.7$ V. After this delay $t_d$, collector current rises to steady state value $I_{CS}$ in time $t_r$, which is known as *rise time*. This means that turn-on time for BJT is $t_{on} = t_d + t_r$. Rise time depends upon the input capacitances. During rise time $t_r$, collector-emitter voltage falls from $V_{CC}$ to $V_{CES}$. The transistor remains in the on and saturated state so long as forward base current is maintained.

When the base-emitter voltage $V_{BE}$ is removed at time $t_1$, the collector current does not change for a time $t_s$, called *storage time*. During $t_s$, saturating charge is removed from the base. After $t_s$, collector current begins to fall and at the same time, collector voltage starts building up. After times $t_f$, called *fall time*, $I_C$ decreases to $I_{CEO}$ (almost zero) and collector-emitter voltage rises to $V_{CC.}$ Sum of storage time and fall time gives the transistor turn-off time, *i.e.* $t_{off} = t_s + t_f$. The various waveforms during transistor switching are shown

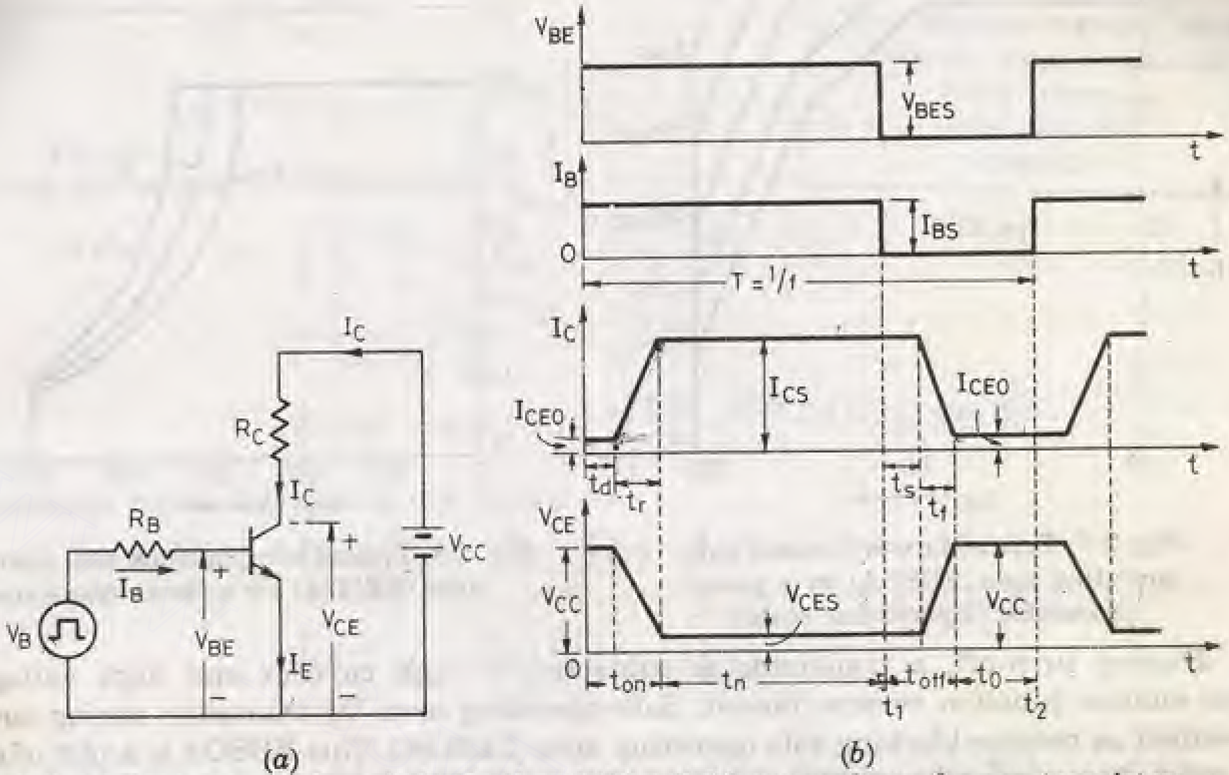


Fig. 2.6. (*a*) Transistor with resistive load and (*b*) switching waveforms for *npn* transistor.

in Fig. 2.6 (*b*). In this figure, $t_n =$ conduction period, $t_0 =$ off period and $T = 1/f$ is the periodic time.

**2.3.1.3. Safe Operating Area.** The safe operating area (SOA or SOAR) of a power transistor specifies the safe operating limits of collector current $I_C$ versus collector-emitter voltage $V_{CE}$. For reliable operation of the transistor, the collector current and voltage must always lie within this area. Actually, two types of safe operating areas are specified by the manufacturers, FBSOA and RBSOA.

The forward-base safe operating area (FBSOA) pertains to the transistor operation when base-emitter junction is forward biased to turn-on the transistor. For a power transistor, Fig. 2.7 shows typical FBSOA for its dc as well as single-pulse operation. The scale for $I_C$ and $V_{CE}$ are logarithmic. Boundary *AB* is the maximum limit for dc and continuous current for $V_{CE}$ less than about 80 V. For $V_{CE}$ for more than 80 V, collector current has to be reduced to boundary BC so as to limit the junction temperature to safe values. For still higher $V_{CE}$, current should further be reduced so as to avoid secondary breakdown limit. Boundary CD defines this secondary breakdown limit. Boundary DE gives the maximum voltage capability for this particular transistor.

For pulsed operation, power transistor can dissipate more peak power so long as average power loss is within safe limits of junction temperature. In Fig. 2.7 ; 5 ms, 500 μs etc. indicate pulse widths for which transistor is on. It is seen that FBSOA increases as pulse-width is decreased.

It should be noted that FBSOA curves, as given by the manufacturers, are for a case temperature of 25°C and for dc and single-pulse operation. In order to take into consideration the actual working temperature and repetitive nature of the pulses, these curves must be modified with the help of thermal impedance of the device.

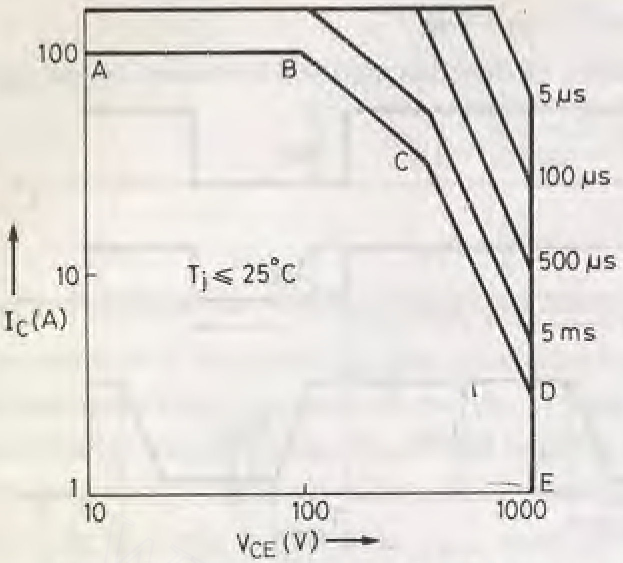


Fig. 2.7. Typical forward biased safe operating area (FBSOA) for a power transistor (logarithmic scale)

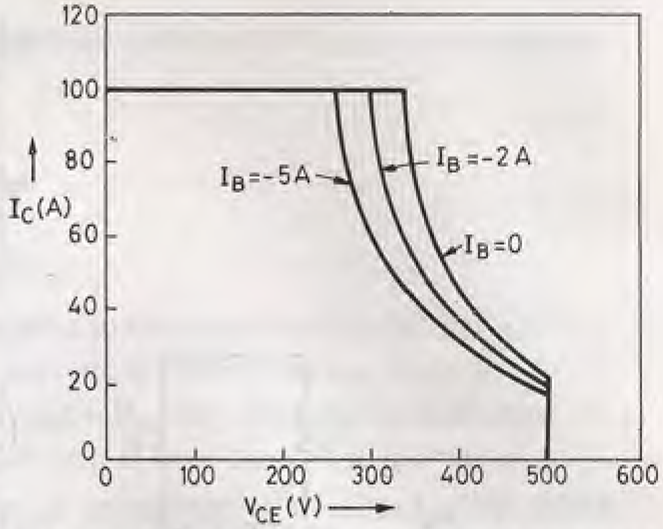


Fig. 2.8. Typical reverse-block safe operating area (RBSOA) for a power transistor.

During turn-off, a transistor is subjected to high current and high voltage with base-emitter junction reverse biased. Safe operating area for transistor during turn-off is specified as reverse blocking safe operating area (RBSOA). This RBSOA is a plot of collector current versus collector-emitter voltage as shown in Fig. 2.8. RBSOA specifies the limits of transistor operation at turn-off when the base current is zero or when the base-emitter junction is reverse biased (*i.e.* with base current negative). With increased reverse bias, area RBSOA decreases in size as shown in Fig. 2.8.

**Example 2.1.** *For a power transistor, typical switching waveforms are shown in Fig. 2.6. The various parameters of the transistor circuit are as under :*

$V_{CC} = 220$ V, $V_{CES} = 2$ V, $I_{CS} = 80$ A, $t_d = 0.4$ µs, $t_r = 1$ µs, $t_n = 50$ µs,

$t_s = 3$ µs, $t_f = 2$ µs, $t_o = 40$ µs, $f = 5$ kHz. Collector to emitter leakage current = 2 mA.

*Determine average power loss due to collector current during* $t_{on}$ and $t_n$. *Find also the peak instantaneous power loss due to collector current during turn-on time.*

**Solution.** During delay time, the time limits are $0 \le t \le t_d$. Fig. 2.6 (*b*) shows that in this time, $i_C(t) = I_{CEO}$ and $v_{CE}(t) = V_{CC}$.

∴ Instantaneous power loss during delay time is

$$P_d(t) = i_C \, v_{CE} = I_{CEO} \, V_{CC} = 2 \times 10^{-3} \times 220 = 0.44 \text{ W}$$

Average power loss during delay time with $0 \le t \le t_d$ is given by

$$P_d = \frac{1}{T}\int_0^{t_d} i_C(t) \cdot v_{CE}(t) \, dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{T}\int_0^{t_d} I_{CEO} \cdot V_{CC} \, dt = f \cdot I_{CEO} \cdot V_{CC} \cdot t_d$$

$$= 5 \times 10^3 \times 2 \times 10^{-3} \times 220 \times 0.4 \times 10^{-6} = 0.88 \text{ mW}$$

where $f = \dfrac{1}{T}$ = frequency of transistor switching

During rise time, $0 \le t \le t_r$,

የናዝሬት የቴክኒክ መምህራን ት/ኮሌጅ
Nazareth College of Technical
Teacher Education
ቤተ መጻሕፍት
LIBRARY

$$i_C(t) = \frac{I_{CS}}{t_r} \cdot t$$

and
$$v_{CE}(t) = \left[ V_{CC} - \frac{V_{CC} - V_{CES}}{t_r} \cdot t \right]$$

∴ Average power loss during rise time is

$$P_r = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^{t_r} \frac{I_{CS}}{t_r} \cdot t \left[ V_{CC} - \frac{V_{CC} - V_{CES}}{t_r} \cdot t \right] dt$$

$$= f \cdot I_{CS} \cdot t_r \left[ \frac{V_{CC}}{2} - \frac{V_{CC} - V_{CES}}{3} \right]$$

$$= 5 \times 10^3 \times 80 \times 1 \times 10^{-6} \left[ \frac{220}{2} - \frac{220 - 2}{3} \right] = 14.933 \text{ W}$$

Instantaneous power loss during rise time is

$$P_r(t) = \frac{I_{CS}}{t_r} \cdot t \left\{ V_{CC} - \frac{V_{CC} - V_{CES}}{t_r} \; t \right]$$

$$= \frac{I_{CS} \cdot t}{t_r} V_{CC} - \frac{I_{CS} \cdot t^2}{t_r^2} [V_{CC} - V_{CES}] \qquad \ldots(i)$$

$\frac{d P_r(t)}{dt} = 0$ gives time $t_m$ at which instantaneous power loss during $t_r$ would be maximum. It is seen from Eq. (*i*) that

$$t_m = \frac{V_{CC} \cdot t_r}{2 [V_{CC} - V_{CES}]} = \frac{220 \times 1 \times 10^{-6}}{2 [220 \times - 2]} = 0.5046 \,\mu\text{s}$$

Peak instantaneous power loss $P_{rm}$ during rise time is obtained by substituting the value of $t = t_m$ in Eq. (*i*).

$$\therefore \qquad P_{rm} = \frac{I_{CS}}{t_r} \cdot \frac{V_{CC}^2 \cdot t_r}{2 [V_{CC} - V_{CES}]} - \frac{I_{CS}}{t_r^2} \frac{(V_{CC} \cdot t_r)^2 [V_{CC} - V_{CES}]}{4 [V_{CC} - V_{CES}]^2}$$

$$= \frac{I_{CS} \cdot V_{CC}^2}{4 [V_{CC} - V_{CES}]} = \frac{80 \times 220^2}{4 [220 - 2]} = 4440.4 \text{ W}$$

Total average power loss during turn-on

$$P_{on} = P_d + P_r = 0.00088 + 14.933 = 14.9339 \text{ W}$$

During conduction time, $0 \le t \le t_n$

$$i_C(t) = I_{CS} \text{ and } V_{CE}(t) = V_{CES}$$

Instantaneous power loss during $t_n$ is

$$P_n(t) = i_C \;\; v_{CE} = I_{CS} \cdot V_{CES} = 80 \times 2 = 160 \text{ W}$$

Average power loss during conduction period is

$$P_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^{t_n} i_C \cdot v_{CE} \cdot dt = f I_{CS} \cdot V_{CES} \cdot t_n$$

$$= 5 \times 10^3 \times 80 \times 2 \times 50 \times 10^{-6} = 40 \text{ W.}$$

**Example 2.2.** *Repeat Example 2.1 for obtaining average power loss during turn-off time and off-period, and also peak instantaneous power loss during fall time due to collector current. Sketch the instantaneous power loss for period T as a function of time.*

**Solution.** During storage time, $0 \le t \le t_s$,

$$i_C(t) = I_{CS} \text{ and } v_{CE}(t) = V_{CES}$$

Instantaneous power loss during $t_s$ is

$$P_s(t) = i_C(t)\, v_{CE}(t)$$
$$= I_{CS} \cdot V_{CES} = 80 \times 2 = 160 \text{ W}$$

Average power loss during $t_s$ is

$$P_s = \frac{1}{T}\int_0^{t_s} I_{CS} \cdot V_{CES} \cdot dt = f \cdot I_{CE} \cdot V_{CES} \cdot t_s$$
$$= 5 \times 10^3 \times 80 \times 2 \times 3 \times 10^{-6} = 2.4 \text{ W}$$

During fall time, $0 \le t \le t_f$, $i_C(t) = \left[I_{CS} - \frac{I_{CS} - I_{CEO}}{t_f} \cdot t\right]$

During $t_f$, $I_{CEO}$ is negligibly small in comparison with $I_{CS}$,

$$\therefore \qquad i_C(t) = I_{CS}\left[1 - \frac{t}{t_f}\right]$$

and

$$v_{CE}(t) = \frac{V_{CC} - V_{CES}}{t_f} \cdot t$$

Average power loss during fall time is

$$P_f = \frac{1}{T}\int_0^{t_f} I_{CS}\left(1 - \frac{t}{t_f}\right)\left[\frac{V_{CC} - V_{CES}}{t_f} \cdot t\right] dt$$
$$= f\,(V_{CC} - V_{CES}) \cdot t_f \left[\frac{I_{CS}}{2} - \frac{I_{CS}}{3}\right]$$
$$= f \cdot t_f \cdot \frac{I_{CS}}{6}\,[V_{CC} - V_{CES}]$$
$$= 5 \times 10^3 \times 3 \times 10^{-6} \times 80 \times \frac{1}{6} \times (220 - 2) = 43.6 \text{ W}$$

Instantaneous power loss during fall time is

$$P_f(t) = I_{CS}\left[1 - \frac{t}{t_f}\right]\left[\frac{V_{CC} - V_{CES}}{t_f}\, t\right]$$
$$= \frac{I_{CS}\,(V_{CC} - V_{CES}) \cdot t}{t_f} - I_{CS}\,(V_{CC} - V_{CES})\,\frac{t^2}{t_f^2}$$

$\frac{dP_f(t)}{dt} = 0$ gives time $t_m$ at which instantaneous power loss during $t_r$ would be maximum. Here $t_m = t_f/2$.

$\therefore$ Peak instantaneous power dissipation during $t_f$ is

$$P_{fm} = I_{CS}\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{V_{CC} - V_{CES}}{2}\right) = \frac{I_{CS}\,(V_{CC} - V_{CES})}{4}$$

$$= \frac{80\,(220-2)}{4} = 4360 \text{ W}$$

Total average power loss during turn-off process is

$$P_{off} = P_s + P_f = 2.4 + 43.6 = 46 \text{ W}$$

During off-period, $0 \le t \le t_0$,

$$i_C(t) = I_{CEO} \text{ and } v_{CE}(t) = V_{CC}$$

Instantaneous power loss during $t_o$ is

$$P_0(t) = i_C \cdot v_{CE} = I_{CEO} \cdot V_{CC} = 2 \times 10^{-3} \times 220 = 0.44 \text{ W}$$

Average power loss during $t_o$ is

$$P_0 = \frac{1}{T}\int_0^{t_0} P_0(t)dt = f\,I_{CEO} \cdot V_{CC} \cdot t_0$$

$$= 5 \times 10^3 \times 2 \times 10^{-3} \times 220 \times 40 \times 10^{-6} = 0.088 \text{ W}$$

Total average power loss in power-transistor due to collector current over a period $T$ is

$$P_T = P_{on} + P_n + P_{off} + P_0 = 14.9339 + 40 + 46 + 0.088 = 101.022 \text{ W}.$$

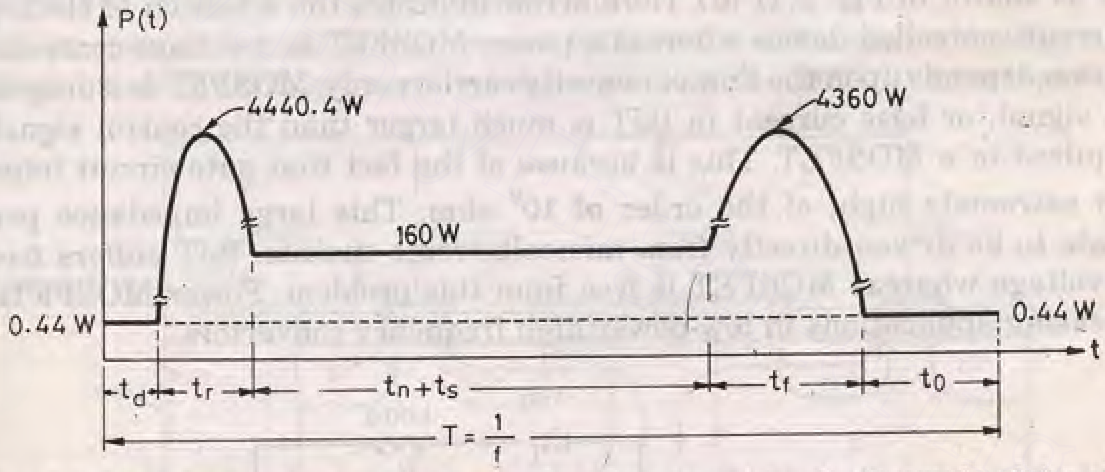


Fig. 2.9. Sketch of instantaneous power loss in a transistor for Examples 2.1 and 2.2.

From the data obtained in Examples 2.1 and 2.2, the power loss variation as a function of time, over a period $T$, is sketched in Fig. 2.9.

**Example 2.3.** *A power transistor has its switching waveforms as shown in Fig. 2.10. If the average power loss in the transistor is limited to 300 W, find the switching frequency at which this transistor can be operated.*

**Solution.**

Energy loss during turn-on

$$= \int_0^{t_{on}} i_C \cdot v_{CE}\, dt$$

$$= \int_0^{t_{on}} \left(\frac{I_{CS}}{50} \times 10^6\, t\right)\left(V_{CC} - \frac{V_{CC}}{40} \times 10^6\, t\right) dt$$

$$= \int_0^{t_{on}} (2 \times 10^6 t)\,(200 - 5 \times 10^6 t)\, dt$$

$$= 0.1067 \text{ watt–sec}$$

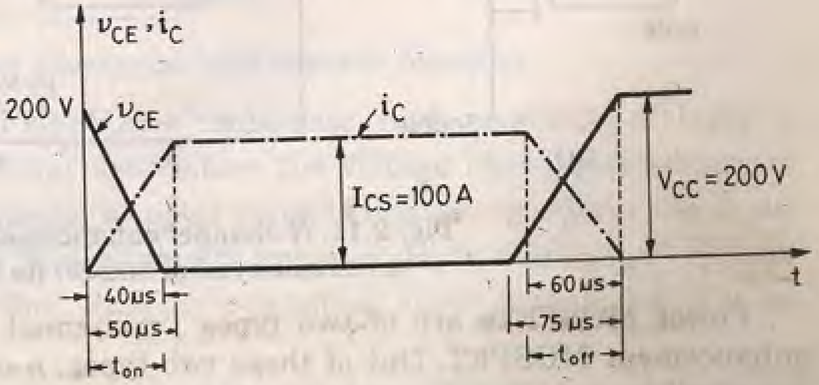


Fig. 2.10. Switching waveform for Example 2.3.

$$\text{Energy loss during turn-off} = \int_0^{t_{off}} \left(100 - \frac{100}{60} \times 10^6\, t\right)\left(\frac{200}{75} \times 10^6\, t\right) dt$$

$$= 0.1603 \text{ watt–sec}$$

Total energy loss in one cycle

$$= 0.1067 + 0.1603 = 0.267 \text{ W–sec}$$

Average power loss in transistor

$$= \text{switching frequency} \times \text{energy loss in one cycle}$$

∴ Allowable switching frequency,

$$f = \frac{300}{0.267} = 1123.6 \text{ Hz}$$

## 2.4. POWER MOSFETs

A metal-oxide-semiconductor field-effect transistor (MOSFET) is a recent device developed by combining the areas of field-effect concept and MOS technology.

A power MOSFET has three terminals called drain, source and gate in place of the corresponding three terminals collector, emitter and base for BJT. The circuit symbol of power MOSFET is as shown in Fig. 2.11 (*a*). Here arrow indicates the direction of electron flow. A BJT is a current controlled device whereas a power MOSFET is a voltage-controlled device. As its operation depends upon the flow of majority carriers only, MOSFET is a unipolar device. The control signal, or base current in BJT is much larger than the control signal (or gate current) required in a MOSFET. This is because of the fact that gate circuit impedance in MOSFET is extremely high, of the order of $10^9$ ohm. This large impedance permits the MOSFET gate to be driven directly from microelectronic circuits. BJT suffers from second breakdown voltage whereas MOSFET is free from this problem. Power MOSFETs are now finding increasing applications in low-power high frequency converters.

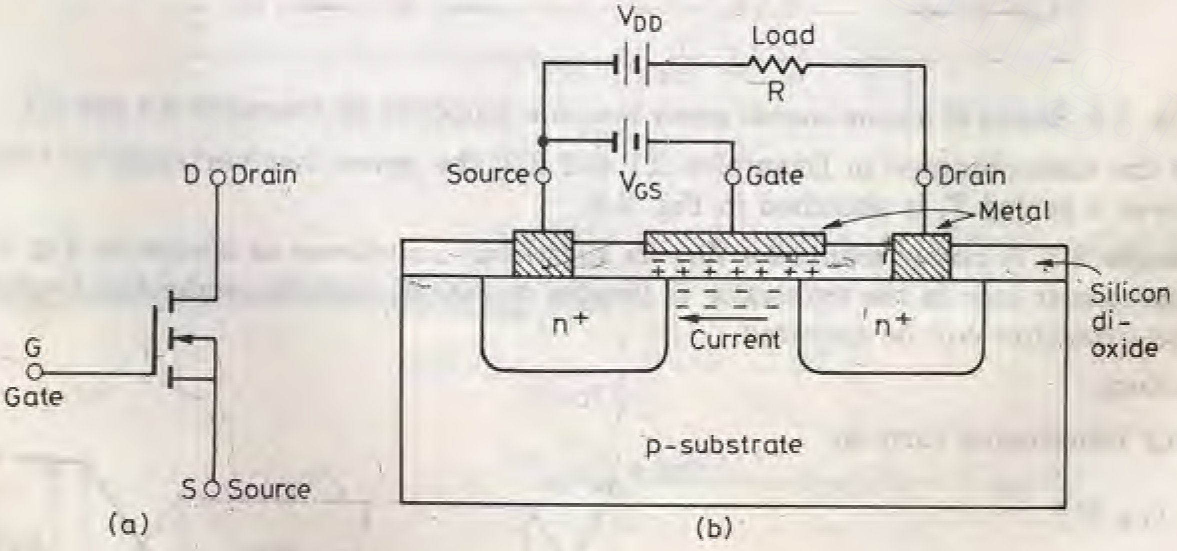


Fig. 2.11. *N*-channel enhancement power MOSFET
(*a*) circuit symbol and (*b*) its basic structure.

Power MOSFETs are of two types ; *n*-channel enhancement MOSFET and *p*-channel enhancement MOSFET. Out of these two types, *n*-channel enhancement MOSFET is more common because of higher mobility of electrons. As such, only this type of MOSFET is studied in what follows.

A simplified structure of $n$-channel planar MOSFET of low power rating is shown in Fig. 2.11 (*b*). On $p$-substrate (or body), two heavily doped $n^+$ regions are diffused as shown. An insulating layer of silicon dioxide ($SiO_2$) is grown on the surface. Now this insulating layer is etched in order to embed metallic source and drain terminals. Note that $n^+$ regions make contact with source and drain terminals as shown. A layer of metal is also deposited on $SiO_2$ layer so as to form the gate of MOSFET.

When gate circuit is open, no current flows from drain to source and load because of one reverse-biased $n^+$–$p$ junction. When gate is made positive with respect to source, an electric field is established as shown in Fig. 2.11 (*b*). Eventually, induced negative charges in the $p$-substrate below $SiO_2$ layer are formed. These negative charges, called electrons, form $n$-channel and current can flow from drain to source as shown by the arrow. If $V_{GS}$ is made more positive, $n$-channel becomes more deep and therefore more current flows from $D$ to $S$. This shows that drain current $I_D$ is enhanced by the gradual increase of gate voltage, hence the name enhancement MOSFET.

The main disadvantage of $n$-channel planar MOSFET of Fig. 2.11 (*b*) is that conducting $n$-channel in between drain and source gives large on-state resistance. This leads to high power dissipation in $n$-channel. This shows that planar MOSFET construction of Fig. 2.11 (*b*) is feasible only for low-power MOSFETs.

The constructional details of high power MOSFET are illustrated in Fig. 2.12. In this figure is shown a planar diffused metal-oxide-semiconductor (DMOS) structure for $n$-channel which is quite common for power MOSFETs. On $n^+$ substrate, high resistivity $n^-$ layer is epitaxially* grown. The thickness of $n^-$ layer determines the voltage blocking capability of the device. On the other side of $n^+$ substrate, a metal layer is deposited to form the drain terminal. Now $p^-$ regions are diffused in the epitaxially grown $n^-$ layer. Further, $n^+$ regions are diffused in $p^-$ regions as shown. As before, $SiO_2$ layer is added, which is then etched so as

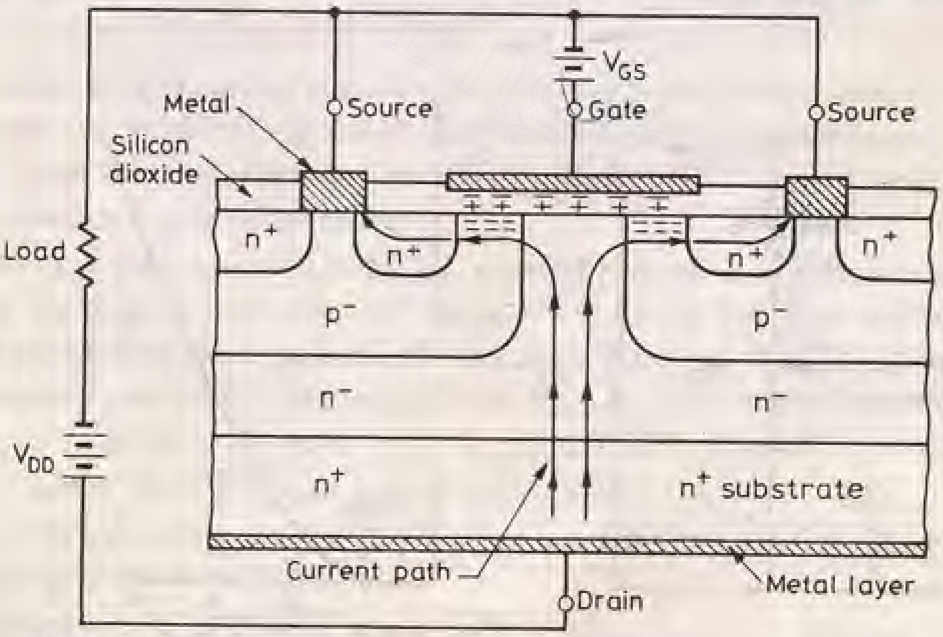


Fig. 2.12. Basic structure of a $n$-channel DMOS power MOSFET.

---

[*] A mixture of silicon atoms and pentavalent atoms, deposited on wafer, forms a layer of $n$-type semiconductor on heated surface. This layer is called expitaxial layer.

to fit metallic source and gate terminals. A power MOSFET actually consists of a parallel connection of thousands of basic MOSFET cells on the same single chip of silicon.

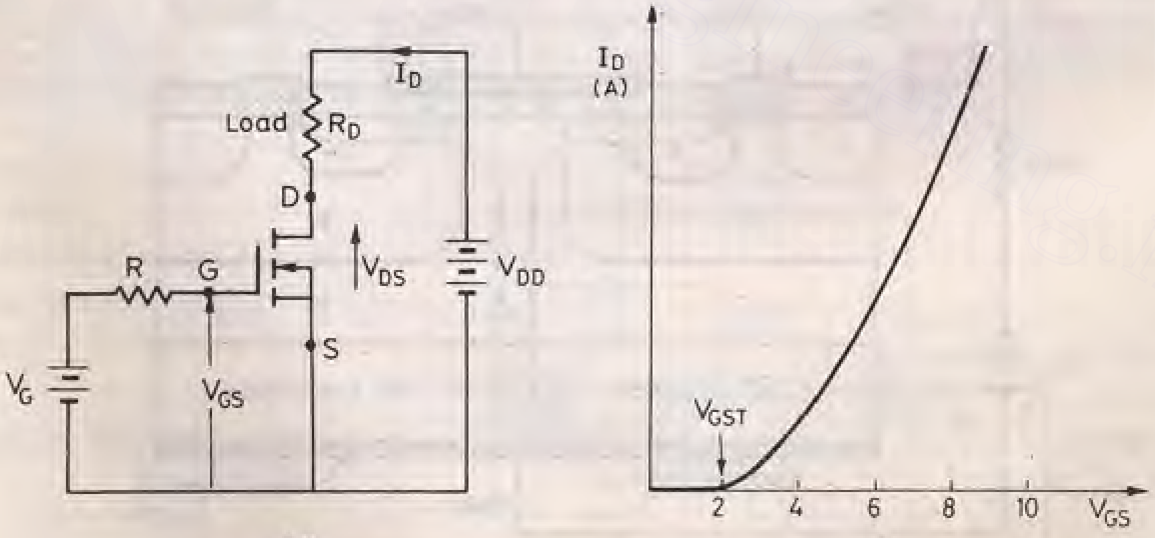
When gate circuit voltage is zero, and $V_{DD}$ is present, $n^{-} - p^{-}$ junctions are reverse biased and no current flows from drain to source. When gate terminal is made positive with respect to source, an electric field is established and electrons form $n$-channel in the $p^{-}$ regions as shown. So a current from drain to source is established as indicated by arrows. With gate voltage increased current $I_D$ also increases as expected. Length of $n$-channel can be controlled and therefore on-resistance can be made low if short length is used for the channel.

Power MOSFET conduction is due to majority carriers, therefore, time delays caused by removal or recombination of minority carriers are eliminated. Thus, power MOSFET can work at switching frequencies in the megahertz range.

### 2.4.1. MOSFET Characteristics

The static characteristics of power MOSFET are now described briefly. The basic circuit diagram for $n$-channel power MOSFET is shown in Fig. 2.13 ($a$) where voltages and currents are as indicated.

($a$) **Transfer characteristics.** This characteristic shows the variation of drain current $I_D$ as a function of gate-source voltage $V_{GS}$. Fig. 2.13 ($b$) shows typical transfer characteristic for $n$-channel power MOSFET. It is seen that there is threshold voltage $V_{GST}$ below which the device is off. The magnitude of $V_{GST}$ is of the order of 2 to 3 V.



($a$) ($b$)

Fig. 2.13. ($a$) $N$-channel power MOSFET circuit diagram and ($b$) its typical transfer characteristic.

($b$) **Output characteristics.** Power MOSFET output characteristics shown in Fig. 2.14 indicate the variation of drain current $I_D$ as a function of drain-source voltage $V_{GS}$ as a parameter. For low values of $V_{DS,}$ the graph between $I_D - V_{DS}$ is almost linear ; this indicates a constant value of on-resistance $R_{DS} = V_{DS}/I_D$. For given $V_{GS}$, if $V_{DS}$ is increased, output characteristic is relatively flat indicating that drain current is nearly constant. A load line intersects the output characteristics at $A$ and $B$. Here $A$ indicates fully-on condition and B fully-off state. Power MOSFET operates as a switch either at $A$ or at $B$ just like a BJT.

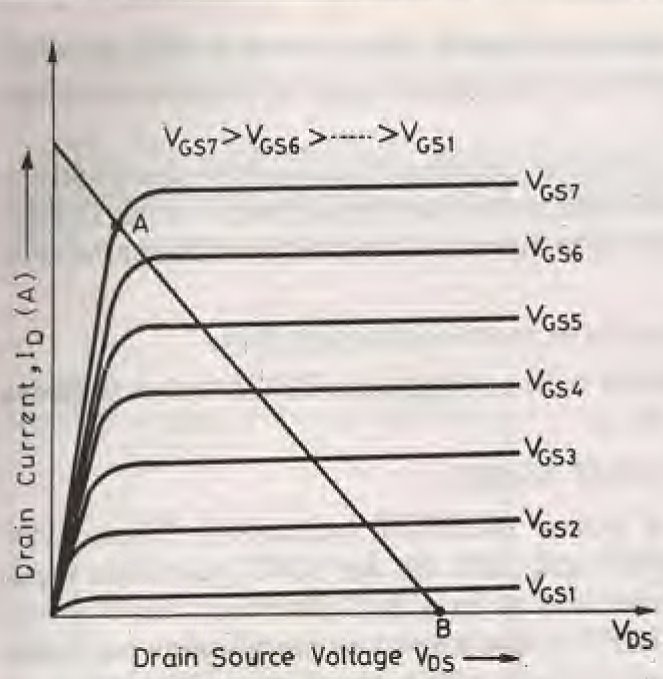


Fig. 2.14. Output characteristics of a power MOSFET.

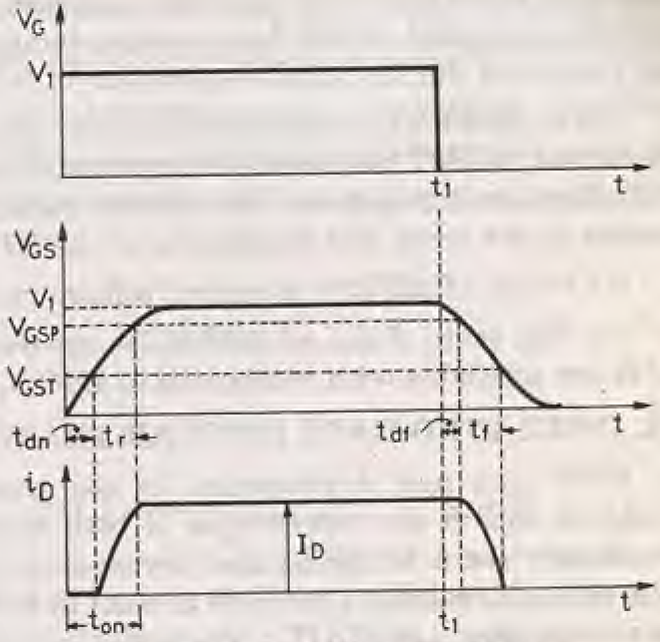


Fig. 2.15. Switching waveforms for power MOSFET.

(*c*) **Switching characteristics.** The switching characteristics of a power MOSFET are influenced to a large extent by the internal capacitance of the device and the internal impedance of the gate drive circuit. At turn-on, there is an initial delay $t_{dn}$ during which input capacitance charges to gate threshold voltage $V_{GST}$. Here $t_{dn}$ is called *turn-on delay* time.

There is further delay $t_r$, called *rise time*, during which gate voltage rises to $V_{GSP}$, a voltage sufficient to drive the MOSFET into on state. During $t_r$, drain current rises from zero to full on current $I_D$. Thus, the total turn-on time is $t_{on} = t_{dn} + t_r$. The turn-on time can be reduced by using low-impedance gate drive source.

As MOSFET is a majority carrier device, turn-off process is initiated soon after removal of gate voltage at time $t_1$. The turn-off delay time, $t_{df}$, is the time during which input capacitance discharges from overdrive gate voltage $V_1$ to $V_{GSP}$. The *fall time*, $t_f$ is the time during which input capacitance discharges from $V_{GSP}$ to threshold voltage. During $t_f$, drain current falls from $I_D$ to zero. So when $V_{GS} \le V_{GST}$, MOSFET turn-off is complete. Switching waveforms for a power MOSFET are shown in Fig. 2.15.

Power MOSFETs are very popular in switched mode power supplies. They are, at present, available with 500 V, 140 A ratings.

### 2.4.2. Comparison of MOSFET with BJT

Power MOSFET has several features different from those of BJT. These are outlined as under :

(*i*) Power MOSFET has lower switching losses but its on-resistance and conduction losses are more. A BJT has higher switching losses but lower conduction loss. So at high frequency applications, power MOSFET is the obvious choice. But at lower operating frequencies (less than about 10 to 30 kHz), BJT is superior.

(*ii*) MOSFET is voltage controlled device whereas BJT is current controlled device.

(*iii*) MOSFET has positive temperature coefficient for resistance. This makes parallel operation of MOSFETs easy. If a MOSFET shares increased current initially, it heats up faster, its resistance rises and this increased resistance causes this current to shift to other devices in parallel. A BJT has negative temperature coefficient, so current-sharing resistors are necessary during parallel operation of BJTs.

(*iv*) In MOSFET, secondary breakdown does not occur, because it has positive temperature coefficient. As BJT has negative temperature coefficient, secondary breakdown occurs. In BJT, with decrease in resistance, the current increases. This increased current over the same area results in hot spots and breakdown of the BJT.

(*v*) Power MOSFETs in higher voltage ratings have more conduction loss.

(*vi*) The state of the art MOSFETs are available with ratings upto 500 V, 140 A whereas BJTs are available with ratings up to 1200 V, 800 A.

## 2.5. INSULATED GATE BIPOLAR TRANSISTOR (IGBT)

IGBT is a new development in the area of power MOSFET technology. This device combines into it the advantages of both MOSFET and BJT. So an IGBT has high input impedance like a MOSFET and low-on-state power loss as in a BJT. Further, IGBT is free from second breakdown problem present in BJT. IGBT is also known as metal-oxide insulated gate transistor (MOSIGT), conductively-modulated field effect transistor (COMFET) or gain-modulated FET (GEMFET). It was also initially called insulated gate transistor (IGT).

### 2.5.1. Basic Structure and Working

Fig. 2.16 illustrates the basic structure of an IGBT. It is constructed virtually in the same manner as a power MOSFET. There is, however ; a major difference in the substrate. The $n^+$ layer substrate at the drain in a power MOSFET is now substituted in the IGBT by a $p^+$ layer substrate called collector. Like a power MOSFET, an IGBT has also thousands of basic structure cells connected appropriately on a single chip of silicon.

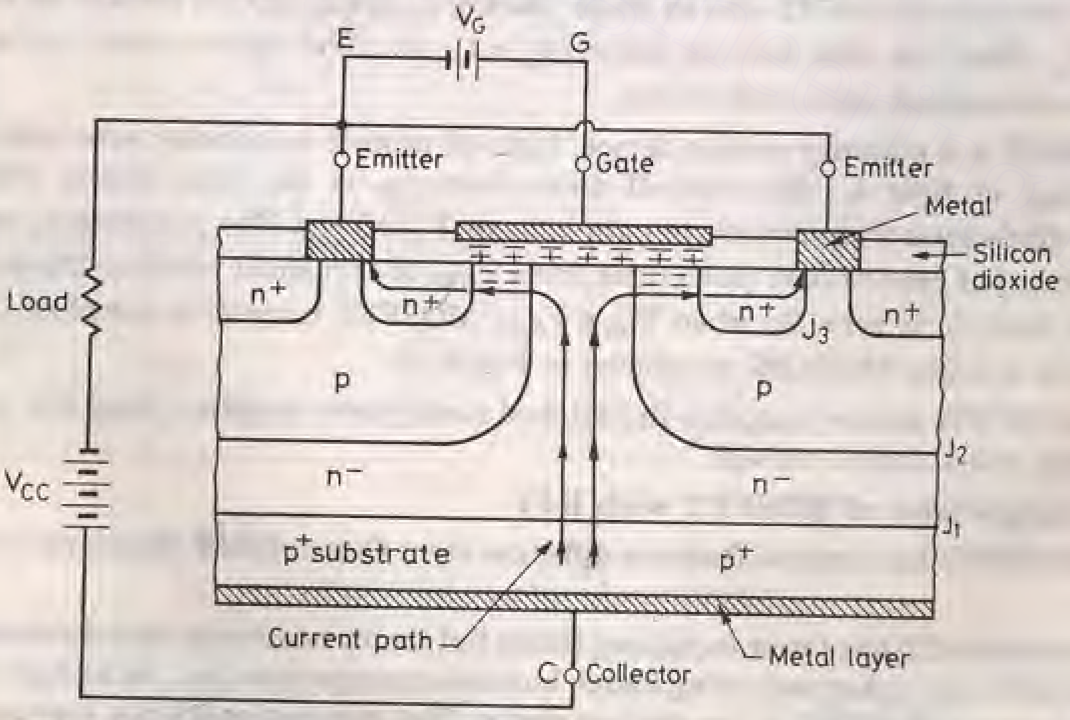
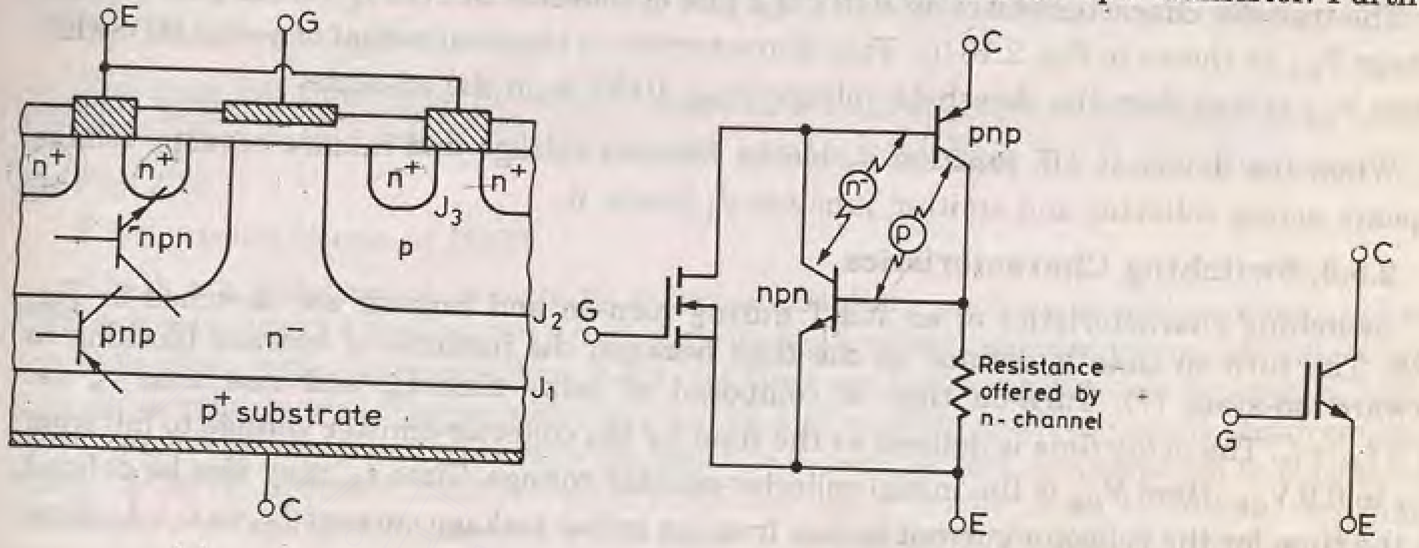


Fig. 2.16. Basic structure of an insulated gate bipolar transistor (IGBT).

When gate is positive with respect to emitter and with gate-emitter voltage more than the threshold voltage of IGBT, an *n*-channel is formed in the *p*-regions as in a power MOSFET, Fig. 2.16. This *n*-channel short circuits the $n^-$ region with $n^+$ emitter regions. An electron movement in the $n$-channel, in turn, causes substantial hole injection from $p^+$ substrate layer into the epitaxial $n^-$ layer. Eventually, a forward current is established as shown in Fig. 2.16.

The three layers $p^+$, $n^-$ and $p$ constitute a *pnp* transistor with $p^+$ as emitter, $n^-$ as base and $p$ as collector. Also $n^-$, $p$ and $n^+$ layers constitute *npn* transistor as shown in Fig. 2.17 (*a*). Here $n^-$ serves as base for *pnp* transistor and also as collector for *npn* transistor. Further, $p$ serves as collector for *pnp* device and also as base for *npn* transistor. The two *pnp* and *npn* transistors can, therefore, be connected as shown in Fig. 2.17 (*b*) to give the equivalent circuit of an IGBT. Fig. 2.17 (*c*) is the circuit symbol for IGBT with gate (*G*), emitter (*E*) and collector (*C*) as its three terminals.

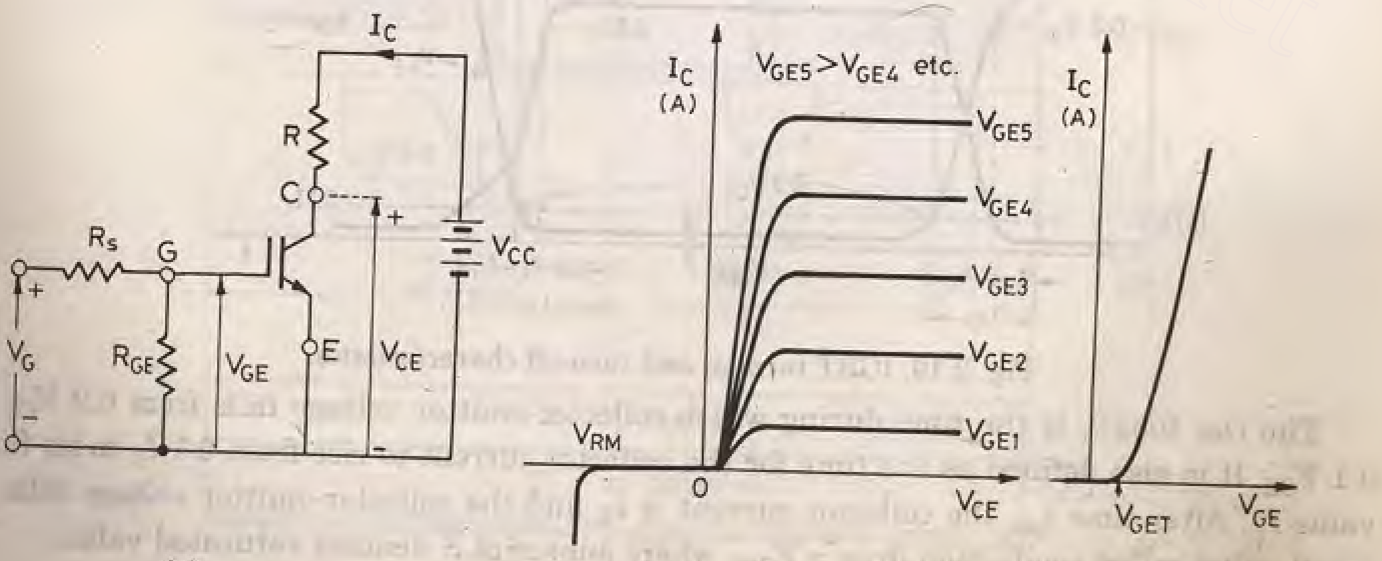


(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 2.17. IGBT (*a*) Basic structure, (*b*) its equivalent circuit and (*c*) its circuit symbol.

### 2.5.2. IGBT Characteristics

The circuit of Fig. 2.18 (*a*) shows the various parameters pertaining to IGBT characteristics.



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 2.18. IGBT (*a*) circuit diagram, (*b*) static *V-I* characteristics and (*c*) transfer characteristics.

Static *V-I* or output characteristics of an IGBT (*n*-channel type) show the plot of collector current $I_C$ versus collector-emitter voltage $V_{CE}$ for various values of gate-emitter voltages. These characteristics are shown in Fig. 2.18 (*b*). In the forward direction, the shape of the output characteristics is similar to that of BJT. But here the controlling parameter is gate-emitter voltage $V_{GE}$ because IGBT is a voltage-controlled device.

The transfer characteristic of an IGBT is a plot of collector current $I_C$ versus gate-emitter voltage $V_{GE}$ as shown in Fig. 2.18 (*c*). This characteristic is identical to that of power MOSFET. When $V_{GE}$ is less than the threshold voltage $V_{GET}$, IGBT is in the off-state.

When the device is off, junction $J_2$ blocks forward voltage and in case reverse voltage appears across collector and emitter, junction $J_1$ blocks it.

### 2.5.3. Switching Characteristics

Switching characteristics of an IGBT during turn-on and turn-off are sketched in Fig. 2.19. The turn-on time is defined as the time between the instants of forward blocking to forward on-state (7). Turn-on time is composed of delay time $t_{dn}$ and rise time $t_r$, *i.e.* $t_{on} = t_{dn} + t_r$. The *delay time* is defined as the time for the collector-emitter voltage to fall from $V_{CE}$ to 0.9 $V_{CE}$. Here $V_{CE}$ is the initial collector-emitter voltage. Time $t_{dn}$ may also be defined as the time for the collector current to rise from its initial leakage current $I_{CE}$ to 0.1 $I_C$. Here $I_C$ is the final value of collector current.

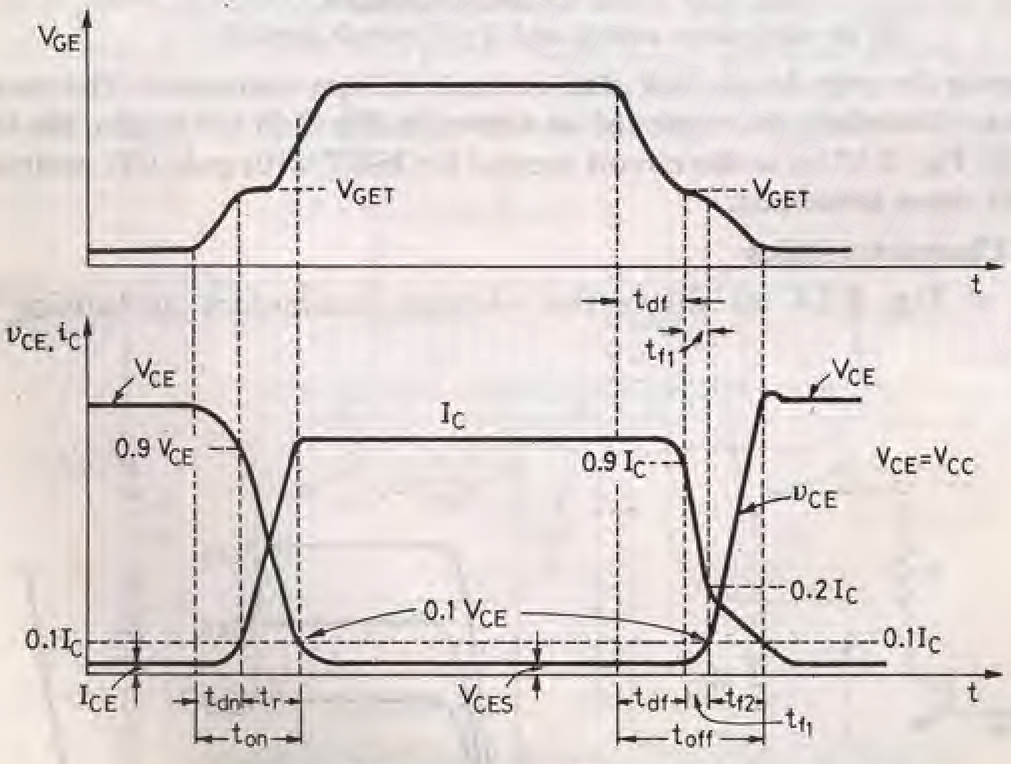


Fig. 2.19. IGBT turn-on and turn-off characteristics.

The *rise time* $t_r$ is the time during which collector-emitter voltage falls from 0.9 $V_{CE}$ to 0.1 $V_{CE}$. It is also defined as the time for the collector current to rise from 0.1 $I_C$ to its final value $I_C$. After time $t_{on}$, the collector current is $I_C$ and the collector-emitter voltage falls to small value called conduction drop = $V_{CES}$ where subscript *S* denotes saturated value.

The turn-off time is somewhat complex. It consists of three intervals : (*i*) delay time, $t_{df}$ (*ii*) initial fall time, $t_{f1}$ and (*iii*) final fall time, $t_{f2}$ ; *i.e.* $t_{off} = t_{df} + t_{f1} + t_{f2}$.The delay time is the time during which gate voltage falls from $V_{GE}$ to threshold voltage $V_{GET}$. As $V_{GE}$ falls to $V_{GET}$ during $t_{df}$, the collector current falls from $I_C$ to 0.9 $I_C$. At the end of $t_{df}$, collector-emitter voltage begins to rise. The first fall time $t_{f1}$ is defined as the time during which collector current falls from 90 to 20% of its initial value $I_C$, or the time during which collector-emitter voltage rises from $V_{CES}$ to 0.1 $V_{CE}$.

The final fall time $t_{f2}$ is the time during which collector current falls from 20 to 10% of $I_C$, or the time during which collector-emitter voltage rises from 0.1 $V_{CE}$ to final value $V_{CE}$, see Fig. 2.19.

### 2.5.4. Applications of IGBT

IGBTs are widely used in medium power applications such as dc and ac motor drives, UPS systems, power supplies and drives for solenoids, relays and contactors. Though IGBTs are somewhat more expensive than BJTs, yet they are becoming popular because of lower gate-drive requirements, lower switching losses and smaller snubber circuit requirements. IGBT converters are more efficient with less size as well as cost, as compared to converters based on BJTs. Recently, IGBT inverter induction-motor drives using 15-20 kHz switching frequency are finding favour where audio-noise is objectionable. In most applications, IGBTs will eventually push out BJTs. At present, the state of the art IGBTs are available upto 1200 V, 500 A.

## 2.6. MOS-CONTROLLED THYRISTOR (MCT)

An MCT is a new device in the field of semiconductor-controlled devices. It is basically a thyristor with two MOSFETs built into the gate structure. One MOSFET is used for turning on the MCT and the other for turning off the device. An MCT is a high-frequency, high-power, low-conduction drop switching device.

An MCT combines into it the features of both conventional four-layer thyristor having regenerative action and MOS-gate structure. However, in MCT, anode is the reference with

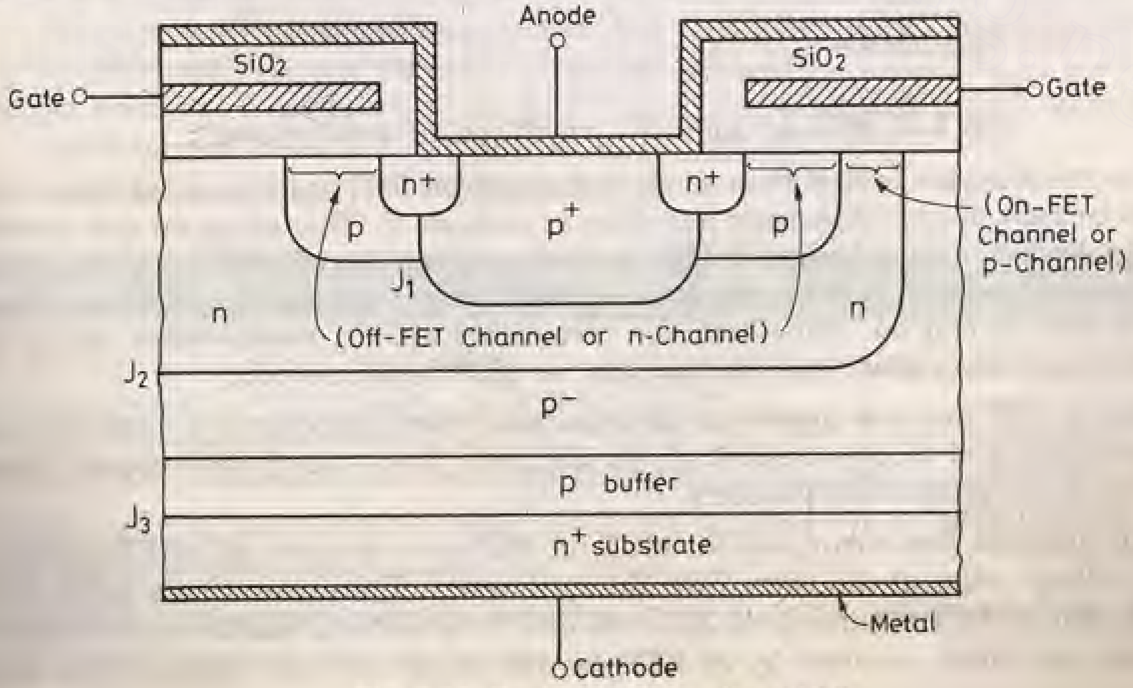


Fig. 2.20. Basic structure of an MCT.

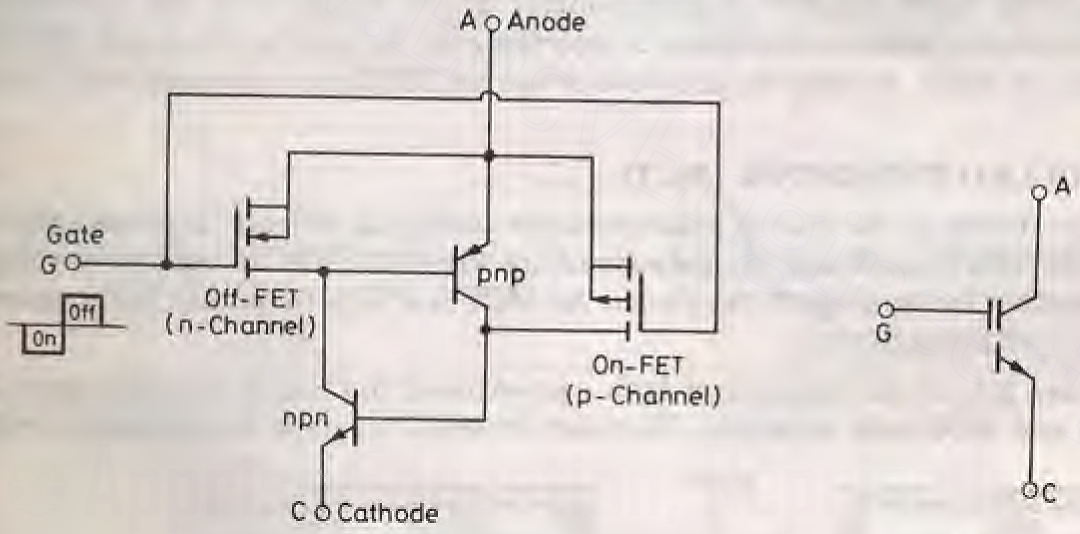
respect to which all gate signals are applied. In a conventional SCR, cathode is the reference terminal for gate signals.

The basic structure of an MCT is shown in Fig. 2.20. A practical MCT consists of thousands of these basic cells connected in parallel, just like a power MOSFET (7, 8). This is done in order to achieve a high-current carrying capacity of the device.

The equivalent circuit of MCT is shown in Fig. 2.21 (*a*). It consists of one on-FET, one off-FET and two transistors. The on-FET is a *p*-channel MOSFET and off-FET is an *n*-channel MOSFET. An arrow towards the gate terminal indicates *n*-channel MOSFET and the arrow away from the gate terminal as the *p*-channel MOSFET. The two transistors in the equivalent circuit indicate that there is regenerative feedback in the MCT just as it is in an ordinary thyristor. Fig. 2.21 (*b*) gives the circuit symbol of an MCT.

An MCT is turned-on by a negative voltage pulse at the gate with respect to the anode and is turned-off by a positive voltage pulse. Working of MCT can be understood better by referring to Fig. 2.21 (*a*).

**Turn-on process**. As stated above, MCT is turned on by applying a negative voltage pulse at the gate with respect to anode. In other words, for turning on MCT, gate is made negative with respect to anode by the voltage pulse between gate and anode. With the application of this negative voltage pulse, on-FET gets turned-on and off-FET is off. With on-FET on, current begins to flow from anode *A*, through on-FET and then as the base current and emitter current of *npn* transistor and then to cathode C. This turns on *npn* transistor. As a result, collector current begins to flow in *npn* transistor. As off-FET is off, this collector current of *npn* transistor acts as the base current of *pnp* transistor. Subsequently, *pnp* transistor is also turned on. Once both the transistors are on, regenerative action of the connection scheme takes place and the thyristor or MCT is turned on.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 2.21. MCT (*a*) equivalent circuit and (*b*) circuit symbol.

Note that on-FET and *pnp* transistor are in parallel when thyristor is in conduction state. During the time MCT is on, base current of *npn* transistor flows mainly through *pnp* transistor because of its better conducting property.

**Turn-off process**. For turning-off the MCT, off-FET (or *n* -channel MOSFET) is energized by positive voltage pulse at the gate. With the application of positive voltage pulse, off-FET is turned on and on-FET is turned off. After off-FET is turned on, emitter-base terminals of *pnp* transistor are short circuited by off-FET. So now anode current begins to flow through off-FET and therefore base current of *pnp* transistor begins to decrease. Further, collector current of *pnp* transistor that forms the base current of *npn* transistor also begins to decrease. As a consequence, base currents of both *pnp* and *npn* transistors, now devoid of stored charge in their *n* and *p* bases respectively, begin to decay. This regenerative action eventually turns off the MCT.

An MCT has the following merits :

(*i*) Low forward conduction drop,
(*ii*) fast turn-on and turn-off times,
(*iii*) low switching losses and
(*iv*) high gate input impedance, which allows simpler design of drive circuits.

An MCT is a brand-new device which is likely to be available commercially very soon. As it possesses highly adaptable features for its use as a switching device, it seems to have tremendous scope for its widespread applications. Its potential applications include dc and ac motor drives, UPS systems, induction heating, dc-dc converters, power line conditioners etc. It may, in the near future, challenge the existence of most of the available devices like thyristors, GTOs, BJTs, IGBTs (7).

## 2.7. NEW SEMICONDUCTING MATERIALS

At present, silicon enjoys monopoly as a semiconductor material for the commercial production of power-control devices. This is because silicon is cheaply available and semiconductor devices of any size can be easily fabricated on a single silicon chip. There are, however, new types of materials like gallium assenic (GaAs), silicon carbide and diamond which possess the desirable properties required for switching devices. At present, state-of-the-art technology for these materials is primitive compared with silicon, and many more years of research investment are required before these materials become commercially viable for the production of power-contolled devices. Superconductive materials may also be used in the manufacture of such devices, but work in this direction has not yet been reported.

Germanium is not used in the fabrication of thyristors because of the following reasons:

(*i*) Germanium has much lower thermal conductivity ; its thermal resistance is, therefore, more. As a consequence, germanium thyristors suffer from more losses, more temperature rise and therefore lower operating life.
(*ii*) Its breakdown voltage is much less than that of silicon. It means that germanium thyristor can be built for small voltage ratings only.
(*iii*) Germanium is much costlier than silicon.

## PROBLEMS

**2.1.** (*a*) What is a diode ? Give the difference between power and signal diodes. (*b*) Discuss the differences between *p-n* junction diodes and Schottky diodes.

(*c*) Describe reverse recovery characteristics of diodes. Show that reverse recovery time and peak inverse current are dependent upon storage charge and rate of change of current.

**2.2** (*a*) Describe the various types of power diodes indicating clearly the differences amongst them.

(*b*) Discuss static V-I characteristic of a power diode.

**2.3.** (*a*) What is cut-in voltage in a diode ? What are other terms used for cut-in voltage ?

(*b*) Discuss the following terms for diodes :

Softness factor, PIV, reverse recovery time, reverse recovery current.

(*c*) For a power diode, the reverse recovery time is 3.9 μs and the rate of diode-current decay is 50 $A/\mu s$. For a softness factor of 0.3, calculate the peak inverse current and storage charge.

[**Ans.** (*c*) 150 A, 292.5 μc]

**2.4.** (*a*) Discuss the power loss in a diode during the reverse recovery transients.

(*b*) The forward characteristic of a power diode can be represented by $v_f = 0.88 + 0.015\, i_f$. Determine the average power loss and rms current for a constant current of 50 A for 2/3 of a cycle.

$\left[\textbf{Hint.}\ (b) \text{ With } T \text{ as the time of a cycle, average power loss} = \dfrac{1}{T}\displaystyle\int_0^{2T/3} v_f \cdot I_f\, dt \text{ etc}\right]$

[**Ans.** (*b*) 54.33 W, 40.825 A]

**2.5.** (*a*) Enumerate the types of power transistors along with their circuit symbols.

(*b*) What is a bipolar junction transistor ? Why is it so called ?

Describe the types of BJTs with their circuit symbols

(*c*) Define α and β for BJT and develop a relation between the two. Why is α less than 1 and β more than 1 ?

(*d*) Why is it preferrable to use hard drive for BJT ?

**2.6.** (*a*) What is the difference between β and forced $\beta_f$ for BJTs ?

(*b*) What are the conditions under which a transistor operates as a switch ?

Discuss hard-drive and overdrive factor for BJT.

(*c*) Show that collector current at saturation remains substantially constant even if base current is increased.

**2.7.** (*a*) Explain the switching performance of BJT with relevant waveforms. Indicate clearly turn-on and turn-off times and their components.

(*b*) Describe FBSOA and RBSOA for BJTs.

**2.8.** (*a*) Describe the input and output characteristic for a BJT. Show the region of the transistor characteristic where it acts like a switch.

(*b*) Typical switching waveforms for a power transistor are shown in Fig. 2.22. Show that switch-on energy loss is given by

$$\frac{V_{CC} \cdot I_{CS}}{6}\, t_{on}$$

Also obtain an expression for the average value of switch-on loss.

(*c*) Derive expressions for the switch-off energy loss and also for its average value for the waveforms shown in Fig. 2.22.

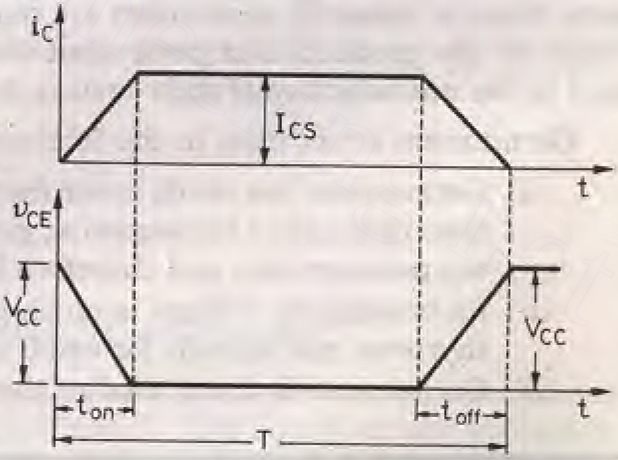


Fig. 2.22. Pertaining to Prob. 2.8 (*b*).

$\left[\textbf{Ans}\ (b)\ \dfrac{V_{CC} \cdot I_{CS}}{6} f \cdot t_{on}\ \ (c)\ \dfrac{V_{CC} \cdot I_{CS}}{6} t_{off},\ \dfrac{V_{CC} \cdot I_{CS}}{6} f \cdot t_{off}\right]$

**2.9.** In case $I_{CS} = 80$ A, $V_{CC} = 220$ V, $t_{on} = 1.5$ μs and $t_{off} = 4$ μs for the switching waveforms shown in Fig. 2.22, find the energy loss during switch-on and switch-off intervals. Find also the average power loss in the power transistor for a switching frequency of 2 kHz.

Derive the expressions used. [**Ans** 4.4 mWs, 11.73 mWs, 32.267 W]

**2.10.** (*a*) For the typical switching waveforms shown in Fig. 2.22 for a power transistor, find expressions that give peak instantaneous power loss during $t_{on}$ and $t_{off}$ intervals respectively.

(*b*) In case $I_{CS} = 80$ A, $V_{CC} = 220$ V, $t_{on} = 1.5$ μs and $t_{off} = 4$ μs, find the peak value of instantaneous power loss during $t_{on}$ and $t_{off}$ intervals respectively.

[**Ans.** (*a*) $\frac{I_{CS} \cdot V_{CC}}{4}$, $\frac{I_{CS} \cdot V_{CC}}{4}$ (*b*) 4400 W, 4400 W]

**2.11.** A power transistor is used as a switch and typical waveforms are shown in Fig. 2.6. The parameters for the transistor circuit are as under :

$V_{CC} = 200$ V, $V_{CES} = 2.5$ V, $I_{CS} = 60$ A, $t_d = 0.5$ μs, $t_r = 1$ μs,
$t_n = 40$ μs, $t_s = 4$ μs, $t_f = 3$ μs, $t_0 = 30$ μs, $f = 10$ kHz.

Collector to emitter leakage current = 1.5 mA.

Determine average power loss due to collector current during $t_{on}$ and $t_n$ . Find also the peak instantaneous power loss due to collector current during turn-on time.

Sketch the instantaneous power loss during $t_{on}$ and $t_n$. [**Ans.** 20.5015 W, 60 W, 3037.97 W]

**2.12.** Repeat Prob. 2.11 for obtaining average power loss during turn-off time and off-period, and also peak instantaneous power loss during fall time due to collector current.

Sketch the instantaneous power loss during turn-off time and off-period.

**2.13.** Fig. 2.23 shows the switching characteristics for a power semiconductor device. Derive the expressions for energy loss during turn-on and turn-off periods, and also for the average switching loss. Sketch the variation of power loss during turn-on and turn-off periods.

For $V_s = 220$ V, $I_a = 10$ A, $t_1 = 1$ μs, $t_2 = 2$ μs, $t_3 = 1.5$ μs and $t_4 = 3$ μs, find the average value of power-switching loss in the device for a switching frequency of 1 kHz.

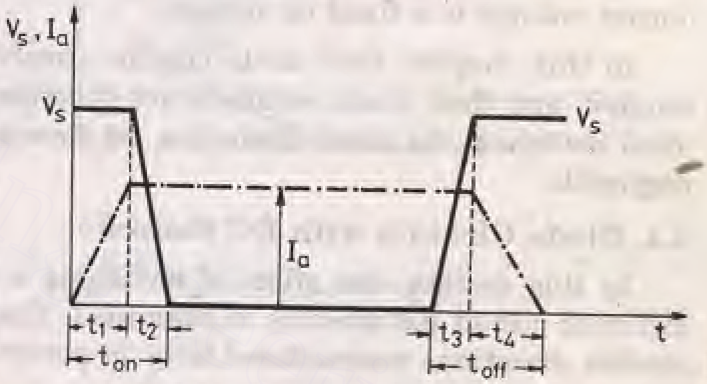


Fig. 2.23. Pertaining to Prob. 2.13.

$$\left[\textbf{Ans. } \frac{1}{2} V_s \cdot I_a \ (t_1 + t_2), \ \frac{1}{2} V_s I_a \ (t_3 + t_4), \ \frac{1}{2} \ V_s I_a f \, (t_{on} + t_{off}), \ 7.5 \text{ W}\right]$$

**2.14.** (*a*) Explain the constructional details and working of low-power MOSFET and power MOSFET and bring out the differences between the two.

(*b*) Discuss transfer and output characteristics of power MOSFETs.

**2.15**. (*a*) Describe the switching characteristics of power MOSFETs.

(*b*) Compare power MOSFETs with BJTs.

**2.16.** (*a*) What is IGBT ? What are its other names ? Give its basic structural features and working.

(*b*) Derive the equivalent circuit of IGBT from its structural details. Also describe input and transfer characteristics of an IGBT.

**2.17.** (*a*) Explain switching characteristics of an IGBT.

(*b*) Why are IGBTs becoming popular in their applications to controlled converters ? Enumerate some applications of IGBTs.

**2.18.** (*a*) Describe the basic structure of MOS controlled thyristor (MCT). Give its equivalent circuit and explain the turn-on and turn-off processes.

Give futuristic applications of MCTs.

(*b*) Discuss briefly about new semiconducting materials.

# THREE

# Diode Circuits and Rectifiers

A rectifier is a circuit that converts ac input voltage to dc output voltage. Semiconductor diodes are used extensively in power electronic circuits for the conversion of power from ac to dc. A rectifier employing diodes is called an uncontrolled rectifier, because its average output voltage is a fixed dc voltage.

In this chapter, first diode circuits involving different combinations of R, L and C are studied, and then diode rectifiers are described. For simplicity, the diodes are considered as ideal switches. An ideal diode has no forward voltage drop and reverse recovery time is negligible.

## 3.1. Diode Circuits with DC Source

In this section, the effect of switching a dc source to a circuit consisting of diode and different circuit parameters is examined. The conclusions arrived at can then be applied to similar situations encountered later in power-electronic circuits.

### 3.1.1. Resistive Load

In the circuit of Fig. 3.1 (*a*), when switch *S* is closed, the current rises instantaneously to $V_s/R$ as shown in Fig. 3.1 (*b*). Here $V_s$ is the dc source voltage and $R$ is the load resistance. When switch *S* is opened at $t_1$, the current at once falls to zero, Fig. 3.1 (*b*). Voltage $v_D$ across diode is zero during the time diode conducts and is equal to $+V_s$ after diode stops conducting.

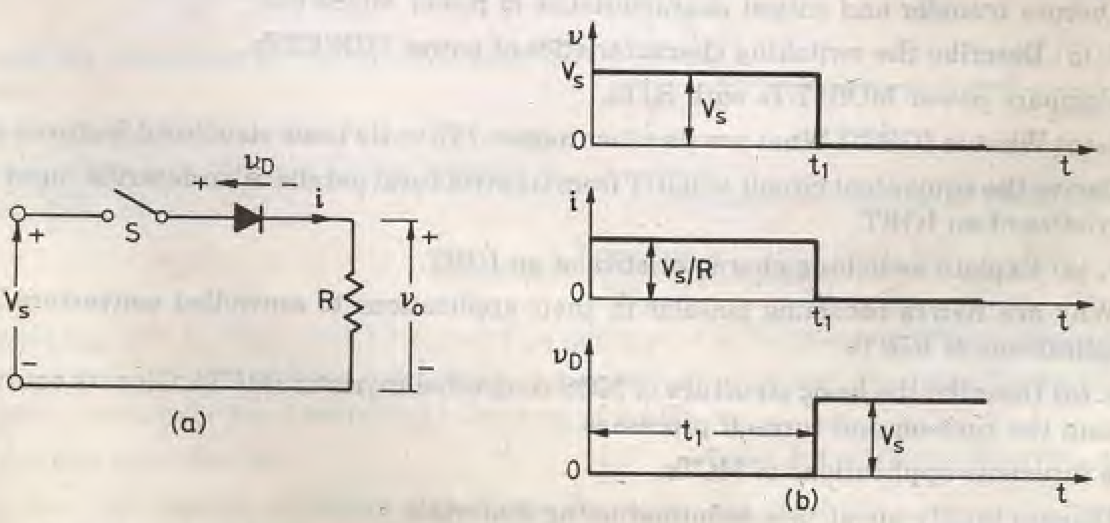


Fig. 3.1. Diode circuit with *R* load (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

### 3.1.2. RC Load

A circuit with dc source, diode and RC load is shown in Fig. 3.2 (*a*). When switch *S* is closed at $t = 0$, KVL gives

$$Ri + \frac{1}{C}\int i\,dt = V_s$$

Its Laplace transform is $R\,I(s) + \frac{1}{C}\left[\frac{I(s)}{s} + \frac{q(o)}{s}\right] = \frac{V_s}{s}$ ...(3.1)

As the initial voltage across $C$ is zero, $q(o) = 0$. With this, Eq. (3.1) becomes

$$I(s)\left[R + \frac{1}{cs}\right] = \frac{V_s}{s}$$

or

$$I(s) = \frac{CV_s}{RC\left(s + \frac{1}{RC}\right)} = \frac{V_s}{R}\cdot\frac{1}{s + \frac{1}{RC}}$$

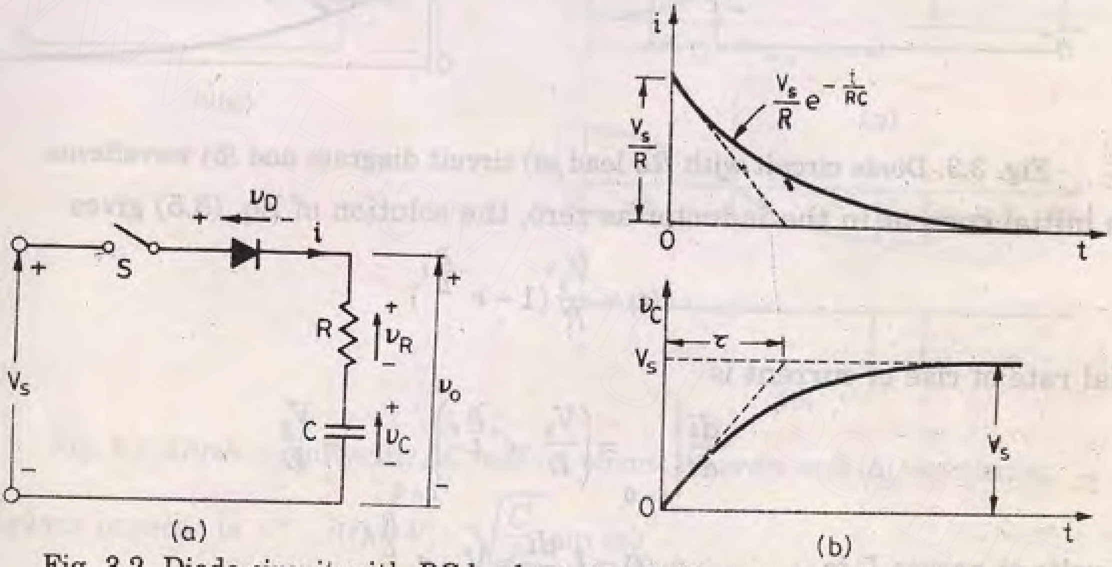


Fig. 3.2. Diode circuit with *RC* load (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

Its Laplace inverse is $i(t) = \frac{V_s}{R}\cdot e^{-t/RC}$ ...(3.2)

The voltage across capacitor is

$$v_c(t) = \frac{1}{C}\int_0^t i\,dt = \frac{V_s}{RC}\int_0^t e^{-t/RC}$$

$$= V_s\,(1 - e^{-t/RC}) \quad \text{...(3.3a)}$$

$$= V_s\,(1 - e^{-t/\tau}) \quad \text{...(3.3b)}$$

where $\tau = RC$ is the time constant for $RC$ circuit. From Eq. (3.3a), initial rate of change of capacitor voltage is given by

$$\left(\frac{d\,v_c}{dt}\right)_{t=0} = \left[V_s\cdot e^{-t/RC}\cdot\frac{1}{RC}\right]_{t=0} = \frac{V_s}{RC} \quad \text{...(3.4)}$$

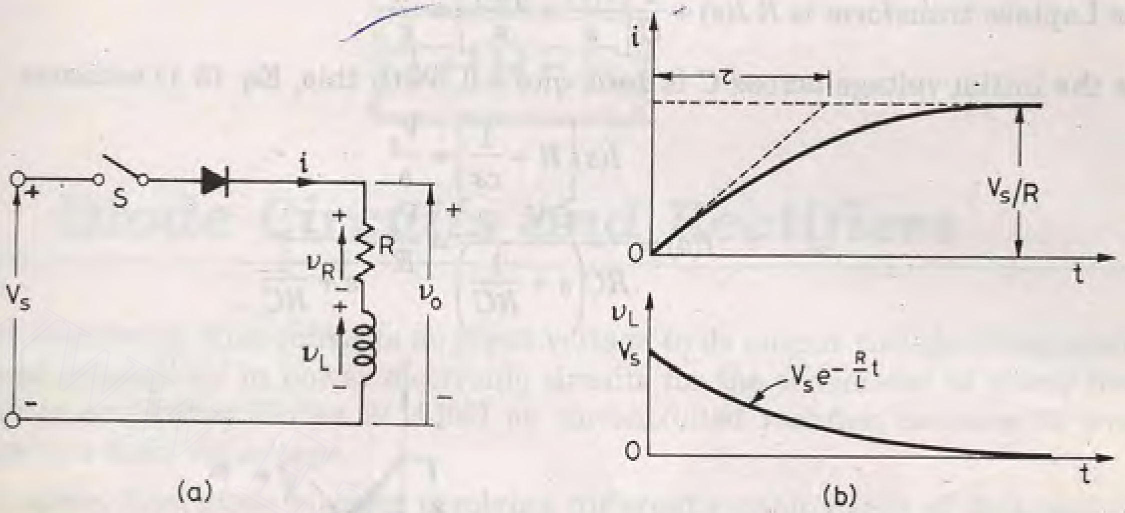
Time constant, $RC = \frac{\text{source voltage, } V_s}{(d\,v_c/dt)_{t=0}}$

In Fig. 3.2 (*b*), current and voltage variations are as shown.

### 3.1.3. RL Load

When switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$ in the $RL$ and diode circuit of Fig. 3.3 ($a$), KVL gives

$$R\,i + L\frac{di}{dt} = V_s \qquad \text{...(3.5)}$$



(a) (b)

Fig. 3.3. Diode circuit with $RL$ load ($a$) circuit diagram and ($b$) waveforms.

With initial current in the inductor as zero, the solution of Eq. (3.5) gives

$$i(t) = \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right) \qquad \text{...(3.6)}$$

Initial rate of rise of current is

$$\left.\frac{di}{dt}\right|_{t=0} = \left(\frac{V_s}{L}\cdot e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right)_{t=0} = \frac{V_s}{L} \qquad \text{...(3.7)}$$

The voltage across $L$ is $\quad v_L(t) = L\frac{di}{dt} = V_s \cdot e^{-\frac{R}{L}t} \qquad$ ...(3.8)

For $RL$ circuit, $\frac{L}{C} = \tau$ is the time constant. The waveforms of current and voltage across inductance are sketched in Fig. 3.3 ($b$).

### 3.1.4. LC Load

A diode circuit with dc source voltage $V_s$, switch $S$ and $LC$ load is shown in Fig. 3.4 ($a$). When switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$, the voltage equation governing its performance is given by

$$L\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}\int i\,dt = V_s$$

Its Laplace transform is $\quad L\,[s\,I(s) - i(0)] + \frac{1}{C}\left[\frac{I(s)}{s} + \frac{q(0)}{s}\right] = \frac{V_s}{s}$

As the circuit is initially relaxed, $i(0) = 0$ and $v_C(0) = 0$ or $q(0) = C \cdot v_C(0) = 0$

$$\therefore \qquad I(s)\left[sL + \frac{1}{sC}\right] = \frac{V_s}{s}$$

or $$I(s) = \frac{V_s}{L} \cdot \frac{1}{s^2 + \frac{1}{LC}}$$

Let $\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$ · This gives $I(s) = \frac{V_s}{L \cdot \omega_0} \cdot \frac{\omega_0}{s^2 + \omega_0} = V_s \cdot \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \cdot \frac{\omega_0}{s^2 + \omega_0^2}$

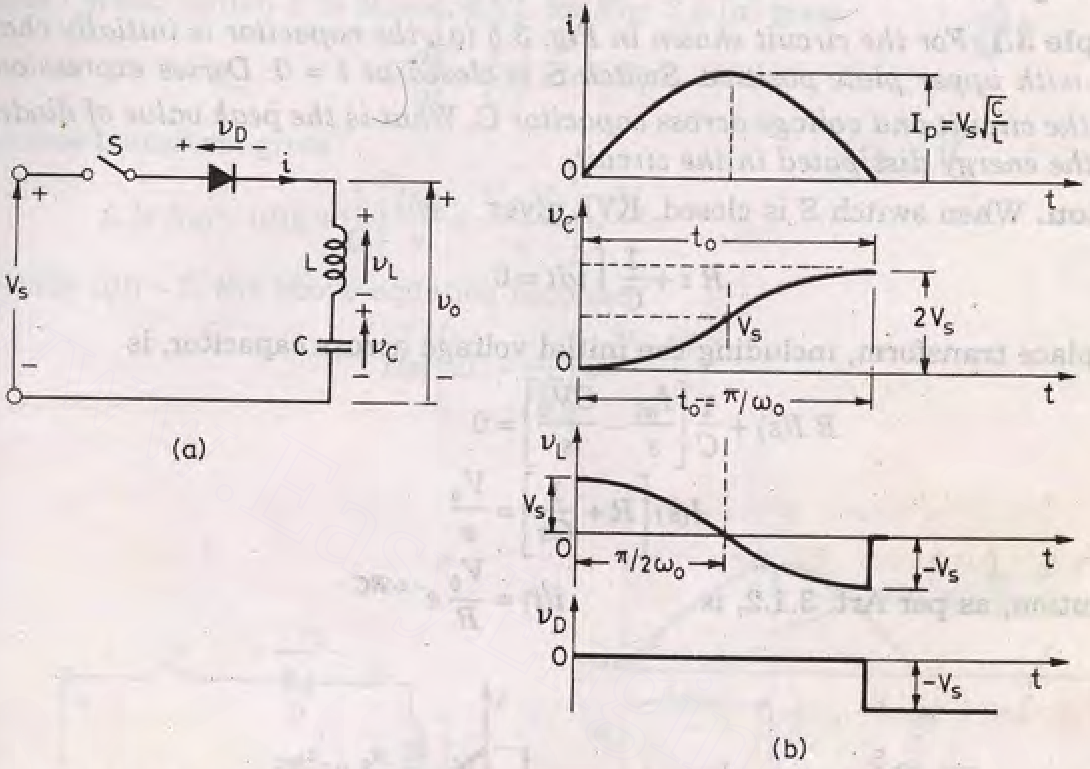


Fig. 3.4. Diode circuit with *LC* load (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

Its Laplace inverse is $$i(t) = V_s \cdot \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \sin \omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(3.9)}$$

Here $\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$ is called *resonant frequency* of the circuit. Capacitor voltage is given by

$$v_C(t) = \frac{1}{C}\int_0^t i(t) \cdot dt = \frac{1}{C}\int_0^t V_s \cdot \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \sin \omega_0 t$$

$$= V_s (1 - \cos \omega_0 t) \qquad \text{...(3.10a)}$$

Voltage across inductance is given by

$$v_L(t) = L\frac{di(t)}{dt} = V \cos \omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(3.10b)}$$

When $\omega_0 t_0 = \pi$ or when $t_0 = \pi/\omega_0$, from Eq. (3.9), $i(t_0) = 0$ and from Eq. (3.10a), $v_C(t_0) = 2\,V_s$ and $v_L(t_0) = -V_s$

Here $t_0 = \pi/\omega_0$ = conduction time of diode $= \pi\sqrt{LC}$

From Eq. (3.9), circuit or diode current at $t_0/2 = \frac{\pi}{2\,\omega_0}$ attains a peak value of $I_p = V_s \cdot \sqrt{C/L}$ as shown in Fig. 3.4 (*b*). Voltage across diode, soon after diode stops conduction at $t_0$ is given by

$$v_D = -v_L - v_C + V_s = 0 - 2V_s + V_s = -V_s.$$

Waveforms of $i(t), v_C, v_L$ and $v_D$ are sketched in Fig. 3.4 (*b*). It is seen that at $t_0/2 = \frac{\pi}{2\omega_0}$, diode current reaches peak value, $v_C = V_s$ and $v_L = 0$. Also at $t_0 = \pi/\omega_0 = \pi(\sqrt{LC})$, diode current decays to zero and capacitor is charged to voltage $2V_s$. Soon after $t_0$, voltage across $L$ is zero and diode voltage $v_D = -V_s$.

**Example 3.1.** *For the circuit shown in Fig. 3.5 (a), the capacitor is initially charged to a voltage $V_0$ with upper plate positive. Switch S is closed at $t = 0$. Derive expressions for the current in the circuit and voltage across capacitor C. What is the peak value of diode current? Find also the energy dissipated in the circuit.*

**Solution.** When switch $S$ is closed, KVL gives

$$Ri + \frac{1}{C}\int i dt = 0$$

Its Laplace transform, including the initial voltage across capacitor, is

$$R\,I(s) + \frac{1}{C}\left[\frac{I_{(s)}}{s} - \frac{CV_0}{s}\right] = 0$$

or

$$I(s)\left[R + \frac{1}{Cs}\right] = \frac{V_0}{s}$$

Its solution, as per Art. 3.1.2, is $\quad i(t) = \frac{V_0}{R}e^{-t/RC}$

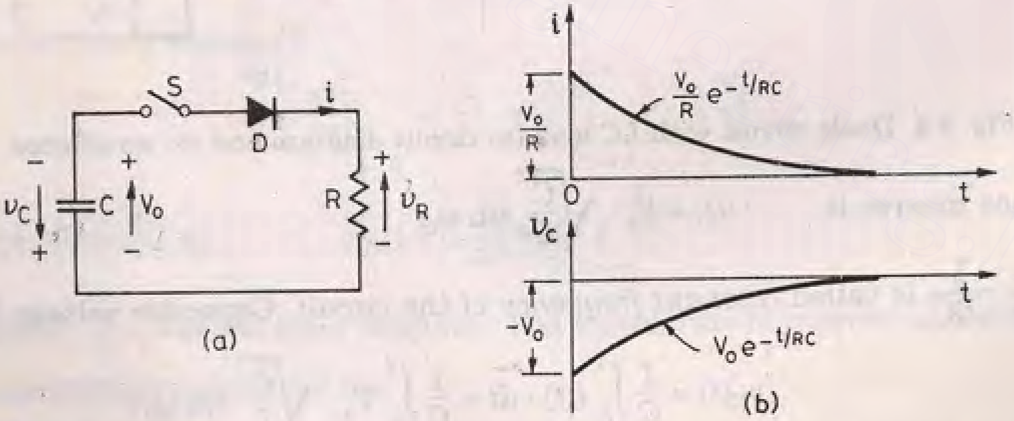


Fig. 3.5. Pertaining to Example 3.1 (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

$\therefore$ Peak diode current $\quad = \frac{V_0}{R}$

Capacitor voltage,

$$v_C(t) = \frac{1}{C}\int_0^t i dt - V_0$$

$$= \frac{1}{C}\int_0^t \frac{V_0}{R}\cdot e^{-t/RC}\cdot dt - V_0$$

$$= -V_0 e^{-t/RC}$$

Current $i(t)$ and voltage $v_C(t)$ are sketched in Fig. 3.5 (*b*).

Energy dissipated in the circuit $\quad = \frac{1}{2}CV_0^2$ Joules

**Example 3.2.** *In the diode and LC network shown in Fig. 3.6 (a), the capacitor is initially charged to voltage $V_0$ with upper plate positive. Switch S is closed at $t = 0$. Derive expressions for current through and voltage across C.*

*Find the conduction time of diode, peak current through the diode and final steady-state voltage across C in case $V_s = 400$ V, $V_0 = 100$ V, $L = 100$ μH and $C = 30$ μF. Determine also the voltage across diode after it stops conduction.*

**Soution** : When switch *S* is closed, KVL for Fig. 3.6 (*a*) gives $cV_0$

$$L\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}\int i dt = V_s$$

Its Laplace transform gives $q = CV$

$$L\,[s\,I(s) - i(0)] + \frac{1}{C}\left[\frac{I(s)}{s} + \frac{C \cdot V_0}{s}\right] = \frac{V_s}{s}$$

As initially $i(0) = 0$, the above equation becomes

$$I(s)\left[sL + \frac{1}{sC}\right] = \frac{V_s - V_0}{s}$$

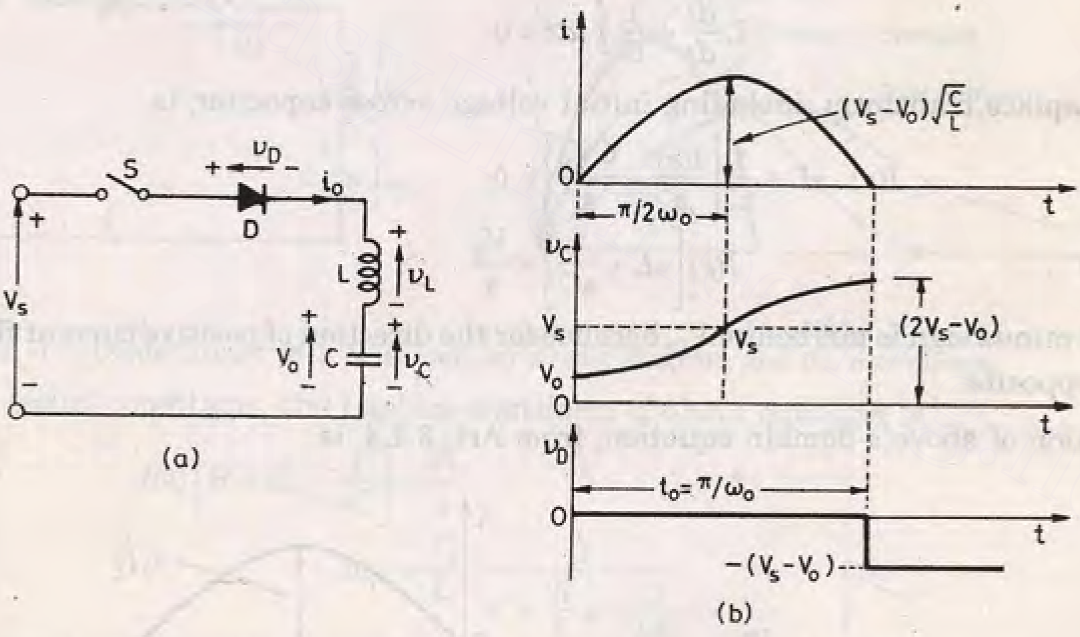


Fig. 3.6. Pertaining to Example 3.2 (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

This equation in *s*-domain can be solved as in Art 3.1.4. Its solution is

$$i(t) = (V_s - V_0) \cdot \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \sin \omega_0 t$$

$$v_C(t) = (V_s - V_0)\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}\int_0^t \sin \omega_0 t + V_0$$

$$= (V_s - \underline{V_0})\,(1 - \cos \omega_0 t) + V_0$$

At $\omega_0 t = 0$, $\quad v_C(t) = V_0$ $\quad \omega_0 t = \pi$

At $\omega_0 t = \pi/2$, $\quad v_C(t) = V_s$ and at $\omega_0 t = \pi$, $v_C(t) = 2\,(V_s - V_0) + V_0 = 2V_s - V_0$.

Diode conduction time, $t_0 = \frac{\pi}{\omega_0} = \pi\sqrt{LC} = \pi\sqrt{30 \times 100 \times 10^{-6}} = 54.77\ \mu s$

Peak current through diode, $I_p = (V_s - V_0)\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}$

$$= 300\sqrt{\frac{30}{100}} = 164.32\ \text{A}$$

Steady state voltage across $C$ occurs when $\omega_0 t_0 = \pi$.

$$\therefore \qquad V_C = 2(V_s - V_0) + V_0 = 2V_s - V_0 = 2 \times 400 - 100 = 700\ \text{V}$$

Voltage across diode, after it stops conducting, is given by

$$v_D = -v_L - v_C + V_s = 0 - (2V_s - V_0) + V_s = -V_s + V_0 = -400 + 100$$
$$= -300\ \text{V}.$$

**Example 3.3.** *In the circuit shown in Fig. 3.7 (a), the capacitor has initial voltage of* $V_0$ *with upper plate positive. The circuit is switched at* $t = 0$. *Derive expressions for current and voltage across capacitor. Find the conduction time for diode and steady-state capacitor voltage.*

**Solution.** The voltage equation for the circuit of Fig. 3.7 (*a*), after switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$, is

$$L\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}\int i\,dt = 0$$

Its Laplace transform, including initial voltage across capacitor, is

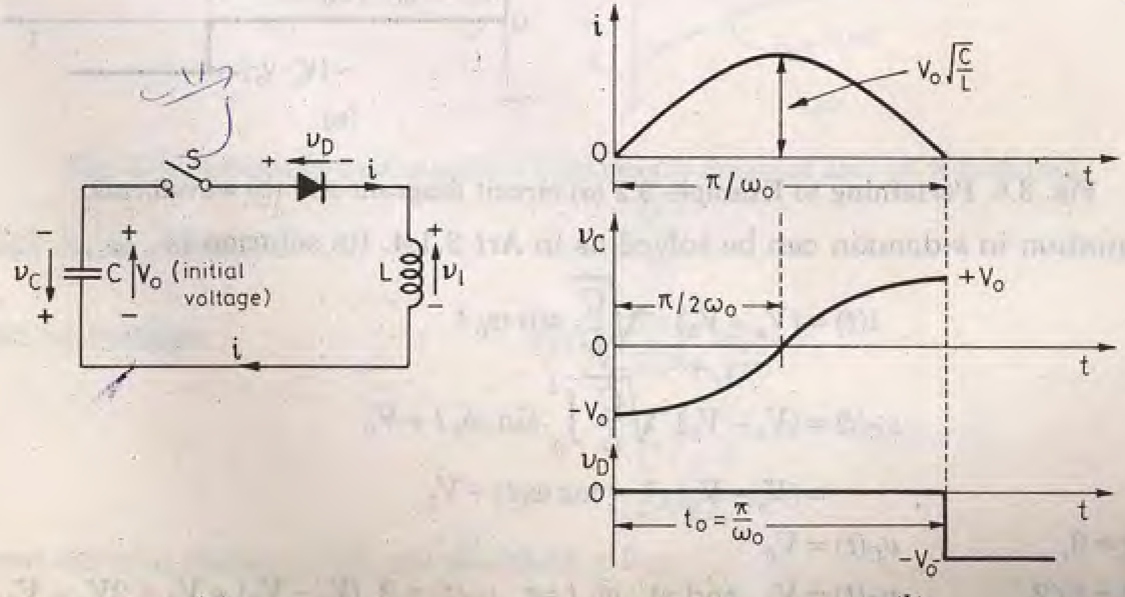
$$I(s)\cdot sL + \frac{1}{C}\left[\frac{I(s)}{s} - \frac{CV_0}{s}\right] = 0$$

Vo

$$I(s)\left[sL + \frac{1}{sC}\right] = \frac{V_0}{s}$$

Here minus sign is put before $V_0$, because for the direction of positive current flow, polarity of $V_0$ is opposite.

Solution of above $s$-domain equation, from Art. 3.1.4, is



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 3.7. Pertaining to Example 3.3 (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

$$i(t) = V_0 \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \sin \omega_0 t$$

Voltage across $C$ is $$v_C(t) = V_0 \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \int_0^t \sin \omega_0 t - V_0 = -V_0 \cos \omega_0 t$$

Diode conduction time, $$t_0 = \frac{\pi}{\omega_0} = \pi\sqrt{LC}$$

Steady-state capacitor voltage $= -V_0 \cos \pi = +V_0$

Voltage across diode, $v_D = -V_0$.

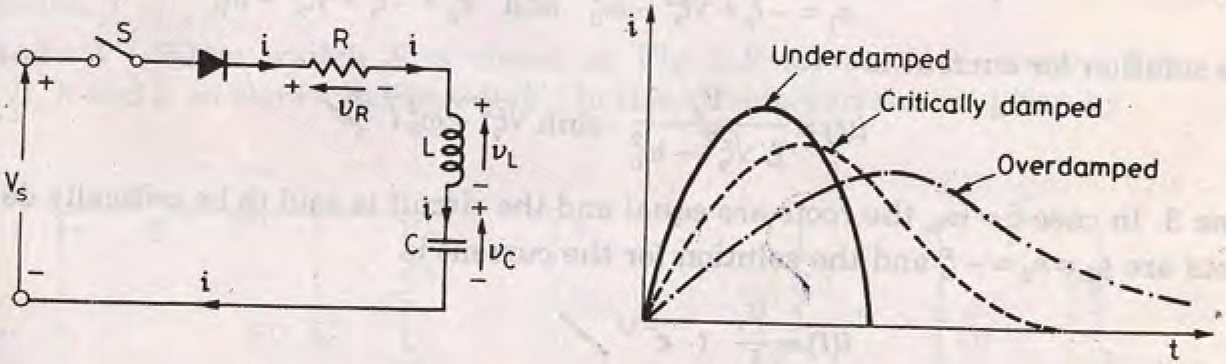
Waveforms for $i$, $V_C$ and $v_D$ are sketched in Fig. 3.7 (*b*)

### 3.1.5. RLC Load

A diode in series with *RLC* circuit is shown in Fig. 3.8 (*a*). KVL for this circuit, when switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$, is given by

$$iRi + L\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}\int i\,dt = V_s$$

$\omega_0 t = \pi$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 3.8. Diode circuit with *RLC* load (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

With zero initial conditions, the Laplace transform of above equation is

$$I(s)\left[R + sL + \frac{1}{sC}\right] = \frac{V_s}{s}$$

or $$I(s) = \frac{V_s}{L}\frac{1}{s^2 + \frac{R}{L}s + \frac{1}{LC}}$$

$\omega_0 t = \pi$

Here $s^2 + \frac{R}{L}s + \frac{1}{LC} = 0$ is the characteristic equation in $s$-domain. The roots of this equation are

$$s = -\frac{R}{2L} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{R}{2L}\right)^2 - \frac{1}{LC}}$$

or $$s = -\xi \pm \sqrt{\xi^2 - \omega_0^2} \qquad \text{...(3.11)}$$

where $$\xi = \frac{R}{2L} \qquad \text{...(3.12)}$$

is called the *damping factor*. $$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} \qquad \text{...(3.13)}$$

is called resonant frequency in rad/sec

and
$$\omega_r = \sqrt{\frac{1}{LC} - \left(\frac{R}{2L}\right)^2} \qquad \text{...(3.14)}$$
$$= \sqrt{\omega_0^2 - \xi^2} = \text{ringing frequency in rad /sec .}$$

Also
$$\omega_0 = \sqrt{\omega_r^2 + \xi^2}$$

Depending upon the values of $\xi$ and $\omega_0$, the solution for the current can have three possible solutions.

**Case 1**. In case $\xi < \omega_0$, it is seen from Eq. (3.11) that the roots are complex and the circuit is said to be *underdamped*. The two roots are

$$s_1 = -\xi + j\,\omega_r \quad \text{and} \quad s_2 = -\xi - j\,\omega_r$$

and the current is given by

$$i(t) = \frac{V_s}{\omega_r L} \cdot e^{-\xi t} \sin \omega\, rt \qquad \text{...(3.15)}$$

**Case 2**. If $\xi > \omega_0$, the two roots are real and the circuit is said to be *overdamped*. The two roots are

$$s_1 = -\xi + \sqrt{\xi^2 - \omega_0^2} \quad \text{and} \quad s_2 = -\xi - \sqrt{\xi^2 - \omega_0^2}$$

and the solution for current is

$$i(t) = \frac{V_s}{L\sqrt{\xi^2 - \omega_0^2}} \cdot \sinh \sqrt{\xi^2 - \omega_0^2\, t} \qquad \text{...(3.16)}$$

**Case 3**. In case $\xi = \omega_0$, the roots are equal and the circuit is said to be critically damped. The roots are $s_1 = s_2 = -\xi$ and the solution for the current is

$$i(t) = \frac{V_s}{L} \cdot t \cdot e^{-\xi t} \qquad \text{...(3.17)}$$

Waveforms of current for the three different levels of damping are sketched in Fig. 3.8 (*b*).

**Example 3.4**. *For the circuit of Fig. 3.8 (a), the data is as under :*

$$R = 10\Omega,\ L = 1\ mH,\ C = 5\ \mu F,\ V_s = 230\ V$$

*The circuit is initially relaxed. With switch closed at t = 0, determine (a) current i(t) (b) conduction time of diode (c) rate of change of current at t = 0.*

**Solution** : (*a*) From Eq. (3.12),

$$\xi = \frac{10 \times 1000}{2 \times 1} = 5000 \text{ rad / sec}$$

From Eq. (3.13),
$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} = \frac{1}{\left[1 \times 10^{-3} \times 5 \times 10^{-6}\right]^{1/2}} = \frac{10^5}{\sqrt{50}} = 14142.136 \text{ rad / s}$$

From Eq. (3.14),
$$\omega_r = \left[\frac{10^{10}}{50} - (5000)^2\right]^{1/2} = 13228.76 \text{ rad / s}$$

Here as $\xi < \omega_0$, the circuit is underdamped. The current is, therefore, given by Eq. (3.15).

$$i(t) = \frac{230 \times 1000}{13228.76 \times 1} \cdot e^{-5000t} \cdot \sin{(13228.76)t}$$
$$= 17.3864 \cdot e^{-5000t} \cdot \sin{(13228.76\, t)}$$

(*b*) Diode stops conducting when $\omega_r t_1 = \pi$

$\therefore$ Conduction time of diode,

$$t_1 = \frac{\pi}{\omega_r} = \frac{\pi}{13228.76} = 237.482\ \mu s$$

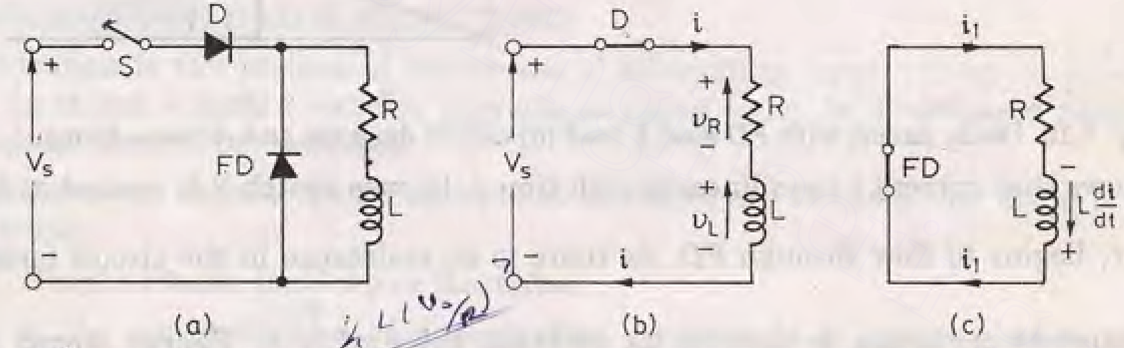
(*c*) From Eq. (3.15), $$\frac{di}{dt} = \frac{V_s}{\omega_r L}\left[e^{-\xi t} \cdot \omega_r \cos \omega_r t - \sin \omega_r t \cdot (-\xi)\, e^{-\xi t}\right]$$

$$\left.\frac{di}{dt}\right|_{t=0} = \frac{V_s}{L} = \frac{230 \times 1000}{1} = 230{,}000\ \text{A/s}.$$

## 3.2. FREEWHEELING DIODES

In Fig. 3.3 (*a*), steady state current, after switch *S* is closed, is equal to $V_s/R$. If switch *S* is now opened, the energy stored $\left[= \frac{1}{2} L\, (V_s/R)^2\right]$ in inductance *L* will appear in the form of arc at the opening contacts of switch *S*. In order to avoid such an occurrence, a diode *FD*, called *freewheeling, or flywheel,* diode, is connected across *RL* as shown in Fig. 3.9. (*a*), For understanding how *FD* comes into play, the working of circuit of Fig. 3.9 (*a*) is divided into two modes.

**Mode I** : When switch *S* is closed in Fig. 3.9 (*a*) at $t = 0$, current flows through $V_s$, *S*, *D*, *R* and *L* as shown in Fig. 3.9 (*b*). In this circuit, current *i* is given by



½ L (Vs/R)

Fig. 3.9. Circuit of Fig. 3.3 with freewheeling diode.

$$i = \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right) \qquad \text{...(3.18)}$$

Final value of current, $$I = \frac{V_s}{R}$$

**Mode II** : When switch *S* is opened at $t = 0$, current in the circuit tends to decay and so a voltage $L\frac{di}{dt}$ is induced in *L* which forward biases freewheeling diode. The current is, therefore, transferred to the circuit consisting of *FD*, *R* and *L* as shown in Fig. 3.9 (*c*). In this circuit, current is given by

$$i_1 = \frac{V_s}{R} \cdot e^{-\frac{R}{L}t} \qquad \text{...(3.19)}$$

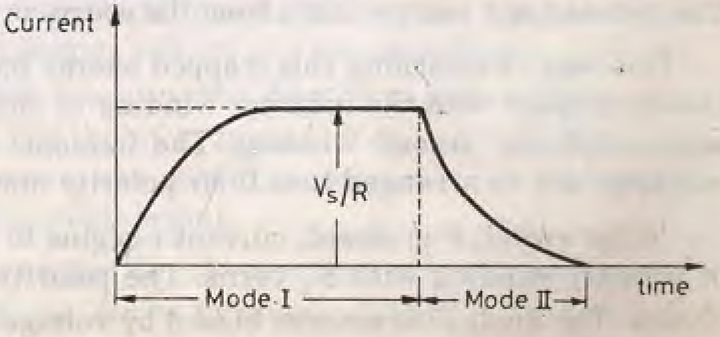


Fig. 3.9 (*d*). Current variation in the circuit of Fig 3.8.

The current $i_1$ will eventually decay to zero exponentially in mode II of Fig. 3.9 (*c*). The current build up during mode I and current decay during mode II are shown in Fig. 3.9 (*d*).

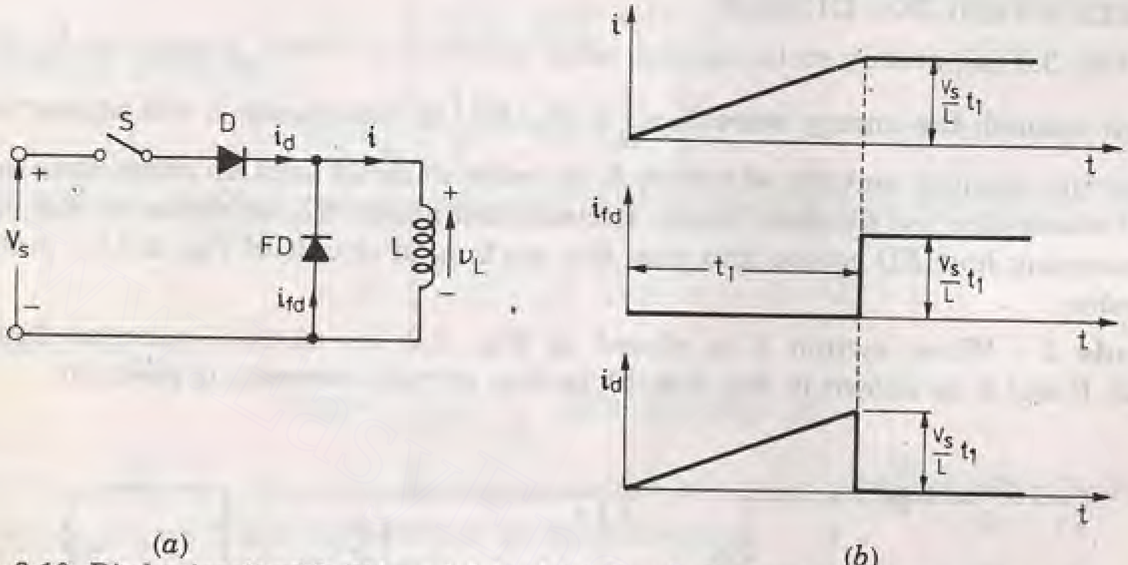
## 3.3. DIODE AND L CIRCUIT

Consider the circuit of Fig. 3.10 (*a*) where dc source feeds *L* through diode *D*. A freewheeling diode *FD* is connected across *L*. When switch *S* is closed at $t = 0$, *KVL* gives

$$V_s = L\frac{di}{dt}$$

or

$$i = \frac{V_s}{L}t \quad \text{...(3.20)}$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 3.10. Diode circuit with *FD* amd *L* load (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

This shows that current *i* rises linearly with time *t*. In case switch *S* is opened at $t_1$, load current $\frac{V_s}{L}t_1$ begins to flow through *FD*. As there is no resistance in the circuit formed by *L* and *FD*, current continues to flow at its constant value of $\frac{V_s}{L}t_1$. Energy stored in the inductance is $\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{V_s}{L}t_1\right)^2 \cdot L = \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{V_s^2}{L}t_1$ joules. Current waveforms are shown in Fig. 3.10 (*b*).

## 3.4. RECOVERY OF TRAPPED ENERGY

In the ideal circuit of Fig. 3.10 (*a*), the energy stored in the inductor is trapped. This trapped energy is not dissipated even when *FD* conducts because circuit does not contain resistance. The best way of utilization of this trapped energy is to return it to the source. In this manner, not energy taken from the source is reduced and the system efficiency improves.

One way of returning this trapped energy back to the source is to add a second winding closely coupled with the inductor winding as shown in Fig. 3.11. A diode *D* is also placed in series with the second winding. The inductor now behaves like a transformer. The two windings are so arranged that their polarity markings are opposite to each other.

When switch *S* is closed, current *i* begins to flow and energy is stored in the inductance of primary winding with $N_1$ turns. The polarity of the secondary winding voltage $V_2$ is as shown. The diode *D* is reverse biased by voltage $(V_2 + V_s)$.

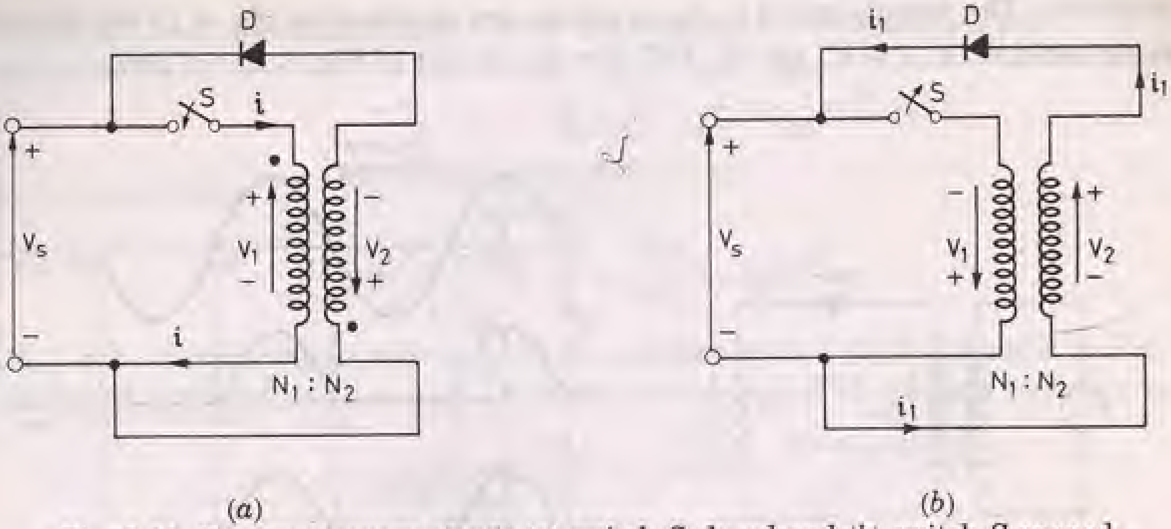


Fig. 3.11. Energy-recovery circuit (*a*) switch *S* closed and (*b*) switch *S* opened.

When switch *S* is opened, polarities of voltages $V_1$ and $V_2$ get reversed, the diode is now forward biased by voltage $(V_2 - V_s)$. As a result, diode begins to conduct a current $i_1$ into the positive terminal of source voltage $V_s$ and so the trapped energy is fed back to the source.

Energy fedback to dc source = $V_s$ × current $i_1$ dependent upon $(V_2 - V_s)$.

The energy stored in $L$ of $N_1$ turns is transferred to secondary winding of $N_2$ turns from where it is fed back into the dc source.

## 3.5. SINGLE-PHASE DIODE RECTIFIERS

Rectification is the process of conversion of alternating input voltage to direct output voltage. As stated before, a rectifier converts ac power to dc. In diode-based rectifiers, the output voltage cannot be controlled.

In this section, uncontrolled single-phase rectifiers are studied. The diode is assumed ideal as before.

### 3.5.1. Single-Phase Half-wave Rectifier

This is the simplest type of uncontrolled rectifier. It is never used in industrial applications because of its poor performance. Its study is, however, useful in understanding the principle of rectifier operation.

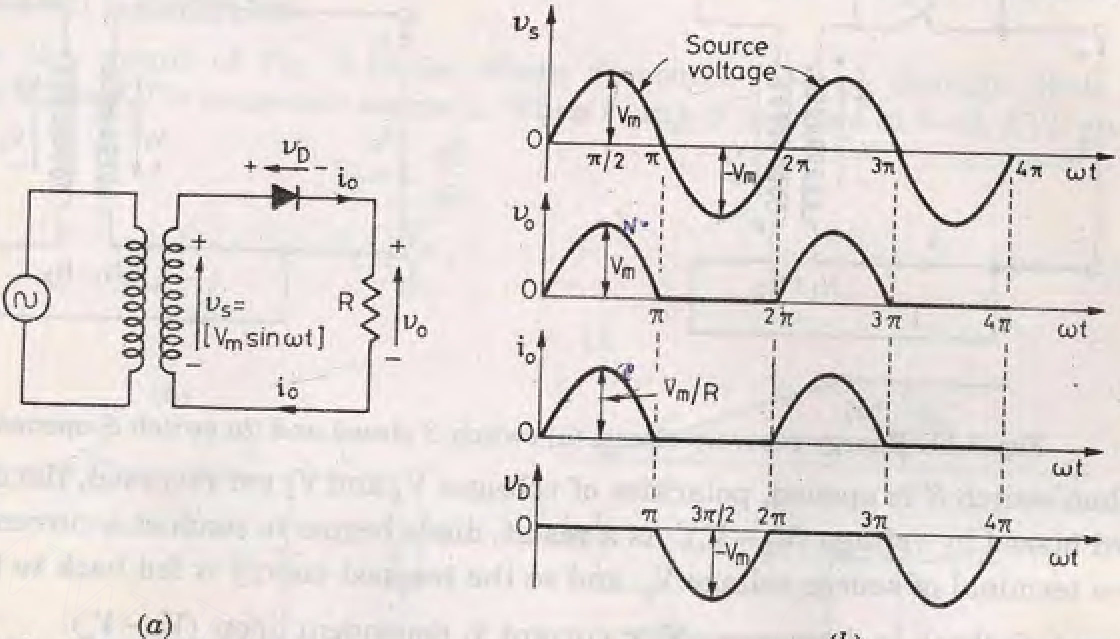
In a single-phase half-wave rectifier, for one cycle of supply voltage, there is one half-cycle of output, or load, voltage. As such, it is also called *single-phase one-pulse rectifier.*

The load on the output side of rectifier may be $R$, $RL$ or $RL$ with a flywheel diode. These are now discussed briefly.

(*a*) **R load :** The circuit diagram of a single-phase half-wave rectifier is shown in Fig. 3.12 (*a*). During the positive half cycle, diode is forward biased, it therefore conducts from $\omega t = 0°$ to $\omega t = \pi$. During the positive half cycle, output voltage $v_0$ = source voltage $v_s$ and load current $i_0 = v_0 / R$. At $\omega t = \pi$, $v_0 = 0$ and for $R$ load, $i_0$ is also zero. As soon as $v_s$ tends to become negative after $\omega t = \pi$, diode $D$ is reverse biased, it is therefore turned off and goes into blocking state. Output voltage, as well as output current, are zero from $\omega t = \pi$ to $\omega t = 2\pi$. After $\omega t = 2\pi$, diode is again forward biased and conduction begins.

For a resistive load, output current $i_0$ has the same waveform as that of the output voltage $v_0$. Diode voltage $v_D$ is zero when diode conducts. Diode is reverse biased from $\omega t = \pi$ to

$\omega t = 2\pi$ as shown. The waveforms of $v_s$, $v_0$, $i_0$ and $v_D$ are sketched in Fig. 3.12 (*b*). Here source voltage is sinusoidal *i.e.* $v_s = V_m \sin \omega t$. *KVL* for the circuit of Fig. 3.12 (*a*) gives $v_s = v_0 + v_D$.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 3.12. Single-phase half-wave diode rectifier with *R* load (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

Average value of output (or load) voltage,

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\left[\int_0^\pi V_m \sin \omega t \, d(\omega t)\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{2\pi}\left| -\cos \omega t \right|_0^\pi = \frac{V_m}{\pi} \qquad \text{...(3}$$

Rms value of output voltage,

$$V_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^\pi V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\int_0^\pi \frac{1-\cos 2\omega t}{2} \cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{2} \qquad \text{...(3.22)}$$

Here the subscript '*r*' is used to denote rms value.

Average value of load current,

$$I_0 = \frac{V_0}{R} = \frac{V_m}{\pi R} \qquad \text{...(3.23)}$$

Rms value of load current,

$$I_{or} = \frac{V_{or}}{R} = \frac{V_m}{2R} \qquad \text{...(3.24)}$$

Peak value of load, or diode, current

$$= \frac{V_m}{R} \qquad \text{...(3.25)}$$

Peak inverse voltage, PIV, is an important parameter in the design of rectifier circuits. *PIV* is the maximum voltage that appears across the device (here diode) during its blocking state. In Fig. 3.12, PIV $= V_m = \sqrt{2} \cdot V_s = \sqrt{2}$ (rms value of transformer secondary voltage).

Power delivered to resistive load = (*rms* load voltage) (*rms* load current )

$$= V_{or} \cdot I_{or} = \frac{V_m}{2} \cdot \frac{V_m}{2R} = \frac{V_m^2}{4R} = \frac{V_s^2}{2R} = I_{or}^2 R \qquad ...(3.26)$$

Input power factor $= \dfrac{\text{Power delivered to load}}{\text{Input } VA}$

$$= \frac{V_{or} \cdot I_{or}}{V_s \cdot I_{or}} = \frac{V_{or}}{V_s} = \frac{\sqrt{2} V_s}{2 V_s} = 0.707 \text{ lag.}$$

(*b*) **L load :** Single-phase half-wave diode rectifier with *L* load is shown in Fig. 3.13 (*a*). When switch *S* is closed at $\omega t = 0$, diode starts conducting. *KVL* for this circuit gives

$$v_s = v_0 = L \frac{di_o}{dt} = V_m \sin \omega t$$

or

$$i_0 = \frac{V_m}{L} \int \sin \omega t \cdot dt$$

$$= -\frac{V_m}{\omega L} \cos \omega t + A \qquad ...(3.27\ a)$$

At $\omega t = 0,\ i_0 = 0,\ \therefore \qquad 0 = -\dfrac{V_m}{\omega L} + A$

or $\qquad A = V_m / \omega L$

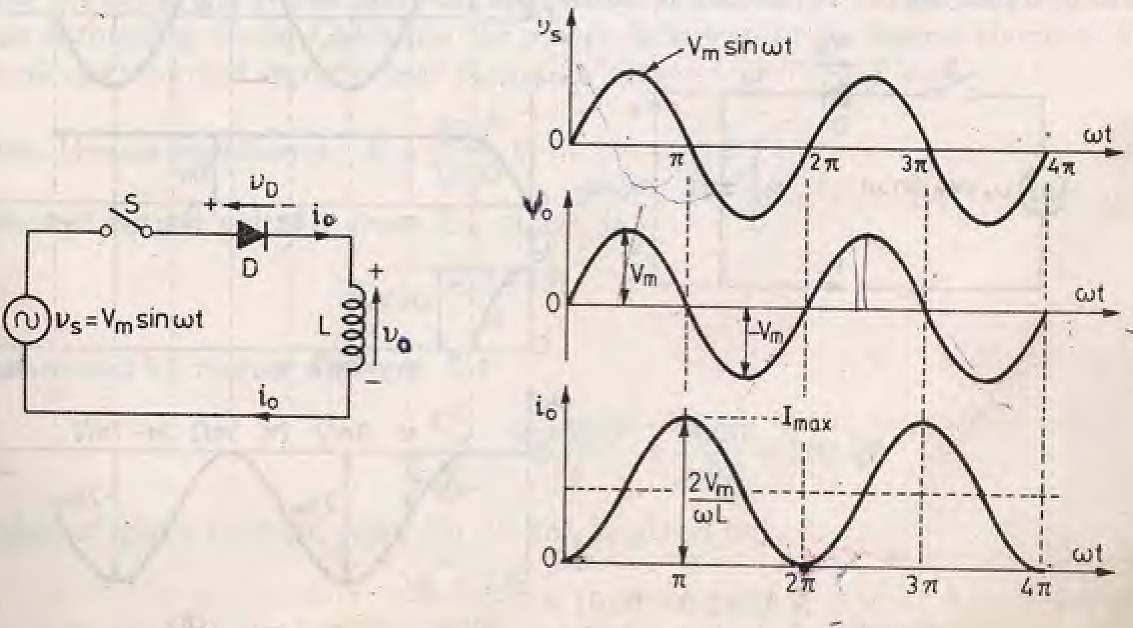
Substitution of the value of *A* in Eq. (3.27 **a**) gives

$$i_0 = \frac{V_m}{\omega L}(1 - \cos \omega t) \qquad ...(3.27\ b)$$

Output voltage, $\qquad v_0 = L \dfrac{di_o}{dt} = L \dfrac{V_m}{\omega L} [\sin \omega t]\ \omega = V_m \sin \omega t = v_s$

Source voltage $v_s$ and botn output voltage $v_0$ and output current $i_0$ are plotted in Fig. 3.13 (*b*).

Average value of output voltage, $V_0 = 0$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 3.13. Single-phase one-pulse rectifier with *L* load (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

The output current $i_0$ consists of dc component and fundamental frequency component of frequency $\omega$.

Peak value of current $I_{max}$ occurs at $\omega t = \pi$

$$\therefore \qquad I_{max} = \frac{V_m}{\omega L}(1+1) = \frac{2V_m}{\omega L} \qquad \text{...(3.28)}$$

Average value of current,

$$I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} \frac{V_m}{\omega L}(1-\cos\omega t)\, d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{\omega L} = \frac{1}{2} I_{max} \qquad \text{...(3.29)}$$

Rms value of fundamental current, $I_{1r}$ is given by

$$I_{1r} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\left(\frac{V_m}{\omega L}\right)^2 \int_0^{2\pi} (\cos\omega t)^2\, d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{\sqrt{2}\cdot\omega L} = \frac{V_s}{\omega L} = \frac{I_0}{\sqrt{2}} \qquad \text{...(3.30)}$$

Rms value of rectified current

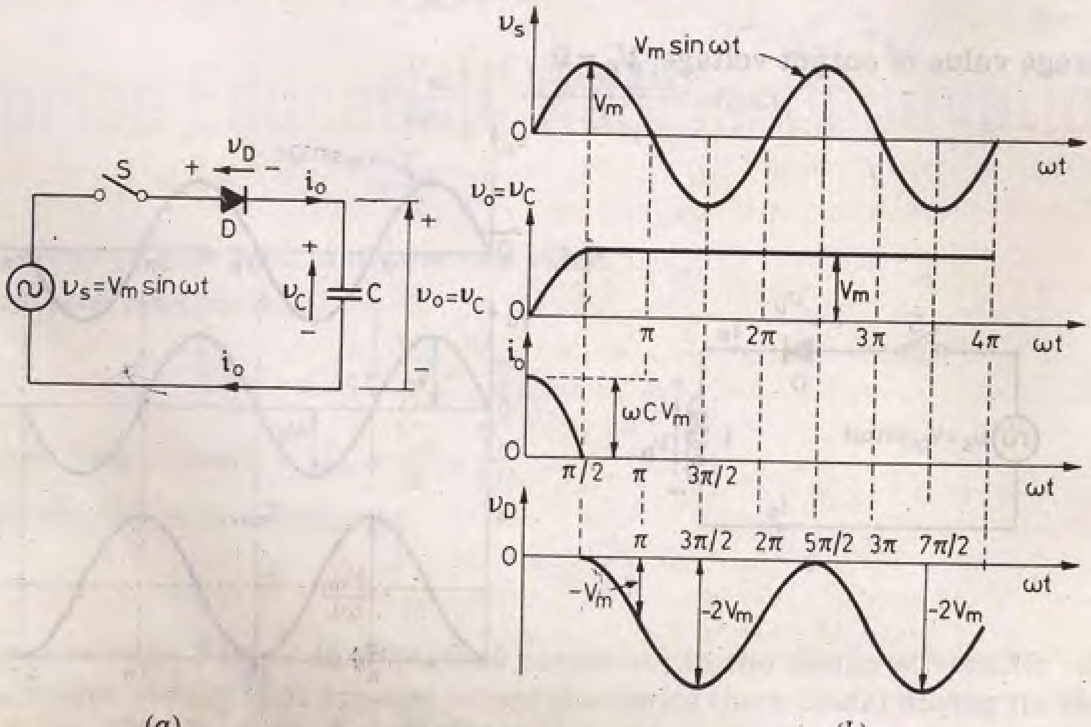
$$= \left[I_0^2 + I_{1r}^2\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \left[I_0^2 + \frac{I_0^2}{2}\right]^{1/2} = 1.225\, I_0 \qquad \text{...(3.31)}$$

Voltage across diode, $v_D = 0$.

(*c*) **C Load :** In Fig. 3.14 (*a*), when switch $S$ is closed at $\omega t = 0$, the equation governing the behaviour of the circuit is

$$i_0 = C\frac{dv_s}{dt} = C\frac{d}{dt}(V_m \sin\omega t)$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 3.14. Single-phase half-wave diode rectifier with $C$ load (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

$$= \omega C\, V_m \cos \omega t \qquad \text{...(3.32)}$$

Output voltage, $$v_0 = \frac{1}{C}\int i\,dt = V_m \sin \omega t = v_s = v_C$$

Capacitor is charged to voltage $V_m$ at $\omega t = \frac{\pi}{2}$ and subsequently this voltage remains constant at $V_m$. This is shown as $v_0 = v_C$ in Fig. 3.14 (*b*)

Capacitor current or load current is maximum at $\omega t = 0$. Its value at $\omega t = 0$ is $\omega\, CV_m$ as shown.

The diode conducts for $\frac{\pi}{2\omega}$ seconds only from $\omega t = 0$ to $\omega t = \frac{\pi}{2}$. During this interval, diode voltage is, therefore, zero. After $\omega t = \pi/2$, diode voltage $v_D$ is given by

$$v_D = -v_0 + v_s = -V_m + V_m \sin \omega t$$
$$= V(\sin \omega t - 1) \qquad \text{...(3.33)}$$

For Eq. (3.33), the time origin is redefined at $\omega t = \pi/2$.

After $\omega t = \pi/2$, diode voltage is plotted as shown in Fig. 3.14 (*b*). At $\omega t = \frac{3\pi}{2}$, $v_D = -2\,V_m$.

Average value of voltage across diode,

$$V_D = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} V_m(\sin \omega t - 1)\, d(\omega t)$$
$$= V_m = \sqrt{2}\, V_s \qquad \text{...(3.34 a)}$$

Rms value of fundamental component of voltage across diode,

$$V_{1r} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t\, d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2} = \frac{V_m}{\sqrt{2}} \qquad \text{...(3.34 b)}$$

Rms value of voltage across diode

$$= \sqrt{V_D^2 + V_{1r}^2} = 1.225\, V_m \qquad \text{...(3.35)}$$

**Example 3.5.** *A single-phase 230 V, 1 kW heater is connected across single-phase 230 V, 50 Hz supply through a diode. Calculate the power delivered to the heater element. Find also the peak diode current and input power factor.*

**Solution.** Heater resistance, $R = \frac{230^2}{1000}\,\Omega$

Rms value of output voltage, from Eq. (3.22), is

$$V_{or} = \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{2}$$

Power absorbed by heater element

$$= \frac{V_{or}^2}{R} = \frac{2 \times 230^2}{4} \times \frac{1000}{230^2} = 500 \text{ W}$$

Peak value of diode current, from Eq. (3.25), is given by

$$\frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{230^2} \times 1000 = 6.1478 \text{ A}$$

$$\text{Input power factor} = \frac{V_{or}}{V_s} = \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{2} \times \frac{1}{230} = 0.707 \text{ lag.}$$

(*d*) **RE Load :** Single-phase half-wave rectifier with load resistance $R$ and load counter emf $E$ is shown in Fig. 3.15 (*a*). If the switch $S$ is closed at $\omega t = 0°$ or when $v_s = 0$, then diode would not conduct at $\omega t = 0$ because diode is reverse biased until source voltage $v_s$ equals $E$. When $V_m \sin \theta_1 = E$, diode $D$ starts conducting and the turn-on angle $\theta_1$ is given by

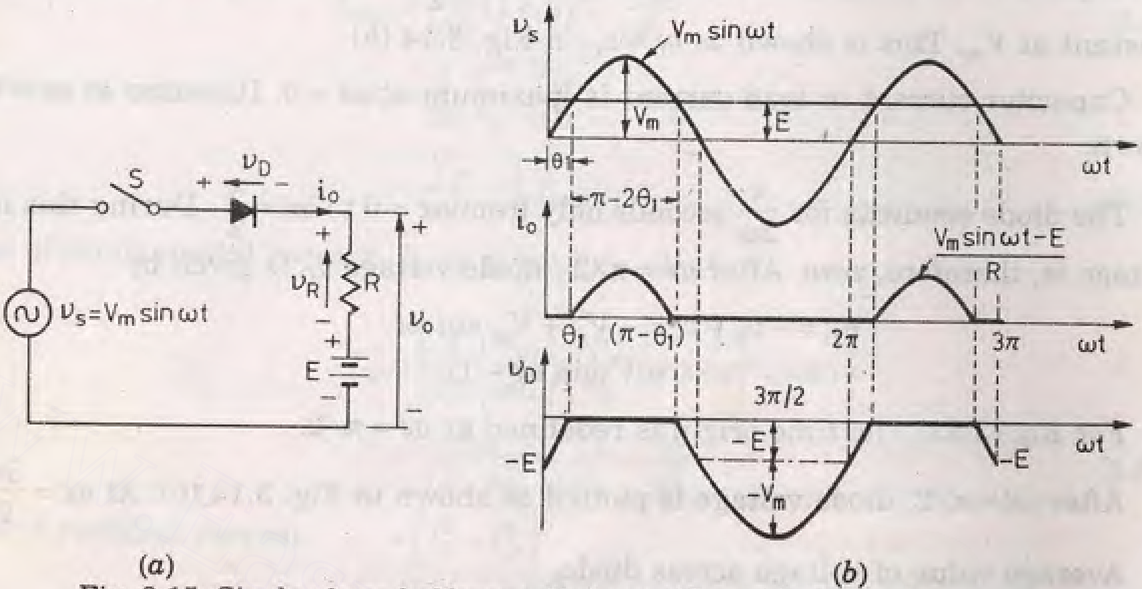


Fig. 3.15. Single-phase half-wave diode rectifier with *RE* load.

$$\theta_1 = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{E}{V_m}\right) \qquad \text{...(3.36)}$$

The diode now conducts from $\omega t = \theta_1$ to $\omega t = (\pi - \theta_1)$, *i.e.* conduction angle for diode is $(\pi - 2\theta_1)$ as shown in Fig. 3.15 (*b*). During the conduction period of diode, the voltage equation for the circuit is

$$V_m \sin \omega t = E + i_0 R$$

or

$$i_0 = \frac{V_m \sin \omega t - E}{R} \qquad \text{...(3.37)}$$

Average value of this current is given by

$$I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi R}\left[\int_{\theta_1}^{\pi - \theta_1} (V_m \sin \omega t - E)\, d(\omega t)\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi R}\,[2\, V_m \cos \theta_1 - E\,(\pi - 2\theta_1)] \qquad \text{...(3.38)}$$

Rms value of the load current of Eq. (3.37) is

$$I_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\theta_1}^{\pi - \theta_1}\left(\frac{V_m \sin \omega t - E}{R}\right) \cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \left[\frac{1}{2\pi\theta^2}\int_{\theta_1}^{\pi - \theta_1}(V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t + E^2 - 2\, V_m\, E \sin \omega t)\, d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \left[\frac{1}{2\pi R^2}\left\{(V_s^2+E^2)(\pi-2\theta_1)+V_s^2 \sin 2\theta_1 - 4\, V_m\, E \cos \theta_1\right\}\right]^{1/2} \qquad \text{...(3.39)}$$

Power delivered to load,

$$P = E\, I_0 + I_{or}^2\, R \text{ watts} \qquad \text{...(3.40)}$$

$$\text{Supply pf} = \frac{\text{Power delivered to load}}{\text{(Source voltage) (rms value of source current)}}$$

$$= \frac{E\, I_0 + I_{or}^2\, R}{V_s \cdot I_{or}} \qquad \text{...(3.41)}$$

It is seen from Fig. 3.15 (*a*) that at $\omega t = 0°$, $v_D = -E$ and at $\omega t = \theta_1$, $v_D = 0$. During the period diode conducts, $v_D = 0$. When $\omega t = 3\pi/2$, $v_s = -V_m$ and $v_D = -(V_m + E)$. Thus *PIV* for diode is $(V_m + E)$.

**Example 3.6** *A dc battery of constant emf E is charged through a resistor as shown in Fig. 3.15 (a). For source voltage of 235 V, 50 Hz and for $R = 8\Omega$, $E = 150$ V,*

*(a) find the value of average charging current,*

*(b) find the power supplied to battery and that dissipated in the resistor,*

*(c) calculate the supply pf,*

*(d) find the charging time in case battery capacity is 1000 Wh and*

*(e) find rectifier efficiency and PIV of the diode.*

**Solution** : (*a*) The diode will start conducting at an angle $\theta_1$, where

$$\theta_1 = \sin^{-1}\frac{150}{\sqrt{2}\times 230} = 27.466°$$

Average value of charging current, from Eq. (3.38), is

$$I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi\times 8}\left[2\cdot\sqrt{2}\times 230 \cos 27.466° - 150\left(\pi - \frac{2\times 27.466\times\pi}{180}\right)\right]$$

$$= 4.9676 \text{ A}$$

(*b*) Power delivered to battery

$$= E\, I_0 = 150 \times\times 4.9676 = 745.14 \text{ W}$$

Rms value of charging current, from Eq. (3.39), is

$$I_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi\times 64}\left\{(230^2+150^2)\left(\pi - 2\times 27.466\times\frac{\pi}{180}\right) + 230^2 \sin 27.466 - 4\sqrt{2}\times 230\ 150 \cos 27.466°\right\}\right] = 9.2955 \text{ A}$$

Power dissipated in resistor

$$= I_{or}^2\, R = (9.2955)^2 \times 8 = 691.25 \text{ W}$$

(*c*) From Eq. (3.41), the supply

$$pf = \frac{745.14 + 691.25}{230\times 9.2955} = 0.672 \text{ lag}$$

(*d*) (Power delivered to battery) (charging time in hours)

= Battery capacity in Wh.

$\therefore$ Charging time $= \dfrac{1000}{745.14} = 1.342$ h

(*e*) Rectifier efficiency $= \dfrac{\text{Power delivered to battery}}{\text{Total input power}}$

$= \dfrac{745.14}{745.14 + 691.25} \times 100 = 51.876\%$

(*f*) PIV of diode $= V_m + E = \sqrt{2} \times 230 + 150 = 475.22$ V.

(*e*) **RL Load :** A single-phase one-pulse diode rectifier feeding RL load is shown in Fig. 3.16 (*a*). Current $i_0$ continues to flow-even after source voltage $v_s$ has become negative ; this is because of the presence of inductance $L$ in the load circuit. Voltage $v_R = i_0 R$ has the same waveshape as that of $i_0$. Inductor voltage $v_L = v_s - v_R$ is also shown. The current $i_0$ flows till the two areas $A$ and $B$ are equal. Area $A$ represents the energy stored by $L$ and area $B$ the energy released by $L$. It must be noted that average value of voltage $v_L$ across inductor $L$ is zero.

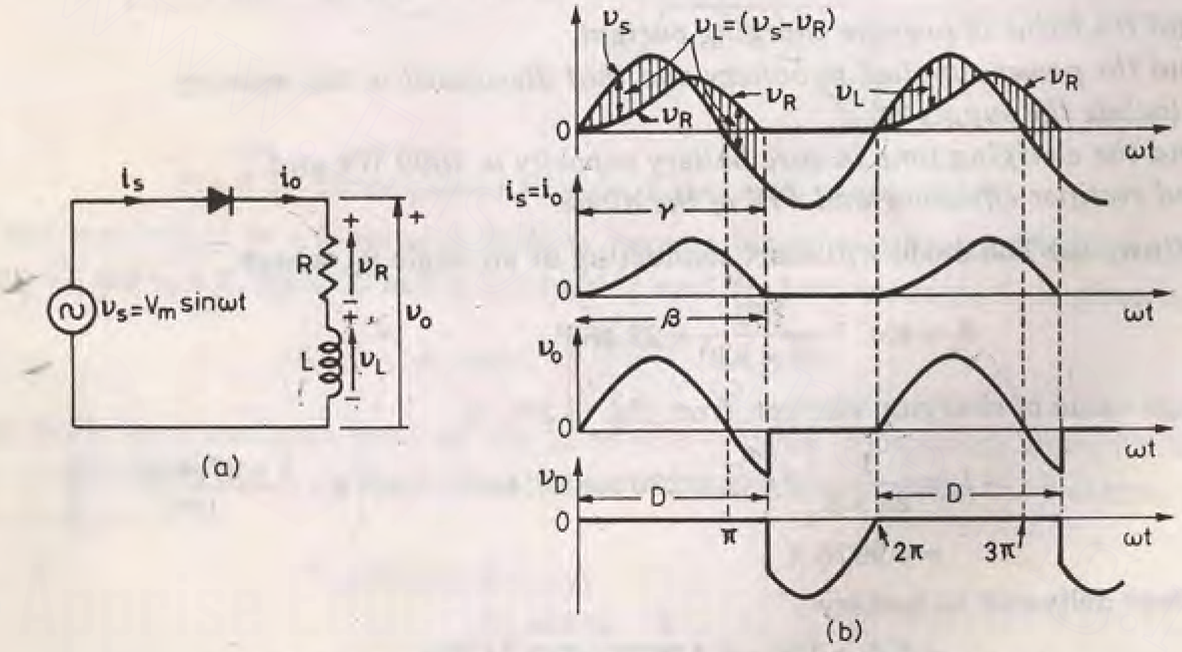


Fig. 3.16. Single-phase half-wave diode rectifier with *RL* load (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

When $i_0 = 0$ at $\omega t = \beta$; $v_L = 0$, $v_R = 0$ and voltage $v_s$ appears as reverse bias across diode $D$ as shown. At $\beta$, voltage $v_D$ across diode jumps from zero to $V_m \sin\beta$ where $\beta > \pi$. Here $\beta = \gamma$ is also the conduction angle of the diode.

Average value of output voltage,

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\beta} V_m \sin\omega t \cdot d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{2\pi}(1 - \cos\beta) \qquad \text{...(3.42)}$$

Average value of load or output current

$$I_0 = \frac{V_0}{R} = \frac{V_m}{2\pi R}(1 - \cos\beta) \qquad \text{...(3.43)}$$

A general expression for output current $i_0$ for $0 < \omega t < \beta$ can be obtained as under :

When diode is conducting, KVL for the circuit of Fig. 3.16 (*a*) gives

$$Ri_0 + L\frac{di_0}{dt} = V_m \sin \omega t$$

The load, or output, current $i_0$ consists of two components, one steady state component $i_s$ and the other transient component $i_t$. Here $i_s$ is given by

$$i_s = \frac{V_m}{\sqrt{R_t^2 X^2}} \sin(\omega t - \phi)$$

where $\phi = \tan^{-1}\frac{X}{R}$ and $X = \omega L$. Here $\phi$ is the angle by which rms current $I_s$ lags $V_s$.

The transient component $i_t$ can be obtained from force-free equation

$$Ri_t + L\frac{di_t}{dt} = 0$$

Its solution gives $$i_t = A\,e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}$$

Total solution for current $i_0$ is, therefore, given by

$$i_0 = i_s + i_t = \frac{V_m}{Z}\sin(\omega t - \phi) + A\,e^{-\frac{R}{L}t} \qquad \text{...(3.44)}$$

where $$Z = \sqrt{R_t^2 + X^2}$$

Constant $A$ can be obtained from the boundary condition at $\omega t = 0$.

At $\omega t = 0$, or at $t = 0$, $i_0 = 0$. Thus, from Eq. (3.44)

$$0 = -\frac{V_m}{Z}\sin\phi + A$$

$$\therefore \qquad A = \frac{V_m}{Z}\sin\phi$$

828883

Substitution of $A$ in Eq. (3.44) gives

$$i_0 = \frac{V_m}{Z}\left[\sin(\omega t - \phi) + \sin\phi \cdot e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right] \qquad \text{...(3.45)}$$

$$\text{for } 0 \le \omega t \le \beta$$

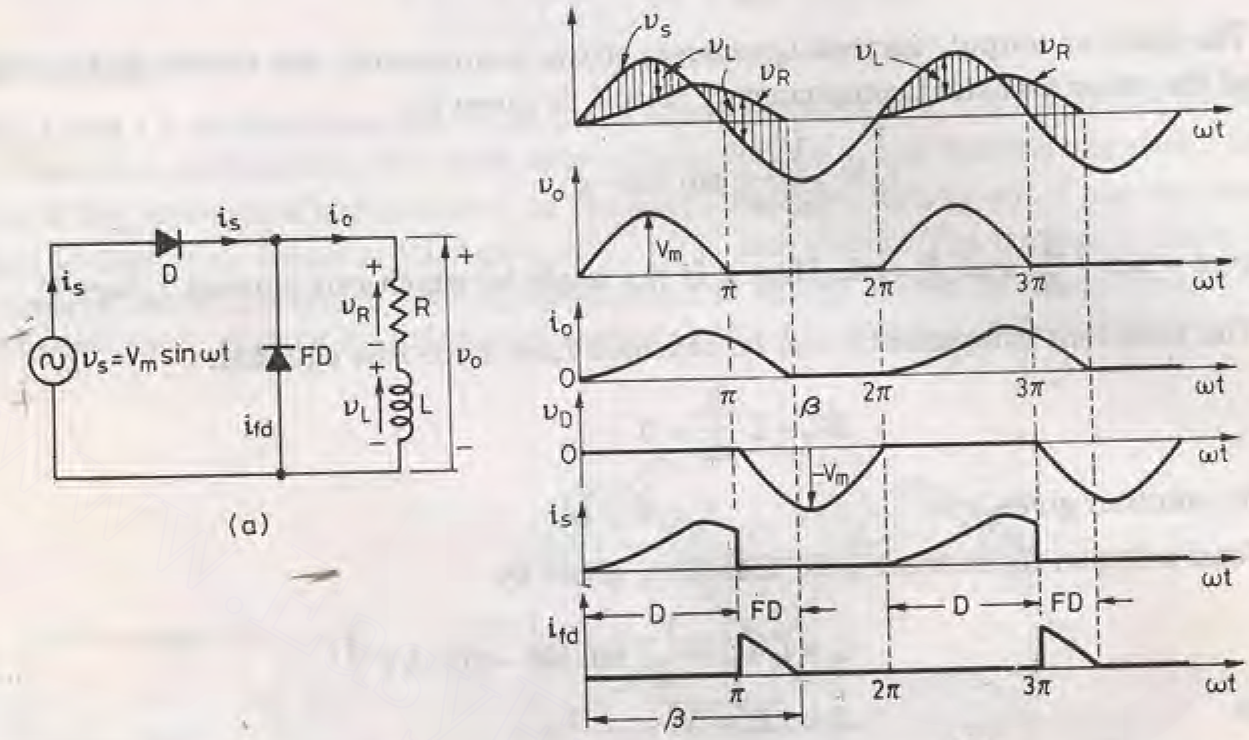
It is also seen from the waveform of $i_0$ in Fig. 3.16 (*b*) that when $\omega t = \beta$, $i_0 = 0$. With this condition, Eq. (3.45) gives

$$\sin(\beta - \phi) + \sin\phi \cdot \exp\left[-\frac{R}{\omega L}\beta\right] = 0$$

The solution of this transcendental equation can give the value of extinction angle $\beta$.

(*f*) **RL load with freewheeling diode** : Performance of single-phase one-pulse diode rectifier with *RL* load can be improved by connecting a freewheeling diode across the load as shown in Fig. 3.17 (*a*). Output voltage is $v_0 = v_s$ for $0 \le \omega t \le \pi$. At $\omega t = \pi$, source voltage $v_s$ is zero, but output current $i_0$ is not zero because of $L$ in the load circuit. Just after $\omega t = \pi$, as $v_s$ tends to reverse, negative polarity of $v_s$ reaches cathode of FD through conducting diode *D*, whereas positive polarity of $v_s$ reaches anode of FD direct. Freewheeling (or flywheel) diode

FD, therefore, gets forward-biased. As a result, load current $i_0$ is immediately transferred from $D$ to FD as $v_s$ tends to reverse. After $\omega t = \pi$, diode current $i_s = 0$ and it is subjected to reverse voltage with PIV equal to $V_m$.



(a)

(b)

Fig. 3.17. Single-phase one-pulse diode rectifier with *RL* load and freewheeling diode (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

After $\omega t = \pi$, current freewheels through circuit RL and FD. The energy stored in $L$ is now dissipated in $R$. When energy stored in $L$ = energy dissipated in $R$, current falls to zero at $\omega t = \beta < 2\pi$. Depending upon the value of $R$ and $L$, the current may not fall to zero even when $\omega t = 2\pi$, this is called continuous conduction. But in Fig. 3.17 (*b*), load current decays to zero before $\omega t = 2\pi$; load current is therefore discontinuous.

The effects of using freewheeling diode are as under :

(*i*) It prevents the output (or load) voltage from becoming negative.

(*ii*) As the energy stored in $L$ is transferred to load $R$ through $FD$, the system efficiency is improved.

(*iii*) The load current waveform is more smooth, the load performance is therefore improved.

The waveforms for $v_s$, $v_0$, $i_0$, $v_D$, $i_s$ and $i_{fd}$ are drawn in Fig. 3.17 (*b*).

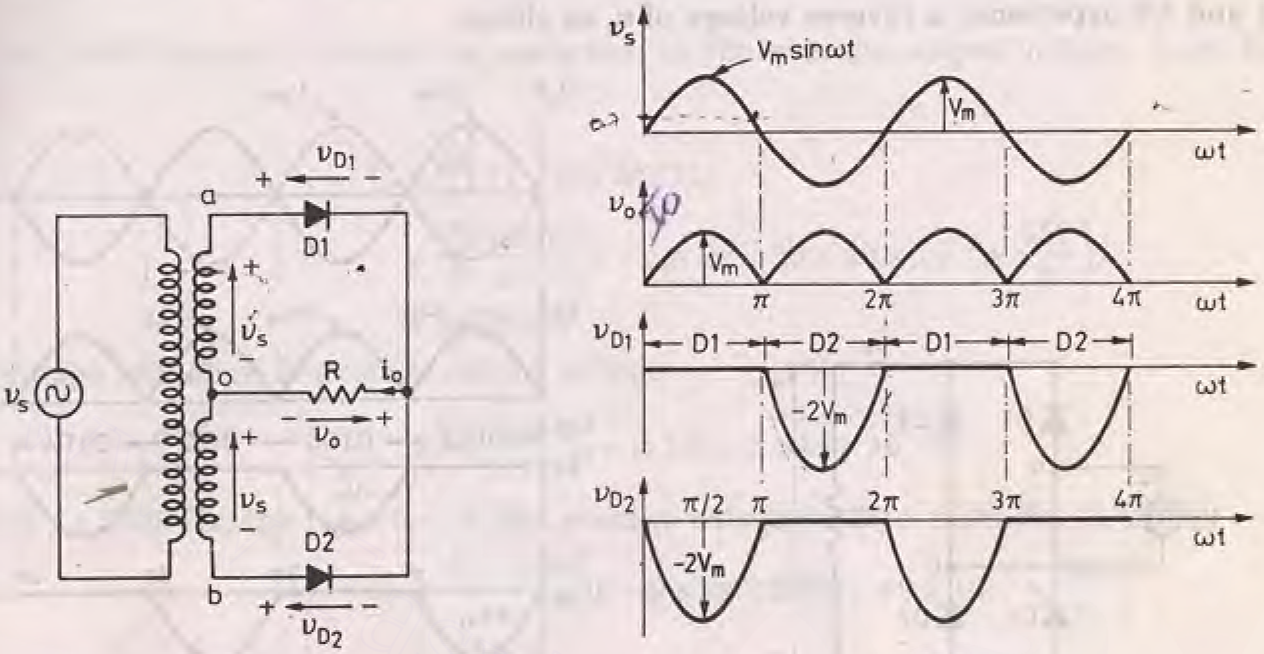
The expression for the load current $i_0$ can be obtained from Art. 6.1.2 if required. It is seen from Fig. 3.17 (*b*) that

average output voltage,
$$V_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^\pi V_m \sin \omega t \, d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{\pi} \qquad \text{...(3.46}$$

and average load current,
$$I_0 = \frac{V_m}{\pi R} \qquad \text{...(3.47}$$

(*g*) **Single-phase full-wave diode rectifier :** There are two types of full-wave diod rectifiers, one is centre-tapped (or mid-point) full-wave diode rectifier and the other i full-wave diode bridge rectifier. These are now described briefly.

(*i*) **Single-phase full-wave mid-point diode rectifier :** Fig. 3.18 (*a*) illustrates a single-phase full-wave mid-point rectifier using diodes. The turns ratio from each secondary to primary is taken as unity for simplicity. When '*a*' is positive with respect to '*b*' ; diode D1 conducts for π radians. In the next half cycle, '*b*' is positive with respect to '*a*' and therefore diode D2 conducts. The output voltage is shown as $v_0$ in Fig. 3.18 (*b*). The waveform for output current $i_0$ (not shown in the figure) is similar to $v_0$ waveform. When '*a*' is positive with respect to '*b*', diode D2 is subjected to a reverse voltage of $2v_s$. In the next half cycle, diode D1 experiences a reverse voltage of $2v_s$. This is shown in Fig. 3.18 (*b*). Thus, for diodes D1 and D2, peak inverse voltage is $2V_m$. Waveforms of Fig. 3.18 (*b*) show that for one cycle of source voltage, there are two pulses of output voltage. So single-phase full-wave diode rectifier can also be called *single-phase two-pulse* diode rectifier.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 3.18. Single-phase full-wave mid-point diode rectifier (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

Average output voltage, $$V_0 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} V_m \sin\omega t \, d(\omega t) = \frac{2V_m}{\pi} \qquad \text{...(3.48)}$$

Average output current, $$I_0 = \frac{V_0}{R}$$

Rms value of output voltage, $$V_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \, d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{\sqrt{2}} = V_s \qquad \text{...(3.49)}$$

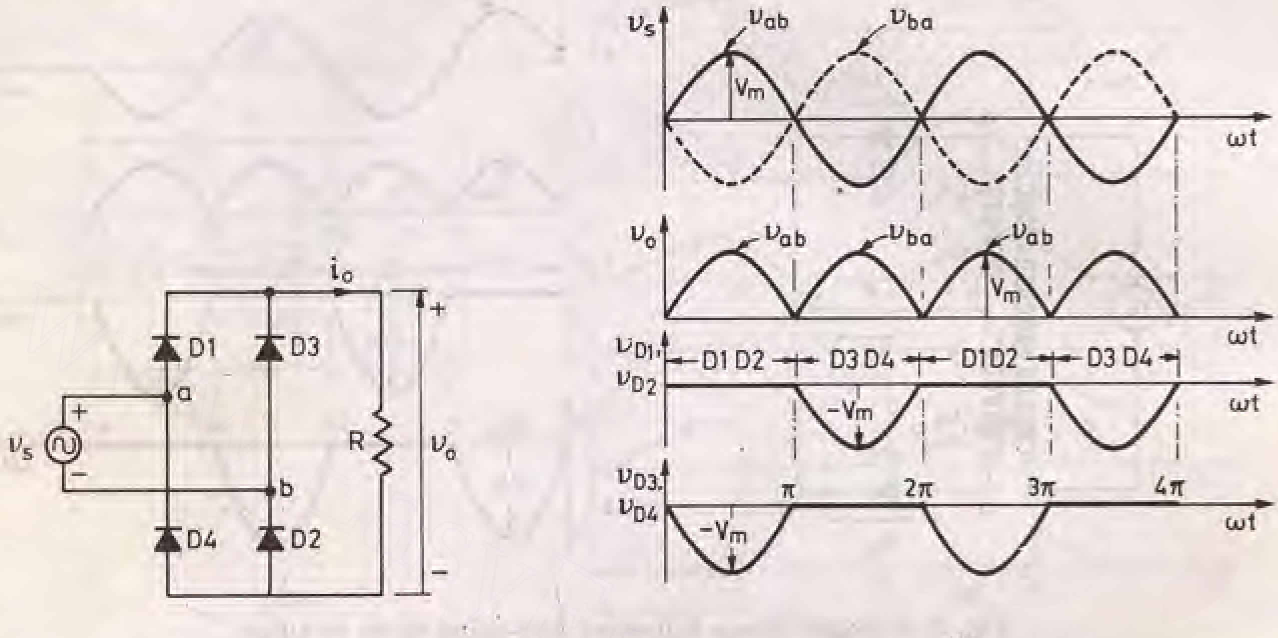
Rms value of load current, $$I_{or} = \frac{V_s}{R}$$

Power delivered to load $$= V_{or} \cdot I_{or} = I_{or}^2 \cdot R$$

Input voltamperes $$= V_s \cdot I_{or}$$

∴ Input $$pf = \frac{V_{or} \cdot I_{or}}{V_s \cdot I_{or}} = 1$$

(*ii*) **Single-phase full-wave diode bridge rectifier :** A single-phase full-wave bridge rectifier employing diodes is shown in Fig. 3.19 (*a*). When '*a*' is positive with respect to '*b*', diodes D1, D2 conduct together so that output voltage is $v_{ab}$. Each of the diodes D3 and D4 is subjected to a reverse voltage of $v_s$ as shown in Fig. 3.19 (*b*), When '*b*' is positive with respect to '*a*', diodes D3, D4 conduct together and output voltage is $v_{ba}$. Each of the two diodes D1 and D2 experience a reverse voltage of $v_s$ as shown.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 3.19. Single-phase full-wave diode brdidge rectifier (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

A comparison of Figs. 3.18 (*b*) and 3.19 (*b*) reveals that a diode in mid-point full-wave rectifier is subjected to PIV of $2V_m$ whereas a diode in full-wave bridge rectifier has PIV of $V_m$ only.

Three-phase bridge rectifiers using diodes are discussed in Chapter 5. Example 3.7 is formulated to illustrate the effect of reverse recovery time on the average output voltage.

**Example 3.7.** *In a single-phase full-wave diode bridge rectifier, the diodes have a reverse recovery time of* 40 μs. *For an ac input voltage of 230 V, determine the effect of reverse recovery time on the average output voltage for a supply frequency of (a) 50 Hz and (b) 2.5 kHz.*

**Solution.** Single-phase full-wave diode bridge rectifier is shown in Fig. 3.19 (*a*) and output voltage $v_0$ is shown in Fig. 3.19 (*b*). If reverse recovery time is taken into consideration, the diodes D1 and D2 will not be off at $\omega t = \pi$ in Fig. 3.19 (*b*), but will continue to conduct until $t = \frac{\pi}{\omega} + t_{rr}$ as depicted in Fig. 3.20. The reduction in output voltage is given by the cross-hatched area. Average value of this reduction in output voltage is given by

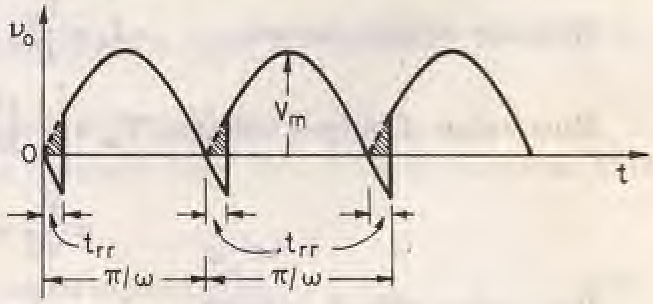


Fig. 3.20. Effect of reverse recovery time on output voltage.

$$V_r = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{t_{rr}} V_m \sin \omega t \, d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{\pi}(1 - \cos \omega t_{rr}) \qquad \text{...(3.50)}$$

With zero reverse recovery time, average output voltage, from Eq. (3.48), is

$$V_0 = \frac{2\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi} = 207.04 \text{ V}$$

(*a*) For $f = 50$ Hz and $t_{rr} = 40$ μs, the reduction in the average output voltage, from Eq. (3.50), is

$$V_r = \frac{V_m}{\pi}(1 - \cos 2\pi f\, t_{rr})$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi}\left(1 - \cos 2\pi \times 50 \times 40 \times 10^{-6} \times \frac{180}{\pi}\right)$$

$$= 8.174 \text{ mV}$$

Percentage reduction in average output voltage

$$= \frac{8.174 \times 10^{-3}}{207.04} \times 100 = 3.948 \times 10^{-3}\%$$

(*b*) For $f = 2500$ Hz, the reduction in the average output voltage, from Eq. (3.50), is

$\frac{3\pi}{2\pi f}$ $\frac{1}{2f}$ $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$

$$V_r = \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi}\left(1 - \cos 2\pi \times 2500 \times 40 \times 10^{-6} \times \frac{180}{\pi}\right)$$

$$= 19.77 \text{ V}$$

Percentage reduction in average output voltage $= \frac{19.77}{207.04} \times 100 = 9.594\%$.

It is seen from above that the effect of reverse recovery time is negligible for diode operation at 50 Hz, but for high-frequency operation of diodes, the effect is noticeable.

**Example 3.8.** *A single-phase full bridge diode rectifier is supplied from 230 V, 50 Hz source. The load consists of $R = 10\ \Omega$ and a large inductance so as to render the load current constant. Determine*

*(a) average values of output voltage and output current,*

*(b) average and rms values of diode currents,*

*(c) rms values of output and input currents, and supply pf.*

**Solution.** The circuit diagram and relevant waveforms for this uncontrolled rectifier are shown in Fig. 3.21.

(*a*) Average value of output voltage,

$$V_0 = \frac{2V_m}{\pi} = \frac{2\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi} = 207.04 \text{ V}$$

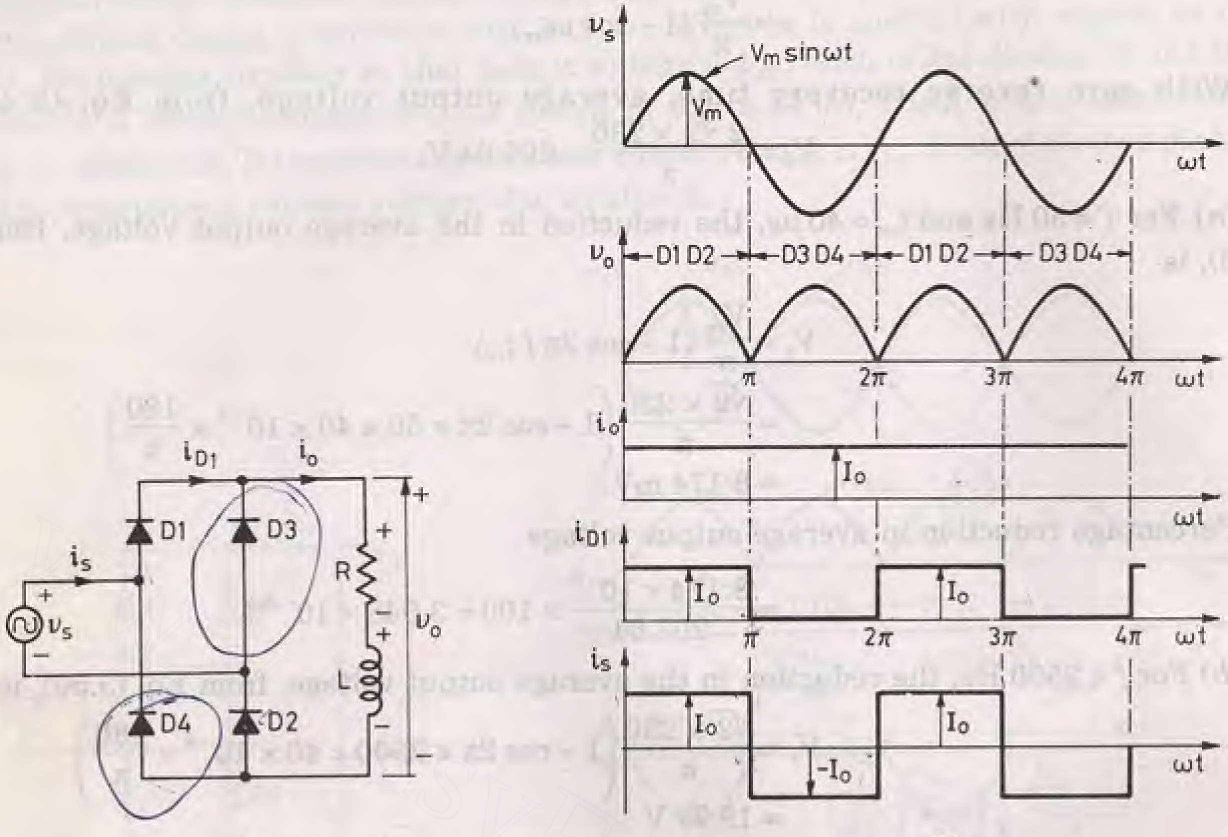
Average value of output current,

$$I_0 = \frac{V_0}{R} = \frac{207.04}{10} = 20.704 \text{ A}$$

(*b*) Average value of diode current,

$$I_{DAV} = \frac{I_0 \cdot \pi}{2\pi} = \frac{I_0}{2} = \frac{20.704}{2} = 10.352 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of diode current, $I_{Dr} = \sqrt{\frac{I_0^2 \pi}{2\pi}} = \frac{I_0}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{20.704}{\sqrt{2}} = 14.642$ A



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 3.21. Pertaining to Example 3.8 (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

As load, or output, current is ripple free, rms value of output current

$$= \text{average value of output current} = I_0 = 20.704 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of source current, $I_s = \sqrt{\dfrac{I_0^2 \pi}{\pi}} = I_0 = 20.704$ A

Load power $= V_0 I_0 = 207.04 \times 20.704$ W

Input power $= V_s I_s \cos\phi$

$\therefore \quad 230 \times 20.704 \times \cos\phi = 207.04 \times 20.704$

$\therefore$ Supply pf $= \cos\phi = \dfrac{207.04}{230} = 0.90$ lagging.

**Example 3.9.** *A diode whose internal resistance is 20 Ω is to supply power to a 1000 Ω load from a 230 V (rms) source of supply. Calculate (a) the peak load current (b) the dc load current (c) the dc diode voltage (d) the percentage regulation from no load to given load.*

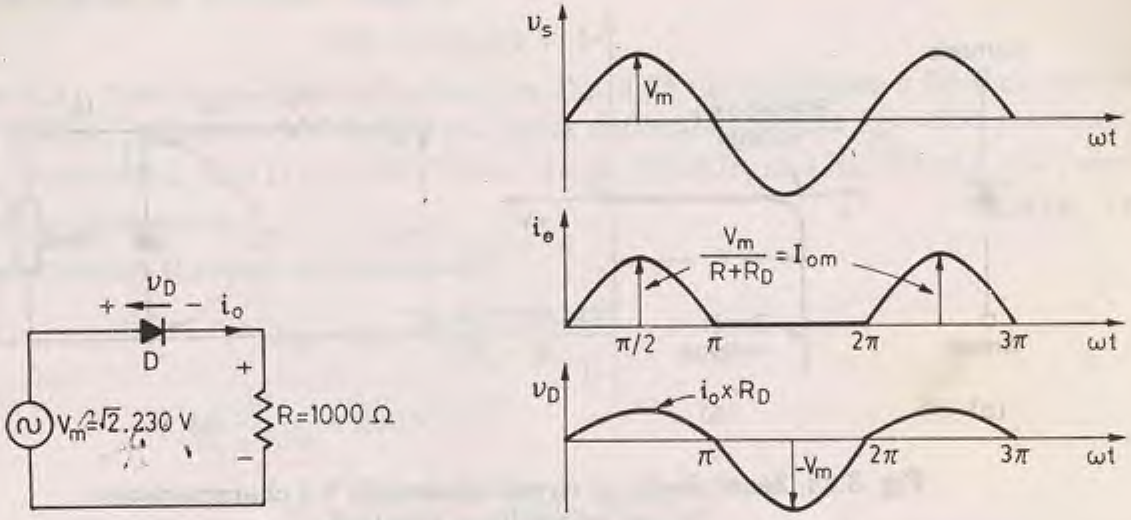
(*I.A.S., 1983*)

**Solution.** A voltage of 230 V supplying power to 1000 Ω, through a single diode, is shown in Fig. 3.22 (*a*). Waveforms for the source voltage, load current $i_0$ and diode voltage $v_D$ are shown in Fig. 3.22 (*b*).

(*a*) It is seen from the waveform of $i_0$ that peak load current $I_{om}$ is given by

$$I_{om} = \frac{V_m}{R + R_D} = \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{1020} = 0.3189 \text{ A}$$

Here $R$ = load resistance and $R_D$ = internal resistance of diode.



(a) (b)

Fig. 3.22. Pertaining to Example 3.9 (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

(*b*) DC load current,

$$I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi} I_{om} \sin \omega t \, d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{I_{om}}{\pi} = 0.10151 \text{ A}$$

(*c*) DC diode voltage,

$$V_D = I_0 R_D - \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi} 230\sqrt{2} \sin \omega t \, d(\omega t)$$

$$= I_0 R_D - \frac{V_m}{\pi} = 0.10151 \times 20 - \frac{230\sqrt{2}}{\pi} = -101.5 \text{ V}$$

(*d*) At no load, load voltage, $V_{on} = \frac{V_m}{\pi} = \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi} = 103.521 \text{ V}$

At given load, load voltage, $V_{01} = \frac{230\sqrt{2}}{\pi} \times \frac{1000}{1020} = 101.491 \text{ V}$

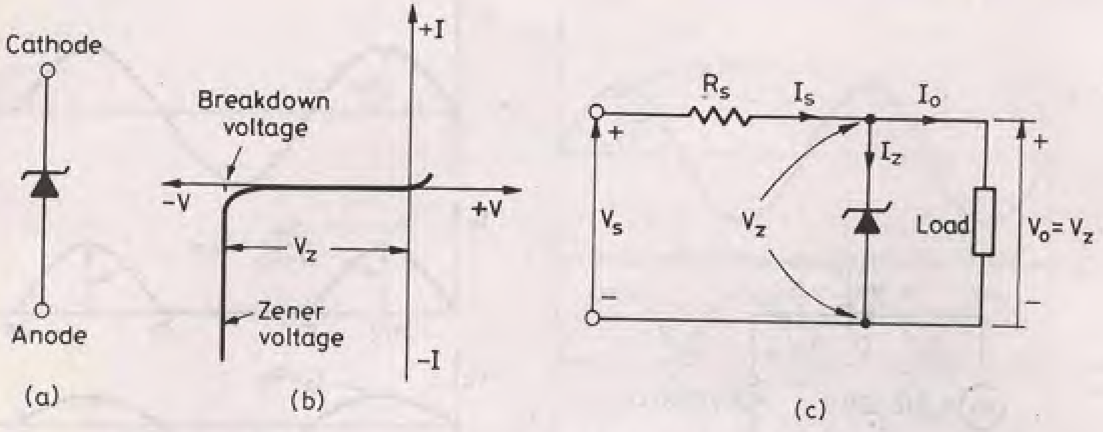
∴ Voltage regulation $= \frac{V_{on} - V_{01}}{V_{on}} \times 100 = \frac{103.521 - 101.491}{103.521} = 1.961\%.$

## 3.6. ZENER DIODES

Zener diodes are specially constructed to have accurate and stable reverse breakdown voltage.

Circuit symbol for Zener diode is shown in Fig. 3.23 (*a*). When it is forward biased, it behaves as a normal diode. When reverse biased, a small leakage current flows. If the reverse voltage across Zener diode is increased, a value of voltage is reached at which reverse breakdown occurs. This is indicated by a sudden increase of Zener current, Fig. 3.23 (*b*). The voltage after reverse breakdown remains practically constant over a wide range of Zener current. This makes it suitable for use as a voltage regulator to furnish constant voltage from a source whose voltage may vary noticeably.

For the operation of Zener diode as a voltage regulator, (*i*) it must be reverse biased with a voltage greater than its breakdown, or Zener, voltage and (*ii*) a series resistor $R_s$, Fig. 3.23 (*c*) is necessary to limit the reverse current through the diode below its rated value.



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 3.23. Zener diode (*a*) circuit symbol (*b*) V-I characteristics (*c*) use as a voltage regulator.

If $V_z$ = voltage across Zener diode, then it is seen from Fig. 3.23 (*c*) that source current $I_s$ is

$$I_s = \frac{V_s - V_z}{R_s}$$

Load, or output, current, $I_0 = \dfrac{V_z}{R}$ where $R$ = load resistance. Current through Zener diode,

$$I_z = I_s - I_0$$

Power rating of a Zener diode is $V_Z \cdot I_Z$. These are available in a voltage range from few volts to about 280 V.

**Example 3.10.** *Design a Zener voltage regulator, shown in Fig. 3.24, to meet the following specifications :*

*Load voltage = 6.8 V, Source voltage $V_s$ is 20 V ± 20% and load current is 30 mA ± 50%.*

*The Zener requires a minimum current of 1 mA to breakdown. The diode D has a forward voltage drop of 0.6 V.*

**Solution.** When source voltage is maximum and load current is minimum, then source resistance should be maximum.

$$\therefore \quad V_{s \cdot max} = V_L + (I_{L \cdot min} + I_z)\, R_{s \cdot max}$$

$$\therefore \quad R_{s \cdot min} = \frac{(20 \times 0.8) - 6.8}{[30 \times 0.5 + 1] \times 10^{-3}} = 1075\ \Omega$$

Similarly,

$$V_{s \cdot min} = V_L + (I_{L \cdot max} + I_z)\, R_{s \cdot min}$$

$$\therefore \quad R_{s \cdot \text{min}} = \frac{(20 \times 0.8) - 6.8}{[30 \times 1.5 + 1] \times 10^{-3}} = 200\ \Omega$$

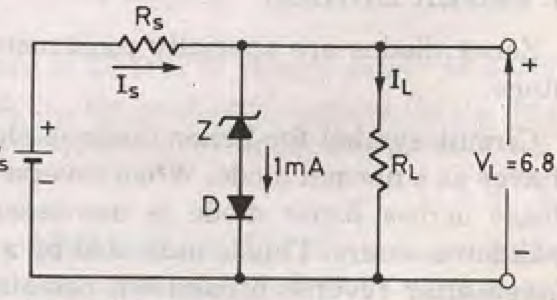


Fig. 3.24. Pertaining to Example 3.10.

Maximum load resistance,

$$R_{L \cdot max} = \frac{V_L}{I_{L \cdot min}} = \frac{6.8}{30 \times 0.5 \times 10^{-3}} = 453.3\ \Omega$$

Minimum load resistance, $R_{L \cdot min} = \dfrac{V_L}{I_{L \cdot \text{max}}} = \dfrac{6.8}{30 \times 1.5 \times 10^{-3}} = 151.5\ \Omega$

The voltage rating or the Zener diode is

$$6.8 - 0.6 = 6.2 \text{ V}.$$

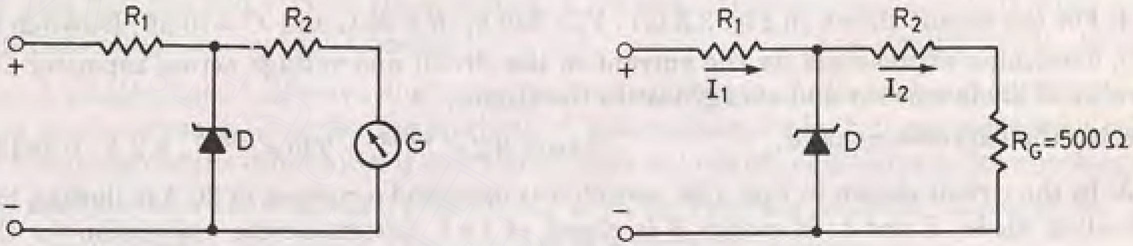
**Example 3.11.** *The complete circuit shown in Fig. 3.25 (a) represents a 25 V dc voltmeter where G is a PMMC galvanometer having full-scale deflection current* $I_{fsd} = 200$ *micro-A and resistance* $R_G = 500$ ohms, *and D is a 20-V Zener diode. Find* $R_1$ *and* $R_2$. *What is the function of the diode D in this circuit ?* *(GATE, 1990)*

**Solution.** Current through galvanometer,

$$I_{fsd} = I_2 = \frac{\text{Zener voltage}}{R_2 + R_G}$$

or $$\frac{20}{R_2 + 500} = 200 \times 10^{-6}$$

or $$R_2 = \frac{20 \times 10^6}{200} - 500 = 99.5 \text{ k}\Omega$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 3.25. Pertaining to Example 3.11.

As Zener diode current is not specified, let it be assumed zero.

$$\therefore \qquad I_1 - I_2 = I_z = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad I_1 = I_2 = 200 \ \mu\text{A}$$

Also $$I_1 = \frac{25 - 20}{R_1} = 200 \times 10^{-6}$$

or $$R_1 = \frac{5 \times 10^6}{200} = 25 \text{ k}\Omega$$

Function of Zener diode is to provide a constant voltage to the galvanometer circuit. Whenever voltage across this diode exceeds 20 V, it conducts and the excess current is shunted away from galvanometer *G*. So here diode *D* prevents overloading of the PMMC galvanometer.

## PROBLEMS

**3.1.** Capacitor in the circuit of Fig. 3.2 (*a*) is initially charged with (*a*) $V_0$ volts and (*b*) $-V_0$ volts. For both these parts, determine the expressions for current in the circuit and voltage across capacitor. Sketch the waveforms for current as well as capacitor voltage.

What is the final value of voltage across capacitor in each case ?

$$\left[\textbf{Ans.} \quad (a) \ \frac{V_s - V_0}{R} e^{-t/RC}, \ V_0 + (V_s - V_0)(1 - e^{-t/RC}), \ V_s, \right.$$
$$\left. (b) \ \frac{V_s + V_0}{R} e^{-t/RC}, \ -V_0 + (V_s + V_0)(1 - e^{-t/RC}), \ V_s \right]$$

**3.2.** A diode is connected in series with *LC* circuit. If this circuit is switched on to dc source of voltage $V_s$ at $t = 0$, derive expressions for current through and voltage across capacitor. The capacitor is initially charged to a voltage of $-V_0$. Sketch waveforms for $i$, $v_C$, $v_L$ and $v_D$.

In case this circuit has $V_s = 230$ V, $V_0 = 50$ V, $L = 0.2$ mH and $C = 10$ μF, determine the diode conduction time, diode peak current and final steady state voltage across the capacitor and diode.

$$\left[\textbf{Ans } i_{(t)} = (V_s + V_0)\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}\ \sin \omega_0 t,\ v_C(t) = (V_s + V_0)\ (1 - \cos \omega_0 t) - V_0,\ 44.72\ \mu\text{s},\ 62.61\ \text{A}\ 510\ \text{V},\ -280\ \text{V}\right]$$

**3.3.** (*a*) For the circuit shown in Fig. 3.4 (*a*), the circuit is initially relaxed. If switch *S* is closed at $t = 0$, sketch the variations of $i$, $v_L$, $v_C$ and $v_D$ as a function of time. Derive the expressions describing these functions.

(*b*) For part (*a*), $V_s = 220$ V, $L = 4$ mH, $C = 5$ μF. Find the diode conduction time and peak diode current. Determine also $v_C$, $v_L$ and $v_D$ after diode stops conducting.

[**Ans.** (*b*) 0.444 ms, 7.778 A, 440 V, 0, − 220 V]

**3.4.** For the circuit shown in Fig. 3.5 (*a*) ; $V_0 = 230$ V, $R = 25\ \Omega$ and $C = 10$ μF. If switch *S* is closed at $t = 0$, determine expressions for the current in the circuit and voltage across capacitor *C*. Find the peak value of diode current and energy lost in the circuit.

Derive the expressions used. [**Ans.** $9.2\, e^{-4000t}$, $-230\, e^{-4000t}$, 9.2 A, 0.2645 watt–sec]

**3.5.** In the circuit shown in Fig. 3.26, switch *S* is open and a current of 20 A is flowing through the freewheeling diode, *R* and *L*. If switch *S* is closed at $t = 0$, determine the expression for the current through the switch.

[**Ans** $i_{(t)} = 22 - 2\, e^{-1000t}$]

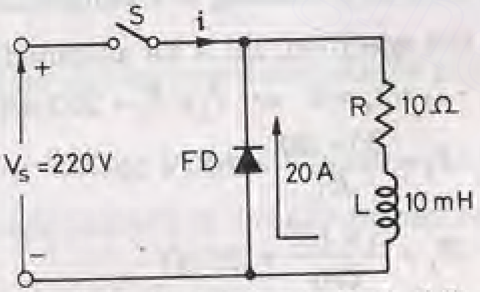


Fig. 3.26. Pertaining to Prob. 3.5.

**3.6.** (*a*) Describe how the energy trapped in an inductor can be recovered and returned to the source.

(*b*) A 230 V, 1 kW heater, fed through single-phase half-wave diode rectifier, has rated voltage at its terminals. Find the ac input voltage. Find also PIV of diode and peak-diode current.

[**Ans.** (*b*) 325.32 V, 460 V, 8.696 A]

**3.7.** (*a*) In the circuit shown in Fig. 3.27, a PMMC ammeter is placed in series with diode and a PMMC voltmeter across the diode. Take PMMC instruments ideal. Find the readings on these instruments. Derive the expressions used for obtaining these readings.

(*b*) If PMMC ammeter is replaced by MI ammeter, find its reading.

[**Ans.** 10.352 A, 0 V, 12.6812 A]

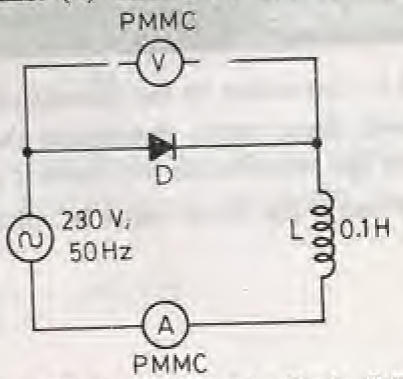


Fig. 3.27. Pertaining to Prob. 3.7.

**3.8.** (*a*) In the circuit of Fig. 3.28, ideal PMMC voltmeters are placed, one across capacitor and another across diode as shown. Find the voltmeter readings. Obtain the expressions used for determining these readings.

(*b*) In case PMMC voltmeter 2 is replaced by MI voltmeter, find its reading.

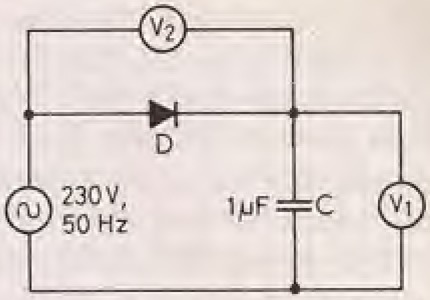


Fig. 3.28. Pertaining to Prob. 3.8.

**3.9.** A battery is charged by a single-phase half-wave diode rectifier. The supply is 30 V, 50 Hz and the battery emf is constant at 6 V. Find the resistance to be inserted in series with the battery to limit the charging current to 4 A. Take a voltage drop of 1 V across diode. Derive the expression used.

Draw waveform of voltage across diode and find its PIV.

$$\left[\textbf{Ans}\ \frac{1}{2\pi R}\,[2V_m\cos\theta_1-(E+1)(\pi-2\,\theta_1)],\ 2.5458\ \Omega,\ 48.42\ \text{V}\right]$$

**3.10**. (*a*) A single-phase half-wave uncontrolled rectifier is connected to RL load. Derive an expression for the load current in terms of $V_m$, $Z$, $\omega$ etc.

(*b*) For part (*a*), $V_s = 230$ V at 50 Hz, $R = 10\ \Omega$, $L = 5$ mH, extinction angle = 210°. Find average values of output voltage and output current. [**Ans.** (*b*)193.172 V, 19.3172 A]

**3.11.** (*a*) A single-phase half-wave diode rectifier feeds power to (*i*) RL load and (*ii*) RL load with freewheeling diode across it. Describe the working of this rectifier for both these parts with relevant waveforms and bring out the differences if any. Hence point out the effect of using a freewheeling diode.

(*b*) For part (*a*), $V_s = 230$ V at 50 Hz, $R = 20\ \Omega$, $L = 1$ H. Find the average values of the output voltage and output current with and without the use of a flywheeling diode.

[**Ans.** (*b*) With freewheeling diode : $V_0 = 103.52$ V and $I_0 = 5.176$ A

Without freewheeling diode : Extinction angle $\beta$ not known, so $V_0, I_0$ cannot be calculated ]

**3.12.**. (*a*) For the circuit shown in Fig. 3.29, the output current $i_0$ is considered constant at $I_0$ because of large $L$. Sketch the waveforms of $v_s$, $i_0$, $v_0$, $i_D$, $i_{fd}$, and $i_s$.

(*b*) For the above circuit, find

(*i*) average values of output voltage and output current,
(*ii*) average and rms values of freewheeling diode current,
(*iii*) supply pf. [**Ans.** (*b*) (*i*) 103.52 V, 26.76 A (*ii*) 13.38 A, 18.925 A (*iii*) 0.6364 lag]

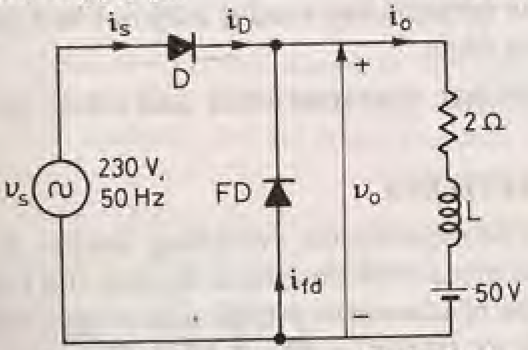


Fig. 3.29. Pertaining to Prob. 3.12.

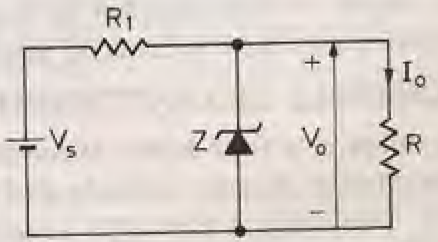


Fig. 3.30. Pertaining to Prob. 3.13.

**3.13.** For the circuit shown in Fig. 3.30, $V_s = 160$ V, $V_z = 40$ V and zener diode current varies from 4 to 40 mA. Find the minimum and maximum values of $R_1$ so as to allow voltage regulation for output current $I_0 =$ zero to its maximum value $I_{0m}$. Also calculate $I_{0m}$. [**Ans.** 3k Ω, 30k Ω, 36 mA]

# FOUR

# Thyristors

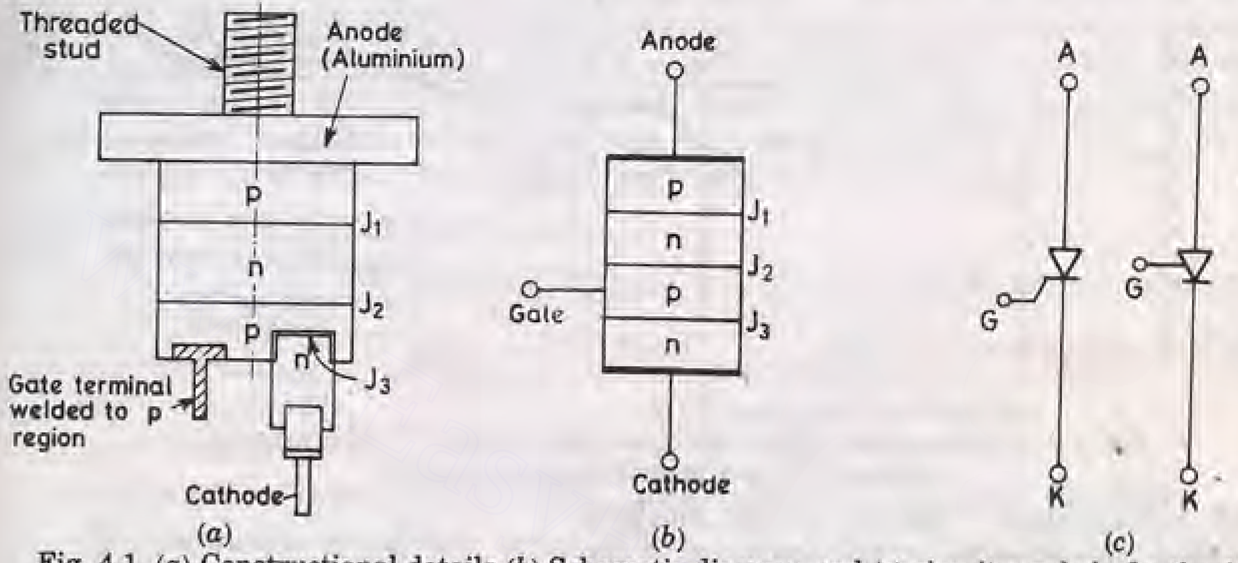
As stated before, Bell Laboratories were the first to fabricate a silicon-based semiconductor device called thyristor. Its first prototype was introduced by GEC (USA) in 1957. This company did a great deal of pioneering work about the utility of thyristors in industrial applications. Later on, many other devices having characteristics similar to that of a thyristor were developed. These semiconductor devices, with their characteristics identical with that of a thyristor, are triac, diac, silicon-controlled switch, programmable unijunction transistor (PUT), GTO, RCT etc. This whole family of semiconductor devices is given the name thyristor. Thus the term thyristor denotes a family of semiconductor devices used for power control in dc and ac systems. One oldest member of this thyristor family, called silicon-controlled rectifier (SCR), is the most widely used device. At present, the use of SCR is so vast that over the years, the word thyristor has become synonymous with SCR. It appears that the term thyristor is now becoming more common than the actual term SCR. In this book, the term SCR and thyristor will be used at random for the same device SCR. Other members of thyristor family are also discussed in this chapter.

A thyristor has characteristics similar to a thyratron tube. But from the construction view point, a thyristor (a *pnpn* device) belongs to transistor (*pnp or npn* device) family. The name 'thyristor', is derived by a combination of the capital letters from THYRatron and transISTOR. This means that thyristor is a solid state device like a transistor and has characteristics similar to that of a thyratron tube. The present-day reader may not be familiar with thyratron tube as this is not being taught these days.

The object of this chapter is to discuss the thyristor characteristics and other related topics useful for their industrial applications.

## 4.1. TERMINAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THYRISTORS

Thyristor is a four layer, three-junction, *p-n-p-n* semiconductor switching device. It has three terminals ; anode, cathode and gate. Fig. 4.1 (*a*) gives constructional details of a typical thyristor. Basically, a thyristor consists of four layers of alternate *p*-type and *n*-type silicon semiconductors forming three junctions $J_1$, $J_2$ and $J_3$ as shown in Fig. 4.1 (*a*). The threaded portion is for the purpose of tightening the thyristor to the frame or heat sink with the help of a nut. Gate terminal is usually kept near the cathode terminal Fig. 4.1 (*a*). Schematic diagram and circuit symbol for a thyristor are shown respectively in Figs. 4.1 (*b*) and (*c*). The terminal connected to outer *p* region is called anode (*A*), the terminal connected to outer *n* region is called cathode and that connected to inner *p* region is called the gate (*G*). For large current applications, thyristors need better cooling ; this is achieved to a great extent by mounting them onto heat sinks. SCR rating has improved considerably since its introduction in 1957. Now SCRs of voltage rating 10 kV and an rms current rating of 3000 A with corresponding power-handling capacity of 30 MW are available. Such a high power thyristor can be switched on by a low voltage supply of about 1 A and 10 W and this gives us an idea of the immense power amplification capability ($= 3 \times 10^6$) of this device. As SCRs are solid state devices, they are compact, possess high reliability and have low loss. Because of these useful features, SCR is almost universally employed these days for all high power-controlled devices.



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 4.1. (*a*) Constructional details (*b*) Schematic diagram and (*c*) circuit symbol of a thyristor.

An SCR is so called because *silicon* is used for its construction and its operation as a *rectifier* (very low resistance in the forward conduction and very high resistance in the reverse direction) can be *controlled*. Like the diode, an SCR is an unidirectional device that blocks the current flow from cathode to anode. Unlike the diode, a thyristor also blocks the current flow from anode to cathode until it is triggered into conduction by a proper gate signal between gate and cathode terminals.

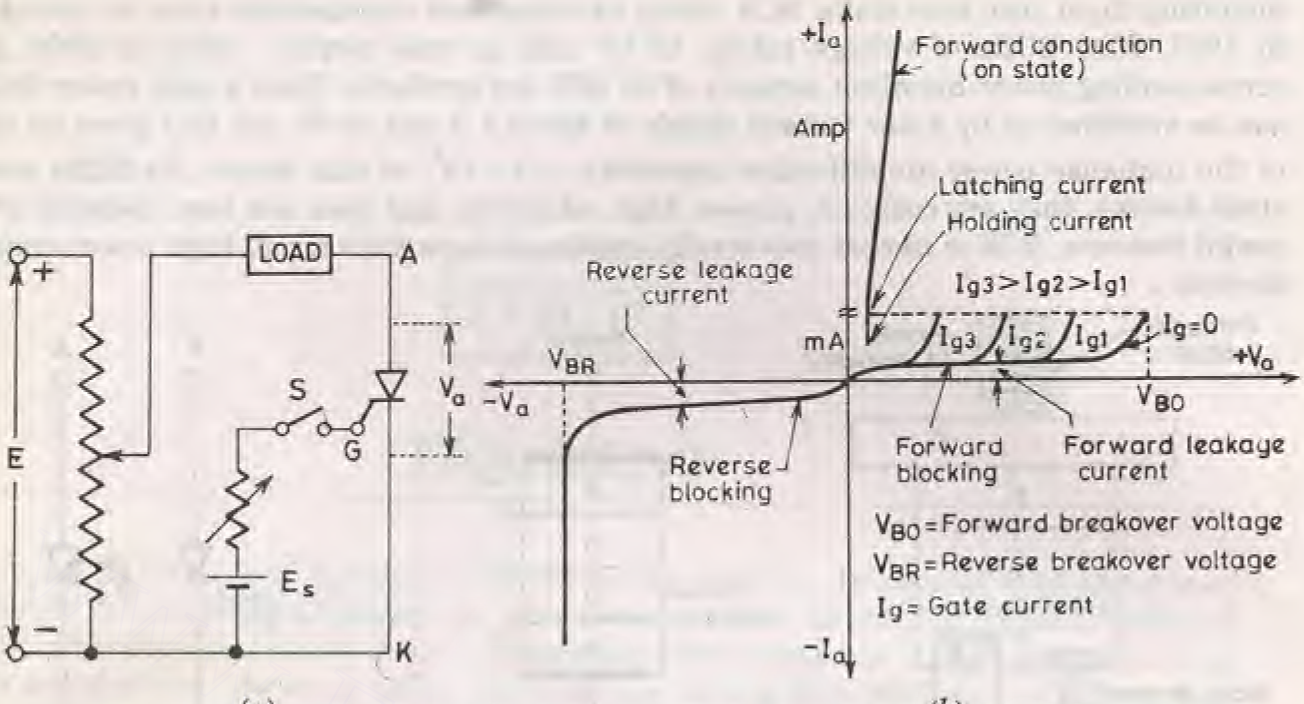
For engineering applications of thyristors, their terminal characteristics must be known. In this article, their static *V-I* characteristics, dynamic characteristics during turn-on and turn-off processes and their gate characteristics are discussed.

### 4.1.1. Static V-I Characteristics of a Thyristor

An elementary circuit diagram for obtaining static *V-I* characteristics of a thyristor is shown in Fig. 4.2 (*a*). The anode and cathode are connected to main source through the load. The gate and cathode are fed from a source $E_s$ which provides positive gate current from gate to cathode.

Fig. 4.2 (*b*) shows static *V-I* characteristics of a thyristor. Here $V_a$ is the anode voltage across thyristor terminals $A, K$ and $I_a$ is the anode current. Typical SCR *V-I* characteristic shown in Fig. 4.2 (*b*) reveals that a thyristor has three basic modes of operation ; namely, reverse blocking mode, forward blocking (off-state) mode and forward conduction (on-state) mode. These three modes of operation are now discussed below :

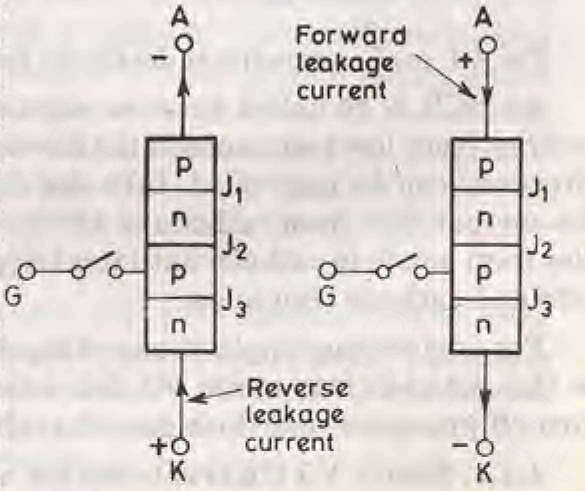
**Reverse Blocking Mode.** When cathode is made positive with respect to anode with switch $S$ open, Fig. 4.2 (*a*), thyristor is reverse biased as shown in Fig. 4.3 (*a*). Junctions $J_1, J_3$ are seen to be reverse biased whereas junction $J_2$ is forward biased. The device behaves as if two diodes are connected in series with reverse voltage applied across them. A small leakage current of the order of a few milliamperes (or a few microamperes depending upon



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.2. (*a*) Elementary circuit for obtaining thyristor V-I characteristics (*b*) Static V-I characteristics of a thyristor.

the SCR rating) flows. This is reverse blocking mode, called the off-state, of the thyristor. If the reverse voltage is increased, then at a critical breakdown level, called reverse breakdown voltage $V_{BR}$, an avalanche occurs at $J_1$ and $J_3$ and the reverse current increases rapidly. A large current associated with $V_{BR}$ gives rise to more losses in the SCR. This may lead to thyristor damage as the junction temperature may exceed its permissible temperature rise. It should, therefore, be ensured that maximum working reverse voltage across a thyristor does not exceed $V_{BR}$. When reverse voltage applied across a thyristor is less than $V_{BR}$, the device offers a high impedance in the reverse direction. The SCR in the reverse blocking mode may therefore be treated as an open switch.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.3. (*a*) $J_2$ forward biased and $J_1$, $J_3$ reverse biased (*b*) $J_2$ reverse biased and $J_1$, $J_3$ forward biased.

Note that *V-I* characteristic after avalanche breakdown during reverse blocking mode is applicable only when load resistance is zero, Fig. 4.2 (*b*). In case load resistance is present, a large anode current associated with avalanche breakdown at $V_{BR}$ would cause substantial voltage drop across load and as a result, *V-I* characteristic in third quadrant would bend to the right of vertical line drawn at $V_{BR}$.

**Forward Blocking Mode** : When anode is positive with respect to the cathode, with gate circuit open, thyristor is said to be forward biased as shown in Fig. 4.3 (*b*). It is seen from this figure that junctions $J_1$, $J_3$ are forward biased but junction $J_2$ is reverse biased. In this mode, a small current, called forward leakage current, flows as shown in Figs. 4.2 (*b*) and 4.3 (*b*). In case the forward voltage is increased, then the reverse biased junction $J_2$ will have an avalanche breakdown at a voltage called *forward breakover voltage* $V_{BO}$. When forward voltage is less than $V_{BO}$, SCR offers a high impedance. Therefore, a thyristor can be treated as an open switch even in the forward blocking mode.

**Forward Conduction Mode :** In this mode, thyristor conducts currents from anode to cathode with a very small voltage drop across it. A thyristor is brought from forward blocking mode to forward conduction mode by turning it on by exceeding the forward breakover voltage or by applying a gate pulse between gate and cathode. In this mode, thyristor is in on-state and behaves like a closed switch. Voltage drop across thyristor in the on state is of the order of 1 to 2 V depending on the rating of SCR. It may be seen from Fig. 4.2 (*b*) that this voltage drop increases slightly with an increase in anode current. In conduction mode, anode current is limited by load impedance alone as voltage drop across SCR is quite small. This small voltage drop $v_T$ across the device is due to ohmic drop in the four layers.

## 4.2. THYRISTOR TURN-ON METHODS

With anode positive with respect to cathode, a thyristor can be turned on by any one of the following techniques :

(*a*) Forward voltage triggering
(*b*) gate triggering
(*c*) *dv/dt* triggering
(*d*) Temperature triggering
(*e*) Light triggering.

These methods of turning-on a thyristor are now discussed one after the other.

(*a*) *Forward Voltage Triggering :* When anode to cathode forward voltage is increased with gate circuit open, the reverse biased junction $J_2$ will break. This is known as avalanche breakdown and the voltage at which avalanche occurs is called forward breakover voltage $V_{BO}$. At this voltage, thyristor changes from off-state (high voltage with low leakage current) to on-state characterised by low voltage across thyristor with large forward current. As other junctions $J_1$, $J_3$ are already forward biased, breakdown of junction $J_2$ allows free movement of carriers across three junctions and as a result, large forward anode-current flows. As stated before, this forward current is limited by the load impedance. In practice, the transition from off-state to on-state obtained by exceeding $V_{BO}$ is never employed as it may destroy the device.

The magnitudes of forward and reverse breakover voltages are nearly the same and both are temperature dependent. In practice, it is found that $V_{BR}$ is slightly more than $V_{BO}$. Therefore, forward breakover voltage is taken as the final voltage rating of the device during the design of SCR applications.

After the avalanche breakdown, junction $J_2$ looses its reverse blocking capability. Therefore, if the anode voltage is reduced below $V_{BO}$, SCR will continue conduction of the current. The SCR can now be turned off only by reducing the anode current below a certain value called holding current (defined later).

(*b*) *Gate Triggering :* Turning on of thyristors by gate triggering is simple, reliable and efficient, it is therefore the most usual method of firing the forward biased SCRs. A thyristor with forward breakover voltage (say 800 V) higher than the normal working voltage (say 400 V) is chosen. This means that thyristor will remain in forward blocking state with normal working voltage across anode and cathode and with gate open. However, when turn-on of a thyristor is required, a positive gate voltage between gate and cathode is applied. With gate current thus established, charges are injected into the inner *p* layer and voltage at which forward breakover occurs is reduced. The forward voltage at which the device switches to on-state depends upon the magnitude of gate current. Higher the gate current, lower is the forward breakover voltage.

When positive gate current is applied, gate *P* layer is flooded with electrons from the cathode. This is because cathode *N* layer is heavily doped as compared to gate *P* layer. As the thyristor is forward biased, some of these electrons reach junction $J_2$. As a result, width of depletion layer around junction $J_2$ is reduced. This causes the junction $J_2$ to breakdown at an applied voltage lower than forward breakover voltage $V_{BO}$. If magnitude of gate current is increased, more electrons will reach junction $J_2$, as a consequence thyristor will get turned on at a much lower forward applied voltage.

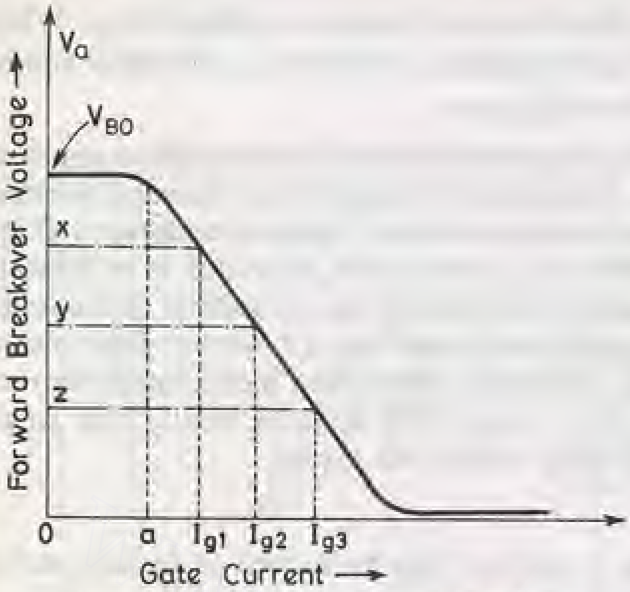


Fig. 4.4. Variation of forward breakover voltage with gate current.

Fig. 4.2 (*b*) shows that for gate current $I_g = 0$, forward breakover voltage is $V_{BO}$. For $I_{g1}$, forward breakover voltage, or turn-on voltage is less than $V_{BO}$. For $I_{g2} > I_{g1}$, forward breakover voltage is still further reduced. The effect of gate current on the forward breakover voltage of a thyristor can also be illustrated by means of a curve as shown in Fig. 4.4. For $I_g < oa$, forward breakover voltage remains almost constant at $V_{BO}$. For gate currents $I_{g1}, I_{g2}$ and $I_{g3}$, the values of forward breakover voltages are *ox*, *oy* and *oz*, respectively as shown. In Fig. 4.2 (*b*), the curve marked $I_g = 0$ is actually for gate current less than *oa*. In practice, the magnitude of gate current is more than the minimum gate current required to turn on the SCR. Typical gate current magnitudes are of the order of 20 to 200 mA.

Once the SCR is conducting a forward current, reverse biased junction $J_2$ no longer exists. As such, no gate current is required for the device to remain in on-state. Therefore, if the gate current is removed, the conduction of current from anode to cathode remains unaffected. However, if gate current is reduced to zero before the rising anode current attains a value, called the latching current, the thyristor will turn-off again. The gate pulse width should therefore be judiciously chosen to ensure that anode current rises above the latching current. Thus *latching current* may be defined as the minimum value of anode current which it must attain during turn-on process to maintain conduction when gate signal is removed.

Once the thyristor is conducting, gate loses control. The thyristor can be turned-off (or the thyristor can be returned to forward blocking state) only if the forward current falls below a low-level current called the holding current. Thus *holding current* may be defined as the minimum value of anode current below which it must fall for turning-off the thyristor. The latching current is higher than the holding current. Note that latching current is associated with turn-on process and holding current with turn-off process. It is usual to take latching current as two to three times the holding current [1]. In industrial applications, holding current (typically 10 mA) is almost taken as zero.

(*c*) $\frac{dv}{dt}$ *Triggering* : This method is discussed further in Art. 4.3.

(*d*) *Temperature Triggering* : During forward blocking, most of the applied voltage appears across reverse biased junction $J_2$. This voltage across junction $J_2$ associated with leakage current may raise the temperature of this junction. With increase in temperature, leakage current through junction $J_2$ further increases. This cumulative process may turn on the SCR at some high temperature.

(*e*) *Light Triggering*. For light-triggered SCRs, a recess (or niche) is made in the inner *p*-layer as shown in Fig. 4.5 (*a*). When this recess is irradiated, free charge carriers (holes and electrons) are generated just like when gate signal is applied between gate and cathode. The pulse of light of appropriate wavelength is guided by optical fibres for irradiation. If the intensity of this light thrown on the recess exceeds a certain value, forward-biased SCR is turned on. Such a thyristor is known as light-activated SCR (LASCR).

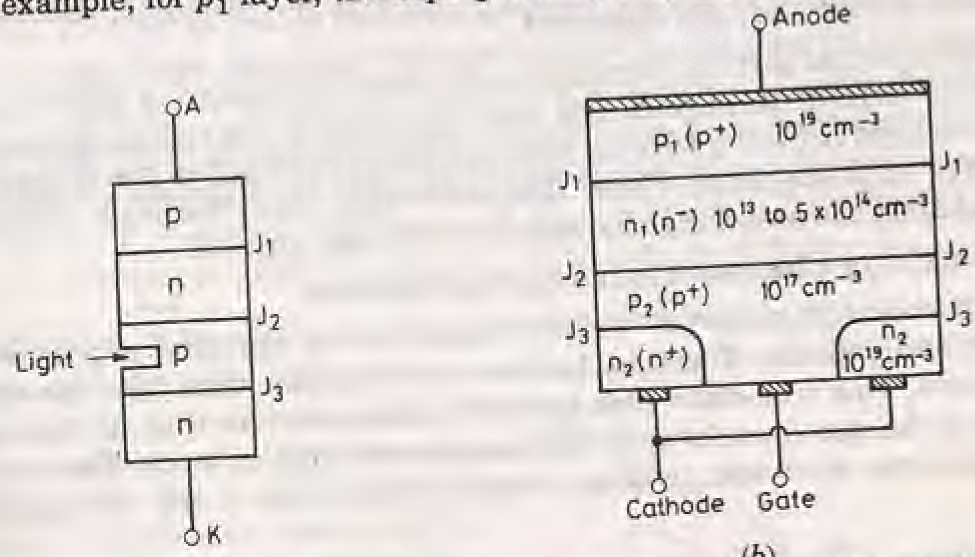
LASCR may be triggered with a light source or with a gate signal. Sometimes a combination of both light source and gate signal is used to trigger an SCR. For this, the gate is biased with voltage or current slightly less than that required to turn it on, now a beam of light directed at the inner *p*-layer junction turns on the SCR. The light intensity required to turn-on the SCR depends upon the voltage bias given to the gate. Higher the voltage (or current) bias, lower the light intensity required.

Light-triggered thyristors have now been used in high-voltage direct current (HVDC) transmission systems. In these several SCRs are connected in series-parallel combination and their light-triggering has the advantage of electrical isolation between power and control circuits.

**Example 4.1**. *Discuss what would happen if gate is made positive with respect to cathode during the reverse blocking of a thyristor.*

**Solution**. Before answering this question, it is worthwhile to know a little more about the internal details of a thyristor.

Fig. 4.5 (*b*) shows cross-section of a conventional centre-gate thyristor. In this figure, approximate doping densities in number per cubic centimeter are also indicated for all the four layers. For example, for $p_1$ layer, the doping density is $10^{19}$ per cm$^3$.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.5. (*a*) Elementary LASCR (*b*) Structural details of conventional centre-gate thyristor.

For semiconductor devices, it should be kept in mind that

(*i*) junction with lightly doped layers (at least on one side of the junction) requires large breakdown voltage,

(*ii*) junction with highly doped layers on both sides requires low breakdown voltage.

When thyristor is in forward blocking state, junctions $J_1$, $J_3$ are forward biased whereas junction $J_2$ is reverse biased. As layer *n* is lightly doped around junction $J_2$, depletion region of junction $J_2$ extends mainly into $n_1$ layer. Therefore, $n_1$ layer is made to have larger width to withstand the high voltage during forward blocking state.

For reverse voltage on the device ; junctions $J_1$, $J_3$ are reverse biased and $J_2$ is forward biased. As layers $p_2$, $n_2$ across junction $J_3$ are heavily doped, $J_3$ has low breakdown voltage. Layer $n_1$ being lightly doped as compared to layer $p_1$, junction $J_1$ has large breakdown voltage. As a consequence, during the reverse blocking of a thyristor, junction $J_1$ supports most of the reverse voltage. Even during blocking, the depletion region extends into the $n_1$ layer. This shows that width of layer $n_1$ absorbs most of the voltage during forward blocking mode and also during the reverse blocking mode of a thyristor.

If positive gate voltage is applied between gate and cathode during the reverse blocking of a thyristor, blocking property of junction $J_3$ disappears as $J_3$ has low breakdown voltage. As a result, reverse voltage appears across junction $J_1$. Positive charge carriers are now injected into the $n_1$ layer of reverse biased junction $J_1$. This causes an increase in the reverse leakage current. The flow of large leakage current associated with high reverse voltage results in increased power loss across junction $J_1$ and heat thus generated may raise the junction temperature above the allowable maximum and this may destroy the SCR. Such an happening can be avoided if no positive gate voltage is applied between gate and cathode during the reverse blocking of SCR. Some manufacturers do specify the maximum positive voltage (usually less than 0.25 V) that can exist between gate and cathode during the reverse blocking of a thyristor.

## 4.3. SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS OF THYRISTORS

Static and switching characteristics of thyristors are always taken into consideration for economical and reliable design of converter equipment. Static characteristics of a thyristor have already been examined. In this part of the section; switching, dynamic or transient, characteristics of thyristors are discussed.

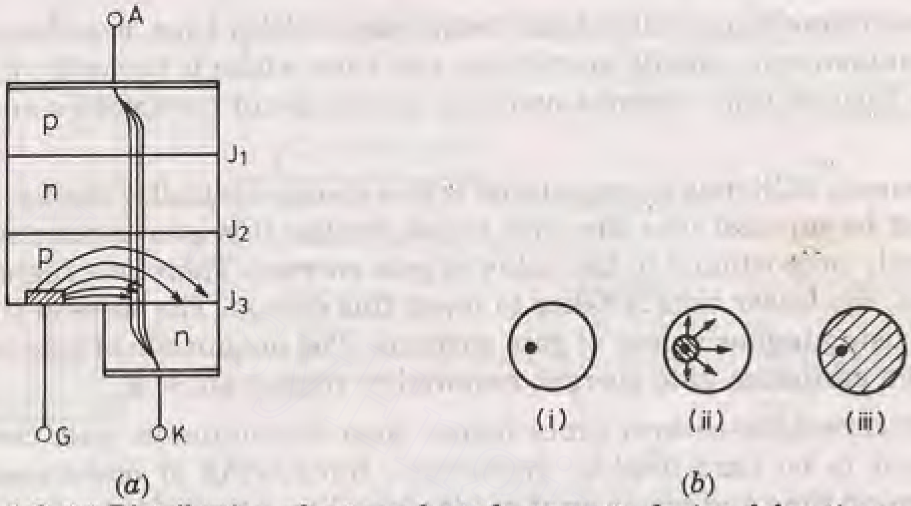
During turn-on and turn-off processes, a thyristor is subjected to different voltages across it and different currents through it. The time variations of the voltage across a thyristor and the current through it during turn-on and turn-off processes give the dynamic or switching characteristics of a thyristor. Here, first switching characteristics during turn-on are described and then the switching characteristics during turn-off.

### 4.3.1. Switching Characteristics during Turn-on

A forward-biased thyristor is usually turned on by applying a positive gate voltage between gate and cathode. There is, however, a transition time from forward off-state to forward on state. This transition time called thyristor turn-on time, is defined as the time during which it changes from forward blocking state to final on-state. Total turn-on time can be divided into three intervals ; (*i*) delay time $t_d$, (*ii*) rise time $t_r$ and (*iii*) spread time $t_p$, Fig. 4.8.

(*i*) *Delay time* $t_d$ : The delay time $t_d$ is measured from the instant at which gate current reaches 0.9 $I_g$ to the instant at which anode current reaches $0.1 I_a$. Here $I_g$ and $I_a$ are respectively the final values of gate and anode currents. The delay time may also be defined as the time during which anode voltage falls from $V_a$ to $0.9 V_a$ where $V_a$ = initial value of anode voltage. Another way of defining delay time is the time during which anode current rises from forward leakage current to 0.1 $I_a$ where $I_a$ = final value of anode current. With the thyristor initially in the forward blocking state, the anode voltage is OA and anode current is small leakage current as shown in Fig. 4.8. Initiation of turn-on process is indicated by a rise in anode current from small forward leakage current and a fall in anode-cathode voltage from forward blocking voltage *OA*. As gate current begins to flow from gate to cathode with the application of gate signal, the gate current has non-uniform distribution of current density over the cathode surface due to the *p* layer. Its value is much higher near the gate but decreases rapidly as the distance from the gate increases, see Fig. 4.6 (*a*). This shows that during delay time $t_d$, anode current flows in a narrow region near the gate where gate current density is the highest.

The delay time can be decreased by applying high gate current and more forward voltage between anode and cathode. The delay time is fraction of a microsecond.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.6. (*a*) Distribution of gate and anode currents during delay time (*b*) Conducting area of cathode (*i*) during $t_d$ (*ii*) after $t_r$ (*iii*) after $t_p$.

(*ii*) *Rise time* $t_r$ : The rise time $t_r$ is the time taken by the anode current to rise from 0.1 $I_a$ to 0.9 $I_a$. The rise time is also defined as the time required for the forward blocking off-state voltage to fall from 0.9 to 0.1 of its initial value *OA*. The rise time is inversely proportional to the magnitude of gate current and its build up rate. Thus $t_r$ can be reduced if high and steep current pulses are applied to the gate. However, the main factor determining $t_r$ is the nature of anode circuit. For example, for series *RL* circuit, the rate of rise of anode current is slow, therefore, $t_r$ is more. For *RC* series circuit, *di/dt* is high, $t_r$ is therefore, less.

From the beginning of rise time $t_r$, anode current starts spreading from the narrow conducting region near the gate. The anode current spreads at a rate of about 0.1 mm per microsecond [2]. As the rise time is small, the anode current is not able to spread over the entire cross-section of cathode. Fig. 4.6 (*b*) illustrates how anode current expands over cathode surface area during turn-on process of a thyristor. Here the thyristor is taken to have single gate electrode away from the centre of *p*-layer. It is seen that anode current conducts over a small conducting channel even after $t_r$ –this conducting channel area is however, greater than that during $t_d$.

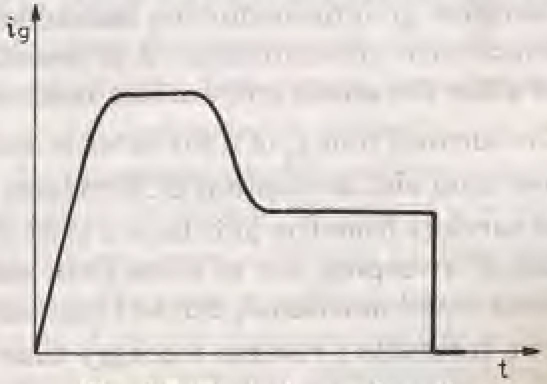


Fig. 4.7. Typical waveform for gate current.

During rise time, turn-on losses in the thyristor are the highest due to high anode voltage ($V_a$) and large anode current ($I_a$) occurring together in the thyristor as shown in Fig. 4.8. As these losses occur only over a small conducting region, local hot spots may be formed and the device may be damaged.

(*iii*) *Spread time* $t_p$ : The spread time is the time taken by the anode current to rise from 0.9 $I_a$ to $I_a$. It is also defined as the time for the forward blocking voltage to fall from 0.1 of its value to the on-state voltage drop (1 to 1.5 V). During this time, conduction spreads over the entire cross-section of the cathode of SCR. The spreading interval depends on the area of cathode and on gate structure of the SCR. After the spread time, anode current attains steady state value and the voltage drop across SCR is equal to the on-state voltage drop of the order of 1 to 1.5 V, Fig. 4.8.

Total turn-on time of an SCR is equal to the sum of delay time, rise time and spread time. Thyristor manufacturers usually specify the rise time which is typically of the order of 1 to 4 μ–sec. Total turn-on time depends upon the anode circuit parameters and the gate signal waveshapes.

During turn-on, SCR may be considered to be a charge controlled device. A certain amount of charge must be injected into the gate region for the thyristor conduction to begin. This charge is directly proportional to the value of gate current. Therefore, higher the magnitude of gate current, the lesser time it takes to inject this charge. The turn-on time can therefore be reduced by using higher values of gate currents. The magnitude of gate current is usually 3 to 5 times the minimum gate current required to trigger an SCR.

When gate current is several times higher than the minimum gate current required, a thyristor is said to be hard-fired or overdriven. *Hard-firing* or *overdriving* of a thyristor reduces its turn-on time and enhances it *di/dt* capability. A typical waveform for gate current, that is widely used, is shown in Fig. 4.7. This waveform has higher initial value of gate current with a very fast rise time. The initial high value of gate current is then reduced to a lower value where it stays for several microseconds in order to avoid unwanted turn-off of the device.

### 4.3.2. Switching Characteristics during Turn-off

Thyristor turn-off means that it has changed from on to off state and is capable of blocking the forward voltage. This dynamic process of the SCR from conduction state to forward blocking state is called *commutation process or turn-off process*.

Once the thyristor is on, gate loses control. The SCR can be turned off by reducing the anode current below holding current*. If forward voltage is applied to the SCR at the moment its anode current falls to zero, the device will not be able to block this forward voltage as the carriers (holes and electrons) in the four layers are still favourable for conduction. The device will therefore go into conduction immediately even though gate signal is not applied. In order to obviate such an occurrence, it is essential that the thyristor is reverse biased for a finite period after the anode current has reached zero.

The turn-off time $t_q$ of a thyristor is defined as the time between the instant anode current becomes zero and the instant SCR regains forward blocking capability. During time $t_q$, all the excess carriers from the four layers of SCR must be removed. This removal of excess carriers consists of sweeping out of holes from outer *p*-layer and electrons from outer *n*-layer. The carriers around junction $J_2$ can be removed only by recombination. The turn-off time is divided into two intervals ; reverse recovery time $t_{rr}$ and the gate recovery time $t_{gr}$; *i.e.* $t_q = t_{rr} + t_{gr}$.

---

* This can be achieved through natural commutation or forced commutation.

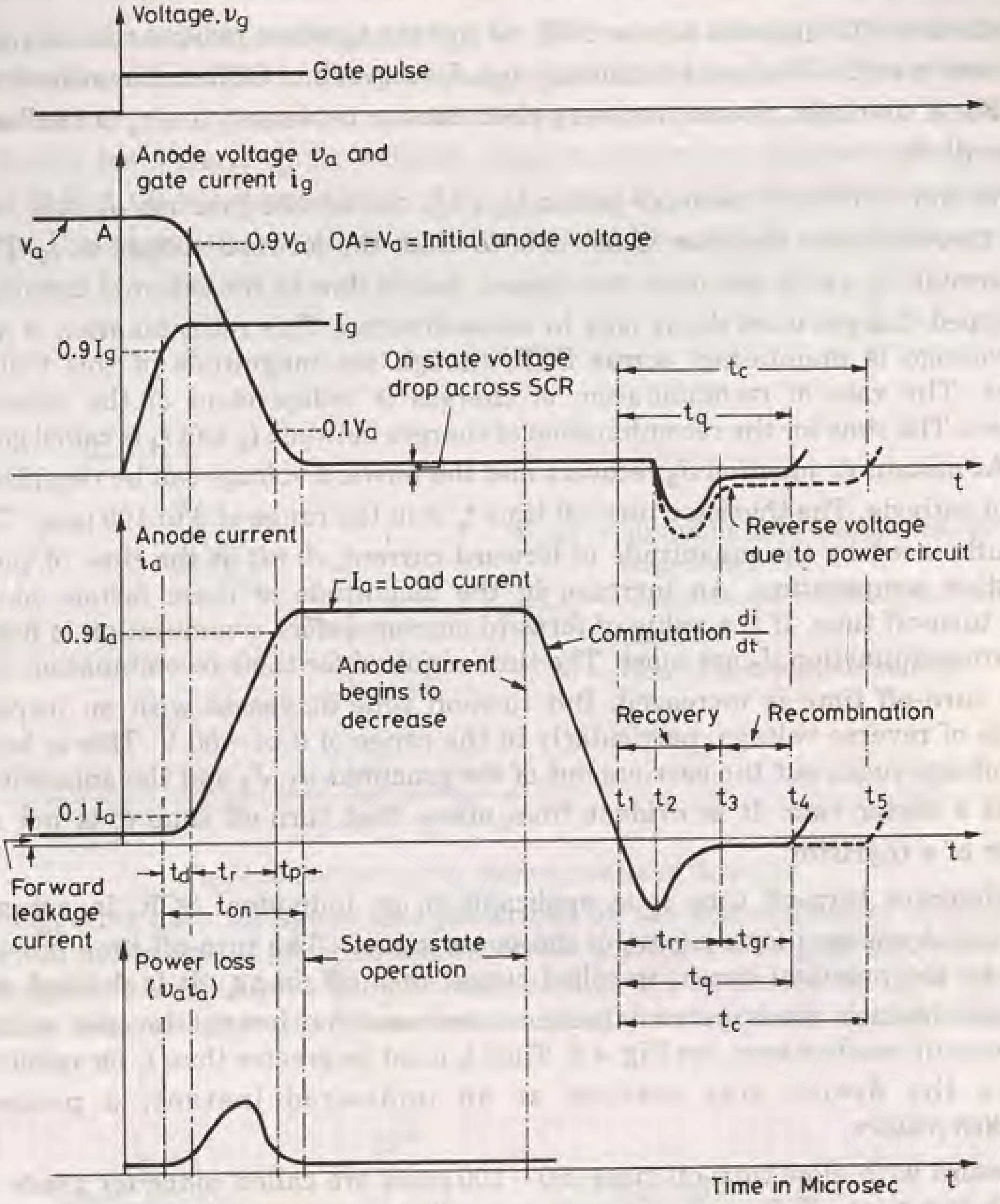


Fig. 4.8. Thyristor voltage and current waveforms during turn-on and turn-off processes..

The thyristor characteristics during turn-on and turn-off processes are shown in one Fig. 4.8 so as to gain insight into these processes.

At instant $t_1$, anode current becomes zero. After $t_1$, anode current builds up in the reverse direction with the same *di/dt* slope as before $t_1$. The reason for the reversal of anode current after $t_1$ is due to the presence of carriers stored in the four layers. The reverse recovery current removes excess carriers from the end junctions $J_1$ and $J_3$ between the instants $t_1$ and $t_3$. In other words, reverse recovery current flows due to the sweeping out of holes from top *p*-layer and electrons from bottom *n*-layer. At instant $t_2$, when about 60% of the stored charges are removed from the outer two layers, carrier density across $J_1$ and $J_3$ begins to decrease and with this reverse recovery current also starts decaying. The reverse current decay is fast in the beginning but gradual thereafter. The fast decay of recovery current causes a reverse voltage across the device due to the circuit inductance. This reverse voltage surge appears across the thyristor terminals and may therefore damage it. In practice, this is avoided by using protective *RC* elements across SCR. At instant $t_3$, when reverse recovery current has fallen to nearly zero value, end junctions $J_1$ and $J_3$ recover and SCR is able to block the reverse voltage. For a thyristor, reverse recovery phenomenon between $t_1$ and $t_3$ is similar to that of a rectifier diode.

At the end of reverse recovery period $(t_3 - t_1)$, the middle junction $J_2$ still has trapped charges, therefore, the thyristor is not able to block the forward voltage at $t_3$. The trapped charges around $J_2$, *i.e.* in the inner two layers, cannot flow to the external circuit, therefore, these trapped charges must decay only by recombination. This recombination is possible if a reverse voltage is maintained across SCR, though the magnitude of this voltage is not important. The rate of recombination of charges is independent of the external circuit parameters. The time for the recombination of charges between $t_3$ and $t_4$ is called *gate recovery time* $t_{gr}$. At instant $t_4$, junction $J_2$ recovers and the forward voltage can be reapplied between anode and cathode. The thyristor turn-off time $t_q$ is in the range of 3 to 100 μsec. The turn-off time is influenced by the magnitude of forward current, *di/dt* at the time of commutation and junction temperature. An increase in the magnitude of these factors increases the thyristor turn-off time. If the value of forward current before commutation is high, trapped charges around junction $J_2$ are more. The time required for their recombination is more and therefore turn-off time is increased. But turn-off time decreases with an increase in the magnitude of reverse voltage, particularly in the range of 0 to – 50 V. This is because high reverse voltage sucks out the carriers out of the junctions $J_1$, $J_3$ and the adjacent transition regions at a faster rate. It is evident from above that turn-off time $t_q$ is not a constant parameter of a thyristor.

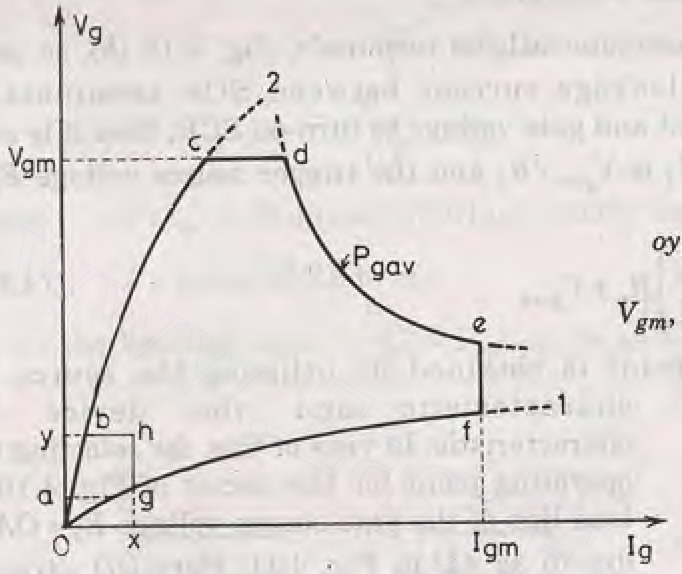
The thyristor turn-off time $t_q$ is applicable to an individual SCR. In actual practice, thyristor (or thyristors) form a part of the power circuit. The turn-off time provided to the thyristor by the practical circuit is called *circuit turn-off time* $t_c$. It is defined as the time between the instant anode current becomes zero and the instant reverse voltage due to practical circuit reaches zero, see Fig. 4.8. Time $t_c$ must be greater than $t_q$ for reliable turn-off, otherwise the device may turn-on at an undesired instant, a process called *commutation failure*.

Thyristors with slow turn-off time (50 – 100 μsec) are called *converter grade* SCRs and those with fast turn-off time (3 – 50 μsec) are called inverter-grade SCRs. Converter-grade SCRs are cheaper and are used where slow turn-off is possible as in phase-controlled rectifiers, ac voltage controllers, cycloconverters etc. Inverter-grade SCRs are costlier and are used in inverters, choppers and force-commutated converters.

## 4.4. THYRISTOR GATE CHARACTERISTICS

The forward gate characteristics of a thyristor are shown in Fig. 4.9 in the form of a graph between gate voltage and gate current. Here positive gate to cathode voltage $V_g$ and positive gate to cathode current $I_g$ represent dc values. As gate-cathode circuit of a thyristor is a *p-n* junction, gate characteristics of the device are similar to that of a diode. For a particular type of SCRs, $V_g$–$I_g$ characteristic has a spread between two curves 1 and 2 as shown in Fig. 4.9. This spread, or scatter, of gate characteristics is due to difference in the low doping levels of *p* and *n* layers. The gate trigger circuitry must be suitably designed to take care of this unavoidable scatter of characteristics. In Fig. 4.9, curve 1 represents the lowest voltage values that must be applied to turn-on the SCR. Curve 2 gives the highest possible voltage values that can be safely applied to gate circuit.

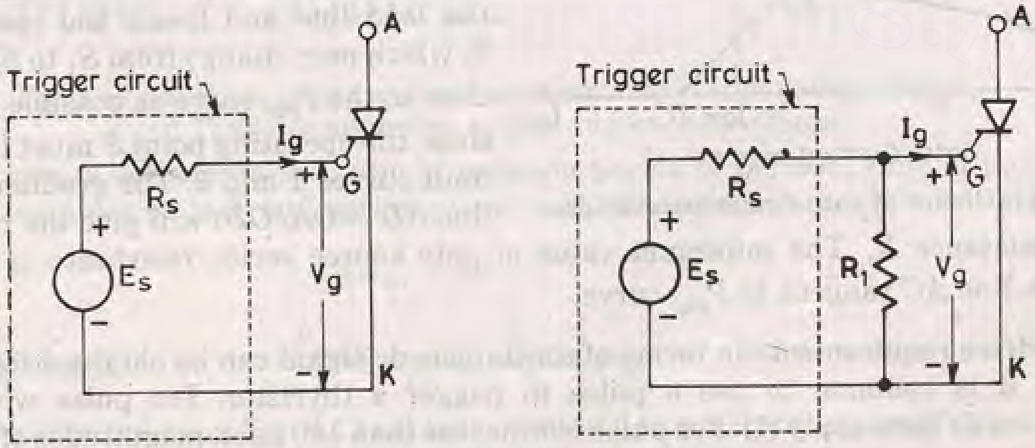
Each thyristor has maximum limits as $V_{gm}$ for gate voltage and $I_{gm}$ for gate current. There is also rated (average) gate power dissipation $P_{gav}$ specified for each SCR. These limits should not be exceeded in order to avoid permanent damage of junction $J_3$, Fig. 4.3. There are also minimum limits for $V_g$ and $I_g$ for reliable turn-on, these are represented by *oy* and *ox* respectively in Fig. 4.9. As stated before, if $V_{gm}$, $I_{gm}$ and $P_{gav}$ are exceeded, the thyrister can be destroyed. This shows that preferred gate drive area for an SCR is *bcdefghb* as shown in Fig. 4.9.



*oy*, *ox* — Minimum gate voltage and current to trigger an SCR.
$V_{gm}$, $I_{gm}$ — Maximum permissible gate voltage and current.
*oa* — Non–triggering gate voltage.

Fig. 4.9. Forward gate characteristics of thyristor.

A non-triggering gate voltage is also prescribed by the manufacturers of SCRs. This is indicated by *oa* in Fig. 4.9. If firing circuit generates positive gate signal prior to the desired instant of triggering the SCR, it should be ensured that this unwanted signal is less than the non-triggering gate voltage *oa*. At the same time, all spurious or noise signals should be less than the voltage *oa*.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.10. Trigger circuit connected to gate-cathode circuit of an SCR.

The design of the firing circuit can be carried out with the help of Figs. 4.10 and 4.11. In Fig. 4.10 (*a*) is shown a trigger circuit feeding power to gate-cathode circuit. For this circuit,

$$E_s = V_g + I_g R_s \qquad \dots (4.1a)$$

where $E_s$ = gate source voltage
$V_g$ = gate–cathode voltage
$I_g$ = gate current
and $R_s$ = gate–source resistance

The internal resistance $R_s$ of trigger source should be such that current $(E_s/R_s)$ is not harmful to the source as well as to the gate circuit when SCR is turned on. In case $R_s$ is low, an external resistance in series with $R_s$ must be connected.

A resistance $R_1$ is also connected across gate-cathode terminals, Fig. 4.10 (*b*), so as to provide an easy path to the flow of leakage current between SCR terminals. If $I_{gmn}$ and $V_{gmn}$ are the minimum gate current and gate voltage to turn-on SCR, then it is seen from Fig. 4.10. (*b*) that current through $R_1$ is $V_{gmn}/R_1$ and the trigger source voltage $E_s$ is given by

$$E_s = \left(I_{gmn} + \frac{V_{gmn}}{R_1}\right)R_s + V_{gmn} \qquad \text{...(4.1b)}$$

For low-power circuits, operating point is obtained by utilizing the source *V-I* characteristic and the device *V-I* characteristic. In view of this, for selecting the operating point for the circuit of Fig. 4.10, a load line of the gate source voltage $E_s = OA$ is drawn as *AD* in Fig. 4.11. Here *OD* = trigger circuit short circuit current $= E_s/R_s$. Let us consider a thyristor whose $V_g$-$I_g$ characteristic is given by curve 3. Intersection of load line *AD* and $V_g$-$I_g$ curve 3 gives the operating point *S*. Thus, for this SCR, gate voltage = *PS* and gate current = *OP*. In order to minimise turn-on time and jitter (unreliable turn-on), the load line and hence the operating point *S*, which may change from $S_1$ to $S_2$, must be as close to the $P_{gav}$ curve as possible. At the same time, the operating point *S* must lie within the limit curves 1 and 2. The gradient of the load line *AD* (= *OA*/*OD*) will give the required gate source resistance $R_s$. The minimum value of gate source series resistance is obtained by drawing a line *AC* tangent to $P_{gav}$ curve.

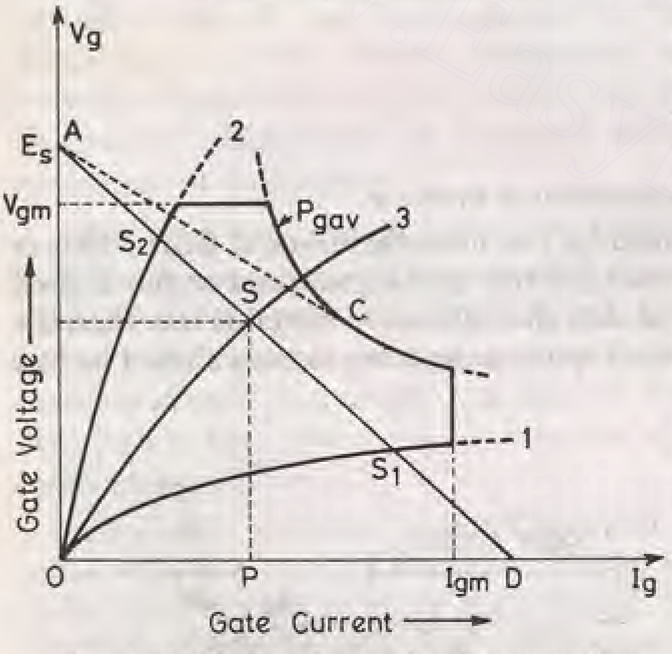


Fig. 4.11. Choice of gate circuit parameters.

Gate drive requirements in terms of continuous dc signal can be obtained from Fig. 4.11. However, it is common to use a pulse to trigger a thyristor. For pulse widths beyond 100 μsec, the dc data apply [1]. For pulse widths less than 100 μsec, magnitudes of gate voltage and gate current can be increased, see Example 4.2.

As stated before, thyristor is considered to be a charge controlled device. Thus, higher the magnitude of gate current pulse, lesser is the time to inject the required charge for turning-on the thyristor. Therefore, SCR turn-on time can be reduced by using gate current of higher magnitude. It should be ensured that pulse width is sufficient to allow the anode current to exceed the latching current. In practice, gate pulse width is usually taken as equal to, or greater than, SCR turn-on time. If $T$ is the pulse width as shown in Fig. 2.10 ($a$), then

$$T \geq t_{on}$$

With pulse triggering, greater amount of gate power dissipation can be allowed ; this should, however, be less than the peak instantaneous gate power dissipation $P_{gm}$ as specified by the manufacturers. Frequency of firing (or pulse width) for trigger pulses can be obtained by taking pulse of ($i$) amplitude $P_{gm}$ ($ii$) pulse width T and ($iii$) periodicity $T_1$. Therefore,

$$\frac{P_{gm}\, T}{T_1} \geq P_{gav} \quad \text{or} \quad P_{gm} \cdot T \cdot f \geq P_{gav}$$

or $$\frac{P_{gav}}{f\,T} \leq P_{gm} \qquad \text{...(4.2}a\text{)}$$

where $f = \frac{1}{T_1}$ = frequency of firing, or pulse repetition rate, in Hz,

and $T$ = pulse width in sec.

In the limiting case, $\frac{P_{gav}}{fT} = P_{gm}$ or $f = \frac{P_{gav}}{T \cdot P_{gm}}$

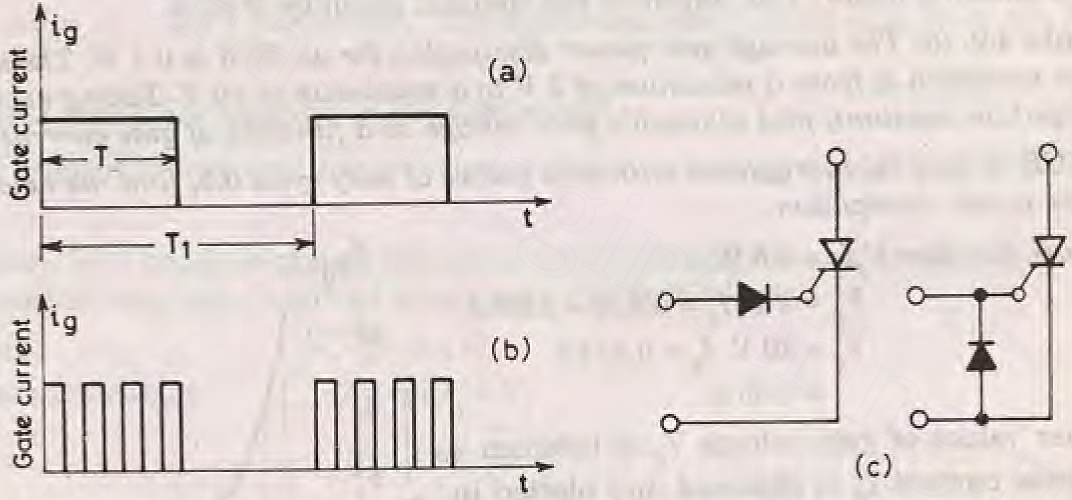


Fig. 4.12. ($a$) Pulse gating and ($b$) high-frequency carrier gating of SCRs, ($c$) Thyristor protection against reverse overvoltages.

A duty cycle is defined as the ratio of pulse-on period to periodic time of pulse. In Fig. 4.12 ($a$), pulse-on period is $T$ and periodic time is $T_1$. Therefore, duty cycle $\delta$ is given by

$$\delta = \frac{T}{T_1} = fT$$

From Eq. (4.2$a$), $$\frac{P_{gav}}{\delta} \leq P_{gm} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{P_{gav}}{\delta} = P_{gm} \qquad \text{...(4.2 }b\text{)}$$

Sometimes the pulses of Fig. 4.12 ($a$) are modulated to generate a train of pulses as shown in Fig. 4.12 ($b$). This technique of firing the thyristor is called high-frequency carrier gating. The advantages offered by this method of firing the SCRs are lower rating, reduced dimensions and therefore an overall economical design of the pulse transformer needed for isolating the low power circuit from the main power circuit.

For an SCR, $V_{gm}$ and $I_{gm}$ are specified separately. If both of these are used for pulse firing, then $P_{gm}$ may be exceeded and the thyristor would be damaged. For example, GE-C35 thyristor has $V_{gm} = 10$ V and $I_{gm} = 2$ A. If both these limits are placed on C35, the power dissipation is 20 W. But this is far excess of the specified $P_{gm} = 5$ W. It should be ensured that (pulse voltage amplitude) (pulse current amplitude) $< P_{gm}$.

There is also prescribed a peak reverse voltage (gate negative with respect to cathode) that can be applied across gate-cathode terminals. Any voltage signal, given by the trigger circuit (or by any interference), exceeding this prescribed limit of about 5 to 20 V may damage the gate circuit. For preventing the occurrence of such hazards, a diode is connected either in series with the gate circuit or across the gate-cathode terminals as shown in Fig. 4.12 (*c*). Diode across the gate-cathode terminals, called clamping diode, prevents the gate-cathode voltage from becoming more than about 1 V. Diode in series with gate circuit prevents the flow of negative gate source current from becoming more than small reverse leakage current.

The magnitude of gate voltage and gate current for triggering an SCR is inversely proportional to junction temperature. Thus, at very low temperatures, gate voltage and gate current must have high values in order to ensure turn-on. But $P_{gm}$ should not be exceeded in any case.

The resistor $R_1$, connected across gate-cathode terminals, Fig. 4.10 (*b*), also serves to bypass a part of the thermally-generated leakage current across junction $J_2$ when SCR is in the forward blocking mode ; this improves the thermal stability of SCR.

✓**Example 4.2.** *(a) The average gate power dissipation for an SCR is 0.5 W. The allowable gate voltage variation is from a minimum of 2 V to a maximum of 10 V. Taking average gate power dissipation constant, plot allowable gate voltage as a function of gate current.*

*(b) If SCR of part (a) is triggered with gate pulses of duty cycle 0.5, find the new value of average gate power dissipation.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Here $V_g I_g = 0.5$ W

For $V_g = 2$ V, $I_g = 0.5/2 = 0.25$ A

For $V_g = 10$ V, $I_g = 0.5/10$

$= 0.05$ A

For other values of gate voltage $V_g$ in between 2 and 10 V, gate current $I_g$ is obtained and plotted in Fig. 4.13 showing the variation of $V_g$ as a function of $I_g$ for constant $P_{gav}$.

(*b*) For this example, $T_1 = 2T$ in Fig. 4.12 (*a*) so that $\delta = 0.5$. For dc values, $V_g I_g = 0.5$ W.

For pulse firing, Fig. 4.12 (*a*), the average gate power dissipation can be obtained from the relation

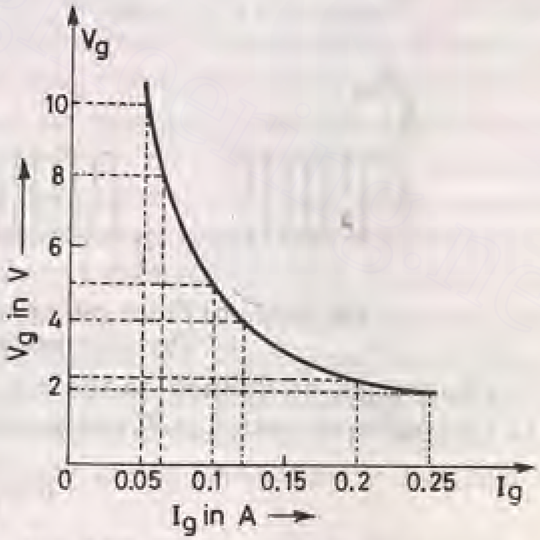


Fig. 4.13. Pertaining to Example 4.2.

$$\frac{1}{T_1}\int_0^T v_g i_g$$

where $v_g$, $i_g$ are the instantaneous values of gate voltage and gate current. Therefore, for this example, average gate power dissipation is given by

$$V_g \cdot I_g \cdot \frac{T}{2T} = (0.5)\frac{1}{2} = 0.25 \text{ W.}$$

As this is less than the allowable $P_{gav}$, higher values of $v_g$, $i_g$ can be used for the pulse firing of SCRs.

**Example 4.3.** *For an SCR, the gate-cathode characteristic has a straight-line slope of 130. For trigger source voltage of 15 V and allowable gate power dissipation of 0.5 watts, compute the gate-source resistance.*

**Solution.** Here $V_g I_g = 0.5 \text{ W}$

and $$\frac{V_g}{I_g} = 130$$

$\therefore$ $130 I_g^2 = 0.5$

This gives $I_g = [0.5/130]^{1/2} = 0.062 = 62 \text{ mA}$

$\therefore$ Gate voltage, $V_g = 130 \times 62 \times 10^{-3} = 8.06 \text{ V}$

For the gate circuit, $E_s = I_g R_s + V_g = 0.062 R_s + 8.06 = 15$

or $$R_s = \frac{15 - 8.06}{0.062} = 111.94 \,\Omega.$$

**Example 4.4.** *The trigger circuit of a thyristor has a source voltage of 15 V and the load line has a slope of – 120 V per ampere. The minimum gate current to turn-on the SCR is 25 mA. Compute*

*(a) source resistance required in the gate circuit,*

*(b) the trigger voltage and trigger current for an average gate power dissipation of 0.4 watts.*

**Solution.** (*a*) The slope of load line gives the required gate source resistance. From the load line, series resistance required in the gate circuit is 120 Ω.

(*b*) Here $V_g I_g = 0.4 \text{ W}$

For the gate circuit, $E_s = R_s I_g + V_g$

$\therefore$ $$15 = 120 I_g + \frac{0.4}{I_g}$$

or $120 I_g^2 - 15 I_g + 0.4 = 0$

Its solution gives $I_g = 38.56 \text{ mA}$ or $86.44 \text{ mA}$

$\therefore$ $$V_g = \frac{0.4 \times 10^3}{38.56} = 10.37 \text{ V}$$

or $$\frac{0.4 \times 10^3}{86.44} = 4.627 \text{ V}.$$

Choose $V_g = 4.627$ V and $I_g = 86.44$ mA for minimum gate current of 25 mA.

**Example 4.5.** *For an SCR, gate-cathode characteristic is given by $V_g = 1 + 10 I_g$. Gate source voltage is a rectangular pulse of 15 V with 20 μ sec duration. For an average gate power dissipation of 0.3 W and a peak gate drive power of 5 W, compute*

*(a) the resistance to be connected in series with the SCR gate,*

*(b) the triggering frequency and*

*(c) the duty cycle of the triggering pulse.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Here $V_g = 1 + 10 I_g$.

For pulse-triggering of SCRs,

(Peak gate voltage) (peak gate current) during pulse-on period

$$= \text{peak gate drive power}, P_{gm}.$$

As the gate pulse width is 20 μ sec (less than 100 μ sec), the dc data does not apply. Had the gate pulse width been more than 100 μsec, the relation $(1 + 10\,I_g)\,I_g = 0.3$ W will hold good. But as the dc data does not apply, we have here

$$(1 + 10\,I_g)\,I_g = 5 \text{ W}$$

or $$10\,I_g^2 + I_g - 5 = 0$$

Its solution gives, $I_g = 0.659$ A.

$\therefore$ Amplitude of current pulse $= 0.659$ A

During the pulse-on period, $E_s = R_s I_g + V_g$

or $$15 = R_s I_g + 1 + 10\,I_g$$

$$\therefore \qquad R_s = \frac{15 - 1}{0.659} - 10 = 11.244\,\Omega$$

(*b*) $$P_{gm} = \frac{P_{gav}}{fT}. \quad \text{Here } T = 20\ \mu\text{sec}$$

$\therefore$ Triggering frequency, $$f = \frac{0.3 \times 10^6}{5 \times 20} = 3 \text{ kHz}$$

(*c*) Duty cycle, $$\delta = fT = 3 \times 10^3 \times 20 \times 10^{-6} = 0.06.$$

**Example 4.6.** *Latching current for an SCR inserted in between a dc voltage source of 200 V and the load is 100 mA. Compute the minimum width of gate-pulse current required to turn-on this SCR in case the load consists of (a) L = 0.2 H, (b) R = 20 Ω in series with L = 0.2 H and (c) R = 20 Ω in series with L = 2.0 H.*

**Solution.** (*a*) When load consists of pure inductance *L*, the voltage equation is

$$E = L \cdot \frac{di}{dt} \quad \text{or} \quad di = \frac{E}{L}\,t \quad \text{or} \quad i = \frac{E}{L}\,t$$

$$\therefore \qquad 0.100 = \frac{200}{0.2}\,t \quad \text{or} \quad t = \frac{0.1 \times 0.2}{200} = 100\ \mu\text{sec}$$

Thus, minimum gate-pulse is 100 μsec

(*b*) The voltage equation for *R-L* load is

$$E = Ri + L\,\frac{di}{dt}$$

or $$i = \frac{E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right) \quad \text{or} \quad 0.100 = \frac{200}{20}\,(1 - e^{-100\,t})$$

or $$t = 100.503\ \mu\text{sec}$$

$\therefore$ Minimum gate-pulse width is 100.503 μsec

(*c*) $$i = \frac{E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right)$$

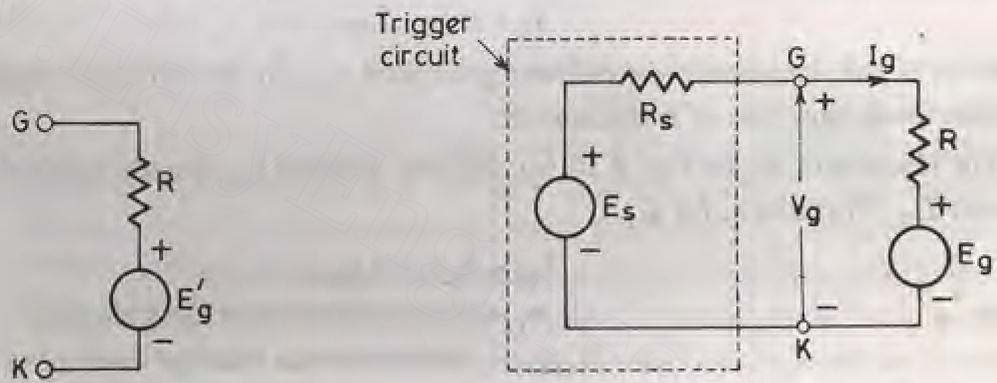
or $$0.1 = \frac{200}{20}\,(1 - e^{-10\,t}) \quad \text{or} \quad t = 1005.03\ \mu\text{sec.}$$

This example shows that if load resistance is increased from zero to 20 Ω, the gate-pulse width remains almost unaffected. But with an increase in inductance from 0.2 H to 2 H, the gate-pulse width becomes 10 times its previous value.

✓ **Example 4.7.** *The gate current of a forward biased SCR is gradually increased from zero until the device is turned on. It is observed that gate current, just prior to the instant of turn-on, is 1 mA and soon after SCR goes into conduction, gate current decays to about 0.3 mA. Discuss how it happens.*

**Solution**. When anode of an SCR is made positive with respect to cathode, a small voltage $E'_g$ generated internally, appears across the gate-cathode terminals, Fig. 4.14 (*a*). The magnitude of $E'_g$ depends upon applied anode voltage and the device geometry. In the gate-cathode equivalent circuit of Fig. 4.14 (*a*), $R$ is the static non-linear gate resistance.

If the SCR is turned on by applying a positive gate signal, then the equivalent circuit for the trigger circuit is as shown in Fig. 4.14 (*b*). Here $E_g$ is the gate voltage generated internally due to the flow of anode current. The magnitude of $E'_g$ is much smaller as compared to $E_g$. For a typical SCR, $E'_g = 0.05$ V and $E_g = 0.7$ V.



(*a*) (*b*)

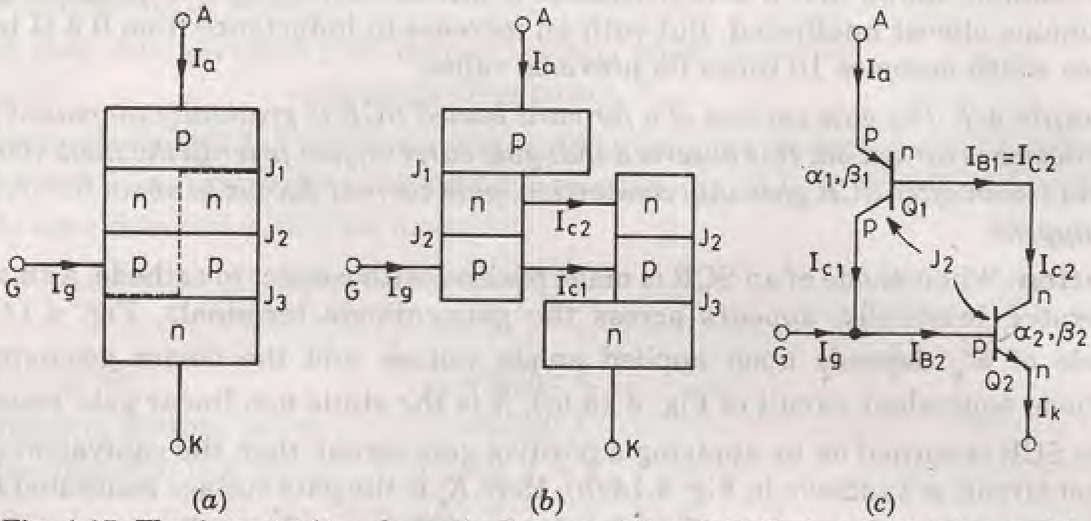
Fig. 4.14. Pertaining to Example 4.7.

Before the SCR starts conducting, gate current $I_g' = \dfrac{E_s - E_g'}{R + R_s}$. As $E_g'$ is very small, $I_g' \cong E_s/(R + R_s)$. After SCR goes into conduction, $I_g = \dfrac{E_s - E_g}{R + R_s}$. Voltage $E_g$ is quite large as compared to $E'_g$, therefore, gate current is reduced from a higher value of $I_g'$ to a lower value of $I_g$.

In case $E_s$ is reduced to zero, gate current becomes negative with its value equal to $I_g'' = \dfrac{-E_g}{R + R_s}$. Under this condition of $E_s = 0$, the voltage appearing across the gate-cathode terminals is $E_g - I_g'' R$.

## 4.5. TWO-TRANSISTOR MODEL OF A THYRISTOR

The principle of thyristor operation can be explained with the use of its two-transistor model (or two-transistor analogy). Fig. 4.15 (*a*) shows schematic diagram of a thyristor. From this figure, two-transistor model is obtained by bisecting the two middle layers, along the dotted line, in two separate halves as shown in Fig. 4.15 (*b*). In this figure, junctions $J_1 - J_2$ and $J_2 - J_3$ can be considered to constitute *pnp* and *npn* transistors separately. The circuit representation of the two-transistor model of a thyristor is shown in Fig. 4.15 (*c*).



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 4.15. Thyristor (*a*) its schematic diagram, (*b*) and (*c*) its two-transistor model.

In the off-state of a transistor, collector current $I_C$ is related to emitter current $I_E$ as

$$I_C = \alpha I_E + I_{CBO}$$

where α is the *common-base current gain* and $I_{CBO}$ is the common-base leakage current of collector-base junction of a transistor.

For transistor $Q_1$ in Fig. 4.15 (*c*), emitter current $I_E$ = anode current $I_a$ and $I_C$ = collector current $I_{C1}$. Therefore, for $Q_1$,

$$I_{C1} = \alpha_1 I_a + I_{CBO1} \qquad \text{...(4.3)}$$

where $\alpha_1$ = common–base current gain of $Q_1$

and $I_{CBO1}$ = common–base leakage current of $Q_1$.

Similarly, for transistor $Q_2$, the collector current $I_{C2}$ is given by

$$I_{C2} = \alpha_2 I_k + I_{CBO2} \qquad \text{...(4.4)}$$

where $\alpha_2$ = common–base current gain of $Q_2$

$I_{CBO2}$ = common–base leakage current of $Q_2$

and $I_k$ = emitter current of $Q_2$.

The sum of two collector currents given by Eqs. (4.3) and (4.4) is equal to the external circuit current $I_a$ entering at anode terminal A.

$$\therefore \quad I_a = I_{C1} + I_{C2}$$

or

$$I_a = \alpha_1 I_a + I_{CBO1} + \alpha_2 I_k + I_{CBO2} \qquad \text{...(4.5)}$$

When gate current is applied, then $I_k = I_a + I_g$. Substituting this value of $I_k$ in Eq. (4.5) gives

$$I_a = \alpha_1 I_a + I_{CBO1} + \alpha_2 (I_a + I_g) + I_{CBO2}$$

or

$$I_a = \frac{\alpha_2 I_g + I_{CBO1} + I_{CBO2}}{1 - (\alpha_1 + \alpha_2)} \qquad \text{...(4.6)}$$

For a silicon transistor, current gain α is very low at low emitter current. With an increase in emitter current, α builds up rapidly as shown in Fig. 4.16. With gate current $I_g = 0$ and with thyristor forward biased, $(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2)$ is very low as per Eq (4.16) and forward leakage current somewhat more than $(I_{CBO1} + I_{CBO2})$ flows. If, by some means, the emitter current of two component transistors can be increased so that $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ approaches unity, then as per Eq. (4.6) $I_a$ would tend to become infinity thereby turning-on the device. Actually, external load limits the anode current to a safe value after the thyristor begins conduction. The methods of turning-on a thyristor, in fact, are the methods of making $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ to approach unity. These various mechanisms for turning-on a thyristor are now discussed below :

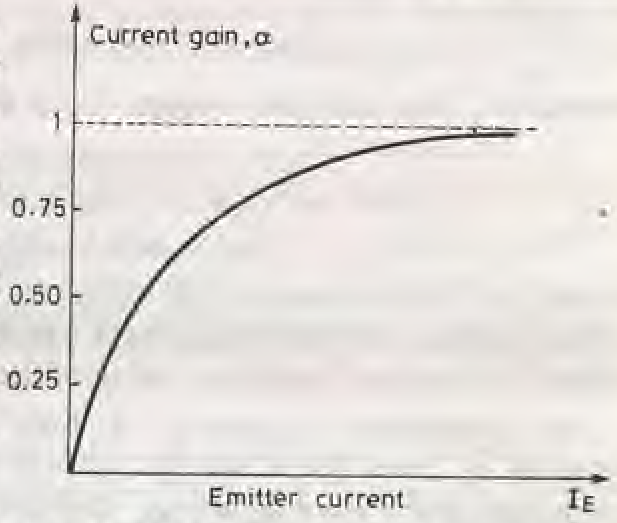


Fig. 4.16. Typical variation of current gain with emitter current of a thyristor.

(i) *GATE Triggering* : With anode positive with respect to cathode and with gate current $I_g = 0$, Eq. (4.6) shows that anode current, equal to the forward leakage current, is somewhat more than $I_{CBO1} + I_{CBO2}$. Under these conditions, the device is in the forward blocking state.

Now a sufficient gate-drive current between gate and cathode of the transistor is applied. This gate-drive current is equal to base current $I_{B2} = I_g$ and emitter current $I_k$ of transistor $Q_2$. With the establishment of emitter current $I_k$ of $Q_2$, current gain $\alpha_2$ of $Q_2$ increases and base current $I_{B2}$ causes the existence of collector current $I_{C2} = \beta_2 I_{B2} = \beta_2 I_g$. This amplified current $I_{C2}$ serves as the base current $I_{B1}$ of transistor $Q_1$. With the flow of $I_{B1}$, collector current $I_{C1} = \beta_1 I_{B1} = \beta_1 \beta_2 I_g$ of $Q_1$ comes into existence. Currents $I_{B1}$ and $I_{C1}$ lead to the establishment of emitter current $I_a$ of $Q_1$ and this causes current gain $\alpha_1$ to rise as desired. Now current $I_g + I_{C1} = (1 + \beta_1\beta_2) I_g$ acts as the base current of $Q_2$ and therefore its emitter current $I_k = I_{C1} + I_g$. With the rise in emitter current $I_k$, $\alpha_2$ of $Q_2$ increases and this further causes $I_{C2} = \beta_2 (1 + \beta_1\beta_2) I_g$ to rise. As amplified collector current $I_{C2}$ is equal to the base current of $Q_1$, current gain $\alpha_1$ eventually rises further. There is thus established a regenerative action internal to the device. This regenerative or positive feedback effect causes $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ to grow towards unity. As a consequence, anode current begins to grow towards a larger value limited only by load impedance external to the device. When regeneration has grown sufficiently, gate current can be withdrawn. Even after $I_g$ is removed, regeneration continues. This characteristic of the thyristor makes it suitable for pulse triggering. Note that thyristor is a latching device.

After thyristor is turned on, all the four layers are filled with carriers and all junctions are forward biased. Under these conditions, thyristor has very low impedance and is in the forward on-state.

(ii) *Forward-voltage triggering* : If the forward anode to cathode voltage is increased, the collector to emitter voltages of both the transistors are also increased. As a result, the leakage current at the middle junction $J_2$ of thyristor increases, which is also the collector current of $Q_2$ as well as $Q_1$. With increase in collector currents $I_{C1}$ and $I_{C2}$ due to avalanche effect, the emitter currents of the two transistors also increase causing $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ to approach unity. This leads to switching action of the device due to regenerative action. The forward-voltage triggering for turning-on a thyristor may be destructive and should therefore be avoided.

(iii) *dv/dt triggering* : The reversed biased junction $J_2$ behaves like a capacitor because of the space-charge present there. Let the capacitance of this junction be $C_j$. For any capacitor,

$i = C\frac{dv}{dt}$. In case it is assumed that entire forward voltage $v_a$ appears across reverse biased junction $J_2$, then charging current across the junction is given by

$$i = C_j \frac{dv_a}{dt}$$

This charging or displacement current across junction $J_2$ is collector currents of $Q_2$ and $Q_1$. Currents $I_{C2}$, $I_{C1}$ will induce emitter current in $Q_2$, $Q_1$. In case rate of rise of anode voltage is large, the emitter currents will be large and as a result, $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ will approach unity leading to eventual switching action of the thyristor.

(*iv*) *Temperature triggering* : At high temperature, the forward leakage current across junction $J_2$ rises. This leakage current serves as the collector junction current of the component transistors $Q_1$ and $Q_2$. Therefore, an increase in leakage current $I_{C1}$, $I_{C2}$ leads to an increase in the emitter currents of $Q_1$, $Q_2$. As a result, $(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2)$ approaches unity. Consequently, switching action of thyristor takes place.

(*v*) *Light triggering* : When light is thrown on silicon, the electron-hole pairs increase. In the forward-biased thyristor, leakage current across $J_2$ increases which eventually increases $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ to unity as explained before and switching action of thyristor occurs.

As stated before, gate-triggering is the most common method for turning-on a thyristor. Light-triggered thyristors are used in HVDC applications.

The operational differences between thyristor-family and transistor family of devices may now be summarised as under :

(*i*) Once a thyristor is turned on by a gate signal, it remains latched in on-state due to internal regenerative action. However, a transistor must be given a continuous base signal to remain in on-state.

(*ii*) In order to turn-off a thyristor, a reverse voltage must be applied across its anode-cathode terminals. However, a transistor turns off when its base signal is removed.

## 4.6. THYRISTOR RATINGS

Thyristor ratings indicate voltage, current, power and temperature limits within which a thyristor can be used without damage or malfunction. Ratings and specifications serve as a link between the designer and the user of SCR systems.

For reliable operation of a thyristor, it should be ensured that its current and voltage ratings are not exceeded during its working. One of the major disadvantages of thyristors is that they have low thermal time constant. If a thyristor handles voltage, current and power greater than its specified ratings, the junction temperature may rise above the safe limit and as a result thyristor may get damaged. Therefore, when SCRs are selected, some safety margin must be kept in the form of choosing device ratings somewhat higher than their normal working values. The manufacturers of thyristors make a comprehensive list of the voltage, current, power and temperature ratings after carefully testing the device. If SCRs are operated under these specified conditions, no damage will be done to SCRs. The object of this section is to discuss the various SCR ratings.

A thyristor has several ratings such as voltage, current, power, *dv/dt*, *di/dt*, turn-on time, turn-off time etc. For correct application of the device in thyristor circuits, a knowledge of these ratings is desirable.

Some subscripts are associated with voltage and current ratings for convenience in identifying them. First subscript letter indicates the direction or the state :

$D$ →forward-blocking region with gate circuit open ; $T$ →on-state ; $R$ →reverse ; $F$ →forward.

Except for the gate $G$, second subscript letter denotes the operating values.

$W$ →working value ; $R$ →repetitive value ; $S$ →surge or non-repetitive value ; $T$ →trigger.

Third subscript letter $M$ indicates the maximum or peak value.

Ratings with less than three subscripts may not follow these rules. Gate ratings involve the subscript $G$. Subscript $A$ usually stands for anode and subscript $AV$ for average.

### 4.6.1. Anode Voltage Ratings

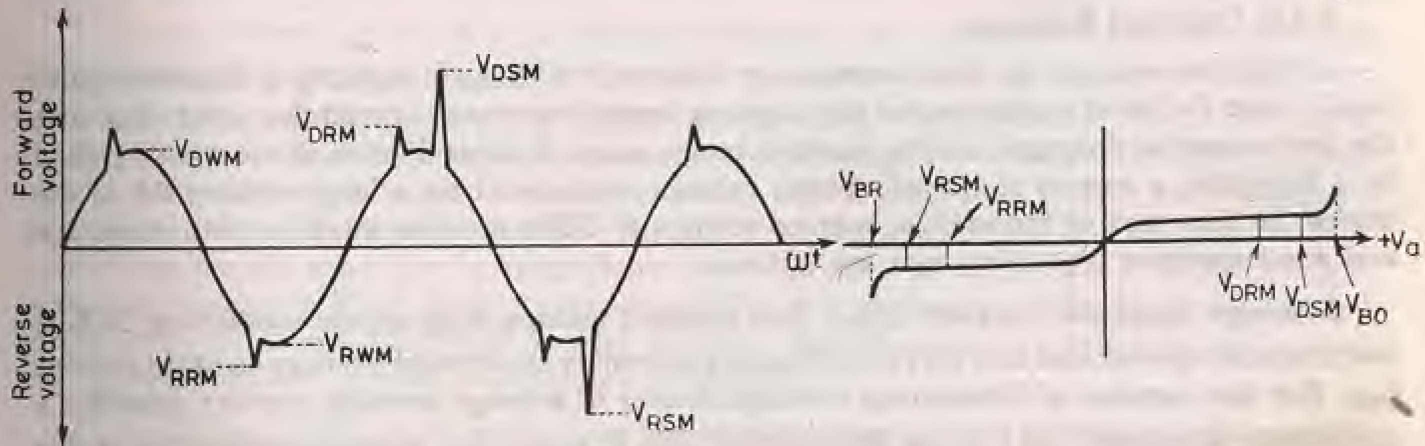
A thyristor is made up of four layers and three junctions as shown in Fig. 4.1 (*b*). The middle junction $J_2$ blocks the forward voltage whereas the two end junctions $J_1$, $J_3$ block the reverse voltage. The anode voltage ratings indicate the values of maximum voltages that a thyristor can withstand without a breakdown of the junction area with gate circuit open.

For ac systems, the supply voltage may not be a smooth sine wave. The voltage transients may occur regularly or at random as shown in Fig. 4.17 (*a*). The different anode voltage ratings are as under :

(*i*) $V_{DWM}$ —*Peak working forward-blocking voltage*. It specifies the maximum forward-blocking voltage that a thyristor can withstand during its working. Fig. 4.17 (*a*) shows that $V_{DWM}$ is equal to the maximum value of the sine voltage wave.

(*ii*) $V_{DRM}$ —*Peak repetitive forward-blocking voltage*. It refers to the peak transient voltage that a thyristor can withstand repeatedly or periodically in its forward-blocking mode. The rating is specified at a maximum allowable junction temperature with gate circuit open or with a specified biasing resistance between gate and cathode.

Voltage $V_{DRM}$ is encountered when a thyristor is commutated or turned-off. It may be recalled that during turn-off process, an abrupt change in reverse recovery current is accompanied by a spike voltage $L\frac{di}{dt}$ ; this is responsible for the appearance of $V_{DRM}$ across thyristor terminals.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.17. Anode voltage ratings during the blocking state of a thyristor.

*(iii)* $V_{DSM}$ —*Peak surge (or non-repetitive) forward-blocking voltage.* It refers to the peak value of the forward surge voltage that does not repeat. Its value is about 130% of $V_{DRM}$, but $V_{DSM}$ is less than forward breakover voltage $V_{BO}$ as shown in Fig. 4.17 (*b*).

*(iv)* $V_{RWM}$ —*Peak working reverse voltage.* It is the maximum reverse voltage that a thyristor can withstand repeatedly. Actually, it is equal to the peak negative value of a sine voltage wave, Fig. 4.17 (*a*).

*(v)* $V_{RRM}$ —*Peak repetitive reverse voltage.* It specifies the peak reverse transient voltage that may occur repeatedly in the reverse direction at the allowable maximum junction temperature. The transient lasts for a fraction of the time of one cycle, Fig. 4.17 (*a*). The reason for the periodic appearance of $V_{RRM}$ is the same as for $V_{DRM}$.

*(vi)* $V_{RSM}$ —*Peak surge (or non-repetitive) reverse voltage.* It represents the peak value of the reverse surge voltage that does not repeat. Its value is about 130% of $V_{RRM}$. But $V_{RSM}$ is less than reverse breakover voltage $V_{BR}$ as shown in Fig. 4.17 (*b*).

Both $V_{DSM}$ and $V_{RSM}$ ratings can be increased by connecting a diode in series with a thyristor. The anode voltage ratings listed above from (*i*) to (*iii*) pertain to forward blocking voltages whereas from (*iv*) to (vi) belong to reverse blocking voltages ; a thyristor must be able to support these voltages safely with gate circuit open.

*(vii)* $V_T$ —*On-state voltage drop.* It is the voltage drop between anode and cathode with specified forward on-state current and junction temperature. Its value is of the order of 1 to 1.5 V.

*(viii) Forward dv/dt rating.* The *dv/dt* rating of a thyristor indicates the maximum rate of rise of the anode voltage that will not trigger the device without any gate signal. If *dv/dt* is more than the specified maximum value, the thyristor may be switched on. With forward voltage, junction $J_2$ is reverse biased. Charges across $J_2$ develop a capacitance *C*. When forward voltage is suddenly applied to the device, a charging current $i = C\dfrac{dv}{dt}$ begins to flow and it may act as a gate current to turn on the SCR even without any positive gate signal. In practice, *dv/dt* triggering is never employed as it gives random turn-on of a thyristor. This type of triggering also leads to destruction of the thyristor through high junction temperature.

### 4.6.2. Current Ratings

A thyristor is made up of semiconductor material, its thermal capacity is therefore quite small. Even for short overcurrents, the junction temperature may exceed the rated value and the device may be damaged. As the junction temperature is dependent on the current handled by a thyristor, a correct choice of current ratings is essential for a long working life of the device. In this part of the article, current ratings of SCRs are discussed for both repetitive and non-repetitive type of current waveforms.

**Average on-state current** ($I_{TAV}$). The forward voltage drop across conducting SCR is low, therefore power loss in a thyristor depends primarily on forward average on-state current $I_{TAV}$. For the purpose of illustrating the significance of average on-state current, consider a continuous dc current *OA* flowing through the SCR, Fig. 4.18 (*a*). After the application of this current at $t = 0$, junction temperature begins to rise until finally it reaches its rated value $T_j = 125$°C. As the SCR has low thermal time constant, final temperature of 125°C is reached in a relatively short time. Suppose now that anode current is of rectangular waveshape with conduction angle 180° $\left(=\frac{T}{2T}\times 360^\circ\right)$, as shown in Fig. 4.18 (*b*). If the rectangular wave has average value equal to the constant current *OA* in Fig. 4.18 (*a*), then current amplitude of rectangular wave in Fig. 4.18 (*b*) is *OC* = 2 times *OA*. As the SCR has short time constant, junction temperature in Fig. 4.18 (*b*) is likely to exceed the allowable temperature of 125°C and this is not desirable. In order to limit the temperature to 125°C for rectangular waveforms of anode current, the pulse amplitude must be reduced from *OC* to some lower value *OD* (say). But a reduction in the amplitude of rectangular wave would result in a lower value of average anode current. This means that for the temperature rise to remain within limits, SCR must be rated at a lower value of average forward current $I_{TAV}$ when it is conducting a pulsed anode current than when it is carrying a constant dc. This shows that thyristor is derated when it handles rectangular or square wave of anode current. The effect of conduction angle on anode current $I_{TAV}$ is depicted in Fig. 4.19 (*a*) for rectangular waves. The average on-state power loss $P_{av}$ in this figure is approximately given by

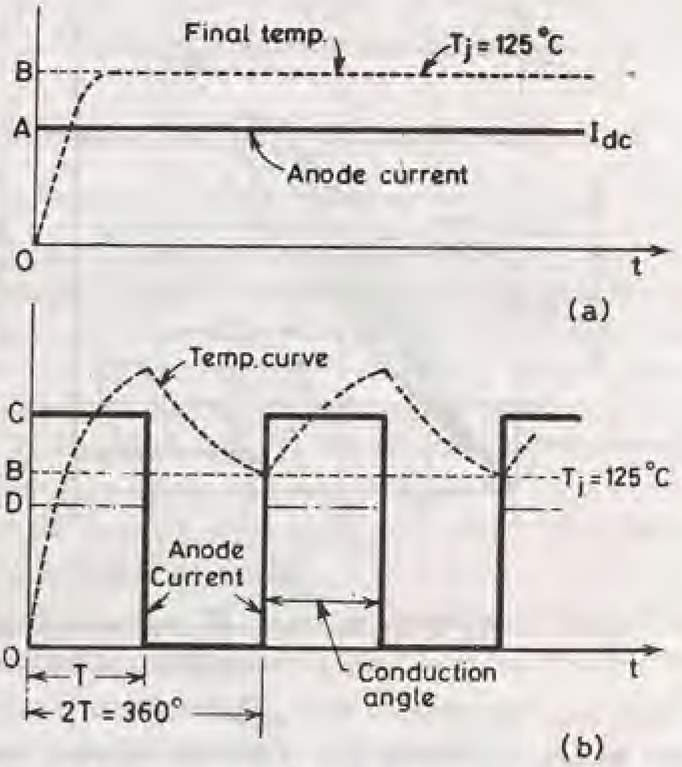


Fig. 4.18. Variation of junction temperature with constant anode current $i_a$ and with rectangular wave of $i_a$.

$$P_{av} = (\text{forward on–state voltage across a thyristor}) \times I_{TAV}$$

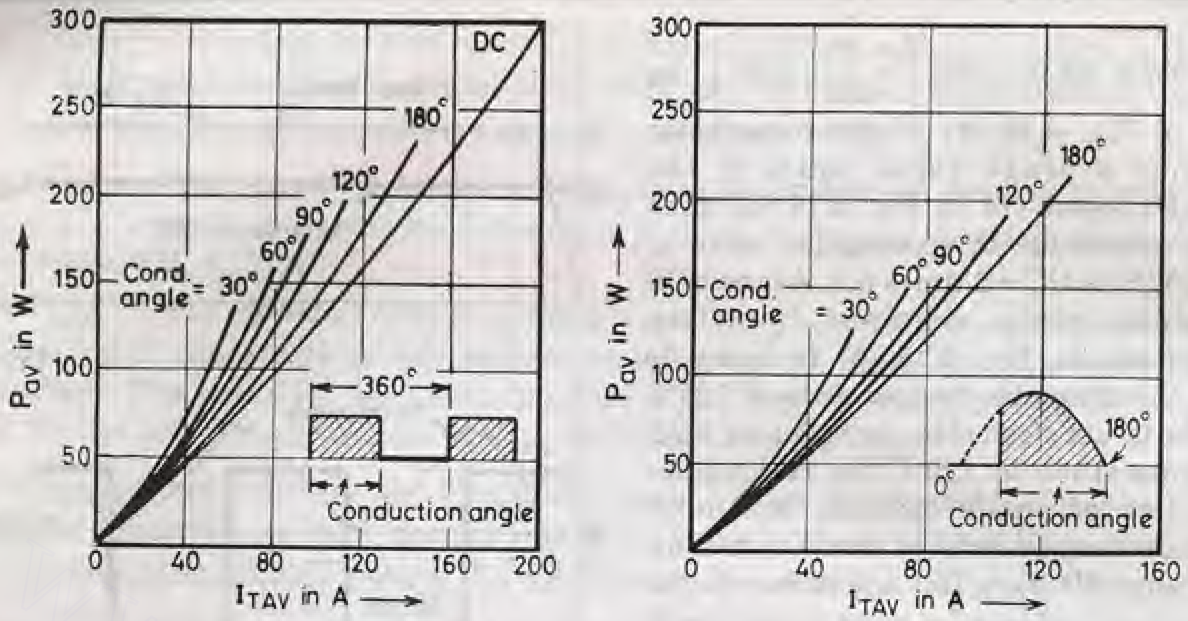
It can be obtained more accurately from the relation

$$P_{av} = \frac{1}{T}\int (\text{instantaneous voltage across SCR})\,(\text{instantaneous current through SCR})\,dt$$

where $T$ = periodic time of the anode current waveform.

The rms current for an SCR is constant whatever the conduction angle may be. But average current is given by $(I_{rms}/FF)$ where *FF* is the form factor of the current waveform. The conduction angle for sine wave is defined in Fig. 4.19 (*b*). For the same conduction angle, the form factor for sine wave is higher than, for the rectangular wave (see Examples 4.8 and 4.9). This means that average current for sine wave will be lower than it is for the rectangular wave for the same dc (or rms) current. The derating of the SCR is therefore more for sine waves than for the square or rectangular waves. The effect of conduction angle on average current is depicted in Fig. 4.19 (*b*) for sine wave. For 180° conduction angle, the anode current in Fig. 4.19 (*b*) is less than that in Fig. 4.19 (*a*). This diagram is applicable for 1-phase half-wave circuit (or 1-phase one-way, one pulse circuit).

Curves shown in Fig. 4.19 are supplied by the manufacturers of thyristors and are valid for supply frequency range of 50 to 400 Hz. The curve marked dc in Fig. 4.19 (*a*) is applicable when anode current is continuous dc. The current for different conduction angles are terminated at different values of average current in Fig. 4.19. For example, for 30° conduction



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.19. Average on-state power dissipation $P_{av}$ as a function of $I_{TAV}$ for (*a*) rectangular wave and (*b*) half-wave sinusoid.

angle, $I_{TAV}$ terminates at $[I_{dc}/(\text{form factor})] = (I_{dc}/3.464)$ in Fig. 4.19 (*a*) for rectangular wave and at $(I_{dc}/3.979)$ in Fig. 4.19 (*b*) for sine wave. At these terminal points, maximum rms current ratings of the device is reached. Table 4.1 gives different values of form-factor for different conduction angles of the half-wave sine waveforms.

**Table 4.1. Form Factor for Sine Waves**

| *Conduction angle* | 15° | 30° | 45° | 60° | 90° | 120° | 180° |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Form factor* | 5.650 | 3.9812 | 3.233 | 2.7781 | 2.2214 | 1.878 | 1.5708 |

Curves of Fig. 4.19 are applicable when load is purely resistive. In case load is inductive in nature, these curves should be modified. With an improvement in the waveform, *i.e.* with waveform becoming more smooth, the form factor decreases and as a consequence, higher average on-state current $I_{TAV}$ can be handled by the device.

**RMS current** ($I_{rms}$). Heating of the resistive elements of a thyristor, such as metallic joints, leads and interfaces depends on the forward rms current $I_{rms}$. The rms current rating is used as an upper limit for constant as well as pulsed anode current ratings of the thyristor. Its value is equal to $I_{dc}$ of Fig. 4.19 (*a*). The value of the rms forward current for an SCR remains the same for different conduction angles. Average current, however, is dependent on conduction angle as shown in Fig. 4.19. For example, for 180° conduction angle, the form factor for half-sine wave is $\pi/2$, therefore average current is $2\,I_{dc}/\pi$ or $2\,I_{rms}/\pi$. This means that for 180° conduction angle, thyristor circuit should be designed to carry an average current of $2\,I_{dc}/\pi$ instead of $I_{dc}$ ( or $I_{rms}$). The derating of the SCR below the dc value depends upon the current waveshape and it is defined as under :

$$\text{SCR derating below dc value } = I_{dc} - \frac{I_{dc}}{FF} = I_{dc}\left(1 - \frac{1}{FF}\right) \qquad \text{...(4.3)}$$

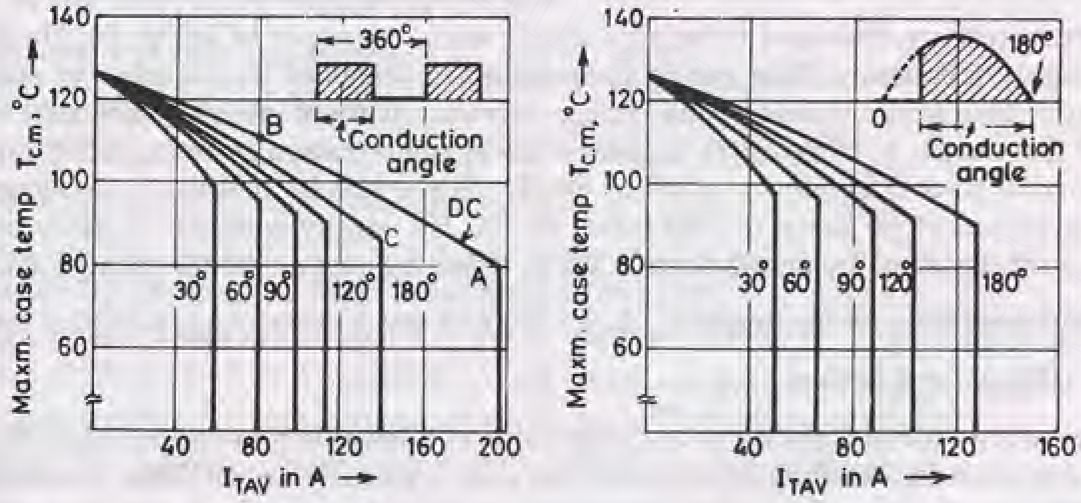
where *FF* is the form factor of the waveform. Its value is always more than one.

For rectangular wave, *FF* is less as compared to its value for sine wave for the same conduction angle. Eq. (4.3) reveals that SCR derating below dc is less for rectangular wave than for the sine wave. The average current $I_{TAV}$ for other conduction angles can be computed as discussed above.

The significance of $I_{TAV}$ and $I_{rms}$ can be highlighted with an example. Suppose maximum rms current for a thyristor is 35 A. For 120° conduction angle for sine wave, $I_{TAV} = \frac{35}{1.875} = 18.637$ A. This means that thyristor can handle an average current of 18.637 A for 120° conduction angle and its temperature will remain within limits. Suppose an ammeter is placed in series with the SCR for measuring the average current. Now decrease the conduction angle to 30° but with average current as measured by the ammeter remaining unchanged at 18.637 A. But an average current of 18.637 A at 30° conduction angle would require an rms current of $I_{rms} = 18.637 \times 3.9812 = 74.1976$ A. But such a large value of rms current would cause large ohmic losses and is, therefore, certainly going to destroy the SCR. This shows that as conduction angle is reduced, $I_{TAV}$ must be lowered accordingly so that rms current is not exceeded beyond its rated value and the SCR is not damaged.

The current ratings $I_{TAV}$ and $I_{rms}$ are of repetitive type. They are dependent on maximum junction temperature. If better cooling is provided to a thyristor body, these ratings can be upgraded.

As stated above, power loss in a thyristor and its heating is dependent upon the rms current. Manufacturers also provide curves showing the variation of case temperature $T_c$ with average on-state current $I_{TAV}$, Fig. 4.20. These curves can be obtained from Fig. 4.19 provided $\theta_{jc}$ (thermal resistance between junction and thyristor case)* in °C/W is known. If $T_j$ is the junction temperature, then



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.20. Maximum allowable case temperature $T_{cm}$ as a function of $I_{TAV}$ for (*a*) rectangular wave and (*b*) for half-wave sinusoid.

$$T_j - T_c = \theta_{jc} \cdot P_{av}$$

For SCRs, $T_j$ is usually 125°C. Taking $\theta_{jc} = 0.15$°C/W for dc current of 200 A ; $P_{av} = 300$ W, from Fig. 4.19 (*a*), is obtained for $I_{TAV} = 200$ A.

---

[*] For understanding the term thermal resistance read Art. 4.8.

$$\therefore \qquad 125 - T_c = 0.15 \times 300 \quad \text{or} \quad T_c = 80°\text{C}$$

This point is plotted in Fig. 4.20 (*a*) as *A*. For 80 A dc, $P_{av} = 100$ W.

$$\therefore \qquad 125 - T_c = 0.15 \times 100 \quad \text{or} \quad T_c = 110°\text{C}$$

This point is plotted as *B* in Fig. 4.20 (*a*). For 180° conduction angle, for $I_{TAV} = 140$ A, $P_{av} = 225$ W from Fig. 4.19 (*a*).

$$\therefore \qquad T_c = 125 - 0.15 \times 225 = 91.25°\text{C}$$

This point is plotted as *C* in Fig. 4.20 (*a*). Other points can be plotted accordingly for rectangular as well as half-wave sinusoids to obtain the curves of Fig. 4.20. These curves indicate that for junction temperature $T_j = 125°$C, lower the average on-state current $I_{TAV}$, greater is the case temperature that can be allowed for the same conduction angle. For example, for sine wave with 180° conduction angle, for $I_{TAV} = 120$ A the case temperature $T_{cm} = 91°$C, ; for $I_{TAV} = 80$ A the case temperature $T_{cm} = 104°$C and so on.

**Surge Current Rating.** When a thyristor is working under its repetitive voltage and current ratings, its permissible junction temperature is never exceeded. However, a thyristor may be subjected to abnormal operating conditions due to faults or short circuits. In order to accommodate these unusual working conditions, surge current rating of thyristors is also specified. A surge current rating indicates the maximum possible non-repetitive, or surge, current which the device can withstand. Higher currents caused by non-repetitive faults or short circuits should occur once in a while during the life span of a thyristor to prevent its degradation.

Surge currents are assumed to be sine waves with frequency of 50, or 60, Hz depending upon the supply frequency. This rating is specified in terms of the number of surge cycles with corresponding surge current peak. Surge current rating is inversely proportional to the duration of the surge. It is usual to measure the surge duration in terms of the number of cycles of normal power frequency of 50 or 60 Hz. For example, a three-cycle surge current rating for a period of 60 msec (3 × 20 msec) for 50 Hz supply consists of three conducting half-cycles, each followed by an off-period. Three different surge current ratings are provided by the manufacturers ; as for example, $I_{TSM} = 3000$ A for $\frac{1}{2}$ cycle, $I_{TSM} = 2100$ A for 3 cycles and $I_{TSM} = 1800$ A for 5 cycles.

One cycle surge current rating is the peak value of allowable non-recurrent half-sine wave of 10 msec duration for 50 Hz. For duration less than half-cycle *i.e.* 10 msec, a subcycle surge current rating is also specified. This rating for 50 or 60 Hz supply is the peak value for a part of the half-sine wave. The subcycle surge current rating $I_{sb}$ can be determined by equating the energies involved in one cycle surge and one subcycle surge as follows :

$$I_{sb}^2 \cdot t = I^2 \cdot T$$

or

$$I_{sb} = I\sqrt{\frac{T}{t}} \qquad \text{...(4.4 a)}$$

where
$T$ = time for one half-cycle of supply frequency, sec
$I$ = one-cycle surge current rating, *A*
$I_{sb}$ = subcycle surge current rating, *A*
$t$ = duration of subcycle surge, sec

For 50 Hz supply, $T = 10$ msec

$$\therefore \qquad I_{sb} = \frac{I}{10} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{t}} \qquad \text{...(4.4 b)}$$

**$I^2t$ rating.** This rating is employed in the choice of a fuse or other protective equipment for thyristors. The rating in terms of amp$^2$-sec specifies the energy that the device can absorb for a short time before the fault is cleared. It is usually specified for overloads lasting for less than, or equal to, one-half cycle of 50 or 60 Hz supply. The $I^2t$ rating is given by the relation.

$$(\text{rms value of one–cycle surge current})^2 \times \text{time for one cycle} \qquad \text{...(4.5)}$$

As an example, $I^2t$ rating for 4 A (rms) SCR is 10 amp$^2$-sec and for 35 A SCR is 100 amp$^2$-sec. In order that a fuse (or other protective equipment) protects a thyristor reliably, the $I^2t$ rating of fuse must be less than the $I^2t$ rating of the series-connected thyristor.

***di/dt* rating.** This rating of a thyristor indicates the maximum rate of rise of current from anode to cathode without any harm to the device. When a thyristor is turned on, conduction starts at a place near the gate. This small area of conduction spreads to the whole area of junction. If the rate of rise of anode current (*di/dt*) is large as compared to the spreading velocity of carriers across the cathode junction, local hot spots will be formed near the gate connection on account of high current density. This causes the junction temperature to rise above the safe limit and as a consequence, SCR may be damaged permanently. Therefore, a limit on the value of *di/dt* at turn-on is specified in amperes per microsecond for all SCRs. Typical values of *di/dt* are 20 to 500 $A/\mu$ sec.

**Other ratings.** In addition to the voltage and current ratings of thyristors discussed above, there are some other ratings as under :

(*a*) Latching and holding currents,

(*b*) Turn-on and turn-off times,

(*c*) Gate circuit voltage, current and power ratings.

These ratings have already been discussed in Art. 4.1 to Art. 4.5.

Detailed ratings of any SCR during on-state and off-state can be obtained from the manufacturers by quoting the specification sheet number.

**Example 4.8.** *The specification sheet for an SCR gives maximum rms on-state current as 35 A. If this SCR is used in a resistive circuit, compute average on-state current rating for half-sine wave current for conduction angles of (a) 180° (b) 90° and (c) 30°.*

**Solution.** For half-sine wave of current as shown in Fig. 4.21 (*a*),

$$I_{av} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\theta_1}^{\pi} I_m \sin\theta\, d\theta = \frac{I_m}{2\pi}(1+\cos\theta_1)$$

$$I_{rms} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\theta_1}^{\pi} I_m^2 \sin^2\theta\, d\theta\right]^{1/2} = \left[\frac{I_m^2}{2\pi}\int_{\theta_1}^{\pi}\left\{\frac{1}{2}-\frac{\cos 2\theta}{2}\right\}\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \left[\frac{I_m^2}{2\pi}\left|\frac{\theta}{2}-\frac{\sin 2\theta}{4}\right|_{\theta_1}^{\pi}\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \left[\frac{I_m^2}{2\pi}\left\{\frac{\pi-\theta_1}{2}+\frac{1}{4}\sin 2\theta_1\right\}\right]^{1/2}$$

(*a*) For 180° conduction angle, $\theta_1 = 0°$

$$\therefore \qquad I_{av} = \frac{I_m}{2\pi}(1 + \cos 0°) = \frac{I_m}{\pi}$$

and
$$I_{rms} = \left[\frac{I_m^2}{2\pi}\left\{\frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{1}{4}(0)\right\}\right]^{1/2} = \frac{I_m}{2}$$

$$\therefore \qquad \text{Form factor,} \quad (FF) = \frac{I_{rms}}{I_{av}} = \frac{I_m}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{I_m} = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore \qquad I_{TAV} = \frac{I_{rms}}{FF} = \frac{35 \times 2}{\pi} = 22.282 \text{ A}$$

(*b*) For 90° conduction angle, $\theta_1 = 90°$

$$\therefore \qquad I_{av} = \frac{I_m}{2\pi}[1 + \cos 90] = \frac{I_m}{2\pi}$$

and
$$I_{rms} = \left[\frac{I_m^2}{2\pi}\left\{\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{1}{4}(0)\right\}\right]^{1/2} = \frac{I_m}{2\sqrt{2}}$$

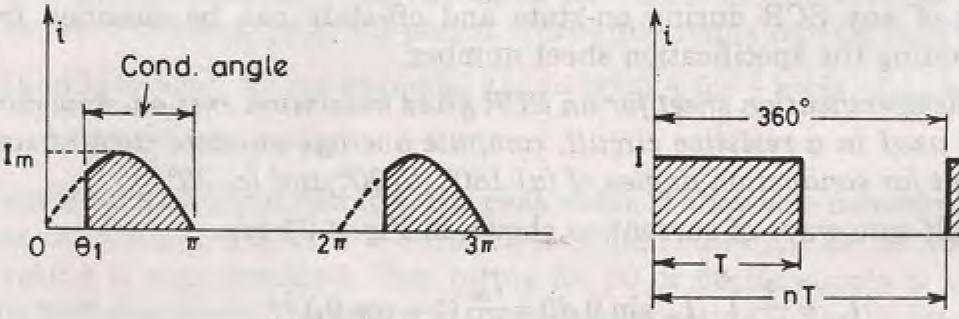
$$\therefore \qquad \text{Form factor} = \frac{I_m}{2\sqrt{2}} \cdot \frac{2\pi}{I_m} = \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$\therefore \qquad I_{TAV} = \frac{35 \times \sqrt{2}}{\pi} = 15.755 \text{ A}$$

(*c*) For 30° conduction angle, $\theta_1 = 150°$

$$\therefore \quad I_{av} = \frac{I_m}{2\pi}[1 + (-0.866)] = 0.0213227\, I_m$$

$$I_{rms} = \left[\frac{I_m^2}{2\pi}\left\{\frac{\pi}{12} + \frac{1}{4}(-0.866)\right\}\right]^{1/2} = 0.0849035\, I_m$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.21. Pertaining to (*a*) Example 4.8 and (*b*) Example 4.9.

$$\therefore \qquad \text{Form factor} = \frac{0.0849035\, I_m}{0.0213227\, I_m} = 3.9818363$$

$$\therefore \qquad I_{TAV} = \frac{35}{3.98184} = 8.7899 \text{ A.}$$

**Example 4.9.** *Repeat Example 4.8 in case the current has rectangular* waveshape.

**Solution.** For the rectangular waveform of current shown in Fig. 4.21 (*b*),

$$\text{Conduction angle} = \frac{T}{nT} \times 360$$

or
$$n = \frac{360°}{\text{Conduction angle}}$$

Here
$$I_{av} = \frac{I \times T}{nT} = \frac{I}{n}$$

$$I_{rms} = \left[\frac{I^2 \times T}{nT}\right]^{1/2} = \frac{I}{\sqrt{n}}$$

(*a*) For 180° conduction angle, $n = \frac{360}{180} = 2$

$$\therefore \qquad I_{av} = \frac{I}{2} \text{ and } I_{rms} = \frac{I}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$\therefore \qquad \text{Form factor} = \frac{I}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot \frac{2}{I} = \sqrt{2}$$

$$I_{TAV} = \frac{35}{\sqrt{2}} = 24.7487 \text{ A}$$

(*b*) For 90° conduction angle, $n = \frac{360}{90} = 4$

$$\therefore \qquad I_{av} = \frac{I}{4} \text{ and } I_{rms} = \frac{I}{\sqrt{4}} = \frac{I}{2}$$

$$\therefore \qquad \text{Form factor} = \frac{I}{2} \cdot \frac{4}{I} = 2$$

$$I_{TAV} = \frac{35}{2} = 17.5 \text{ A}$$

(*c*) For 30° conduction angle, $n = \frac{360}{12} = 12$

$$I_{av} = \frac{I}{12} \quad \text{and} \quad I_{rms} = \frac{I}{\sqrt{12}}$$

$$\text{Form factor} = \frac{I}{\sqrt{12}} \cdot \frac{12}{I} = \sqrt{12}$$

$$I_{TAV} = \frac{35}{\sqrt{12}} = 10.1036 \text{ A.}$$

**Example 4.10.** *An SCR has half-cycle surge current rating of 3000 A for 50 Hz supply. Calculate its one-cycle surge current rating and $I^2t$ rating.*

**Solution.** Let $I$ and $I_{sb}$ be the one-cycle and sub-cycle surge current ratings of the SCR respectively. Then equating the energies involved in them, we get

$$I^2 T = I_{sb}^2 \cdot t$$

or
$$I^2 \times \frac{1}{100} = (3000)^2 \times \frac{1}{200} \quad \text{or} \quad I = \frac{3000}{\sqrt{2}} = 2121.32 \text{ A}$$

From Eq. (4.5),
$$I^2t \text{ rating} = I^2 \times \frac{1}{2f} = \left(\frac{3000}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2 \times \frac{1}{100} = 45000 \text{ Amp}^2 \cdot \text{sec.}$$

Thus the SCR has one-cycle surge current rating of 2121.32 A and $I^2t$ rating of 45000 amp$^2$-sec.

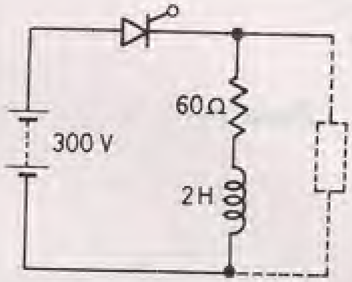


Fig. 4.22. Pertaining to Example 4.11.

**Example 4.11.** *In the circuit of Fig. 4.22, the thyristor is gated with a pulse width of 40 microsec. The latching current of thyristor is 36 mA. For a load of 60 Ω and 2 H, will the thyristor get turned on ? Check. If the answer is negative, how this difficulty can be overcome for the given load. Find the maximum value of the remedial parameter shown dotted.*

**Solution.** The current through load and thyristor is

$$i_T = \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right)$$

for the circuit shown,

$$i_T = \frac{300}{60}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{60}{2}\times 40\times 10^{-6}}\right) = 5.996 \times 10^{-3} = 5.996 \text{ mA}$$

This shows that for a pulse width of 40 μs, the anode current rises to 5.996 mA which is far less than 36 mA. So thyristor will not get turned on.

The remedial parameter, shown dotted in Fig. 4.22, should be resistance, say $R_1$, because current can rise in resistance without any time delay. The value of $R_i$ can be obtained as under :

$$i_T = 36 \times 10^{-3} = \frac{300}{R_1} + \frac{300}{60}(1 - e^{-0.0012})$$

or

$$R_1 = \frac{300}{30.004} \times 10^3 = 9998 \ \Omega = 9.998 \text{ k}\Omega.$$

**Example 4.12.** *During forward conduction, a thyristor has static V-I characteristic as shown by a straight line in Fig. 4.23. Find the average power loss in the thyristor and its rms current rating for the following load conditions :*

*(a) A constant current of 80 A for one-half cycle.*

*(b) A constant current of 30 A for one-third cycle.*

*(c) A half-sine wave of peak value 80 A.*

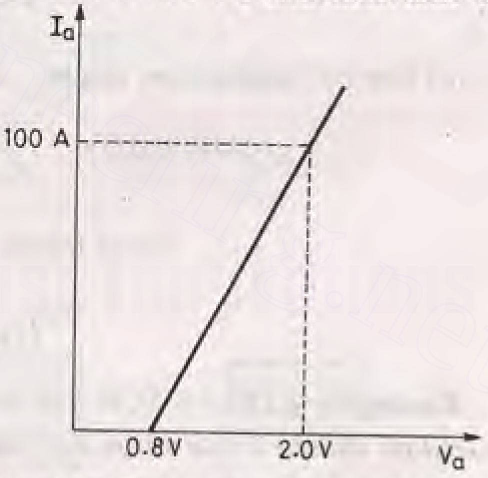


Fig. 4.23. Pertaining to Example 4.12.

**Solution.** It is seen from Fig. 4.23 that for any current $i_a$, the voltage drop across thyristor is

$$v_T = 0.8 + \frac{2.0 - 0.8}{100} \times i_a = 0.8 + 0.012\, i_a$$

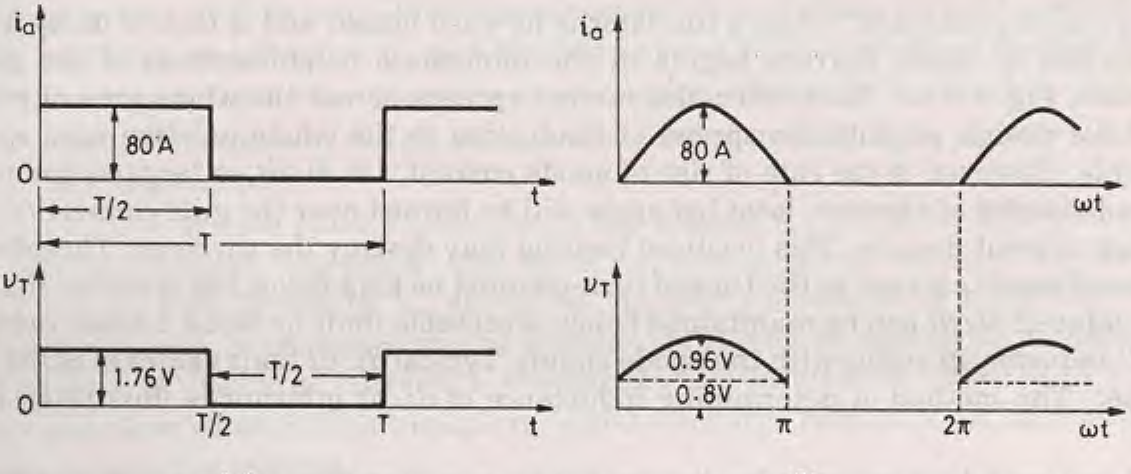
(*a*) Constant current of 80 A for one-half cycle is shown in Fig. 4.24 (*a*). For $i_a = 80$ A, the voltage drop across thyristor is $v_T = 0.8 + 0.012 \times 80 = 1.76$ V. From the waveforms of $i_a$, $v_T$ shown in Fig. 4.24 (*a*), the average on-state power loss in thyristor is

$$P_{av} = \frac{1}{T}\int_0^{T/2} v_T \cdot i_a \cdot dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{T}\int_0^{T/2} 1.76 \times 80 \, dt = \frac{1.76 \times 80 \times T}{2T} = 70.4 \text{ W}$$

Waveform of $i_a$ gives the rms current rating of thyristor as

$$\sqrt{\frac{80^2 \times T}{2T}} = 56.577 \text{ A}$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.24. Current and voltage waveforms pertaining to Example 4.12.

(*b*) Here $v_T = 0.8 + 0.012 \times 30 = 1.16$ V

$$\therefore \qquad P_{av} = \frac{1.16 \times 30 \times T}{3T} = 11.6 \text{ W}$$

Rms current rating $= 30 \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} = 17.321$ A

(*c*) Half-sine wave of peak value of 80 A, Fig. 4.24 (*b*), can be expressed as $i_a = 80 \sin \omega t$.

$$\therefore \qquad v_T = 0.8 + 0.012 \times 80 \sin \omega t = 0.8 + 0.96 \sin \omega t$$

From the waveforms for $i_a$ and $v_T$ shown in Fig. 4.24 (*b*), the average on-state power loss is given by

$$P_{av} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi} (0.8 + 0.96 \sin \omega t)\, (80 \sin \omega t)\, d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi} 64 \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi} 76.8 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi} \times 64 \left| -\cos \omega t \right|_0^{\pi} + \frac{76.8}{4\pi} \left| \omega t - \frac{\sin 2\,\omega t}{2} \right|_0^{\pi}$$

$$= 20.372 + 19.2 = 39.572 \text{ W}$$

Rms current rating $= \frac{I_{\max}}{2} = \frac{80}{2} = 40$ A.

## 4.7. THYRISTOR PROTECTION

Reliable operation of a thyristor demands that its specified ratings are not exceeded. In practice, a thyristor may be subjected to overvoltages or overcurrents. During SCR turn-on, *di/dt* may be prohibitively large. There may be false triggering of SCR by high value of *dv/dt*. A spurious signal across gate-cathode terminals may lead to unwanted turn-on. A thyristor must be protected against all such abnormal conditions for satisfactory and reliable operation of SCR circuit and the equipment. SCRs are very delicate devices, their protection against abnormal operating conditions is, therefore, essential. The object of this section is to discuss various techniques adopted for the protection of SCRs.

(*a*) *di/dt protection*. When a thyristor is forward biased and is turned on by a gate pulse, conduction of anode current begins in the immediate neighbourhood of the gate-cathode junction, Fig. 4.6 (*a*). Thereafter, the current spreads across the whole area of junction. The thyristor design permits the spread of conduction to the whole junction area as rapidly as possible. However, if the rate of rise of anode current, *i.e. di/dt*, is large as compared to the spread velocity of carriers, local hot spots will be formed near the gate connection on account of high current density. This localised heating may destroy the thyristor. Therefore, the rate of rise of anode current at the time of turn-on must be kept below the specified limiting value. The value of *di/dt* can be maintained below acceptable limit by using a small inductor, called *di/dt inductor*, in series with the anode circuit. Typical *di/dt* limit values of SCRs are 20–500 A/μ sec. The method of determining inductance of *di/dt* inductor is illustrated in Example 4.13.

Local spot heating can also be avoided by ensuring that the conduction spreads to the whole area as rapidly as possible. This can be achieved by applying a gate current nearer to (but never greater than) the maximum specified gate current.

(*b*) *dv/dt protection*. With forward voltage across the anode and cathode of a thyristor, the two outer junctions are forward biased but the inner junction is reverse biased. This reverse biased junction $J_2$, Fig. 4.3 (*b*), has the characteristics of a capacitor due to charges existing across the junction. In other words, space-charges exist in the depletion region around junction $J_2$ and therefore junction $J_2$ behaves like a capacitance. If the entire anode to cathode forward voltage $V_a$ appears across $J_2$ junction and the charge is denoted by $Q$, then a charging current $i$ given by Eq. (4.6) flows :

$$i = \frac{dQ}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(C_j \cdot V_a)$$

$$= C_j \frac{dV_a}{dt} + V_a \frac{dC_j}{dt} \qquad \text{...(4.6 } a\text{)}$$

As $C_j$, the capacitance of junction $J_2$, is almost constant, the current is given by

$$i = C_j \frac{dV_a}{dt} \qquad \text{...(4.6 } b\text{)}$$

If the rate of rise of forward voltage $dV_a/dt$ is high, the charging current $i$ will be more. This charging current plays the role of gate current and turns on the SCR even when gate signal is zero. Such phenomena of turning-on a thyristor, called *dv/dt turn-on* must be avoided as it leads to false operation of the thyristor circuit. For controllable operation of the thyristor, the rate of rise of forward anode to cathode voltage $dV_a/dt$ must be kept below the specified rated limit. Typical values of *dv/dt* are 20 – 500 V/μsec. False turn-on of a thyristor by large *dv/dt* can be prevented by using a snubber circuit in parallel with the device.

### 4.7.1. Design of Snubber Circuits

A snubber circuit consists of a series combination of resistance $R_s$ and capacitance $C_s$ in parallel with the thyristor as shown in Fig. 4.25. Strictly speaking, a capacitor $C_s$ in parallel with the device is sufficient to prevent unwanted *dv/dt* triggering of the SCR. When switch *S* is closed, a sudden voltage appears across the circuit. Capacitor $C_s$ behaves like a short circuit,

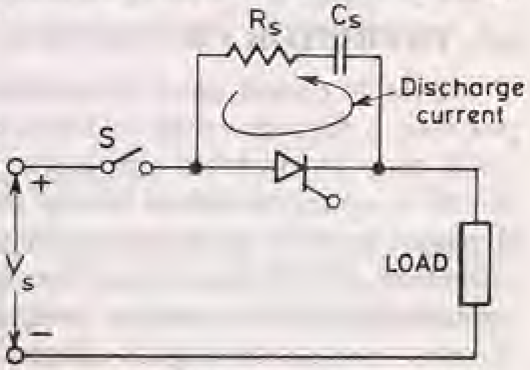


Fig. 4.25. Snubber circuit across SCR.

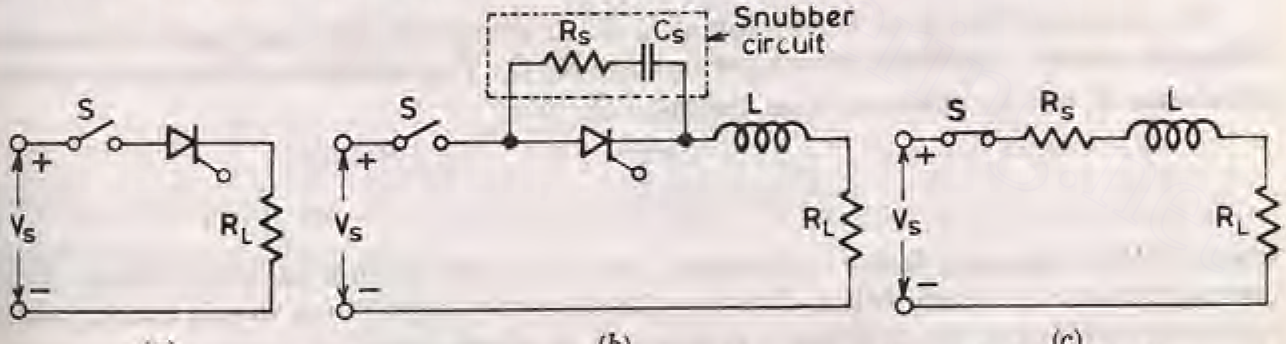
therefore voltage across SCR is zero. With the passage of time, voltage across $C_s$ builds up at a slow rate such that $dv/dt$ across $C_s$ and therefore across SCR is less than the specified maximum $dv/dt$ rating of the device. Here the question arises that if $C_s$ is enough to prevent accidental turn-on of the device by $dv/dt$, what is the need of putting $R_s$ in series with $C_s$ ? The answer to this is as under.

Before SCR is fired by gate pulse, $C_s$ charges to full voltage $V_s$. When the SCR is turned on, capacitor discharges through the SCR and sends a current equal to $V_s$/ (resistance of local path formed by $C_s$ and SCR). As this resistance is quite low, the turn-on $di/dt$ will tend to be excessive and as a result, SCR may be destroyed. In order to limit the magnitude of discharge current, a resistance $R_s$ is inserted in series with $C_s$ as shown in Fig. 4.25. Now when SCR is turned on, initial discharge current $V_s/R_s$ is relatively small and turn-on $di/dt$ is reduced.

In actual practice ; $R_s$, $C_s$ and the load circuit parameters should be such that $dv/dt$ across $C_s$ during its charging is less than the specified $dv/dt$ rating of the SCR and discharge current at the turn-on of SCR is within reasonable limits. Normally, $R_s$, $C_s$ and load circuit parameters form an underdamped circuit so that $dv/dt$ is limited to acceptable values.

The design of snubber circuit parameters is quite complex. Here only an approximate method of their calculation is presented in Example 4.13. In practice, designed snubber parameters are adjusted up or down in the final assembled power circuit so as to obtain a satisfactory performance of the power electronics system.

**Example 4.13.** *Fig. 4.26 (a) shows a thyristor controlling the power in a load resistance* $R_L$. *The supply voltage is 240 V dc and the specified limits for di/dt and dv/dt for the SCR are 50 A/μsec and 300 V/μsec respectively. Determine the values of the di/dt inductance and the snubber circuit parameters* $R_s$ *and* $C_s$.



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 4.26. (a) Thyristor in series with $R_L$ (b) Thyristor protection with $L$ and $R_s$, $C_s$ (c) Equivalent circuit of Fig. 4.26 (b) at the instant switch $S$ is closed.

**Solution.** Snubber circuit parameters $R_s$ and $C_s$ are connected across SCR and $di/dt$ inductor $L$ in series with anode circuit as shown in Fig. 4.26 (b). When switch $S$ is closed, the capacitor behaves like a short circuit and SCR in the forward blocking state offers a very high resistance. Therefore, the equivalent circuit soon after the instant of closing the switch $S$ is as shown in Fig. 4.26 (c). For this circuit, the voltage equation is

$$V_s = (R_s + R_L)\, i + L\frac{di}{dt} \qquad \text{...(4.7 a)}$$

Its solution gives,

$$i = I\,(1 - e^{-t/\tau})$$

where

$$I = \frac{V_s}{R_s + R_L} \quad \text{and} \quad \tau = \frac{L}{R_s + R_L}$$

In Eq. (4.7 *a*), $t$ is the time in seconds measured from the instant of closing the switch. From this equation,

$$\frac{di}{dt} = I \cdot e^{-t/\tau} \cdot \frac{1}{\tau} = \frac{V_s}{R_s + R_L} \cdot \frac{R_s + R_L}{L} e^{-t/\tau}$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{L} e^{-t/\tau}$$

The value of $di/dt$ is maximum when $t = 0$.

$$\therefore \quad \left(\frac{di}{dt}\right)_{max} = \frac{V_s}{L} \qquad \text{...(4.7 } b\text{)}$$

or

$$L = \frac{V_s}{(di/dt)_{max}} = \frac{240 \times 10^{-6}}{50} = 4.8 \,\mu\text{H}$$

The voltage across SCR is given by, $v_a = R_s \cdot i$

or

$$\frac{dv_a}{dt} = R_s \cdot \frac{di}{dt}$$

or

$$\left(\frac{dv_a}{dt}\right)_{max} = R_s \cdot \left(\frac{di}{dt}\right)_{max} \qquad \text{...(4.8)}$$

From Eq. (4.7 *b*) and (4.8),

$$\left(\frac{dv_a}{dt}\right)_{max} = \frac{R_s \cdot V_s}{L} \qquad \text{...(4.9)}$$

or

$$R_s = \frac{L}{V_s}\left(\frac{dv_a}{dt}\right)_{max} = \frac{4.8}{240} \times 300 = 6 \,\Omega$$

The circuit of Fig. 4.26, consisting of *R, L, C*, should be fully analysed to determine the optimum values of snubber circuit parameters $R_s$, $C_s$. The analysis of this circuit shows that resistance $R_s$ can be obtained from the relation [9]

$$R_s = 2\xi \sqrt{\frac{L}{C_s}}$$

where $\xi$ is the damping factor (or damping ratio). In order to limit the peak voltage overshoot across thyristor to a safe value, damping factor in the range of 0.5 to 1 is usually used. For optimum solution of the problem, $\xi$ is taken to be about 0.65.

$$\therefore \quad C_s = \left(\frac{2\xi}{R_s}\right)^2 L = \left(\frac{2 \times 0.65}{6}\right)^2 \times 4.8 \times 10^{-6} = 0.2253 \,\mu\text{F}$$

It is seen from Fig. 4.26 (*b*) that when switch $S$ is closed, capacitor $C_s$ is charged to dc supply voltage before the SCR is triggered. Now when the SCR is turned on, capacitor $C_s$ will discharge a maximum current of $V_s/R_s$ and total current through thyristor will be $(V_s/R_s + V_s/R_L)$. It should be ensured that this current spike is less than the peak repetitive current rating ($I_{TRM}$) of the SCR. Thus if $R_s$ is small, the current spike contributed by the discharge of $C_s$ will be large. In order to reduce this spike, $R_s$ is normally taken greater than what is required to limit $dv/dt$. At the same time, value of $C_s$ is also reduced so that energy stored in $C_s$ is small and the snubber discharge does not harm SCR when it is turned on.

Thus, in the present case, $R_s$ may be chosen somewhat higher than 6Ω, say 10Ω and $C_s$ somewhat less than 0.2253 μF, say 0.15 μF. The adoption of the new value of $R_s$ demands a new value of $L$. From Eq. (4.9),

$$L = \frac{R_s \cdot V_s}{(dv_a/dt)_{max}} = \frac{10 \times 240}{300} = 8\ \mu\text{H}$$

This value of inductance is more than that required to limit $di/dt$ to 50 A/μ sec.

For ac circuits, maximum value of input voltage ($V_m$) can be used in Eq. (4.9) for computing $R_s$.

**Example 4.14.** *A thyristor operating from a peak supply voltage of 400 V has the following specifications :*

*Repetitive peak current,* $I_p = 200$ *A,* $(di/dt)_{max} = 50$ *A/μs,* $\left(\frac{dv}{dt}\right)_{max} = 200$ *V/μs.*

*Choosing a factor of safety of 2 for* $I_p$, $\left(\frac{di}{dt}\right)_{max}$ *and* $\left(\frac{dv}{dt}\right)_{max}$, *design a suitable snubber circuit. The minimum value of load resistance is 10 Ω.*

**Solution.** For a factor of safety of 2, the permitted values are $I_p = \frac{200}{2} = 100$ A, $\left(\frac{di}{dt}\right)_{max} = \frac{50}{2} = 25$ A/μs, $(dv/dt)_{max} = \frac{200}{2} = 100$ V/μs.

In order to restrict the rate of rise of current beyond specified value, $(di/dt)$ inductor must be inserted in series with thyristor. From Example 4.13,

$$L = \frac{V_s}{(di/dt)_{max}} = \frac{400 \times 10^{-6}}{25} = 16\ \mu\text{H}$$

$$R_s = \frac{L}{V_s} \cdot \left(\frac{dv}{dt}\right)_{max} = \frac{16 \times 10^{-6}}{400} \times \frac{100}{10^{-6}} = 4\ \Omega$$

Before thyristor is turned on, $C_s$ is charged to 400 V. When thyristor is turned on, the peak current through the thyristor is

$$\frac{400}{10} \times \frac{400}{4} = 140\ \text{A}.$$

As this peak current through SCR is more than the permissible peak current of 100 A, the magnitude of $R_s$ must be increased. Taking $R_s$ as 8 Ω, the peak current through the SCR $= \frac{400}{10} + \frac{400}{8} = 90$ A, less than the allowable peak current. So choose $R_s = 8$ Ω.

Also $$C_s = \left(\frac{2\,\xi}{R_s}\right)^2 L = \left(\frac{1.3}{8}\right)^2 \times 16 \times 10^{-6} = 0.4225\ \mu\text{F}$$

The value of $C_s$ may be lowered as discussed in the previous example, so $C_s$ may be taken as 0.30 μF.

At the instant switch $S$ is closed, Fig. 4.26, thyristor is open circuited and current through $C_s$ is given by

$$C_s \frac{dv}{dt} \cong \frac{V_s}{R_s + R_L}$$

or $$0.3 \times 10^{-6} \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{400}{10+8}$$

or $$\frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{400}{18} \times \frac{1}{0.3 \times 10^{-6}} = 74.07 \text{ V/}\mu\text{s}$$

Since designed value of $(dv/dt)$ is less than the specified maximum value of 100 $V/\mu s$, value of $C_s$ chosen is correct. So choose $L = 10\ \mu H$, $R_s = 8\ \Omega$ and $C_s = 0.3\ \mu F$.

**Example 4.15.** *Thyristor shown in Fig. 4.26 (i) has $I^2t$ rating of 20 $A^2s$. If terminal A gets short-circuited to ground, calculate the fault clearance time so that SCR is not damaged.*

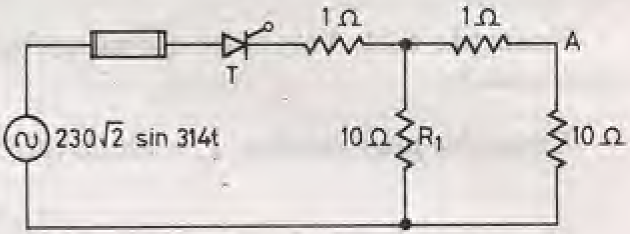


Fig. 4.26.(*i*) Pertaining to Example 4.15.

**Solution.** The worst possible fault current should be considered for calculating the fault clearance time. Maximum fault current occurs when source voltage is at its peak $= 230\sqrt{2}$ V. When terminal $A$ gets short-circuited to ground, the resistance offered to source $= 1 + \frac{10 \times 1}{10 + 1} = 21/11\ \Omega$. Assuming maximum fault current $= \frac{230\sqrt{2} \times 11}{21}$ A to remain constant during the short clearance time $t_c$, we get

$$\int_0^{t_c} i^2 \cdot dt = \int_0^{t_c} \left(\frac{230\sqrt{2} \times 11}{21}\right)^2 \cdot dt = 20 \text{ A}^2\text{s}$$

$$\therefore \qquad t_c = 20 \left[\frac{21}{230\sqrt{2} \times 11}\right]^2 \times 1000 \text{ ms} = 0.6892 \text{ ms.}$$

### 4.7.2. Overvoltage Protection

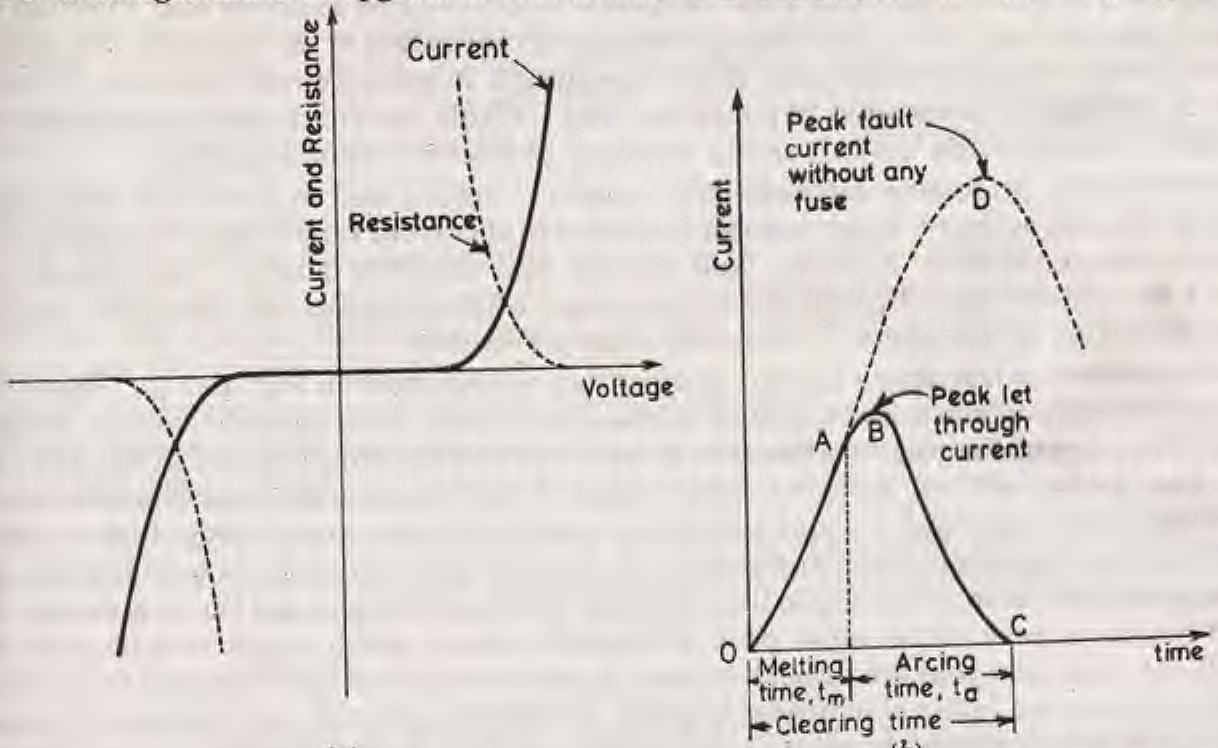
Thyristors are very sensitive to overvoltages just as other semi-conductor devices are. Overvoltage transients are perhaps the main cause of thyristor failure. Transient overvoltages cause either maloperation of the circuit by unwanted turn-on of a thyristor or permanent damage to the device due to reverse breakdown. A thyristor may be subjected to internal or external overvoltages ; the former is caused by the thyristor operation whereas the latter comes from the supply lines or the load circuit.

(*i*) *Internal overvoltages.* Large voltages may be generated internally during the commutation of a thyristor. After thyristor anode current reduces to zero, anode current reverses due to stored charges. This reverse recovery current rises to a peak value at which time the SCR begins to block. After this peak, reverse recovery current decays abruptly with large $di/dt$. Because of the series inductance $L$ of the SCR circuit, large transient voltage $L\frac{di}{dt}$ is produced. As this internal overvoltage may be several times the breakover voltage of the device, the thyristor may be destroyed permanently.

(*ii*) *External overvoltages.* External overvoltages are caused due to the interruption of current flow in an inductive circuit and also due to lightning strokes on the lines feeding the thyristor systems. When a thyristor converter is fed through a transformer, voltage transients are likely to occur when the transformer primary is energised or de-energised. Such overvoltages may cause random turn on of a thyristor. As a result, the overvoltages may appear across the load causing the flow of large fault currents. Overvoltages may also damage the thyristor by an inverse breakdown. For reliable operation, the overvoltages must be suppressed by adopting suitable techniques.

**4.7.2.1. Suppression of overvoltages.** In order to keep the protective components to a minimum, thyristors are chosen with their peak voltage ratings of 2.5 to 3 times their normal peak working voltage. The effect of overvoltages is usually minimised by using RC circuits and non-linear resistors called *voltage clamping devices.*

The RC circuit, called snubber circuit, is connected across the device to be protected, see Fig. 4.29. It provides a local path for internal overvoltages caused by reverse recovery current. Snubber circuit is also helpful in damping overvoltage transient spikes and for limiting *dv/dt* across the thyristor. The capacitor charges at a slow rate and thus the rate of rise of forward voltage (*dv/dt*) across SCR is also reduced. The resistance $R_s$ damps out the ringing oscillations between the snubber circuit and the stray circuit inductance. Snubber circuits are also connected across transformer secondary terminals to suppress overvoltage transients caused by switching on or switching off of the primary winding. As snubber circuits provide only partial protection to SCR against transient overvoltages, thyristor protection against such overvoltages must be upgraded. This is done with the help of voltage-clamping devices.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.27. (*a*) Volt-ampere and volt-resistance characteristics of voltage-clamping device (*b*) Action of current-limiting fuse in an ac circuit.

A voltage-clamping (V.C.) device is a non-linear resistor connected across SCR as shown in Fig. 4.29. The *V.C.* device has falling resistance characteristic with increasing voltage, Fig. 4.27 (*a*). Under normal working conditions of voltage below the clamping level, the device has a high resistance and draws only a small leakage current. When a voltage surge appears, the V.C. device operates in the low resistance region and produces a virtual short circuit across the SCR. The increased current associated with virtual short circuit produces an increased voltage drop in the source and line impedances and as a result, voltage across SCR is clamped to a safe value. After the surge energy is dissipated in the non-linear resistor, the operation of the V.C. device returns to its high resistance region. Selenium thyrector diodes, metal oxide varistors or avalanche diode suppressors are commonly employed for protecting the thyristor circuit against overvoltages. As the voltage clamping ability of a thyrector is inferior to those of metal oxide varistor and avalanche-diode suppressor, use of thyrector is on the decline.

It has already been stated that RC snubber is not enouth for overvoltage protection of SCR. In practic, therefore, a combined protection consisting of RC snubber and V.C. device is provided to thyristors as shown in Fig. 4.29.

### 4.7.3. Overcurrent Protection

Thyristors have small thermal time constants. Therefore, if a thyristor is subjected to overcurrent due to faults, short circuits or surge currents ; its junction temperature may exceed the rated value and the device may be damaged. There is thus a need for the overcurrent protection of SCRs. As in other electrical systems, overcurrent protection in thyristor circuits is achieved through the use of circuit breakers and fast-acting fuses as shown in Fig. 4.29.

The type of protection used against overcurrent depends upon whether the supply system is weak or stiff. In a weak supply network, fault current is limited by the source impedance below the multi-cycle surge current rating of the thyristor. In machine tool and excavator drives, if the motor stalls due to overloads, the current is limited by the source and motor impedances. The filter inductance commonly employed in dc and ac drives may limit the rate of rise of fault current below the multicycle surge current rating of the thyristor. For all such systems, overcurrent can be interrupted by conventional fuses and circuit breakers. However, proper co-ordination is essential to guarantee that (*i*) fault current is interrupted before the thyristor is damaged and (*ii*) only faulty branches of the network are isolated.

Conventional protective methods are, however, inadequate in electrical stiff supply networks. In such systems, magnitude and rate of rise of current is not limited because source has negligible impedance. As such, fault current and therefore junction temperature rise within a few milliseconds. Special fast-acting current-limiting fuses are, therefore, required for the protection of thyristors in these stiff supply networks.

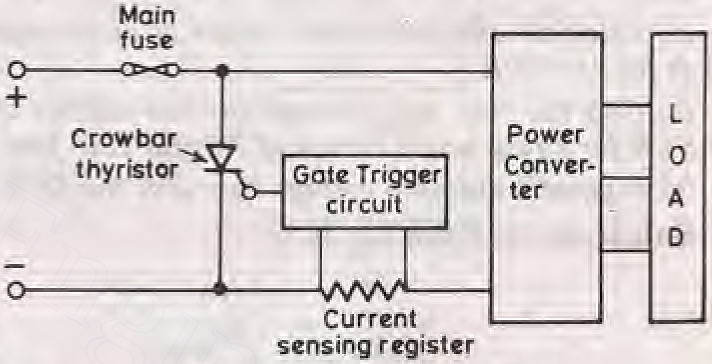
The operation of fast-acting current-limiting fuse is illustrated in Fig. 4.27 (*b*). These fuses and thyristors are found to have similar thermal properties, there co-ordination is therefore simpler. The current-limiting fuse consists of one or more fine silver ribbons having very short fusing time. In Fig. 4.27 (*b*), fault is shown to occur at zero crossing of the ac sine wave, *i.e.* at $t = 0$. Without fuse, the fault current would rise upto $A$ and then would follow dotted curve. A properly selected current limiting fuse melts at $A$. An arc is then struck. For a brief interval after $A$, the current continues to rise depending upon the circuit parameters and the fuse design. This current reaches a peak value, called *peak let through current*, which is indicated by point $B$ in Fig. 4.27 (*b*). Note that peak let through current is considerably less than the peak fault current without the fuse, the latter is indicated by point $D$. After the point $B$, arc resistance increases and fault current decreases. At point $C$, arcing stops and the fault current is cleared. The total clearing time $t_c$ is the sum of melting time $t_m$ and arcing time $t_a$, *i.e.* $t_c = t_m + t_a$.

Proper co-ordination between fast-acting current-limiting fuse and thyristor is essential. A fuse carries the thyristor current as both are placed in series. Therefore, the fuse must be rated to carry full-load current plus a marginal overload current for an indefinite period. But the peak let through current of fuse must be less than the subcycle surge current rating of the SCR. The voltage across the fuse during arcing period is known as arcing, or recovery, voltage. This voltage is equal to the sum of source voltage and the emf induced in the circuit inductance during arcing time $t_a$. If the fuse current is interrupted abruptly, induced e.m.f. $L\frac{di}{dt}$ may be high ; as a result arcing voltage would be excessive. It should therefore be ensured during fuse design and co-ordination that arcing voltage is limited to less than twice the peak supply voltage. In case voltage rating of the fuse is far in excess of circuit voltage, an abrupt current interruption would lead to dangerous overvoltages.

When both circuit breaker and fast-acting current-limiting fuse are used for overcurrent protection of SCR, Fig. 4.29, the faulty circuit must be cleared before any damage is done to the device. A circuit breaker has long tripping time, it is therefore generally used for protecting the semiconductor device against the continuous overloads or against surge currents of long duration. A fast-acting C.L. fuse is used for protecting thyristors against large surge currents of very short duration. The tripping time of the circuit breaker, the fusing-time of the fast-acting fuse must be properly co-ordinated with the rating of a thyristor. In order that fuse protects the thyristor reliably, the $I^2t$ rating of the fuse must be less than that of the SCR.

**Electronic crowbar protection.** As thyristor possesses high surge current capability, it can be used in an electronic crowbar circuit for overcurrent protection of power converters using SCRs. An electronic crowbar protection provides rapid isolation of the power converter before any damage occurs.

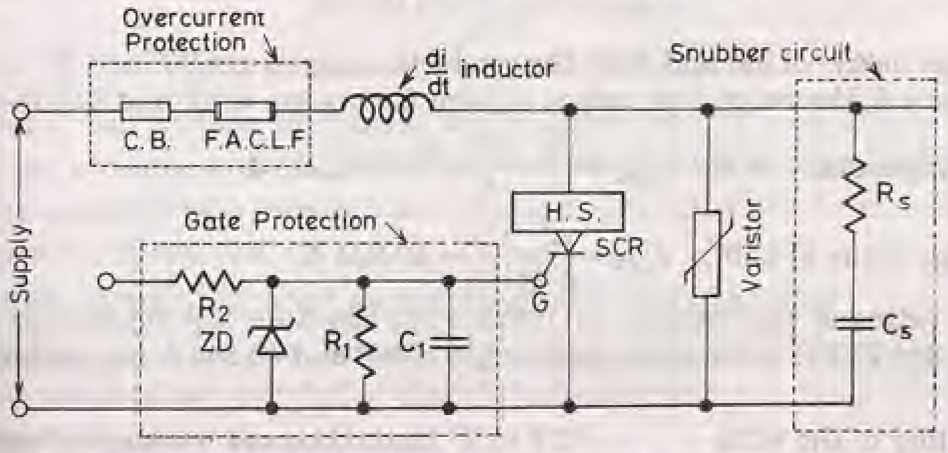
Fig. 4.28 illustrates the basic principle of electronic crowbar protection. A crowbar thyristor is connected across the input dc terminals. A current sensing resistor detects the value of converter current. If it exceeds preset value, gate circuit provides the signal to crowbar SCR and turns it on in a few microseconds. The input terminals are then short-circuited by crowbar SCR and it shunts away the converter overcurrent. The crowbar thyristor current depends upon the source voltage and its impedance. After some time, main fuse interrupts the fault current. The fuse may be replaced by a circuit breaker if SCR has adequate surge current rating.



Current sensing resistor
Fig. 4.28. Elementary electronic crowbar circuit.

### 4.7.4. Gate Protection

Gate circuit should also be protected against overvoltages and overcurrents. Overvoltages across the gate circuit can cause false triggering of the SCR. Overcurrent may raise junction



C.B.—Circuit breaker ; F.A.C.L.F.—Fast acting current limiting fuse ; H.S.—Heat sink ; ZD—Zener diode.
Fig. 4.29. Circuit components showing the thyristor protection.

temperature beyond specified limit leading to its damage. Protection against over-voltages is achieved by connecting a zener diode *ZD* across the gate circuit. A resistor $R_2$ connected in series with the gate circuit provides protection against overcurrents.

A common problem in thyristor circuits is that they suffer from *spurious*, or *noise, firing*. Turning-on or turning-off of an SCR may induce trigger pulses in a nearby SCR. Sometimes transients in a power circuit may also cause unwanted signal to appear across the gate of a neighbouring SCR. These undesirable trigger pulses may turn on the SCR leading to false operation of the main SCR. Gate protection against such spurious firing is obtained by using shielded cables or twisted gate leads. A varying flux caused by nearby transients cannot pass through twisted gate leads or shielded cables. As such no e.m.f. is induced in these cables and spurious firing of thyristors is thus minimised. A capacitor and a resistor are also connected across gate to cathode to bypass the noise signals, Fig. 4.29. The capacitor should be less than 0.1 μF and must not deteriorate the waveshape of the gate pulse.

**Example 4.16**. *For the circuit shown in Fig. 4.30,*

*(a) calculate the maximum values of di/dt and dv/dt for the SCR,*

*(b) find the rms and average current ratings of the SCR for firing angle delays of 90° and 150° and*

*(c) suggest a suitable voltage rating of the SCR.*

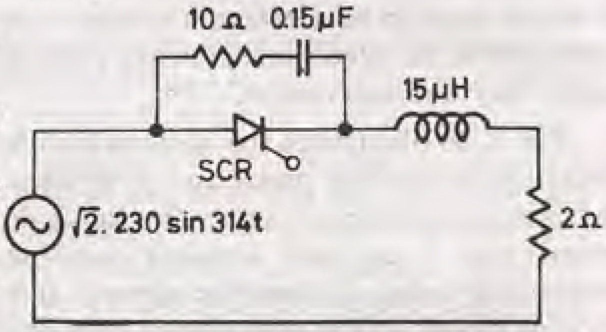


Fig. 4.30. Pertaining to Example 4.16.

**Solution.** (*a*) From Eq. (4.7),

$$\left(\frac{di}{dt}\right)_{max} = \left(\frac{V_s}{L}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{2}\cdot 230}{15\times 10^{-6}} = 21.685 \text{ A/μsec.}$$

From Eq. (4.8),

$$\left(\frac{dv}{dt}\right)_{max} = R_s\left(\frac{di}{dt}\right)_{max} = 10\times 21.685 = 216.85 \text{ V/μsec.}$$

(*b*) For 15 μH, $X_L = 314\times 15\times 10^{-6} = 0.00471\ \Omega$. As this value of $X_L$ is much lower than $R = 2\ \Omega$, the current is primarily limited by 2 Ω.

$$\therefore \qquad I_{max} = \frac{\sqrt{2}\cdot 230}{2} = 115\cdot\sqrt{2}$$

For firing angle delays of 90° and 150°, the conduction angles are 90° and 30° respectively and from Example 4.8, the respective values of form factors are $\pi/\sqrt{2}$ and 3.98184.

∴ For firing angle delay of 90°, $I_{TAV} = \dfrac{\sqrt{2}\cdot 115\cdot\sqrt{2}}{\pi} = 73.211$ A

and for firing angle delay of 150°, $I_{TAV} = \dfrac{\sqrt{2}\cdot 115}{3.98184} = 40.844$ A

RMS current rating of the thyristor is $115\sqrt{2} = 162.634$ A for any conduction angle, but average currents are 73.211 A for conduction angle of 90° and 40.844 A for conduction angle of 30°.

(*c*) Voltage rating of the SCR = (2.5 to 3) times the peak working voltage

= (2.5 to 3) × $\sqrt{2}\cdot 230$ = 813.173 V to 975.807 V.

So a voltage rating of about 900 V may be chosen for the SCR.

**Example 4.17.** *For the circuit shown in Fig. 4.31 (a), the initial voltage across capacitor is $v_c(0) = -100$ V. Sketch the time variations of $i$, $v_L$, $v_C$, $i_D$ and $i_L$ after the thyristor is turned on at $t = 0$.*

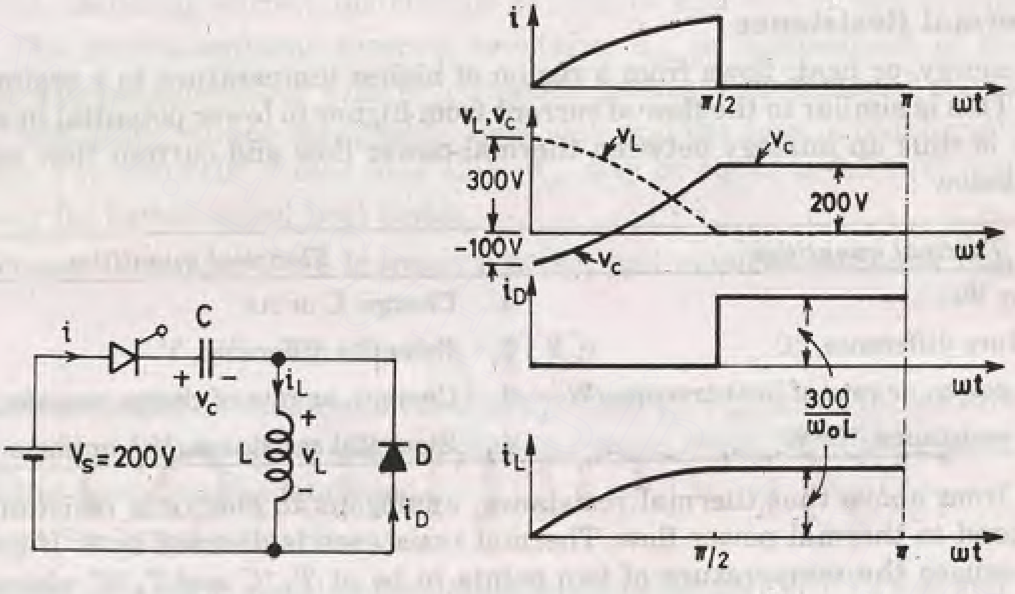
**Solution.** When the thyristor is turned on at $t = 0$, the voltage equation for the circuit is

$$L\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}\int i\,dt = V_s$$

Its Laplace transform is

$$sL \cdot I(s) + \frac{1}{C}\left[\frac{I(s)}{s} + \frac{C \cdot v_c(0)}{s}\right] = \frac{V_s}{s}$$

or
$$I(s) = \frac{V_s - v_{co}}{L} \cdot \frac{1}{s^2 + \frac{1}{LC}} = \frac{300}{L} \cdot \frac{1/\sqrt{LC}}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}\left(s^2 + \frac{1}{LC}\right)}$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.31. Pertaining to Example 4.17.

Its Laplace inverse is $\quad i(t) = \frac{300}{\omega_0 L}\sin \omega_0 t \quad$ where $\quad \omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$

$\therefore$
$$v_L = L\frac{di(t)}{dt} = 300 \cos \omega_0 t$$

$$v_C = V_s - v_L = 200 - 300 \cos \omega_0 t$$

The current and voltage waveforms are as shown in Fig. 4.31 (*b*). At π/2, $v_L$ tends to reverse and as a result, diode *D* gets forward biased and current $i_L$ starts flowing through *D* as $i_D \cdot v_L$ is therefore zero from π/2 to π. Voltage $v_c$ remains 200 V and current *i* zero from π/2 to π as shown in Fig. 4.31 (*b*).

## 4.8. HEATING, COOLING AND MOUNTING OF THYRISTORS

Some power loss occurs in a thyristor during its working. The various components of this power loss in the junction region of a thyristor are as under :

(*i*) Forward conduction loss
(*ii*) Loss due to leakage current during forward and reverse blocking

(*iii*) Switching losses at turn-on and turn-off
(*iv*) Gate triggering loss

At industrial power frequencies between zero and 400 Hz, the forward conduction loss, or on-state conduction loss, is usually the major component. But switching losses become dominant at high operating frequencies. These electrical losses produce thermal heat which must be removed from the junction region. The thermal losses and hence the temperature rise of the device increase with the thyristor rating. The cooling of thyristors, therefore, becomes more difficult as the SCR rating increases.

The heat produced in a thyristor by electrical loss is dissipated to ambient fluid (air or water) by mounting the device on a heat sink. When heat due to losses is equal to that dissipated by the heat sink, steady junction temperature is reached. Thyristor heating and hence its junction temperature rise is dependent primarily on current handled by the device during its working. As such, current rating of thyristors is often based on thermal considerations.

### 4.8.1. Thermal Resistance

Thermal energy, or heat, flows from a region of higher temperature to a region of lower temperature. This is similar to the flow of current from higher to lower potential in an electric circuit. There is thus an analogy between thermal-power flow and current flow as given in tabular form below :

| | *Thermal quantities* | | *Electrical quantities* |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Heat, J or *Ws* | 1. | Charge, C or *As* |
| 2. | Temperature difference, °C | 2. | Potential difference, V |
| 3. | Thermal power, or rate of heat transfer, W | 3. | Current, or rate of charge transfer, A |
| 4. | Thermal resistance, °C/W | 4. | Electrical resistance, V/A or ohms. |

It is seen from above that thermal resistance, analogous to electrical resistance, is the resistance offered to thermal power flow. Thermal resistance is denoted by θ. If power loss, $P_{av}$ in watts, causes the temperature of two points to be at $T_1$ °C and $T_2$ °C where $T_1 > T_2$, then thermal resistance is given by

$$\theta_{12} = \frac{T_1 - T_2}{P_{av}} \text{ °C/W} \qquad \text{...(4.10)}$$

The heat generated in a thyristor due to internal losses is taken to be developed at a junction within the semiconductor material. The heat flow in a thyristor is then as under :

(*i*) from the junction to thyristor case ;
(*ii*) from the thyristor case to heat sink and
(*iii*) from the heat sink to the surrounding ambient fluid (air or water).

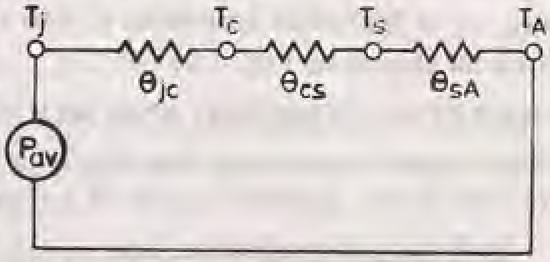


Fig. 4.32. Thermal equivalent circuit for an SCR.

There is thus thermal resistance $\theta_{jc}$ between junction temperature $T_j$ and case temperature $T_c$. Similarly, there is thermal resistance $\theta_{cs}$ between $T_c$ and sink temperature $T_s$ and $\theta_{sA}$ between $T_s$ and ambient temperature $T_A$. Using the electrical analogy, a thermal equivalent circuit depicting the flow of heat from junction to ambient fluid can be drawn as shown in Fig. 4.32. Here $P_{av}$ is the average rate of heat generated at a thyristor junction and is analogous to constant-current source. Here

$$P_{av} = \frac{T_j - T_c}{\theta_{jc}} = \frac{T_c - T_s}{\theta_{cs}} = \frac{T_s - T_A}{\theta_{sA}}$$

$$= \frac{T_j - T_A}{\theta_{jA}} \qquad \text{...(4.11)}$$

where $\theta_{jA} = \theta_{jc} + \theta_{cs} + \theta_{sA},$

is the total thermal resistance between junction and ambient.

The junction-to-case thermal resistance $\theta_{jc}$ is specified in the thyristor data sheet. The case-to-sink thermal resistance $\theta_{cs}$ depends on the size of the device case, flatness of the case surface, the clamping pressure and the use of conducting grease between the interfaces. Usual value of $\theta_{cs}$ varies between 0.05°C/W and 0.5°C/W. In addition to $\theta_{jc}$, thyristor data sheet also specify $\theta_{cs}$ assuming correct installation procedure and use of the interface thermal lubrication. The sink-to-ambient thermal resistance $\theta_{sA}$ is independent of the thyristor configuration. The parameters on which $\theta_{sA}$ depends are heat sink material, surface area and finish of the heat sink, volume occupied by heat sink and the type of cooling (air cooling or water cooling). For naturally cooled heat sink, $\theta_{sA}$ may be equal to 0.5°C/W and this value would be lower for better cooled heat sinks.

The difference in temperature between junction and ambient can be written from Fig. 4.32 as

$$T_j - T_A = P_{av}(\theta_{jc} + \theta_{cs} + \theta_{sA}) \qquad \text{...(4.12)}$$

Eq. (4.12) shows that for maximum value of $T_j$ (= 125°C), $P_{av}$ can be increased by reducing $\theta_{sA.}$ This means that by providing efficient cooling system to the SCR, the power dissipation capability of the device can be increased.

### 4.8.2. Heat Sink Specifications

The thyristor data sheet specifies maximum junction temperature $T_j$, thermal resistances $\theta_{jc}$ and $\theta_{cs.}$ The manufacturers of heat sinks provide catalogs in which sufficient data on heat sink is available. Fig. 4.32 gives typical data in the form of curves for standard heat sinks of

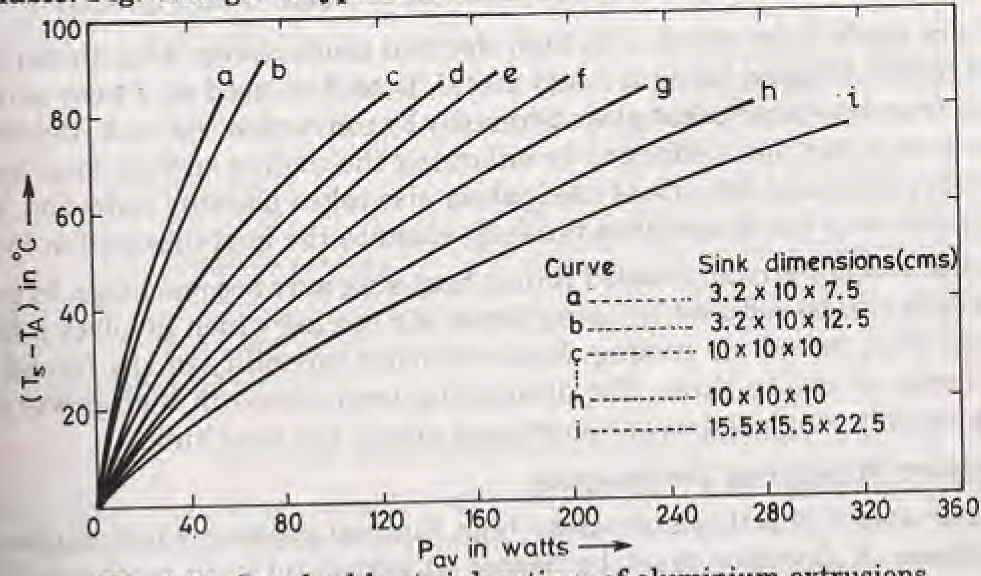


Fig. 4.33. Standard heat sink ratings of aluminium extrusions.

aluminium extrusions. These curves relate temperature difference $(T_s - T_A)$ in °C between heat sink and ambient *versus* average power dissipation $P_{av}$ in watts.

In order to illustrate the use of these curves, choose a particular heat sink and read $P_{av}$ and $(T_s - T_A)$. Then the thermal resistance of the heat sink to ambient is calculated as

$$\theta_{sA} = \frac{T_s - T_A}{P_{av}} \qquad \text{...(4.13)}$$

For maximum specified temperature $T_j$ (usually 125°C) and a known ambient temperature $T_A$, the permissible value of $P_{av}$ (with $\theta_{jc}$ and $\theta_{cs}$ already known) is calculated from Eq. (4.12) with $\theta_{sA}$ computed from Eq. (4.13). If this $P_{av}$ is different from that chosen earlier from Fig. 4.32, another heat sink with other values of $P_{av}$ and $(T_s - T_A)$ is tried until Eqs. (4.12) and (4.13) are satisfied. After deciding the value of $P_{av}$, use this value of $P_{av}$ in Fig. 4.19 to obtain permissible value of average current rating for a given conduction angle and current waveform.

In the second method of heat sink design, first average armature current is determined from a known current waveform and conduction angle. Corresponding to this average current, $P_{av}$ is read off from Fig. 4.19. For this $P_{av}$, thermal resistance $\theta_{sA}$ is determined from Eq. (4.12) as temperatures $T_j$ (= 125°C), $T_A$ and $\theta_{jc}$, $\theta_{cs}$ are already known. This computed value of $\theta_{sA}$ is used to obtain temperature difference $(T_s - T_A)$ between heat sink and the ambient from Eq. (4.13). Using these values of $P_{av}$ and $(T_s - T_A)$, an appropriate heat sink is selected from Fig. 4.33, the details of which are usually supplied by the manufacturers.

In the third method of heat sink selection, first compute average armature current as done in the second method. For this value of average current, obtain $P_{av}$ from Fig. 4.19 and case temperature $T_c$ from Fig. 4.20 for the known current waveform and conduction angle. An examination of Fig. 4.32 reveals that the sink temperature $T_s$ in terms of case temperature $T_c$ is given by

$$T_s = T_c - P_{av} \cdot \theta_{cs} \qquad \text{...(4.14)}$$

As ambient temperature is known, $(T_s - T_A)$ can be calculated. Now, with the knowledge of $P_{av}$ and $(T_s - T_A)$, a choice of suitable heat sink can be made from Fig. 4.33.

Heat sinks are made from metal with high thermal conductivity. Aluminium is the most commonly used metal. Copper, being a costly metal, is seldom used as a heat sink material. Heat dissipation from heat sink takes place primarily by convection. As such, thyristor cooling by convection can be made more effective by enlarging the cooling surface area by providing the heat sink with peripheral fins. Heat dissipation also takes place by radiation. Heat sinks are usually provided with black anodized finish to enhance the heat dissipation by radiation.

Sometimes the size of naturally-cooled finned heat sink may become large. In such a case, size of the heat sink can be reduced by using forced air cooling which involves a fan blowing air over the fins. With forced air cooling, heat-removing capability of the finned heat sink increases by a factor of two to three. For dissipating large losses in high-power thyristors, water-cooling is usually employed to get a compact size of the heat sink.

### 4.8.3. Thyristor Mounting Techniques

Internal power losses in a thyristor cause high thermal stresses which further give rise to mechanical forces. A thyristor must be braced to withstand such mechanical forces. In addition, SCR mounting must be so designed as to facilitate heat flow from junction to the case. Depending upon the low or high power ratings of thyristors, there are five major mounting techniques for SCRs as described below :

(*a*) *Lead-mounting*. For load-current rating of about one ampere, lead-mounted SCRs are used, Fig. 4.34 (*a*). Such SCRs do not require any additional cooling or heat sink. Their housings dissipate sufficient heat by radiation and convection.

(*b*) *Stud-mounting*. This type of construction shown in Fig. 4.34 (*b*) is very widely used due to its flexibility and ruggedness. The threaded stud forms the anode. The SCR is attached to a heat sink by means of threaded stud and nut. Thus anode gets electrically connected to the heat sink. If electrical connection between anode and heat sink is undesirable, then mica or PTFE washers are used in between the joining surfaces. Both mica and PTFE conduct heat easily but act as insulators to electricity.

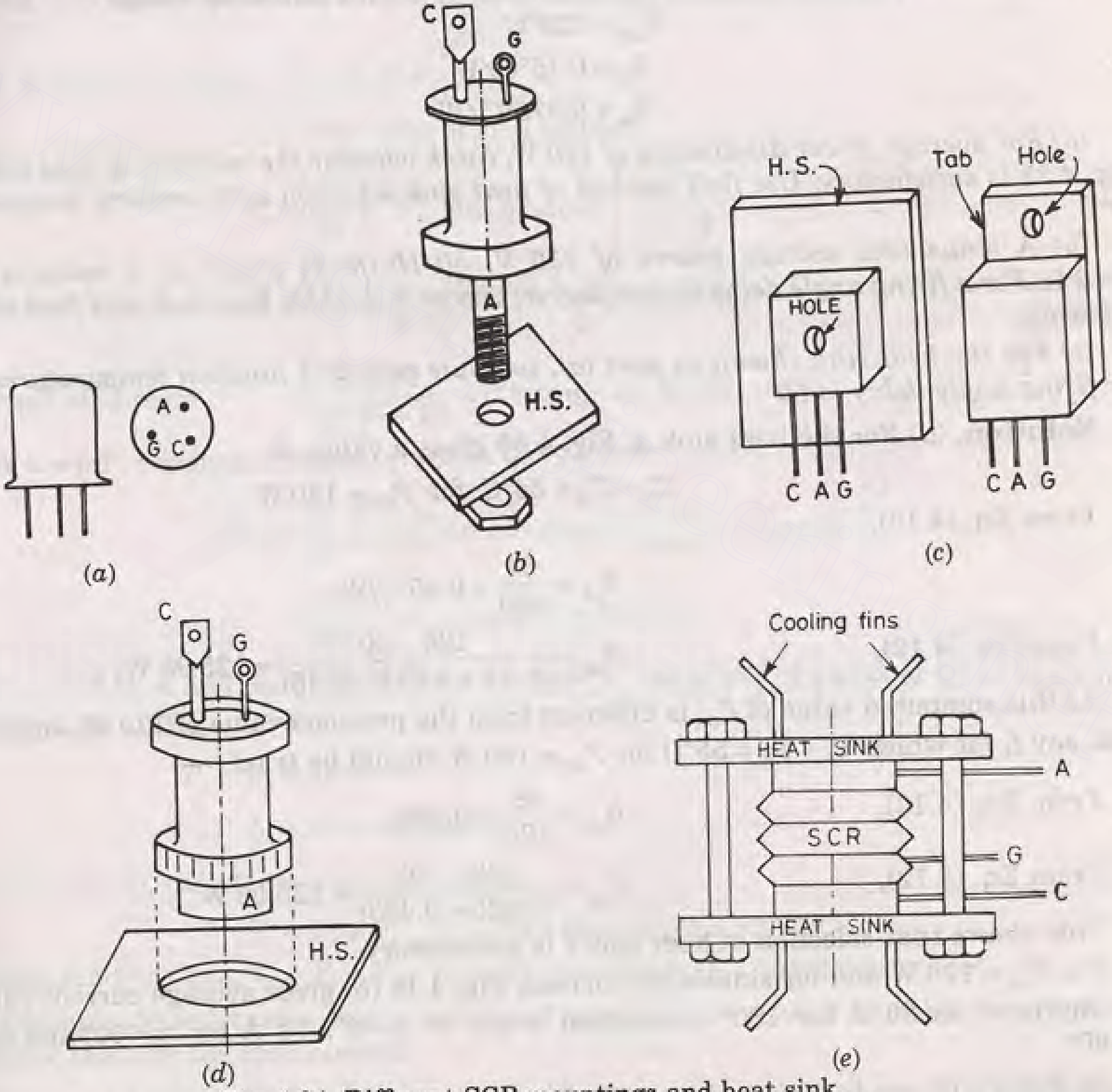


Fig. 4.34. Different SCR mountings and heat sink.

(*c*) *Bolt-down mounting*. This is also called flat-pack mounting. This type of device mounting has tabs with one or more holes. Sometimes the hole is provided in the middle as shown in Fig. 4.34 (*c*). Bolts are pushed through these holes so as to mount the device on to heat sink with nuts etc. In case the device is to be insulated from the heat sink, a thin insulating mica or PTFE washer is used between the device and heat sink and the bolt is made up of nylon. This type of mounting is used for small and medium ratings.

(*d*) *Press-fit mounting*. Press-fit (or pressure-fit) package is designed for insertion into an appropriate sized hole in the heat sink. The insertion may be done by using a vice and pressing the device into the hole using wooden block etc. For large sizes, the insertion is carried out by means of a hydraulic ram. This type of mounting is used for large rated thyristors. Fig. 4.34 (*d*) illustrates press-fit mounting of SCRs.

(*e*) *Press-pak mounting*. This type of mounting is also called "disc" or "hockey-puck" mounting because of its shape. The SCR is clamped between two heat sinks, Fig. 4.34 (*e*) and external pressure is applied evenly so that there is no deformation of any part. The heat sinks may be air, water or oil cooled. Such type of mounting is used for thyristors of very high current ratings.

**Example 4.18**. *The data sheet for a thyristor gives the following values :*

$$T_{jm} = 125°C$$
$$\theta_{jc} = 0.15°C/W$$
$$\theta_{cs} = 0.075°C/W$$

*(a) For average power dissipation of 120 W, check whether the selection of heat sink g from Fig. 4.33 is satisfactory. Use first method of heat sink selection with ambient temperature of 40°C.*

*(b) A sinusoidal voltage source of 230 V, 50 Hz feeds power to a resistive load of R = 2 Ω. For a firing angle delay of zero degree, choose a suitable heat sink and find the circuit efficiency.*

*(c) For the heat sink chosen in part (a), compute case and junction temperatures in case the firing angle delay is 60°.*

**Solution.** (*a*) For the heat sink *g*, Fig. 4.33 gives a value of

$$T_s - T_A = 54°\text{C} \quad \text{for} \quad P_{av} = 120 \text{ W}.$$

From Eq. (4.13),

$$\theta_{sA} = \frac{54}{120} = 0.45°\text{C/W}.$$

From Eq. (4.12),
$$P_{av} = \frac{125 - 40}{(0.15 + 0.075 + 0.45)} = 125.93 \text{ W}.$$

As this computed value of $P_{av}$ is different from the previous value of 120 W, another heat sink, say *f*, for which $T_s - T_A = 58°$C for $P_{av} = 120$ W should be tried.

From Eq. (4.13),
$$\theta_{sA} = \frac{58}{120} = 0.483$$

From Eq. (4.12),
$$P_{av} = \frac{125 - 40}{(0.225 + 0.483)} = 120.06 \text{ W}.$$

This shows that selection of heat sink *f* is satisfactory.

For $P_{av} = 120$ W and for sinusoidal current, Fig. 4.19 (*b*) gives average current rating for the thyristor as 80 A for 180° conduction angle or $\alpha = 0°$, 74 A for $\alpha = 60°$ and 68 A for $\alpha = 90°$.

(*b*) For $\alpha = 0°$, conduction angle is 180°. Here second method of heat-sink selection is used.

$$I_{TAV} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi} \frac{V_m}{R} \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{\pi R} = \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi \times 2} = 51.77 \cong 52 \text{ A}$$

For this current, $P_{av}$ from Fig. 4.19 (*b*) is 90 W.

From Eq. (4.12), $\theta_{sA} = \dfrac{125 - 40}{90} - (0.225) = 0.7194° \text{ C/W}$

From Eq. (4.13), $T_s - T_A = 90 \times 0.7194 = 64.75°\text{C}$

For $T_s - T_A = 64.75°\text{C}$ and $P_{av} = 90$ W, Fig. 4.33 shows that heat sink *c* should be selected.

The use of third method of heat-sink selection is also demonstrated. First $I_{TAV}$ is calculated as in the second method. For this current, $P_{av} = 90$ W from Fig. 4.19 (*b*) and $T_c = 112°\text{C}$ from Fig. 4.20 (*b*). Now sink temperature from Eq. (4.14) is

$$T_s = 112 - 90 \times 0.075 = 105.25°\text{C}$$

and $$T_s - T_A = 105.25 - 40 = 65.25°\text{C}.$$

For $T_s - T_A = 65.25°\text{C}$ and $P_{av} = 90$ W, Fig. 4.33 shows that heat sink *c* should be chosen. As expected, this agrees with the choice made by the use of second method.

Power delivered to load, $P = I_r^2\ R = \dfrac{V_r^2}{R}$

where $V_r$ = rms value of load voltage

$$\therefore \quad V_r = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi} V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t\ d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2} = \frac{V_m}{2}$$

$$\therefore \quad P = \left(\frac{V_m}{2}\right)^2 \frac{1}{R} = \left(\frac{230\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)^2 \frac{1}{2} = 13225 \text{ W}.$$

$$\therefore \text{ Circuit efficiency} = \frac{13225}{13225 + 90} = 0.993 \text{ pu or } 99.3\%.$$

(*c*) For $\alpha = 60°$, conduction angle is $180° - 60° = 120°$

$$\therefore \quad I_{TAV} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi} \frac{V_m}{R} \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{2\pi R}(1 + \cos \alpha)$$

$$= \frac{230\sqrt{2}}{2\pi \cdot 2}(1 + \cos 60°) = 38.82 \text{ A}.$$

For $I_{TAV} = 38.82$ A and conduction angle of 120°, $P_{av}$ from Fig. 4.19 (*b*) is 52 W and from Fig. 4.33 for heat sink *c*.

$$T_s - T_A = 46°\text{C}$$

$$\therefore \quad T_s = 40 + 46 = 86°\text{C}.$$

From Eq. (4.14), case temperature,

$$T_c = T_s + P_{av} \cdot \theta_{cs} = 86 + 90 \times 0.075 = 92.75°\text{C}$$

and junction temperature, $T_j = T_c + P_{av} \cdot \theta_{jc} = 92.75 + 90 \times 0.15 = 106.25°\text{C}.$

This example demonstrates that selection of heat sink by second and third methods is more simpler than by the first method.

**Example 4.19.** *For a thyristor, maximum junction temperature is 125°C. The thermal resistances for the thyristor-sink combination are* $\theta_{jc} = 0.16$ *and* $\theta_{cs} = 0.08°\text{C/W}$. *For a heat-sink temperature of 70°C, compute the total average power loss in the thyristor-sink combination.*

*In case the heat sink temperature is brought down to 60°C by forced cooling, find the percentage increase in the device rating.*

**Solution**. From the equivalent circuit of Fig. 4.32

$$T_j = T_s + P_{av}(\theta_{jc} + \theta_{cs})$$

$$P_{av1} = \frac{125-70}{0.16+0.08} = 229.17 \text{ W}$$

Thus total average power loss in the thyristor-sink combination is 229.17 W. With improved cooling,

$$P_{av2} = \frac{125-60}{0.24} = 270.83 \text{ W}.$$

Thyristor rating is proportional to the square root of average power loss.

∴ Percentage increase in thyristor rating

$$= \frac{\sqrt{270.83} - \sqrt{229.17}}{\sqrt{229.17}} \times 100 = 8.71\%.$$

## 4.9. SERIES AND PARALLEL OPERATION OF THYRISTORS

SCR ratings have improved considerably since its introduction in 1957. Presently, SCRs with voltage and current ratings of 10 kV and 3 kA are available. However, for some industrial applications, the demand for voltage and current ratings is so high that a single SCR cannot fulfil such requirements. In such cases, SCRs are connected in series in order to meet the h.v. demand and in parallel for fulfilling the high current demand. For series or parallel connected SCRs, it should be ensured that each SCR rating is fully utilized and the system operation is satisfactory. *String efficiency* is a term that is used for measuring the degree of utilization of SCRs in a string. String efficiency of SCRs connected in series/parallel is defined as

string efficiency

$$= \frac{\text{Actual voltage/current rating of the whole string}}{[\text{Individual voltage/current rating of one SCR}]\ [\text{Number of SCRs in the string}]}$$

In practice, this ratio is less than one. For obtaining highest possible string efficiency, the SCRs connected in series/parallel string must have identical *V-I* characteristics. As SCRs of the same ratings and specifications do not have identical characteristics, unequal voltage/current sharing is bound to occur for all SCRs in a string. As a consequence, string efficiency can never be equal to one. However, unequal voltage/current sharing by the SCRs in a string can be minimised to a great extent by using external equalizing circuits.

Even in a string provided with external equalizing circuits, the string efficiency is less than unity. In case one extra unit is added to the series/parallel string, the voltage/current shared by each device would become lower than its normal rating. The use of this extra unit will certainly improve the reliability of the string though at an increased cost. A measure of the reliability of string is given by a factor called *derating factor* DRF defined as under :

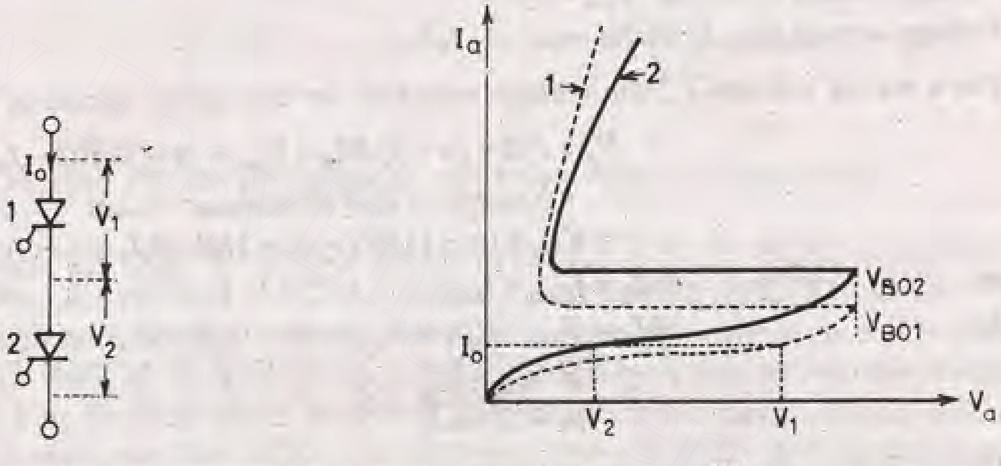
$$DRF = 1 - \text{string efficiency}$$

If the value of recommended DRF is more, the number of devices used in series/parallel string will be more. This will certainly improve the reliability of the string for a given rating of the string.

The object of this section is to study the problems concerning the series/parallel operation of SCRs and to discuss the measures adopted to overcome these problems.

### 4.9.1. Series Operation

When system voltage is more than the voltage rating of a single thyristor, SCRs are connected in series in a string. As stated before, these SCRs should have their $V-I$ characteristics as close as possible. On account of inherent variations in their characteristics, the voltage shared by each SCR may not be equal. For instance, consider two SCRs with their static $V$–$I$ characteristics as shown in Fig. 4.35. For SCR1, leakage resistance $(= V_1/I_0)$ is high whereas for SCR2, it is low $(V_2/I_0)$. For the same leakage current $I_0$ in the series connected SCRs, SCR1 supports rated voltage $V_1$ whereas SCR2 supports voltage $V_2 < V_1$. Each SCR in Fig. 4.35 is rated for a forward blocking voltage of $V_1$ volts which is always less than its forward breakover voltage. Here $V_{BO1}$ and $V_{BO2}$ are the forward breakover voltages for thyristors 1 and 2 respectively. It is seen from Fig. 4.35 that two SCRs can support a maximum voltage of $V_1 + V_2$ and not the rated blocking voltage $2V_1$. The string efficiency for two series connected SCRs of Fig. 4.35 is,



(a) (b)

Fig. 4.35. Series connected SCRs.

Therefore, $$\frac{V_1 + V_2}{2V_1} = \frac{1}{2}\left(1 + \frac{V_2}{V_1}\right)$$

This shows that even though SCRs have identical ratings, voltage shared by each is not the same and string efficiency is therefore less than one.

A uniform voltage distribution in steady state can be achieved by connecting a suitable resistance across each SCR such that each parallel combination has the same resistance. This will require different value of resistance for each SCR which is a difficult proposition. A more practical way of obtaining a reasonably uniform voltage distribution during steady state working of series-connected SCRs is to connect the same value of shunt resistance $R$ across each SCR as shown in Fig. 4.36. This shunt resistance $R$ is called the static equalizing circuit. Magnitude of parallel resistance $R$ can be obtained as follows [1].

Consider $n$ thyristors connected in series as shown in Fig. 4.36. Let SCR1 has minimum leakage current $I_{bmn}$ and each of the remaining $(n-1)$ SCRs have the same leakage current $I_{bmx} > I_{bmn}$. An examination of Fig. 4.35 (b) reveals that an SCR with lower leakage current blocks more voltage.

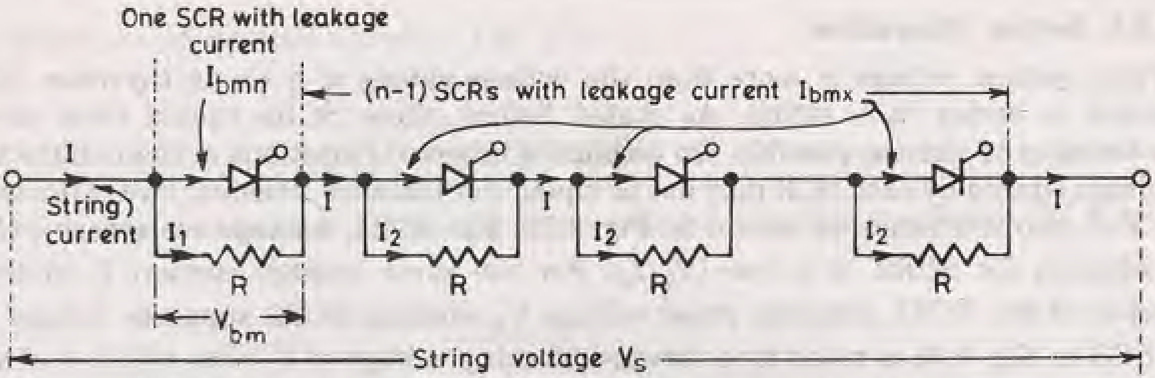

One SCR with leakage current
Ibmn
(n-1) SCRs with leakage current Ibmx
I
String current
I1
I2
I2
I2
R
R
R
R
I
I
I
Vbm
String voltage Vs

Fig. 4.36. Static-voltage equalization for series-connected string.

As SCR1 has lower leakage current, it will block voltage $V_{bm}$ (say) which is more than that shared by each of the other $(n-1)$ SCRs. It is seen from Fig. 4.36 that

$$I_1 = I - I_{bmn} \quad \text{and} \quad I_2 = I - I_{bmx}$$

where $I$ = total string current

Voltage across SCR1 is $V_{bm} = I_1 R$

Voltage across $(n-1)$·SCRs = $(n-1)\, I_2 R$

For a string voltage $V_s$, the voltage equation for the series circuit of Fig. 4.36 is

$$\begin{aligned} V_s &= I_1 R + (n-1)\, R I_2 = V_{bm} + (n-1)\, R(I - I_{bmx}) \\ &= V_{bm} + (n-1)\, R\, [I_1 - (I_{bmx} - I_{bmn})] \\ &= V_{bm} + (n-1)\, R I_1 - (n-1)\, R \cdot \Delta I_b \end{aligned}$$

where $\Delta I_b = I_{bmx} - I_{bmn}$

As $R I_1 = V_{bm}$, $V_s = n\, V_{bm} - (n-1)\, R \cdot \Delta I_b$

or
$$R = \frac{n\, V_{bm} - V_s}{(n-1) \cdot \Delta I_b} \qquad \text{...(4.15)}$$

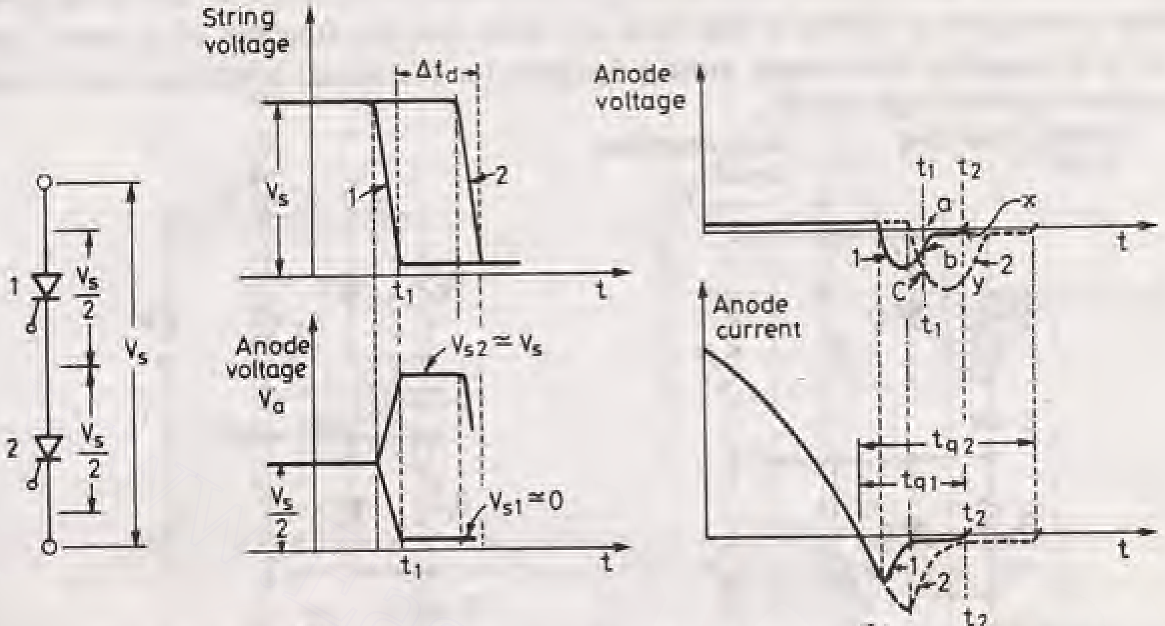
The SCR data sheet contains only maximum blocking current $I_{bmx}$ and rarely $\Delta I_b$. In such a case, it is usual to assume $\Delta I_b = I_{bmx}$ with $I_{bmn} = 0$. With this, the value of $R$ calculated from Eq. (4.15) is low than what is actually required. The value of minimum leakage, or blocking, current $I_{bm}$ may be acquired from manufacturers if required, but data sheet does not give its value.

Once the value of $R$ is calculated, its power rating is given by

$$P_R = \frac{V_r^2}{R}$$

where $V_r$ = rms voltage across $R$.

It is likely that SCRs do not have identical dynamic characteristics. In such a case, series-connected SCRs will have unequal voltage distribution during the transient conditions of turn-on, turn-off and high frequency operation. The dynamic characteristics of two SCRs during turn-on are shown in Fig. 4.37 (*a*) where it is assumed that turn-on time of SCR2 is more than that of SCR1 by $\Delta t_d$. Before these two SCRs are gated, string voltage $V_s$ is shared as $V_s/2$ by each thyristor as shown. Now both SCRs are gated at the same time. As SCR1 has less turn-on time, it gets turned-on at instant $t_1$, whereas SCR2 is yet off. Voltage across SCR1 drops from $V_s/2$ to almost zero. At the same instant $t_1$, voltage across off SCR2 will boost from $V_s/2$ to almost full $V_s$. Thus, the voltage shared by two SCRs are unequal. After instant $t_1$, voltage $V_s$ across SCR2 may turn it on in case $V_s$ is greater than its breakover voltage. SCR2 will, however, get turned on at time $(t_1 + \Delta t_d)$ as assumed, Fig. 4.37 (*a*).



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.37. Unequal voltage distribution for two series connected SCRs during (*a*) turn-on and (*b*) turn-off.

During turn-off, thyristor characteristics are shown in Fig. 4.37 (*b*). SCR1 is assumed to have less turn-off time $t_{q1}$ than that of SCR2, *i.e.* $t_{q1} < t_{q2}$. At instant $t_2$, SCR1 has recovered and is passing through zero voltage whereas SCR2 is developing reverse recovery voltage *xy*. At instant $t_1$ in Fig. 4.37 (*b*), both SCRs are developing different reverse recovery voltages given by *ab* for SCR1 and *ac* for SCR2 as shown, so the two SCRs have unequal voltages across them at $t_1$. It is thus seen that SCRs with different characteristics during turn-off time suffer from unequal voltage distribution during their turn-off processes. It may thus be concluded from above that series-connected SCRs do suffer from unequal voltage distribution across them during their turn-on and turn-off processes and also during their high-frequency operation which means more frequent turning-on and turning-off of the devices.

A simple resistor as shown in Fig. 4.36 for static voltage equalization cannot maintain equal voltage distribution under transient condition. During turn-on and turn-off, the capacitance of the reverse biased junctions determines the voltage distribution across SCRs in a series connected string. As reverse biased junctions are likely to have different capacitances, called self-capacitances, the voltage distribution during turn-on and turn-off periods would be unequal. Voltage equalization under these conditions can, however, be achieved by employing shunt capacitors as shown in Fig. 4.38. This capacitance has the effect of removing the inequalities in thyristor self-capacitances. In other words, during turn-on and turn-off periods, the resultant of shunt capacitance and self-capacitance of each SCR tend to be equal for each of the series connected SCRs. Thus the shunt capacitors play a dominant role in equalizing the voltage distribution across the series-connected thyristors during their turn-on and turn-off processes.

When any SCR is in the forward blocking state, the capacitor connected across it gets charged to a voltage existing across that SCR. When this SCR is turned on, capacitor discharges heavy current through this SCR. For limiting this discharge current spike, a damping resistor $R_C$ is used in series with capacitor $C$ as shown in Fig. 4.38. Resistor $R_C$ also damps out the high frequency oscillations that may arise due to the series combination of $R_C$, shunt capacitor and circuit inductance. Combination of $R_C$ and $C$ is called the *dynamic equalizing circuit* and is shown in Fig. 4.38 ($a$). Note that the function of $R_C$ and $C$ used in Fig. 4.38 is to equalize the voltage during dynamic (or transient) conditions and to protect the thyristors against high $dv/dt$.

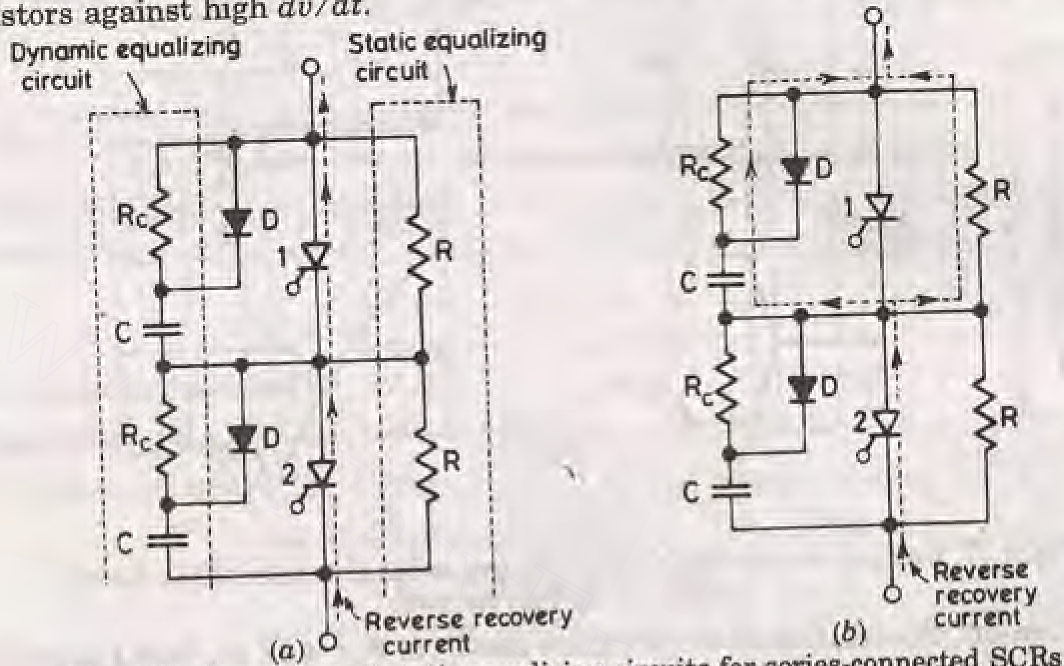


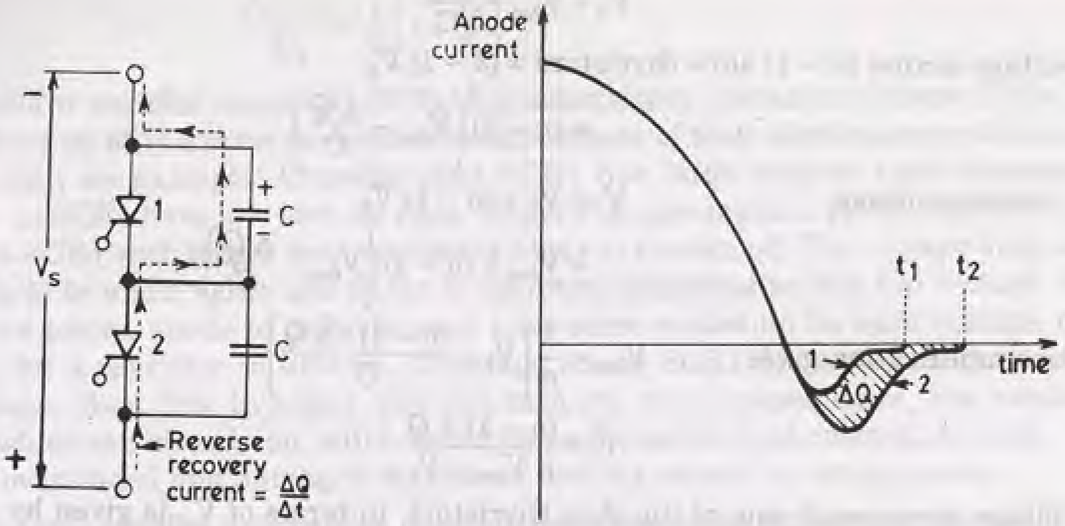
Fig. 4.38. Dynamic and static equalizing circuits for series-connected SCRs.

A diode $D$ is also placed across $R_C$. When forward voltage appears, diode bypasses $R_C$ during charging time of the capacitor $C$. This makes the capacitor more effective in voltage equalization and for limiting $dv/dt$ across SCR. However, during capacitor discharge, $R_C$ comes into play for limiting the current spike and rate of change of current $di/dt$. During turn-off period, when all SCRs are developing reverse voltage, the reverse recovery current $i_r$ flows through all series connected SCRs as shown in Fig. 4.38 ($a$). However, if one SCR recovers early, it will not allow the passage of $i_r$ from the other SCRs. If SCR1 is assumed to recover fully and earlier than other SCRs, then reverse recovery current due to other SCRs can pass through $R$ connected across SCR1 as shown in Fig. 4.38 ($b$). In this figure, $i_r$ may flow through $C$, $R_C$ also in case the conditions are favourable. For simplicity, only two SCRs are shown in Fig. 4.38. The existance of reverse recovery current is desirable as it facilitates the turning-off process of the series-connected SCR string.

Value of capacitance $C$ shown in Fig. 4.38 can be obtained as under :

In series connected SCRs, voltage unbalance during turn-off time is more predominant than it is during turn-on time, Fig. 4.37. Therefore, choice of capacitor $C$ is based on the reverse recovery characteristics of SCRs. In Fig. 4.39 ($b$) are shown reverse recovery characteristics for two SCRs of Fig. 4.39 ($a$). SCR1 is assumed to have short reverse recovery time as compared to SCR 2. Shaded area $\Delta Q$, proportional to the product of current and time, is the difference in the reverse recovery charges of two thyristors 1 and 2. Under this assumption, SCR1 recovers first ; it, therefore, goes into blocking state and does not allow the passage of excess charge $\Delta Q$ left on SCR2. This charge $\Delta Q$ can, however, pass through $C$ as shown in Fig. 4.39 ($a$).

The voltage induced by $\Delta Q$ in the capacitor $C$, connected across SCR1, is $\Delta Q/C$ ; whereas no voltage is induced by $\Delta Q$ $(= Q_2 - Q_1)$ in $C$ connected across SCR2. There is thus a difference



(a) (b)

Fig. 4.39. (a) Flow of reverse recovery current if SCR1 recovers first
(b) Variation of reverse recovery characteristics for two SCRs of Fig. 4.39 (a).

in voltages, equal to $\frac{Q_2 - Q_1}{C} = \frac{\Delta Q}{C}$, to which the two shunt capacitors are charged. The thyristor with the least reverse recovery time will share the highest transient voltage, say $V_{bm}$. As stated above, the voltage difference to which the two shunt capacitors are charged during reverse recovery time is $\Delta Q/C$, the transient voltage shared by slow thyristor 2 must be $V_{bm} - \frac{\Delta Q}{C}$ (less than $V_{bm}$ shared by fast thyristor 1). Thus, in Fig. 4.39 (a),

voltage across fast top thyristor 1, $V_1 = V_{bm}$

and voltage across slow bottom thyristor 2, $V_2 = V_{bm} - \frac{\Delta Q}{C}$

∴ String voltage, $$V_s = V_1 + V_2 = V_{bm} + V_{bm} - \frac{\Delta Q}{C}$$

or $$V_{bm} = \frac{1}{2}\left(V_s + \frac{\Delta Q}{C}\right)$$

and $$V_2 = V_{bm} - \frac{\Delta Q}{C} = \frac{1}{2}\left(V_s - \frac{\Delta Q}{C}\right)$$

In order to aid the reverse recovery process of the thyristors in a string, the string voltage reverses in polarity as shown in Fig. 4.39 (a).

Now consider that there are $n$ series-connected SCRs in a string. If top SCR has characteristics similar to SCR1 of Fig. 4.39 (b) and the remaining $(n-1)$ SCRs have characteristics similar to SCR2 of Fig. 4.39 (b), then SCR1 would recover first and support a voltage $V_{bm}$. The charge $(n-1)\,\Delta Q$ from the remaining $(n-1)$ thyristors would pass through $C$ connected across top fast SCR1 and as a result, a voltage $(n-1)\,\Delta Q/C$ would be induced in $C$. As before, excess charge contributed by each one of the $(n-1)$ thyristors is $\Delta Q$, therefore, the voltage across each one of the slow thyristors is $\left(V_{bm} - \frac{\Delta Q}{C}\right)$. Thus, for a string of $n$ series-connected thyristors, voltage across fast top thyristor 1, $V_1 = V_{bm}$

voltage across each one of the slow thyristors,

$$V_2 = V_{bm} - \frac{\Delta Q}{C}$$

and voltage across $(n-1)$ slow thyristors $= (n-1)\,V_2$

$$= (n-1)\left(V_{bm} - \frac{\Delta Q}{C}\right)$$

∴ String voltage,

$$V_s = V_1 + (n-1)\,V_2$$

$$= V_{bm} + (n-1)\left(V_{bm} - \frac{\Delta Q}{C}\right)$$

Its simplification gives

$$V_{bm} = \frac{1}{n}\left[V_s + \frac{(n-1)\cdot\Delta Q}{C}\right] \qquad \text{...(4.17)}$$

and

$$C = \frac{(n-1)\,\Delta Q}{n\,V_{bm} - V_s} \qquad \text{...(4.18)}$$

Voltage across each one of the slow thyristors, in terms of $V_s$, is given by

$$V_2 = \left(V_{bm} - \frac{\Delta Q}{C}\right)$$

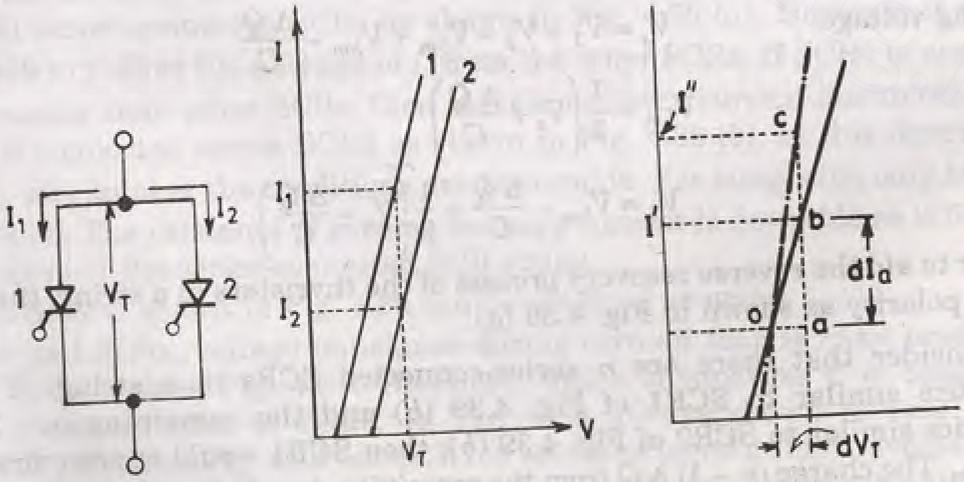
$$= \frac{V_s}{n} + \frac{(n-1)\,\Delta Q}{nC} - \frac{\Delta Q}{C}$$

or

$$V_2 = \frac{V_s - \dfrac{\Delta Q}{C}}{n} \qquad \text{...(4.19)}$$

### 4.9.2. Parallel Operation

When current required by the load is more than the rated current of a single thyristor, SCRs are connected in parallel in a string. For equal sharing of currents, $V-I$ characteristics of SCRs during forward conduction must be identical as far as possible.



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 4.40. (a) and (b) Parallel operation of two thyristors
(c) Dynamic resistance decreases as junction temperature rises.

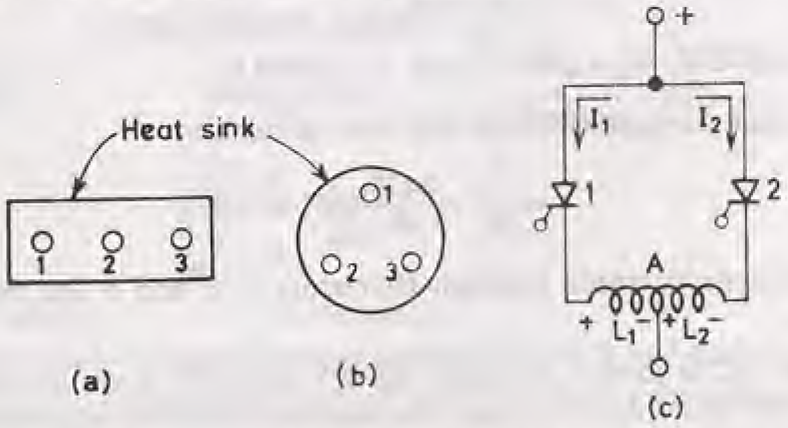
In Fig. 4.40 (a) are shown two SCRs in parallel and their characteristics during forward conduction are shown in Fig. 4.40 (b). For parallel-connected SCRs, voltage drop $V_T$ across them must be equal. Fig. 4.40 (b) shows that for the same voltage drop $V_T$, SCR1 shares a rated current $I_1$ whereas $\text{SCR}_2$ carries current $I_2$ much less than the rated current $I_1$. The total current carried by the unit is $I_1 + I_2$ and not the rated current $2I_1$ as required. Therefore, string efficiency is given by

$$\frac{I_1 + I_2}{2I_1} = \frac{1}{2}\left(1 + \frac{I_2}{I_1}\right)$$

Now consider $n$ parallel connected SCRs. For satisfactory operation of these SCRs, they should get turned on at the same moment. The importance of their simultaneous turn on can be explained with an example. Consider that SCR1 has large turn-on time whereas the remaining $(n-1)$ SCRs have low turn-on time. Under this assumption, $(n-1)$ SCRs will turn on first but one SCR1 with longer turn-on time is likely to remain off. The voltage drop across $(n-1)$ SCRs falls to a low value and SCR1 is therefore subjected to this low voltage. For a given gate drive power, anode to cathode must have some minimum forward voltage, called *finger voltage,* for a thyristor to turn-on. If voltage across SCR1 drops to a value less than its finger voltage, then this thyristor will not turn on. As a consequence, the remaining $(n-1)$ SCRs, which are already on, will have to share the entire load current. As such, these SCRs may be overloaded and damaged because of heating caused by overcurrents.

If one SCR1 in a parallel unit carries more current than other SCRs, then this SCR1 will have greater junction temperature rise. As a result, its dynamic resistance $(= dV_T/dI_a)$ during forward conduction, Fig. 4.40 (*c*) decreases and this further increases the current shared by this SCR. In Fig. 4.40 (*c*), dynamic resistance is *oa*/*ab* and current shared is $I'$. Because of junction temperature rise, its dynamic resistance decreases to *oa*/*ac* and current shared by SCR1 increases to $I''$. This process of anode current rise becomes cumulative and subsequently the junction temperature of SCR1 exceeds its rated value ; as a result SCR1 is damaged. This sequence of events may engulf another SCR and in this manner all SCRs in the string may be destroyed permanently. Therefore, when SCRs are to be operated in parallel, it should be ensured that they operate at the same temperature. This can be achieved by mounting the parallel unit on one common heat sink.

Unequal current distribution in a parallel unit is also caused by the inductive effect of current carrying conductors. When SCRs are arranged unsymmetrically as shown in Fig. 4.41 (*a*), the middle conductor will have more inductance because of more flux linkages from two nearby conductors. As a consequence, less current flows through the middle SCR as compared to outer two SCRs. This unequal current distribution can be avoided by mounting the SCRs symmetrically on the heat sink as shown in Fig. 4.41 (*b*).



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 4.41. Parallel operation of SCRs (*a*) unsymmetrical arrangement and (*b*) symmetrical arrangement on heat sinks (*c*) current equalization by the use of reactor.

In ac circuits, current distribution can be made more uniform by the magnetic coupling of the parallel paths as shown in Fig. 4.41 (*c*). The tapped point $A$ is the mid point of the reactor. If anode currents are such that $I_1 = I_2$, then flux produced by two halves of the reactor oppose each other. As $A$ is the mid point, opposing flux linkages cancel and there is therefore no voltage drop in the reactor. If currents $I_1$ and $I_2$ are unequal, say $I_1 > I_2$, then resultant flux linkages are not zero. These flux linkages induce emfs in $L1$ and $L2$ as shown. Emf across reactor $L1$ opposes the flow of $I_1$ whereas that across $L2$ aids the flow of $I_2$. There is thus a *tendency* to buck $I_1$ and boost $I_2$ so as to minimise the unbalance of currents in the parallel unit.

When three or more SCRs are connected in parallel, reactors can be arranged accordingly so as to minimise the current unbalance.

**Example 4.20**. *A string of four series-connected thyristors is provided with static and dynamic equalizing circuits. This string has to withstand an off-state voltage of 10 kV. The static equalizing resistance is 25000 Ω and the dynamic equalizing circuit has $R_C = 40\ \Omega$ and $C = 0.08\ \mu F$. The leakage currents for four thyristors are 21 mA, 25 mA, 18 mA and 16 mA respectively. Determine voltage across each SCR in the off-state and the discharge current of each capacitor at the time of turn-on.*

**Solution.** Let $I$ be the string current in the off-state. Then current through static-equalizing resistance $R$ of 25000 Ω is ($I$-leakage current), current through each SCR is its own leakage current and no current flows through series combination of $R_C$ and $C$.

∴ Voltage across $R$ = voltage across each SCR

Voltage across SCR1 $= (I - 0.021) \times 25000 = V_1$

Voltage across SCR2 $= (I - 0.025) \times 25000 = V_2$

Voltage across SCR3 $= (I - 0.018) \times 25000 = V_3$

Voltage across SCR4 $= (I - 0.016) \times 25000 = V_4$

The sum of $V_1$, $V_2$, $V_3$ and $V_4$ gives

$$25000\,(4I - 0.08) = V_1 + V_2 + V_3 + V_4 = \text{string voltage, } 10000\text{ V}$$

or $$I = 0.12\text{ A}$$

From above, voltage across SCR1

$$= (0.12 - 0.021) \times 25000 = 2475\text{ V}$$

Similarly $V_2 = 2375$ V, $V_3 = 2550$ V and $V_4 = 2600$ V.

Discharge current through SCR1 at the time of turn on

$$= \frac{V_1}{R_C} = \frac{2475}{40} = 61.875\text{ A}$$

Similarly, discharge currents through thyristors 2, 3 and 4 are respectively 59.375 A, 63.75 A and 65 A.

**Example 4.21**. *SCRs with a rating of 1000 V and 200 A are available to be used in a string to handle 6 kV and 1 kA. Calculate the number of series and parallel units required in case derating factor is (a) 0.1 and (b) 0.2.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Derating factor, $DRF = 1 -$ string efficiency

$$\therefore \qquad 0.1 = 1 - \frac{6000}{n_s \times 1000} = 1 - \frac{1000}{n_p \times 200}$$

∴ Number of series-connected SCRs,

$$n_s = \frac{6000}{1000 \times 0.9} = 6.6 \cong 7$$

Number of parallel-connected SCRs,

$$n_p = \frac{1000}{200 \times 0.9} = 5.5 \cong 6$$

(*b*) As above, number of series-connected SCRs,

$$n_s = \frac{6000}{1000 \times 0.8} = 7.5 \cong 8$$

and number of parallel-connected SCRs,

$$n_p = \frac{1000}{200 \times 0.8} = 6.25 \cong 7$$

With higher value of DRF, more SCRs are required and therefore voltage and current shared by each device are lower than their normal rating. This increases the string reliability though at an increased investment.

**Example 4.22.** *It is required to operate 250-A SCR in parallel with 350-A SCR with their respective on-state voltage drops of 1.6 V and 1.2 V. Calculate the value of resistance to be inserted in series with each SCR so that they share the total load of 600 A in proportion to their current ratings.*

**Solution.**

Dynamic resistance of 250-A SCR1 $= \frac{1.6}{250}\ \Omega$

Dynamic resistance of 350-A SCR2 $= \frac{1.2}{350}\ \Omega$

Let $R$ be the resistance inserted in series with each SCR. With this, current shared by

$$\text{SCR1} = 600\,\frac{\frac{1.2}{350} + R}{\text{Total resistance}} \propto 250$$

and current shared by

$$\text{SCR2} = 600\,\frac{\frac{1.6}{250} + R}{\text{Total resistance}} \propto 350$$

From above,

$$\frac{\frac{1.2}{350} + R}{\frac{1.6}{250} + R} = \frac{250}{350} = \frac{5}{7}.$$

Its simplification gives $R = 0.004\ \Omega$.

Thus the resistance to be inserted in series with each SCR is 0.004 Ω.

**Example 4.23.** *Discuss the conditions which must be satisfied for turning-on an SCR with a gate signal.*

**Solution.** Conditions which must be satisfied for turning-on SCR with a gate signal are as under :

(*a*) An SCR must be forward-biased. It means that anode must be positive with respect to cathode.

(*b*) Gate pulse width must be more than the turn-on time of an SCR. This will ensure that anode current exceeds the latching current before gate signal is removed.

(*c*) Anode to cathode voltage must be more than finger voltage. A finger voltage is that voltage below which an SCR cannot be turned on with a gate signal.

(*d*) Magnitude of gate current must be more than the minimum gate current required to turn-on a thyristor, otherwise the thyristor turn-on will not be reliable.

(*e*) Magnitude of gate current must be less than the maximum gate current allowed, otherwise gate circuit may be damaged.

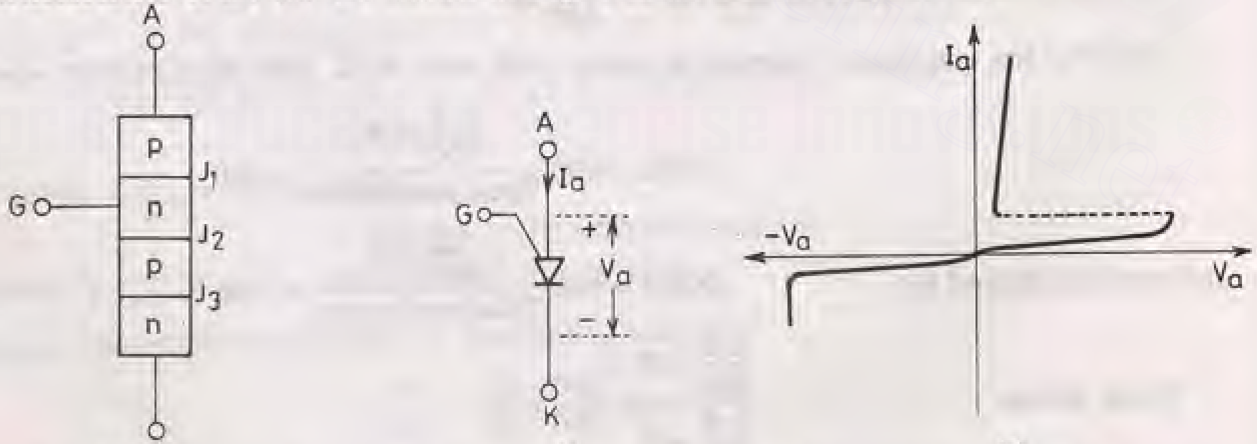
(*f*) The gate triggering must synchronize with the ac supply.

## 4.10. OTHER MEMBERS OF THE THYRISTOR FAMILY

The term thyristor includes all four-layer *p-n-p-n* devices used for the control of power in ac and dc systems. The silicon controlled rectifier is the most popular member of thyristor family. There are several other members of thyristor family like PUT, SUS, SCS, triac, diac etc. All these devices, except triac, are low power devices. Several new devices have been developed and added to the thyristor family. These recently developed thyristor devices are asymmetric thyristor (ASCR), reverse conducting thyristor (RCT), static induction thyristor (SITH), gate-assisted turn-off thyristor and gate turn-off (GTO) thyristor. The latest addition to the thyristor family is the MOS-controlled thyristor (MCT) which has already been described in Chapter 2. The object of this section is to discuss other members of the thyristor family.

### 4.10.1. PUT (Programmable Unijunction Transistor)

It is a *pnpn* device like an SCR. But the major difference is that gate is connected to *n*-type material near the anode as shown in Fig. 4.42 (*a*). PUT is used mainly in time-delay, logic and SCR trigger circuits. Its largest rating is about 200 V and 1 A. Circuit symbol and $V-I$ characteristics of a PUT are shown in Fig. 4.42 (*b*) and (*c*) respectively.



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 4.42. (*a*) Schematic diagram (*b*) circuit symbol and (*c*) *V-I* characteristics of a PUT.

In a PUT, *G* is always biased positive with respect to cathode. When anode voltage exceeds the gate voltage by about 0.7 V, junction $J_1$ gets forward biased and PUT turns on. When anode voltage becomes less than gate voltage, PUT is turned off.

### 4.10.2. SUS (Silicon Unilateral Switch)

A SUS is similar to a PUT but with an inbuilt low-voltage avalanche diode between gate and cathode as shown in Fig. 4.43 (*a*). Because of the presence of diode, SUS turns on for a

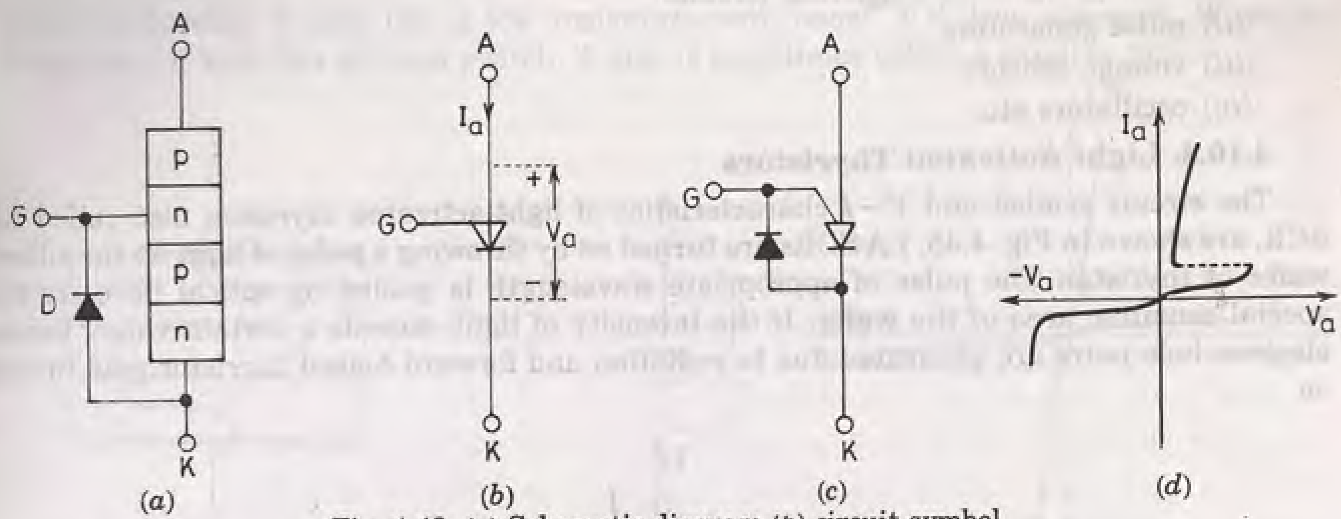


Fig. 4.43. (*a*) Schematic diagram (*b*) circuit symbol (*c*) equivalent circuit and (*d*) *V-I* characteristics of an SUS.

fixed anode-to-cathode voltage unlike an SCR whose trigger voltage and/or current vary widely with changes in ambient temperature. SUS is used mainly in timing, logic and trigger circuits. Its ratings are about 20 V and 0.5 A. Circuit symbol, equivalent circuit and *V – I* characteristic of an SUS are shown in Fig. 4.43 (*b*), (*c*) and (*d*) respectively.

### 4.10.3. SCS (Silicon Controlled Switch)

SCS is a tetrode, *i.e.* four electrode thyristor. It has two gates, one anode gete (AG) like a PUT and another cathode gate (KG) like an SCR. In other words, SCS is a four layer, four terminal *pnpn* device ; with anode *A*, cathode *K*, anode gate *AG* and cathode gate *KG*, Fig. 4.44 (*a*). SCS can be turned on by either gate. Circuit symbol and *V – I* characteristic of an SCS are shown in Fig. 4.44 (*b*) and (*c*) respectively.

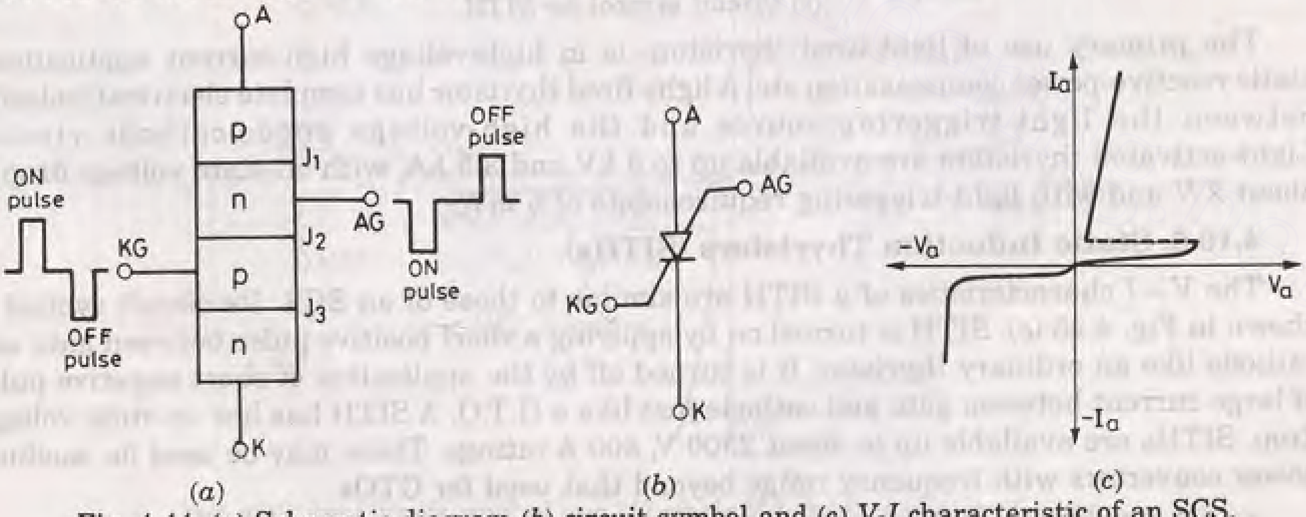


Fig. 4.44. (*a*) Schematic diagram (*b*) circuit symbol and (*c*) *V-I* characteristic of an SCS.

When a negative pulse is applied to gate *AG*, junction $J_1$ is forward biased and SCS is turned on. A positive pulse at *AG* will reverse bias junction $J_1$ and turns off the SCS.

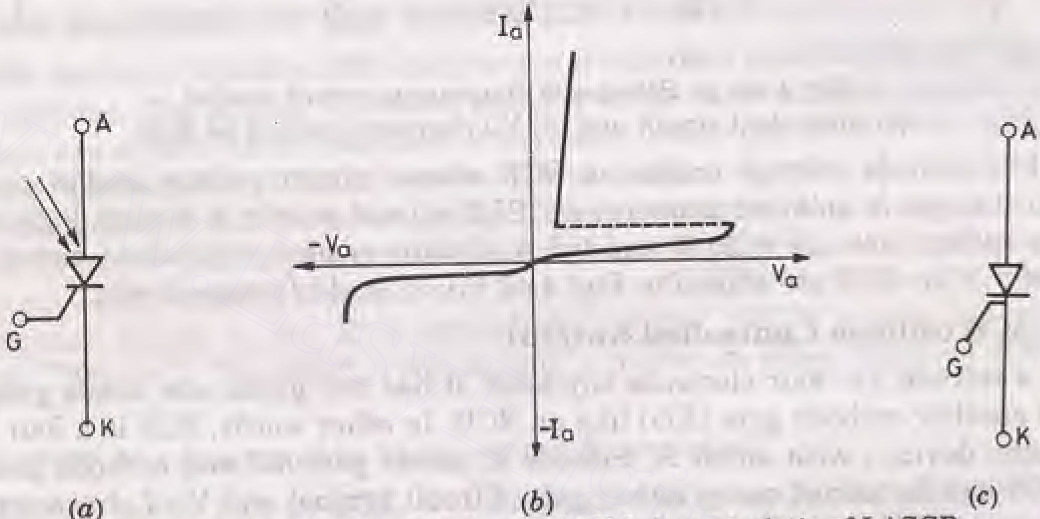
A positive pulse at gate *KG* turns on the device (just like an SCR) and a negative pulse at *KG* turns it off (just like a G.T.O.).

Its ratings are about 100 V and 200 mA. This can be operated like an *OR* gate. Its applications include :

(*i*) timing, logic and triggering circuits
(*ii*) pulse generators
(*iii*) voltage sensors
(*iv*) oscillators etc.

### 4.10.4. Light Activated Thyristors

The circuit symbol and $V-I$ characteristics of light-activated thyristor, also called LA SCR, are shown in Fig. 4.45. LA SCRs are turned on by throwing a pulse of light on the silicon wafer of thyristor. The pulse of appropriate wavelength is guided by optical fibres to the special sensitive area of the wafer. If the intensity of light exceeds a certain value, excess electron-hole pairs are generated due to radiation and forward-biased thyristor gets turned on.



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 4.45. (*a*) Circuit symbol and (*b*) *V-I* characteristic of LASCR (*c*) Circuit symbol for SITH.

The primary use of light-fired thyristors is in high-voltage high-current applications, static reactive-power compensation etc. A light-fired thyristor has complete electrical isolation between the light-triggering source and the high-voltage anode-cathode circuit. Light-activated thyristors are available up to 6 kV and 3.5 kA, with on-state voltage drop of about 2 V and with light-triggering requirements of 5 mW.

### 4.10.5. Static Induction Thyristors (SITHs)

The $V-I$ characteristics of a SITH are similar to those of an SCR. Its circuit symbol is shown in Fig. 4.45 (*c*). SITH is turned on by applying a short positive pulse between gate and cathode like an ordinary thyristor. It is turned off by the application of short negative pulse of large current between gate and cathode just like a G.T.O. A SITH has low on-state voltage drop. SITHs are available up to about 2500 V, 500 A ratings. These may be used for medium power converters with frequency range beyond that used for GTOs.

### 4.10.6. The Diac (Bidirectional Thyristor Diode)

A cross-sectional view of a diac showing all its layers and junctions is depicted in Fig. 4.46 (*a*). If voltage $V_{12}$, with terminal 1 positive with respect to terminal 2, exceeds break-over voltage $V_{B01}$, then structure *pn pn* conducts. In case terminal 2 is positive with respect to terminal 1 and when $V_{21}$ exceeds breakover voltage $V_{B02}$, structure *pn pn′* conducts. The term 'diac' is obtained from capital letters, Diode that can work on AC. Fig. 4.46 (*b*) gives the circuit symbol and Fig. 4.46 (*c*) the *V–I* characteristics of a diac. It is seen that diac has symmetrical breakdown characteristics. Its leads are interchangeable. Its turn-on voltage is about 30 V. When conducting, it acts like a low resistance with about 3 V drop across it. When not conducting, it acts like an open switch. A diac is sometimes called a gateless triac.

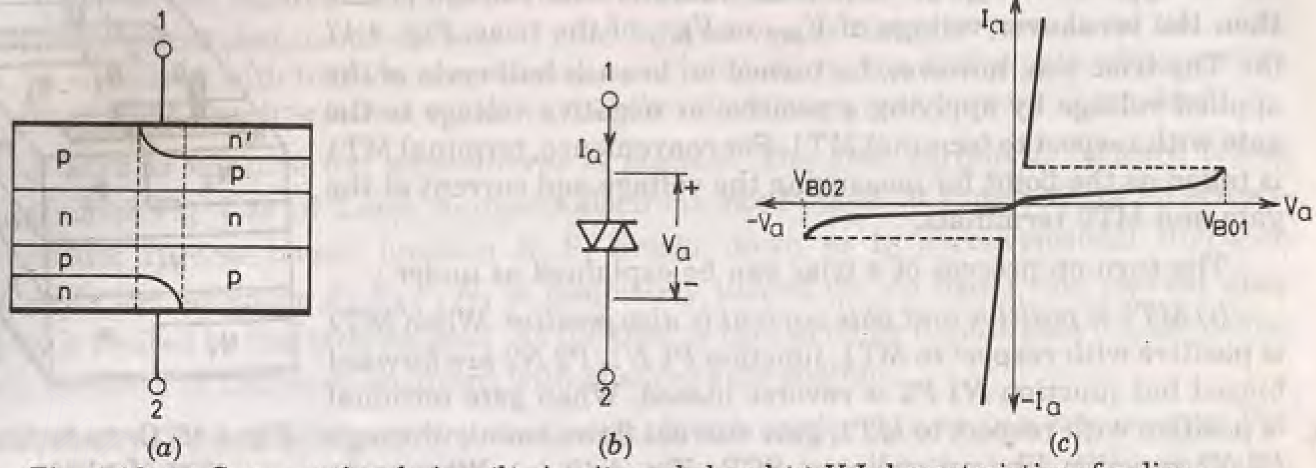


Fig. 4.46. (*a*) Cross-sectional view (*b*) circuit symbol and (*c*) *V-I* characteristics of a diac.

### 4.10.7. The Triac

An SCR is a unidirectional device as it can conduct from anode to cathode only and not from cathode to anode. A triac can, however, conduct in both the directions. A triac is thus a bidirectional thyristor with three terminals. It is used extensively for the control of power in ac circuits. Triac is the word derived by combining the capital letters from the words TRIode and AC. When in operation, a triac is equivalent to two SCRs connected in antiparallel. The circuit symbol and its characteristics are shown in Fig. 4.47 (*a*) and (*b*) respectively. As the triac can conduct in both the directions, the terms anode and cathode are not applicable to triac. Its three terminals are usually designated as MT1 (main terminal 1), MT2 and the gate by *G* as in a thyristor. For understanding the operation of the triac, its cross-sectional view showing all the layers and junctions is sketched in Fig. 4.48. The gate *G* is near terminal

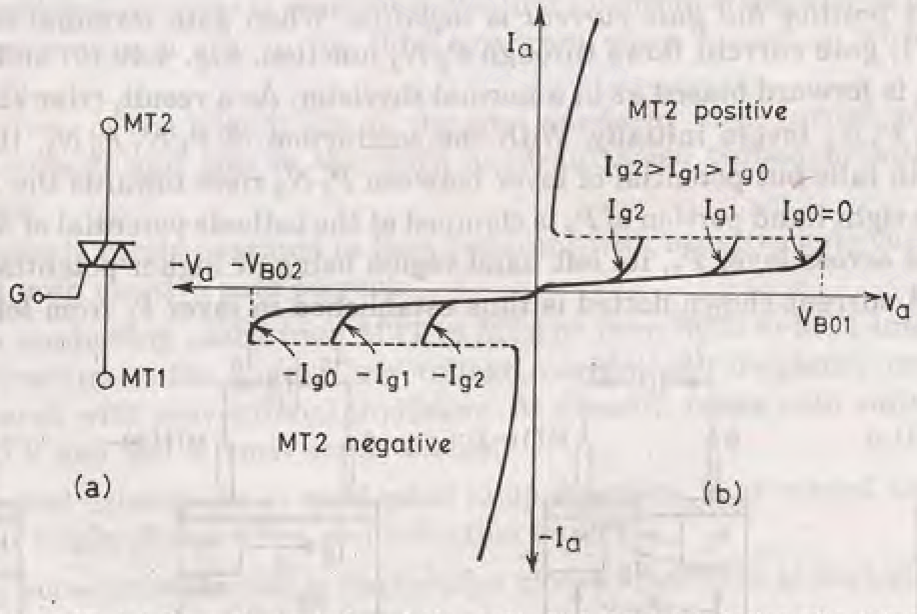


Fig. 4.47. (*a*) Circuit symbol and (*b*) static *V-I* characteristics of a triac.

MT1. The cross-hatched strip shows that $G$ is connected to $N_3$ as well as $P_2$. Similarly, terminal MT1 is connected to $P_2$ and $N_2$ ; terminal MT2 to $P_1$ and $N_4$.

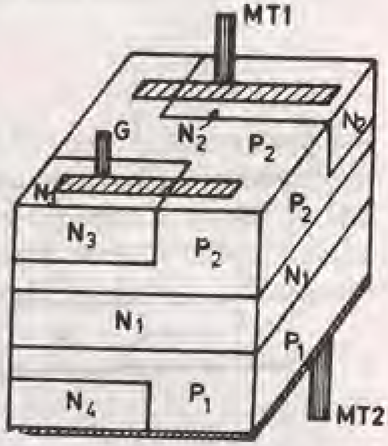


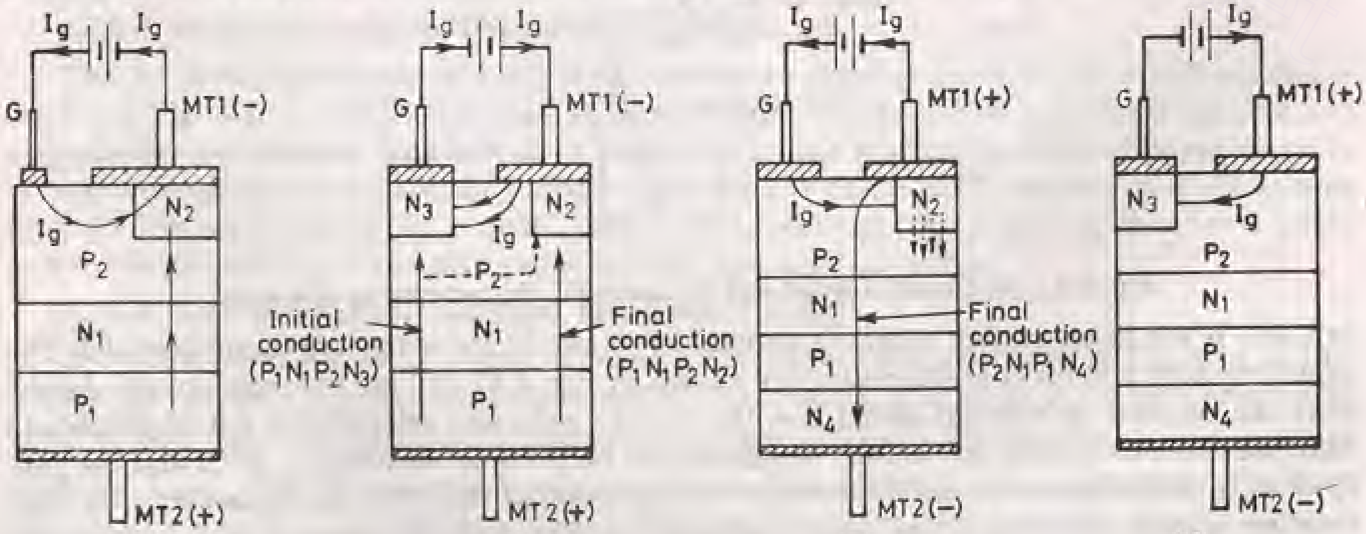
Fig. 4.48. Cross-sectional view of a triac.

With no signal to gate, the triac will block both half cycles of the ac applied voltage in case peak value of this voltage is less than the breakover voltage of $V_{BO1}$ or $V_{BO2}$ of the triac, Fig. 4.47 (*b*). The triac can, however, be turned on in each half cycle of the applied voltage by applying a positive or negative voltage to the gate with respect to terminal MT1. For convenience, terminal MT1 is taken as the point for measuring the voltage and current at the gate and MT2 terminals.

The turn-on process of a triac can be explained as under :

(*i*) *MT2 is positive and gate current is also positive.* When MT2 is positive with respect to MT1, junction $P1\,N1$, $P2\,N2$ are forward biased but junction $N1\,P2$ is reverse biased. When gate terminal is positive with respect to $MT1$, gate current flows mainly through $P2\,N2$ junction like an ordinary SCR, Fig. 4.49 (*a*). When gate current has injected sufficient charge into $P_2$ layer, reverse biased junction $N_1\,P_2$ breaks down just as in a normal SCR. As a result, triac starts conducting through $P_1\,N_1\,P_2\,N_2$ layers. This shows that when MT2 and gate terminals are positive with respect to MT1, triac turns on like a conventional thyristor. Under this condition, triac operates in the first quadrant of Fig. 4.47 (*b*). The device is more sensitive in this mode. It is recommended method of triggering if the conduction is desired in the first quadrant.

(*ii*) *MT2 is positive but gate current is negative.* When gate terminal is negative with respect to MT1, gate current flows through $P_2\,N_3$ junction, Fig. 4.49 (*b*) and reverse biased junction $N_1\,P_2$ is forward biased as in a normal thyristor. As a result, triac starts conducting through $P_1\,N_1\,P_2\,N_3$ layers initially. With the conduction of $P_1\,N_1\,P_2\,N_3$, the voltage drop across this path falls but potential of layer between $P_2\,N_3$ rises towards the anode potential of MT2. As the right hand portion of $P_2$ is clamped at the cathode potential of MT1, a potential gradient exists across layer $P_2$, its left hand region being at higher potential than its right hand region. A current shown dotted is thus established in layer $P_2$ from left to right. This



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*) (*d*)

Fig. 4.49. Turning-on process in a triac.

current is similar to conventional gate current of an SCR. As a consequence, right-hand part of triac consisting of main structure $P_1 N_1 P_2 N_2$ begins to conduct. The device structure $P_1 N_1 P_2 N_3$ may be regarded as pilot SCR and the structure $P_1 N_1 P_2 N_2$ as the main SCR. It can then be stated that anode current of pilot SCR serves as the gate current for the main SCR. As compared with turn-on process discussed in (*i*) above, the device with MT2 positive but gate current negative is less sensitive and therefore, more gate current is required.

*(iii) MT2 is negative but gate current is positive.* The gate current $I_g$ forward biases $P_2 N_2$ junction Fig. 4.49 (*c*). Layer $N_2$ injects electrons into $P_2$ layer as shown by dotted arrows. As a result, reverse biased junction $N_1 P_1$ breaks down as in a conventional thyristor. Eventually the structure $P_2 N_1 P_1 N_4$ is completely turned on. As usual, the current after turn-on is limited by the external load. As the triac is turned on by remote gate $N_2$, the device is less sensitive in the third quadrant with positive gate current.

*(iv) Both MT2 and gate current are negative.* In this mode, $N_3$ acts as a remote gate, Fig. 4.49 (*d*). The gate current $I_g$ flows from $P_2$ to $N_3$ as in a normal thyristor. Reverse-biased junction $N_1 P_1$ is broken and finally, the structure $P_2 N_1 P_1 N_4$ is turned on completely. Though the triac is turned on by remote gate $N_3$ in third quadrant, yet the device is more sensitive under this condition compared with turn-on action with positive gate current discussed in (*iii*) above.

It can, therefore, be concluded from above that :

(*i*) sensitivity of the triac is greatest in the first quadrant when turned on with positive gate current and also in the third quadrant when turned on with negative gate current,

(*ii*) sensitivity of the triac is low in the first quadrant when turned on with negative gate current and also in the third quadrant when turned-on with positive gate current.

Thus the triac is rarely operated in first quadrant with negative gate current and in the third quadrant with positive gate current.

As the two conducting paths from MT1 to MT2 or from MT2 to MT1 interact with each other in the structure of the triac ; their voltage, current and frequency ratings are much lower as compared with conventional thyristors. At present, triacs with voltage and current ratings of 1200 V and 300 A (rms) are available.

Triacs are used extensively in residential lamp dimmers, heat control and for the speed control of small single-phase series and induction motors.

A triac may sometimes operate in the rectifier mode rather than in the bidirectional mode. This may happen due to the following reasons :

(*a*) For a given value of positive gate current, a triac may turn on with MT2 positive in first quadrant but may fail to turn on with MT2 negative.

(*b*) With constant negative gate current, the triac may turn on with MT2 negative in third quadrant but may not turn on with MT2 positive.

The rectifier-mode can be overcome by increasing the value of gate current.

### 4.10.8. Asymmetrical Thyristor (ASCR)

A conventional thyristor is able to block a large reverse voltage, but this blocking capability is not required in several industrial applications. For example, in voltage source inverters converting dc to ac and in some chopper circuits, a freewheeling diode is usually connected in antiparallel across each thyristor. This freewheeling diode clamps the thyristor voltage to 1 to 2 V under steady state conditions. An asymmetrical thyristor, or ASCR, is specially fabricated to have limited reverse voltage capability ; this permits a reduction in turn-on time, turn-off time and on-state voltage drop in ASCR. A typical ASCR may have reverse blocking capability of 20 to 30 V and forward blocking voltage of 400 to 2000 V. ASCRs with turn-off time half of that of a similar rated conventional SCRs have been developed. Fast turn-off ASCRs minimize the size, weight and cost of commutating components and permit high frequency operation (20 KHz or more) with improved efficiency.

### 4.10.9. Reverse Conducting Thyristor (RCT)

A reverse conducting thyristor is a special case asymmetrical thyristor with a monolithically integrated antiparallel diode on the same silicon chip. This construction reduces to zero the reverse blocking capability of RCT. A current pulse through the diode part of the chip turns off RCT. The arrangement of ASCR and diode in a single device reduces the heat sink size and leads to compactness of the converter. The undesirable stray loop inductance between ASCR and diode is also eliminated and unwanted reverse voltage transients across ASCR are avoided ; this leads to better turn off behaviour of RCT.

### 4.10.10. Other Thyristor Devices

Field-controlled thyristor (FCT), or static induction thyristor (SIT), is a new four layer semiconductor device still under development. In FCT, a negative gate drive turns off the normally conducting thyristor, but it is essential to hold this negative gate drive to achieve the off-state. It has been reported that FCT has high voltage-blocking capability, low-on-state voltage drop and improved $dv/dt$ and $di/dt$ values.

Gate-assisted turn-off (GAT) thyristor is a normal four-layer thyristor, but its turn-off is achieved by applying a negative gate drive across gate-cathode terminals. In order to reduce the turn-off time appreciably, the gate-cathode junction is highly interdigitated so that stored charges can be removed more effectively from the base region. GAT thyristors are extensively employed in TV deflection circuits at frequencies around 20 kHz with turn-off times as low as 2.5 μ sec for 200-V devices.

Gate turn off thyristor is described briefly in the next section. The latest semiconductor device to enter the family of thyristors is MOSFET-controlled thyristor (MCT) and this is already described in Chapter 2.

## 4.11. GATE TURN OFF (G.T.O.) THYRISTOR

A gate turn-off thyristor, a *pnpn* device, can be turned on like an ordinary thyristor by a pulse of positive gate current. In inverter and chopper circuits, a thyristor can be turned off by forced commutation. For such applications, a GTO is, however, a more versatile device ; it can be easily turned off by a negative gate pulse of appropriate amplitude. GTOs were developed sometimes in the late 1960s but these could not find commercial use because of certain performance problems. Only recently, modern technology has helped in the improved performance of GTOs and these are now being used in several commercial inverters.

As no forced commutation circuitry is required for GTOs, inverters using these devices are compact and cost less. The negative gate current required to turn off a GTO is quite a large percentage (20 to 30%) of anode current prior to commutation. For example, an 800 A GTO will require a negative current pulse of 200 A peak for turning it off. Fig. 4.50 (*a*) gives the circuit symbols of a GTO. The symbols shown in (*a*) (*i*) and (*ii*) are self explanatory, gate

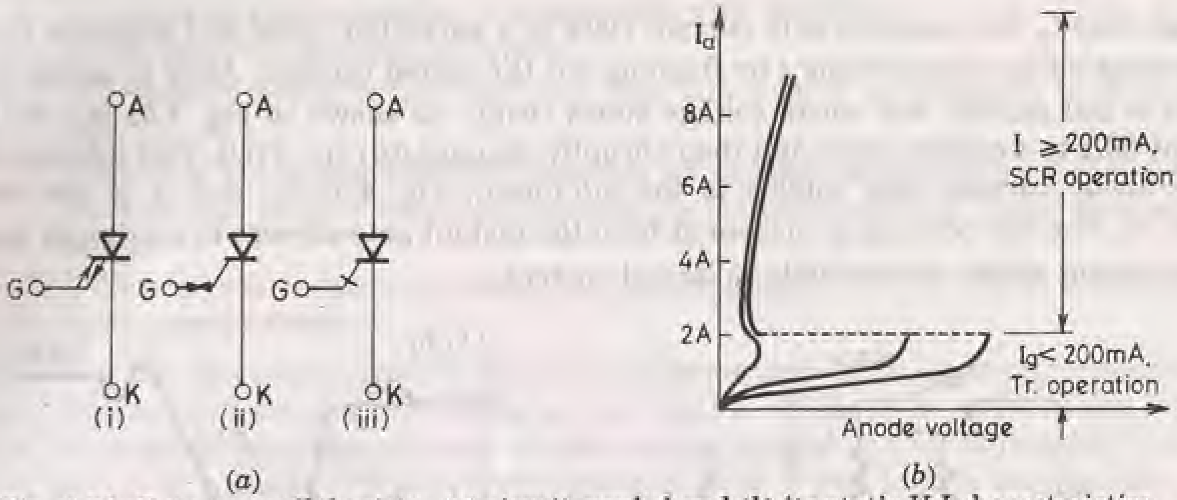


Fig. 4.50. Gate turn-off thyristor (*a*) circuit symbol and (*b*) its static *V-I* characteristics.

current can go in for turning on and out for turning off. But the symbol a (*iii*) looks easy when circuit configurations using GTOs are to be drawn.

### 4.11.1. Static V-I Characteristics of GTOs

Typical static $V-I$ characteristics for a GTO thyristor are shown in Fig. 4.50 (*b*). It is seen from these characteristics that latching current for large power GTOs is several amperes (here 2A) as compared to 100–500 mA for conventional thyristors of the same rating. If gate current is not able to turn on the GTO, it behaves like a high voltage, low gain transistor with considerable anode current. This leads to a noticeable power loss under such conditions.

### 4.11.2. Switching Performance

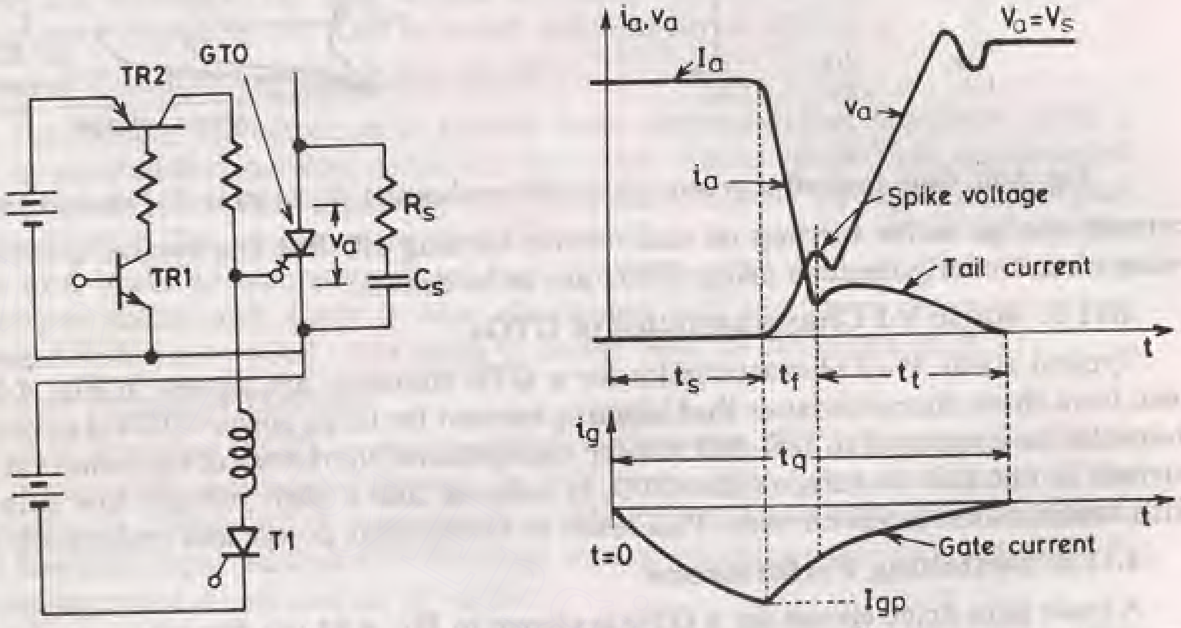
A basic gate drive circuit for a GTO is shown in Fig. 4.51 (*a*). For turning-on a GTO, first transistor TR1 is turned on, this in turn switches on TR2 to apply a positive gate-current pulse to turn on GTO. For turning off the GTO, the turn-off circuit should be capable of outputting a high peak current. Usually, a thyristor is used for this purpose. In Fig. 4.51 (*a*), turn-off process is initiated by gating thyristor T1. When T1 is turned on, a large negative gate current pulse turns off the GTO.

**Gate turn-on**. The turn-on process for a GTO is similar to that of a conventional thyristor. Gate turn-on time for GTO is made up of delay time, rise time and spread time like a thyristor. Further, turn-on time in a GTO can be decreased by increasing its forward gate current as in a thyristor.

**Gate turn-off.** The turn-off characteristics of a GTO are different from those of an SCR. Before the initiation of turn-off process, a GTO carries a steady current $I_a$, Fig. 4.51 (*b*). This figure shows a typical turn-off dynamic characteristic for a GTO. The total turn off time $t_q$ is subdivided into three different periods ; namely the storage period ($t_s$), the fall period ($t_f$) and the tail period ($t_t$). In other words,

$$t_q = t_s + t_f + t_t.$$

Initiation of turn-off process starts as soon as negative gate current begins to flow after $t = 0$. The rate of rise of this gate current depends upon the gate circuit inductance and the gate voltage applied. During the storage period, anode current $I_a$ and anode voltage (equal to on-state voltage drop) remain constant. Termination of the storage period is indicated by a fall in $I_a$ and rise in $V_a$. During $t_s$, excess charges, *i.e.* holes, in *p*-base are removed by negative gate current and the centre junction comes out of saturation. In other words, during storage time $t_s$, the negative gate current rises to a particular value and prepares the GTO for turning-off (or commutation) by flushing out the stored carriers. After $t_s$, anode current begins to fall rapidly and anode voltage starts rising. As shown in Fig. 4.51 (*b*), the anode current falls to a certain value and then abruptly changes its rate of fall. This interval during which anode current falls rapidly is the *fall time* $t_f$, Fig. 4.51 (*b*) and is of the order of 1 μsec [4]. The fall period $t_f$ is measured from the instant gate current is maximum negative to the instant anode current falls to its tail current.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.51. (*a*) Basic gate-drive for a GTO
(*b*) voltage and current waveforms during turn-off of a GTO.

At the time $t = t_s + t_f$, there is a spike in voltage due to abrupt current change. After $t_f$, anode current $i_a$ and anode voltage $v_a$ keep moving towards their turn-off values for a time $t_t$ called *tail time*. After $t_t$, anode current reaches zero value and $v_a$ undergoes a transient overshoot due to the presence of $R_s$, $C_s$ and then stabilizes to its off-state value equal to the source voltage applied to the anode circuit. Here $R_s$ and $C_s$ are the snubber circuit parameters. The turn-off process is complete when tail current reaches zero. The over shoot voltage and tail current can be decreased by increasing the size of $C_s$, but a compromise with snubber loss must be made. The duration of $t_t$ depends upon the device characteristics [4].

A GTO has the following disadvantages as compared to a conventional thyristor :

(*i*) Magnitude of latching and holding currents is more in a GTO.
(*ii*) On state voltage drop and the associated loss is more in a GTO.
(*iii*) Due to the multicathode structure of GTO, triggering gate current is higher than that required for a conventional SCR.
(*iv*) Gate drive circuit losses are more
(*v*) Its reverse-voltage blocking capability is less than its forward-voltage blocking capability. But this is no disadvantage so far as inverter circuits are concerned.

In spite of all these demerits, GTO has the following advantages over an SCR :

(*i*) GTO has faster switching speed.

(*ii*) Its surge current capability is comparable with an SCR.

(*iii*) It has more *di/dt* rating at turn-on.

(*iv*) GTO circuit configuration has lower size and weight as compared to SCR circuit unit.

(*v*) GTO unit has higher efficiency because an increase in gate-drive power loss and on-state loss is more than compensated by the elimination of forced commutation losses.

(*vi*) GTO unit has reduced acoustical and electromagnetic noise due to elimination of commutation chokes.

In view of the above facts, GTO devices are now being used for (*a*) high-performance drive systems, such as the field-oriented control scheme used in rolling mills, robotics and machine tools [4], (*b*) traction purposes because of their lighter weight and (*c*) adjustable-frequency inverter drives. At present, GTOs with ratings up to 2500 V and 1400 A are available.

## 4.12. FIRING CIRCUITS FOR THYRISTORS

An SCR can be switched from off-state to on-state in several ways ; these are forward-voltage triggering, *dv/dt* triggering, temperature triggering, light triggering and gate triggering, see Art. 4.2. The instant of turning on the SCR cannot be controlled by the first three methods listed above. Light triggering is used in some applications, particularly in a series-connected string. Gate triggering is, however, the most common method of turning on the SCRs, because this method lends itself accurately for turning on the SCR at the desired instant of time. In addition, gate triggering is an efficient and reliable method. In this section, firing circuits for thyristors are studied in detail.

### 4.12.1. Main Features of Firing Circuits

As stated above, the most common method for controlling the onset of conduction in an SCR is by means of gate voltage control. The gate control circuit is also called firing, or triggering, circuit. These gating circuits are usually low-power electronic circuits. A firing circuit should fulfil the following two functions.

(*i*) If power circuit has more than one SCR, the firing circuit should produce gating pulses for each SCR at the desired instant for proper operation of the power circuit. These pulses must be periodic in nature and the sequence of firing must correspond with the type of

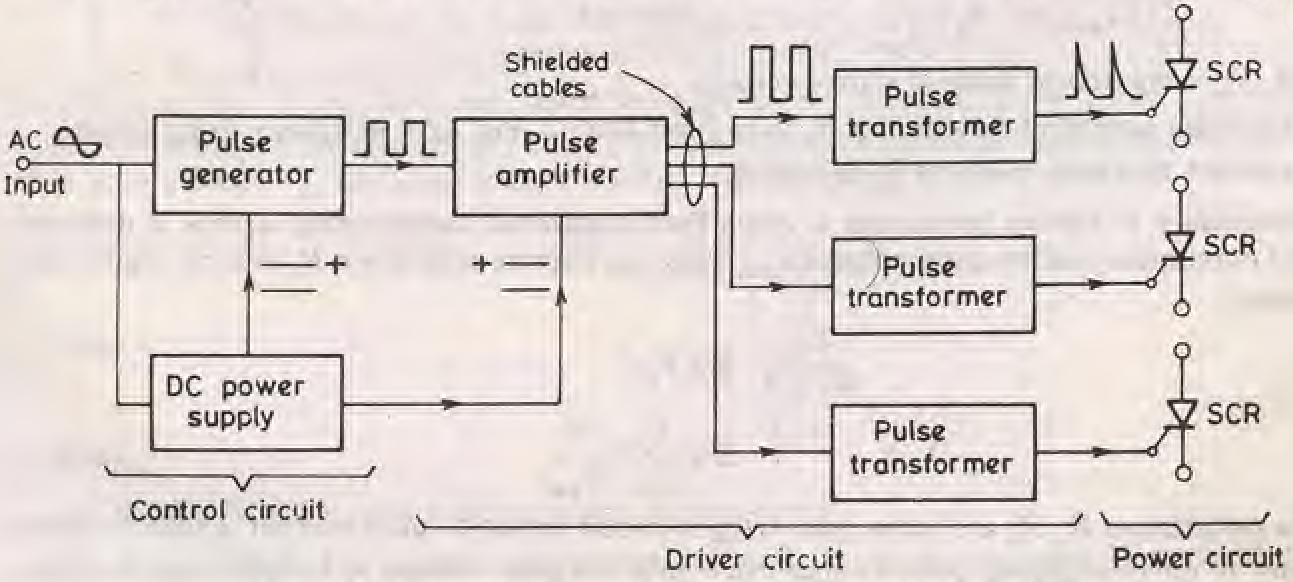


Fig. 4.52. A general layout of the firing circuit scheme for SCRs.

thyristorised power controller. For example, in a single-phase semiconductor using two SCRs, the triggering circuit must produce one firing pulse in each half cycle; in a 3-phase full converter using six SCRs, gating circuit must produce one trigger pulse after every 60° interval.

(*ii*) The control signal generated by a firing circuit may not be able to turn-on an SCR. It is therefore common to feed the voltage pulses to a *driver circuit* and then to gate-cathode circuit. A driver circuit consists of a pulse amplifier and a pulse transformer.

A firing circuit scheme, in general, consists of the components shown in Fig. 4.52. A regulated dc power supply is obtained from an alternating voltage source. Pulse generator, supplied from both ac and dc sources, gives out voltage pulses which are then fed to pulse amplifier for their amplification. Shielded cables transmit the amplified pulses to pulse transformers. The function of pulse transformer is to isolate the low-voltage gate-cathode circuit from the high-voltage anode-cathode circuit. Some firing circuit schemes are described in this section.

### 4.12.2. Resistance and Resistance-Capacitance Firing Circuits

*R* and *RC* firing circuits are not in commercial use these days. These are presented here for the sake of highlighting the basic principles of triggering the SCRs. They offer simple and economical firing circuits [3].

(*a*) *Resistance firing circuits.* As stated above, resistance trigger circuits are the simplest and most economical. They however, suffer from a limited range of firing angle control (0° to 90°), great dependence on temperature and difference in performance between individual SCRs.

Fig. 4.53 shows the most basic resistance triggering circuit. $R_2$ is the variable resistance, $R$ is the stabilizing resistance. In case $R_2$ is zero, gate current may flow from source, through load, $R_1$, $D$ and gate to cathode. This current should not exceed maximum permissible gate current $I_{gm}$. $R_1$ can therefore, be found from the relation,

$$\frac{V_m}{R_1} \le I_{gm} \quad \text{or} \quad R_1 \ge \frac{V_m}{I_{gm}} \qquad \text{...(4.20 a)}$$

where $V_m$ = maximum value of source voltage

It is thus seen that function of $R_1$ is to limit the gate current to a safe value as $R_2$ is varied.

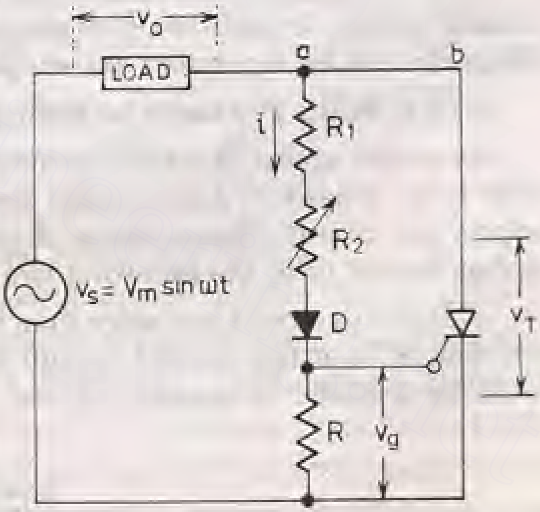


Fig. 4.53. Resistance firing circuit.

Resistance *R* should have such a value that maximum voltage drop across it does not exceed maximum possible gate voltage $V_{gm}$. This can happen only when $R_2$ is zero. Under this condition,

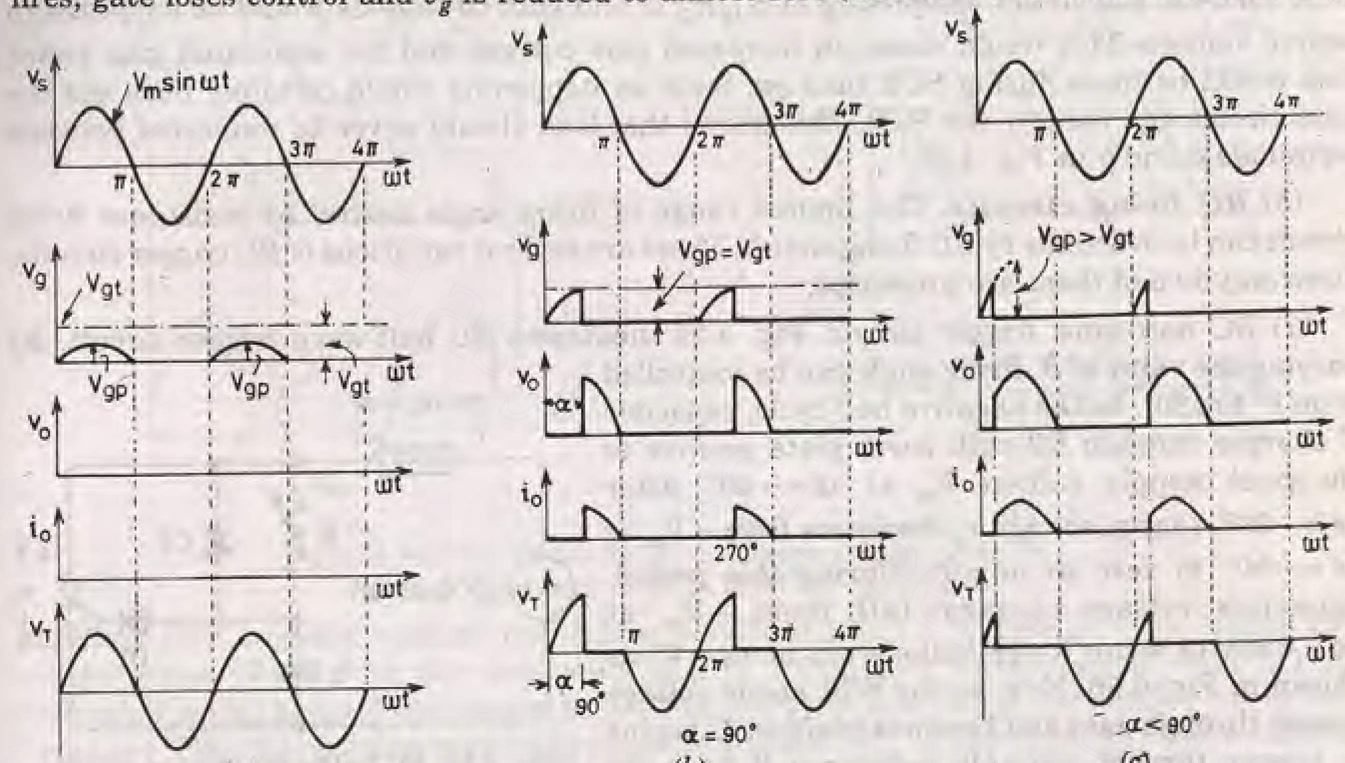
$$\frac{V_m}{R_1 + R} \cdot R \le V_{gm}$$

or

$$R \le \frac{V_{gm} \cdot R_1}{V_m - V_{gm}} \qquad \text{...(4.20 b)}$$

As resistances $R_1$, $R_2$ are large, gate trigger circuit draws a small current. Diode *D* allows the flow of current during positive half cycle only, *i.e.* gate voltage $v_g$ is half-wave dc pulse. The amplitude of this dc pulse can be controlled by varying $R_2$.

The potentiometer setting $R_2$ determines the gate voltage amplitude. When $R_2$ is large, current $i$ is small and the voltage across $R$, *i.e.* $v_g = iR$ is also small as shown in Fig. 4.54 (*a*). As $V_{gp}$ (peak of gate voltage $v_g$) is less than $V_{gt}$ (gate trigger voltage), SCR will not turn on. Therefore, load voltage $v_0 = 0$, $i_0 = 0$ and supply voltage $v_s$ appears as $v_T$ across SCR as shown in Fig. 4.54 (*a*). Note that trigger circuit consists of resistances only, $v_g$ is therefore in phase with source voltage $v_s$. In Fig. 4.54 (*b*), $R_2$ is adjusted such that $V_{gp} = V_{gt}$. This gives the value of firing angle as 90°. The various current and voltage waveforms are shown in Fig. 4.54 (*b*). In Fig. 4.54 (*c*), $V_{gp} > V_{gt}$. As soon as $v_g$ becomes equal to $V_{gt}$ for the first time SCR is turned on. The resistance triggering cannot give firing angle beyond 90°. Increasing $v_g$ above $V_{gt}$ turns on the SCR at firing angles less than 90°. When $v_g$ reaches $V_{gt}$ for the first time, SCR fires, gate loses control and $v_g$ is reduced to almost zero (about 1 V) value as shown. It may also be seen that firing angle can never be equal to zero degree however large $V_{gp}$ may be ; it can, of course, be brought nearer (2°–4°) to zero degree firing angle. A relationship between peak gate voltage $V_{gp}$ and gate trigger voltage $V_{gt}$ may be expressed as follows :



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 4.54. Resistance firing of an SCR in a half-wave circuit with dc load (*a*) No triggering of SCR (*b*) α = 90° (*c*) α < 90°.

$$V_{gp} \sin \alpha = V_{gt}$$

or

$$\alpha = \sin^{-1} (V_{gt}/V_{gp})$$

Since

$$V_{gp} = \frac{V_m R}{R_1 + R_2 + R}$$

$$\alpha = \sin^{-1} \left[ \frac{V_{gt} \cdot (R_1 + R_2 + R)}{V_m R} \right]$$

As $V_{gt}$, $R_1$, $R$ and $V_m$ are fixed, $\alpha \propto \sin^{-1} (R_2)$ or $\alpha \propto R_2$.

This shows that firing angle is proportional to $R_2$. As $R_2$ is increased from small value (*i.e.* small α), firing angle increases. In any case, α can never be more than 90°.

As the firing angle control is from 0° (approximately) to 90°, the half-wave power output can be controlled from 100% (for $\alpha = 0°$) down to 50% (for $\alpha = 90°$).

**Example 4.23.** *Discuss what would happen to the circuit of Fig. 4.53 in case load is shifted between terminals a and b.*

**Solution.** In the circuit of Fig. 4.53, when SCR is on, voltage $v_T$ across it is almost zero (actually about 1 to 1.5 V) and therefore voltage across $R_1$, $R_2$, $D$, $R$ is also nearly zero. As a result, trigger supply voltage $v_g$ is reduced to zero after SCR turn-on. There is thus hardly any gate current and the associated gate power loss is zero during the time SCR is conducting in Fig. 4.53.

In case load is shifted between terminals $a$ and $b$, the circuit may still operate. But after SCR turn-on, the circuit comprising of $R_1$, $R_2$, $D$ and gate to cathode would be subjected to source voltage. This would cause an increased gate current and the associated gate power loss would be more during SCR turn on. Such an happening would certainly burn out the gate circuit and destroy the SCR. This shows that load should never be connected between terminals $a$ and $b$ in Fig. 4.53.

(*b*) **RC firing circuits.** The limited range of firing angle control by resistance firing circuit can be overcome by RC firing circuit. There are several variations of RC trigger circuits. Here only two of them are presented.

(*i*) *RC half-wave trigger circuit.* Fig. 4.55 illustrates RC half-wave trigger circuit. By varying the value of $R$, firing angle can be controlled from 0° to 180°. In the negative half cycle, capacitor $C$ charges through $D2$ with lower plate positive to the peak supply voltage $V_m$ at $\omega t = -90°$. After $\omega t = -90°$, source voltage $v_s$ decreases from $-V_m$ at $\omega t = -90°$ to zero at $\omega t = 0°$. During this period, capacitor voltage $v_C$ may fall from $-V_m$ at $\omega t = -90°$ to some lower value $-o\,a$ at $\omega t = 0°$ as shown in Fig. 4.56. Now, as the SCR anode voltage passes through zero and becomes positive, $C$ begins to charge through variable resistance $R$ from the initial voltage $-oa$. When capacitor charges to positive voltage equal to gate trigger voltage $V_{gt}$, SCR is fired and after this, capacitor holds to a small positive voltage, Fig. 4.56. Diode D1 is used to prevent the breakdown of cathode to gate junction through D2 during the negative half cycle. An examination of Fig. 4.56 reveals that firing angle can never be zero and 180°.

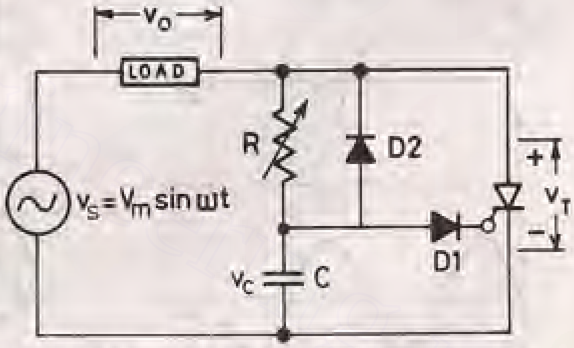


Fig. 4.55. RC half-wave trigger circuit.

In the range of power frequencies, it may be empirically shown [3] that RC for zero output voltage is given by

$$RC \geq \frac{1.3\,T}{2} \cong \frac{4}{\omega} \qquad \ldots(4.21)$$

where $T = \dfrac{1}{f}$ = period of ac line frequency in seconds.

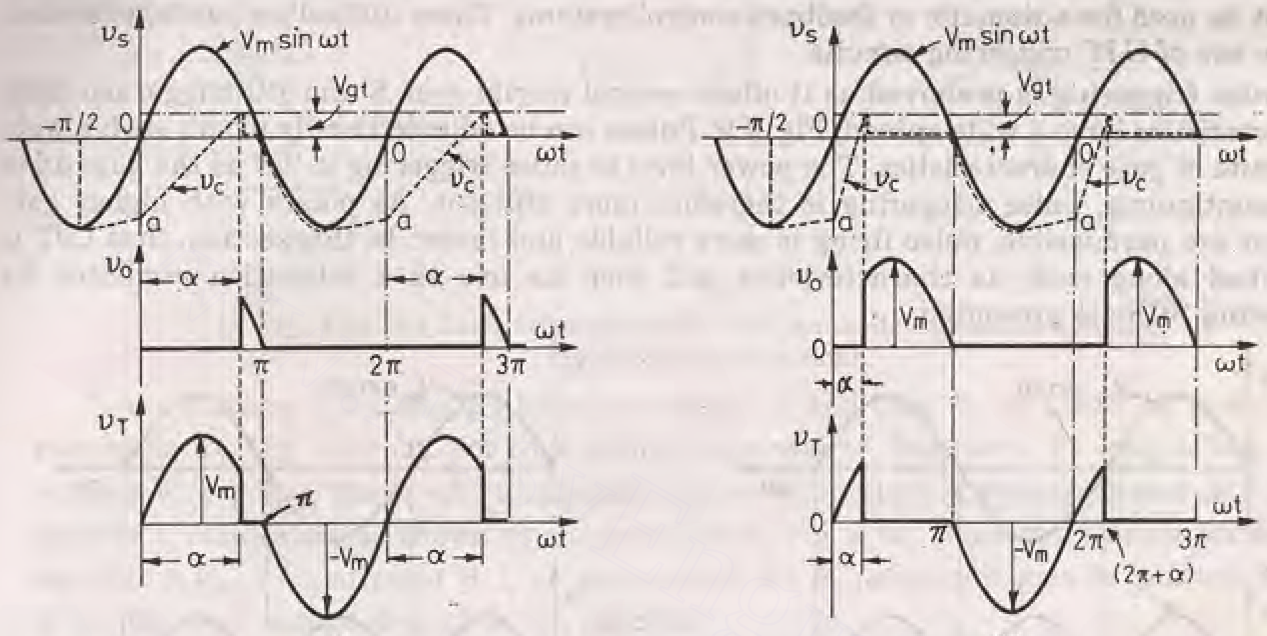
The SCR will trigger when $v_c = V_{gt} + v_d$, where $v_d$ is the voltage drop across diode D1. At the instant of triggering, if $v_c$ is assumed constant, the current $I_{gt}$ must be supplied by voltage source through $R$, D1 and gate to cathode circuit. Hence the maximum value of $R$ is given by

$$v_s \geq RI_{gt} + v_c$$

or
$$v_s \geq RI_{gt} + V_{gt} + v_d$$

or
$$R \leq \frac{v_s - V_{gt} - v_d}{I_{gt}} \qquad \text{...(4.22)}$$

where $v_s$ is the source voltage at which thyristor turns on. Approximate values of $R$ and $C$ can be obtained from Eqs. (4.21) and (4.22).



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.56. Waveforms for RC half-wave trigger circuit of Fig. 4.55 (*a*) high value of $R$ (*b*) low value of $R$.

When SCR triggers, voltage drop across it falls to 1 to 1.5 V. This, in turn, lowers the voltage across $R$ and $C$ to this low value of 1 to 1.5 V. Low voltage across SCR during conduction period keeps $C$ discharged in positive half cycle until negative voltage cycle across $C$ appears. This charges $C$ to maximum negative voltage $-V_m$ as shown in Fig. 4.56 by dotted line. In Fig. 4.56 (*a*), $R$ is more, the time taken for $C$ to charge from $-oa$ to $(V_{gt} + v_d) \equiv V_{gt}$ is more, firing angle is more and therefore average output voltage is low. In Fig. 4.56 (*b*), $R$ is less, firing angle is low and therefore average output voltage is more.

(*ii*) *RC full-wave trigger circuit.* A simple $RC$ trigger circuit giving full-wave output voltage is shown in Fig. 4.57. Diodes D1–D4 form a full-wave diode bridge. In this circuit, the initial voltage from which the capacitor $C$ charges is almost zero. The capacitor $C$ is set to this low positive voltage (upper plate positive) by the clamping action of SCR gate. When capacitor charges to a voltage equal to $V_{gt}$, SCR triggers and rectified voltage $v_d$ appears across load as $v_0$. The value of $RC$ is calculated by the empirical relation [3],

$$RC \geq 50\,\frac{T}{2} \equiv \frac{157}{\omega} \qquad \text{...(4.23)}$$

As per Eq. (4.22), the value of $R$ is given by

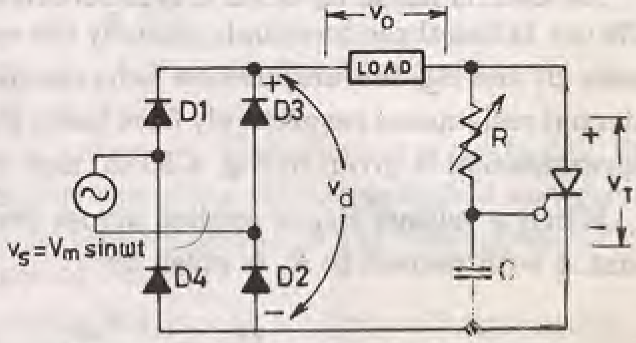


Fig. 4.57. RC full-wave trigger circuit.

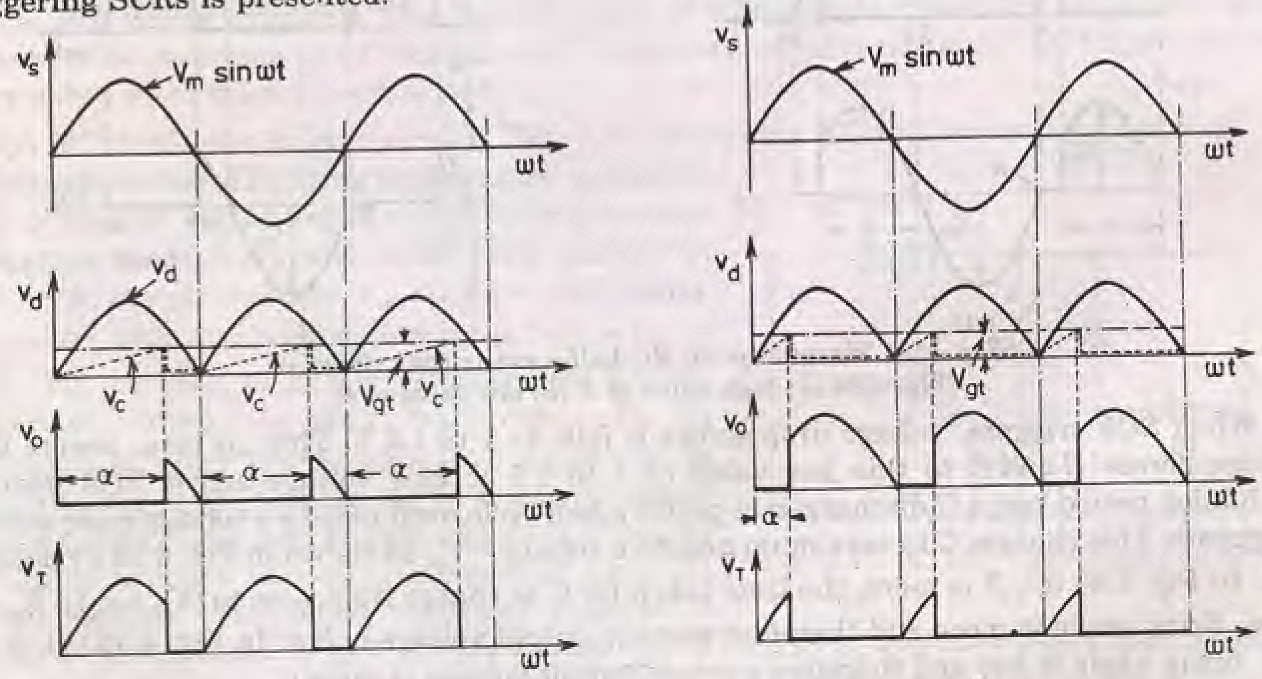
$$R \ll \frac{v_s - V_{gt}}{I_{gt}}$$

where $v_s$ is the source voltage at which thyristor turns on. In Fig. 4.58 (*a*), firing angle $\alpha$ is more than 90° and in Fig. 4.58 (*b*), $\alpha < 90°$.

### 4.12.3. Unijunction Transistor (UJT)

Resistance and RC triggering circuits described above give prolonged pulses. As a result, power dissipation in the gate circuit is large. At the same time, *R* and RC triggering circuits cannot be used for automatic or feedback control systems. These difficulties can be overcome by the use of UJT triggering circuits.

Pulse triggering is preferred as it offers several merits over *R* and RC triggering. Gate characteristics have a wide spread, Fig. 4.9. Pulses can be adjusted easily to suit such a wide spectrum of gate characteristics. The power level in pulse triggering is low as the gate drive is discontinuous, pulse triggering is therefore more efficient. As pulses with higher gate current are permissible, pulse firing is more reliable and faster. In this section, first UJT is described along with its characteristics and then its use as a relaxation oscillator for triggering SCRs is presented.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.58. Wave-forms for RC full-wave trigger circuit of Fig. 4.57 (*a*) high value of *R* (*b*) low value of *R*.

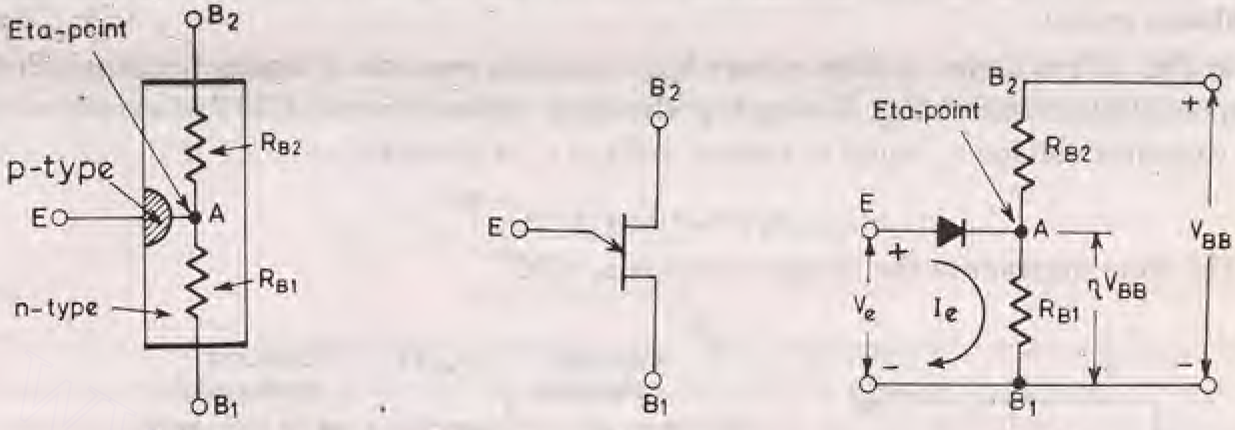
An UJT is made up of an *n*-type silicon base to which *p*-type emitter is embedded, Fig. 4.59 (*a*). It has three terminals, namely the emitter *E*, base-one $B_1$ and base-two $B_2$. Between bases $B_1$ and $B_2$, the unijunction behaves like an ordinary resistance. $R_{B1}$ and $R_{B2}$ are the internal resistances respectively from bases $B_1$ and $B_2$ to eta point *A*, Fig. 4.59 (*a*). Its symbolic representation is given in Fig. 4.59 (*b*) and its equivalent circuit in Fig. 4.59 (*c*).

When a voltage $V_{BB}$ is applied across the two base terminals $B_1$ and $B_2$, the potential of point *A* with respect to $B_1$ is given by

$$V_{AB1} = \frac{V_{BB}}{R_{B1} + R_{B2}} \cdot R_{B1} = \frac{R_{B1}}{R_{B1} + R_{B2}} \cdot V_{BB} = \eta \, V_{BB}$$

where $\eta = \dfrac{R_{B1}}{R_{B1} + R_{B2}}$ is called the *intrinsic stand-off ratio.* Typical values of $\eta$ are 0.51 to 0.82.

Interbase resistance $R_{BB} = R_{B1} + R_{B2}$ is of the order of 5–10 kΩ.



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 4.59. (*a*) Basic structure of UJT (*b*) symbolic representation and (c) its equivalent circuit.

Let a voltage $V_e$ be applied between emitter $E$ and base $B_1$ so that $E$ is positive with respect to $B_1$, Fig. 4.59 (*c*). Let this voltage be increased from zero. As long as the emitter voltage $V_e < \eta\ V_{BB}$, the $E - B_1$ unijunction (or $p - n$ junction) is reverse biased and emitter current $I_e$ is negative as shown by the curve $PS$ in Fig. 4.60. When the emitter voltage $V_e$ is equal to $\eta\ V_{BB} + V_D$ at point $B$, $I_e$ is positive and $E - B_1$ junction begins to conduct. Here $V_D$ is the forward voltage drop of $E - B_1$ junction.

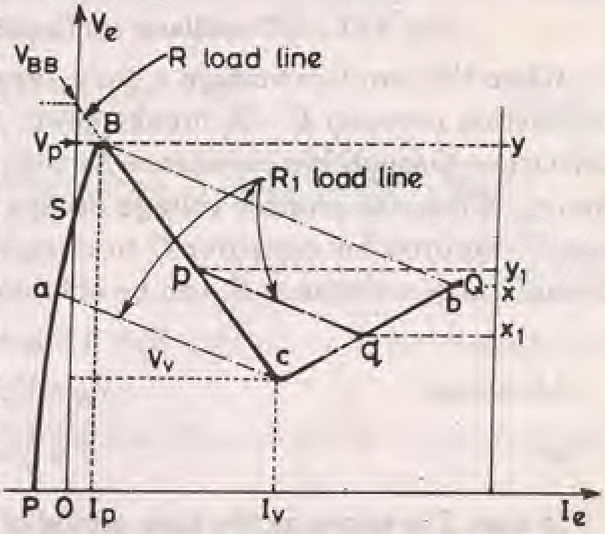


Fig. 4.60. *V–I* characteristics of UJT.

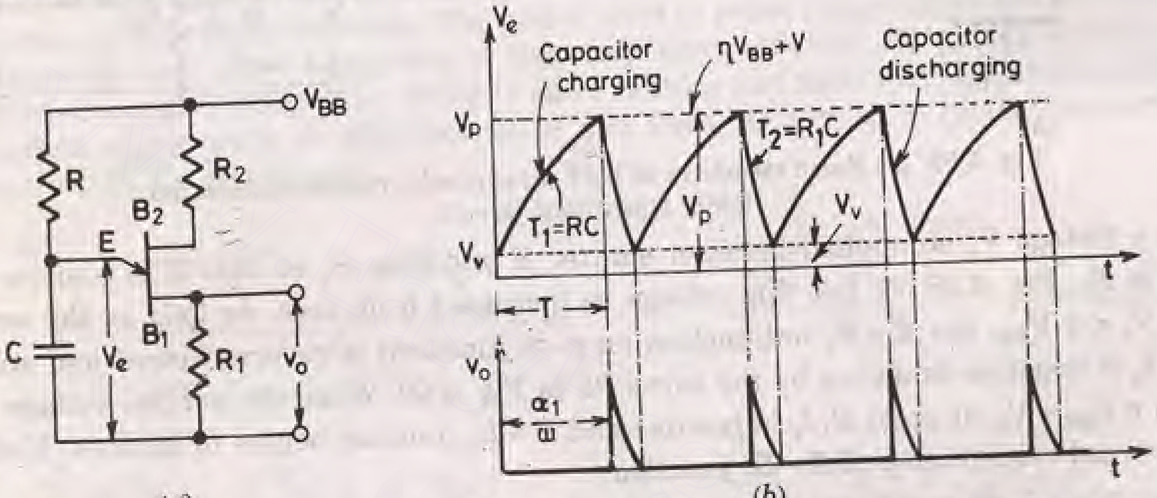
Point $B$ is called the *peak point* and the corresponding emitter potential and current are denoted by $V_p$ (peak-point voltage) and $I_p$ (peak-point current) respectively. At point $B$, when $V_e = \eta\ V_{BB} + V_D$, the emitter starts to inject holes into the lower base region 1. Because of the increased number of carries in the base region, resistance $R_{B1}$ of $E - B_1$ junction decreases. As a result, potential of eta point $A$, Fig. 4.59 (*c*), falls and therefore current $I_e$, due to voltage $V_e$, increases. Thus the device exhibits a negative resistance region, this is shown by $BC$ in Fig. 4.60. In this region, an increase in current $I_e$ is accompanied by a decrease of emitter voltage $V_e$. At point $C$, entire base region is saturated and resistance $R_{B1}$ does not decrease any more. A further increase in $I_e$ is accompanied by a rise in voltage $V_e$. This curve is given by $CQ$. Point $C$ is called the *valley point* ; $V_v$ and $I_v$ are the corresponding emitter potential and current. The negative resistance region between peak and valley points in Fig. 4.60 gives UJT the switching characteristics for use in SCR triggering circuits.

**UJT oscillator triggering.** The unijunction transistor is a highly efficient switch ; its switching time is in the range of nanoseconds. Since UJT exhibits negative resistance characteristics, it can be used as a relaxation oscillator. Fig. 4.61 (*a*) shows a circuit diagram with UJT working in the oscillator mode. The external resistances $R_1, R_2$ are small in comparison with the internal resistances $R_{B1}, R_{B2}$ of UJT bases. The charging resistance $R$ should be such that its load line intersects the device characteristics only in the negative resistance region.

In Fig. 4.61 (*a*), when source voltage $V_{BB}$ is applied, capacitor $C$ begins to charge through $R$ exponentially towards $V_{BB}$. During this charging, emitter circuit of UJT is an open circuit. The capacitor voltage $v_c$, equal to emitter voltage $v_e$, is given by

$$v_c = v_e = V_{BB}\left(1 - e^{-t/RC}\right)$$

The time constant of the charge circuit is $\tau_1 = RC$.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.61. UJT oscillator (*a*) Connection diagram and (*b*) Voltage waveforms.

When this emitter voltage $v_e$ (or $v_c$) reaches the peak-point voltage $V_p$ $(= \eta V_{BB} + V_D)$, the unijunction between $E - B_1$ breaks down. As a result, UJT turns on and capacitor $C$ rapidly discharges through low resistance $R_1$ with a time constant $\tau_2 = R_1 C$. Here $\tau_2$ is much smaller than $\tau_1$. When the emitter voltage decays to the valley-point voltage $V_v$, UJT turns off. The time $T$ required for capacitor $C$ to charge from initial voltage $V_v$ to peak-point voltage $V_p$, through large resistance $R$, can be obtained as under :

$$V_p = \eta V_{BB} + V_D = V_v + V_{BB}\left(1 - e^{-T/RC}\right)$$

Assuming $$V_D = V_v, \quad \eta = \left(1 - e^{-T/RC}\right)$$

or $$T = \frac{1}{f} = RC \ \ln\left(\frac{1}{1-\eta}\right) \qquad \text{...(4.24)}$$

In case $T$ is taken as the time period of output pulse duration (neglecting small discharge time), then the value of firing angle $\alpha_1$ is given by

$$\alpha_1 = \omega T = \omega RC \ \ln \frac{1}{1-\eta} \qquad \text{...(4.25)}$$

where $\omega$ is the angular frequency of UJT oscillator.

The amplitude of pulse voltage is obtained by drawing a load line $B\,b$ for $R_1$ as shown in Fig. 4.60. The vertical projection of $Bb$, equal to $xy$, gives the voltage pulse amplitude. With the discharge of capacitor, the operating points $B$ and $b$ move towards $C$. For points $p$ and $q$, the pulse amplitude is $x_1y_1$. Eventually, point $C$ is reached at which pulse voltage is zero, then the operating point shifts to $a$, Fig. 4.60. The potential of eta point $A$ is $\eta V_{BB}$, but that of the emitter is $V_v$ which is less than $\eta V_{BB}$. As a result, $E - B_1$ unijunction is reverse biased and ceases to conduct, the UJT turns off and goes into blocking mode. Capacitor $C$ now again charges from $V_e = V_v$ to voltage $\eta V_{BB} + V_D$, $E - B_1$ unijunction breaks down and the above cycle repeats.

If the output voltage pulses are used for triggering an SCR, resistance $R_1$ should be sufficiently small so that normal leakage current drop across $R_1$, when UJT is off, is not able to trigger the SCR. In other words,

$$\frac{V_{BB} \cdot R_1}{R_{BB} + R_1 + R_2} < \text{SCR trigger voltage } V_{gt}$$

where $$R_{BB} = R_{B1} + R_{B2}$$

The emitter-diode forward characteristics vary with temperature in such a manner that $V_D$ decreases and $R_{BB}$ increases with temperature. In order to provide compensation against this thermal effect, the value of $R_2$ used in Fig. 4.61 should be calculated from the relation

$$R_2 = \frac{10^4}{\eta V_{BB}} \qquad \text{...(4.26)}$$

The width of triggering pulse is sometimes taken equal to $R_1C$.

In case load line for $R$ intersects the UJT characteristics in the region $CQ$, Fig. 4.60, the intersecting point will result in stable operating point and the circuit then cannot work as an oscillator. This fact fixes the maximum and minimum values of charging resistor $R$ and the oscillator output frequency.

The maximum value of $R$ is determined by the peak-point values $V_p$ and $I_p$. When voltage across $C$ reaches $V_p$, the voltage across $R$ is $V_{BB} - V_p$.

$$\therefore \quad R_{max} = \frac{V_{BB} - V_p}{I_p} = \frac{V_{BB} - (\eta V_{BB} + V_D)}{I_p} \qquad \text{...(4.27}a\text{)}$$

The minimum value of $R$, governed by valley-point values $V_v$ and $I_v$ is given by

$$R_{\min} = \frac{V_{BB} - V_v}{I_v} \qquad \text{...(4.27}b\text{)}$$

**Example 4.24.** *A relaxation oscillator using an UJT, Fig. 4.61 (a), is to be designed for triggering an SCR. The UJT has the following data :*

*$\eta = 0.72$, $I_p = 0.6$ mA, $V_p = 18.0$ V, $V_v = 1.0$ V, $I_v = 2.5$ mA, $R_{BB} = 5$ kΩ, Normal leakage current with emitter open = 4.2 mA.*

*The firing frequency is 2 kHz. For $C = 0.04$ μF, compute the values of $R$, $R_1$ and $R_2$.*

**Solution**. The value of charging resistor $R$, from Eq. (4.24), is

$$R = \frac{T}{C \ln \frac{1}{1-\eta}} = \frac{1}{fC \ln \frac{1}{1-\eta}} = \frac{10^6}{2000 \times 0.04 \ln \frac{1}{0.28}} = 9.82 \text{ k}\Omega$$

As $V_D$ is not given, $\quad V_p = \eta V_{BB}$

$$\therefore \quad V_{BB} = \frac{V_p}{\eta} = \frac{18.00}{0.72} = 25 \text{ V}$$

From Eq. (4.26), $$R_2 = \frac{10^4}{0.72 \times 25} = 555.55\ \Omega$$

With emitter open, $$V_{BB} = \text{Leakage current } (R_1 + R_2 + R_{BB})$$

$$\therefore \qquad R_1 = \frac{25}{4.2 \times 10^{-3}} - 5000 - 555.55\ \Omega = 396.83 \cong 397\ \Omega$$

**Example 4.25**. *If the firing frequency of the SCR in Example 4.24 is changed by varying charging resistor R, obtain the maximum and minimum values of R and the corresponding frequencies.*

**Solution.**

From Eq. (4.17), $$R_{max} = \frac{25\ (1 - 0.72)}{0.6 \times 10^{-3}} = 11.67\ \text{k}\Omega$$

$$R_{min} = \frac{25.0 - 1.0}{2.5 \times 10^{-3}} = 9.6\ \text{k}\Omega$$

From Eq. (4.24), $$f_{min} = \frac{1}{T_{\max}} = \frac{1}{R_{max}\, C \ln \dfrac{1}{1-\eta}}$$

$$= \frac{10^3}{11.67 \times 0.04 \ln \dfrac{1}{0.28}} = 1682.8\ \text{Hz} \cong 1.683\ \text{kHz}$$

and $$f_{max} = \frac{10^3}{9.6 \times 0.04 \ln \dfrac{1}{0.28}} = 2045.7\ \text{Hz} \cong 2.05\ \text{kHz}$$

**Synchronized UJT triggering (or Ramp triggering)**. A synchronized UJT trigger circuit using an UJT is shown in Fig. 4.62. Diodes $D_1 - D_4$ rectify ac to dc. Resistor $R_1$ lowers $V_{dc}$ to a suitable value for the zener diode and UJT. Zener diode $Z$ functions to clip the rectified voltage to a standard level $V_z$, which remains constant except near the $V_{dc}$ zero, Fig. 4.63. This voltage $V_z$ is applied to the charging circuit $RC$. Current $i_1$ charges capacitor $C$ at a rate determined by $R$. Voltage across capacitor is marked by $v_c$ in Figs. 4.62 and 4.63. When voltage $v_c$ reaches the unijunction threshold voltage $\eta V_z$, the $E - B_1$ junction of UJT breaks down and the capacitor $C$ discharges through primary of pulse transformer sending a current $i_2$ as shown in Fig. 4.62.

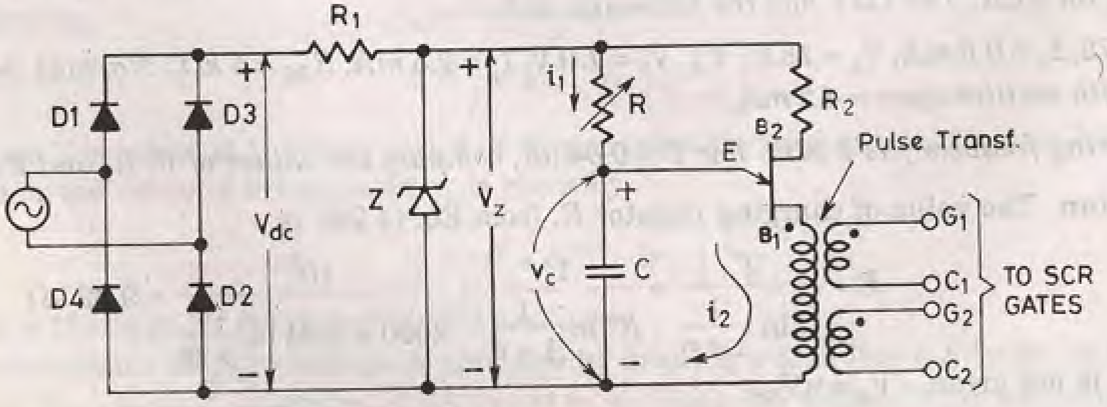
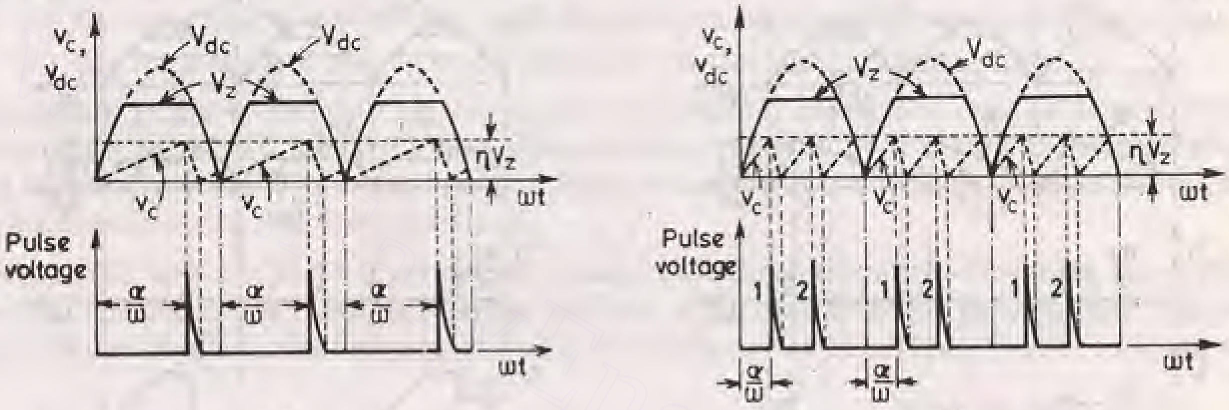


Fig. 4.62. Synchronised UJT trigger circuit.

As the current $i_2$ is in the form of pulse, windings of the pulse transformer have pulse voltages at their secondary terminals. Pulses at the two secondary windings feed the same in-phase pulse to two SCRs of a full-wave circuit. SCR with positive anode voltage would turn on. As soon as the capacitor discharges, it starts to recharge as shown. Rate of rise of capacitor voltage can be controlled by varying $R$. The firing angle can be controlled up to about 150°. This method of controlling the output power by varying charging resistor $R$ is called *ramp control, open-loop control* or *manual control*.

As the zener diode voltage $V_z$ goes to zero at the end of each half cycle, the synchronization of the trigger circuit with the supply voltage across SCRs is achieved. Thus the time $t$, equal to $\alpha/\omega$, when the pulse is applied to SCR for the first time, will remain constant for the same value of $R$. Small variations in the supply voltage and frequency are not going to effect the circuit operation.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.63. Generation of output pulses for the circuit of Fig. 4.62.

In case $R$ is reduced so that $v_c$ reaches UJT threshold voltage twice in each half cycle as shown in Fig. 4.63 (*b*), then there will be two pulses in each half cycle. As the first pulse will be able to turn-on the SCR, second pulse in each cycle is redundant.

**Ramp-and-pedestal triggering.** Ramp and pedestal triggering is an improved version of synchronized-UJT-oscillator triggering. Fig. 4.64 shows the circuit for ramp-and-pedestal triggering of two SCRs connected in antiparallel for controlling power in an ac load. This trigger circuit can also be used for triggering the thyristors in a single-phase semiconverter or a single-phase full converter. The various voltage waveforms are shown in Fig. 4.65.

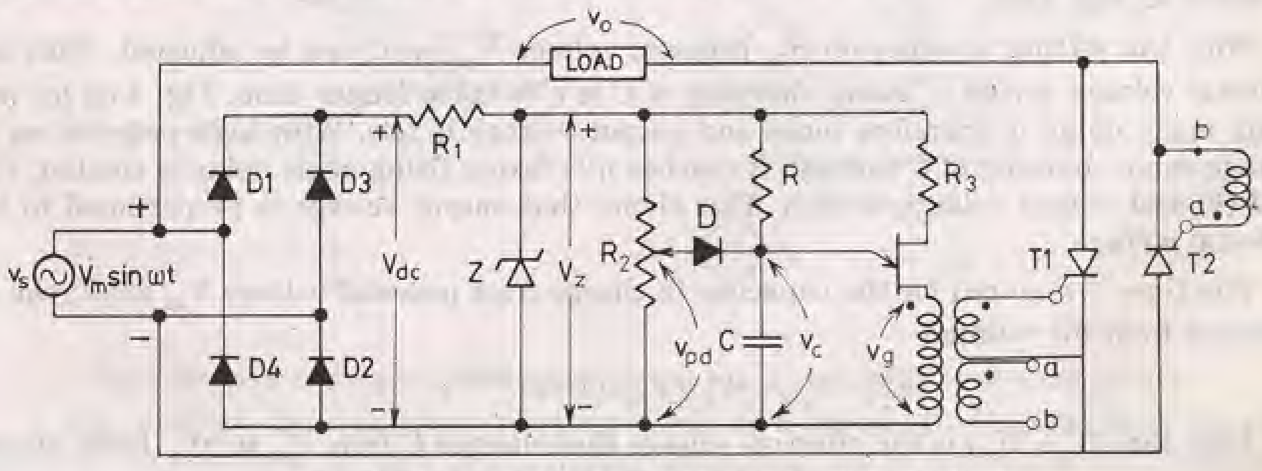
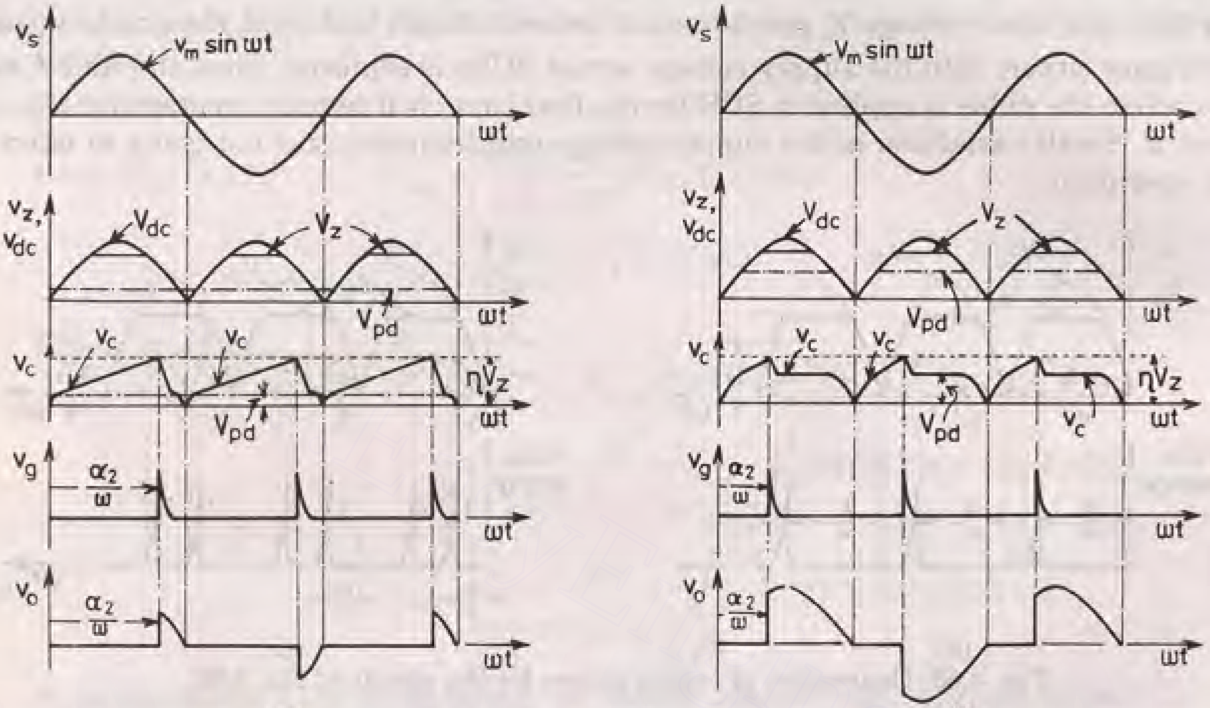


Fig. 4.64. Ramp and pedestal trigger circuit for ac load.

Zener diode voltage $V_z$ is constant at its thresh-hold voltage. $R_2$ acts as a potential divider. Wiper of $R_2$ controls the value of pedestal voltage $V_{pd}$. Diode $D$ allows $C$ to be quickly charged to $V_{pd}$ through the low resistance of the upper portion of $R_2$. The setting of wiper on $R_2$ is such that this value of $V_{pd}$ is always less than the UJT firing point voltage $\eta V_z$. When wiper setting is such that $V_{pd}$ is small, Fig. 4.65 (*a*), voltage $V_z$ charges $C$ through $R$. When this ramp voltage $v_c$ reaches $\eta V_z$, UJT fires and voltage $v_g$, through the pulse transformer, is transmitted to the gate circuits of both SCRs T1 and T2. The forward biased SCR T1 is turned on. After this, $v_c$ reduces to $V_{pd}$ and then to zero at $\omega t = \pi$. As $v_c$ is more than $V_{pd}$, during the charging of capacitor $C$ through charging resistor $R$, diode $D$ is reverse biased and turned off. Thus $V_{pd}$ does not effect in any way the discharge of $C$ through UJT emitter and primary of pulse transformer. From 0 to $\pi$, T1 is forward biased and is turned on. From $\pi$ to $2\pi$, T2 is forward biased and is turned on. In this manner, load is subjected to alternating voltage $v_0$ as shown in Fig. 4.65.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.65. Waveforms for ramp-and-pedestal circuit of Fig. 4.64.

With the setting of wiper on $R_2$, pedestal voltage $V_{pd}$ on $C$ can be adjusted. With *low* pedestal voltage across $C$, ramp charging of $C$ to $\eta Vz$ takes longer time, Fig. 4.65 (*a*) and firing angle delay is therefore more and output voltage is *low*. With high pedestal on $C$, voltage-ramp charging of $C$ through $R$ reaches $\eta Vz$ faster, firing angle delay is smaller, Fig. 4.65 (*b*) and output voltage is high. This shows that output voltage is proportional to the pedestal voltage.

The time $T$ required for the capacitor to charge from pedestal voltage $V_{pd}$ to $\eta V_z$ can be obtained from the relation

$$\eta V_z = V_{pd} + (V_z - V_{pd})\,(1 - e^{-T/RC})$$

Note that $(V_z - V_{pd})$ is the effective voltage that charges $C$ from $V_{pd}$ to $\eta V_z$. From above

$$T = RC \ln \frac{V_z - V_{pd}}{V_z (1-\eta)} \quad \text{...(4.28)}$$

and the firing angle delay $\alpha_2$ is given by

$$\alpha_2 = \omega RC \ln \frac{V_z - V_{pd}}{V_z (1-\eta)} \quad \text{...(4.29)}$$

## 4.13. PULSE TRANSFORMER IN FIRING CIRCUITS

Pulse transformers are used quite often in firing circuits for SCRs and GTOs. This transformer has usually two secondaries. The turn ratio from primary to two secondaries is 2 : 1 : 1 or 1 : 1 : 1. These transformers are designed to have low winding resistance, low leakage reactance and low inter-winding capacitance. The advantages of using pulse transformers in triggering semiconductor devices are :

(*i*) the isolation of low-voltage gate circuit from high-voltage anode circuit and
(*ii*) the triggering of two or more devices from the same trigger source.

A square pulse at the primary terminals of a pulse transformer may be transmitted at its secondary terminals faithfully as a square wave or it may be transmitted as a derivative of the input waveform. The conditions governing the operation of a pulse transformer in these two functional modes are now examined.

A general layout of the trigger circuit using a pulse transformer is shown in Fig. 4.66 (*a*). Here the function of the diode is to allow the flow of current after the pulse period (*i.e.* when the transistor is off) so that energy stored in the primary of pulse transformer is dissipated.

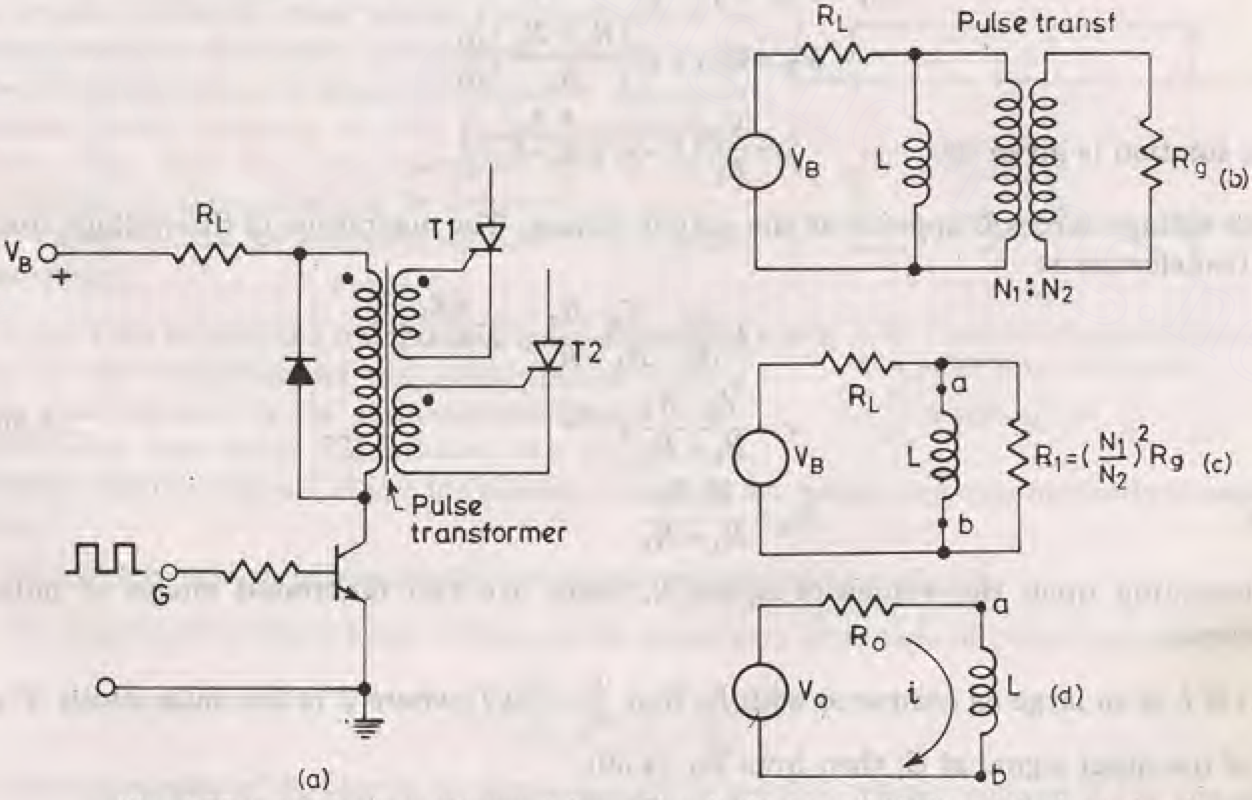


Fig. 4.66. (*a*) Pulse transformer trigger circuit (*b*), (*c*) and (*d*) its equivalent circuits.

In Fig. 4.66 (*a*), the transistor is acting simply as a switch, turning on when the pulse applied to its base is at its high level, thereby connecting the dc bias $V_B$ to the transformer primary. The advantage of this arrangement are two fold :

(*a*) There need not be a variable strength pulse generator since the pulses may be of the same amplitude and the strength of the generated pulses may be increased simply by varying the dc bias voltage.

(*b*) The operation of the circuit becomes independent of the pulse characteristics since the only role the pulse plays is to turn-on or turn-off the transistor. Therefore, there is no effect of pulse distortion (*e.g.* pulse edges or any spike superimposed on the pulse) on the working of this circuit.

In Fig. 4.66 (*a*), $R_L$ limits the current in the primary circuit of pulse transformer. Its equivalent circuit is drawn in Fig. 4.66 (*b*), where $L$ is the magnetizing inductance of the pulse transformer and $R_g$ is the resistance of gate-cathode circuit of an SCR. Fig. 4.66 (*c*) shows the transfer of $R_g$ to pulse transformer primary as $R_1 = \left(\frac{N_1}{N_2}\right)^2 R_g$. This circuit can be analysed by applying Thevenin's theorem at the terminals *a b*. Fig. 4.66 (*d*) is the Thevenin's equivalent circuit, where

$$V_0 = V_B \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_L} \quad \text{and} \quad R_0 = \frac{R_1 R_L}{R_1 + R_L}$$

The voltage equation for Fig. 4.66 (*d*) is

$$V_0 = R_0\, i + L \frac{di}{dt}$$

or

$$V_B \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_L} = \frac{R_1 R_L}{R_1 + R_L} i + L \frac{di}{dt}$$

or

$$V_B = R_L\, i + L \left(\frac{R_1 + R_L}{R_1}\right) \frac{di}{dt}$$

Its solution is given by

$$i = \frac{V_B}{R_L}\left[1 - e^{-\frac{R_1 R_L}{L(R_1 + R_L)} t}\right]$$

The voltage across $L$ appears as the output voltage. The magnitude of this voltage from pulse transformer is

$$e = L \frac{di}{dt} = \frac{V_B \cdot R_1}{R_1 + R_L} e^{-\frac{R_1 R_L}{L(R_1 + R_L)} t}$$

or

$$e = \frac{V_B \cdot R_1}{R_1 + R_L} e^{-(R_0/L)t} \qquad \text{...(4.30)}$$

where

$$R_0 = \frac{R_1 R_L}{R_1 + R_L}$$

Depending upon the values of $R_0$ and $L$, there are two functional modes of pulse transformer.

(*a*) If $L$ is so large as compared with $R_0$ that $\frac{L}{R_0} > 10\,T$, where $T$ is the pulse width (Fig. 4.67) of the input signal at $G$, then from Eq. (4.30),

$$e = V_B \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_L} e^{-(t/10\,T)}$$

For $t = 0$,

$$e_0 = V_B \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_L}$$

and for $t = T$, $$e_T = V_B \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_L} e^{-0.1} = 0.904\, V_B \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_L} = 0.904\, e_0$$

Thus the fall in the pulse level during the transmission through the pulse transformer at $t = T$ is very small. This shows that when $\frac{L}{R_0} > 10\,T$, the input pulse is faithfully transmitted as square pulse at the output terminals of pulse transformer as shown in Fig. 4.67 (*a*).

(*b*) If $R_0$ is so large as compared with $L$ that $\frac{L}{R_0} < \frac{T}{10}$, then from Eq. (4.30).

$$e = V_B \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_L} \cdot e^{-(10/T)\,t}$$

For $t = 0$, $$e_0 = V_B \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_L}$$

and for $t = T$, $$e_T = V_B \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_L} e^{-10} = 0.0000453 \cdot V_B \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_L} = 0.0000453\, e_0.$$

This shows that for $\frac{L}{R_0} < \frac{T}{10}$, the input pulse is transmitted in the form of exponentially decaying pulses as shown in Fig. 4.67 (*b*). It is seen that for a step rise in input voltage, the pulse transformer output is a positive pulse. In other words, the input signal is transmitted as a derivative of the input waveform for a step rise. Likewise, for a step fall in input voltage, a negative pulse appears at the pulse transformer output. Fig. 4.67 (*b*). The operation of the pulse transformer in this mode can be achieved by using a small value of $L$, *i.e.* by using an air core for the pulse transformer.

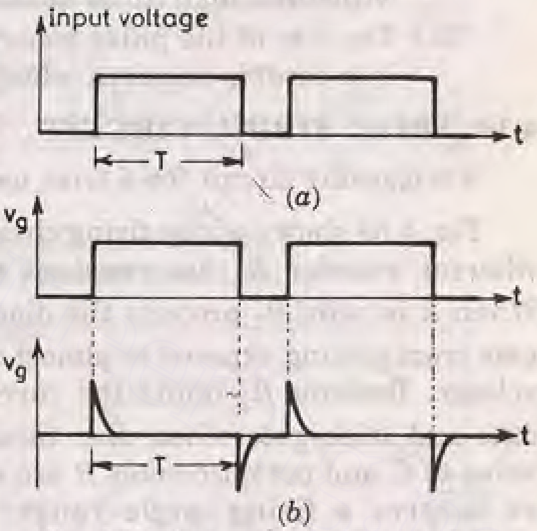


Fig. 4.67. Output voltage waveform of a pulse transformer for (*a*) $\frac{L}{R_0} > 10T$ and (*b*) $\frac{L}{R_0} < \frac{T}{10}$

It can thus be inferred from above that the deciding factor in the waveshape of the output pulses from a pulse transformer is its inductance. If the pulse transformer has large inductance, the pulses are faithfully reproduced and if the inductance is small, the pulses are exponentially decaying pulses.

The negative going pulses can be easily removed by using a clipper.

The amplitude of the trigger voltage at the secondary terminals of pulse transformer is

$$V_g = \frac{N_2}{N_1} \cdot V_B \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_L}$$

The magnitude of $V_B$ should be large enough to produce trigger voltage $V_{gt}$ at the gate circuit of SCR for its reliable turn on, *i.e.*

$$\frac{N_2}{N_1} \cdot \frac{V_B R_1}{R_1 + R_L} \geq V_{gt}$$

or
$$V_B \geq V_{gt}\frac{N_1}{N_2}\left(1+\frac{R_L}{R_1}\right)$$

But
$$R_1 = \left(\frac{N_1}{N_2}\right)^2 R_g$$

$$V_B \geq V_{gt}\frac{N_1}{N_2}\left[1+\left(\frac{N_2}{N_1}\right)^2 \frac{R_L}{R_g}\right] \qquad \text{...(4.31)}$$

In practice, exponentially decaying trigger pulses of Fig. 4.67 (*b*) are preferred due to the following reasons :

(*i*) This pulse waveform is suitable for injecting a large charge in the gate circuit for reliable turn on.

(*ii*) The duration of this pulse is small, therefore no significant heating of the gate circuit is observed.

(*iii*) For the same gate-cathode power, it is permissible to raise $V_B$ to a suitable high value so that a hard-drive of SCR is obtained. A device with a hard-drive can withstand high *di/dt* at the anode circuit which is desirable.

(*iv*) The size of the pulse transformer is reduced. For an extended pulse, large $L$ (with iron-core) is required which increases size and cost of the pulse transformer.

## 4.14. TRIAC FIRING CIRCUIT

A triggering circuit for a triac using a diac is discussed in this section.

Fig. 4.68 shows a triac firing circuit employing a diac. In this circuit, resistor $R$ is variable whereas resistor $R_1$ has constant resistance. When $R$ is zero, $R_1$ protects the diac and triac gate from getting exposed to almost full supply voltage. Resistor $R_2$ limits the current in the diac and triac gate when diac turns on. The value of $C$ and potentiometer $R$ are so selected as to give a firing angle range of nearly 0° and 180°. In practice, however, a triggering angle range of 10° to 170° is only possible by the firing circuit of Fig. 4.68.

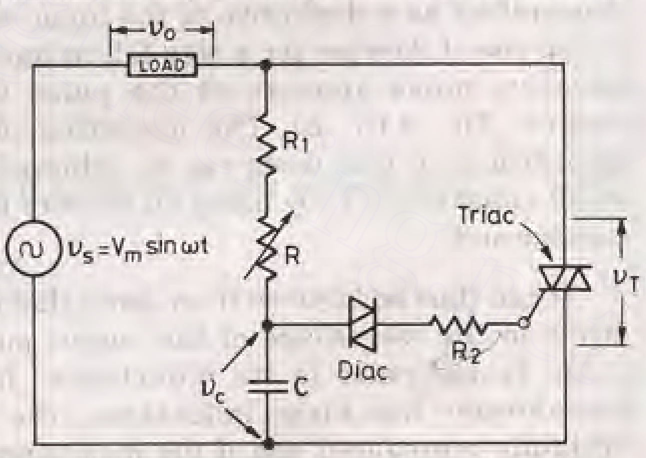
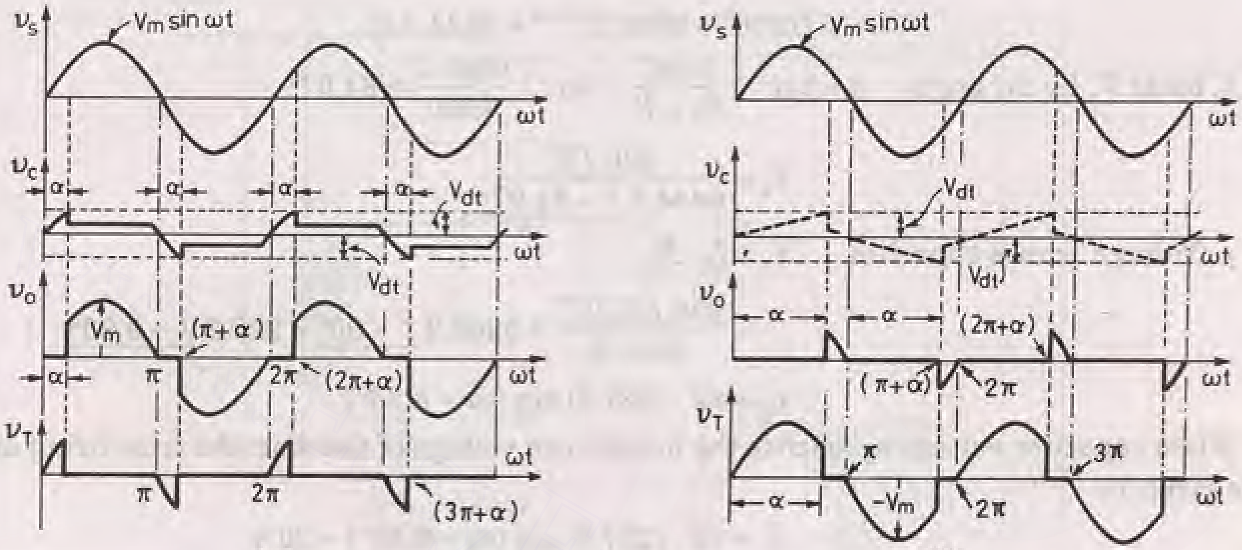


Fig. 4.68. Firing circuit for a triac using a diac.

Variable resistor $R$ controls the charging time of the capacitor $C$ and therefore the firing angle of the triac. When $R$ is small, the charging time constant, equal to $(R_1 + R)\,C$, is small. Therefore, source voltage charges capacitor $C$ to diac trigger voltage earlier and firing angle for triac is small. Likewise, when $R$ is high, firing angle of triac is large.

When capacitor $C$ (with upper plate positive) charges to breakdown voltage $V_{dt}$ of diac, diac turns on. As a consequence, capacitor discharges rapidly thereby applying capacitor voltage $v_c$ in the form of pulse across the triac gate to turn it on. After triac turn-on at firing angle $\alpha$, source voltage $v_s$ appears across the load during the positive half cycle for $(\pi - \alpha)$ radians. When $v_s$ becomes zero at $\omega t = \pi$, triac turns off. After $\omega t = \pi$, $v_s$ becomes negative, the capacitor $C$ now charges with lower plate positive. When $v_c$ reaches $V_{dt}$ of diac, diac and triac turn on and $v_s$ appears across the load during the negative half cycle for $(\pi - \alpha)$ radians. At $\omega t = 2\pi$, triac turns off again and the above process repeats.

The waveforms for $v_s$, $v_c$, $v_T$ and $v_0$ are shown in Fig. 4.69 (*a*) for minimum $R$ and in Fig. 4.69 (*b*) for maximum $R$. Here $v_s$ is the source voltage, $v_c$ is the voltage across capacitor, $v_T$ is the voltage across triac and $v_0$ is the output or load voltage. After triac turn-on, capacitor $C$ holds to a small positive voltage.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.69. Waveforms for triact firing circuit using a diac when (*a*) pot. $R$ adjusted to minimum and (*b*) pot. $R$ adjusted to maximum.

The waveforms shown in Fig. 4.69 are for ideal circuit components in Fig. 4.68. In fact, this circuit produces unsymmetrical waveform for the positive and negative half cycles of load voltage. This asymmetry is, to some extent, due to triac characteristics but it is mainly due to hysteresis present in the capacitor. This means that when $v_s$ is zero, $v_c$ is not zero. In other words, capacitor retains some charge of the initial voltage applied across its plates when source voltage falls to zero. The waveforms for positive and negative half cycles can, however, be made symmetrical if additional resistance $R_3$ and capacitor $C_1$ are employed as shown in Fig. 4.70. This circuit is commercially used for controlling the power in lamp dimmers, heat convertors, speed control of fans etc. For inductive loads, snubber circuit must be used across the triac.

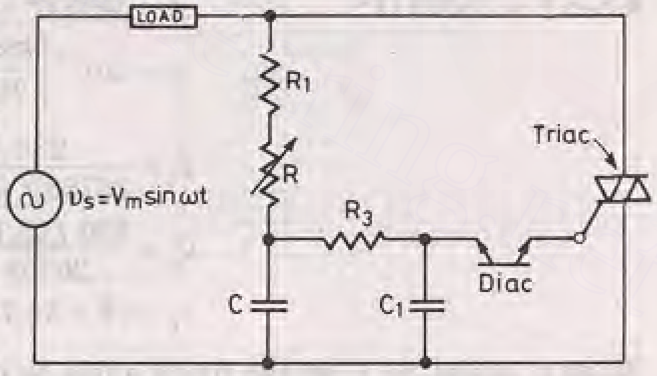


Fig. 4.70. Commercial triac firing circuit using a diac.

**Example 4.26.** *The firing circuit for a triac using a diac, Fig. 4.68, has the following data :*

$$R_1 = 1000\ \Omega, \quad R = \text{zero to } 25000\ \Omega, \quad C = 0.5\ \mu F,$$

$$V_s = 230\ V \text{ at } 50\ Hz, \quad \text{Diac breakdown voltage} = 30\ V.$$

*Find the magnitude of maximum and minimum firing-angle delays for the triac. The effect of load impedance may be neglected.*

**Solution.** When the diac is not conducting, the current through $R_1$, $R$ and $C$ is given by

$$I_1 = \frac{V_s}{Z} \quad \text{where} \quad Z = \left[ (R_1 + R)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{\omega C}\right)^2 \right]^{1/2}$$

*When* $R = 0$ :

$$Z = \left[ 1000^2 + \left( \frac{10^6}{2\pi \times 50 \times 0.5} \right)^2 \right]^{1/2}$$

$$= [1000^2 + 6366.2^2]^{1/2} = 6444.3\ \Omega$$

$I_1$ leads $V_s$ by an angle $\phi = \tan^{-1} \dfrac{1/\omega C}{R_1 + R} = \tan^{-1} \dfrac{6366.2}{1000} = 81.07°$

$\therefore$
$$\overline{I}_1 = \frac{230 \angle 0°}{6444.3 \angle -81.07°}$$

$\therefore$ Voltage across capacitor $\overline{V}_c = \overline{I}_1 \cdot \overline{X}_c$

$$= \frac{230 \angle 81.07°}{6444.3} \times 6366.2 \angle -90° = 227.2 \angle -8.93°$$

or
$$v_c = \sqrt{2} \cdot (227.2) \sin (\omega t - 8.93°)$$

When capacitor voltage $v_c$ reaches the breakdown voltage of the diac, the triac firing angle $\alpha_1$ is given by

$$v_c = \sqrt{2} \cdot (227.2) \sin (\alpha_1 - 8.93°) = 30\ \text{V}$$

or
$$\alpha_1 = \sin^{-1} \frac{30}{\sqrt{2} \times 227.2} + 8.93° = 14.3°$$

*When* $R = 25000\ \Omega$ :
$$Z = [26000^2 + 6366.2^2]^{1/2} = 26768\ \Omega$$

$$\phi = \tan^{-1} \left[ \frac{6366.2}{26000} \right] = 13.76°$$

$\therefore$
$$\overline{I}_1 = \frac{230 \angle 0°}{26768 \angle -13.76°}$$

$$\overline{V}_c = \frac{230 \angle 13.76°}{26768} \times 6366.2 \angle -90° = 54.7 \angle -76.24°$$

or
$$v_c = \sqrt{2} \times 54.7 \sin (\omega t - 76.24°)$$

When $v_c$ equal 30 V, let the firing angle be $\alpha_2$

$\therefore$
$$\sqrt{2} \times 54.7 \sin (\alpha_2 - 76.24°) = 30\ \text{V}$$

or
$$\alpha_2 = \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{30}{\sqrt{2} \times 54.7} \right) + 76.24° = 99.06°$$

Thus the maximum and minimum values of firing-angle delays are 99.06° and 14.3° respectively.

## 4.15. GATING CIRCUITS FOR SINGLE-PHASE CONVERTERS

A gate trigger circuit for thyristors in phase-controlled rectifiers should possess the following :

(*i*) A circuit for the detection of zero crossing of the input voltage.

(*ii*) Generation of trigger pulses of required waveshape.

(*iii*) DC power supply for pulse amplifier.

(*iv*) Gate trigger circuit isolation from the line potential by means of pulse transformers or optocouplers.

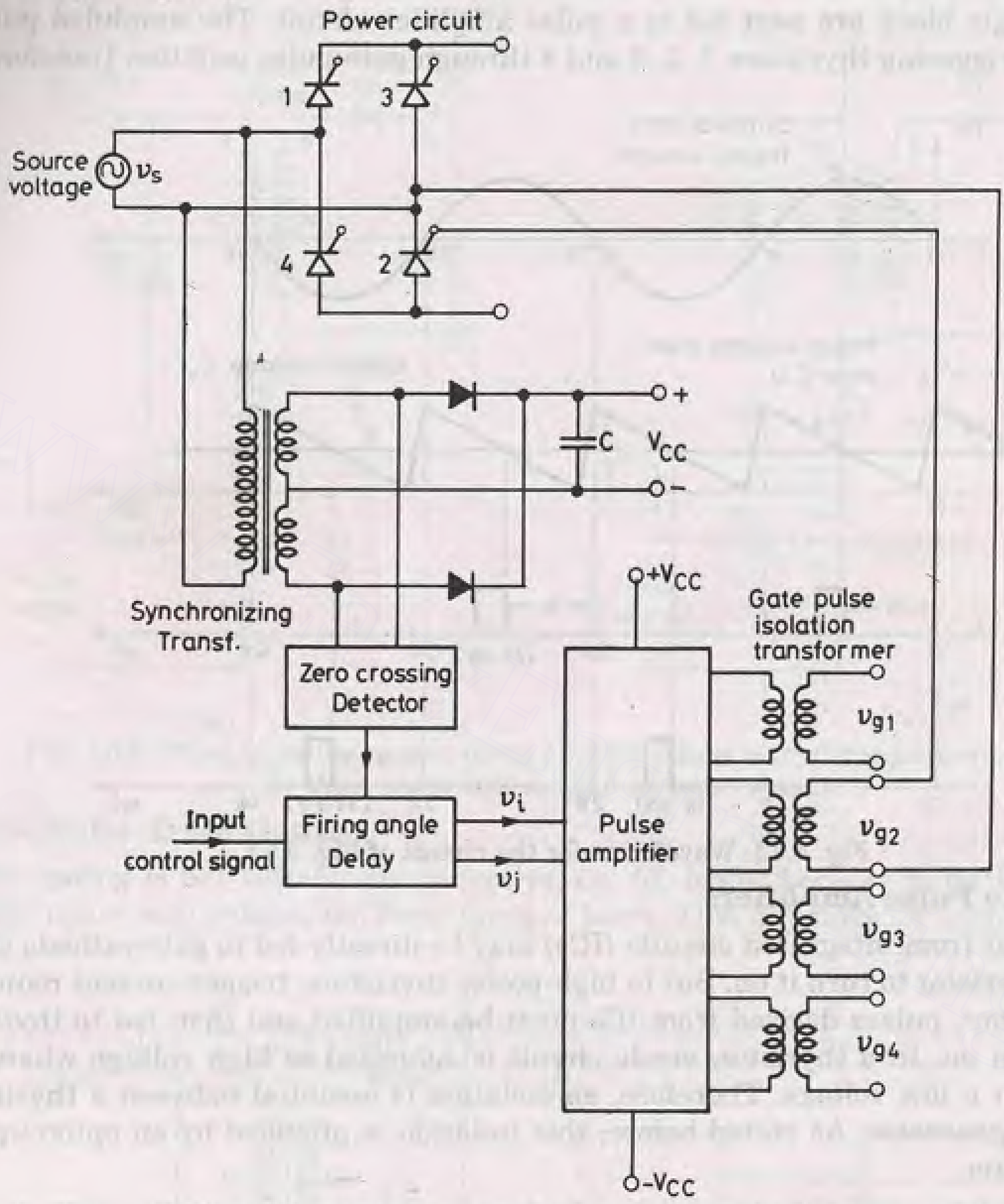


Fig. 4.71. Block diagram of a thyristor gating circuit.

A general block diagram for gate trigger circuit for single-phase converter is shown in Fig. 4.71. The gating circuit consists of synchronizing transformer, diode rectifier, zero crossing detector, firing-angle delay block, pulse amplifier, gate-pulse isolation transformer and power circuit for the converter.

Synchronizing mid-tapped transformer steps down the supply voltage suitable for zero crossing detector and for delivering dc supply $V_{CC}$ to gate trigger circuit. The zero crossing detector converts ac synchronizing input voltage into ramp voltage and synchronizes this ramp voltage with the zero crossing of the ac supply voltage as shown in Fig. 4.72. In the firing-angle delay block, the constant amplitude ramp voltage is compared with control voltage $E_C$. When rising ramp voltage equals control voltage $E_C$, a pulse signal of controlled duration is generated as shown in Fig. 4.72. These signals are indicated as $v_i$ for thyristors

1 and 2 and $v_j$ for thyristors 3 and 4 for the power circuit of Fig. 4.71. If $E_C$ is lowered, firing angle decreases and in case $E_C$ is raised, firing angle increases. This shows that firing-delay angle is directly proportional to the control signal voltage. The pulse output from the firing-delay angle block are next fed to a pulse amplifier circuit. The amplified pulses are then used for triggering thyristors 1, 2, 3 and 4 through gate-pulse isolation transformers as shown.

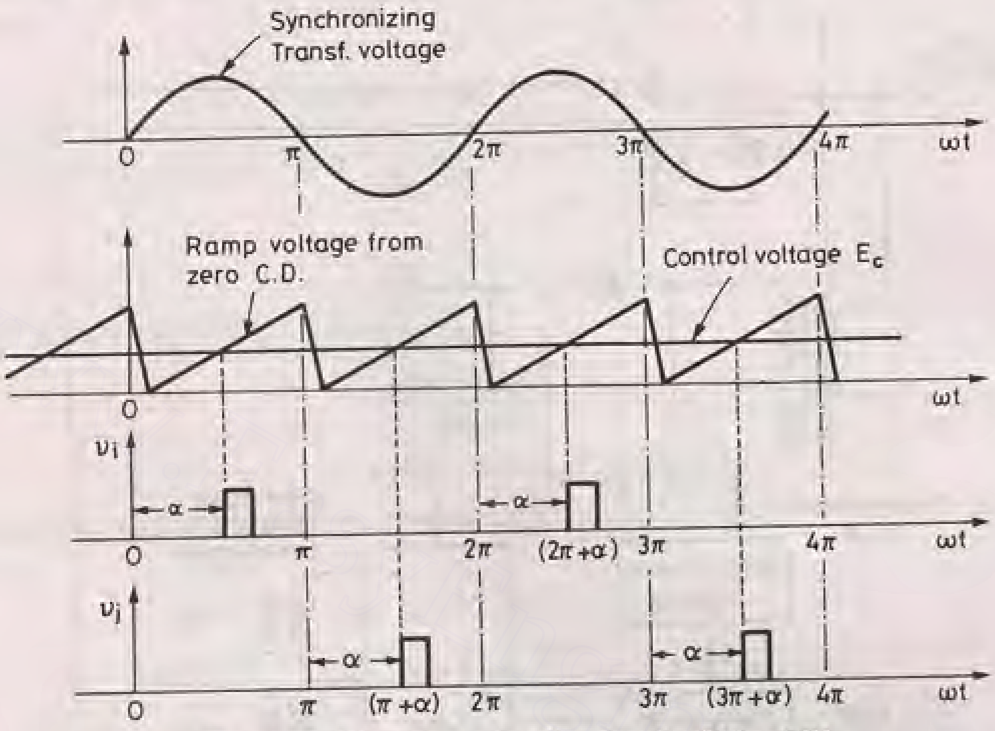
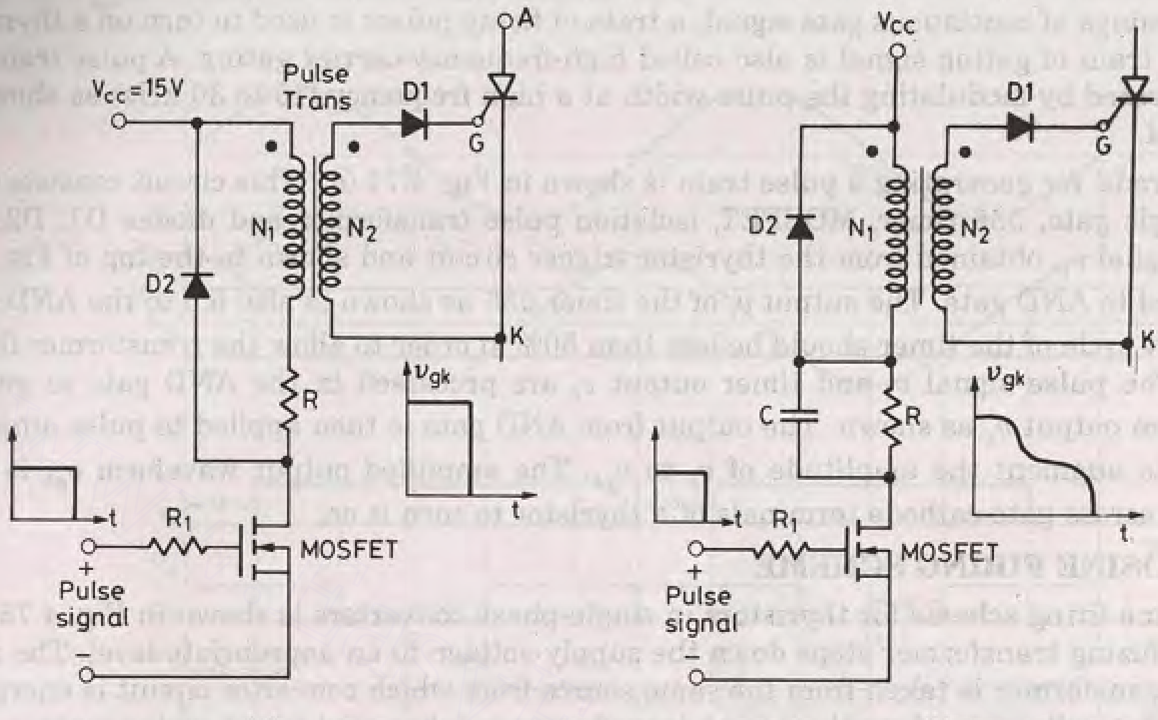


Fig. 4.72. Waveforms for the circuit of Fig. 4.71.

### 4.15.1. Gate Pulse Amplifiers

Pulse output from integrated circuits (ICs) may be directly fed to gate-cathode circuit of a low-power thyristor to turn it on. But in high-power thyristors, trigger-current requirement is high. Therefore, pulses derived from ICs must be amplified and then fed to thyristor for its reliable turn on. In a thyristor, anode circuit is subjected to high voltage whereas gate circuit works at a low voltage. Therefore, an isolation is essential between a thyristor and the gate-pulse generator. As stated before, this isolation is provided by an optocoupler or a pulse transformer.

A pulse-amplifier circuit for amplifying the input pulses is shown in Fig. 4.73. It consists of a MOSFET (or a transistor), a pulse transformer for isolation and diodes D1, D2. When a voltage of appropriate level is applied to the gate of MOSFET, it gets turned on. As a result, most of the dc voltage $V_{CC}$ appears across transformer primary and corresponding pulse voltage is induced in the transformer secondary. This amplified pulse on the secondary side is applied to gate and cathode of a thyristor to turn it on. When pulse signal applied to the gate of MOSFET goes to zero, MOSFET turns off. The primary current due to $V_{CC}$ tends to fall and likewise flux in core also tends to decrease. Due to this tendency, a voltage of opposite polarity is induced in both primary and secondary windings of pulse transformer. Diode D1 on the secondary side of pulse transformer prevents the flow of negative gate current due to the reverse secondary voltage when MOSFET is off. Reverse voltage in primary, however, forward biases diode D2 when MOSFET is off. Current flow is thus established in the circuit consisting of primary, $R$ and D2. As a consequence, energy in the transformer magnetic core gets dissipated in $R$ and the core flux gets reset. In case pulse width at the secondary terminals is to be increased, then a capacitor $C$ is connected across $R$ as shown in Fig. 4.73 (*b*).

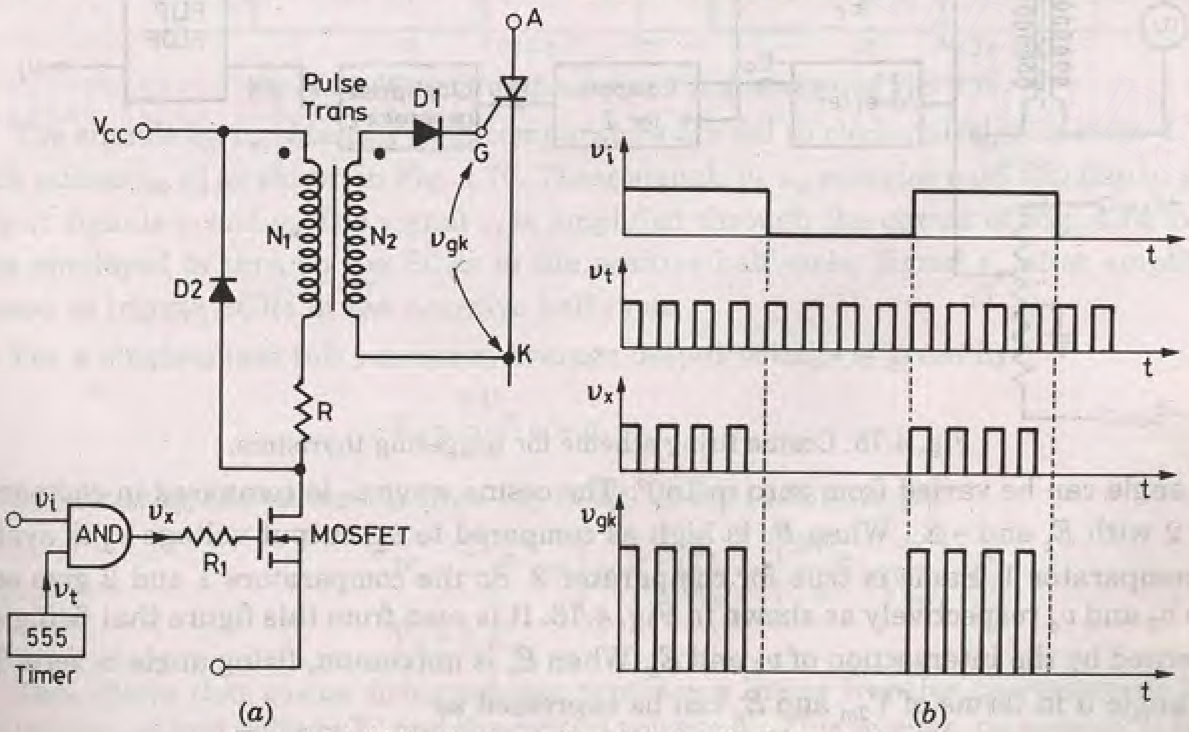


(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.73. Pulse amplifier circuit using a MOSFET for a thyristor trigger circuit (*a*) short-pulse output (*b*) long-pulse output.

### 4.15.2. Pulse Train Gating

Pulse gating is not suitable for inductive, *i.e.* *RL* loads, because initiation of thyristor conduction is not well defined for these types of loads. This difficulty for such situations can



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 4.74. Pulse train gating (*a*) circuit (*b*) waveforms.

be overcome by triggering the thyristor continuously. Continuous gating, however, suffers from some disadvantages like increased thyristor losses and distortion of output pulse due to saturation of pulse transformer by continuous pulse. In order to overcome these shortcomings of continuous gate signal, a train of firing pulses is used to turn on a thyristor. A pulse train of gating signal is also called high-frequency carrier gating. A pulse train can be generated by modulating the pulse width at a high frequency (10 to 30 kHz) as shown in Fig. 4.74.

A circuit for generating a pulse train is shown in Fig. 4.74 (*a*). This circuit consists of an AND-logic gate, 555 timer, MOSFET, isolation pulse transformer and diodes D1, D2. The pulse signal $v_i$, obtained from the thyristor trigger circuit and shown in the top of Fig. 4.74 (*b*), is fed to AND gate. The output $v_t$ of the timer 555 as shown is also fed to the AND gate. The duty cycle of the timer should be less than 50% in order to allow the transformer flux to reset. The pulse signal $v_i$ and timer output $v_t$ are processed in the AND gate to get the waveform output $v_x$ as shown. The output from AND gate is then applied to pulse amplifier circuit to augment the amplitude of $v_x$ to $v_{gk}$. The amplified output waveform $v_{gk}$ is then applied across gate-cathode terminals of a thyristor to turn it on.

## 4.16. COSINE FIRING SCHEME

Cosine firing scheme for thyristors in single-phase converters is shown in Fig. 4.75. The synchronizing transformer steps down the supply voltage to an appropriate level. The input to this transformer is taken from the same source from which converter circuit is energized. The output voltage $v_1$ of synchronizing transformer is integrated to get cosine-wave $v_2$. The dc control voltage $E_C$ varies from maximum positive $E_{cm}$ to maximum negative $E_{cm}$ so that

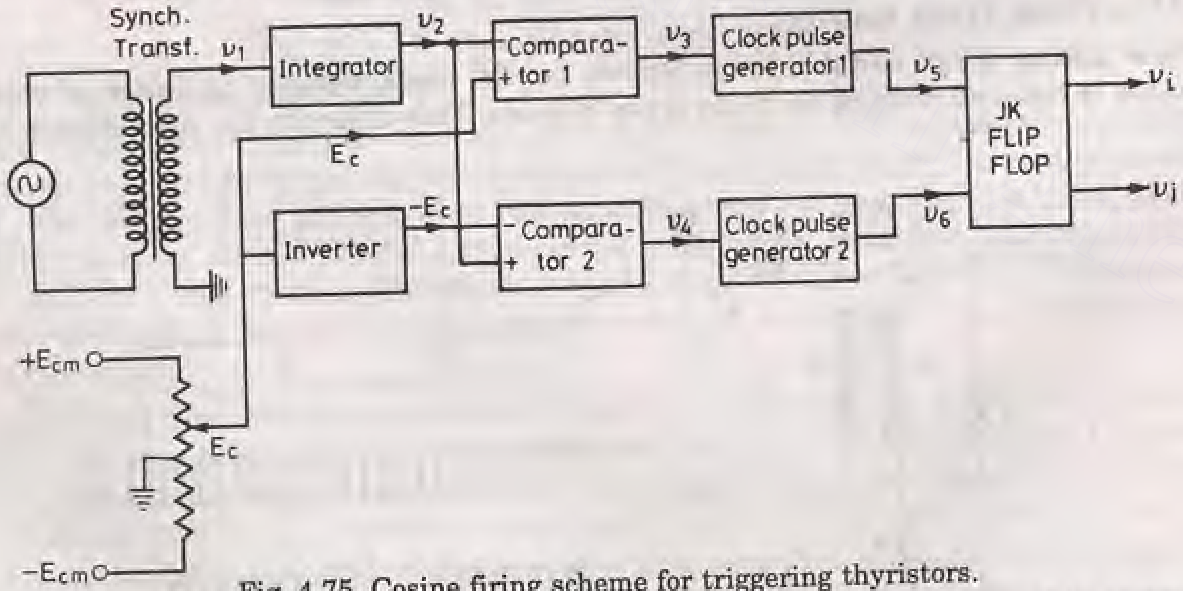


Fig. 4.75. Cosine firing scheme for triggering thyristors.

firing angle can be varied from zero to 180°. The cosine wave $v_2$ is compared in comparators 1 and 2 with $E_c$ and $-E_c$. When $E_c$ is high as compared to $v_2$, output voltage $v_3$ is available from comparator 1. Same is true for comparator 2. So the comparators 1 and 2 give output pulses $v_3$ and $v_4$ respectively as shown in Fig. 4.76. It is seen from this figure that firing angle is governed by the intersection of $v_2$ and $E_c$. When $E_c$ is maximum, firing angle is zero. Thus, firing angle α in terms of $V_{2m}$ and $E_c$ can be expressed as

$$V_{2m} \cos \alpha = E_c$$

or $$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{E_c}{V_{2m}}\right) \quad \text{...(4.32)}$$

where $V_{2m}$ = maximum value of cosine signal $v_2$.

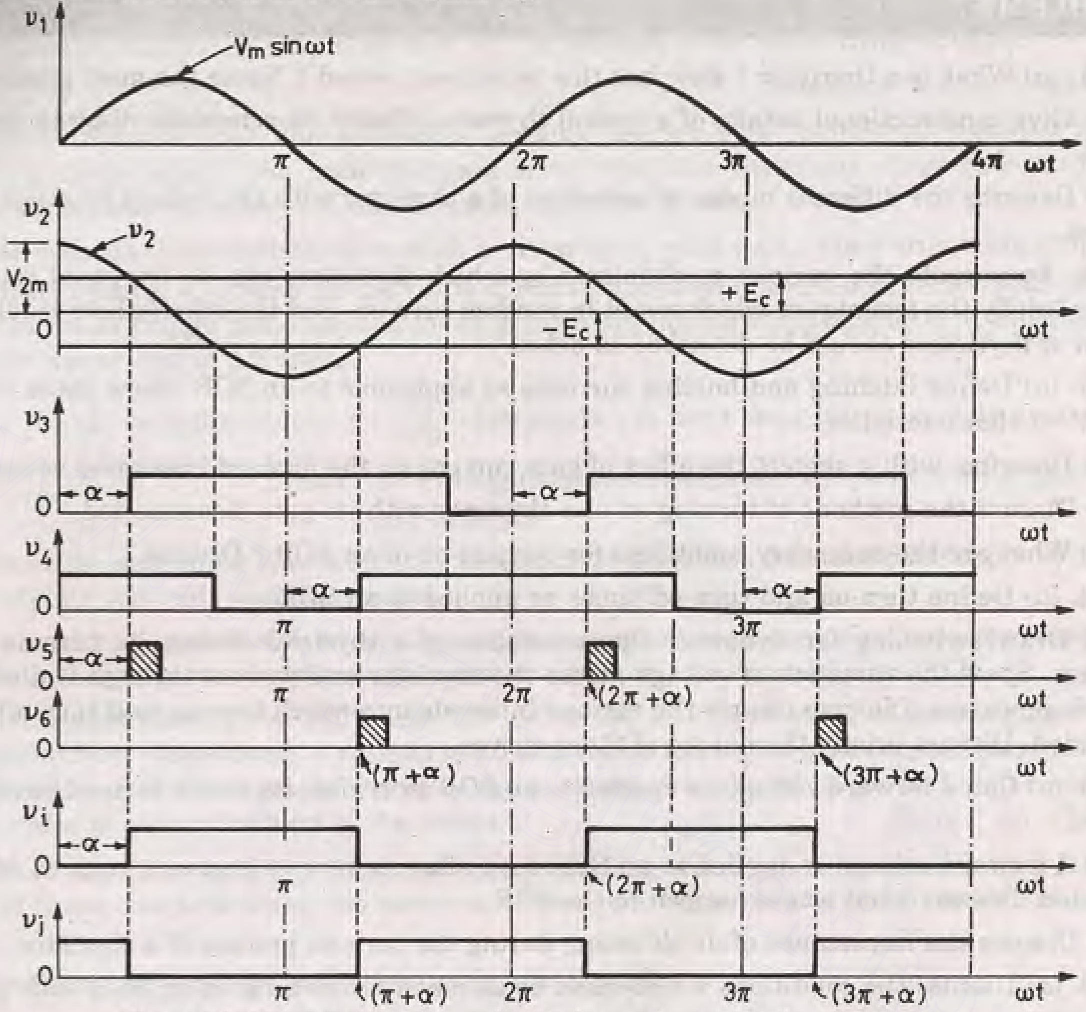


Fig. 4.76. Waveforms for cosine firing scheme of Fig. 4.75.

The signals $v_3$, $v_4$ obtained from comparators are fed to clock-pulse generators 1, 2 to get clock pulses $v_5$, $v_6$ as shown in Fig. 4.76. These signals $v_5$, $v_6$ energise a *JK* flip flop to generate output signals $v_i$ and $v_j$. The signal $v_i$ is amplified through the circuit of Fig. 4.74 (*a*) and is then employed to turn on the SCRs in the positive half cycle. Signal $v_j$, after amplification, is used to trigger SCRs in the negative half cycle.

For a single-phase full converter, average output voltage is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{2V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha \quad \text{...(4.33)}$$

Substituting the value of α from Eq. (4.32) in Eq. (4.33), we get

$$V_0 = \frac{2V_m}{\pi}\cos\left[\cos^{-1}\frac{E_c}{V_{2m}}\right] = \left[\frac{2V_m}{\pi}\cdot\frac{1}{V_{2m}}\right]\cdot E_c$$

$$V_0 = \text{k}\,E_c \quad \text{...(4.34)}$$

This shows that cosine firing scheme provides a linear transfer characteristic between the average output voltage $V_0$ and the control voltage $E_c$. This scheme, on account of its linear transfer characteristic, improves the closed-loop response of the converter system. This feature has made the cosine firing scheme quite popular in industrial applications.

## PROBLEMS

**4.1.** (*a*) What is a thyristor ? How has this term been coined ? Name the most popular thyristor.

(*b*) Give constructional details of a typical thyristor. Sketch its schematic diagram and the circuit symbol.

(*c*) Describe the different modes of operation of a thyristor with the help of its static $V-I$ characteristics.

**4.2.** Enumerate the various mechanisms by which thyristors can be triggered into conduction. Discuss briefly the techniques which result in random turn-on. But the other/others leading to reliable turn-on of thyristors should be described in detail.

**4.3.** (*a*) Define latching and holding currents as applicable to an SCR. Show these currents on its static $V-I$ characteristics.

(*b*) Describe, with a sketch, the effect of gate current on the forward breakover voltage of an SCR.

(*c*) Discuss the methods of turning-on of a thyristor with its gate disconnected.

(*d*) What are the necessary conditions for turning-on of an SCR ? Discuss.

**4.4.** (*a*) Define turn-on and turn-off times as applied to an SCR.

(*b*) Draw switching (or dynamic) characteristics of a thyristor during its turn-on and turn-off processes. Show the variation of voltage across the thyristor and current through it during these two dynamic processes. Indicate clearly the various intervals into which turn-on and turn-off times can be subdivided. Discuss briefly the nature of these curves.

**4.5.** (*a*) Can a forward voltage be applied to an SCR soon after its anode current has fallen to zero? Explain.

(*b*) A forward voltage is applied to an SCR soon after its reverse recovery current drops nearly to zero value. Discuss what would happen to the SCR.

(*c*) Discuss the importance of $di/dt$ rating during the turn-on process of a thyristor.

**4.6.** (*a*) Discuss the conditions which must be satisfied for turning on an SCR with a gate signal.

(*b*) A thyristor is conducting a forward current. Discuss the basic requirements for commutating (turning-off) this SCR.

(*c*) Bring out clearly how the anode current expands over the cathode surface area during turn-on process of a thyristor.

**4.7.** (*a*) Is turn-on time of an SCR constant ? On what factors does it depend ?

(*b*) Is turn-off time of a thyristor constant ? What factors influence its value ?

(*c*) An SCR, during its turn-on process, has the following data :

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Anode voltage* | 600 V | $v_T = 0$ V |
| *Anode current* | 0 A | 100 A |

During the turn-on time of 5 μs, the anode current and anode voltage vary linearly. If triggering frequency is 100 Hz, find the average power loss in the thyristor.

$\left[(c)\ \textbf{Hint.}\ :\ P_{av} = \frac{1}{6} I_1 V_1 t_1 f\right]$ **[Ans. :** (*c*) 5 Watts.]

**4.8.** (*a*) Justify the statement, "Higher the gate current, lower is the forward breakover voltage".

(*b*) What is hard-driving for a thyristor ? What are its advantages ? Draw a typical waveform for gate current for a thyristor.

(*c*) For an SCR, the gate-cathode characteristic is given by a straight line with a gradient of 20 volts per ampere passing through origin. The maximum turn-on time is 4 μs and the minimum gate current required to quick turn-on is 400 mA. If the gate source voltage is 15 V, calculate the resistance to be connected in series and the gate-power dissipation.

Given that pulse width is equal to the turn-on time and the average power dissipation is 0.2 W, compute the maximum triggering frequency that will be possible when pulse firing is used.

[**Ans :** (*c*) 17.5 Ω, 15.625 kHz]

**4.9.** (*a*) Draw thyristor gate characteristics showing the six gate ratings as specified by the manufacturers. Indicate clearly the preferred gate drive area. Are there any other gate ratings in addition to the six mentioned above ? If yes, describe this/these briefly.

(*b*) The gate-cathode characteristic of an SCR is given by $V_g = 0.5 + 8\,I_g$. For a triggering frequency of 400 Hz and duty cycle of 0.1, compute the value of resistance to be connected in series with the gate circuit. The rectangular trigger pulse applied to the gate circuit has an amplitude of 12 V. The thyristor has average gate-power loss of 0.5 watts.

$$\left[\textbf{Hint:}\ (b)\ S = \frac{T}{T_1} \text{ or pulse width, } T = \frac{0.1}{400} = 250\ \mu\text{s. As T is more than } 100\ \mu\text{s, dc data apply}\right]$$

[**Ans :** (*a*) Peak gate–power dissipation and peak reverse gate voltage
(*b*) 44.23 Ω]

**4.10.** (*a*) Draw the gate input characteristics of a batch of thyristors indicating the upper and lower limit loci and explain why this variation exists.

(*b*) Draw the circuit model of a triggering circuit connected to the gate-cathode terminals of a thyristor. Explain the purpose of connecting a resistor across the gate circuit of an SCR.

(*c*) A thyristor data sheet gives 1.5 V and 100 mA as the minimum value of gate-trigger voltage and gate-trigger current respectively. A resistor of 20 Ω is connected across gate-cathode terminals. For a trigger supply voltage of 8 V, compute the value of resistance that should be connected in series with gate circuit in order to ensure turn-on of the device. [**Ans :** (*b*) 37.143 Ω]

**4.11.** (*a*) Draw thyristor gate *V–I* characteristics indicating clearly the gate drive limits. Explain, with the help of these characteristics, the selection of an operating point and the choice of gate circuit parameters.

Discuss also how turn-on time and jitter can be minimised.

(*b*) In case gating signal for an SCR consists of a train of pulses instead of continuous dc signal, explain how the frequency of triggering and other factors are decided.

(*c*) A thyristor is triggered by a train of pulses of frequency 4 kHz and of duty cycle 0.2. Calculate the pulse width. In case average gate power dissipation is 1 W, find the maximum allowable gate power drive. [**Ans :** (*c*) 50 μs, 5 W]

**4.12.** (*a*) Discuss the function of connecting a

- (*i*) diode across gate-cathode terminals,
- (*ii*) diode in series with gate circuit,
- (*iii*) a resistor across gate-cathode terminals.

(*b*) How are the magnitudes of gate-voltage and gate-current influenced by temperature rise in a thyristor ?

(*c*) During turn-off of a thyristor, idealized voltage and current waveforms are shown in Fig. 4.77. For a triggering frequency of 50 Hz, find the mean power loss due to turn-off loss.

Also obtain the reversed recovery charge.

$$\left[\textbf{Hint:}\ (c)\ P_a = \frac{1}{3} f\, V I_{t1}\right]$$

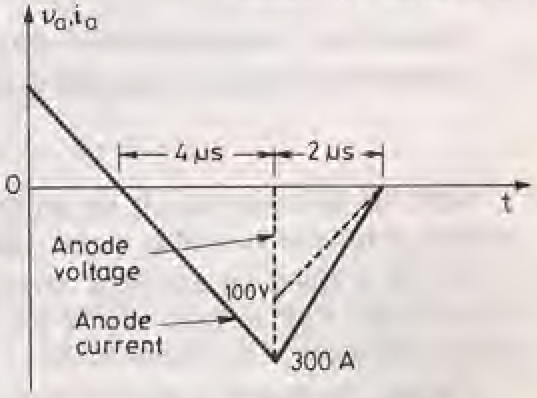


Fig. 4.77. Pertaining to Prob. 4.12.

[**Ans :** (*c*) 1W, 900 μC]

**4.13.** (*a*) Discuss the two-transistor model of a thyristor. Using this model, describe the various mechanisms of turning-on a thyristor.

(*b*) Enumerate the operational differences between thyristor-family of devices and the transistor-family of devices.

**4.14.** (*a*) Which current rating of an SCR is the most important ?

(*b*) What is the difference between repetitive-current and surge-current ratings of a thyristor ?

(*c*) What are $V_{DRM}$ and $V_{RRM}$ ? Are these ratings different from each other for a thyristor ?

(*d*) Is it possible to exceed rms current rating of an SCR?

(*e*) What are $V_{DWM}$ and $V_{DRM}$ ? Which rating is low ?

(*f*) An SCR has maximum rms current rating of 78.5 A. Find its maximum average current rating.

[**Ans :** (*a*) Rms current (*c*) $V_{DRM} = V_{RRM}$ (*d*) No (*e*) $V_{DWM}$ is low (*f*) 50 A]

**4.15.** (*a*) Describe the various anode voltage ratings as applicable to an SCR. Indicate these voltage ratings on a relevant voltage waveform.

(*b*) Discuss the significance of $dv/dt$ in case of thyristors.

(*c*) Explain why an SCR is derated when it handles pulsed anode current as compared to its rating for constant dc current.

(*d*) The average current rating of an SCR decreases as its conduction angle is reduced. Explain.

**4.16.** (*a*) The derating of an SCR is more for sine waves than for the square (or rectangular) waves. Explain.

Sketch the curves showing average power dissipation as a function of average forward current for different conduction angles for both sine and square waves.

(*b*) What is the effect on average current rating of an SCR in case inductance is inserted in the anode circuit ? Discuss.

(*c*) The specification sheet for an SCR gives maximum rms on-state current as 50 A. If this SCR is used in a resistive circuit, compute its average on-state current rating for conduction angles of 30° and 60° in case current waveform is (*i*) half-sine wave and (*ii*) rectangular wave.

[**Ans :** (*c*) 30° (*i*) 12.56 A (*ii*) 14.434 A ; 60° (*i*) 18.00 A (*ii*) 20.412 A]

**4.17.** (*a*) If a forward voltage is applied to an SCR which is below its breakover voltage, it may well switch on, particularly if the voltage is applied rapidly. Explain why this is so.

Discuss how the effect mentioned above can be minimized.

(*b*) A thyristor is placed between a constant dc voltage source of 240 V and resistive load *R*. The specified limits for $di/dt$ and $dv/dt$ for the SCR are 60 A/microsecond and 300 V/microsecond respectively. Determine the values of the $di/dt$ inductor and the snubber circuit parameters. Take damping ratio as 0.5.

Discuss how these parameters may be modified to suit the working conditions in the circuit.

Derive the various expressions used.

[**Ans :** (*b*) Computed values : 4 μH, 5 Ω, 0.16 μF
modified values : 6.4 μH, 8 Ω, 0.12 μF]

**4.18.** (*a*) Snubber circuit for an SCR should primarily consist of capacitor only. But, in actual practice, a resistor is used in series with the capacitor. Discuss.

(*b*) *R*, *L* and *C* in an SCR circuit meant for protecting against $dv/dt$ and $di/dt$ are 4 Ω, 6 μH and 6 μF respectively. If the supply voltage to the circuit is 300 V, calculate permissible maximum values of $dv/dt$ and $di/dt$.

[**Hint :** (*b*) Rate of change of voltage across the thyristor at $t = 0$ when the supply is switched on is given by

$\frac{dv_a}{dt} = R_s \frac{di}{dt} + \frac{I_{sc}}{C}$ where $I_{sc} = \frac{V_s}{R_s} = \frac{300}{4} = 75$ A etc] [**Ans :** (*b*) 50 A/μs, 212.5 V/μs]

**4.19.** Following are the specifications of a thyristor operating from a peak supply of 500V:

Repetitive peak current, $I_p = 250$ A

$$\left(\frac{di}{dt}\right)_{max} = 60 \text{ A/μs}, \quad \left(\frac{dv_a}{dt}\right)_{max} = 200 \text{ V/μs}$$

Take a factor of safety of 2 for the three specifications mentioned above. Design a suitable snubber circuit if the minimum load resistance is 20 Ω. Take $\xi = 0.65$. [**Ans :** 17 μH, 6 Ω, 0.5 μF ]

**4.20.** (*a*) Discuss how a thyristor may be subjected to internal and external overvoltages. Describe the methods adopted for suppressing such overvoltages in thyristor systems.

(*b*) During the turn-off process in a thyristor, the reverse recovery current of 10 A is interrupted in a time interval of 4 μs. The thyristor is connected in series with an inductance of 6 mH with no resistance in the circuit. If the source voltage during turn-off process is – 300 V, calculate

(*i*) peak voltage across the thyristor when reverse current is interrupted and

(*ii*) the value of snubber circuit resistance in case snubber capacitance $C_s = 0.3$ μF and damping ratio is 0.65. [**Ans :** (*b*) – 15.3 kV, 183.85 Ω]

**4.21.** (*a*) Explain the methods adopted for the protection of SCRs against overcurrents.

(*b*) A thyristor, having maximum rms on-state current of 45 A, is used in a resistive circuit. Compute its average on-state current rating for half-sine wave for conduction angles of $\frac{\pi}{3}$ and $\pi/2$.

[**Ans :** (*b*) 16.198 A, 20.26 A]

**4.22.** (*a*) Describe electronic crowbar protection scheme employed for the overcurrent protection of power converters.

(*b*) Draw a circuit diagram illustrating the protection of both anode and gate circuits of an SCR. Describe briefly the function of various components used.

**4.23.** (*a*) Enumerate the various abnormal conditions against which thyristors must be protected.

(*b*) Describe the significance of *di/dt* and *dv/dt* in SCRs.

(*c*) Describe, with the help of a circuit diagram, the function of various components used for the protection of gate circuit of a thyristor.

**4.24.** (*a*) Discuss briefly the different components of power loss that occur in a thyristor during its working. Which of the power loss component / components is / are dominant at power frequencies and which at high frequencies ?

(*b*) Give the concept of thermal resistance. Describe the analogy between thermal and electrical quantities.

(*c*) Draw the thermal equivalent circuit for an SCR and discuss the various parameters involved in it.

(*d*) Describe any one method of designing the heat sinks for thyristors.

**4.25.** (*a*) For thyristors, various mounting techniques are based on their thermal considerations. Discuss these mounting techniques with relevant diagrams.

(*b*) A thyristor is rated to carry full-load current with an allowable case temperature of 100°*C*, for maximum allowable junction temperature of 125°C and thermal resistance between case and ambient as 0.5°C/W. Find the sink temperature for an ambient temperature of 40°C. Take thermal resistance between sink and ambient as 0.4°C/W. [**Ans :** (*b*) 88°*C*]

**4.26.** A thyristor is rated to carry an rms current of 100 A. Its maximum allowable junction temperature is 125°C.

(*a*) If this thyristor is made to carry direct current continuously, find the maximum allowable current rating of the SCR.

(*b*) If this SCR is used in a single-phase half-wave circuit with resistive load, find the maximum allowable average current for firing angles of $\alpha_1 = 30°$ and $\alpha_2 = 120°$.

(*c*) For part (*b*), determine the sink temperatures if average powers dissipated are 200 W for $\alpha_1$ and 150 W for $\alpha_2$. The value of thermal impedances are :

$$\theta_{jc} = 0.15° \text{ C/W}, \ \theta_{cs} = 0.07°\text{C/W for } \alpha_1$$

and

$$\theta_{jc} = 0.16°\text{C/W}, \ \theta_{cs} = 0.08°\text{C/W for } \alpha_2.$$

[**Ans :** (*a*) 100 A (*b*) 60.273 A, 25.118 A (*c*) 81°C and 89°C]

**4.27.** A thyristor string is made up of a number of SCRs connected in series and parallel. The string has voltage and current ratings of 11 kV and 4 kA respectively. The voltage and current ratings of available SCRs are 1800 V and 1000 A respectively. For a string efficiency of 90%, calculate the number of series and parallel connected SCRs.

For these SCRs, maximum off-state blocking current is 12 mA. Determine the value of static equalizing resistance for the string. Derive the formula used for this resistance.

[**Ans :** Series–7, Parallel–5, $R = 22.22$ kΩ]

**4.28.** For the thyristors of Prob. 4.27, maximum difference in their reverse recovery charge is 25 microcoulombs. Compute the value of dynamic equalizing capacitance of this string. Derive the formula used for the computation of this capacitance. [**Ans :** $C = 0.094$ μF]

**4.29.** Three series-connected thyristors, provided with static and dynamic equalizing circuits, have to withstand an off-state voltage of 8 kV. The static equalizing resistance is 8 kΩ and the dynamic equalizing circuit has $R_c = 40$ Ω and $C = 0.06$ μF. These three thyristors have leakage currents of 25 mA, 23 mA and 22 mA respectively. Determine voltage across each SCR in the off-state and the discharge current of each capacitor at the time of turn on. [**Ans :** 2500 V, 2540 V, 2560 V; 62.5 A, 63.5 A, 64A]

**4.30.** In a power circuit, four SCRs are to be connected in series. Permissible difference in blocking voltage is 20 V for a maximum difference in their blocking currents of 1 mA. Difference in recovery charge is 10 μC. Design suitable equalizing circuit.

[**Ans :** Static equalizing resistance = 20 kΩ; shunt capacitance = 0.5 μF]

**4.31.** (*a*) Discuss how SCRs suffer from unequal voltage distribution across them during their turn-on and turn-off processes.

(*b*) A number of SCRs, each with a rating of 2000 V and 50 A, are to be used in series-parallel combination in a circuit to handle 11 kV and 400 A. For a derating factor of 0.15, calculate the number of SCRs in series and parallel units.

The maximum difference in their reverse recovery charge is 20 microcoulombs. Calculate (*i*) the value of dynamic equalizing capacitance and (*ii*) the voltage across each of the slow thyristors in case one series-connected SCR is fast. [**Ans :** (*b*) $n_s = 7$, $n_p = 10$, $C = 0.04$ μF, 1500 V]

**4.32.** Define string efficiency for series / parallel connected SCRs. Show that string efficiency of two series connected SCRs is usually less than one.

Derive an expression for the resistance used for static voltage equalization for a series connected string.

**4.33.** Describe how two series connected SCRs are subjected to unequal voltage distribution during their dynamic conditions. Derive an expression for capacitance $C$ used in the dynamic equalizing circuit for $n$ series connected SCRs.

**4.34.** Show that string efficiency for two parallel connected SCRs is usually less than one.

Discuss the problems associated with the parallel operation of SCRs and how these are overcome.

**4.35.** (*a*) Describe briefly the following members of thyristor family.

PUT, SUS, SCS, SITH

Illustrate your answer with suitable diagrams.

(*b*) Draw the cross-sectional view of the diac and explain how it can conduct in both the directions.

(*c*) Give the cross-sectional view of a triac and explain its turn-on process with relevant diagrams. Hence show that a triac is rarely operated in first quadrant with negative gate current and in third quadrant with positive gate current.

**4.36.** (*a*) Describe LASCR. Give its industrial applications.

(*b*) Discuss how a triac may sometimes operate in the rectifier mode.

(*c*) Enumerate the advantages of ASCR and RCT over conventional thyristors.

**4.37.** (*a*) How does a GTO differ from a conventional thyristor. Give its circuit symbol and static $V-I$ characteristics. Under what conditions, it may work as a low gain transistor ?

(*b*) Discuss the turn-off process in a GTO with the help of appropriate voltage and current waveforms.

(*c*) Give the merits and demerits of a GTO as compared to a conventional thyristor.

**4.38.** (*a*) Discuss the features that the firing circuits for thyristors should possess.

Give the general layout of a firing circuit scheme and explain the function of various components used in it.

(*b*) Describe the resistance firing circuit used for triggering SCRs. Is it possible to get a firing angle greater than 90° with resistance firing ? Illustrate your answer with appropriate waveforms.

**4.39.** (*a*) For resistance firing circuits show that firing-delay angle is proportional to the variable resistance.

(*b*) Resistance firing circuit is used for triggering an SCR in a laboratory. This SCR is destroyed by a batch of students inadvertently.

A new SCR with the same specification number is installed. But it is found that maximum firing angle attained is 75° only. Explain how the desired maximum firing angle of 90° can be obtained.

[**Ans :** (*b*) Increase $R_1$ or $R_2$ or else decrease $R$ in Fig. 4.53]

**4.40.** (*a*) Draw *RC* half-wave trigger circuit for one SCR and discuss the function of the various components used.

Describe, with the help of waveforms, how the output voltage is controlled by varying the resistance. Draw the voltage waveform across SCR also.

(*b*) Describe *RC* full-wave trigger circuit for one SCR when the load is (*i*) ac type (*ii*) dc type. Relevant diagrams and waveforms should be drawn to illustrate your answer.

**4.41.** (*a*) Compare an UJT firing circuit with *R* and *RC* firing circuits.

(*b*) A unijunction transistor, used in relaxation oscillator, has the following data :

$$\eta = 0.67,\ I_v = 10 \text{ mA},\ V_v = 2.5 \text{ V},\ I_p = 15\ \mu\text{A}$$

An oscillator, with an oscillation frequency of 1 kHz, is to be designed by using this UJT. Compute the values of charging resistor and external resistors needed in the base circuits. Take $C = 0.4\ \mu\text{F}$ and forward-voltage drop of $E - B_1$ junction as 0.5 V. Source voltage is 24 V dc and triggering pulse width is 50 μs. [**Ans :** (*b*) $R = 2.772\text{ k}\Omega$, $R_{max} = 495\text{ k}\Omega$, $R_{min} = 2.15\text{ k}\Omega$, $R_2 = 621.9\ \Omega$, $R_1 = 125\ \Omega$]

**4.42.** (*a*) Explain the working of an oscillator employing an UJT. Derive expressions for the frequency of triggering and firing angle delay in terms of eta, charging resistance etc.

(*b*) A relaxation oscillator, using an UJT, is to be designed for triggering an SCR. The UJT has the following data :

$$\eta = 0.7,\ I_p = 0.5 \text{ mA},\ V_p = 15.0 \text{ V},\ V_v = 0.8 \text{ V},\ I_v = 2 \text{ mA},\ R_{BB} = 6\text{ k}\Omega.$$

Normal leakage current with emitter open = 3 mA.

The firing frequency is 1.5 kHz. For $C = 0.05\ \mu F$, compute the values of charging resistor and the external resistors connected in the base circuits. Take forward-voltage drop of $E - B_1$ junction as zero.

(*c*) If the frequency of firing the SCR in part (*b*) is changed by varying charging resistor $R$, obtain the maximum and minimum values of $R$ and the corresponding frequencies.

[**Ans :** (*b*) $11.074\ k\Omega$, $476.66\ \Omega$, $666.67\ \Omega$
(*c*) $12.858\ k\Omega$, $10.315\ k\Omega$, 1.292 kHz, 1.611 kHz]

**4.43.** (*a*) The intrinsic stand-off ratio for an UJT is 0.65. Its interbase resistance is $10\ k\Omega$. Calculate the values of the interbase resistances.

(*b*) Estimate the minimum and maximum values of charging resistor in the UJT oscillator circuit for manual trigger-angle control of $\alpha$ between 20° and 160° for 50 Hz supply. Assume $C = 0.4\ \mu F$ and $\eta = 0.7$. [**Ans :** (*a*) $6.5\ k\Omega$, $3.5\ k\Omega$, (*b*) $2.307\ k\Omega$, $18.457\ k\Omega$]

**4.44.** (*a*) Draw and explain the working of an UJT oscillator. Discuss how the amplitude of output voltage pulse can be estimated in this oscillator.

(*b*) Using a 15-V supply to an UJT, design the oscillator circuit for a frequency of 5 kHz. Data for UJT is as under :

$$\eta = 0.65 \text{ to } 0.75, \quad R_{BB} = 4.7 \text{ to } 9.1\ k\Omega$$

Take $C = 0.04\ \mu F$. Missing data may be assumed.

[**Hint :** (*b*) Assume leakage current = 1.88 mA]

[**Ans :** (*b*) $R = 4.153\ k\Omega$, $R_2 = 952.4\ \Omega$, $R_1 = 126.3\ \Omega$, $R_{max} = 6\ k\Omega$,
$R_{min} = 3\ k\Omega$, $f_{min} = 3460.8$ Hz, $f_{max} = 6921.6$ Hz]

**4.45.** Draw synchronized UJT trigger circuit using a zener diode.

Describe it briefly with relevant voltage and current waveforms.

Explain how synchronization of the trigger circuit with the supply voltage across SCR is achieved. In case charging resistor is small so that the capacitor voltage reaches UJT threshold voltage twice in each half cycle, explain how the circuit operation is influenced.

**4.46.** (*a*) Draw a circuit diagram for the ramp-and-pedestal trigger circuit used for a single-phase semiconverter. Describe its operation with appropriate waveforms.

For this trigger circuit, derive expressions for the frequency of triggering and firing-angle delay in terms of eta, charging resistor etc.

(*b*) A firing circuit, using ramp-and-pedestal triggering scheme, has the following data :

Charging resistor = $4\ k\Omega$, charging capacitor = $0.2\ \mu F$, supply
frequency = 50 Hz, $\eta = 0.75$, zener–diode voltage = 15 V.

Compute the magnitude of firing angle in case pedestal voltage is (*i*) zero and (*ii*) 4 V.

[**Ans :** (*b*) (*i*) 19.963° (*ii*) 15.496°]

**4.47.** (*a*) Describe the use of pulse transformer in the triggering of SCRs and GTOs. With a suitable circuit, discuss the conditions under which the input pulse is faithfully transmitted or is transmitted in the form of exponentially decaying pulse. Which of these two functional modes is preferred and why?

(*b*) The primary of a pulse transformer is connected in series with a transistor and a current limiting resistor $R_L$. The data for the triggering circuit is as under :

$R_L = 500\ \Omega$, gate to cathode resistance = $200\ \Omega$

Primary to secondary turns ratio = $\frac{1}{2}$, voltage required to trigger the SCR = 3 V.

Compute the voltage applied to the circuit consisting of transformer primary, $R_L$ etc. Derive the expression used. [**Ans :** (*b*) 16.5 V]

**4.48.** (*a*) Describe the trigger circuit for a triac using a diac.

(*b*) A diac with a breakdown voltage of 35 V, Fig. 4.68, is used for triggering a triac. This circuit has $R_1 = 1000\ \Omega$, $R =$ zero to $280\ \text{k}\ \Omega$ and $C = 0.1\ \mu\text{F}$. For a supply voltage of 230 V, 50 Hz ; calculate the maximum and minimum values of firing-delay angles for the triac. The effect of load impedance may be neglected.
[**Ans :** (*b*) 156.5°, 7.98°]

**4.49.** (*a*) Describe a gate trigger circuit for a single-phase full converter. Discuss how the adjustment of control voltage varies the firing-delay angle.

(*b*) Describe a gate-pulse amplifier using a MOSFET.

**4.50.** (*a*) Why pulse-train gating is preferred over pulse gating ? Explain, with relevant circuit and waveforms, the pulse-train gating of SCRs.

(*b*) Why is the cosine-firing scheme so popular ? Describe a cosine-firing scheme for the triggering of thyristors.

# FIVE

# Thyristor Commutation Techniques

A thyristor is turned on by applying a signal to its gate-cathode circuit. For the purpose of power control or power conditioning, a conducting thyristor must be turned-off as desired. As stated before, the turn-off of a thyristor means bringing the device from forward-conduction state to forward-blocking state. The thyristor turn-off requires that (*i*) its anode current falls below the holding current and (*ii*) a reverse voltage is applied to thyristor for a sufficient time to enable it to recover to blocking state, *Commutation* is defined as the process of turning-off a thyristor. Once thyristor starts conducting, gate loses control over the device, therefore, external means may have to be adopted to commutate the thyristor. Several commutation techniques have been developed with the sole objective of reducing their turn-off (or commutation) time.

The use of thyristor circuits in low-power converters has declined relatively. This is because of recent advances in semiconductor power devices leading to the availability of power transistors, GTOs and IGBTs. However, for high-voltage and high-current applications above about 1 kV and 0.5 kA, thyristor circuits offer popular circuit configurations.

The classification of thyristor commutation techniques, as reported by various authors, is not the same. Here, an attempt is made to refer to all these classification techniques. Primarily, the classification of commutation techniques is based on the manner in which anode current is reduced to zero and on the configuration of the commutating circuits.

Thyristor commutation techniques use resonant $LC$, or underdamped $RLC$ circuits, to force the current and / or voltage of a thyristor to zero to turn off the device. Several power-electronic converters employ the circuit configurations used for describing the thyristor commutation techniques. Therefore, a study of the various commutation techniques serves as an introduction and leads to a better understanding of the transient phenomena occuring in power-electronic converters under switching conditions.

The various commutation techniques are now described in this chapter.

## 5.1. CLASS A COMMUTATION : LOAD COMMUTATION

For achieving load commutation of a thyristor, the commutating components $L$ and $C$ are connected as shown in Fig. 5.1. Here $R$ is the load resistance. For low value of $R$, $L$ and $C$ are connected in series with $R$; Fig. 5.1 (*a*). For high value of $R$, load $R$ is connected across $C$, Fig. 5.1 (*b*). The essential requirement for both the circuits of Fig. 5.1 is that the overall circuit must be underdamped. When these circuits are energized from dc, current waveforms as shown on the right hand side of Fig. 5.1 are obtained. It is seen that current $i$ first rises to maximum value and then begins to fall. When current decays to zero and tends to reverse, thyristor $T$ in Fig. 5.1 is turned-off on its own at instant $A$.

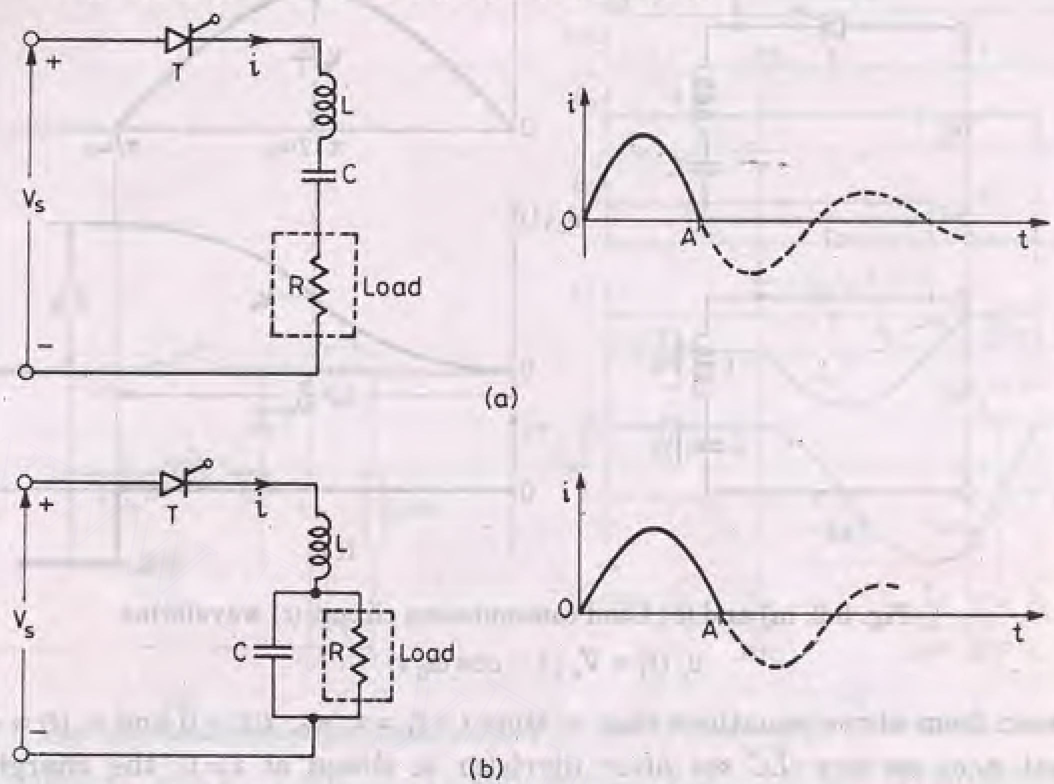


Fig. 5.1. Class A or load commutation (*a*) series capacitor (*b*) shunt capacitor.

Load, or class-A, commutation is prevalent in thyristor circuits supplied from a dc source. The nature of the circuit should be such that when energized from a dc source, current must have a natural tendency to decay to zero for the load commutation to occur in a thyristor circuit. Load commutation is possible in dc circuits and not in ac circuits. Class $A$, or load, commutation is also called *resonant commutation* or *self-commutation*. A practical circuit employing load commutation is a series inverter which is described in Chapter 8. A simple example illustrating the basic principle of load commutation is given below :

**Example 5.1**. *The circuit shown in Fig. 5.2 (a) is initially relaxed. The thyristor T is turned on at t = 0. Determine (a) conduction time of thyristor and (b) voltage across thyristor and capacitor after SCR is turned off. Calculate these values for* $L = 5$ *mH,* $C = 20$ *μF and* $V_s = 200$ *V.*

**Solution.** When thyristor is turned on, it behaves like a diode. Therefore, with SCR on, the device acts like a closed switch, Fig. 5.2 (*b*). KVL for this circuit gives

$$L\frac{di}{dt}+\frac{1}{C}\int i\,dt = V_s$$

Its solution, from Art. 3.1.4, is given by Eq. (3.9) which is repeated here.

$$i(t) = V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}\sin\omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(5.1)}$$

Here $\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$ is called the resonant frequency of the circuit.

Capacitor voltage, from Eq. (3.10*a*) is

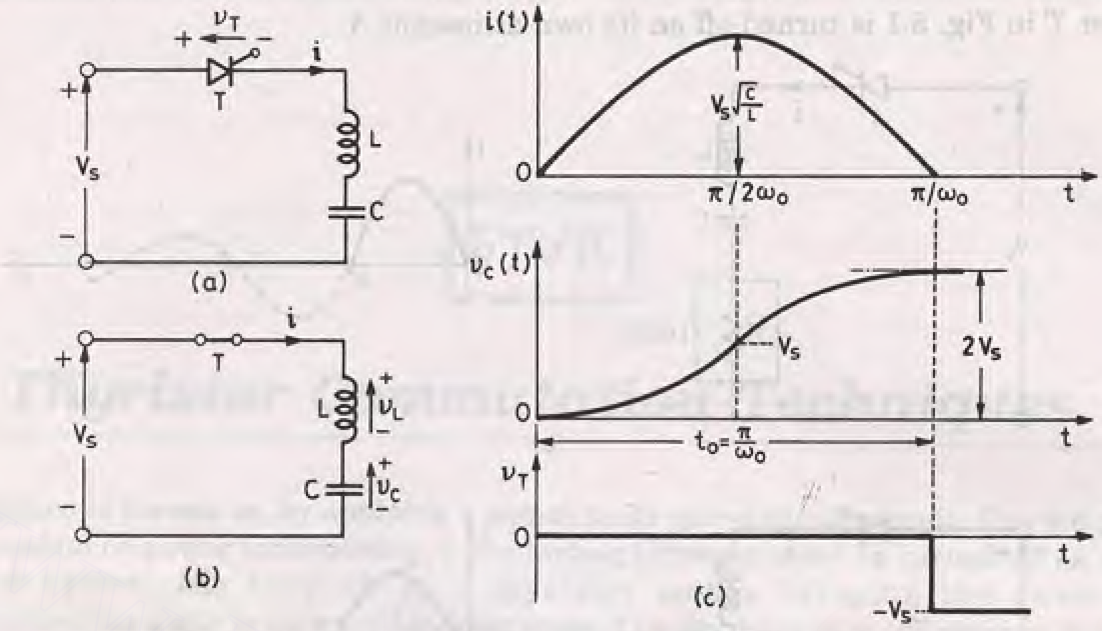


Fig. 5.2. (*a*) and (*b*) Load commutation circuit (*c*) waveforms.

$$v_c(t) = V_s(1 - \cos\omega_0 t) \qquad \text{...(5.2)}$$

It is seen from above equations that at time $t = t_0 = \pi/\omega_0$, $i(t) = 0$ and $v_c(t) = -2V_s$. This shows that $\pi/\omega_0$ sec or $\pi\sqrt{LC}$ sec after thyristor is closed at $t = 0$, the charging current becomes zero, Fig. 5.2 (*c*) and thyristor is, therefore, turned off on its own. Here

$$t_0 = \text{conduction time of the thyristor} = \pi\sqrt{LC} \qquad \text{...(5.3)}$$

Voltage $v_T$ across thyristor during its conduction time $t_0$ is zero. When it stops conducting, $v_T = -2V_s + V_s = -V_s$. It implies that SCR is subjected to a reverse voltage of $V_s$ which helps in its recovery.

For the circuit parameters given, the calculations are as under :

Resonant frequency of the circuit, $\omega_0 = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{5\times10^{-3}\times20\times10^{-6}}} = \dfrac{10^4}{\sqrt{10}}$

$= 3162.27$ rad/s.

Conduction time of thyristor, $t_0 = \dfrac{\pi}{\omega_0} = \dfrac{\pi\sqrt{10}}{10^4} = 9.9346\times10^{-4}$ s

$= 99.346$ ms.

Voltage across thyristor after it is turned off

$= -V_s = -200$ V.

## 5.2. CLASS B COMMUTATION : RESONANT-PULSE COMMUTATION

For explaining class-B, or resonant-pulse, commutation, refer to Fig. 5.3 (*a*). In this figure, source voltage $V_s$ charges capacitor $C$ to voltage $V_s$ with left hand plate positive as shown. Main thyristor $T1$ as well as auxiliary thyristor $TA$ are off. Positive direction of capacitor voltage $v_c$ and capacitor current $i_c$ are marked. When T1 is turned on at $t = 0$, a constant current $I_0$ is established in the load circuit. Here, for simplicity, load current is assumed constant.

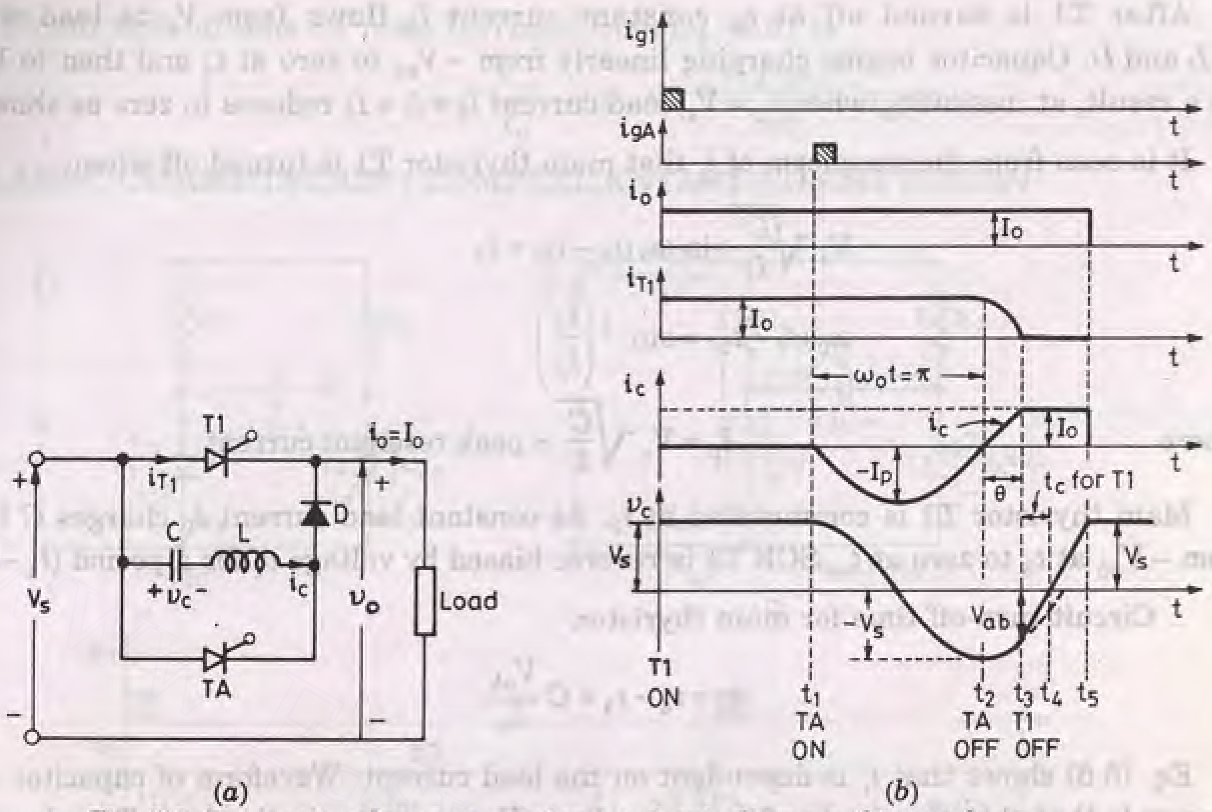


**Fig. 5.3.** Resonant-pulse commutation (*a*) circuit diagram (*b*) waveforms.

Uptill time $t_1$, $v_c = V_s$, $i_c = 0$, $i_0 = I_0$ and $i_{T1} = I_0$, Fig. 5.3 (*b*). For initiating the commutation of main thyristor T1, auxiliary thyristor *TA* is gated at $t = t_1$. With *TA* on, a resonant current $i_c$ begins to flow from *C* through *TA*, *L* and back to *C*. This resonant current, with time measured from instant $t_1$, is given by

$$i_c = -V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \sin \omega_0 t = -I_p \sin \omega_0 t$$

Minus sign before $I_p \sin \omega_0 t$ is due to the fact that this current flows opposite to the reference positive direction chosen in Fig. 5.3 (*a*).

$$\text{Capacitor voltage} \qquad v_c(t) = \frac{1}{C} \int i_c \, dt$$

$$= V_s \cos \omega_0 t \qquad \ldots(5.4)$$

After half a cycle of $i_c$ from instant $t_1$; $i_c = 0$, $v_c = -V_s$ and $i_{T1} = I_0$. After π radians from instant $t_1$, *i.e.* just after instant $t_2$, as $i_c$ tends to reverse, *TA* is turned off at $t_2$. With $v_c = -V_s$, right-hand plate has positive polarity. Resonant current $i_c$ now builds up through *C*, *L*, *D* and T1. As this current $i_c$ grows opposite to forward thyristor current of T1, net forward current $i_{T1} = I_0 - i_c$ begins to decrease. Finally, when $i_c$ in the reversed direction attains the value $I_0$, forward current in T1 ($i_{T1} = I_0 - I_0 = 0$) is reduced to zero and the device T1 is turned off at $t_3$. For reliable commutation, peak resonant current $I_p$ must be greater than load current $I_0$. As thyristor is commutated by the gradual build up of resonant current in the reversed direction, this method of commutation is called *current commutation, class-B commutation* or *resonant-pulse commutation*.

After T1 is turned off at $t_3$, constant current $I_0$ flows from $V_s$ to load through $C$, $L$ and $D$. Capacitor begins charging linearly from $-V_{ab}$ to zero at $t_4$ and then to $V_s$ at $t_5$. As a result, at instant $t_5$, when $v_c = V_s$, load current $i_0 = i_c = I_0$ reduces to zero as shown.

It is seen from the waveform of $i_c$ that main thyristor T1 is turned off when

$$V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \sin \omega_0 (t_3 - t_2) = I_0$$

or
$$\omega_0 (t_3 - t_2) = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{I_0}{I_p}\right) \qquad ...(5.5)$$

where
$$I_p = V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = \text{peak resonant current.}$$

Main thyristor T1 is commutated at $t_3$. As constant load current $I_0$ charges $C$ linearly from $-V_{ab}$ at $t_3$ to zero at $t_4$, SCR T1 is reverse biased by voltage $v_c$ for a period $(t_4 - t_3) = t_c$.

∴ Circuit turn-off time for main thyristor,

$$t_c = t_4 - t_3 = C\frac{V_{ab}}{I_0} \qquad ...(5.6)$$

Eq. (5.6) shows that $t_c$ is dependent on the load current. Waveform of capacitor voltage $v_c$ reveals that the magnitude of reverse voltage $V_{ab}$ across main thyristor T1, when it gets commutated, is given by

$$V_{ab} = V_s \cos \omega_0 (t_3 - t_2) \qquad ...(5.7)$$

**Example 5.2.** *Circuit of Fig. 5.3 (a) employing resonant-pulse commutation (or class-B commutation) has $C = 20$ μF and $L = 5$ μH. Initial voltage across capacitor is $V_s = 230$ V. For a constant load current of 300 A, calculate*

*(a) conduction time for the auxiliary thyristor,*

*(b) voltage across the main thyristor when it gets commutated and*

*(c) the circuit turn-off time for the main thyristor.*

**Solution.** Peak value of resonant current,

$$I_p = V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = 230\sqrt{\frac{20}{5}} = 460 \text{ A}$$

Resonant frequency,
$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} = \frac{10^6}{\sqrt{100}} = 0.1 \times 10^6 \text{ rad/s}$$

(*a*) Conduction time for auxiliary thyristor

$$= \frac{\pi}{\omega_0} = \frac{\pi}{0.1 \times 10^6} = 31.416 \text{ μs.}$$

(*b*) From Eq. (5.5), $\omega_0 (t_3 - t_2) = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{300}{460}\right) = 40.706$ or $0.71045$ rad.

Voltage across main thyristor, when it gets turned-off, is given by Eq. (5.7).

∴
$$V_{ab} = V_s \cos \omega_0 (t_3 - t_2) = 230 \cos (40.706°) = 174.355 \text{ V}$$

(*c*) Circuit turn-off time for main thyristor, from Eq. (5.6), is

$$t_c = t_4 - t_3 = C\frac{V_{ab}}{I_0} = 20\times 10^{-6}\,\frac{174.355}{300} = 11.624\ \mu\text{s}.$$

## 5.3. CLASS C COMMUTATION : COMPLEMENTARY COMMUTATION

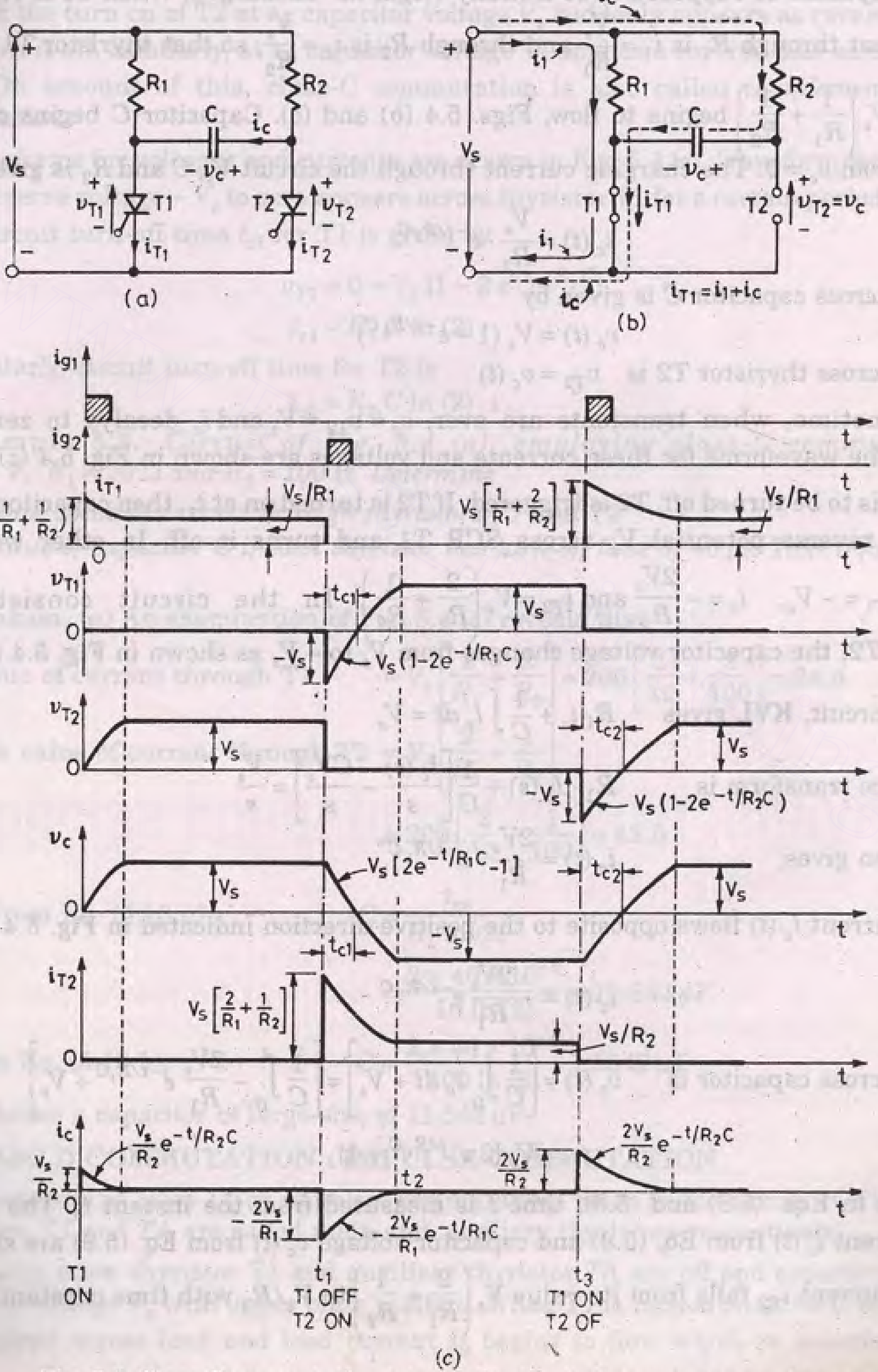


Fig. 5.4. Class-C commutation (*a*) and (*b*) circuit diagrams (*c*) waveforms.

In this type of commutation, a thyristor carrying load current is commutated by transferring its load current to another incoming thyristor. Fig. 5.4 (*a*) illustrates an arrangement employing complementary commutation. In this figure, firing of SCR T1 commutates T2 and subsequently, firing of SCR T2 would turn off T1.

Positive and negative directions of voltages and currents are marked in Fig. 5.4 (*a*). In this figure, capacitor is supposed to be initially virgin *i.e.* uncharged. When T1 is turned on at $t = 0$, current through $R_1$ is $i_1 = \frac{V_s}{R_1}$ and through $R_2$ is $i_c = \frac{V_s}{R_2}$, so that thyristor T1 current $i_{T1} = i_1 + i_c = V_s \left( \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} \right)$ begins to flow, Figs. 5.4 (*b*) and (*c*). Capacitor $C$ begins charging through $R_2$ from $v_c = 0$. The charging current through the circuit $V_s$, $C$ and $R_2$ is given by

$$i_c(t) = \frac{V_s}{R_2} \cdot e^{-t/R_2 C}$$

and voltage across capacitor $C$ is given by

$$v_c(t) = V_s(1 - e^{-t/R_2 C})$$

Voltage across thyristor T2 is $v_{T2} = v_c(t)$

After sometime, when transients are over, $v_c = v_{T2} = V_s$ and $i_c$ decalys to zero. Also $i_{T1} = V_s / R_1$. The waveforms for these currents and voltages are shown in Fig. 5.4 (*c*).

When T1 is to be turned off, T2 is triggered. If T2 is turned on at $t_1$, then capacitor voltage $v_c$ applies a reverse potential $V_s$ across SCR T1 and turns it off. In other words, at $t_1$, $v_{T2} = 0$, $v_{T1} = -V_s$, $i_c = -\frac{2V_s}{R_1}$ and $i_{T2} = V_s \left( \frac{2}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} \right)$. In the circuit consisting of $V_s$, $R_1$, $C$ and $T2$, the capacitor voltage changes from $V_s$ to $-V_s$ as shown in Fig. 5.4 (*c*).

For this circuit, KVL gives $R_1 i_c + \frac{1}{C} \int i_c \, dt = V_s$

Its Laplace transform is $R_1 \cdot I_c(s) + \frac{1}{C} \left[ \frac{I_c(s)}{s} - \frac{CV_s}{s} \right] = \frac{V_s}{s}$

Its solution gives, $i_c(t) = \frac{2V_s}{R_1} \cdot e^{-t/R_1 C}$

As this current $i_c(t)$ flows opposite to the positive direction indicated in Fig. 5.4 (*a*),

$$i_c(t) = -\frac{2V_s}{R_1} e^{-t/R_1 C} \qquad \text{...(5.8)}$$

Voltage across capacitor is $v_c(t) = \left[ \frac{1}{C} \int_0^t i_c \, dt + V_s \right] = \left[ \frac{1}{C} \int_0^t -\frac{2V_s}{R_1} e^{-t/R_1 C} + V_s \right]$

$$= V_s [2 e^{-t/R_1 C} - 1] \qquad \text{...(5.9)}$$

Note that in Eqs. (5.8) and (5.9), time $t$ is measured from the instant $t_1$. The plots of capacitor current $i_c(t)$ from Eq. (5.8) and capacitor voltage $v_c(t)$ from Eq. (5.9) are shown in Fig. 5.4 (*c*). Current $i_{T2}$ falls from its value $V_s \left( \frac{2}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} \right)$ to $V_s / R_2$ with time constant $R_1 C$.

When transients are over after $t_1$, $v_{T1} = V_s$, $v_c = -V_s$, $i_c = 0$, $v_{T2} = 0$, $i_{T2} = V_s/R_2$ and $i_{T1} = 0$. When $T1$ is turned on to commutate $T2$ at instant $t_3$, $i_{T2} = 0$, $i_{T1} = V_s\left(\frac{2}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_1}\right)$, $v_{T2} = -V_s$, $v_{T1} = 0$ and $i_c = \frac{2V_s}{R_2}$.

With the turn on of T2 at $t_1$, capacitor voltage $V_s$ suddenly appears as reverse bias across T1 to turn it off. Similarly, at $t_3$, capacitor voltage $V_s$ applies a reverse bias across T2 to turn it off. On account of this, class-C commutation is also called *complementary impulse commutation.*

Waveforms for voltages and currents are drawn in Fig. 5.4 (*c*). Waveform for $v_{T1}$ indicates that a reverse voltage $-V_s$ to zero appears across thyristor T1 for a certain period. This period, called circuit turn-off time $t_{c1}$ for T1 is given by

$$v_{T1} = 0 = V_s\,[1 - 2\,e^{-t_{c1}/R_1 C}]$$

or

$$t_{c1} = R_1\,C\ln(2) \qquad \text{...(5.10 } a\text{)}$$

Similarly, circuit turn-off time for T2 is

$$t_{c2} = R_2\,C\ln(2) \qquad \text{...(5.10 } b\text{)}$$

**Example 5.3.** *Circuit of Fig. 5.4 (a), employing class-C commutation, has $V_s = 200$ V, $R_1 = 10\ \Omega$ and $R_2 = 100\ \Omega$. Determine*

*(a) peak value of current through thyristors T1 and T2*

*(b) value of capacitor C if each thyristor has turn-off time of* 40 μs. *Take a factor of safety 2.*

**Solution.** (*a*) An examination of Fig. 5.4 (*c*) reveals that

peak value of current through T1 $= V_s\left[\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{2}{R_2}\right] = 200\left[\frac{1}{10} + \frac{2}{100}\right] = 24$ A

and peak value of current through T2 $= V_s\left[\frac{2}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2}\right]$

$$= 200\left[\frac{2}{10} + \frac{1}{100}\right] = 42 \text{ A}$$

(*b*) From Eq. (5.10 *a*), $C = \frac{t_{c1}}{R_1 \ln(2)}$

$$= \frac{2 \times 40 \times 10^{-6}}{10 \ln(2)} = 11.542\ \mu\text{F}$$

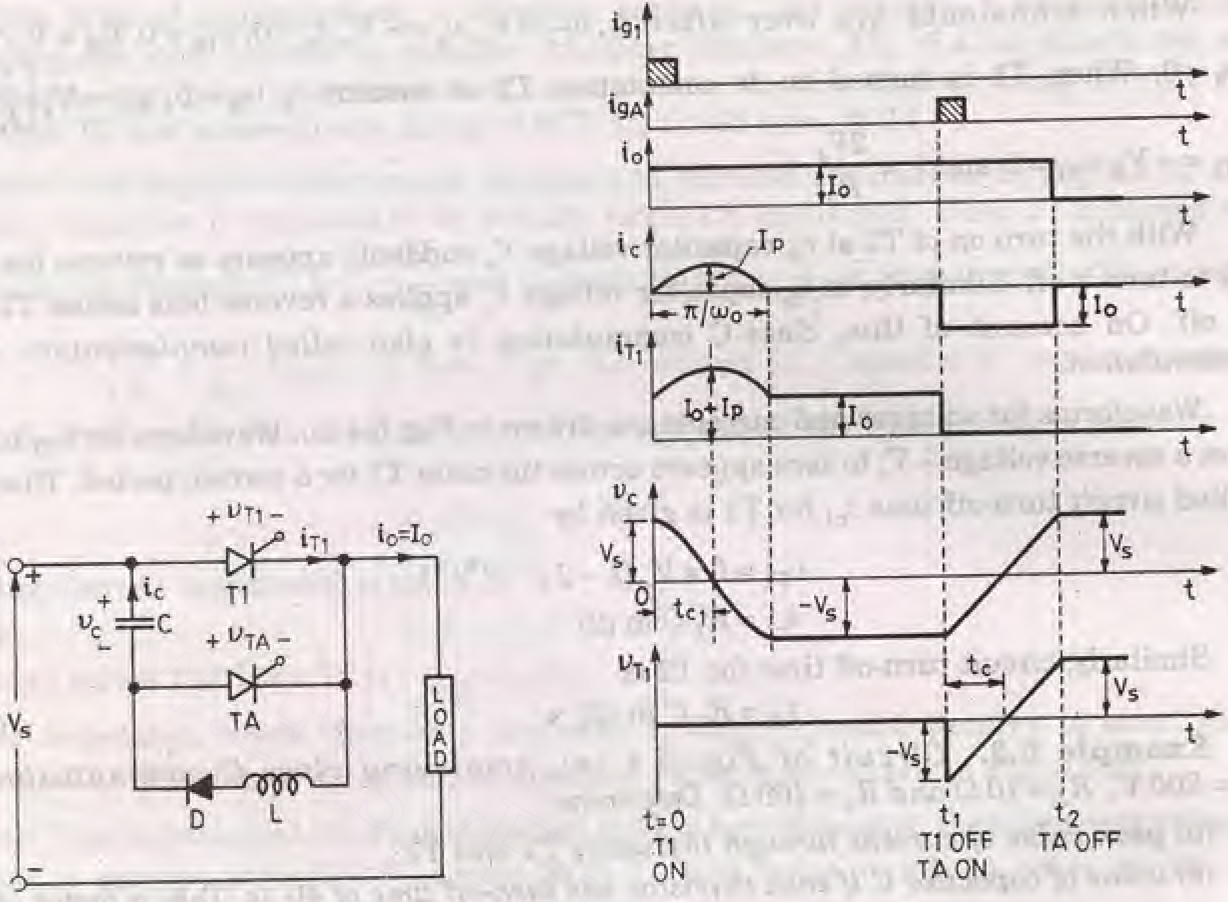
From Eq. (5.10 *b*), $C = \frac{2 \times 40 \times 10^{-6}}{100 \ln(2)}$ 1.1542 μF

So choose a capacitor of large size of 11.542 μF.

## 5.4. CLASS D COMMUTATION : IMPULSE COMMUTATION

For explaining class *D*, or impulse, commutation, refer to the circuit of Fig. 5.5 (*a*). In this figure, T1 and *TA* are called main and auxiliary thyristors respectively.

Initially, main thyristor T1 and auxiliary thyristor *TA* are off and capacitor is assumed charged to voltage $V_s$ with upper plate positive. When T1 is turned on at $t = 0$, source voltage $V_s$ is applied across load and load current $I_0$ begins to flow which is assumed to remain



(a) (b)

Fig. 5.5. Class-D commutation (*a*) circuit diagram (*b*) waveforms.

constant. With T1 on at $t = 0$, another oscillatory circuit consisting of $C$, $T1$, $L$ and $D$ is formed where the capacitor current is given by

$$i_c = V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \sin \omega_0 t = I_p \sin \omega_0 t$$

When $\omega_0 t = \pi$, $i_c = 0$. Between $0 < t < (\pi/\omega_0)$, $i_{T1} = I_0 + I_p \sin \omega_0 t$. Capacitor voltage changes from $+V_s$ to $-V_s$ co-sinusoidally and the lower plate becomes positive. At $\omega_0 t = \pi$, $i_C = 0$, $i_{T1} = I_0$ and $v_c = -V_s$, Fig. 5.5 (*b*).

At $t_1$, auxiliary thyristor *TA* is turned on. Immediately after *TA* is on, capacitor voltage $V_s$ applies a reverse voltage across main thyristor T1 so that $v_{T1} = -V_s$ at $t_1$ and SCR T1 is turned off and $i_{T1} = 0$. The load current is now carried by $C$ and *TA*. Capacitor gets charged from $-V_s$ to $V_s$ with constant load current $I_0$. The change is, therefore, linear from $+V_s$ to $-V_s$ as shown. When $v_c = V_s$, $i_c = 0$ at $t_2$, thyristor *TA* is turned off. During the time *TA* is on from $t_1$ to $t_2$, $v_c = v_{T1}$. For main thyristor T1, circuit turn-off time is $t_c$ as shown in Fig. 5.5 (*b*).

With the firing of thyristor *TA*, a reverse voltage $V_s$ is suddenly applied across T1 ; this method of commutation is therefore, also called *voltage commutation*. With sudden appearance of reverse voltage across T1, its current is quenched ; in fact the current momentarily reverses to recover the stored charge of T1. As an auxiliary thyristor *TA* is used for turning-off the main thyristor T1, this type of commutation is also known as *auxiliary commutation*.

When thyristor *TA* is turned on, capacitor gets connected across *T1* to turn it off, this type of commutation is, therefore, also called *parallel-capacitor commutation*.

**Example 5.4.** *Circuit of Fig. 5.5 (a) illustrates class-D commutation. For this circuit,* $V_s = 230$ *V,* $L = 20$ *μH and* $C = 40$ *μF. For a constant load current of 120 A, calculate.*

*(a) peak value of current through capacitance and also through main and auxiliary thyristors,*

*(b) circuit turn-off times for main and auxiliary thyristors.*

**Solution.** (*a*) When main thyristor T1 is turned on, an oscillatory current in the circuit *C*, *T*1, *L* and *D* is set up and it is given by

$$i_c(t) = V_s \cdot \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \sin \omega_0 t$$

∴ Peak value of current through capacitor

$$I_p = V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = 230 \sqrt{\frac{40}{20}} = 325.22 \text{ A}$$

Peak value of current through main thyristor

$$T1 = I_p + I_0$$

$$= 325.22 + 120 = 445.22 \text{ A}$$

Peak value of current through auxiliary thyristor $TA = I_0 = 120$ A

(*b*) Waveforms for $v_{T1}$ or $v_c$ in Fig. 5.5 (*b*) indicate that circuit turn-off time for main thyristor T1 is the time required for $v_{T1}$ or $v_c$ to change linearly from $-V_s$ to zero.

$$\therefore \quad I_0 = C\frac{V_s}{t_c}$$

∴ Circuit turn-off time for main thyristor

$$t_c = C\frac{V_s}{I_0}$$

$$= 40 \times 10^{-6} \frac{230}{120} = 76.67 \ \mu\text{s}$$

An examination of Fig. 5.5 reveals that when T1 conducts and during the time upper plate of *C* is positive, $v_{TA} = -v_c$ *i.e.* auxiliary thyristor *TA* is reverse biased by $v_c$. This gives circuit turn-off time $t_{c1}$ for $TA = \frac{\pi}{2\,\omega_0}$

Here $$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} = \frac{10^6}{\sqrt{20 \times 40}} = \frac{10^6}{\sqrt{800}}$$

Circuit turn-off time for auxiliary thyristor,

$$t_{c1} = \frac{\pi}{2\omega_0} = \frac{\pi\sqrt{800}}{2 \times 10^6} = 44.43 \ \mu\text{s}.$$

## 5.5. CLASS E COMMUTATION : EXTERNAL PULSE COMMUTATION

In this type of commutation, a pulse of current is obtained from a separate voltage source to turn off the conducting SCR. The peak value of this current pulse must be more than the load current. Fig. 5.6 shows a circuit using external-pulse commutation. Here $V_s$ is the voltage of the main source and $V_1$ is the voltage of the auxiliary supply. Thyristor T1 is conducting and load is connected to source $V_s$. When thyristor *T*3 is turned on at $t = 0$; $V_1$, $T_3$, *L* and *C*

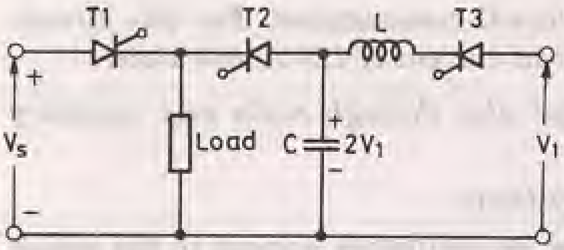
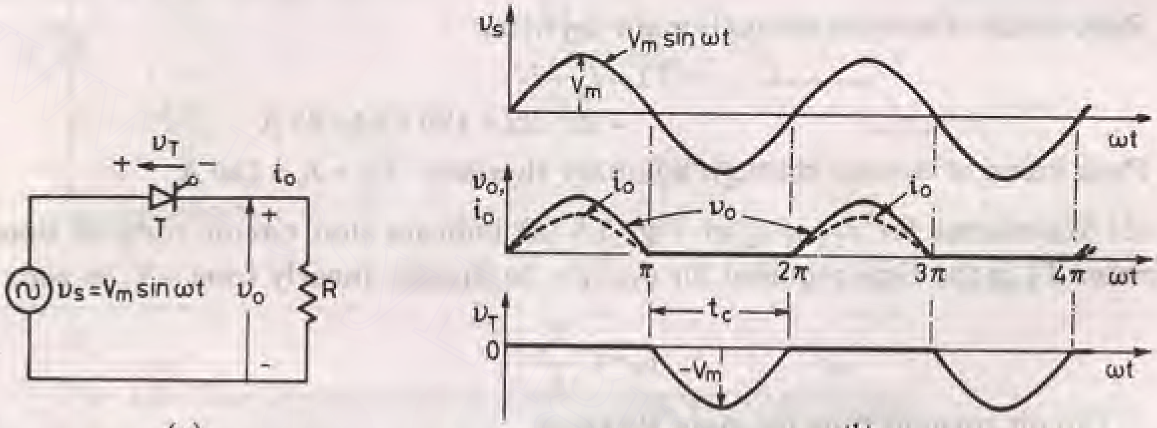


Fig. 5.6. External-pulse commutation circui.

form an oscillatory circuit. Therefore, $C$ is charged to a voltage $+2V_1$ with upper plate positive at $t = \pi\sqrt{LC}$ as shown and as oscillatory current falls to zero, see Art. 3.1.4, thyristor $T3$ gets commutated. For turning off the main thyristor T1, thyristor T2 is turned on. With T2 on, T1 is subjected to a reverse voltage equal to $V_s - 2V_1$ and $T1$ is therefore turned off. After T1 is off, capacitor discharges through the load.

## 5.6. CLASS F COMMUTATION : LINE COMMUTATION

This type of commutation is also known as *natural commutation*. This method of commutation is applied to phase-controlled converters, line-commutated inverters, ac voltage controllers and step-down cycloconverters.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 5.7. Class F commutation (*a*) circuit diagram (*b*) waveforms.

Here, the thyristor carrying the load current is reverse biased by the ac source voltage and the device is turned-off when anode current falls below the holding current (assumed nearly zero). A single-phase half-wave (or one-pulse) controlled converter employing line commutation is shown in Fig. 5.7 (*a*). In this figure, thyristor $T$ is fired at firing angle equal to zero, *i.e.* when $\omega t = 0$, $v_s = 0$. Load is resistive in nature. With zero degree firing-delay angle, the thyristor behaves like a diode. During the positive half-cycle, $v_c = v_s$ and waveshape of load current $i_0$ is identical with the waveshape of $v_0$ for a resistive load. At $\omega t = \pi$, $v_s = 0$, $v_0 = 0$ and $i_0 = 0$; therefore $T$ gets turned off at this instant. From $\omega t = \pi$ to $\omega t = 2\pi$, $T$ is reverse biased for a period $t_c = \pi/\omega$ sec, longer than the thyristor turn-off time $t_q$. Here $t_c$ is called the circuit turn-off time.

Another method of classification of thyristor commutation technique is as under :

(1) Line commutation : class F
(2) Load commutation : class A
(3) Forced commutation : class B, C and D
(4) External-pulse commutation : class E.

In line, or natural, commutation, natural reversal of ac supply voltage commutates the conducting thyristor. As stated before, line commutation is widely used in ac voltage controllers, phase-controlled rectifiers and step-down cycloconverters.

In load commutation, $L$ and $C$ are connected in series with the load or $C$ in parallel with the load such that overall load circuit is under damped. Load commutation is commonly employed in series inverters.

In forced commutation, the commutating components $L$ and $C$ do not carry load current continuously. So class $B$, $C$ and $D$ commutation constitute forced commutation techniques. As stated before, in forced commutation, forward current of the thyristor is forced to zero by external circuitry called *commutation circuit*. Forced commutation is usually employed in dc choppers and inverters.

**Example 5.5.** *In the circuit shown in Fig. 5.8, SCR is forced commutated by circuitry not shown in the figure. Compute the minimum value of C so that SCR does not get turned on due to re-applied dv/dt. The SCR has minimum charging current of 5 mA to turn it on and its junction capacitance is 25 pF.*

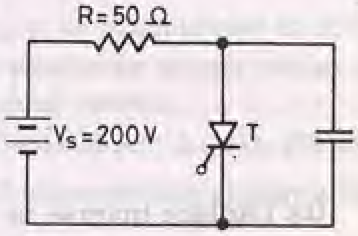


Fig. 5.8. Pertaining to Example 5.5.

**Solution.** Under steady state, SCR conducts a current $= \dfrac{V_s}{R} = \dfrac{200}{50} = 4$ A and voltage across ideal SCR = voltage $v_c$ across $C = 0$.

When SCR is force commutated, capacitor $C$ begins charging from source $V_s$ through $R$ so that capacitor voltage $v_c\ (= v_T)$ is given by

$$v_c = V_s\,[1 - e^{-t/RC}]$$

$$\left[\frac{dv_c}{dt}\right] = V_s \cdot e^{-t/RC} \cdot \frac{1}{RC}$$

or $$\left[\frac{dv_c}{dt}\right]_{t=0} = \frac{V_s}{RC} \quad \ldots(i)$$

The rate of rise of capacitor voltage $v_c$ across SCR may be large. In case SCR charging current $C_j \cdot \left(\dfrac{dv_c}{dt}\right)_{t=0}$ happens to be equal to 5 mA, SCR will get turned on. Here $C_j$ is the junction capacitance of SCR.

$$\therefore \qquad C_j \cdot \left(\frac{dv_c}{dt}\right)_{t=0} = 5 \text{ mA}$$

Substituting the value of $\left(\dfrac{dv_c}{dt}\right)_{t=0}$ from Eq. $(i)$ above, we get

$$C_j \frac{V_s}{RC} = 5 \times 10^{-3}$$

or $$25 \times 10^{-12}\, \frac{200}{50 \times C} = 5 \times 10^{-3}$$

or $$C = \frac{25 \times 10^{-12} \times 200}{250 \times 10^{-3}} = 0.02\ \mu\text{F}$$

In order to obviate turning on of SCR, the value of capacitance $C$ should be less than 0.02 µF.

**Example 5.6.** *For a voltage or impulse commutated thyristor circuit shown in Fig. 5.9, capacitor is initially charged to $V_s$ with polarity as shown. Find the circuit turn-off time for the main thyristor in case $C = 10$ µF, $R = 5\ \Omega$ and $V_s = 230$ V dc.*

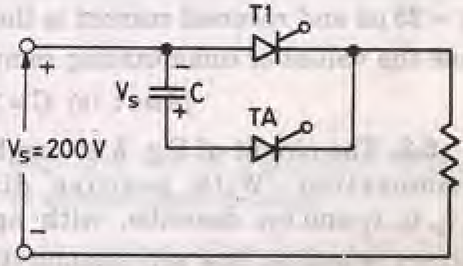


Fig. 5.9. Pertaining to Example 5.6.

**Solution.** When auxiliary thyristor *TA* is turned on, main thyristor T1 is turned off by means of capacitor voltage $V_s$ appearing as reverse bias. After T1 is off, KVL for the circuit consisting of $V_s$, $C$, $TA$ and $R$ in series is given by

$$R \cdot i(t) + \frac{1}{C} \int i(t)\, dt = V_s$$

Its Laplace transforme is $R \cdot I(s) + \frac{1}{C}\left[\frac{I(s)}{s} - \frac{C \cdot V_s}{s}\right] = \frac{V_s}{s}$

or

$$I(s)\left[R + \frac{1}{sC}\right] = \frac{2V_s}{s}$$

$$I(s) = \frac{2V_s}{s} \cdot \frac{sC}{(RsC+1)} = \frac{2V_s}{R} \cdot \frac{1}{s + \frac{1}{RC}}$$

Its Laplace inverse is $i(t) = \frac{2V_s}{R} \cdot e^{-t/RC}$

The voltage across capacitor $C$ is

$$v_c(t) = \frac{1}{C} \int i(t)\, dt + \text{initial voltage across capacitor}$$

$$= \frac{1}{C} \int \frac{2V_s}{R} \cdot e^{-t/RC} + V_s = V_s\,[1 - 2\,e^{-t/RC}]$$

During the time auxiliary SCR *TA* is on, $v_c = v_{T1} = V_s\,[1 - e^{-t/RC}]$. The circuit turn-off time for T1 is the time taken by $v_c = v_{T1}$ to change from its value $-V_s$ to zero.

$$\therefore \qquad 0 = V_s\,[1 - 2\,e^{-t_c/RC}]$$

or

$$t_c = RC \ln(2) = 5 \times 10 \times 10^{-6} \ln(2) = 34.6574\ \mu\text{s}$$

## PROBLEMS

**5.1.** (*a*) Explain the need of commutation in thyristor circuits. What are the different methods of commutation schemes ? Discuss one of them, involving two thyristors, with a neat schematic and waveforms.

(*b*) A circuit employing parallel-resonance turn-off (or class-B commutation) circuit has $C = 50\ \mu\text{F}$, $L = 20\ \mu\text{H}$, $V_s = 200$ V and initial voltage across capacitor is 200 V. Determine the circuit turn-off time for main thyristor for load $R = 1.5\ \Omega$. **[Ans :** (*b*) 68 μs]

**5.2.** (*a*) Distinguish clearly between voltage commutation and current commutation in thyristor circuits.

(*b*) Discuss how the voltage across the commutating capacitor is reversed in a commutating circuit.

(*c*) For the circuit in Fig. 5.3 (*a*), supply voltage $V_s = 230$ V dc, load current $I_0 = 200$ A, circuit turn-off time for main thyristor = 25 μs and reversal current is limited to 150% of $I_0$. Determine the values of commutating components $C$ and $L$.

**[Ans :** (*c*) $C = 29.166\ \mu\text{F}$, $L = 17.143\ \mu\text{H}$]

**5.3.** The circuit of Fig. 5.10 can be used to explain class-B commutation. With positive directions indicated for $v_c$, $i_c$, $i_0$, $i_T$ and $v_T$, describe, with appropriate waveforms of $i_0$, $i_c$, $v_c$, $i_T$ and $v_T$, how self-commutation is achieved in this cir-

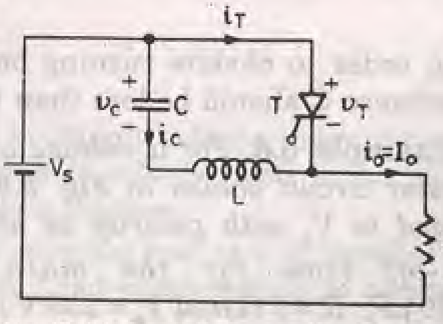


Fig. 5.10. Pertaining to Problem 5.3.

cuit. Derive expressions for $i_c$, reverse voltage across SCR when it is turned off and the circuit turn-off time. State the assumptions made.

[**Hint :** Refer to Fig. 5.3 (*b*) for waveforms. Initially, $T$ is off, $C$ is charged so that $v_c = V_s$ with upper plate positive. When $T$ is turned on, oscillatory current in $C$, $T$ and $L$ is established so that $i_c = V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}\sin\omega_0 t$ and $i_T = I_0 + V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}\sin\omega_0 t$ etc. ]

**5.4.** (*a*) Explain the merits and demerits of self-commutation of SCR and its other methods of commutation.

(*b*) For the circuit shown in Fig. 5.10, given that the load current $I_0$ to be commutated is 10 A, circuit turn-off time required is 40 μs and the supply voltage is 100 V, obtain the proper values of commutating components. Take peak resonant current equal to twice the load current.

[**Ans :** (*b*) $C = 4.619$ μF, $L = 115.475$ μH]

**5.5.** (*a*) Discuss, with relevant waveforms, class *A* and class *D* types of commutations employed for thyristors.

(*b*) For the circuit shown in Fig. 5.10, peak thyristor current = 2.5 times the constant load current, $L = 18$ μH and $C = 4$ μF. Find the time elapsed from the instant thyristor is turned on to the instant it gets turned off.

[**Ans :** (*b*) 32.852 μs]

**5.6.** (*a*) Enumerate the various commutation techniques used for thyristors.

(*b*) Describe line-commutation and class-E commutation for thyristors. Name the circuit configuration where line-commutation is employed.

**5.7.** (*a*) Discuss, with relevant waveforms, class *B* and class *E* types of commutations employed for thyristor circuits.

(*b*) A circuit employing resonant-pulse commutation has $C = 20$ μF and $L = 3$ μH. The initial capacitor voltage = source voltage, $V_s = 230$ V dc. Determine conduction time for auxiliary thyristor and circuit turn-off time for main thyristor in case constant load current is (*i*) 300 A and (*ii*) 60 A.

[**Ans :** (*b*) (*i*) 24.335 μs, $t_c = 13.23$ μs (*ii*) 24.335 μs, $t_c = 76.273$ μs]

**5.8.** (*a*) Describe class-C type of commutation used for thyristors with appropriate current and voltage waveforms.

(*b*) An impulse-commutated circuit is shown in Fig. 5.5 (*a*). In this circuit, capacitor is initially charged to source voltage $V_s = 200$ V with upper plate negative. When auxiliary thyristor is turned on main thyristor gets commutated in 50 μs. Find the value of $C$ in case load resistance is 20 Ω.

If peak value of current through main thyristor is limited to twice the full-load current, calculate the value of commutating inductance.

[**Ans :** (*b*) 3.607 μF, 1.4428 mH]

**5.9.** What is complementary impulse commutation ? Describe this type of commutation with a circuit diagram and appropriate waveforms.

Derive expressions for current through and voltage across commutating capacitor. Find also the circuit turn off times for the complementary thyristors.

**5.10.** (*a*) A capacitor $C$, initially charged to dc voltage $V_s$, is connected to inductance $L$ through a thyristor. Determine

(*i*) the peak value of current through thyristor and
(*ii*) the maximum value of $di/dt$ through SCR.

(*b*) For illustrating class $C$ commutation, circuit of Fig. 5.4 (*a*) is employed where $V_s = 200$ V and $R_1 = 10$ Ω. Find the value of $C$ so that thyristor T1 is commutated in 50 μs.

It is required that SCR T2 is turned off naturally when current through it falls below the holding current of 4 mA. Find the value of $R_2$.

[**Hint :** (*b*) When $C$ is fully charged, current through T2 = holding current $= \frac{V_s}{R_2}$ etc.]

$$\left[\textbf{Ans: } (a)\ V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}},\ \frac{V_s}{L}\text{ Amp/sec}\quad (b)\ 7.2135\,\mu\text{F},\ 50\text{ k}\Omega\right]$$

**5.11.** In the circuit of Fig. 5.4 (*a*) employing complementary commutation ; $V_s = 200$ V, $R_1 = 20\ \Omega$ and $R_2 = 100\ \Omega$. Determine the minimum value of $C$ so that thyristors do not get turned on due to re-applied $dv/dt$. Each SCR has a minimum charging current of 4 mA to turn it on and its junction capacitance is 20 pF. **[Ans : 0.1 μF]**

**5.12.** For current-commutated circuit of Fig. 5.3 (*a*) ; $V_s = 230$ V, $L = 16\ \mu$H and $C = 5\ \mu$F. Capacitor is initially charged to voltage $V_s$ with left hand plate positive. Auxiliary thyristor *TA* is turned on at $t = 0$. Find the total time for which capacitor current $i_c$ exists. The peak resonant current is 1.5 times the full-load current.

$$\left[\textbf{Hint: } \text{In Fig. 5.3 } (b),\ t_5 - t_3 = C\,\frac{V_s + V_{ab}}{I_0}\text{ etc.}\right]$$ **[Ans : 58.047 μs]**

## SIX

# Phase Controlled Rectifiers

Many industrial applications make use of controllable dc power. Examples of such applications are as follows :

(*a*) Steel-rolling mills, paper mills, printing presses and textile mills employing dc motor drives.

(*b*) Traction systems working on dc.

(*c*) Electrochemical and electrometallurgical processes.

(*d*) Magnet power supplies.

(*e*) Portable hand tool drives.

(*f*) High-voltage dc transmission.

Earlier, dc power was obtained from motor-generator (MG) sets or ac power was converted to dc power by means of mercury-arc rectifiers or thyratrons. The advent of thyristors has changed the art of ac to dc conversion. Presently, phase-controlled ac to dc converters employing thyristors are extensively used for changing constant ac input voltage to controlled dc output voltage. In an industry where there is a provision for modernization, mercury-arc rectifiers and thyratrons are being replaced by thyristors.

In phase-controlled rectifiers, a thyristor is turned off as ac supply voltage reverse biases it, provided anode current has fallen to a level below the holding current. The turning-off, or commutation, of a thyristor by supply voltage itself is called *natural,* or *line commutation.* In industrial applications, rectifier circuits make use of more than one SCR. In such circuits, when an incoming SCR is turned on by triggering, it immediately reverse biases the outgoing SCR and turns it off. As phase-controlled rectifiers need no commutation circuitry, these are simple, less expensive and are therefore widely used in industries where controlled dc power is required.

In the study of thyristor systems, SCRs and diodes are assumed ideal switches which means that (*i*) there is no voltage drop across them, (*ii*) no reverse current exists under reverse voltage conditions and (*iii*) holding current is zero.

Trigger circuits are not shown in SCR circuit for convenience.

In this chapter, single-phase and three-phase controlled converters are described and the effect of source inductance on their performance is examined. Basic operating features of dual converters are also presented.

## 6.1. PRINCIPLE OF PHASE CONTROL

The simplest form of controlled rectifier circuits consist of a single thyristor feeding dc power to a resistive load $R$ as shown in Fig. 6.1 ($a$). The source voltage is $v_s = V_m \sin \omega t$, Fig. 6.1 ($b$). An SCR can conduct only when anode voltage is positive and a gating signal is applied. As such, a thyristor blocks the flow of load current $i_0$ until it is triggered. At some delay angle $\alpha$, a positive gate signal applied between gate and cathode turns on the SCR, Immediately, full supply voltage is applied to the load as $v_0$, Fig. 6.1 ($b$). At the instant of delay angle $\alpha$, $v_0$ rises from zero to $V_m \sin \alpha$ as shown. For resistive load, current $i_0$ is in phase with $v_0$. Firing angle of a thyristor is measured from the instant it would start conducting if it were replaced by a diode. In Fig. 6.1, if thyristor is replaced by diode, it would begin conduction at $\omega t = 0$, $2\pi$, $4\pi$ etc. ; firing angle is therefore measured from these instants. A *firing angle* may thus be defined as the angle between the instant thyristor would conduct if it were a diode and the instant it is triggered.

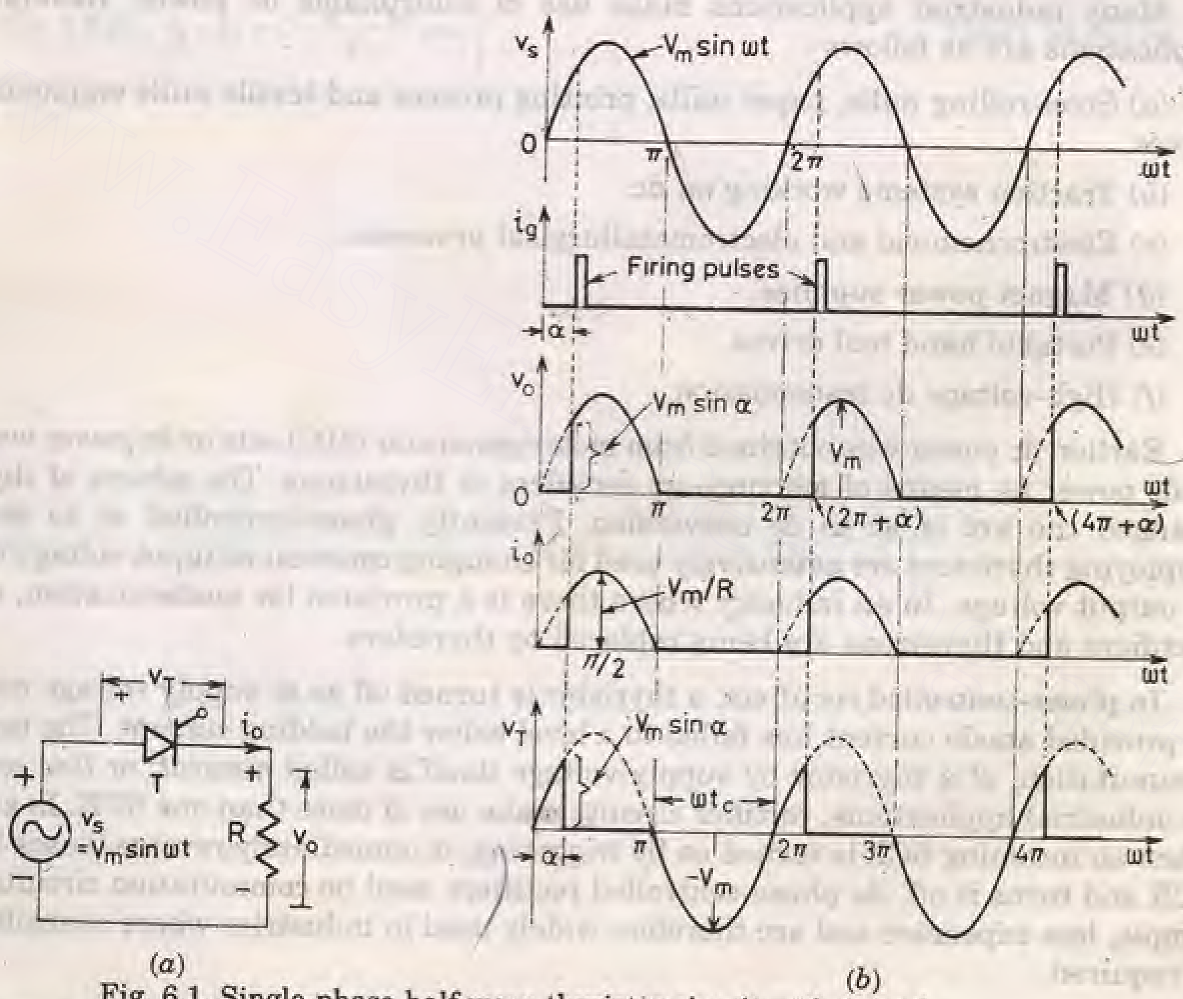


Fig. 6.1. Single-phase half-wave thyristor circuit with $R$ load ($a$) circuit diagram and ($b$) voltage and current waveforms.

A firing angle may also be defined as follows : *A firing angle* is measured from the angle that gives the largest average output voltage, or the highest load voltage. If thyristor in Fig. 6.1 is fired at $\omega t = 0$, $2\pi$, $4\pi$ etc., the average load voltage is the highest ; the firing angle should thus be measured from these instants. A *firing angle* may thus be defined as the angle measured from the instant that gives the largest average output voltage to the instant it is triggered.

Once the SCR is on, load current flows, until it is turned-off by reversal of voltage at $\omega t = \pi, 3\pi$ etc. At these angles of $\pi, 3\pi, 5\pi$ etc. load current falls to zero and soon after the supply voltage reverse biases the SCR, the device is therefore turned off. It is seen from Fig. 6.1 (*b*) that by varying the firing angle $\alpha$, the *phase* relationship between the start of the load current and the supply voltage can be *controlled* ; hence the term *phase control* is used for such a method of controlling the load currents [3] .

A single-phase half-wave circuit is one which produces only *one* pulse of load current during one cycle of source voltage. As the circuit shown in Fig. 6.1 (*a*) produces only one load current pulse for one cycle of sinusoidal source voltage, this circuit represents a single-phase half-wave thyristor circuit.

In Fig. 6.1 (*b*), thyristor conducts from $\omega t = \alpha$ to $\pi$, $(2\pi + \alpha)$ to $3\pi$ and so on. Over the firing angle delay $\alpha$, load voltage $v_0 = 0$ but during conduction angle $(\pi - \alpha)$, $v_0 = v_s$. As firing angle is increased from zero to $\pi$, the average load voltage decreases from the largest value to zero.

The variation of voltage across thyristor is also shown as $v_T$ in Fig. 6.1 (*b*). Thyristor remains on from $\omega t = \alpha$ to $\pi$, $(2\pi + \alpha)$ to $3\pi$ etc., during these intervals $v_T = 0$ (strictly speaking 1 to 1.5 V ). It is off from $\pi$ to $(2\pi + \alpha)$, $3\pi$ to $(4\pi + \alpha)$ etc., during these off intervals $v_T$ has the waveshape of supply voltage $v_s$ . It may be observed that $v_s = v_0 + v_T$. As the thyristor is reverse biased for $\pi$ radians, the circuit turn-off time is given by

$$t_c = \frac{\pi}{\omega} \text{ sec}$$

where $\omega = 2\pi f$ and $f$ is the supply frequency in Hz.

The circuit turn-off time $t_c$ must be than the SCR turn-off time $t_q$ as specified by the manufacturers.

Average voltage $V_0$ across load $R$ in Fig. 6.1 for the single-phase half-wave circuit in terms of firing angle $\alpha$ is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_\alpha^\pi V_m \sin \omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{2\pi} (1 + \cos \alpha) \qquad ...(6.1)$$

The maximum value of $V_0$ occurs at $\alpha = 0°$.

$$\therefore \qquad V_{o\cdot m} = \frac{V_m}{2\pi} \cdot 2 = \frac{V_m}{\pi}$$

Average load current, $I_0 = \dfrac{V_0}{R} = \dfrac{V_m}{2\pi R} (1 + \cos \alpha)$ ...(6.2)

In some types of loads, one may be interested in rms value of load voltage $V_{or}$. Examples of such loads are electric heating and incandescent lamps. Rms voltage $V_{or}$ in such cases is given by

$$V_{or} = \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_\alpha^\pi V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t) \right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{2\sqrt{\pi}} \left[ (\pi - \alpha) + \frac{1}{2} \sin 2\alpha \right]^{1/2} \qquad ...(6.3)$$

The value of rms current $I_{or}$ is

$$I_{or} = \frac{V_{or}}{R}$$

Power delivered to resistive load = (rms load voltage) (rms load current)

$$= V_{or} I_{or} = \frac{V_{or}^2}{R} = I_{or}^2 R \qquad \text{...(6.4)}$$

Input voltamperes = (rms source voltage) (total rms line current)

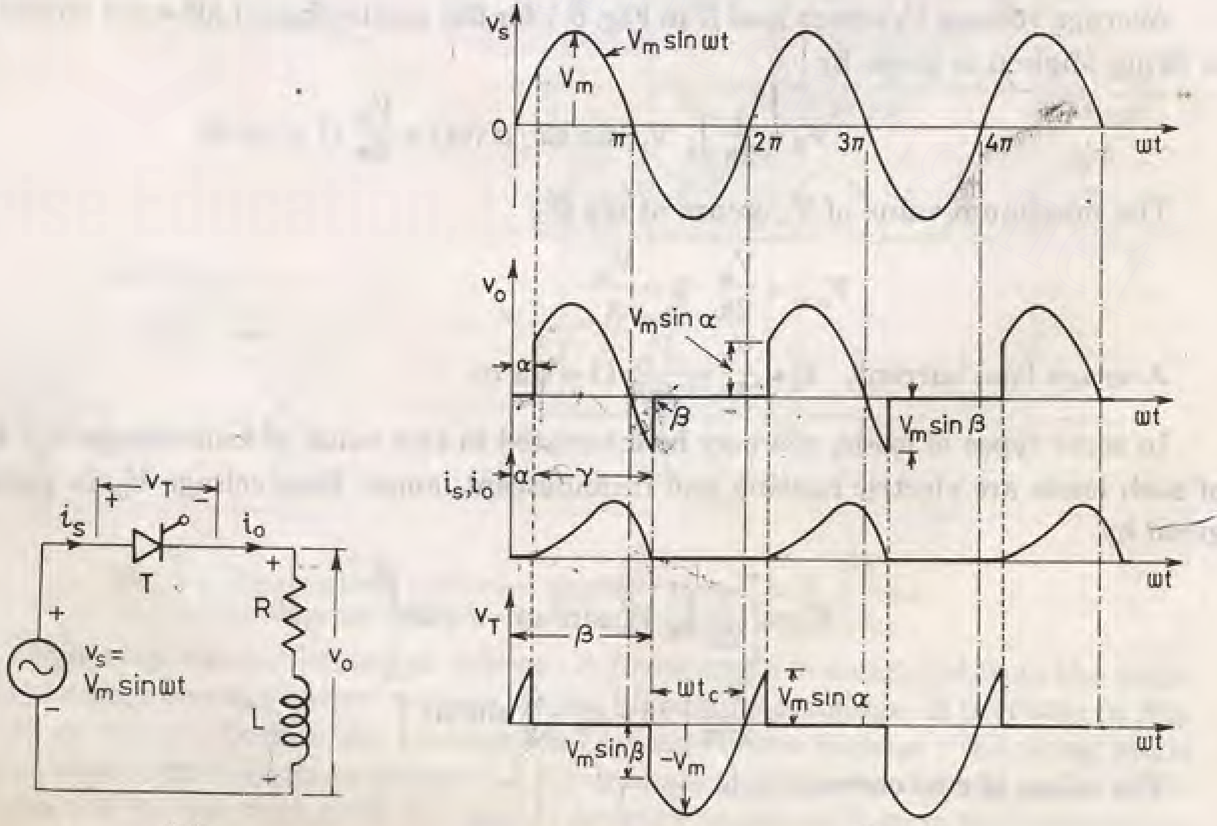
$$= V_s \cdot I_{or} = \frac{\sqrt{2}\, V_s^2}{2R\sqrt{\pi}}\left[(\pi-\alpha)+\frac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right]^{1/2}$$

Input power factor $= \dfrac{\text{Power delivered to load}}{\text{Input VA}} = \dfrac{V_{or}\cdot I_{or}}{V_s\cdot I_{or}} = \dfrac{V_{or}}{V_s}$

From Eq. (6.3), input $pf = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[(\pi-\alpha)+\dfrac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right]^{1/2}$ ...(6.5)

### 6.1.1. Single-phase Half-wave Circuit with RL Load

A single-phase half-wave thyristor circuit with *RL* load is shown in Fig. 6.2 (*a*). Line voltage $v_s$ is sketched in the top of Fig. 6.2 (*b*). At $\omega t = \alpha$, thyristor is turned on by gating signal. The load voltage $v_0$ at once becomes equal to source voltage $v_s$ as shown. But the inductance *L* forces the load, or output, current $i_0$ to rise gradually. After some time, $i_0$ reaches maximum value and then begins to decrease. At $\omega t = \pi$, $v_0$ is zero but $i_0$ is not zero because of the load inductance *L*. After $\omega t = \pi$, SCR is subjected to reverse anode voltage but it will not be turned off as load current $i_0$ is not less than the holding current. At some angle $\beta > \pi$, $i_0$ reduces to zero and SCR is turned off as it is already reverse biased. After $\omega t = \beta$, $v_o = 0$ and $i_0 = 0$. At $\omega t = 2\pi + \alpha$, SCR is triggered again, $v_0$ is applied to the load and load



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 6.2. Single-phase half-wave circuit with *RL* load (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) voltage and current waveforms.

current develops as before. Angle $\beta$ is called the *extinction angle* and $(\beta - \alpha) = \gamma$ is called the *conduction angle.*

The waveform of voltage $v_T$ across thyristor $T$ in Fig. 6.2 (*b*) reveals that when $\omega t = \alpha$, $v_T = V_m \sin \alpha$ ; from $\omega t = \alpha$ to $\beta$, $v_T = 0$ and at $\omega t = \beta$, $v_T = V_m \sin \beta$. As $\beta > \pi$, $v_T$ is negative at $\omega t = \beta$. Thyristor is therefore reverse biased from $\omega t = \beta$ to $2\pi$. Thus, circuit turn-off time $t_C = \dfrac{2\pi - \beta}{\omega}$ sec. For satisfactory commutation, $t_C$ should be more than $t_q$ the thyristor turn-off time.

The voltage equation for the circuit of Fig. 6.2 (*a*) is

$$V_m \sin \omega t = R\, i_0 + L \frac{di_0}{dt}$$

The load current $i_0$ consists of two components, one steady-state component $i_s$ and the other transient component $i_t$. Here $i_s$ is given by

$$i_s = \frac{V_m}{\sqrt{R^2 + X^2}} \sin(\omega t - \phi)$$

where $\phi = \tan^{-1} \dfrac{X}{R}$ and $X = \omega L$. Here $\phi$ is the angle by which rms current $I_s$ lags $V_s$.

The transient component $i_t$ can be obtained from force-free equation

$$R\, i_t + L \frac{di_t}{dt} = 0$$

Its solution gives,

$$i_t = A\, e^{-(R/L)t}$$

$$\therefore \qquad i_o = i_s + t_t = \frac{V_m}{Z} \sin(\omega t - \phi) + A_e^{-(R/L)t} \qquad \text{...(6.6)}$$

where

$$Z = \sqrt{R^2 + X^2}$$

Constant $A$ can be obtained from the boundary condition at $\omega t = \alpha$.

At this time $t = \dfrac{\alpha}{\omega}$, $i_0 = 0$. Thus, from Eq. (6.6) ,

$$0 = \frac{V_m}{Z} \sin(\alpha - \phi) + A e^{-R\alpha/L\omega}$$

or

$$A = -\frac{V_m}{Z} \sin(\alpha - \phi)\, e^{R\alpha/\omega L}$$

Substitution of $A$ in Eq. (6.6) gives

$$i_0 = \frac{V_m}{Z} \sin(\omega t - \phi) - \frac{V_m}{Z} \sin(\alpha - \phi) \exp. \left\{ -\frac{R}{\omega L} (\omega t - \alpha) \right\} \qquad \text{...(6.7)}$$

for

$$\alpha < \omega t < \beta$$

It is also seen from the waveform of $i_0$ in Fig. 6.2 (*b*) that when $\omega t = \beta$, load current $i_0 = 0$. Substituting this in Eq. (6.7) gives

$$\sin(\beta - \phi) = \sin(\alpha - \phi).\ \exp\left\{ -\frac{R}{\omega L} (\beta - \alpha) \right\}$$

This transcendental equation can be solved to obtain the value of extinction angle $\beta$. In case $\beta$ is known, average load voltage $V_0$ is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} V_m \sin \omega t \, d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{2\pi}(\cos\alpha - \cos\beta) \qquad \text{...(6.8)}$$

Average load current, $$I_0 = \frac{V_m}{2\pi R}(\cos\alpha - \cos\beta) \qquad \text{...(6.9)}$$

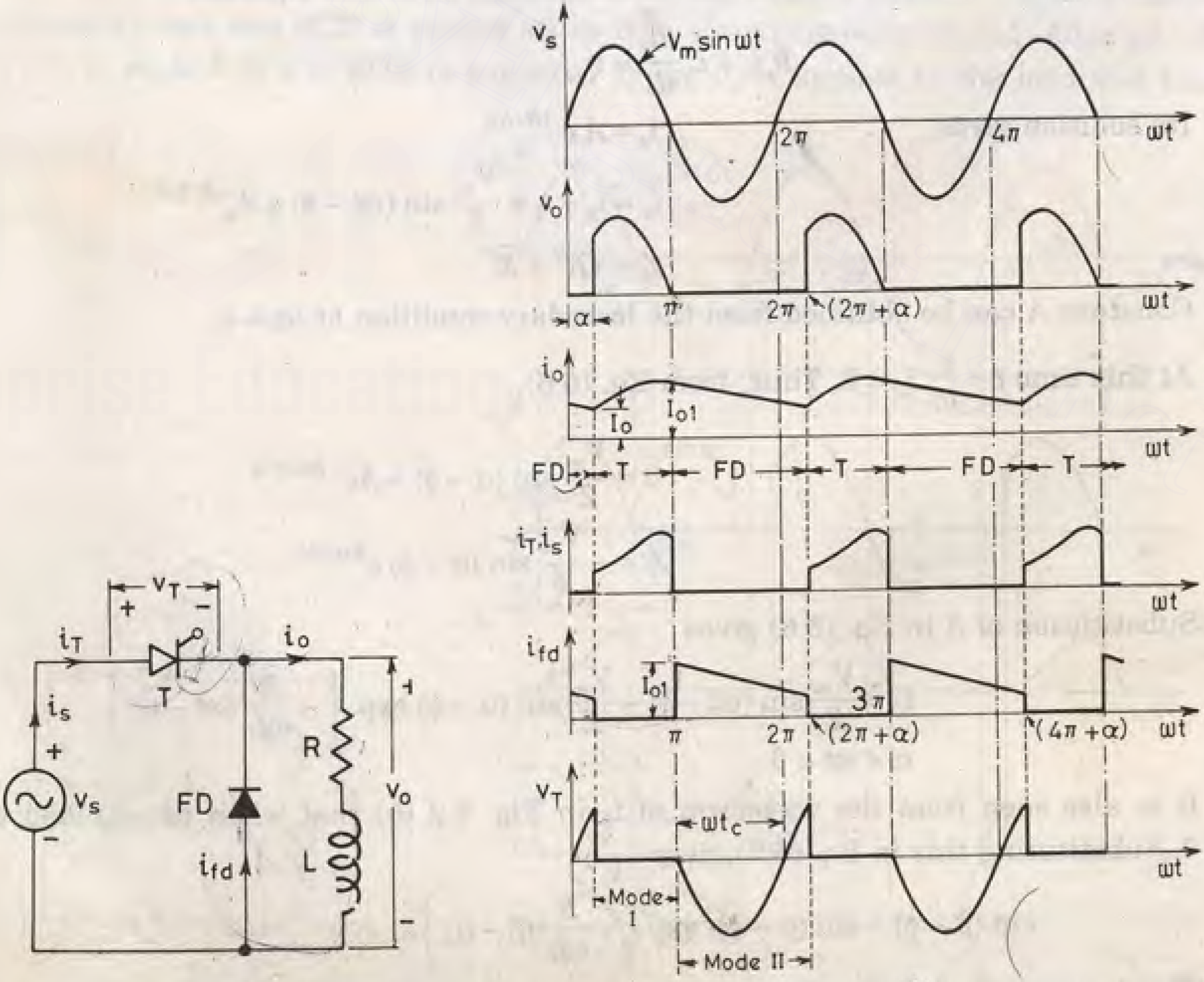
Rms load voltage, $$V_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{2\sqrt{\pi}}\left[(\beta - \alpha) - \frac{1}{2}\{\sin 2\beta - \sin 2\alpha\}\right]^{1/2} \qquad \text{...(6.10)}$$

Rms load current can be obtained from Eq. (6.7) if required.

### 6.1.2. Single-phase Half-wave Circuit with RL Load and Freewheeling Diode

The waveform of load current $i_0$ in Fig. 6.2 (*b*) can be improved by connecting a freewheeling ( or flywheeling ) diode across load as shown in Fig. 6.3 (*a*). A freewheeling diode is also called by-pass or commutating diode. At $\omega t = 0$, source voltage is becoming positive. At some delay angle $\alpha$, forward biased SCR is triggered and source voltage $v_s$ appears across load as $v_0$. At $\omega t = \pi$, source voltage $v_s$ is zero and just after this instant, as $v_s$ tends to reverse, freewheeling diode FD is forward biased through the conducting SCR. As a result, load current $i_0$ is immediately transferred from SCR to FD as $v_s$ tends to reverse. At the same time, SCR



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 6.3. Single-phase half-wave circuit with RL load and a freewheeling diode, (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) voltage and current waveforms.

is subjected to reverse voltage and zero current, it is therefore turned off at $\omega t = \pi$. It is assumed that during freewheeling period load current does not decay to zero until the SCR is triggered again at $(2\pi + \alpha)$. Voltage drop across FD is taken as almost zero, the load voltage $v_0$ is, therefore, zero during the freewheeling period. The voltage variation across SCR is shown as $v_T$ in Fig. 6.3 (*b*). It is seen from this wave-form that SCR is reverse biased from $\omega t = \pi$ to $\omega t = 2\pi$. Therefore, circuit turn-off time is

$$t_C = \frac{\pi}{\omega} \text{ sec}$$

The source current $i_s$ and thyristor current $i_T$ have the same waveform as shown.

Operation of the circuit of Fig. 6.3 (*a*) can be explained in two modes. In the first mode, called *conduction mode,* SCR conducts from $\alpha$ to $\pi$, $2\pi + \alpha$ to $3\pi$ and so on and FD is reverse biased. The duration of this mode is for $[(\pi - \alpha)/\omega]$ sec. Let the load current at the beginning of mode *I* be $I_0$. The expression for current $i_0$ in mode *I* can be obtained as follows :

*Mode I* : For conduction mode, the voltage equation is

$$V_m \sin \omega t = Ri_0 + L\frac{di_0}{dt}$$

Its solution, already obtained in the previous section, is repeated here from Eq. (6.6) as

$$i_0 = \frac{V_m}{Z}\sin(\omega t - \phi) + A\,e^{-1(R/L)t}$$

At $\omega t = \alpha$, $i_0 = I_0$, *i.e.* at $t = \frac{\alpha}{\omega}$, $i_0 = I_0$

$$\therefore \qquad A = \left[ I_0 - \frac{V_m}{Z}\sin(\alpha - \phi) \right\} e^{R\alpha/\omega L}$$

$$\therefore \qquad i_0 = \frac{V_m}{Z}\sin(\omega t - \phi) + \left[ I_0 - \frac{V_m}{Z}\sin(\alpha - \phi) \right\} \exp\left\{ -\frac{R}{L}\left( t - \frac{\alpha}{\omega} \right) \right\} \qquad \text{...(6.11)}$$

Note that for mode I, $\alpha \le \omega t \le \pi$

*Mode II* : This mode, called freewheeling mode, extends from $\pi$ to $2\pi + \alpha$, $3\pi$ to $4\pi + \alpha$ and so on. In this mode, SCR is reverse biased from $\pi$ to $2\pi$, $3\pi$ to $4\pi$... as shown by voltage waveform $v_T$ in Fig 6.3 (*b*). As the load current is assumed continuous, FD conducts from $\pi$ to $(2\pi + \alpha)$, $3\pi$ to $(4\pi + \alpha)$ and so on. Let the current at the beginning of mode II be $I_{01}$ as shown. As load current is passing through FD, the voltage equation for mode II is

$$0 = Ri_0 + L\frac{d\,i_0}{dt}$$

Its solution is $\quad i_0 = A\,e^{-(R/L)\,t}$

At $\omega t = \pi$, $\quad i_0 = I_{01}$.

It gives $\quad A = I_{01}\,e^{R\pi/\omega L}$

$$\therefore \qquad i_0 = I_{01} \cdot \exp\left[ -\frac{R}{L}\left( t - \frac{\pi}{\omega} \right) \right] \qquad \text{...(6.12)}$$

Note that for mode II, $\quad \pi < \omega t \le (2\pi + \alpha)$

Average load voltage $V_0$ from Fig. 6.3 (*b*) is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi} V_m \sin \omega t\, d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{2\pi}(1 + \cos \alpha) \qquad \text{...(6.13)}$$

Average load current, $I_0 = \frac{V_0}{R} = \frac{V_m}{2\pi R}(1 + \cos\alpha)$ ...(6.14)

Note that load current $i_0$ is contributed by SCR from $\alpha$ to $\pi$, $(2\pi + \alpha)$ to $3\pi$ and so on and by FD from 0 to $\alpha$, $\pi$ to $(2\pi + \alpha)$ and so on . Thus the waveshape of thyristor current $i_T$ is identical with the waveshape of $i_0$ for $\omega t = \alpha$ to $\pi$, $(2\pi + \alpha)$ to $3\pi$ and so on. Similarly, the wave shape of FD current $i_{fd}$ is identical with the waveform of $i_0$ for $\omega t = 0°$ to $\alpha$, $\pi$ to $(2\pi + \alpha)$ and so on.

In Fig. 6.2, load consumes power $p_1$ from source for $\alpha$ to $\pi$ (both $v_0$ and $i_0$ are positive) whereas energy stored in inductance $L$ is returned to the source as power $p_2$ for $\pi$ to $\beta$ ($v_0$ is negative and $i_0$ is positive ). As a result, net power consumed by the load is the difference of these two powers $p_1$ and $p_2$. In Fig. 6.3, load absorbs power for $\alpha$ to $\pi$, but for $\pi$ to $(2\pi + \alpha)$, energy stored in $L$ is delivered to load resistance $R$ through the FD. As a consequence, power consumed by load is more in Fig. 6.3. It can, therefore, be concluded that power delivered to load, for the same firing angle, is more when FD is used. As volt-ampere input is almost the same in both Figs. 6.2 and 6.3, the input *pf* (= power delivered to load/input volt-ampere) with the use of FD is improved.

It is also seen from Figs. 6.2 (*b*) and 6.3 (*b*) that load current waveform is improved with FD in Fig. 6.3 (*b*). Thus the advantages of using freewheeling diode are

(*i*) input *pf* is improved
(*ii*) load current waveform is improved and
(*iii*) as a result of (*ii*), load performance is better.

It may be seen from Fig. 6.3 (*b*) that freewheeling diode prevents the load voltage $v_0$ from becoming negative. Whenever load voltage tends to go negative, *FD* comes into play. As a result, load current is transferred from main thyristor to *FD*, allowing the thyristor to regain its forward blocking capability.

It is seen from Figs. 6.2 (*b*) and 6.3 (*b*) that supply current $i_s$ taken from the source is unidirectional and is in the form of dc pulses. Single phase half-wave converter thus introduces a dc component into the supply line. This is undesirable as it leads to saturation of the supply transformer and other difficulties (harmonics etc.).

These shortcomings can be overcome to some extent by the use of single-phase fullwave circuits discussed in Art. 6.2.

### 6.1.3. Single-phase Half-wave Circuit with RLE Load

A single-phase half-wave controlled converter with RLE load is shown in Fig. 6.4 (*a*). The counter emf E in the load may be due to a battery or a dc motor. The minimum value of firing angle is obtained from the relation $V_m \sin\omega t = E$. This is shown to occur at an angle $\theta_1$ where

$$\theta_1 = \sin^{-1}(E/V_m) \quad ...(6.15)$$

In case thyristor $T$ is fired at an angle $\alpha < \theta_1$, then $E > V_s$, SCR is reverse biased and therefore it will not turn on. Similarly, maximum value of firing angle is $\theta_2 = \pi - \theta_1$, Fig. 6.4 (*b*). During the interval load current $i_0$ is zero, load voltage $v_0 = E$ and during the time $i_0$ is not zero, $v_0$ follows $v_s$ curve. For the circuit of Fig. 6.4 (*a*), KVL gives the voltage differential equation as

$$V_m \sin \omega t = R\, i_0 + L \frac{d\, i_0}{dt} + E \qquad \text{...(6.16)}$$

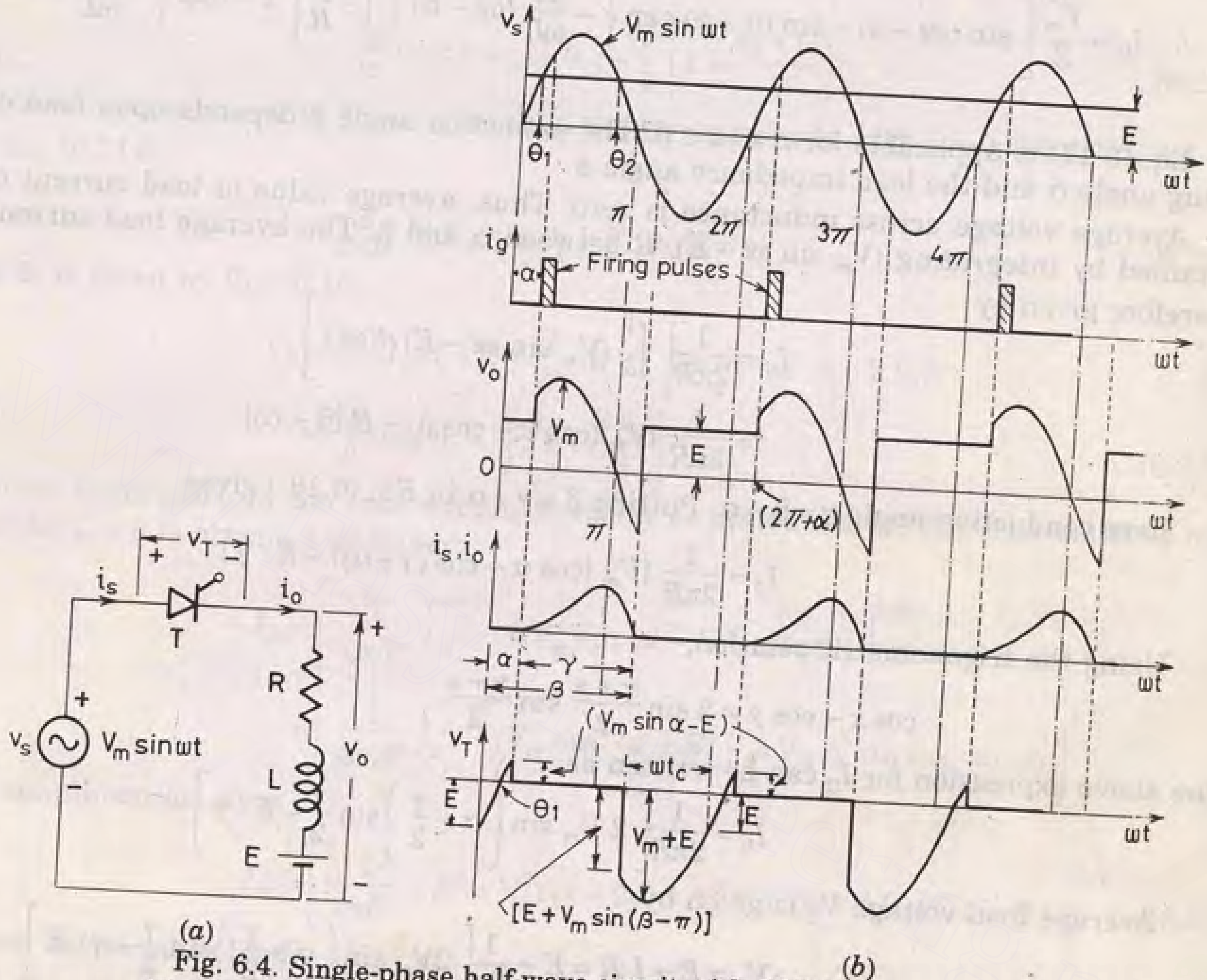


Fig. 6.4. Single-phase half-wave circuit with RLE load (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) voltage and current waveforms.

The solution of this equation is made up of two components ; namely steady-state current component $i_s$ and the transient current component $i_t$. For convenience, $i_s$ may be thought of as the sum of $i_{s1}$ and $i_{s2}$, where $i_{s1}$ is the steady state current due to ac source voltage acting alone and $i_{s2}$ is that due to dc counter emf $E$ acting alone. As in the presentation leading to Eq. (6.6), $i_{s1}$ due to source voltage $V_m \sin \omega t$ is given by

$$i_{s1} = \frac{V_m}{Z} \sin(\omega t - \phi)$$

If only $E$ were present, then steady state current $i_{s2}$ would be given by

$$i_{s2} = -(E/R)$$

The transient current $i_t$ is given by $\quad i_t = A\, e^{-(R/L)t}$

Thus the total current $i_0$ is given by $\quad i_0 = i_{s1} + i_{s2} + i_t = \dfrac{V_m}{Z} \sin(\omega t - \phi) - \dfrac{E}{R} + A\, e^{-(R/L)t}$

At $\omega t = \alpha$, $i_0 = 0$, *i.e.* at $t = \frac{\alpha}{\omega}$, $i_0 = 0$. This gives $A = \left[\frac{E}{R} - \frac{V_m}{Z}\sin(\alpha - \phi)\right] e^{-R\alpha/L\omega}$

$$\therefore \quad i_0 = \frac{V_m}{Z}\left[\sin(\omega t - \phi) - \sin(\alpha - \phi)\exp\left\{-\frac{R}{\omega L}(\omega t - \alpha)\right\}\right] - \frac{E}{R}\left[1 - \exp\left\{-\frac{R}{\omega L}(\omega t - \alpha)\right\}\right] \quad ...(6.17)$$

Eq. (6.17) is applicable for $\alpha \le \omega t \le \beta$. The extinction angle $\beta$ depends upon load emf $E$, firing angle $\alpha$ and the load impedance angle $\phi$.

Average voltage across inductance is zero. Thus, average value of load current can be obtained by integrating $(V_m \sin \omega t - E)/R$ between $\alpha$ and $\beta$. The average load current $I_0$ is therefore given by

$$I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi R}\left[\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} (V_m \sin \omega t - E)\, d(\omega t)\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi R}[V_m(\cos\alpha - \cos\beta) - E(\beta - \alpha)] \quad ...(6.18)$$

Here conduction angle $\gamma = \beta - \alpha$. Putting $\beta = \gamma + \alpha$ in Eq. (6.18 ) gives

$$I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi R}[V_m\{\cos\alpha - \cos(\gamma + \alpha)\} - E \cdot \gamma]$$

Using the trigonometric relation,

$$\cos x - \cos y = 2\sin\frac{x+y}{2}\sin\frac{y-x}{2}$$

the above expression for $I_0$ can be written as

$$I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi R}\left[2V_m \sin\left(\alpha + \frac{\gamma}{2}\right)\sin\frac{\gamma}{2} - E \cdot \gamma\right] \quad ...(6.19)$$

Average load voltage $V_0$ is given by

$$V_0 = E + I_0 R = E + \frac{1}{2\pi}\left[2V_m \sin\left(\alpha + \frac{\gamma}{2}\right)\sin\frac{\gamma}{2} - \gamma \cdot E\right]$$

$$= E\left(1 - \frac{\gamma}{2\pi}\right) + \frac{V_m}{\pi}\sin\left(\alpha + \frac{\gamma}{2}\right)\sin\frac{\gamma}{2} \quad ...(6.20)$$

The above expression for the average load voltage $V_0$ can also be obtained as under :

For periodicity $2\pi$, extending from $\alpha$ to $(2\pi + \alpha)$, we have

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\left[\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} V_m \sin\omega t \cdot d(\omega t) + E(2\pi + \alpha - \beta)\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}[V_m(\cos\alpha - \cos\beta) + E(2\pi + \alpha - \beta)]$$

In case $\beta$ is made equal to $(\gamma + \alpha)$ in the above expression, Eq. (6.20) can be obtained.

If load inductance $L$ is zero in Fig. 6.4 (*a*), then extinction angle $\beta$ would be equal to $\theta_2$ and $\gamma = \beta - \alpha = \theta_2 - \alpha$. But $\theta_2 = \pi - \theta_1$. This gives $\beta = \theta_2 = \pi - \theta_1$ and $\gamma = \pi - \theta_1 - \alpha$. Substituting these in Eq. (6.18), we get average load current $I_0$ as under :

$$I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi R}[V_m(\cos\alpha - \cos(\pi - \theta_1)) - E(\pi - \theta_1 - \alpha)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi R}[V_m (\cos\alpha + \cos\theta_1) - E(\pi - \theta_1 - \alpha)] \qquad ...(6.21\,a)$$

$$V_0 = E + I_0 R = E + \frac{1}{2\pi}[V_m (\cos\alpha + \cos\theta_1) - E(\pi - \theta_1 - \alpha)]$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{2\pi}(\cos\alpha + \cos\theta_1) + \frac{E}{2}\left(1 + \frac{\theta_1 + \alpha}{\pi}\right) \qquad ...(6.21\,b)$$

Assuming thyristor $T$ in Fig. 6.4 (*a*) to be fired continuously with $L = 0$, we get $\theta_1 = \alpha$ and from Eq. (6.21a),

$$I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi R}[2\,V_m \cos\theta_1 - E(\pi - 2\,\theta_1)] \qquad ...(6.22\,a)$$

where $\theta_1$ is given by Eq. (6.15),

$$V_0 = E + I_0\,R = E + \frac{1}{2\pi}[2\,V_m \cos\theta_1 - E(\pi - 2\,\theta_1)]$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{\pi}\cos\theta_1 + \frac{E}{2}\left(1 + \frac{2\,\theta_1}{\pi}\right) \qquad ...(6.22\,b)$$

For no inductance in the load circuit, $\beta = \pi - \alpha$ as stated above. The rms value of load current for $L = 0$ is obtained as under :

$$I_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi R^2}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi-\alpha}\{(V_m \sin\omega t - E)^2 \cdot d(\omega t)\}\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \left[\frac{1}{2\pi R^2}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi-\alpha}(V_m^2 \sin^2\omega t + E^2 - 2\,V_m E \sin\omega t)\cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

Its simplification gives

$$I_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi R^2}\{(E^2 + V_s^2)(\pi - 2\alpha) + V_s^2 \sin 2\alpha - 4\,V_m E\cos\alpha\}\right]^{1/2} \qquad ...(6.23)$$

Power delivered to load,

$$P = I_{or}^2\,R + I_0 E \text{ watts} \qquad ...(6.24)$$

Supply power factor $$= \frac{I_{or}^2 R + I_0 E}{V_s I_{or}} \qquad ...(6.25)$$

The time variation of voltage across thyristor is shown as $v_T = -E$ in Fig. 6.4 (*b*). At $\omega t = 0$, $v_s = 0$, and therefore, $v_T = -E$. At $\omega t = \theta$, $v_s = E$, therefore $v_t = 0$. At $\omega t = \alpha$, $v_s = V_m \sin\alpha$, therefore $v_T = V_m \sin\alpha - E$. During the conduction angle $\gamma = (\beta - \alpha)$, $v_T = 0$. At $\omega t = \beta$, $v_s$ has reverse polarity. Therefore, just after thyristor is turned off at $\omega t = \beta$, voltage $v_T = -[V_m \sin(\beta - \pi) + E]$. It is also possible to write $v_T = V_m \sin\beta - E$ at $\omega t = \beta$, because $V_m \sin\beta$ is negative for $\beta > \pi$. The magnitude of maximum reverse voltage is $(V_m + E)$ as shown in Fig. 6.4 (*b*). Fig. 6.4 (*b*) also reveals that circuit turn-off time is $\frac{2\pi - \beta}{\omega}$ sec.

**Example 6.1.** *A single-phase 230 V, 1 kW heater is connected across 1-phase, 230 V, 50 Hz supply through an SCR. For firing angle delays of* 45° and 90°, *calculate the power absorbed in the heater element.*

**Solution.** Heater resistance $R = \frac{(230)^2}{1000}\,\Omega$

From Eq. (6.3), the value of rms voltage for $\alpha = 45°$ is

$$V_{or} = \frac{\sqrt{2}\cdot 230}{2\sqrt{\pi}}\left[\left(\pi - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) + \frac{1}{2}\sin 90°\right]^{1/2} = 155.071 \text{ V}$$

$\therefore$ Power absorbed by heater element for $\alpha = 45°$ is

$$\frac{V_{or}^2}{R} = \left(\frac{155.071}{230}\right)^2 \times 1000 = 454.57 \text{ watts}$$

For $\alpha = 90°$, rms voltage is

$$V_{or} = \frac{\sqrt{2}\cdot 230}{2\sqrt{\pi}}\left[\left(\pi - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + 0\right]^{1/2} = 115 \text{ V}$$

$\therefore$ Power absorbed for $\alpha = 90°$ is

$$\frac{V_{or}^2}{R} = \left(\frac{115}{230}\right)^2 \times 1000 = 250 \text{ watts.}$$

**Example 6.2.** *A dc battery is charged through a resistor R as shown in Fig. 6.5 (a). Derive an expression for the average value of charging current in terms of $V_m$, E, R etc. on the assumption that SCR is fired continuously.*

*(a) For an ac source voltage of 230 V, 50 Hz, find the value of average charging current for R = 8 Ω and E = 150 V.*

*(b) Find the power supplied to battery and that dissipated in the resistor.*

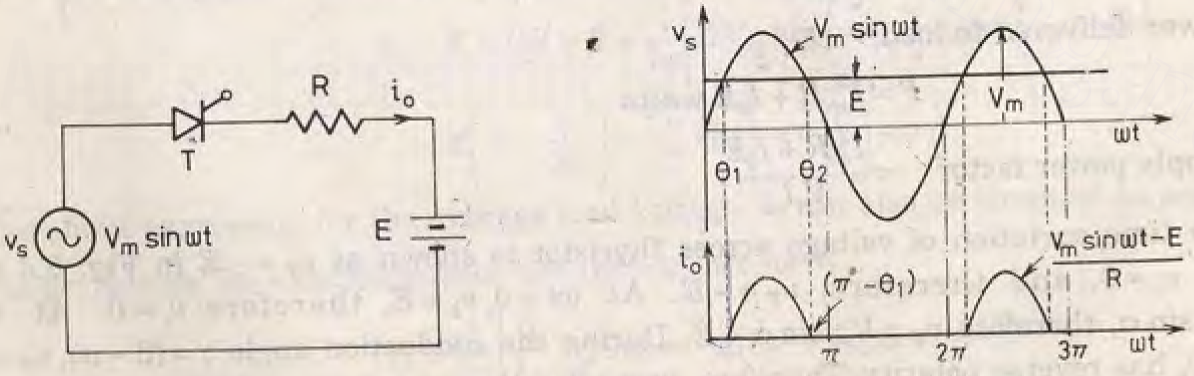
*(c) Calculate the supply pf.*

**Solution.** For the circuit of Fig. 6.5 (*a*), the voltage equation is

$$V_m \sin \omega t = E + i_0 R$$

or

$$i_0 = \frac{V_m \sin \omega t - E}{R}$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 6.5. (*a*) Power circuit diagram (*b*) various waveforms for Example 6.2.

It is seen from Fig. 6.5 that SCR is turned on when $V_m \sin \theta_1 = E$ and is turned off when $V_m \sin \theta_2 = E$, where $\theta_2 = \pi - \theta_1$. The battery charging requires only the average current $I_0$ given by

$$I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi R}\left[\int_{\theta_1}^{\pi - \theta_1} (V_m \sin \omega t - E)\, d(\omega t)\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi R}\left[2V_m \cos\theta_1 - E(\pi - 2\theta_1)\right]$$

(*a*) Here $\theta_1 = \sin^{-1}\dfrac{150}{\sqrt{2}\cdot 230} = 27.466°$

$$\therefore \qquad I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi\cdot 8}\left[2\cdot\sqrt{2}\cdot 230\cos 27.466° - 150\left(\pi - \frac{2\times 27.496\times\pi}{180}\right)\right] = 4.9676 \text{ A.}$$

(*b*) Power supplied to battery $= EI_0 = 150 \times 4.9676 = 745.14$ W.

For finding the power dissipated in $R$, rms value of charging current must by obtained From Eq. (6.23),

$$I_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi\cdot 64}\left\{(150^2 + 230^2)\left(\pi - 2\times 27.466\frac{\pi}{180}\right) + (230)^2 \sin 2\times 27.466 - 4\cdot\sqrt{2}\cdot 230\cdot 150\cos 27.466°\right\}\right]^{1/2} = 9.2955 \text{ A.}$$

$\therefore$ Power dissipated in resistor $= (9.2955)^2 \times 8 = 691.25$ Watts.

(*c*) From Eq. (6.25), supply *pf* $= \dfrac{691.25 + 745.14}{230\times 9.2955} = 0.672$ lagging.

**Example 6.3.** *A 230 V, 50 Hz, one-pulse SCR controlled converter is triggered at a firing angle of 40° and the load current extinguishes at an angle of 210°. Find the circuit turn off time, average output voltage and the average load current for*

(*a*) $R = 5\ \Omega$ *and* $L = 2mH$:

(*b*) $R = 5\ \Omega$, $L = 2$ *mH and* $E = 110$ V.

**Solution.** (*a*) For this part, refer to Fig. 6.2. It is seen from this figure that circuit turn off time $t_c$

$$= \frac{2\pi - \beta}{\omega} = \frac{(360 - 210)\,\pi}{180\times 2\pi\times 50} = 8.333 \text{ m–sec}$$

210°

From Eq. (6.8), average output voltage

$$V_0 = \frac{\sqrt{2}\cdot 230}{2\pi}\left[\cos 40° - \cos 210°\right] = 84.477 \text{ V}$$

$\dfrac{\sqrt{3}\cdot 230}{2\pi}$

Average load current $\quad I_0 = \dfrac{V_0}{R} = \dfrac{84.477}{5} = 16.8954$ A.

(*b*) Fig. 6.4 shows that circuit turn-off time is again 8.333 m-sec. From Eq. (6.18), average load current

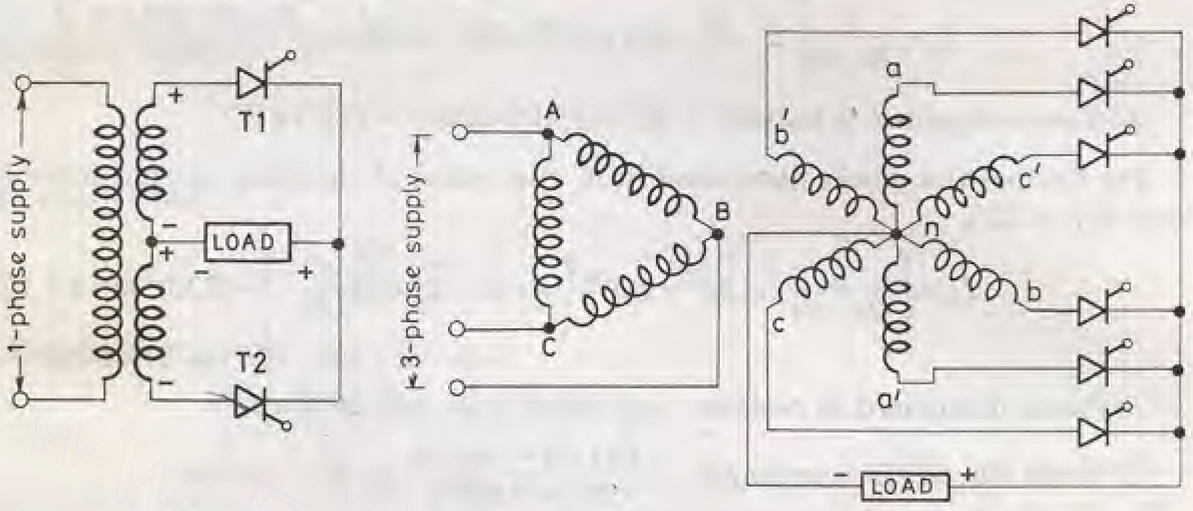
$$I_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi\cdot 5}\left[\sqrt{2}\cdot 230\,(\cos 40° - \cos 210°) - 110\,(210 - 40)\frac{\pi}{180}\right] = 6.5064 \text{ A.}$$

$\omega = 2\pi f = 2\pi\times 50$

$\therefore$ Average load voltage, $V_0 = E + I_0 R = 110 + 6.5064\times 5 = 149.04$ V.

## 6.2. FULL-WAVE CONTROLLED CONVERTERS

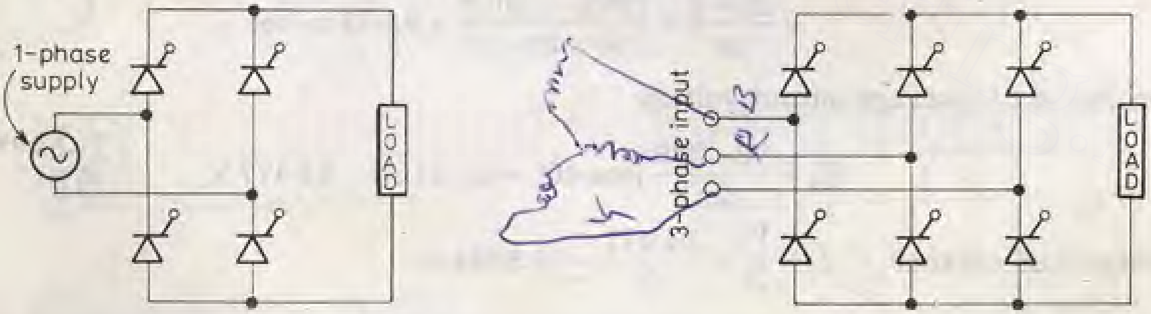
There is a large variety of SCR controlled coverters (or rectifiers). One way of classifying these ac to dc converters is according to the number of supply phases on the input side. As per this classification, the ac to dc converters discussed in Figs. 6.1 to 6.4 are single-phase half-wave converters. Three-phase controlled rectifiers, as the name suggests, have three-phase supply on their input side, these are discussed later in this chapter. The other way of classification is according to the number of load current pulses per cycle of source voltage. It is seen from Art 6.1 that single-phase half-wave controlled rectifiers produce only one pulse of load current during one cycle of source voltage, these can therefore be termed as single-phase one-pulse converters. Thus, the controlled rectifiers discussed in Figs. 6.1 to 6.4 are all single-phase one pulse converters.



(a) (b)

Fig. 6.6. (a) Single-phase two-pulse mid-point converter and (b) three-phase six-pulse mid-point converter.

The disadvantages of single-phase half-wave, or single-phase one-pulse converter, are minimised by the use of single-phase full wave, or single-phase two pulse, converters. In practice, there are two basic configurations for full-wave controlled converters. One configuration uses an input transformer with two windings for each input phase winding. This is called *mid-point converter.* A single-phase two-pulse mid-point SCR converter is shown in Fig. 6.6 (a) and a three-phase 6 pulse mid-point converter in Fig. 6.6 (b).



(a) (b)

Fig. 6.7. (a) Single-phase two-pulse bridge converter and (b) Three-phase six-pulse bridge converter.

The second configuration uses SCRs in the form of a bridge circuit. Single-phase full-wave, or two-pulse, bridge converter using four SCRs is shown in Fig. 6.7 (a) and a three-phase six-pulse bridge converter using six SCRs in Fig. 6.7 (b). A bridge converter has some advantages over mid-point converter, these will be discussed after both these configurations are studied in the next article.

## 6.3. SINGLE-PHASE FULL-WAVE CONVERTERS

In single-phase two-pulse (or full-wave) converters, voltage at the output terminals can be controlled by adjusting the firing angle delay of the thyristors. Mid-point or bridge-type circuits may be used for ac to dc conversion. In this section, first mid-point and then bridge-type configurations are discussed with input from single-phase source.

### 6.3.1. Single-phase Full-wave Mid-point Converter

The circuit diagram of a single-phase full-wave converter using a centre-tapped transformer is shown in Fig. 6.8 (*a*). When terminal *a* is positive with respect to *n*, terminal *n* is positive with respect to *b*. Therefore, $v_{an} = v_{nb}$ or $v_{an} = -v_{bn}$ as *n* is the mid-point of secondary winding. Equivalent circuit of this arrangement is shown in Fig. 6.8 (*b*). It is assumed here that load, or output, current is continuous and turns ratio from primary to each secondary is unity.

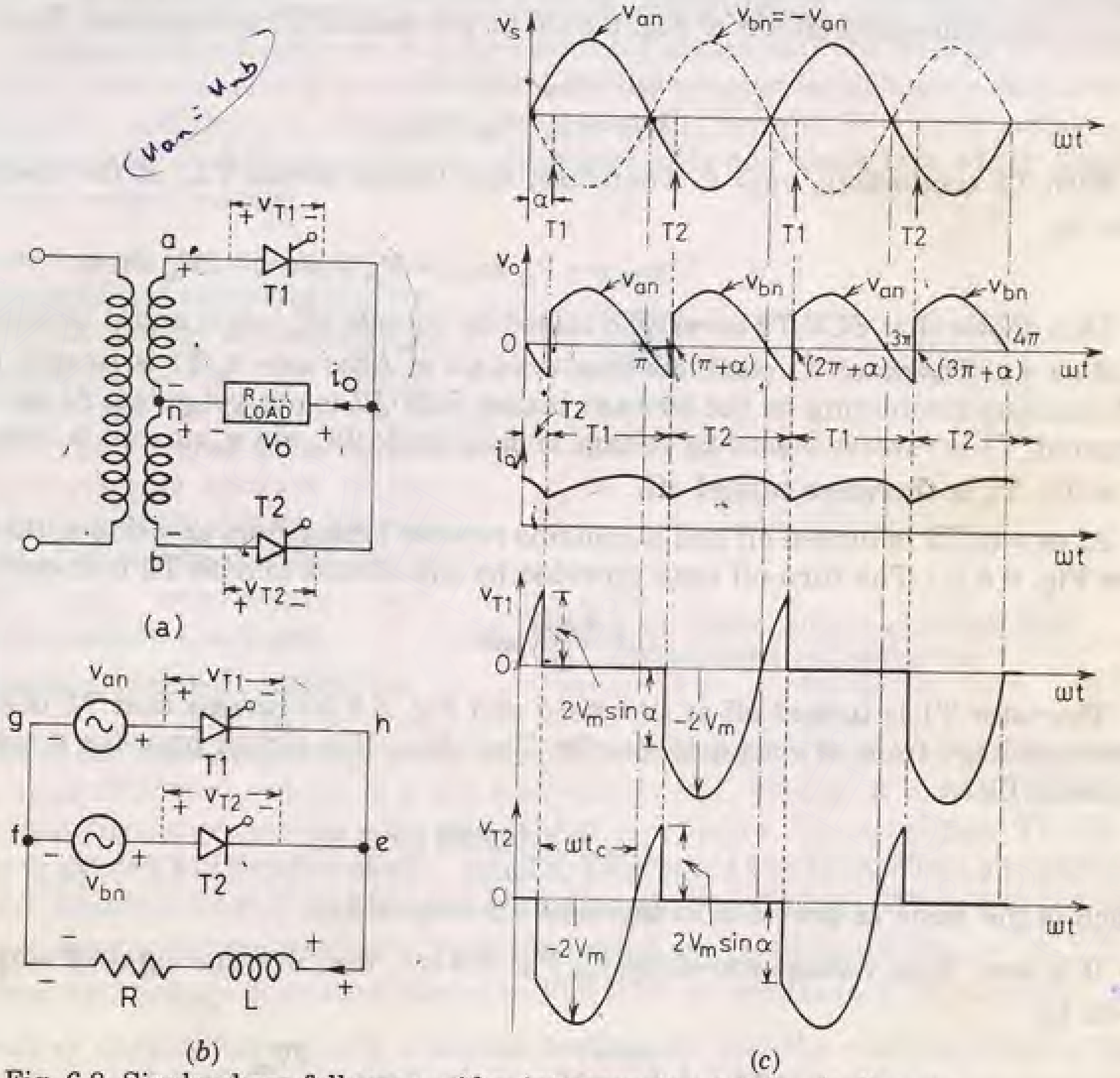


Fig. 6.8. Single-phase full-wave mid-point converter (*a*) circuit diagram (*b*) equivalent circuit and (*c*) various voltage and current waveforms.

Thyristors T1 and T2 are forward biased during positive and negative half cycles respectively ; these are therefore triggered accordingly. Suppose T2 is already conducting. After $\omega t = 0$, $v_{an}$ is positive, T1 is therefore forward biased and when triggered at delay angle α, T1 gets turned on. At this firing angle α, supply voltage $2V_m \sin\alpha$ reverse biases T2,, this SCR is therefore turned off. Here T1 is called the incoming thyristor and T2 the outgoing thyristor. As the incoming SCR is triggered, ac supply voltage applies reverse bias across the outgoing thyristor and turns it off. Load current is also transferred from outgoing SCR to incoming SCR. This process of SCR turn off by natural reversal of ac supply voltage is called *natural* or *line commutation.*

From the equivalent circuit of Fig. 6.8 (*b*), it is seen that if

$$v_{an} = V_m \sin \omega t,$$

then $$v_{bn} = -v_{nb} = -V_m \sin \omega t$$

and $$v_{ab} = v_{an} + v_{nb} = 2V_m \sin \omega t$$

When $\omega t = \alpha$, T1 is triggered. SCR *T2* is subjected to a reverse voltage $v_{ab} = 2V_m \sin \alpha$ as stated before ; current is transferred from T2 to T1 and as a result T2 is turned off. The magnitude of reverse voltage across T2 can also be obtained by applying KVL to the loop *efghe* of the equivalent circuit of Fig. 6.8 (*b*) at the instant T1 is triggered. Thus,

$$v_{T2} - v_{bn} + v_{T1} = 0$$

or $$v_{T2} = v_{bn} - v_{an} + v_{T1}$$

With T1 conducting, $v_{T1} = 0$. Therefore, the voltage across T2,, at the instant $\omega t = \alpha$ is given by

$$v_{T2} = -V_m \sin \alpha - V_m \sin \alpha = -2V_m \sin \alpha$$

This shows that SCR T2 is reverse biased by voltage $2V_m \sin \alpha$ and it is therefore turned off at $\omega t = \alpha$. Thyristor T1 conducts from $\alpha$ to $\pi + \alpha$. After $\omega t = \pi$, T1 is reverse biased but it will continue conducting as the forward biased SCR T2 is not get gated. At $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$, T2 is triggered, T1 is reverse biased by voltage of magnitude $2V_m \sin \alpha$, current is transferred from T1 to T2, T1 is therefore turned off.

At $\omega t = \alpha$, T2 is turned off and it remains reverse biased from $\omega t = \alpha$ to $\pi$, this can be seen from Fig. 6.8 (*c*). The turn-off time provided by this circuit to SCR T2 is therefore given by

$$t_c = \frac{\pi - \alpha}{\omega} \text{ sec} \qquad \text{...(6.26)}$$

Thyristor T1 is turned off at $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$ and Fig. 6.8 (*c*) reveals that T1 is subjected to a reverse voltage from $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$ to $\omega t = 2\pi$. Therefore, this circuit provides a turn-off time to thyristor T1 as

$$t_c = \frac{2\pi - (\pi + \alpha)}{\omega} = \frac{\pi - \alpha}{\omega}$$

which is the same as provided to thyristor T2 ; Eq. (6.26).

It is seen from voltage waveform $v_0$, Fig. 6.8 (*c*) , that average value of output voltage is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\alpha}^{\alpha + \pi} V_m \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{2V_m}{\pi} \cos \alpha \qquad \text{...(6.27)}$$

The circuit turn-off time $t_c$, Eq. (6.26), as provided by this circuit of Fig. 6.8 (*a*) must be greater than SCR turn-off time $t_q$ as given in the specification sheet. In case $t_c < t_q$, commutation failure will occur and the whole secondary winding will be short circuited. During commutation failure, if the rate of rise of fault current is high, the incoming SCR may be damaged in case protective elements do not clear the fault. Fig. 6.8 (*c*) reveals that each SCR is subjected to a peak voltage of $2V_m$.

The following observations can be made from the above study.

(*i*) When commutation of an SCR is desired, it must be reverse biased and the incoming SCR must be forward biased.

(*ii*) When incoming SCR is gated on, current is transferred from outgoing SCR to incoming SCR.

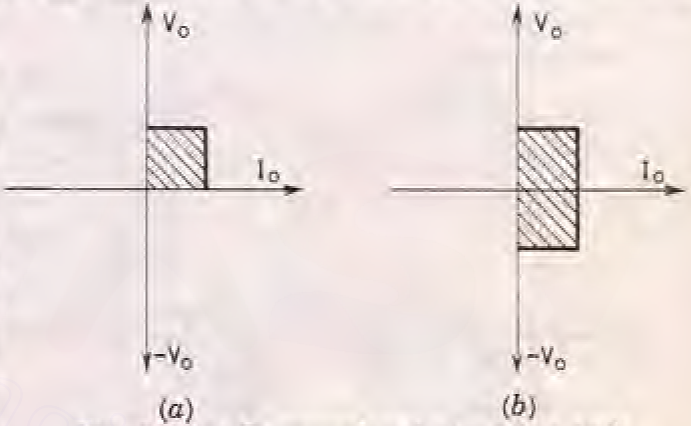
(*iii*) The circuit turn-off time must be greater than SCR turn-off time.

It is seen from above that thyristor commutation achieved by means of natural reversal of line voltage, called line or natural commutation, is simple ; it is therefore employed in all phase-controlled rectifiers, ac voltage controllers and cycloconverters.

### 6.3.2. Single-phase Full-wave Bridge Converters

Phase-controlled single-phase, or three-phase, full-wave converters are primarily of three types ; namely uncontrolled converters, half-controlled converters and fully-controlled converters. An *uncontrolled converter* or *rectifier* uses only diodes and the level of dc output voltage cannot be controlled. A *half-controlled converter* or semiconverter uses a mixture of diodes and thyristors and there is a limited control over the level of dc output voltage. A *fully-controlled converter* or *full converter* uses thyristors only and there is a wider control over the level of dc output voltage.

A semiconverter is *one–quadrant* converter. A one-quadrant converter has one polarity of dc output voltage and current at its output terminals, Fig. 6.9 (*a*). A *two-quadrant* converter is one in which voltage polarity can reverse but current direction cannot reverse because of the unidirectional nature of thyristors, Fig. 6.9 (*b*). In this part of the section, single-phase bridge type full converters and semiconverters are studied in detail.



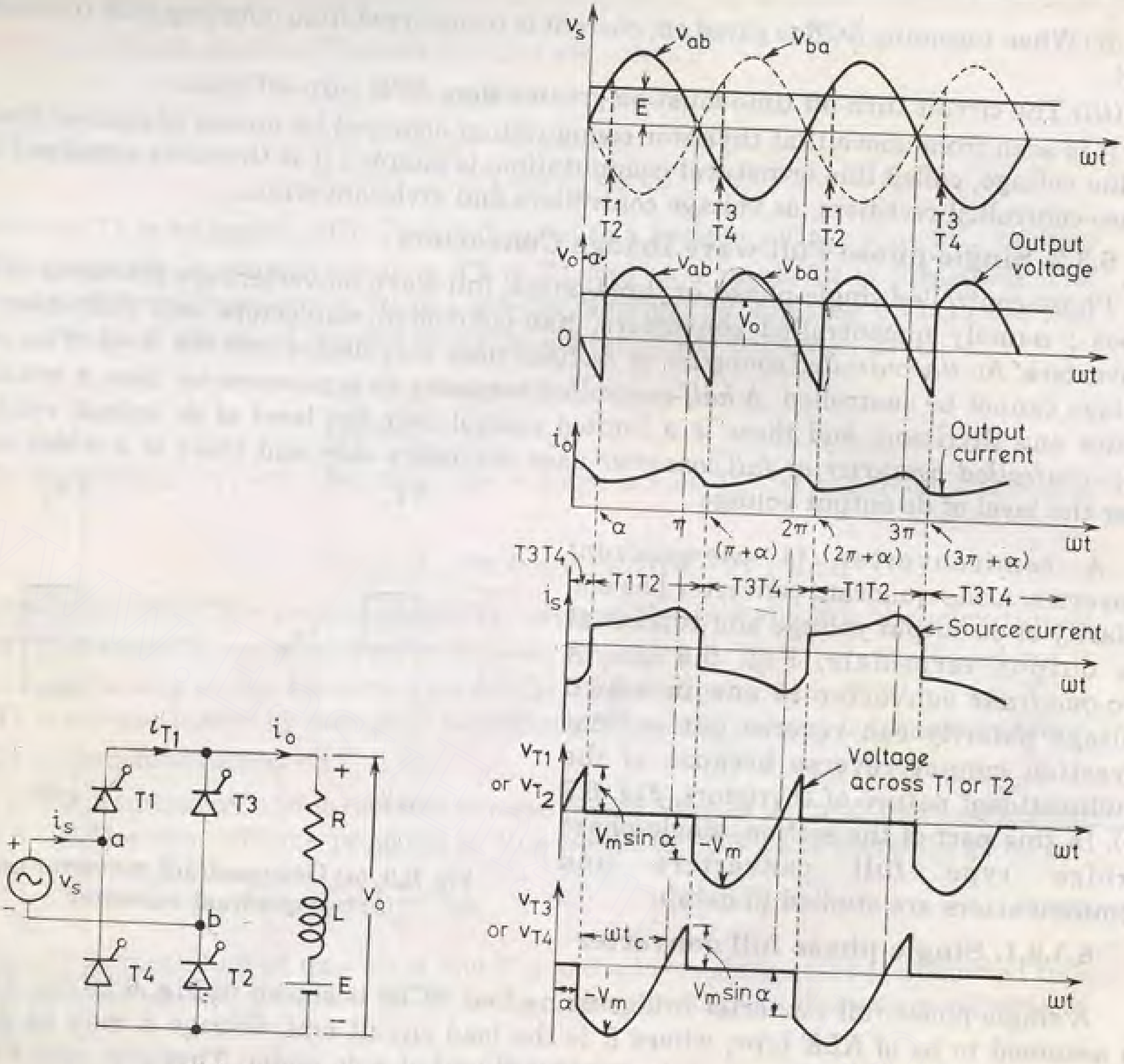
(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 6.9. (*a*) One-quadrant converter and (*b*) two-quadrant converter.

#### 6.3.2.1. Single-phase full converter

A single-phase full converter bridge using four SCRs is shown in Fig. 6.10 (*a*). The load is assumed to be of *RLE* type, where *E* is the load circuit emf. Voltage *E* may be due to a battery in the load circuit or may be generated emf of a dc motor. Thyristor pair T1, T2 is simultaneously triggered and π radians later, pair T3, T4 is gated together. When a is positive with respect to *b*, supply voltage waveform is shown as $v_{ab}$ in Fig. 6.10 (*b*). When *b* is positive with respect to *a*, supply voltage waveform is shown dotted as $v_{ba}$. Obviously, $v_{ab} = -v_{ba}$. The current directions and voltage polarities shown in Fig. 6.10 (*a*) are treated as positive.

Load current or output current $i_0$ is assumed continuous over the working range ; this means that load is always connected to the ac voltage source through the thyristors. Between $\omega t = 0$ and $\omega t = \alpha$ ; T1, T2 are forward biased through already conducting SCRs T3 and T4 and block the forward voltage. For continuous current, thyristors T3, T4 conduct after $\omega t = 0$ even though these are reverse biased. When forward biased SCRs T1, T2 are triggered at $\omega t = \alpha$, they get turned on. As a result, supply voltage $V_m \sin \alpha$ immediately appears across thyristors T3, T4 as a reverse bias, these are therefore turned off by natural, or line, commutation. At the same time, load current $i_0$ flowing through T3, T4 is transferred to T1, T2 at $\omega t = \alpha$. Note that when T1, T2 are gated at $\omega t = \alpha$, these SCRs will get turned on only if $V_m \sin \alpha > E$. Thyristors T1, T2 conduct from $\omega t = \alpha$ to $\pi + \alpha$. At $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$, forward biased SCRs T3, T4 are triggered. The supply voltage turns off T1, T2 by natural commutation and the load current is transferred from T1, T2 to T3, T4.



(a) (b)

Fig. 6.10. (a) Single-phase full converter bridge with RLE load (b) voltage and current waveforms for continuous load current.

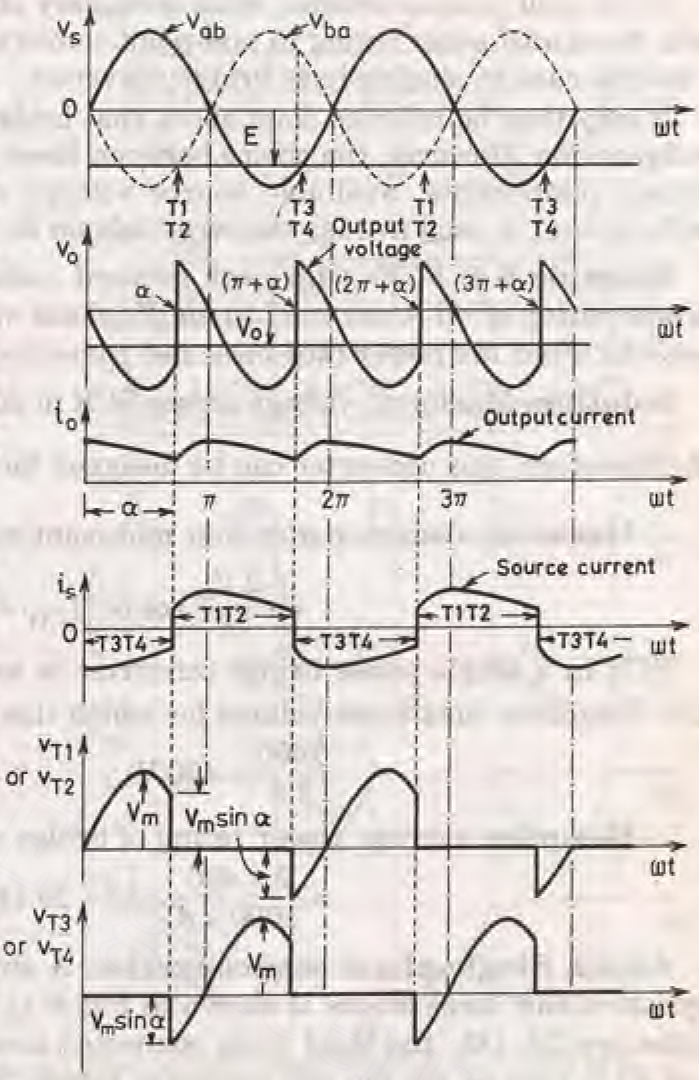
Voltage across thyristors T1, T2 is shown as $v_{T1} = v_{T2}$ and that across T3, T4 as $v_{T3} = v_{T4}$. Maximum reverse voltage across T1, T2, T3 or T4 is $V_m$ and at the instant of triggering with firing angle α, each SCR is subjected to a reverse voltage of $V_m \sin \alpha$. Source current $i_s$ is treated as positive in the arrow direction. Under this assumption, source current is shown positive when T1, T2 are conducting and negative when T3, T4 are conducting, Fig. 6.10 (b).

During α to π, both $v_s$ and $i_s$ are positive, power therefore flows from ac source to load. During the interval π to (π + α), $v_s$ is negative but $i_s$ is positive, the load therefore returns some of its energy to the supply system. But the net power flow is from ac source to dc load because $(\pi - \alpha) > \alpha$ in Fig. 6.10 (b).

The load terminal voltage, or full-converter output voltage, $v_0$ is shown in Fig. 6.10 (b). The average value of output voltage $V_0$ is given by

α > 90

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi+\alpha} V_m \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{2\,V_m}{\pi} \cos \alpha \qquad \text{...(6.28)}$$



(c)

Fig. 6.10 (c) Voltage and current waveform for single-phase full converter of Fig. 6.10 (a) for $\alpha > 90°$.

Eq. (6.28) shows that if $\alpha > 90°$, $V_0$ is negative. This is illustrated in Fig. 6.10 (c), where α is shown greater than 90°. In this figure, average terminal voltage $V_0$ is negative. If the load circuit emf $E$ is reversed, this source $E$ will feed power back to ac supply. This operation of full converter is known as inverter operation of the converter. The full converter with firing angle delay greater than 90° is called *line-commutated inverter*. Such an operation is used in the regenerative braking mode of a dc motor in which case then $E$ is counter emf of the dc motor.

During 0 to α, ac source voltage $v_s$ is positive but ac source current is negative, power therefore flows from dc source to ac source. From α to π, both $v_s$ and $i_s$ are positive, power therefore, flows from ac source to dc source. But the net power flow is from dc source to ac source, because $(\pi - \alpha) < \alpha$ in Fig. 6.10 (c).

In converter operation, the average value of output voltage $V_0$ must be greater than load circuit emf $E$. During inverter operation, load circuit emf when inverted to ac must be more than ac supply voltage. In other words, dc source voltage $E$ must be more than inverter voltage $V_0$, only then power would flow from dc source to ac supply system. But in both converter and inverter modes, thyristors must be forward biased and current through SCRs must flow in the same direction as these are unidirectional devices. This is the reason output current $i_0$ is shown positive in Fig. 6.10 (c). As before, source current $i_s$ is positive when T1, T2 are conducting.

The variation of voltage across thyristors T1, T2 T3 or T4 reveals that circuit turn-off time for both converter and inverter operations is given by

$$t_c = \frac{\pi - \alpha}{\omega} \text{ sec}$$

As both the types of phase-controlled converters have been studied, the advantages of single-phase bridge converter over single-phase mid-point converter can now be stated :

(*i*) SCRs are subjected to a peak inverse voltage of 2 $V_m$ in mid-point converter and $V_m$ in full converter. Thus for the same voltage and current ratings of SCRs, power handled by mid-point configuration is about half of that handled by bridge configuration, see Example 6.4.

(*ii*) In mid-point converter, each secondary should be able to supply the load power. As such, the transformer rating in mid-point converter is double the load rating. This, however, is not the case in single-phase bridge converter.

It may thus be inferred from above that bridge configuration is preferred over mid-point configuration. However, the choice between these two types depends primarily on cost of the various components, available source voltage and the load voltage required. Mid-point configuration is used in case the terminals on dc side have to be grounded.

**Example 6.4.** *SCRs with peak forward voltage rating of 1000 V and average on-state current rating of 40 A are used in single-phase mid-point converter and single-phase bridge converter. Find the power that these two converters can handle. Use a factor of safety of 2.5.*

**Solution.** Maximum voltage across SCR in single-phase mid-point converter is $2V_m$, Fig. 6.8. Therefore, this converter can be designed for a maximum voltage of $\frac{1000}{2 \times 2.5} = 200$ V.

∴ Maximum average power that mid-point converter can handle

$$= \left(\frac{2\,V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha\right) I_{TAV} = \frac{2 \times 200}{\pi} \times 40\,\frac{1}{1000} = 5.093 \text{ kW}$$

SCR in a single-phase bridge converter is subjected to a maximum voltage of $V_m$, Fig. 6.10. Therefore, maximum voltage for which this converter can be designed is

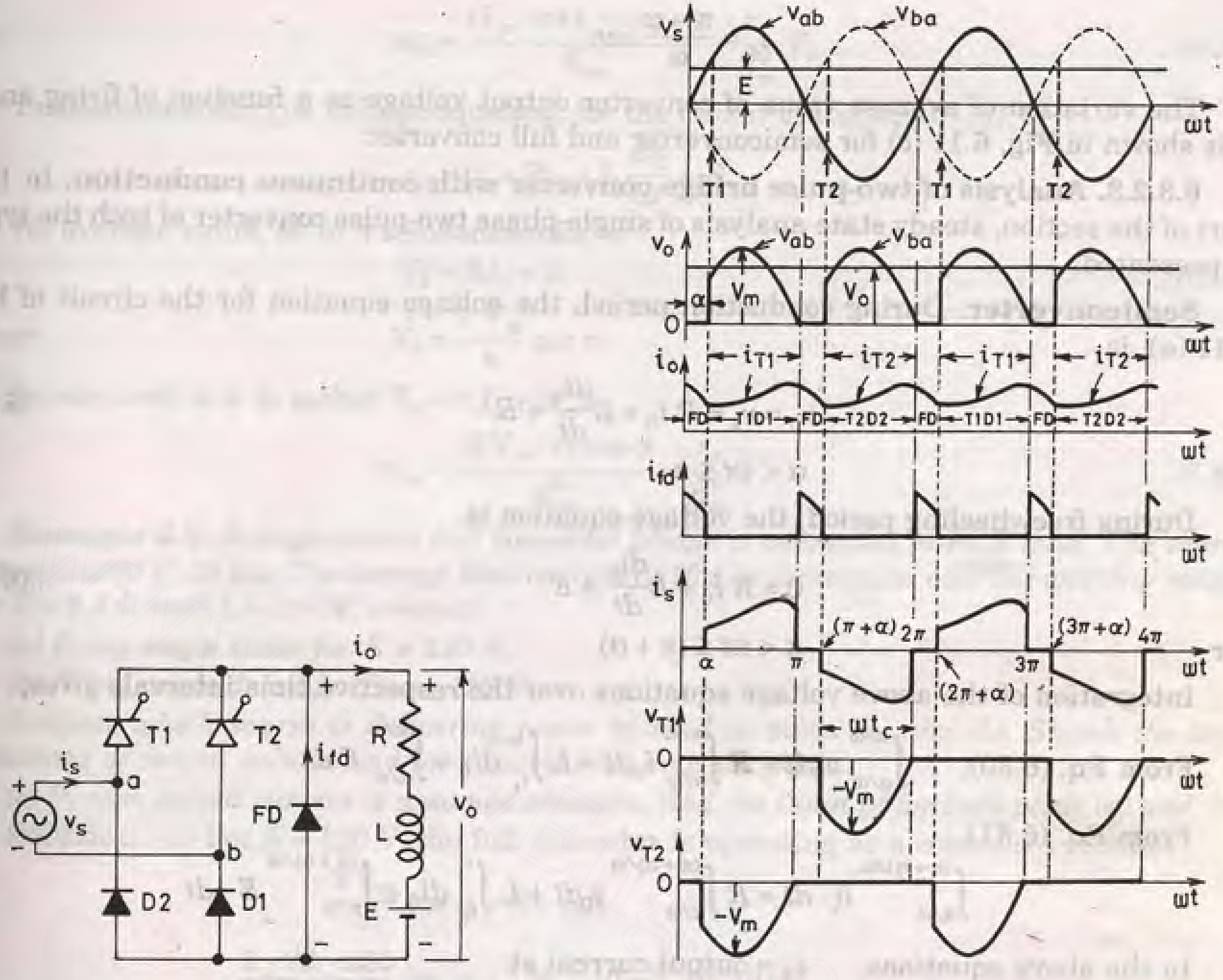
$$\frac{1000}{2.5} = 400 \text{ V}$$

∴ Maximum average power rating of bridge converter

$$= \frac{2 \times 400}{1000 \times \pi} \times 40 = 10.186 \text{ kW.}$$

**6.3.2.2. Single-phase semiconverter.** A single-phase semiconverter bridge with two thyristors and three diodes is shown in Fig. 6.11 (*a*). The two thyristors are T1, T2; the two diodes are D1, D2 ; the third diode connected across load is freewheeling diode FD. The load is of RLE type as for the full converter bridge. Various voltage and current waveforms for this converter are shown in Fig. 6.11 (*b*), where load current is assumed continuous over the working range.

After $\omega t = 0$, thyristor T1 is forward biased only when source voltage $V_m \sin \omega t$ exceeds $E$. Thus, T1 is triggered at a firing angle delay $\alpha$ such that $V_m \sin \alpha > E$. With T1 on, load gets connected to source through T1 and D1 For the period $\omega t = \alpha$ to $\pi$, load current $i_0$ flows through RLE, D1, source and T1 and the load terminal voltage $v_0$ is of the same waveshape as the ac source voltage $v_s$. Soon after $\omega t = \pi$, load voltage $v_0$ tends to reverse as the ac source voltage changes polarity. Just as $v_0$ tends to reverse (at $\omega t = \pi +$ ), FD is forward biased and starts conducting. The load, or output, current $i_0$ is transferred from T1, D1 to FD. As SCR T1 is reverse biased at $\omega t = \pi +$ through FD, T1 is turned off at $\omega t = \pi +$. The load terminals are short circuited through FD, therefore load, or output, voltage $v_0$ is zero during $\pi < \omega t < (\pi + \alpha)$. After $\omega t = \pi$, during the negative half cycle, T2 will be forward biased only when source voltage is more than $E$. At $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$, source voltage exceeds $E$, T2 is therefore triggered. Soon after $(\pi + \alpha)$, FD is reverse biased and is therefore turned off ; load current now shifts from FD to T2, D2. At $\omega t = 2\pi$, FD is again forward biased and output current $i_0$ is transferred from T2, D2 to FD as explained before. The source current $i_s$ is positive from $\alpha$ to $\pi$ when T1, D1 conduct and is negative from $(\pi + \alpha)$ to $2\pi$ when T1, D2 conduct, see Fig. 6.11 (*b*).



(a) (b)

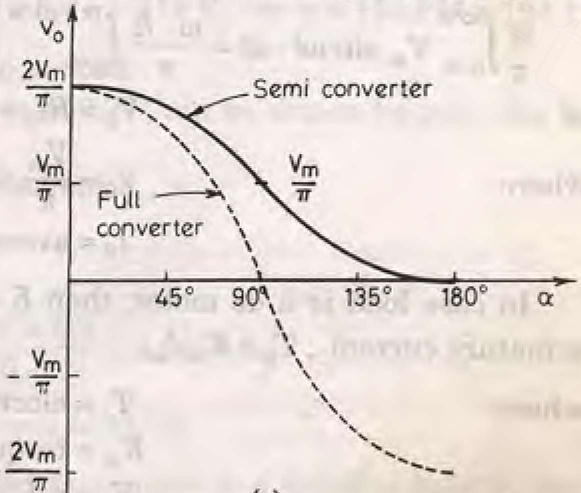
Fig. 6.11. Single-phase semiconverter bridge (*a*) Power-circuit diagram with RLE load and (*b*) voltage and current waveforms for continuous load current.

During the interval α to π, T1 and D1 conduct and ac source delivers energy to the load circuit. This energy is partially stored in inductance *L*, partially stored as electric energy in load-circuit emf *E* and partially dissipated as heat in *R*. During the freewheeling period π to (π + α), energy stored in inductance is recovered and is partially dissipated in *R* and partially added to the energy stored in load emf *E*. No energy is fed back to the source during freewheeling period.

For semiconverter, the average output voltage $V_0$, from Fig. 6.11 (*b*), is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi} V_m \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{\pi}(1+\cos \alpha) \qquad \text{...(6.29)}$$

The variation of voltage across T1 and T2 is also depicted in Fig. 6.11 (*b*). It is seen from these waveforms that circuit-turn off time for the semiconverter is



(c)

Fig. 6.11. (*c*) Converter output voltage as a function of firing angle for semi- and full-converters.

$$t_c = \frac{\pi - \alpha}{\omega} \text{ sec}$$

The variation of average value of converter output voltage as a function of firing angle α is shown in Fig. 6.11 (*c*) for semiconverter and full converter.

**6.3.2.3. Analysis of two-pulse bridge converter with continuous conduction.** In this part of the section, steady state analysis of single-phase two-pulse converter of both the types is presented.

**Semiconverter**. During conduction period, the voltage equation for the circuit of Fig. 6.11 (*a*), is

$$v_0 = v_s = R\, i_0 + L\frac{di_0}{dt} + E \qquad \text{...(6.30)}$$

for $\alpha < \omega t \le \pi$

During freewheeling period, the voltage equation is

$$0 = R\, i_0 + L\frac{di_0}{dt} + E \qquad \text{...(6.31)}$$

for $\pi < \omega t \le (\pi + \alpha)$

Integration of the above voltage equations over the respective time intervals gives,

From Eq. (6.30), $\int_{\alpha/\omega}^{\pi/\omega} v_0 dt = R\int_{\alpha/\omega}^{\pi/\omega} i_0 dt + L\int_{i_1}^{i_2} di_0 + \int_{\alpha/\omega}^{\pi/\omega} E\, dt$

From Eq. (6.31),

$$\int_{\pi/\omega}^{(\pi+\alpha)/\omega} 0 \cdot dt = R\int_{\pi/\omega}^{(\pi+\alpha)/\omega} i_0 dt + L\int_{i_2}^{i_1} di_0 + \int_{\pi/\omega}^{(\pi+\alpha)/\omega} E \cdot dt$$

In the above equations, $i_1$ = output current at

$\omega t = \alpha, \pi + \alpha$ etc. and $i_2$ = output current at

$\omega t = \pi, 2\pi$ etc.

Adding the respective terms from the above two equations and dividing the sum by the time of one-half cycle, (*i.e.* π/ω),

$$\frac{\omega}{\pi}\int_{\alpha/\omega}^{\pi/\omega} V_m \sin \omega t \cdot dt = \frac{\omega \cdot R}{\pi}\int_{\alpha/\omega}^{(\pi+\alpha)/\omega} i_0\, dt + L\,[(i_2 - i_1) + (i_1 - i_2)] + \frac{\omega \cdot E}{\pi\omega}[\pi - \alpha + \pi + \alpha - \pi]$$

or $V_0 = RI_0 + E$ ...(6.32)

where $V_0 = \frac{V_m}{\pi}(1 + \cos \alpha)$ = average voltage applied to the load

$I_0$ = average load current ; $E$ = Load circuit emf

In case load is a dc motor, then $E = K_m\, \omega_m$; $R = r_a$, armature-circuit resistance ; $I_0 = I_a$, armature current ; $T_e = K_m\, I_a$,

where $T_e$ = electromagnetic torque in Nm.

$K_m$ = torque constant in Nm/A, or emf constant in V-sec/rad

$\therefore \quad V_0 = r_a I_a + K_m \omega_m$

or $\omega_m = \frac{V_0 - r_a I_a}{K_m}$

or
$$\omega_m = \frac{(V_m/\pi)(1+\cos\alpha)}{K_m} - \frac{r_a}{K_m^2} T_e \qquad \text{...(6.33)}$$

**Full-converter**. The voltage equation, for the circuit of Fig. (6.10) (*a*), is

$$v_0 = v_s = Ri_0 + L\frac{di_0}{dt} + E$$

Its average value, as in a semi-converter, is

$$V_0 = RI_0 + E \qquad \text{...(6.34)}$$

where
$$V_0 = \frac{2\,V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha$$

In case load is a dc motor, $V_0 = r_a I_a + K_m\omega_m$

or
$$\omega_m = \frac{(2\,V_m/\pi)\cos\alpha}{K_m^2} - \frac{r_a}{K_m^2} T_e \qquad \text{...(6.35)}$$

**Example 6.5**. *A single-phase full converter bridge is connected to RLE load. The source voltage is 230 V, 50 Hz. The average load current of 10 A is continuous over the working range. For $R = 0.4\ \Omega$ and $L = 2m\ H$, compute*

*(a) firing angle delay for E = 120 V,*

*(b) firing angle delay for E = – 120 V.*

*Indicate which source is delivering power to load in parts (a) and (b). Sketch the time variations of output voltage and load current for both the parts.*

*(c) In case output current is assumed constant, find the input pf for both parts (a) and (b).*

**Solution**. (*a*) For $E = 120$ V, the full converter is operating as a controlled rectifier.

$$\therefore \quad \frac{2\,V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha = E + I_0 R$$

or
$$\frac{2\cdot\sqrt{2}\cdot 230}{\pi}\cos\alpha = 120 + 10\times 0.4 = 124\text{ V}$$

or
$$\alpha = 53.208 \cong 53.21°$$

For $\alpha = 53.21°$, power flows from ac source to dc load.

(*b*) For $E = -120$ V, the full converter is operating as a line commutated inverter.

$$\therefore \quad \frac{2\cdot\sqrt{2}\cdot 230}{\alpha}\cos\alpha = -120 + 10\times 0.4 = -116\text{ V} \quad \text{or} \quad \alpha = 124.075 \cong 124.1°$$

For $\alpha = 124.1°$, the power flows from dc source to ac load.

Output voltage and load current waveforms for $\alpha = 53.21°$ can be drawn by referring to Fig. 6.10 (*b*) and for $\alpha = 124.1°$ from Fig. 6.10 (*c*).

(*c*) For constant load current, rms value of load current $I_{or}$ is

$$I_{or} = I_0 = 10\text{ A}$$

$$\therefore \quad V_s\cdot I_{or}\cos\phi = EI_0 + I_{or}^2 R$$

For $\alpha = 53.21°$,
$$\cos\phi = \frac{120\times 10 + 10^2\times 0.4}{230\times 10} = 0.5391\text{ lag}$$

For $\alpha = 124.1°$,
$$\cos\phi = \frac{120\times 10 - 40}{230\times 10} = 0.5043\text{ lag.}$$

**Example 6.6**. *(a) A single-phase full converter delivers power to a resistive load R. For ac source voltage $V_s$, show that average output voltage $V_0$ is given by*

$$V_0 = \frac{\sqrt{2}\,V_s}{\pi}(1+\cos\alpha)$$

*Sketch the time variations of source voltage, output voltage, output current and voltage across one pair of SCRs. Hence find therefrom the circuit turn-off time.*

*(b) For the converter of part (a), show that rms value of output current is given by*

$$I_{or} = \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{1}{\pi}\left\{(\pi-\alpha)+\frac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right\}\right]^{1/2}$$

**Solution.** Time variations of source voltage, load voltage and load current are shown in Fig. 6.12. At $\omega t = \pi$, $v_0 = v_s = 0$ and for resistive load $R$,

$$i_s = \frac{v_s}{R} = 0 \text{ and } i_0 = \frac{v_0}{R} = 0,$$

soon after $\omega t = \pi$, supply voltage reverse biases T1, T2; this pair is therefore turned off. When T3, T4 is triggered at $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$, output voltage $v_0 = v_s$ up to $\omega t = 2\pi$. Note that no SCR conducts during 0 to $\alpha$, $\pi$ to $(\pi + \alpha)$ and so on, Fig. 6.12. For the output voltage waveform $v_0$, average output voltage $V_0$ is

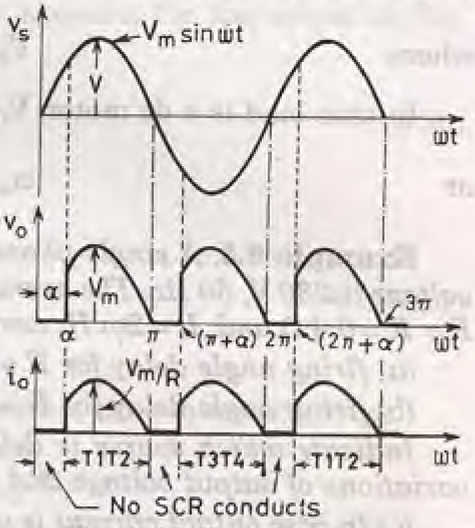


Fig. 6.12. Pertaining to Example 6.6.

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_\alpha^\pi V_m \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{2}V_s}{\pi}(1+\cos\alpha)$$

The other waveforms can be drawn by referring to Fig. 6.10 (*b*).

(*b*) Rms value of the output current can be obtained from the waveform $i_0$ shown in Fig. 6.12.

$$I_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}\int_\alpha^\pi \left(\frac{V_m}{R}\sin \omega t\right)^2 d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{1}{\pi}\int_\alpha^\pi (1-\cos 2\omega t)\, d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{1}{\pi}\left\{(\pi-\alpha)+\frac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right\}\right]^{1/2}$$

**Example 6.7.** *(a) A single-phase controlled rectifier bridge consists of one SCR and three diodes as shown in Fig. 6.13 (a) Sketch output voltage waveform for a firing angle α for the SCR and hence obtain an expression for the average output voltage under the assumption of continuous current. Show the conduction of various components as well.*

*(b) Draw waveforms of current through T1, D1, D2 and D3 assuming constant load current.*

*(c) For an ac source voltage of 230 V, 50 Hz and firing angle of 45°, find the average output current and power delivered to battery in case load consists of R = 5 Ω, L = 8 mH and E = 100 V.*

**Solution.** (*a*) For the circuit of Fig. 6.13 (*a*), output voltage waveform $v_0$ is shown in Fig. 6.13 (*b*). The conduction of various components is also indicated. It is seen that average value of $v_0$ is given by

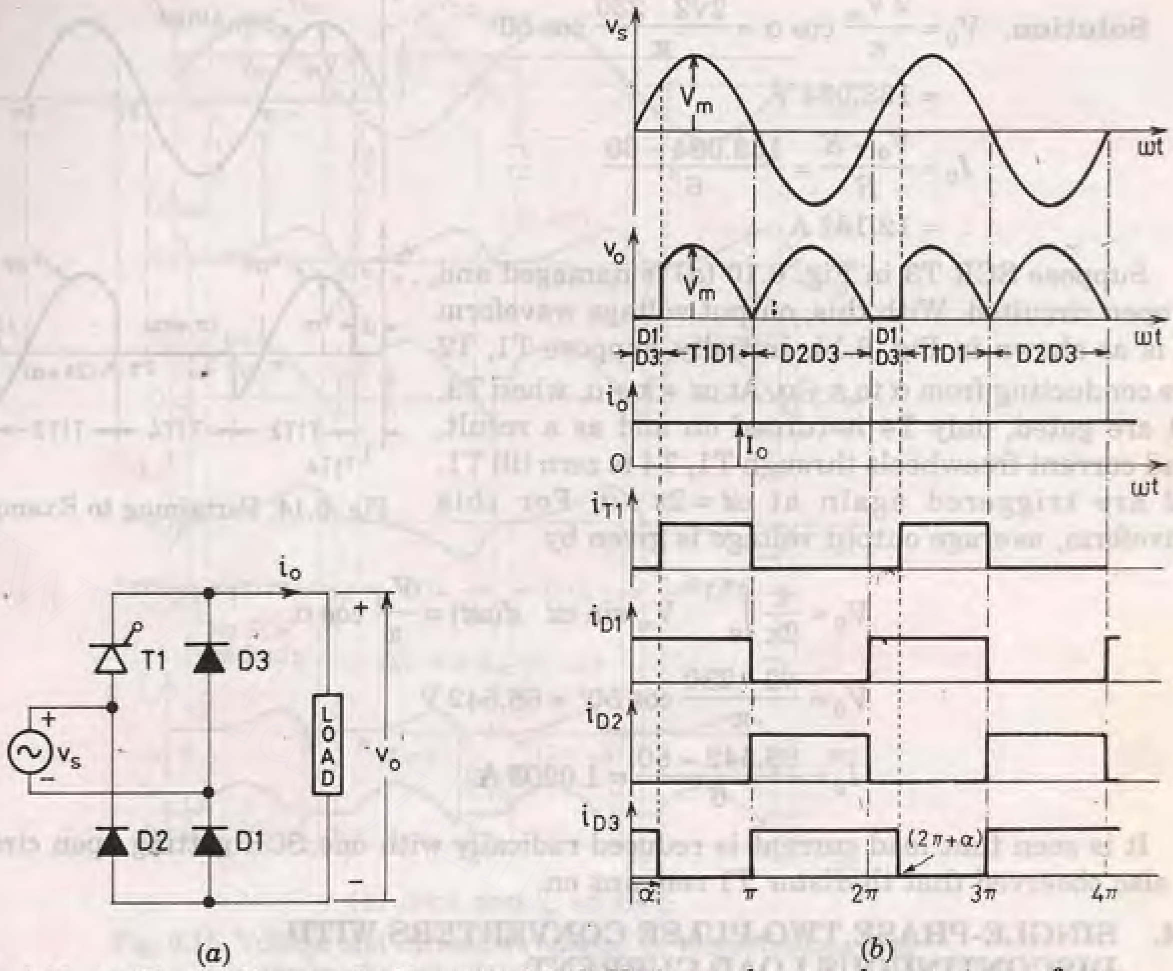


Fig. 6.13. (*a*) Circuit diagram for Example 6.7 (*b*) Various voltage and current waveforms.

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\left[\int_\alpha^\pi V_m \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) - \int_\pi^{2\pi} V_m \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{2\pi}\,[3 + \cos \alpha]$$

(*b*) The conduction of various elements shown helps in drawing the waveforms for currents through T1, D2, D2 and D3. For example, D3 conducts from $\omega t = 0$ to $\alpha$, from $\pi$ to $2\pi + \alpha$, from $3\pi$ to $4\pi + \alpha$ and so on ; this is shown as $i_{D3}$ in Fig. 6.13 (*b*).

(*c*) $$V_0 = \frac{\sqrt{2}\cdot 230}{2\cdot\pi}(3 + \cos 45°) = 191.88 \text{ V}$$

$$I_0 = \frac{191.88 - 100}{5} = 18.376 \text{ A}$$

Power delivered to battery $= E\,I_0 = \dfrac{100 \times 18.376}{1000} = 1.8376 \text{ kW}$

**Example 6.8.** *A single-phase full converter feeds power to RLE load with $R = 6\ \Omega$, $L = 6$ mH and $E = 60$ V. The ac source voltage is 230 V, 50 Hz. For continuous conduction, find the average value of load current for a firing angle delay of 50°.*

*In case one of the four SCRs gets open circuited due to a fault, find the new value of average load current taking the output current as continuous. Sketch waveform for the new output voltage and indicate the conduction of various SCRs.*

**Solution.** $V_0 = \dfrac{2\,V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha = \dfrac{2\sqrt{2}\cdot 230}{\pi}\cos 50°$

$= 133.084$ V

$$I_0 = \frac{V_0 - E}{R} = \frac{133.084 - 60}{6}$$

$= 12.181$ A

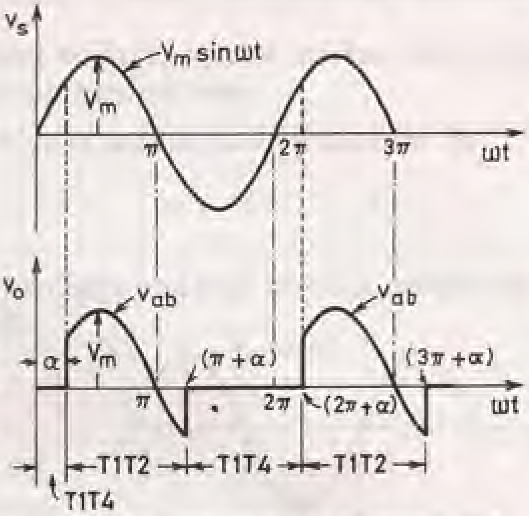


Fig. 6.14. Pertaining to Example 6.8.

Suppose SCR T3 in Fig. 6.10 (*a*) is damaged and is open circuited. With this, output voltage waveform $v_0$ is as shown in Fig. 6.14. Initially, suppose T1, T2 are conducting from α to π + α. At $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$, when T3, T4 are gated, only T4 is turned on and as a result, load current freewheels through T1, T4 is zero till T1, T2 are triggered again at $\omega t = 2\pi + \alpha$. For this waveform, average output voltage is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi+\alpha} V_m \sin\omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha$$

$$V_0 = \frac{\sqrt{2}\cdot 230}{\pi}\cos 50° = 66.542 \text{ V}$$

$$I_0 = \frac{66.542 - 60}{6} = 1.0903 \text{ A.}$$

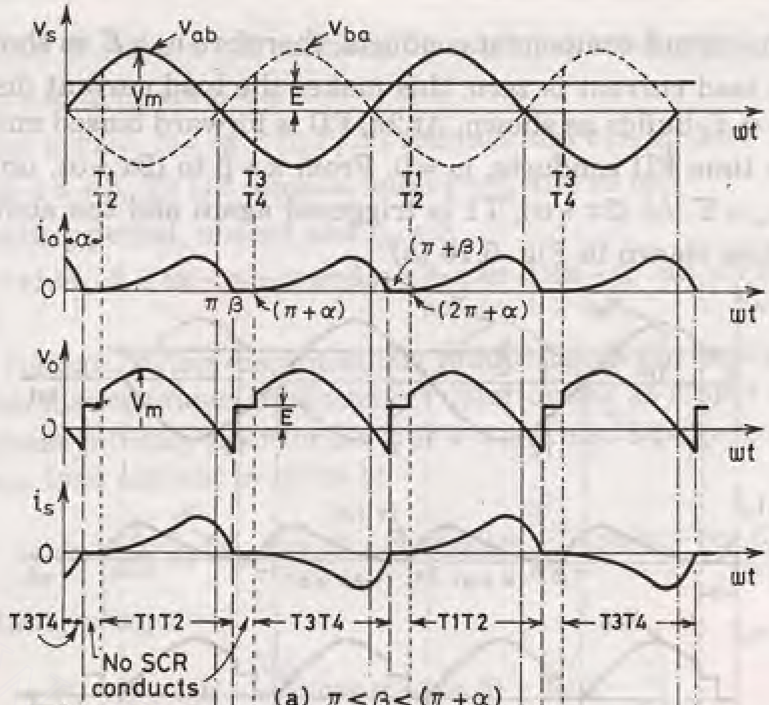
It is seen that load current is reduced radically with one SCR getting open circuited. It is also observed that thyristor T1 remains on.

## 6.4. SINGLE-PHASE TWO-PULSE CONVERTERS WITH DISCONTINUOUS LOAD CURRENT

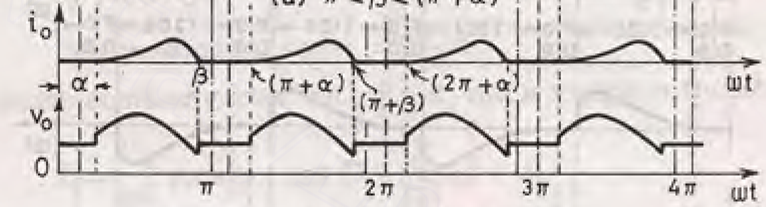
So far, single-phase two-pulse converters have been studied on the assumption of continuous load current. In practice, the output current may become discontinuous at high values of firing angle or at low values of load current. The term *discontinuous* is applied to the condition when load current reaches zero during each half cycle before the next SCR in sequence is fired. The term *continuous* means that load current never ceases but continues to flow through SCR/diode or their combination. The load performance deteriorates if load current becomes discontinuous. It is therefore preferable to operate dc load in continuous current mode. This is promoted by having freewheeling action and using an external inductor in series with the load. In this article, working of both single-phase full converter and semiconverter is studied with their load current discontinuous.

### 6.4.1. Single-phase Full Converter with Discontinuous Current

Power circuit diagram for a single-phase full converter is shown in Fig. 6.10 (*a*). For this converter, when SCR pair T1 T2 is triggered at $\omega t = \alpha$, load current begins to build up from zero as shown. At some angle β, known as extinction angle, load current decays to zero. Here $\beta > \pi$. As T1 and T2 are reverse biased after $\omega t = \pi$, this pair is commutated at $\omega t = \beta$ when $i_0 = 0$. From α to β, output voltage $v_0$ follows source voltage $v_s$. From β to (π + α), no SCR conducts, the load voltage therefore jumps from $V_m \sin\beta$ to $E$ as shown. At $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$, as pair T3 T4 is triggered, load current starts to build up again as before and load voltage $v_0$ follows $v_s$ waveform as shown. At π + β, $i_0$ falls to zero, $v_0$ changes from $V_m \sin(\pi + \beta)$ to $E$ as no SCR conducts. The source current $i_s$ is also shown in Fig. 6.15 (*a*).



(a) $\pi < \beta < (\pi + \alpha)$



(b) $\beta < \pi$ and $V_m \sin \beta < E$

Fig. 6.15. Voltage and current waveforms for discontinuous load current for a single-phase full converter.

Under some conditions, load current may become zero at $\omega t = \beta$, where $\beta$ is less than $\pi$. It is assumed here that $V_m \sin \beta < E$. At $\beta$, $v_0$ jumps from $V_m \sin \beta$ to $E$. The waveforms for load current $i_0$ and load voltage $v_0$ are shown in Fig. 6.15 (*b*). No SCR conducts from $\beta$ to $(\pi + \alpha)$ and during this interval, therefore $v_0 = E$.

From above, the following observations can be made :

(*i*) Conduction period, $\alpha < \omega t < \beta$, T1, T2 conduct and $v_0 = v_s$. Also

$(\pi + \alpha) < \omega t < (\pi + \beta)$, T3 T4 conduct and $v_o = v_s$ and so on.

(*ii*) Idle period , $\beta < \omega t < (\pi + \alpha)$, no circuit element conducts and $v_0 = E$.

The output voltage during discontinuous current mode is less than given by Eq. (6.28). As stated before, load performance during discontinuous conduction is impaired.

### 6.4.2. Single-phase Semiconverter with Discontinuous Current

For this converter, power circuit diagram is given in Fig. 6.11 (*a*). For this controlled 2-pulse converter, when SCR T1 is triggered at $\omega t = \alpha$, load current builds up from zero, rises to a maximum and then decays to zero at $\beta > \pi$.

From $\alpha$ to $\pi$, T1 D1 conduct and $v_0 = v_s$. At $\omega t = \pi$, as $v_s$ tends to become negative, FD is forward biased and starts conducting the load current. When FD conducts from $\pi$ to $\beta$, $v_0 = 0$.

From β to π + α, no circuit component conducts, therefore $v_0 = E$ as shown in Fig. 6.16 (*a*). During β to π + α, as load current is zero, this makes the load current discontinuous. When T2 is triggered at π + α, $i_0$ builds as shown. At 2π, FD is forward biased and starts conducting till π + β. During the time FD conducts, $v_0 = 0$. From π + β to (2π + α), no circuit component conducts, therefore $v_o = E$. At (2π + α), T1 is triggered again and the above process repeats. Source current $i_s$ is also shown in Fig. 6.16 (*a*).

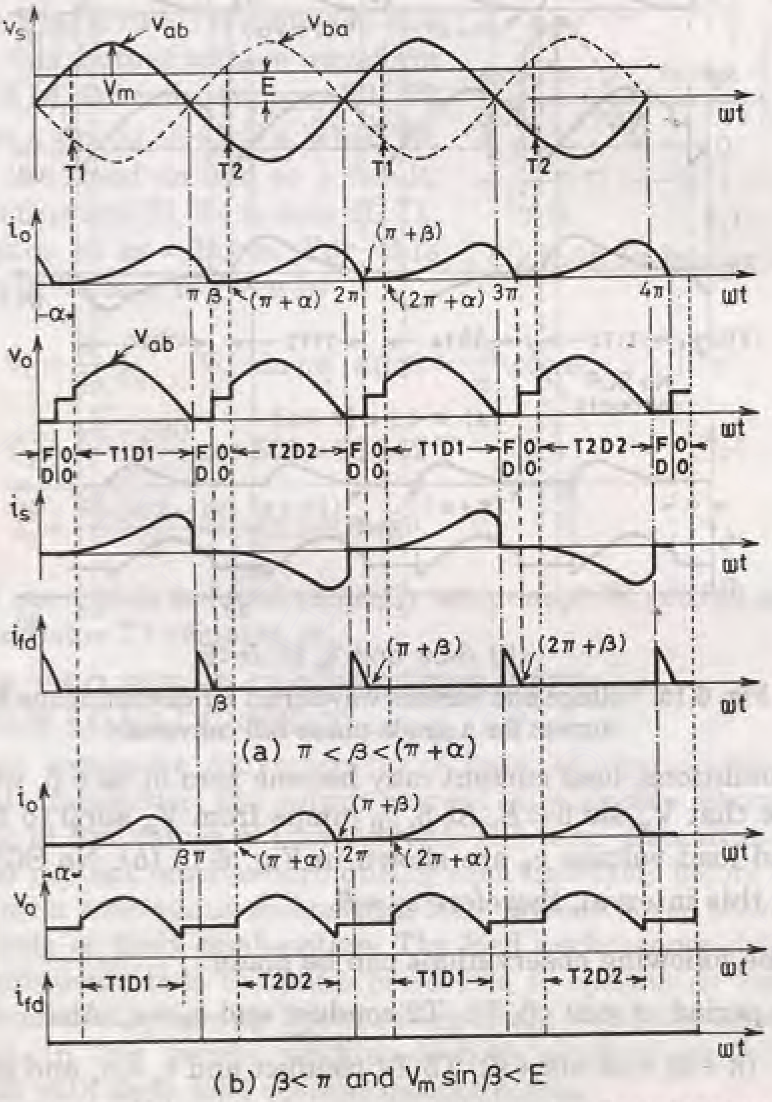


Fig. 6.16. Voltage and current waveforms for discontinuous conduction for a single-phase semiconverter.

In case load current becomes zero before π, *i.e.* for β less than π, then the current and voltage waveforms are shown in Fig. 6.16 (*b*). Here $V_m$ sin β is assumed less than $E$. During β to π + α, no circuit component conducts, therefore $v_0 = E$.

From the waveforms for single-phase semiconverter, the following observations are made:

(*a*) *When* π < β < π + α :

(*i*) Conduction period, α < ωt < π, T1D1 conduct and $v_0 = v_s$. Also for π + α < ωt < 2π, T2D2 conduct and $v_0 = v_s$ and so on.

(*ii*) Freewheeling period, π < ωt < β, FD conducts, $i_{fd} = i_0$ and $v_0 = 0$. Also for 2π < ωt < π + β, FD conducts, $i_{fd} = i_0$ and $v_0 = 0$ and so on.

(*iii*) Idle period, $\beta < \omega t < \pi + \alpha$, no circuit component conducts, $i_0 = 0$ and $v_0 = E$

(*b*) *When* $\beta < \pi$ *and* $V_m \sin \beta < E$ :

(*i*) Conduction period, $\alpha < \omega t < \beta$, $T_1 D_1$ conduct and $v_0 = v_s$. Also for $\pi + \alpha < \omega t < \pi + \beta$, T2 D2 conduct and $v_0 = v_s$ and so on

(*ii*) Freewheeling period, absent and $i_{fd} = 0$.

(*iii*) Idle period, $\beta < \omega t < \pi + \alpha$ and $\pi + \beta < \omega t < 2\pi + \alpha$, no circuit element conducts, $i_0 = 0$ and $v_0 = E$.

The output voltage during discontinuous conduction is not given by Eq. (6.29). The load performance with discontinuous load current deteriorates as stated before.

For single-phase full converter for $\beta > \pi$ or $< \pi$ and also for single-phase semiconverter for $\beta < \pi$, the average load current is given by

$$I_0 = \frac{1}{\pi R}\int_\alpha^\beta (V_m \sin \omega t - E)\, d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{\pi R}(\cos\alpha - \cos\beta) - \frac{E}{\pi R}(\beta - \alpha)$$

Average output voltage

$$V_0 = E + I_0 R = \frac{V_m}{\pi}(\cos\alpha - \cos\beta) + E\left(1 - \frac{\gamma}{\pi}\right)$$

where $\gamma$ = conduction angle $= \beta - \alpha$.

For single-phase semiconverter with $\beta > \pi$, the average output current $I_0$ is given by

$$I_0 = \frac{V_m}{\pi R}(\cos\alpha - \cos\beta) - \frac{E}{\pi R}(\beta - \alpha)$$

and average output voltage $V_0$ is

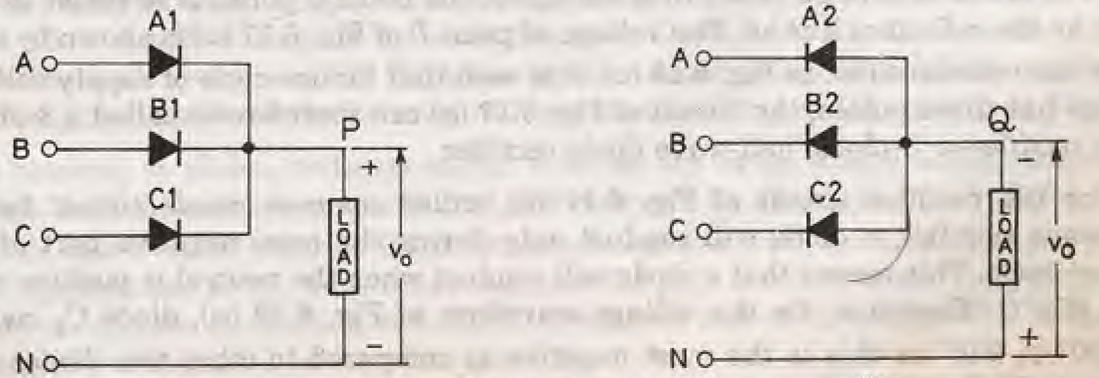
$$V_0 = \frac{1}{\pi}\left[\int_\alpha^\pi V_m \sin\omega t \cdot d(\omega t) + E(\pi + \alpha - \beta)\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{\pi}(1 + \cos\alpha) + E\left(1 - \frac{\gamma}{\pi}\right)$$

## 6.5. THREE-PHASE CONVERTER SYSTEMS USING DIODES

For understanding the working of three-phase controlled rectifiers, it is better to commence with the study of 3-phase ac to dc converters using diodes.

In Fig. 6.17 are shown the simplext three-phase rectifier circuits with half-wave configuration. The power circuit of Fig. 6.17 (*a*) consists of three diodes A1, B1, C1 connected to a common load. The other load terminal must be connected to neutral $N$ of the supply for



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 6.17. Three-phase half-wave rectifier with (*a*) common cathode arrangement and (*b*) common anode arrangement.

return of load current. As the cathodes of three diodes are connected together, circuit of Fig. 6.17 (*a*) is also called *common cathode circuit* for a 3-phase half-wave rectifier. The three-phase supply voltage is shown as $v_a$ ($= v_{an}$, voltage between $A$ and $N$), $v_b$, $v_c$ in Fig. 6.18 (*a*) .

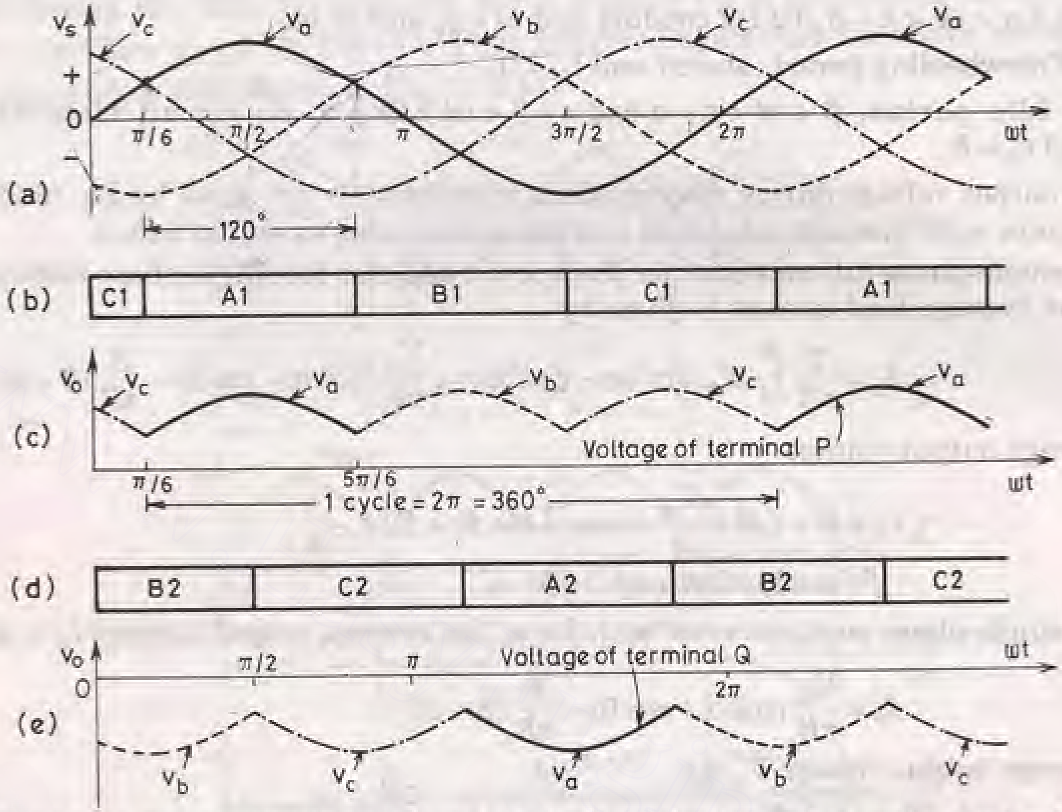
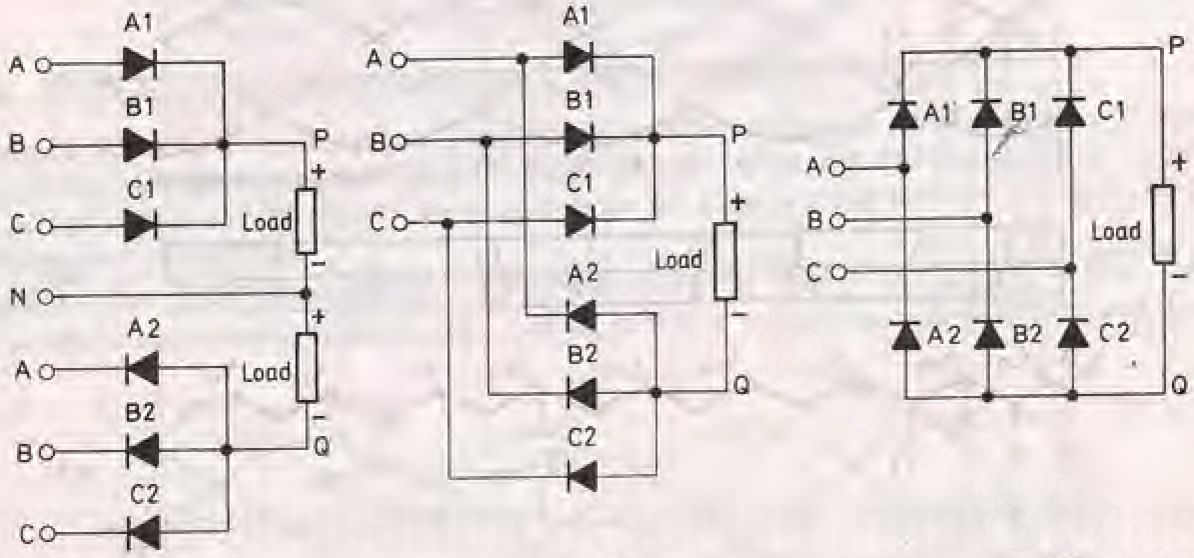


Fig. 6.18. (*a*) Line to neutral voltages (*b*) and (*d*) diode conduction and (*c*) and (*e*) load voltage $V_0$.

The rectifier element connected to the line at the highest instantaneous voltage can only conduct. In Fig. 6.17 (*a*), a diode with the highest positive voltage will begin to conduct at the cross-over points of the three-phase supply. It is seen from Fig. 6.18 (*a*) that diode A1 will conduct from $\omega t = 30°$ to $\omega t = 150°$ as this diode is the most positive as compared to the other two diodes during this interval. Diode B1 will conduct from $\omega t = 150°$ to 270° and diode C1 from $\omega t = 270°$ to 390°. The conduction of diodes in proper sequence is shown in Fig. 6.18 (*b*). When a diode is conducting, the common cathode terminal $P$ rises to the highest positive voltage of that phase and the other two blocking diodes are reverse biased. The voltage across the load $V_0$ follows the positive supply voltage envelope and has the waveform as shown in Fig. 6.18 (*c*). It should be noted that voltage of the neutral point. $N$ is taken as zero and is given by the reference line $\omega t$. The voltage of point $P$ of Fig. 6.17 (*a*) is shown by $v_a$, $v_b$, $v_c$ etc. above the reference line in Fig. 6.18 (*c*). It is seen that for one cycle of supply voltage, output voltage has three pulses, the circuit of Fig. 6.17 (*a*) can therefore be called a 3-phase *3-pulse diode rectifier* or 3-phase half-wave diode rectifier.

For the rectifier circuit of Fig. 6.17 (*b*), called *common anode circuit* for a 3-phase half-wave rectifier, a diode will conduct only during the most negative part of the supply voltage cycle. This means that a diode will conduct when the neutral is positive with respect to $A$, $B$ or $C$. Therefore, for the voltage waveform of Fig. 6.18 (*a*), diode $C_2$ conducts from $\omega t = 90°$ to 210° as this is the most negative as compared to other two diodes during this interval. Diode A2 conducts from $\omega t = 210°$ to 330° and diode B2 from $\omega t = 330°$ to 450° and so on. Each diode conducts for 120° in both the circuits of Fig. 6.17. The load voltage $V_0$, derived from Fig. 6.18 (*a*), follows the negative supply voltage envelope and has the waveshape as shown in Fig. 6.18 (*e*) for the diode configuration of Fig. 6.17 (*b*). Here again voltage of the neutral point *N* is fixed at zero by reference line $\omega t$ in Fig. 6.18 (*e*). The voltage of point *Q* of Fig. 6.17 (*b*) is shown by $v_b$, $v_c$, $v_a$ etc. below the reference line, in Fig. 6.18 (*e*).

The three-phase half-wave rectifier circuits of Fig. 6.17 (*a*) and (*b*) can be connected in series as shown in Fig. 6.19 (*a*). In this series connected circuit, load current can exist even without neutral *N*. For example, when diode A1 is conducting, the return path for the current is through diode B2 from $\omega t = 30°$ to $90°$ and through diode $C_2$ from $\omega t = 90°$ to $150°$, see Fig. 6.18 (*b*) and (*d*). Supply point *A* connected to the anode of diode A1 is the same as that connected to the cathode of diode A2. The neutral wire can thus be eliminated and the circuit of Fig. 6.19 (*a*) can be redrawn as shown in Fig. 6.19 (*b*). This circuit can further be rearranged to that shown in Fig. 6.19 (*c*). The only difference between Fig. 6.19 (*a*) and Figs. 6.19 (*b*) and (*c*) is that load voltage is equal to line to neutral voltage in Fig. 6.19 (*a*) and it is line to line voltage in Fig. 6.19 (*b*) and (*c*). The circuit configuration shown in Fig. 6.19 (*c*) is called 3-phase full-wave bridge rectifier or 3-phase six-pulse bridge rectifier. Note that diodes A1, B1, C1 of the bridge will conduct when supply voltage is the most positive whereas diodes A2, B2, C2 will conduct when supply voltage is the most negative. Diodes A1, B1, C1 may therefore be called a *positive diode group* and A2, B2, C2 a *negative diode* group. The voltage across load will always be direct emf with the polarity of *P* positive and that of *Q* negative as shown.



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 6.19. Evolution of 3-phase six-pulse rectifier. (*a*) Circuits of Fig. 6.17 (*a*) and (*b*) connected in series (*b*) circuit of (*a*) rearranged and (*c*) 3-phase full-wave bridge rectifier obtained from (*b*).

Line to neutral, or phase, voltages of Fig. 6.18 (*a*) are again drawn in Fig. 6.20 (*a*) as $v_a$, $v_b$, $v_c$. Figs. 6.18 (*b*) and (*d*) are combined and redrawn as shown in Fig. 6.20 (*b*), which shows that for $\omega t = 0°$ to $30°$, diodes C1, B2 conduct together ; for $\omega t = 30$ to $90°$, diodes A1, B2 conduct together and so on. Each diode conducts for 120°. At the instant marked 1, diode B2 is already on and the conduction of diode C1 stops and that of A1 begins. The magnitude of load voltage $V_1$ at instant 1 is therefore given by

$$V_1 = V_{mp} \sin 30 + V_{mp} \sin 90° = 1.5\, V_{mp}$$

At the instant marked 2, the load voltage has a magnitude of

$$V_2 = V_{mp} \sin 60 + V_{mp} \sin 60° = \sqrt{3}\ V_{mp}$$

At the instant marked 3 , $V_3 = 1.5\ V_{mp}$.

Here $V_{mp}$ is the maximum value of phase (or line to neutral) voltage.

The voltage of the load terminals $P$ and $Q$ of Fig. 6.19 (*c*) is shown in Fig. 6.20 (*a*). This figure also reveals that at the instants marked 2, 4, 6, 8, 10 etc, the load voltage has a magnitude of $\sqrt{3}\ V_{mp}$ and at instants the marked 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11 etc., the magnitude of load voltage is 1.5 $V_{mp}$. The load voltage, or the rectified output voltage, $v_0$ can therefore be plotted as shown in Fig. 6.20 (*c*). Each diode conducts for 120°. It should be remembered that in Fig. 6.20 (*c*), $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$, $v_{ba}$ etc., are line voltages whereas in Fig. 6.20 (*a*), $v_a$, $v_b$, $v_c$ are phase voltages. The dual subscript *ab* in $v_{ab}$ may be taken to denote that as per the first subscript '*a*', diode connected to phase *A* from the positive group, *i.e.* A1 conducts and as per the second subscript '*b*' diode connected to phase *B* from the negative group, *i.e.* B2 conducts. For example, for voltage $v_{cb}$, diode C1 from positive group and diode B2 from negative group conduct.

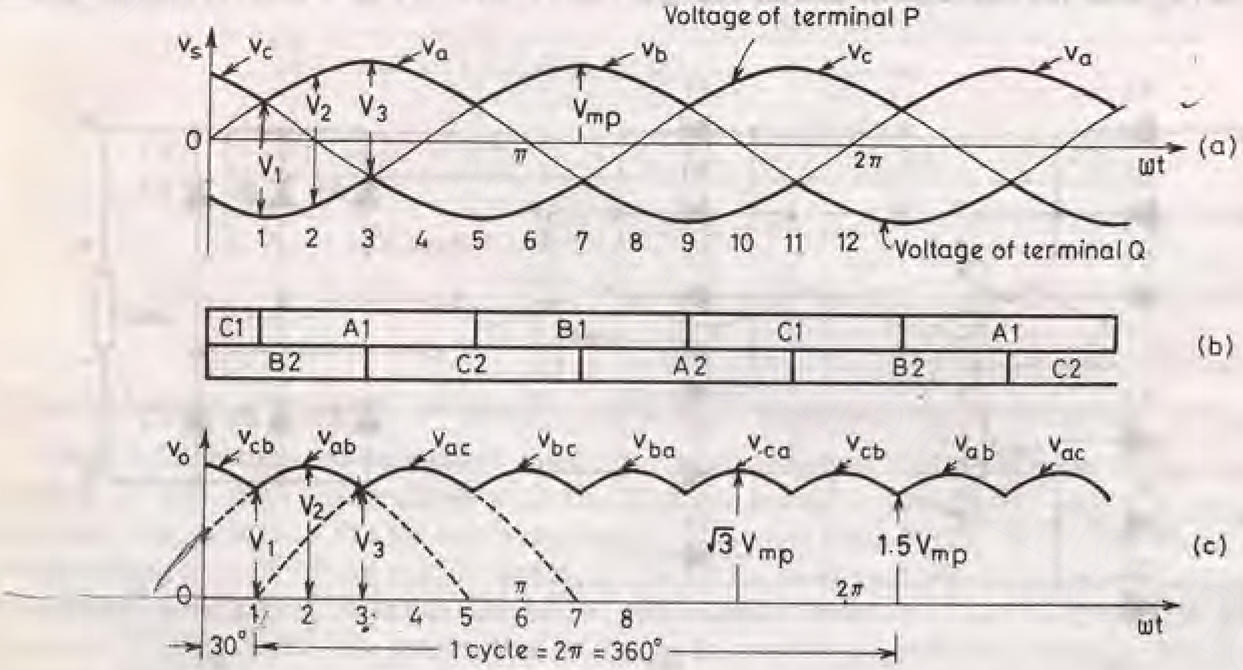


Fig. 6.20. (*a*) 3-phase input voltage (*b*) Conduction sequence of positive and negative group of diodes (*c*) Output voltage waveform of 3-phase six pulse diode bridge.

In Fig. 6.20 (*c*), voltage of terminal *Q* is shown at zero potential by straight reference line *ωt*, whereas the voltage of terminal *P* is shown by line values $v_{cb}$, $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$ etc. In fact, if waveform of voltage of terminal *Q* in Fig. 6.20 (*a*) is made a straight line, Fig. 6.20 (*c*) is obtained.

Fig. 6.20 (*c*) shows that there are 6 pulses for one cycle of supply voltage. Thus, this bridge can be called a *3-phase six-pulse diode rectifier.* The object of this article has been to examine the evolution of a 3-phase bridge rectifier from a 3-phase half-wave rectifier.

As in single-phase conveters, the average output voltage in a 3-phase diode rectifier can be obtained by considering the output voltage wave over one periodic cycle.

For a 3-phase diode rectifier of Fig. 6.17, the periodicity is 120° or 2π/3 radians as per Fig. 6.18 (*c*). Here the output voltage comprises of phase voltages $v_a$, $v_b$, $v_c$ and its average value $V_0$ is given by

$\frac{3\pi}{3} - \frac{5\pi}{6} = \frac{\pi}{3}$

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{\text{periodic time}} \int_{\alpha_1}^{\alpha_2} v_a \, d(\omega t) = \frac{3}{2\pi} \int_{\pi/6}^{5\pi/6} V_{mp} \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t).$$

In the above expression, $v_a$ is zero at $\omega t = 0$; therefore $V_{mp} \sin \omega t$ is written for $v_a$. Further, $v_a$ appears from $\omega t = 30°$ to $150°$ in the output voltage waveform, these are therefore the limits of integration

$$\therefore \qquad V_0 = \frac{-3\,V_{mp}}{2\pi}\left[\cos\frac{5\pi}{6} - \cos\frac{\pi}{6}\right] = \frac{3\sqrt{3}\,V_{mp}}{2\pi} = \frac{3\sqrt{6}\,V_{ph}}{2\pi} \qquad \text{...(6.36)}$$

In Eq. (6.36), $V_{mp}$ is the maximum value of phase voltage $V_{ph}$.

For a 3-phase six-pulse diode rectifier, the output voltage of Fig. 6.20 (*c*) consists of line voltages $v_{ab}, v_{ac}, v_{bc}, v_{ba}$ etc., and its average value $V_0$ is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{\text{periodic time}} \int_{\alpha_1}^{\alpha_2} v_{ab} \, d(\omega t)$$

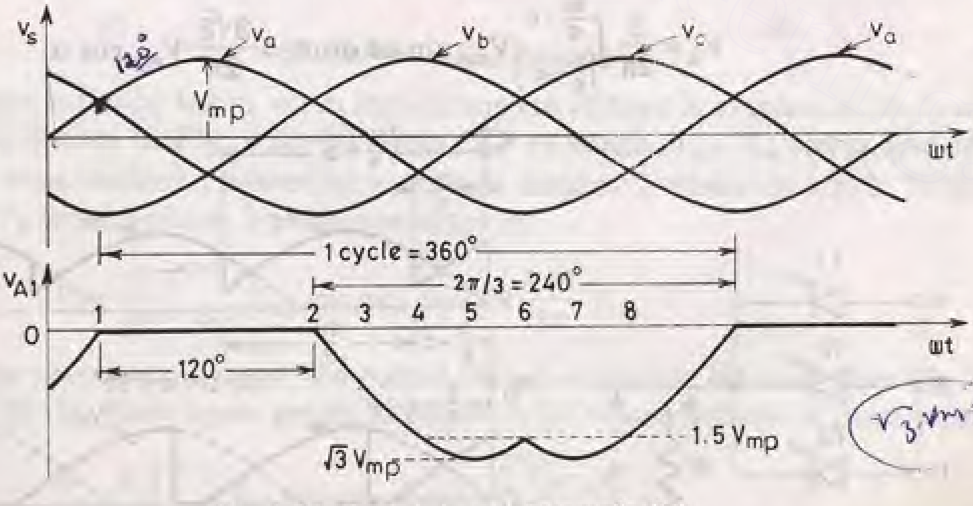
The value of $v_{ab}$ at $\omega t = 0°$ is $V_m \sin 30°$ and periodicity is 60° or $\pi/3$ radians.

$$\therefore \qquad V_0 = \frac{3}{\pi} \int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/2} V_{ml} \sin(\omega t + 30)\, d(\omega t) = \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi} = \frac{3\sqrt{2}\,V_l}{\pi} \qquad \text{...(6.37)}$$

In Eq. (6.37), $V_{ml}$ is the maximum value of line or line to line voltage $V_l$.

**Example 6.9.** *For a 3-phase half-wave diode rectifier, show the time variation of input voltage and the voltage across one diode for one complete cycle. Find the maximum value of reverse voltage across the diode and its duration for an input supply voltage of 230 V, 50 Hz from a delta-star transformer.*

**Solution.** The three-phase input voltage waveform is shown as $v_a, v_b, v_c$ in Fig. 6.21. Voltage across a conducting diode is zero. Let us plot the voltage variation across one diode



$V_{ml} = \sqrt{3} V_{mp}$

$\sqrt{3} V_{mp}$

Fig. 6.21. Pertaining to Example 6.9.

A1 connected to terminal *A* in Fig. 6.17 (*a*). From instant 1 to 2, voltage across diode A1 is zero during its conduction, Fig. 6.21. For diode A1, it is possible to generalize as under :

Diode A1 conducting, voltage $v_{A1}$ across A1 $= v_a - v_a = 0$

Diode B1 conducting, $v_{A1} = v_a - v_b$

Diode C1 conducting, $v_{A1} = v_a - v_c$

$\therefore$ At instant 3, $v_{A1} = v_a - v_b = 0 - V_{mp} \sin 60° = -\frac{1}{2} V_{mp}$

At instant 4, $v_{A1} = v_a - v_b = -V_{mp} \sin 30 - V_{mp} = -1.5\, V_{mp}$

At instant 5, $v_{A1} = v_a - v_b = -V_{mp} \sin 60 - V_{mp} \sin 60 = -\sqrt{3}\, V_{mp}$

At instant 6, $v_{A1} = v_a - v_b = -V_{mp} - V_{mp} \sin 30° = -1.5\, V_{mp}$

At instant 7, $v_{A1} = v_a - v_c = -V_{mp} \sin 60 - V_{mp} \sin 60 = -\sqrt{3}\, V_{mp}$ and so on.

The voltage variation across diode A1 is shown as $v_{A1}$ in Fig. 6.21. It is seen from this figure that maximum reverse voltage across A1 is $\sqrt{3}\, V_{mp} = \sqrt{3} \cdot \sqrt{2} \cdot 230/\sqrt{3} = \sqrt{2} \cdot 230 = 325.22$ V and the duration of this reverse voltage is 240 degrees or $\frac{240}{360} \times 20 = 13.333$ msec.

**Example 6.10.** *For a 3-phase thyristor controlled half-wave rectifier feeding load R as shown in Fig. 6.22 (a), show that average output voltages are given by*

$$V_0 = \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2\pi} V_{mp} \cos \alpha \qquad \text{for} \qquad 0 < \alpha < \pi/6$$

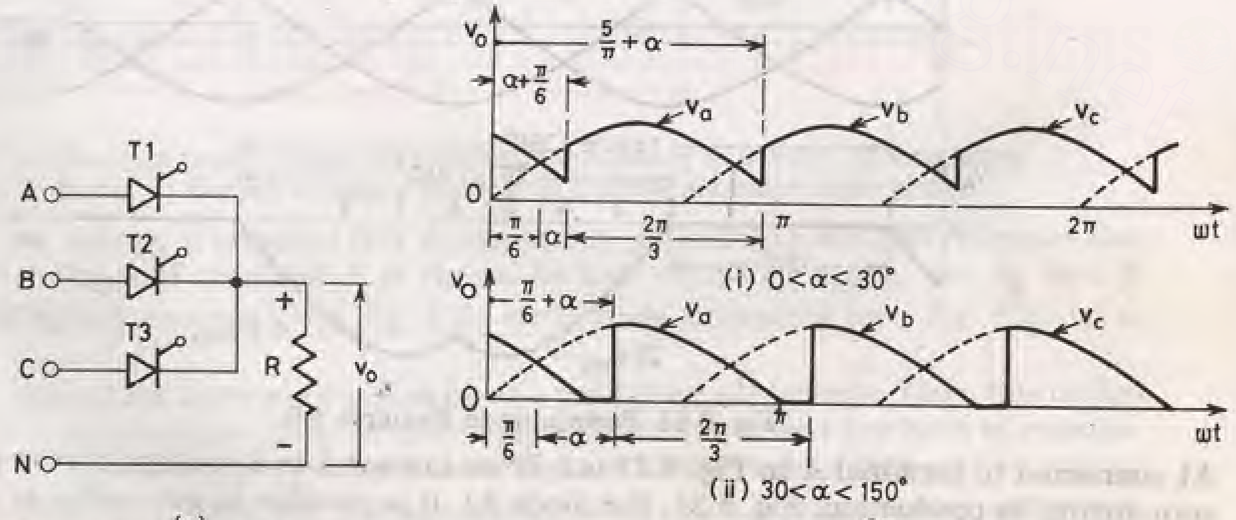
*and*

$$V_0 = \frac{3}{2\pi} V_{mp} \left[1 + \cos\left(\alpha + \pi/6\right)\right] \quad \text{for} \quad \frac{\pi}{6} < \alpha < \frac{5\pi}{6}$$

*where $V_{mp}$ is the maximum value of phase voltage and $\alpha$ is the firing angle delay.*

**Solution.** For a 3-phase SCR controlled converter of Fig. 6.22 (*a*), the output voltage waveforms are shown in Fig. 6.22 (*b*). If T1 were replaced by diode in Fig. 6.22 (*a*), it would start conducting from $\omega t = \pi/6$ as in Fig. 6.18 (*b*). Thus, firing angle delay in Fig. 6.22 (*b*) must be measured from $\omega t = \pi/6$ and this is shown accordingly in Fig. 6.22 (*b*). It is revealed in Fig. 6.22 (*bi*) that for $\alpha$ up to 30°, $v_0$ is continuous. Thus for $0 < \alpha < \pi/6$, the average value of output voltage is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{3}{2\pi} \int_{\left(\frac{\pi}{6} + \alpha\right)}^{\frac{5\pi}{6} + \alpha} V_{mp} \sin \omega t \; d(\omega t) = \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2\pi} V_{mp} \cos \alpha$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 6.22. (*a*) 3-phase half-wave SCR converter and (*b*) its output voltage waveforms for (*i*) $0 < \alpha < 30°$ and (*ii*) $30 < \alpha < 150°$

For firing angle greater than 30°, the output voltage is discontinuous for a resistive load. Fig. 6.22 (*b-ii*) shows this output voltage for $\alpha = 45°$. This figure reveals that for firing angle

$\alpha > 30°$, $v_0$ is zero at $\pi$. The limits of integration should, therefore, be from $\left(\frac{\pi}{6} + \alpha\right)$ to $\pi$. Thus, for this waveform, the average output voltage $V_0$ is given by

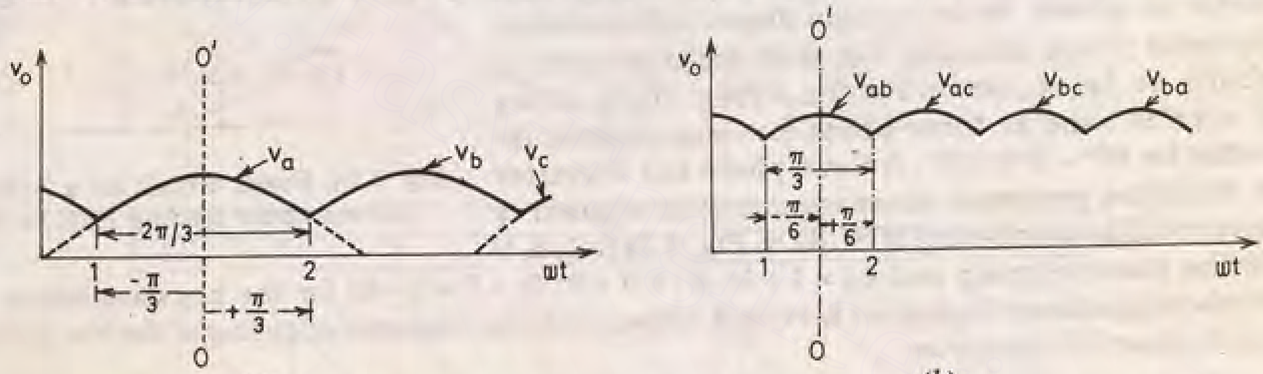
$$V_0 = \frac{3}{2\pi} \int_{\frac{\pi}{6}+\alpha}^{\pi} V_{mp} \sin \omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t) = \frac{3\,V_{mp}}{2\pi}\left[1 + \cos\left(\alpha + \frac{\pi}{6}\right)\right]$$

In Fig. 6.22 ($a$), if load $R$ is replaced by $RL$, then for continuous conduction, average output voltage $v_0$ is again given by

$$V_0 = \frac{3}{2\pi} \int_{\alpha+\pi/6}^{\alpha+\frac{5\pi}{6}} V_{mp} \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{3\cdot\sqrt{3}}{2\pi} V_{mp} \cos \alpha = \frac{3}{2\pi} V_{ml} \cos \alpha.$$

**Example. 6.11.** *Derive expressions for the average output voltage for a 3-phase three-pulse diode rectifier and a three-phase six-pulse diode rectifier using cosine function for the input supply voltage.*

**Solution.** The variation of output voltage is shown Fig. 6.23 ($a$) for a 3-phase 3-pulse converter. This is obtained from Fig. 6.18 ($c$). For using the cosine function for the input voltage, the origin must be taken when instantaneous voltage is maximum. So here origin is taken at $OO'$ as shown in Fig. 6.23 ($a$). With $OO'$ as origin, $v_a = V_m \cos \omega t$ and integration must be made from instant 1 where $\omega t = -\pi/3$ to instant 2 where $\omega t = \pi/3$. Thus, average output voltage $V_0$ for a 3-phase 3-pulse converter is



($a$) ($b$)

Fig. 6.23. Pertaining to Example 6.11.

$$V_0 = \frac{3}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi/3}^{\pi/3} V_{mp} \cos \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2\pi} V_{mp} \qquad \text{...(6.36)}$$

For a 3-phase six-pulse converter, the output voltage variation, obtained from Fig. 6.20 ($c$), is shown in Fig. 6.23 ($b$). Here again origin is taken at 00′ where voltage is maximum for $v_{ab}$.

$$\therefore \quad V_0 = \frac{3}{\pi} \int_{-\pi/6}^{\pi/6} V_{ml} \cos \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi} \qquad \text{...(6.37)}$$

## 6.6. THREE-PHASE THYRISTOR CONVERTER CIRCUITS

For large power dc loads, 3-phase ac to dc converters are commonly used. The various types of three-phase phase-controlled converters are 3-phase half-wave converter, 3-phase semiconverter, 3-phase full converter and 3-phase dual converter. Three-phase half-wave converter is rarely used in industry because it introduces dc component in the supply current. Semiconverters and full converters are quite common in industrial applications. A dual converter is used only when reversible dc drives with power ratings of several MW are required.

The advantages of three-phase converters over single-phase converters are as under :

(*i*) In 3-phase converters, the ripple frequency of the converter output voltage is higher than in single-phase converter. Consequently, the filtering requirements for smoothing out the load current are less.

(*ii*) The load current is mostly continuous in 3-phase converters. The load performance, when 3-phase converters are used, is therefore superior as compared to when single-phase converters are used.

In this section, three-phase full converters and semiconverters are discussed.

### 6.6.1. Three-phase Full Converters

If all the diodes of Fig. 6.19 (*c*) are replaced by thyristors, a three-phase full-converter bridge as shown in Fig. 6.24 is obtained. The three-phase input supply is connected to terminals *A*, *B*, *C* and the load RLE is connected across the output terminals of converter as shown. As in a single-phase full-converter, thyristor power circuit of Fig. 6.24 works as a three-phase ac to dc converter for firing angle delay $0° < \alpha \le 90°$ and as three-phase line-commutated inverter for $90° < \alpha < 180°$. A three-phase full converter is, therefore, preferred where regeneration of power is required. The numbering of SCRs in Fig. 6.24 is 1, 3, 5 for the positive group and 4 ( = 1 + 3), 6 ( = 3 + 3), 2( = 5 + 3 – 6) for the negative group. This numbering scheme is adopted here as it agrees with the sequence of gating of the six thyristors in a 3-phase full converter.

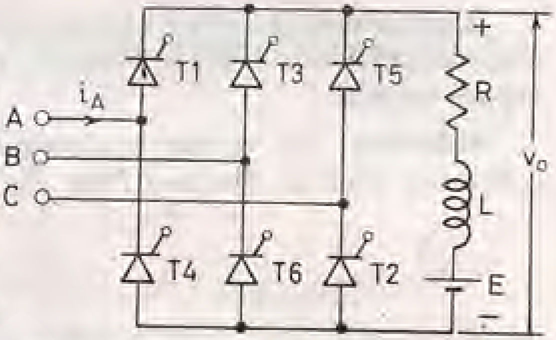


Fig. 6.24. Power circuit for a 3-phase full-converter feeding RLE load.

For $\alpha = 0°$; T1, T2,......T6 behave like diodes. This is shown in Fig. 6.25 (*a*). The sequence of conduction of SCRs T1 to T6 is also indicated in this figure. Note that for $\alpha = 0°$, T1 is triggered at $\omega t = \pi/6$, T2 at 90°, T3 at 150° and so on. The load voltage has, therefore, the waveform as shown in Fig. 6.20 (*c*). For $\alpha = 60°$, the conduction sequence of thyristors T1 to T6 is shown in Fig. 6.25 (*b*). Here T1 is triggered at $\omega t = 30° + 60° = 90°$, T2 at $90 + 60 = 150°$ and so on. If the conduction interval of various thyristors T1, T2, ..... T6 is shown first, then it becomes easier to draw the voltage and current waveforms. Note that each SCR conducts for 120°, when T1 is triggered, reverse biased thyristor T5 is turned off and T1 is turned on. T6 is already conducting. As T1 is connected to *A* and T6 to *B*, voltage $v_{ab}$ appears across load. It varies from $1.5 V_m$ to zero as shown. Here $V_{mp}$ is the maximum value of phase voltage. When T2 is turned on, T6 is commutated from the negative group. T1 is already conducting. As T1 and T2 are connected to *A* and *C* respectively, voltage $v_{ac}$ appears across load. Its value varies from $1.5 V_{mp}$ to zero as shown. This sequence of triggering is continued for other SCRs.

Note that positive group of SCRs are fired at an interval of 120°. Similarly, negative group of SCRs are fired with an interval of 120° amongst them. But SCRs from both the groups are fired at an interval of 60°. This means that commutation occurs every 60°, alternatively in upper and lower group of SCRs. Each SCR from both groups conducts for 120°. At any time, two SCRs, one from the positive group and the other from negative group, must conduct together for the source to energise the load. For *ABC* phase sequence of the three-phase supply, thyristors conduct in pairs ; T1 and T2, T2 and T3, T3 and T4 and so on.

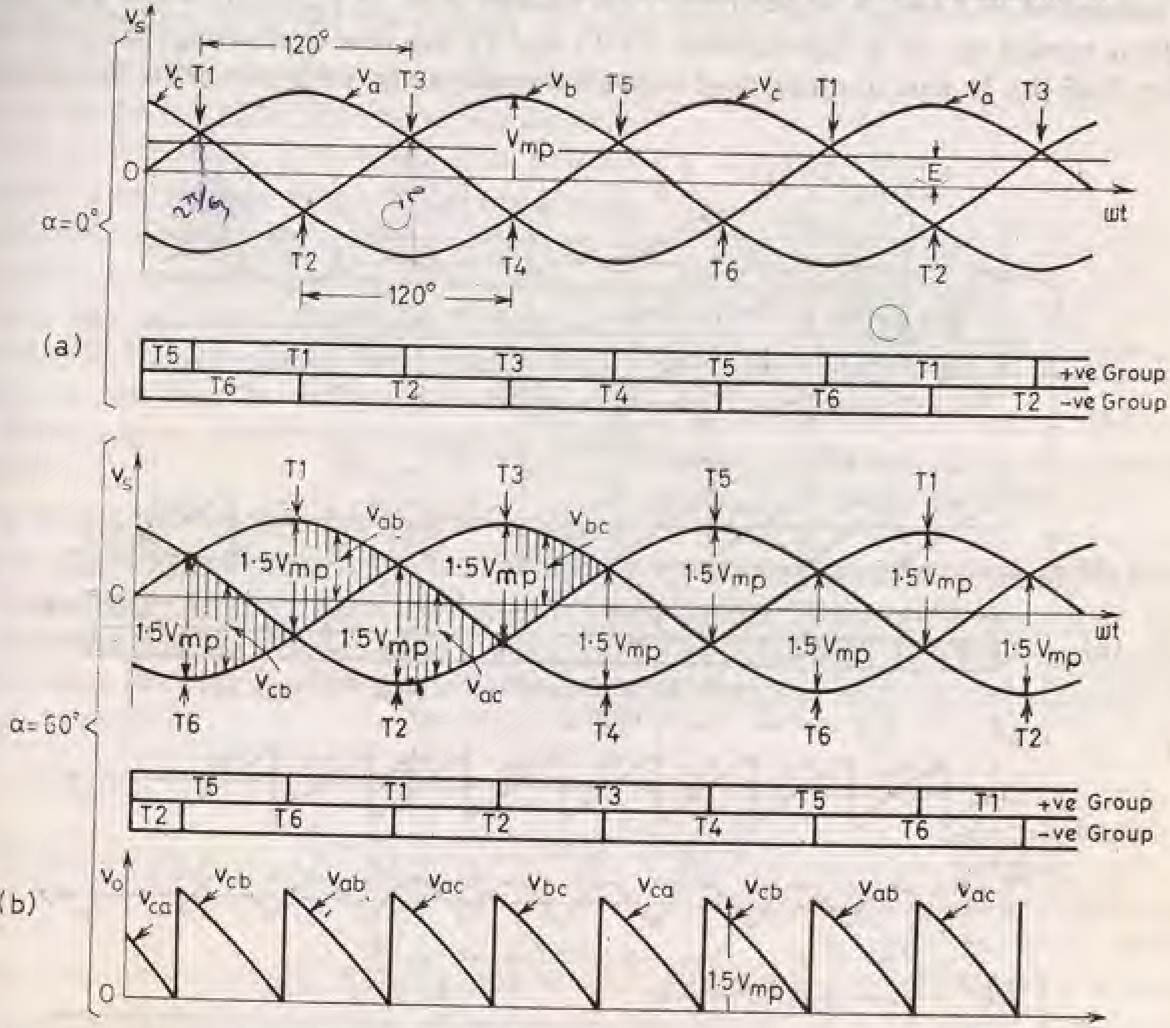


Fig. 6.25. Voltage waveforms and conduction of thyristors for a 3-phase full converter.

The sequence of events in Fig. 6.25 can also be shown more conveniently if line voltages, instead of phase voltages, are considered. In Fig. 6.26 (*a*) are shown line voltages $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$, $v_{bc}$, $v_{ba}$ etc. For $\alpha = 0°$, SCRs T1, T2,....T6 behave as diodes and the output voltage waveform is as shown in Fig. 6.26 (*a*) by $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$, $v_{bc}$ etc. In this figure, for $\alpha = 0$, T1 is turned on at $\omega t = 60°$, T2 at $\omega t = 120°$, T3 at $\omega t = 180°$ and so on. In Fig. 6.26 (*a*), therefore, firing angle is measured from $\omega t = 60°$ for T1, from $\omega t = 120°$ for T2, from $\omega t = 180°$ for T3 and so on.

The question may arise in the minds of the readers as to why T1, for $\alpha = 0$, conducts from $\omega t = 60°$ and not from $\omega t = 0°$. Here the use of subscripts *ab*, *ac*, *bc*, *ba* etc come to the rescue of readers. As observed, the subscripts in sequence appear twice. When *first* subscript appears twice, the SCR in the positive group pertaining to that line conducts for 120°. Likewise, when *second* subscript comes twice, the SCR in the negative group pertaining to that line conducts for 120°. For example, first subscript 'a' appears twice in $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$ ; therefore SCR from positive group T1 will begin conduction when $v_{ab}$ appears *i.e.* at $\omega t = 60°$. In $v_{ac}$, $v_{bc}$, second subscript '*C*' appears twice, therefore SCR from negative group T2 will begin conduction when $v_{ac}$ appears *i.e.* from $\omega t = 120°$ in Fig. 6.26 (*a*). Similarly, first subscript '*b*' appears twice in $v_{bc}$, $v_{ba}$, so SCR from positive group T3 will begin conduction when $v_{bc}$ appears *i.e.* from $\omega t = 180°$ in Fig. 6.26 (*a*).

For $\alpha = 60°$, T1 is turned on at $\omega t = 60 + 60 = 120°$, T2 at $\omega t = 180°$, T3 at $\omega t = 240°$ and so on. When T1 is turned on at $\omega t$ 120°, T5 is turned off. T6 is already conducting. As T1 and T6 are connected to $A$ and $B$ respectively, load voltage must be $v_{ab}$ as shown in Fig. 6.26 ($b$). When T2 is turned on, T6 is commutated. As T1 and T2 are now conducting, the load voltage s $v_{ac}$, Fig. 6.26 ($b$). In this manner, load voltage waveform can be drawn with the turning on

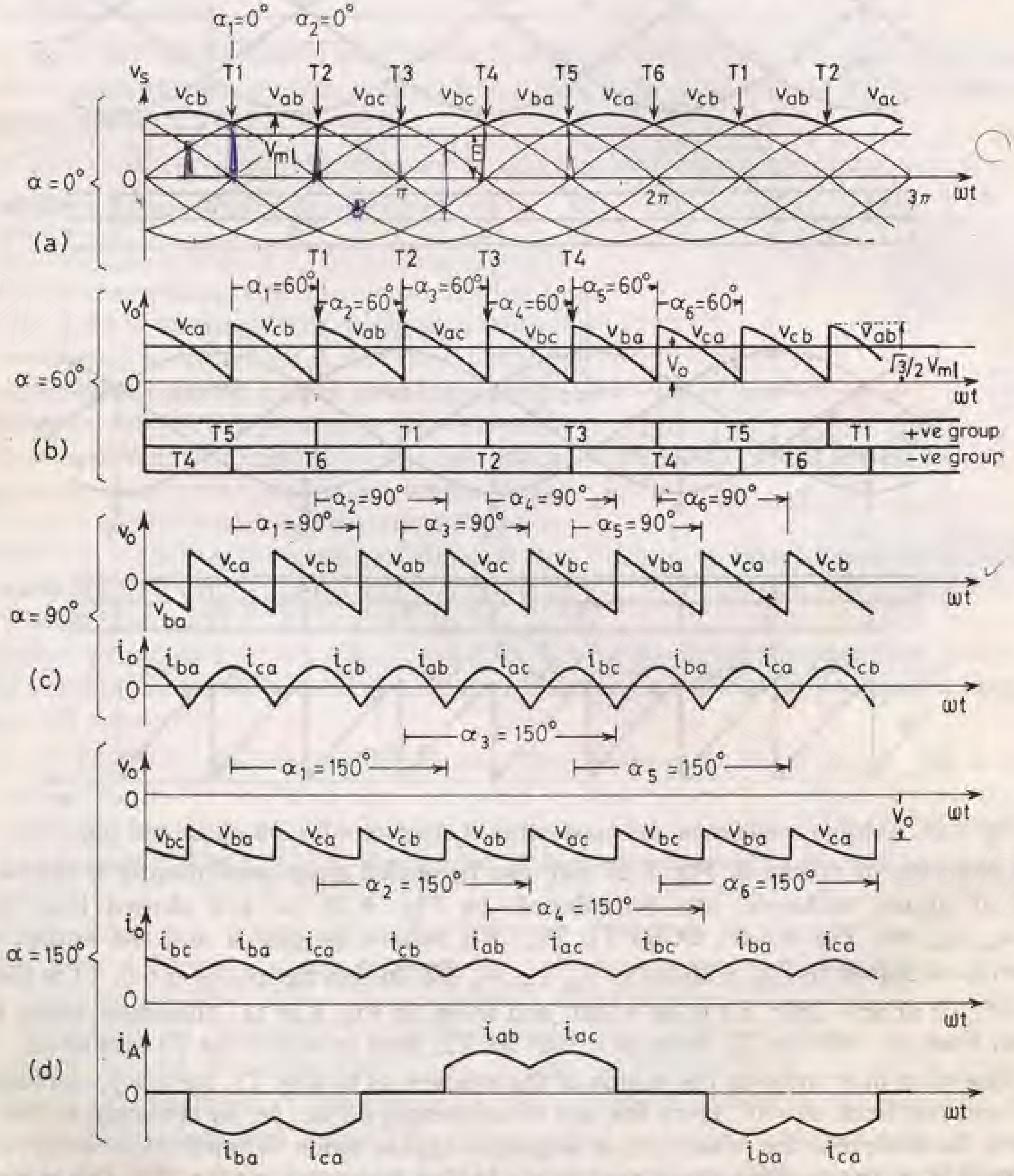


Fig. 6.26. Voltage and current waveforms for a 3-phase full-converter for different firing angles.

or off of other SCRs in sequence. For $\alpha = 90°$, the load voltage is symmetrical about the reference line $\omega t$, therefore its average value is zero. For $\alpha = 150°$, T1 is triggered at $\omega t = 210°$, T2 at 270° and so on. The output voltage waveform is shown in Fig. 6.26 ($d$). It is, seen from this figure that average voltage is reversed in polarity. This means that dc source is delivering power to ac source ; this is called line-commutated inverter operation of the 3-phase full converter bridge. It may be seen from above that for $\alpha = 0°$ to 90°, power circuit of Fig. 6.24 works as a 3-phase full converter delivering power from ac source to dc load and

© Wiki Engineering www.raghul.org

for $\alpha = 90°$ to $180°$, it works as a line-commutated inverter delivering power from dc source to ac load. It can work in the inverter mode only if the load has a direct emf $E$ due to a battery or a dc motor. It should be noted that direction of current for both converter and inverter operations remains fixed but the polarity of output voltage reverses.

Source current $i_A$ in phase $A$ is also drawn in Fig. 6.26 (*d*) for $\alpha = 150°$. For the arrow direction indicated in Fig. 6.24, $i_A$ is treated as positive. Therefore $i_A$ is positive when T1 is conducting, *i.e.* when first subscript for voltages or currents is '*a*'. Likewise $i_A$ is negative when T4 is conducting, *i.e.* when the second subscript for voltages or currents is '*a*'. Source current waveforms for other two phases can also be drawn accordingly. For other firing angles, source currents can be drawn similarly.

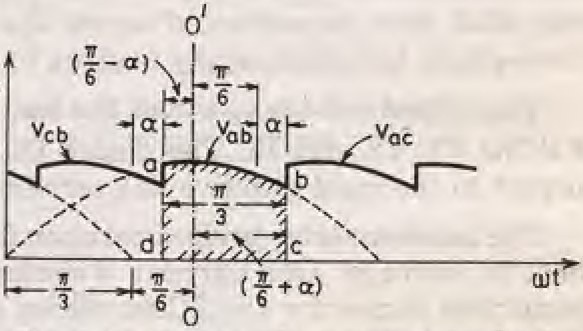


Fig. 6.27. Output voltage waveform for a 3-phase full converter.

Expression for the average output voltage $V_0$ can be obtained by referring to Fig. 6.27 where $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$ etc. are sketched from Fig. 6.26 (*a*) for firing angle delay $\alpha < 30°$. Note that periodicity of output voltage is $\pi/3$ radians. Average value of output voltage is obtained by finding the dashed area *abcd* over a periodic cycle, Fig. 6.27, and then dividing it by the periodic time. With *OO'* as the origin at the maximum value of $v_{ab}$, $V_0$ is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{3}{\pi}\int_{-\left(\frac{\pi}{6}-\alpha\right)}^{\left(\frac{\pi}{6}+\alpha\right)} V_{ml}\cos\omega t\cdot d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\left[\sin\left(\alpha+\frac{\pi}{6}\right)-\sin\left(\alpha+\frac{\pi}{6}\right)\right] = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha \qquad ...(6.38)$$

Here $V_{ml}$ is the maximum value of line voltage.

If sine function is used for the source voltage, then $v_{ab} = V_{ml}\sin\omega t$ because $v_{ab} = 0$ at $\omega t = 0$.

$$\therefore \qquad V_0 = \frac{3}{\pi}\int_{\frac{\pi}{3}+\alpha}^{\frac{2\pi}{3}+\alpha} V_{ml}\sin\omega t\cdot d(\omega t)$$

$$= -\frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\left[\cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}+\alpha\right)-\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3}+\alpha\right)\right] = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha \qquad ...(6.38)$$

It is observed from Fig. 6.26 that source current for phase $A$, *i.e.* $i_A$ (or for any other phase) flows for 120° for every 180°. Therefore, in case output current is assumed constant at $I_0$, the rms value of source current is

$$I_s = \sqrt{I_0^2\,\frac{2\pi}{3}\times\frac{1}{\pi}} = I_0\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}$$

Each SCR conducts for 120° for every 360°. Therefore, the rms value of thyristor current is

$$I_{Th} = \sqrt{I_0^2 \frac{2\pi}{3} \times \frac{1}{2\pi}} = I_0 \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}}$$

### 6.6.2. Three-Phase Semiconverters

In Fig. 6.19 (*c*), if diodes A1, B1, C1 are replaced by thyristors T1, T2, T3 respectively, a 3-phase semiconverter bridge of Fig. 6.28 is obtained. A freewheeling diode FD, in parallel with RLE load, is connected across the output terminals of the semiconverter as shown. Three-phase balanced supply is given to the three input terminals *A*, *B*, *C* of Fig. 6.28.

The output voltage $v_0$ across the load terminals is controlled by varying the firing angles of SCRs T1, T2 and T3. The diodes D1, D2 and D3 provide merely a return path for the current to the most negative line terminal.

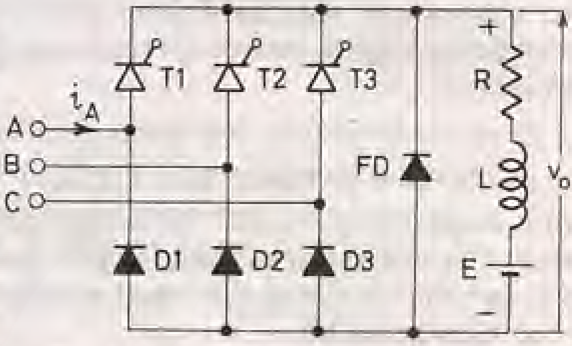


Fig. 6.28. Power circuit for a 3-phase semi-converter feeding RLE load.

The semiconverter bridge operation for different firing angles is shown in Fig. 6.29 in the form of voltage and current waveforms. The conduction angles for the SCRs, diodes or FD are also shown. For a firing angle delay of $\alpha = 0°$, thyristors T1, T2, T3 would behave as diodes and the output voltage of semiconverter would be symmetrical six-pulse per cycle as shown in Fig. 6.29 (*a*). The output voltage consisting of pulses $v_{cb}$, $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$, $v_{bc}$ etc. shown in this figure is similar to that shown in Fig. 6.20 (c). The output voltage consists of pulses $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$, $v_{bc}$, $v_{ba}$ etc. as in Fig. 6.20 (*c*). When the firing angle is delayed to $\alpha = 15°$ (say) as shown in Fig. 6.29 (*b*), the triggering of SCRs T1, T2, T3 is delayed but return diodes D1, D2, D3 remain unaffected so that only alternate pulses are altered. The load current is continuous and has little ripple. The FD does not come into play for $\alpha = 15°$. Each SCR and diode conduct for 120°.

In Fig. 6.29 (*a*), $v_{cb}$ is the load voltage from $\omega t = 0°$ to 60°. As the first subscript indicates conducting element in the positive group, $v_{cb}$ shows that T3 is already conducting through diode B2 of negative group. Voltages $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$ indicate that, according to the first subscript, T1 conducts for 120° and it begins to conduct at $\omega t = 60°$ for $\alpha = 0°$ as shown in Fig. 6.29 (*a*). Similarly, $v_{bc}$, $v_{ba}$ indicate that T2 conducts for 120° and it begins to conduct at $\omega t = 180°$ for $\alpha = 0°$. An SCR with zero degree firing angle behaves like a simple diode. Thus, as per the definition of firing angle, it should be measured from $\omega t = 60°$ for T1, from $\omega t = 180°$ for T2, from $\omega t = 300°$ for T3 and so on.

For $\alpha = 60°$, Fig. 6.29 (*c*), the thyristors are fired so that current returns through one diode during each 120° conduction period. For voltage $v_{ac}$, T1 and D3 conduct simultaneously for 120° as shown. Similarly, other elements conduct. FD does not come into play even for $\alpha = 60°$. Further note that voltage pulses $v_{ab}$, $v_{bc}$, $v_{ca}$ do not appear in the output voltage waveform for $\alpha = 60°$. It will be seen that for $\alpha \geq 60°$, voltage pulses $v_{ab}$, $v_{bc}$, $v_{ca}$ are eliminated. The load current, assumed continuous for $\alpha = 60°$, is not shown in Fig. 6.29 (*c*).

For firing angle delay of 90°, voltage, and current waveforms are shown in Fig. 6.29 (*d*). The output voltage $v_0$ is discontinuous. As $v_0$ made up of $v_{cb}$, $v_{ac}$, $v_{ba}$, $v_{cb}$,..., tends to become negative at $\omega t = 120°$, 240°, 360°, FD gets forward biased. Therefore, for each periodic cycle of 120°, output voltage is equal to line voltage for only 90° and for the remaining 30°, when FD conducts, $v_0 = 0$. For $\alpha = 90°$, conduction angle of SCRs and diodes is seen to be less than

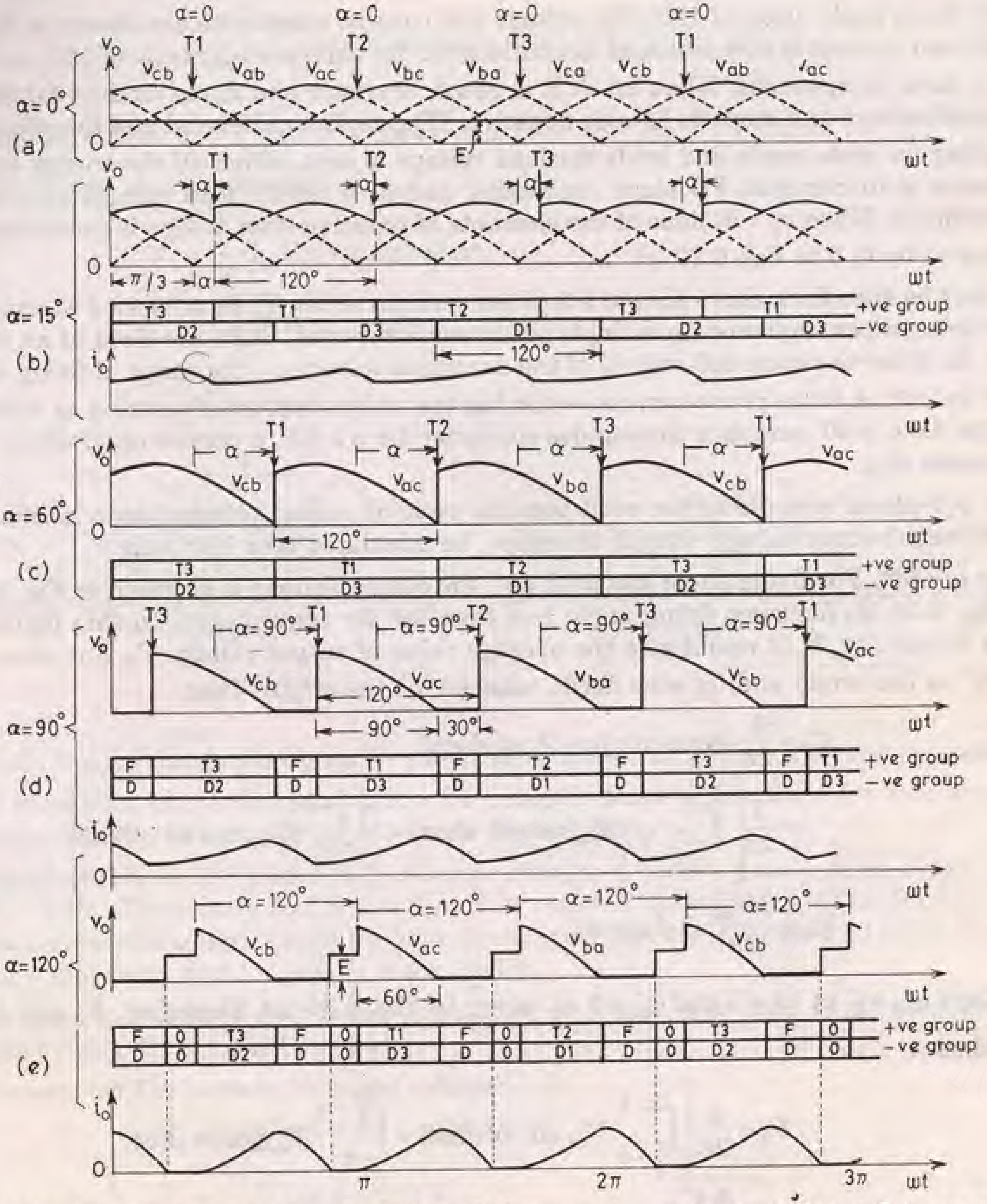


Fig. 6.29. Voltage and current waveforms for a 3-phase semiconverter for different firing angles.

120° for every output pulse. In other words, conduction angle for both positive and negative group elements is 90° and for the remaining 30°, current completes its path through FD as shown in Fig. 6.29 (*d*) for α = 90°. Voltage pulses $v_{ab}, v_{bc}, v_{ca}$ are absent from output voltage $v_0$ for this firing angle as well. Without FD, after load voltage $v_0$ reaches zero, a diode from negative group would begin to conduct reducing $v_0$ to zero till next SCR in sequence is triggered. For example, at $\omega t = 120°$, $v_0 = v_{cb} = 0$ and without FD, D3 from negative group would start conducting through T3 from $\omega t = 120°$ to 150° when SCR T1 is gaged. This means that without FD, T3 would conduct for 120° from $\omega t = 30°$ to 150°, D2 for 90° from $\omega t = 30°$ to 120° and D3 for 30° from $\omega t = 120°$ to 150° for this periodic cycle of 120° extending from $\omega t = 30°$ to 150°.

For firing angle delay of 120°, the voltage and current waveforms are shown in Fig. 6.29 (*e*). The load current is now assumed discontinuous. For each periodic cycle of 120°, $v_0$ is seen to have three components. When an SCR is gated, thyristor and diode conduct for 60° only. As $v_0$ reaches zero and tends to become negative, FD gets forward biased and therefore starts conducting for some angle and holds the load voltage to zero. When all the energy stored in inductance is discharged, FD stops conducting and as a result, load voltage rises to load counter emf $E$. When $v_0 = E$, none of the elements of semiconverter bridge is conducting, this is indicated by 0, 0 in Fig. 6.29 (*e*).

It may be seen from above that in a 3-phase semiconverter, SCRs are gated at an interval of 120° in a proper sequence. In a single phase semiconverter, SCRs are fired at an interval of 180°. In order to obtain full control of the dc output voltage $v_0$, the range of firing angle is from 0° to 180°. A three-phase semiconverter has the unique feature of working as a six-pulse converter for $\alpha < 60°$ and as a three-pulse converter for $\alpha \geq 60°$, a careful observation of Fig. 6.29 reveals this.

For a 3-phase semiconverter, each periodic cycle of output voltage has a periodicity of 120°. Average output voltage should, therefore, be calculated over 120° only.

**For $\alpha < 60°$.** For firing angle less than 60°, the output voltage is redrawn in Fig. 6.30 (*a*) from Fig. 6.29 (*b*) for some firing angle less than 30° for convenience. In this figure, area *abcefda* divided by $2\pi/3$ would give the average value of output voltage $V_0$. For area *abcde*, take $OO'$ as the origin and for area *dcefd*, take $AA'$ as the origin. Then

$$V_0 = \frac{3}{2\pi}\,[\text{Area } abcda + \text{Area } dcefd]$$

$$= \frac{3}{2\pi}\left[\int_{-\left[\frac{\pi}{6}-\alpha\right]}^{\pi/6} V_{ml}\cos\omega t\cdot d(\omega t) + \int_{-\pi/6}^{\left(\frac{\pi}{6}+\alpha\right)} V_{ml}\cos\omega t\cdot d(\omega t)\right]$$

or $$V_0 = \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1+\cos\alpha) \qquad \text{...(6.39)}$$

Voltage $v_{ab} = 0$ at $\omega t = 0$ and $v_{ac} = 0$ at $\omega t = \frac{\pi}{3}$ in Fig. 6.30 (*a*). Therefore, $V_0$ can also be obtained as

$$V_0 = \frac{3}{2\pi}\left[\int_{\frac{\pi}{3}+\alpha}^{2\pi/3} V_{ml}\sin\omega t\; d(\omega t) + \int_{\pi/3}^{\frac{2\pi}{3}+\alpha} V_m \sin\omega t\; d(\omega t)\right]$$

$$= \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1+\cos\alpha) \qquad \text{...(6.39)}$$

With $OO'$ as the origin, angle $\left(\frac{\pi}{6}-\alpha\right)$ is measured to the left of $OO'$, therefore minus sign is put before $\left(\frac{\pi}{6}-\alpha\right)$. Similarly, minus sign is put before $\frac{\pi}{6}$.

**For $\alpha \geq 60°$.** For $\alpha \geq 60°$, the output voltage waveform is drawn in Fig. 6.30 (*b*) for a firing angle $60° < \alpha < 90°$ for convenience. With $OO'$ as the origin in this figure, the average output voltage $V_0$ is given by

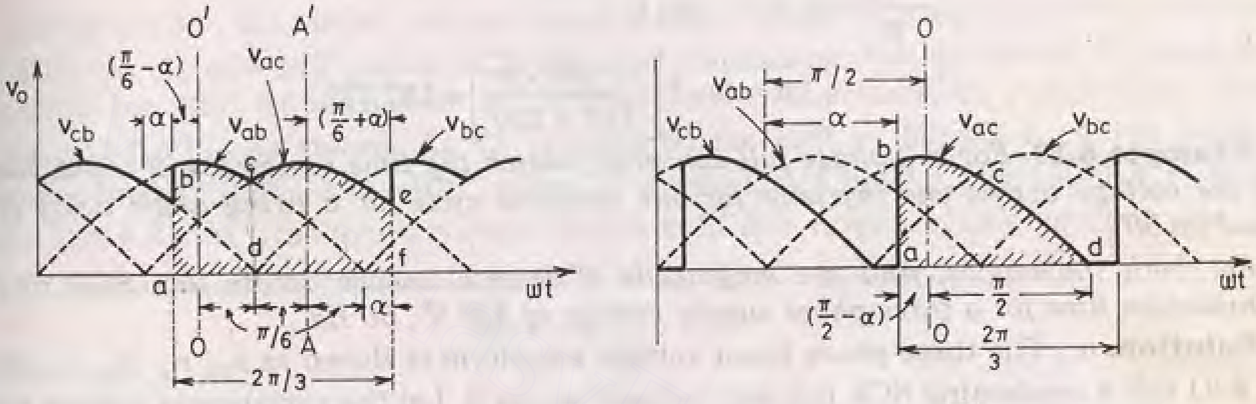
$$V_0 = \frac{3}{2\pi}\,[\text{Area } abcda].$$

$$= \frac{3}{2\pi}\left[\int_{-\left[\frac{\pi}{2}-\alpha\right]}^{\pi/2} V_{ml}\cos\omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1+\cos\alpha)\right. \qquad ...(6.39)$$

Voltage $v_{ac} = 0$ at $\omega t = \frac{\pi}{3}$ and $\alpha$ is measured from $\omega t = 2\pi/3$ as shown in Fig. 6.30 ($b$). Therefore, $V_0$ can also be obtained as

$$V_0 = \frac{3}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi} V_{ml}\sin\omega t \cdot d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1+\cos\alpha) \qquad ...(6.39)$$



($a$) ($b$)

Fig. 6.30. Output voltage waveforms for a 3-phase semiconverter for ($a$) $\alpha < 60°$ and ($b$) $\alpha > 60°$.

It is seen from above that expression for output voltage is the same for both six-pulse and three-pulse operating modes of a 3-phase semiconverter.

**Example 6.12.** *(a) A 3-phase full converter charges a battery from a three-phase supply of 230 V, 50 Hz. The battery emf is 200 V and its internal resistance is 0.5 Ω. On account of inductance connected in series with the battery, charging current is constant at 20 A. Compute the firing angle delay and the supply power factor.*

*(b) In case it is desired that power flows from dc source to ac load in part (a), find the firing angle delay for the same current.*

**Solution.** ($a$) The battery terminal voltage $V_0$ is

$$V_0 = 200 + 20 \times 0.5 = 210 \text{ V}$$

But $$V_0 = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha = 210 \text{ V}$$

$$\therefore \qquad \alpha = \cos^{-1}\frac{210 \times \pi}{3\sqrt{2} \times 230} = 47.453°.$$

For constant load current of $I_0 = 20\,A$, Fig. 6.26 ($d$) reveals that supply current $i_A$ is of rectangular (or square) wave of amplitude 20 A. It is also seen from this figure that $i_A$ flows for 120° (or $2\pi/3$ radians) over every half cycle of 180° or π radians.

∴ Rms value of the supply current $I_s$ over π radians is

$$I_s = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}(20)^2\frac{2\pi}{3}\right]^{1/2} = 20\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = 16.33 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of output current, $I_{or} = 20$ A

Power delivered to load $= EI_0 + I_{or}^2 \cdot r = 200 \times 20 + (20)^2 \times 0.5 = 4200$ W

Now $\sqrt{3}\, V_s I_s \cos\phi = 4200$ W

$\therefore$ Input supply $pf = \dfrac{4200}{\sqrt{3} \times 230 \times 16.33} = 0.646$ lag.

(*b*) When battery is delivering power, then

$$V_0 = 200 - 120 \times 0.5 = 190 \text{ V}$$

When power flows from dc source to ac load, the 3-phase full converter then works as a 3-phase line commutated inverter.

$$\therefore \quad \frac{3\, V_{ml}}{\pi} \cos\alpha = -190 \text{ V}$$

or
$$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left[\frac{-190 \times \pi}{3\sqrt{2} \times 230}\right] = 127.72°.$$

**Example 6.13.** *For a 3-phase full converter, sketch the time variations of input voltage and the voltage across one thyristor for one complete cycle for a firing angle delay of (a) 0° and (b) 30°.*

*For both the angles, find the magnitude of reverse voltage across this SCR and its commutation time for a three-phase supply voltage of 230 V, 50 Hz.*

**Solution.** (*a*) The three-phase input voltage waveform is shown as $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$, $v_{bc}$, $v_{ba}$ etc. in Fig. 6.31 (*a*). A conducting SCR has zero voltage across it. Let the variation of voltage across SCR $T_1$ belonging to positive group of Fig. 6.24 be plotted in Fig. 6.31 (*a*).

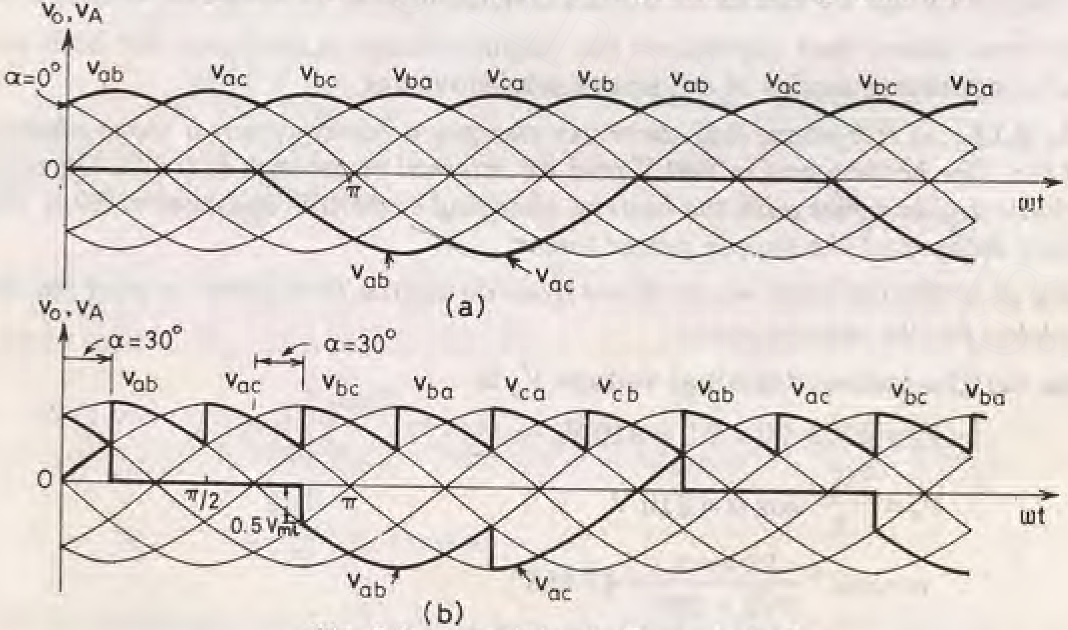


Fig. 6.31. Pertaining to Example 6.13.

For voltages $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$, SCR T1 conducts, therefore voltage across this SCR is $v_A = v_a - v_a = 0$ for a period of 120°, *i.e.* from $\omega t = 0$ to $\omega t = 120°$ as shown. After $\omega t = 120°$, SCR T3 conducts for 120° with $v_{bc}$, $v_{ba}$ as the output voltages. Now cathode of T1 is connected to supply terminal *B* through T3 for a period of 120° and its anode to supply terminal *A*. Therefore, voltage across T1 from $\omega t = 120°$ to 240° is $v_A = v_a - v_b$. This voltage reverse biases T1 and it is shown as $v_{ab}$ below the reference line in Fig. 6.31 (*a*).

After $\omega t = 240°$, for voltages $v_{ca}$, $v_{cb}$; SCR T5 conducts for 120° and therefore cathode of T1 is connected to terminal $C$ through T5. Thus, voltage across T1 is $v_A = v_a - v_c = v_{ac}$ below the reference line for a period of 120° from $\omega t = 240°$. At $\omega t = 2\pi$, T1 is again gated and voltage $v_A = 0$ as shown.

For firing angle delay of zero degree, each SCR is reverse biased for $240° = \frac{4\pi}{3}$ rad.

∴ Commutation time available for SCR turn-off = circuit turn-off time, $t_c = \frac{4\pi}{3\omega}$ sec

$$= \frac{4\pi \times 1000}{3 \times 2\pi \times 50} = 13.33 \text{ msec.}$$

(*b*) For $\alpha = 30°$, the output voltage waveform and voltage $v_A$ across SCR T1 are shown in Fig. 6.31 (*b*). At $\omega t = 150°$, when SCR T1 stops conducting, voltage across T1 must follow $v_{ab}$ curve for 120° as discussed in part (*a*) above. Therefore, $v_A$ jumps from zero to $V_{ml} \sin 30 = 0.5\, V_{ml}$ as shown. As T3 remains on for 120°, $v_A$ follows $v_{ab}$ curve below the reference line for 120°. At $\omega t = 270°$, when T5 is gated, $v_A$ follows $v_{ac}$ for 120° till T1 is gated again, Fig. 6.31 (*b*). This figure reveals that each SCR is reverse biased for $(240° - \alpha)$.

∴ Commutation time available for SCR turn-off = Circuit turn-off time,

$$t_c = \frac{4\pi/3 - \alpha}{\omega} \text{ sec}$$

$$= \left[\frac{\frac{4\pi}{3} - \frac{\pi}{6}}{2\pi \times 50}\right] \times 1000 = 11.67 \text{ msec.}$$

In case $\alpha \geq 60°$, it would be observed that $\omega t_c = \pi - \alpha$. For both the parts, *i.e.* for $\alpha = 0°$ and $\alpha = 30°$, the peak reverse voltage across the SCR is $\sqrt{2} \cdot 230 = 325.22$ V.

**Example 6.14.** *(a) A 3-phase full-converter feeds power to a resistive load of 10 Ω. For a firing angle delay of 30°, the load takes 5 kW. Find the magnitude of per phase input supply voltage.*

*(b) Repeat part (a) in case a large reactor in series with load renders the load current ripple free.*

**Solution.** (*a*) For a resistive load, output current waveform is of the same shape as that of the output voltage wave. It is seen from Fig. 6.26 that for $\alpha > 60°$, the output voltage and output current would be discontinuous for resistive load. However, for $\alpha \leq 60°$, output voltage and current are continuous. From Fig. 6.27, the rms value of output voltage $V_{or}$ is given by

$$V_{or} = \left[\frac{3}{\pi} \int_{\left(\frac{\pi}{3}+\alpha\right)}^{\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}+\alpha\right)} V_{ml}^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$V_{or}^2 = \left[\frac{3\, V_{ml}^2}{2\pi} \int_{\frac{\pi}{3}+\alpha}^{\frac{2\pi}{3}+\alpha} (1 - \cos 2\omega t)\, d(\omega t)\right]$$

or

$$V_{or} = V_{ml} \sqrt{\frac{3}{2\pi}} \left[\frac{\pi}{3} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \cos 2\alpha\right]^{1/2}$$

For this example, $\frac{V_{or}^2}{R} = 5000$ watts and $V_{ml} = \sqrt{2}\, V_s$

$$\therefore \qquad 2\, V_s^2 \frac{3}{2\pi}\left[\frac{\pi}{3} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\cos 60\right] = 5000 \times 10$$

or

$$V_s = 188.08 \text{ V}$$

$\therefore$ Per phase voltage, $\qquad V_{ph} = \frac{V_s}{\sqrt{3}} = 108.591$ V

(*b*) For a constant load current, average load current $I_0$ = rms load current, $I_{or}$

$$\therefore \qquad \left[\frac{3\, V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha\right]^2 \frac{1}{R} = 5000 \text{ W}$$

or

$$V_s = \sqrt{50000} \times \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{2} \times 3\cos 30°} = 191.22 \text{ V}$$

$$\therefore \qquad V_{ph} = 110.40 \text{ V}.$$

**Example 6.15.** *(a) A 3-phase semiconverter feeds power to a resistive load of 10 Ω. For a firing angle delay of 30°, the load takes 5 kW. Find the magnitude of per phase input supply voltage.*

*(b) Repeat part (a) in case load current is made ripple free by connecting an inductor in series with the load.*

**Solution.** It is seen from Fig. 6.29 that for α < 30°, the output voltage is continuous. For a resistive load, output current is also continuous. From Fig. 6.30 (*a*), rms value of output voltage is given by

$$V_{or} = \left[\frac{3}{2\pi}\left\{\int_{-\left[\frac{\pi}{6}-\alpha\right]}^{\pi/6} V_{ml}^2 \cos^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) + \int_{-\pi/6}^{\left(\frac{\pi}{6}+\alpha\right)} V_{ml}^2 \cos^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)\right\}\right]^{1/2}$$

or

$$V_{or}^2 = \frac{3V_{ml}^2}{4\pi}\left[\left|\omega t + \frac{\sin 2\omega t}{2}\right|_{-\left[\frac{\pi}{6}-\alpha\right]}^{-\pi/6} + \left|\omega t + \frac{\sin 2\omega t}{2}\right|_{-\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{6}+\alpha}\right]$$

or

$$V_{or} = \frac{V_{ml}}{2}\sqrt{\frac{3}{\pi}\left[\frac{2\pi}{3} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}(1 + \cos 2\alpha)\right]^{1/2}}$$

For

$$\alpha = 30°, \frac{2\, V_s^2}{4}\frac{3}{\pi}\left[\frac{2\pi}{3} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}(1 + \cos 60)\right] = 5000 \times 10$$

or

$$V_s = 175.67 \text{ V and } V_{ph} = 101.43 \text{ V}$$

(*a*) For constant load current, $I_{or}$ = average load current, $I_0$

$$\therefore \qquad \left[\frac{3\, V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1 + \cos 30°)\right]^2 \frac{1}{10} = 5000 \text{ W}$$

or

$$V_s = \sqrt{50000} \times \frac{\sqrt{2}\,\pi}{3 \times 1.866} = 177.44 \text{ V} \quad \text{and} \quad V_{ph} = 102.45 \text{ V}$$

**Example 6.16.** *Repeat Example 6.15 in case firing angle delay is 90°.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Fig. 6.29 shows that for α = 90°, the output voltage is discontinuous. For a resistive load, output current is also discontinuous. From Fig. 6.30 (*b*), rms value of output voltage is

$$V_{or} = \left[\frac{3}{2\pi}\left\{\int_{-\left[\frac{\pi}{2}-\alpha\right]}^{\pi/2} V_{ml}^2 \cos^2 \omega t \, d(\omega t)\right\}\right]^{1/2}$$

or $$V_{or} = \frac{V_{ml}}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\frac{3}{\pi}\left[(\pi - \alpha) + \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right]}^{1/2}$$

For $\alpha = 90°$, $$\frac{2\,V_s^2}{4} \cdot \frac{3}{\pi}\left[\left(\pi - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + \frac{1}{2}\sin 180°\right] \times \frac{1}{10} = 5000 \text{ W}$$

or $$V_s = \sqrt{50000} \times \frac{4}{3} = 298.14 \text{ V}$$

and $$V_{ph} = 172.14 \text{ V}$$

(*b*) For constant load current,

$$\left[\frac{3\,V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1 + \cos 90)\right]^2 \frac{1}{10} = 5000 \text{ W}$$

or $$V_s = \sqrt{50000} \times \frac{\sqrt{2}\,\pi}{3} = 331.153 \text{ V and } V_{ph} = 191.2 \text{ V}$$

**Example 6.17.** *Repeat part (a) of Example 6.12 in case 3-phase full converter is replaced by a 3-phase semiconverter.*

**Solution.** The battery terminal voltage is

$$V_0 = 200 + 20 \times 0.5 = 210 \text{ V}$$

But $$V_0 = \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1 + \cos \alpha) = 210 \text{ V}$$

$\therefore$ $$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left[\frac{210 \times 2\pi}{3 \cdot \sqrt{2}, 230} - 1\right] = 69.37°$$

An examination of Fig. 6.29 reveals that for firing angle $\alpha > 60°$, each SCR conducts for $180 - \alpha$. So, in this example, each SCR conducts for $(180 - 69.37) = 110.63°$. For constant load current of $I_0 = 20$ A, supply current $i_A$ is of square wave of amplitude 20 A. As $i_A$ flows for 110.63° over every half cycle of 180°, the rms value of supply current $I_s$ is given by

$$I_s = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}(20)^2 \frac{110.63 \times \pi}{180}\right]^{1/2} = 20\sqrt{\frac{110.63}{180}} = 15.68 \text{ A}$$

Power delivered to load $= V_0 I_0 = 210 \times 20 = 4200$ W

$\therefore$ Input supply $$pf = \frac{4200}{\sqrt{3} \times 230 \times 15.68} = 0.6724 \text{ lag.}$$

## 6.7. EFFECT OF SOURCE IMPEDANCE ON THE PERFORMANCE OF CONVERTERS

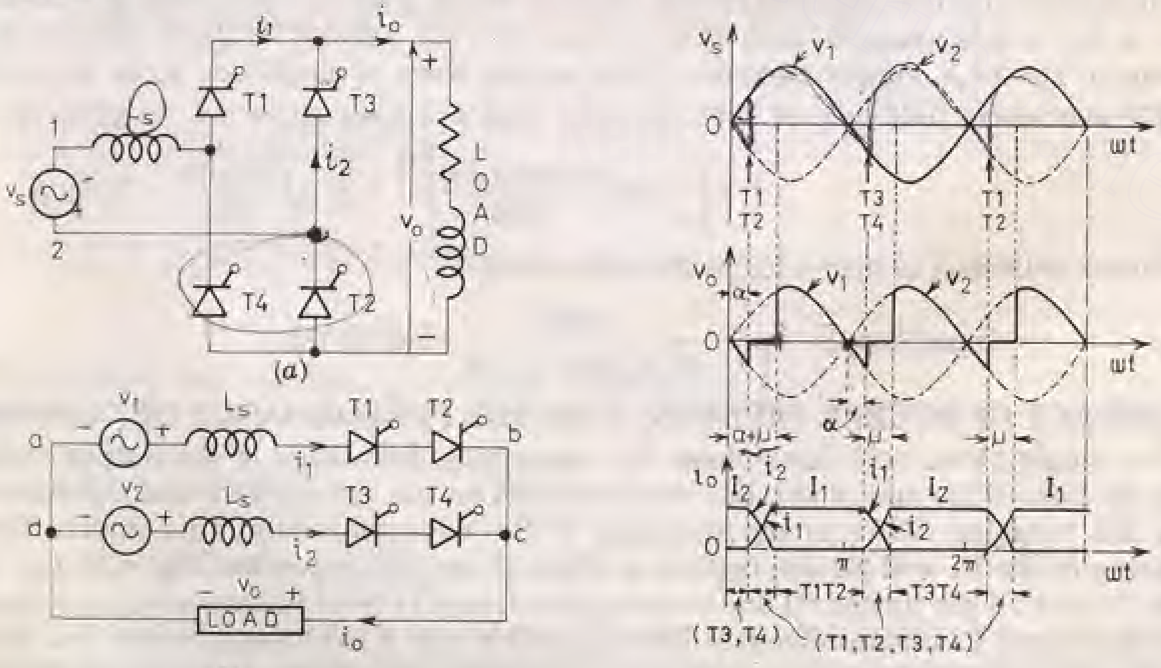
For single-phase and three-phase full converters, derivation of the output voltages, as given by Eqs. (6.28) and (6.38), has been obtained on the assumption that current transfers from the outgoing SCRs to the incoming SCRs instantaneously. This means that when incoming SCRs T1 and T2 are fired in a single-phase full converter, Fig. 6.10 (*a*), outgoing SCRs T3 and T4 get turned off due to the application of reverse voltage and the current shifts to SCRs T1 and T2 instantaneously. This is possible only if the voltage source has no internal impedance. Actually, the source does possess internal impedance. If the source impedance is resistive, then there will be a voltage drop across the resistance and the average voltage output of a converter gets reduced by an amount equal to $I_0 . r_s$ for a single-phase converter and by $2I_0.r_s$ for a 3-phase converter. Here $I_0$ is the constant dc load current and $r_s$ is the source resistance per phase. Since source resistance is usually low, it is assumed that duration of the commutation is very small and the current transfer takes place immediately after the incoming SCRs are fired. However, a voltage drop caused by source resistance must be taken into consideration as discussed above.

In the following lines, the source impedance is taken as purely inductive. The load inductance is assumed large so that output current is virtually constant. The source inductance causes the outgoing and incoming SCRs to conduct together. During the commutation period (when both incoming and outgoing SCRs are conducting together), the output voltage is equal to the average value of the conducting-phase voltages. For a single-phase converter, the load voltage will be zero and for a 3-phase converter, the load voltage is $(v_a + v_b)/2$ ( average value of the conducting phases $a$ and $b$). The commutation period in seconds, when outgoing and incoming SCRs are conducting, is also known as the *overlap period.* The angular-period, during which both the incoming and outgoing SCRs are conducting, is known as *commutation angle* or *overlap angle* $\mu$ in degrees or radians. The effect of source inductance is investigated in this section for both single-phase and three-phase full converters.

### 6.7.1. Single-phase Full Converter

The commutation overlap is more predominant in full converters than in semiconverters.

In the single-phase full converter shown in Fig. 6.32 ($a$), $L_s$ is the source inductance. The load current is assumed constant (analysis with pulsating load current is more involved). Fig. 6.32 ($b$) gives the equivalent circuit for Fig. 6.32 ($a$) for analytical purposes. When terminal 1 of source voltage $v_s$ is positive in Fig. 6.32 ($a$), current $i_1$ flows through $L_s$, T1, load and T2; this is shown as $v_1$, $L_s$, T1 T2 and load in Fig. 6.32 ($b$). Similarly, when terminal 2 of $v_s$ is positive, load current $i_2$ flows through T3, load, T4 ; this is shown as $v_2$, $L_3$, T3 T4 and load in Fig. 6.32 ($b$).



($a$)

($b$)

($c$)

Fig. 6.32. ($a$) Single-phase full converter with source inductance $L_s$ ($b$) its equivalent circuit and (c) typical current and voltage waveforms with $L_s$.

When T1, T2 are triggered at a firing angle $\alpha$, the commutation of already conducting thyristors T3, T4 begins. Because of the presence of source inductance $L_s$, the current through outgoing devices T3, T4 decreases gradually to zero from its initial value of $I_0$ ; whereas in incoming thyristors T1, T2 ; the current builds up gradually from zero to full value of load current $I_0$. During the commutation of T1, T2 and T3, T4 ; *i.e.* during the overlap angle $\mu$,KVL for the loop *abcda* of Fig. 6.32 (*b*) gives,

$$v_1 - L_s \cdot \frac{di_1}{dt} = v_2 - L_s \frac{di_2}{dt}$$

or
$$v_1 - v_2 = L_s \left( \frac{di_1}{dt} - \frac{di_2}{dt} \right)$$

It is seen from Fig. 6.32 (*c*) that if $v_1 = V_m \sin \omega t$, then $v_2 = - V_m \sin \omega t$.

$$\therefore \qquad L_s \left( \frac{di_1}{dt} - \frac{di_2}{dt} \right) = 2\, V_m \sin \omega t \qquad ...(6.40)$$

As the load current is assumed constant throughout $i_1 + i_2 = I_0$

or
$$\frac{di_1}{dt} + \frac{di_2}{dt} = 0 \qquad ...(6.41)$$

From Eq. (6.40),
$$\frac{di_1}{dt} - \frac{di_2}{dt} = \frac{2V_m}{L_s} \sin \omega t \qquad ...(6.42)$$

Addition of Eqs. (6.41) and (6.42) gives

$$\frac{di_1}{dt} = \frac{V_m}{L_s} \sin \omega t \qquad ...(6.43)$$

Load current $i_1$ through thyristor pair T1, T2 builds up from zero to $I_0$ during the overlap angle $\mu$; *i.e.* at $\omega t = \alpha$,

$$i_1 = 0 \text{ and at } \omega t = (\alpha + \mu),\ i_1 = I_0$$

$\therefore$ From Eq. (6.43),
$$\int_0^{I_0} di_1 = \frac{V_m}{L_s} \int_{\alpha/\omega}^{(\alpha+\mu)/\omega} \sin \omega t \cdot dt$$

or
$$I_0 = \frac{V_m}{\omega L_s} [\cos \alpha - \cos (\alpha + \mu)] \qquad ...(6.44)$$

It is seen from Fig. 6.32 (*c*) (middle figure) that output voltage $v_0$ is zero from $\alpha$ to $(\alpha + \mu)$. Thus the average output voltage $V_0$ is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{V_m}{\pi} \int_{(\alpha+\mu)}^{(\alpha+\pi)} \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{\pi} [\cos (\alpha + \mu) - \cos (\alpha + \pi)]$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{\pi} [\cos \alpha + \cos (\alpha + \mu)] \qquad ...(6.45)$$

From Eq. (6.44), $\cos (\alpha + \mu) = \cos \alpha - \dfrac{\omega L_s}{V_m} I_0$

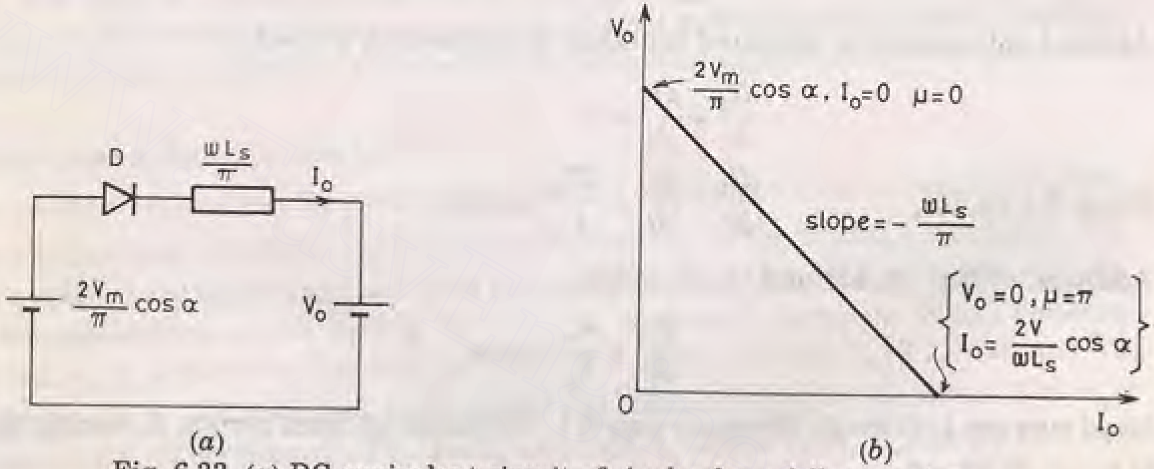
Substituting this value of $\cos (\alpha + \mu)$ in Eq. (6.45) gives

$$V_0 = \frac{2\, V_m}{\pi} \cos \alpha - \frac{\omega L_s}{\pi} I_0 \qquad ...(6.46)$$

Also, from Eq. (6.44), $\cos\alpha = \frac{\omega L_s}{V_m} I_0 + \cos(\alpha+\mu)$. Substituting this value of $\cos\alpha$ in Eq. (6.45) gives

$$V_0 = \frac{2\,V_m}{\pi}\cos(\alpha+\mu) + \frac{\omega L_s}{\pi} I_0 \qquad \text{...(6.47)}$$

With the help of Eq. (6.46), a dc equivalent circuit for a 2-pulse single-phase full converter can be drawn as shown in Fig. 6.33 (*a*). In this figure, diode *D* merely indicates that load current is unidirectional. This equivalent circuit reveals that the effect of source inductance $L_s$ is to present an equivalent resistance of magnitude $\omega L_s/\pi$ ohms in series with internal voltage of the rectifier $(2V_m/\pi)\cos\alpha$. The voltage drop due to $L_s$ is proportional to $I_0$ and $L$. Thus as the load current (or source inductance) increases, the commutation interval (or overlap angle) increases and as a consequence, the average output voltage decreases as illustrated in Fig. 6.33 (*b*).



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 6.33. (*a*) DC equivalent circuit of single-phase full converter.

In single-phase full converter, as long as $\mu < \pi$, the output voltage is given by Eq. (6.46). When $\mu = \pi$, the load will be permanently short circuited by SCRs and the output voltage will be zero because during the overlap angle, all SCRs will be conducting.

### 6.7.2. Three-phase Full Converter Bridge

Fig. 6.34 shows a three-phase full-converter bridge with a source inductance $L_s$ in each line. The load current is assumed constant as the analysis with pulsating current is quite complicated.

In Fig. 6.35 (*b*) is shown the conduction of various SCRs with firing angle $\alpha = 0$ and overlap angle $\mu = 0$. In this figure ; T5, T6 conduct upto $\omega t = 30°$. From $\omega t = 30°$ to 90° (*i.e.* for 60°), T1, T6 conduct. From $\omega t = 90°$ to 150°; T1, T2 conduct and so on. It is seen that only two SCRs conduct at a time, one from the positive group and the other from the negative group.

Fig. 6.35 (c) shows the effect of overlap. From $\omega t = 0°$ to 30° ; T5, T6 conduct. At $\omega t = 30°$, T5 is outgoing SCR and T1 is

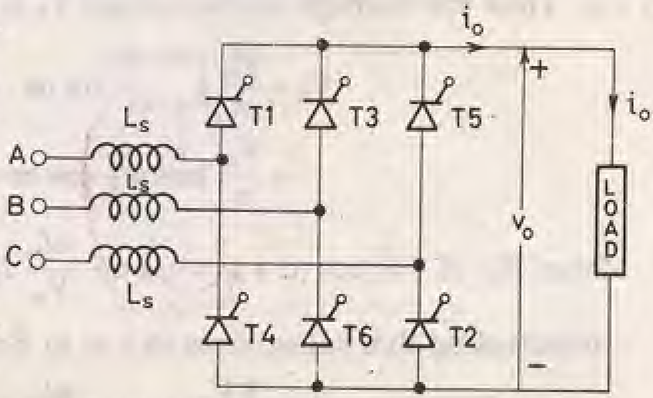


Fig. 6.34. Three-phase full converter with source inductance $L_s$ in each line.

incoming SCR and both T5, T6 belong to the positive group. As T1 is triggered, current through T5 starts decaying while through T1 current begins to build up. At $\omega t = 30° + \mu$, $I_s$ is zero while $I_1 = I_0$. Therefore, from $\omega t = 30°$ to $30° + \mu$, three SCRs T5, T6, T1 conduct. After $\omega t = 30° + \mu$; T6, T1 conduct. At $\omega t = 90°$, as T2 is triggered, $I_6$ begins to decrease and $I_2$ starts to build up. Therefore, from $\omega t = 90°$ to $90° + \mu$, three SCRs T6, T1, T2 conduct. At $\omega t = 90° + \mu$, $I_6 = 0$ and $I_2 = I_0$. After $\omega t = 90° + \mu$, only two SCRs T1, T2 conduct. This sequence of operation repeats with other SCRs of the full converter. It may be observed from this that when positive group of SCRs are undergoing commutation, two SCRs from the positive group and one SCR from the negative group conduct. After the commutation of positive group is completed ; only two SCRs conduct, one from the positive group and the other from the negative group. Similarly, when negative group of SCRs are undergoing commutation, three SCRs conduct, two from the negative group and one from the positive group and these are followed by two SCRs, one from negative group and one from positive group and so on. Conduction of various thyristors as shown in Fig. 6.35 (*c*) is as follows :

5–6, 5–6–1, 6–1, 6–1–2, 1–2, 1–2–3, 2–3, 2–3–4, 3–4, 3–4–5, 4–5, 4–5–6, 5–6 and so on.

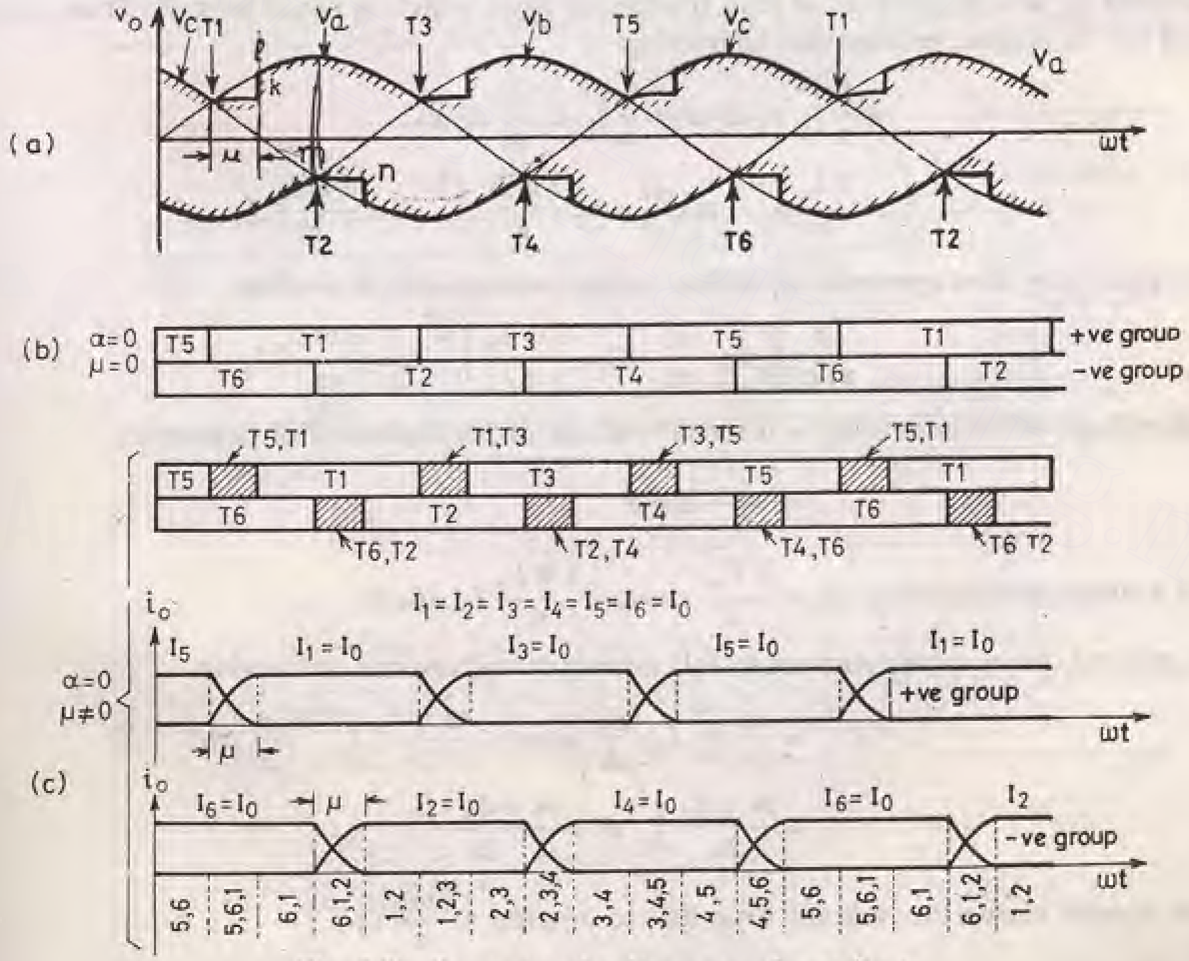


Fig. 6.35. Current and voltage waveforms for a 3-phase full converter showing commutation during overlap.

It is seen that three and two SCRs conduct alternately. It is also observed from Fig. 6.35 (*c*) that for 6-pulse converter, there are six shaded areas indicating six commutations per cycle of source voltage.

During commutation of T5 and T1 (transfer of current from T5 to T1), the output voltage is obtained by taking average of corresponding phase voltages $v_c$ and $v_a$ of the positive group. This means that voltage from $\omega t = 30°$ to $30° + \mu$ follows the curve $\frac{v_a + v_c}{2}$ from the positive group ; this is indicated by *jk* in Fig. 6.35 (*a*). During commutation of T6 and T2, the voltage waveform from the negative group is $\frac{v_b + v_c}{2}$ as indicated by *m n*. Similarly, during commutation of T1, T3 ; the voltage is $\frac{v_a + v_b}{2}$ as shown by curve *op* and so on. In Fig. 6.35, firing angle delay has been taken as zero just to highlight the effect of source inductance. The above treatment is, however, applicable for any firing angle delay provided overlap angle is less than 60°. In Fig. 6.35 (*a*) ; $v_a, v_b, v_c$ are the phase voltages and the output voltage is in between the hatched portion as shown.

The effect of source inductance $L_s$ is to reduce the average dc output voltage. This reduction is proportional to the triangular (almost) area *jk l* shown in Fig. 6.35 (*a*). The average value of this fall in output voltage due to overlap is equal to the triangular area *j k l* divided by the periodicity of this triangular area which is equal to $\pi/3$. Thus, average value of fall in output voltage due to overlap

$$= \frac{3}{\pi}\int_0^{\mu} v_L \, d(\omega t) = \frac{3}{\pi}\int_0^{\mu} L_s \frac{di}{dt} d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{3 L_s}{\pi}\int_0^{\mu/\omega} \omega \cdot \frac{di}{dt} dt = \frac{3\,\omega L_s}{\pi}\int_0^{I_0} di = \frac{3\,\omega L_s}{\pi} I_0$$

Alternatively, average value of fall in output voltage due to overlap

$$= \frac{3}{\pi/\omega}\int_0^{t} L_s \cdot \frac{di}{dt} \cdot dt = \frac{3\,\omega L_s}{\pi}\int_0^{I_0} di = \frac{3\,\omega L_s}{\pi} I_0$$

Output voltage with no overlap = internal voltage of the 3-phase full converter

$$= \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha$$

Output voltage with overlap, $V_0 = \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha - \frac{3\,\omega L_s}{\pi} I_0$...(6.48)

In general, for *m*-pulse converter, fall in output voltage due to overlap

$$= \frac{m}{2\pi}\int_0^{\mu} L_s \left(\frac{di}{dt}\right) d(\omega t) = \frac{m\,\omega L_s}{2\pi}\int_0^{\mu/\omega}\left(\frac{di}{dt}\right) dt$$

$$= \frac{m\,\omega L_s}{2\pi}\int_0^{I_0} di = \frac{m\,\omega L_s \cdot I_0}{2\pi}$$

For 2-pulse converter, voltage drop due to overlap $= \frac{\omega L_s}{\pi} I_0$

For 6-pulse converter, voltage drop due to overlap $= \frac{3\,\omega L_s}{\pi} \cdot I_0$.

Output voltage for a 3-phase full converter, similar to that given for a 1-phase full converter in Eq. (6.47), is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos(\alpha+\mu) + \frac{3\,\omega L_s}{\pi} I_0 \qquad \text{...(6.49)}$$

**Example 6.18.** *In a three-phase full converter thyristor bridge shown in Fig. 6.34, load consists of a resistor R. For this converter, do the following :*

*(a) Sketch waveforms for 3-phase input voltages $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$, $v_{bc}$, $v_{ba}$ etc.*

*(b) From (a), sketch waveforms of the output voltage $v_0$ for a firing angle of zero degree and overlap angle of $\mu = 30°$. Indicate the conduction of various SCRs.*

*(c) Repeat part (b) if firing angle $\alpha = 30°$ and $\mu = 30°$.*

*(d) From (c), sketch the waveform of input current $i_a$ for $\alpha = 30°$ and $\mu = 30°$. In case input voltage is 400 V and $R = 200\ \Omega$, indicate the peak magnitude of current $i_a$.*

**Solution.** (*a*) The line voltage waveforms $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$, $v_{bc}$ etc. for a 3-phase full converter are sketched in Fig. 6.36 (*a*).

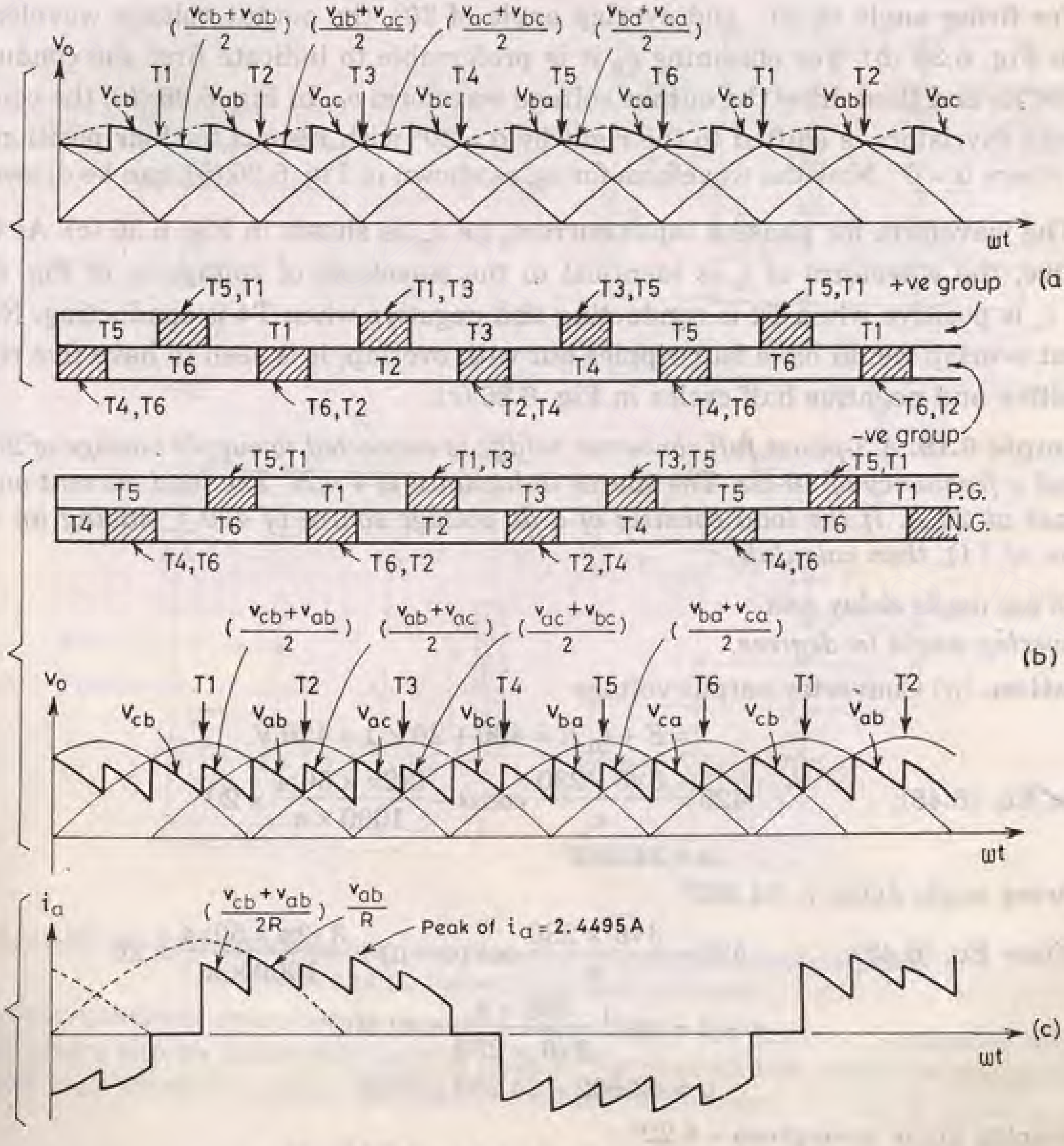


Fig. 6.36. Pertaining to Example 6.18.

(*b*) The effect of overlap angle of 30° with zero degree firing angle is shown in Fig. 6.35 (*a*) with phase voltages. In Fig. 6.36 (*a*), the output voltage waveform $v_0$ is sketched with line voltages, for an overlap angle of 30° and with firing angle $\alpha = 0°$. The conduction of SCRs T1 to T6 is also indicated. When T5 is outgoing SCR and T1 the incoming SCR, the average output voltage is $\frac{v_{cb} + v_{ab}}{2}$; this is shown accordingly in Fig. 6.36 (*a*). In $v_{cb}$, $v_{ab}$ ; first subscripts *c* and *a* indicate the conduction of SCRs T5, T1 together from the positive group and second subscript *b* indicates the conduction of SCR T6 from negative group. When T1, T6 conduct, the output voltage is $v_{ab}$ as shown. For T6 as the outgoing SCR and T2 the incoming SCR, the average output voltage is $\frac{v_{ab} + v_{ac}}{2}$. The second subscripts in $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$ indicate the conduction of SCRs 6 and 2 together from negative group and first subscript *a* indicates the conduction of SCR T1 from the positive group. The shape of output voltage waveform and the conduction of SCRs for the remaining part of a cycle can be explained similarly.

(*c*) For firing angle of 30°, and overlap angle of 30°, the output voltage waveform $v_0$ is drawn in Fig. 6.36 (*b*). For obtaining $v_0$ it is preferrable to indicate first the conduction of various SCRs and then draw the output voltage waveform $v_0$. In Fig. 6.36 (*b*), the conduction of different thyristors is shifted to the right by $\alpha = 30°$ with respect to their position in Fig. 6.35 (*a*) where $\alpha = 0°$. Now the waveform for $v_0$, as shown in Fig. 6.36 (*b*), can be drawn easily.

(*d*) The waveform for phase *a* input current, *i.e.* $i_a$, is shown in Fig. 6.36 (*c*). As the load is resistive, the waveform of $i_a$ is identical to the waveform of voltage $v_0$ of Fig. 6.36 (*b*). Current $i_a$ is positive when T1 is conducting and negative when T4 is conducting. Note that $i_a$ without overlap would have four ripples but with overlap, it is seen to have five ripples in both positive and negative half cycles in Fig. 6.36 (*c*).

**Example 6.19.** *A 3-phase full converter bridge is connected to supply voltage of 230 V per phase and a frequency of 50 Hz. The source inductance is 4 mH. The load current on dc side is constant at 20 A. If the load consists of a dc voltage source of 400 V having an internal resistance of 1 Ω, then calculate :*

*(a) firing angle delay and*

*(b) overlap angle in degrees.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Converter output voltage

$$= E + I_0 R = 400 + 20 \times 1 = 420 \text{ V.}$$

From Eq. (6.48),
$$420 = \frac{3\sqrt{6} \cdot 230}{\pi} \cos \alpha - \frac{3(2\pi \times 50)4}{1000 \times \pi} \times 20$$

or
$$\alpha = 34.382°$$

∴ Firing angle delay is 34.382°

(*b*) From Eq. (6.48),
$$420 = \frac{3\sqrt{6} \times 230}{\pi} \cos(\alpha + \mu) + \frac{3\,(2\pi \times 50)\,4}{1000 \times \pi} \times 20$$

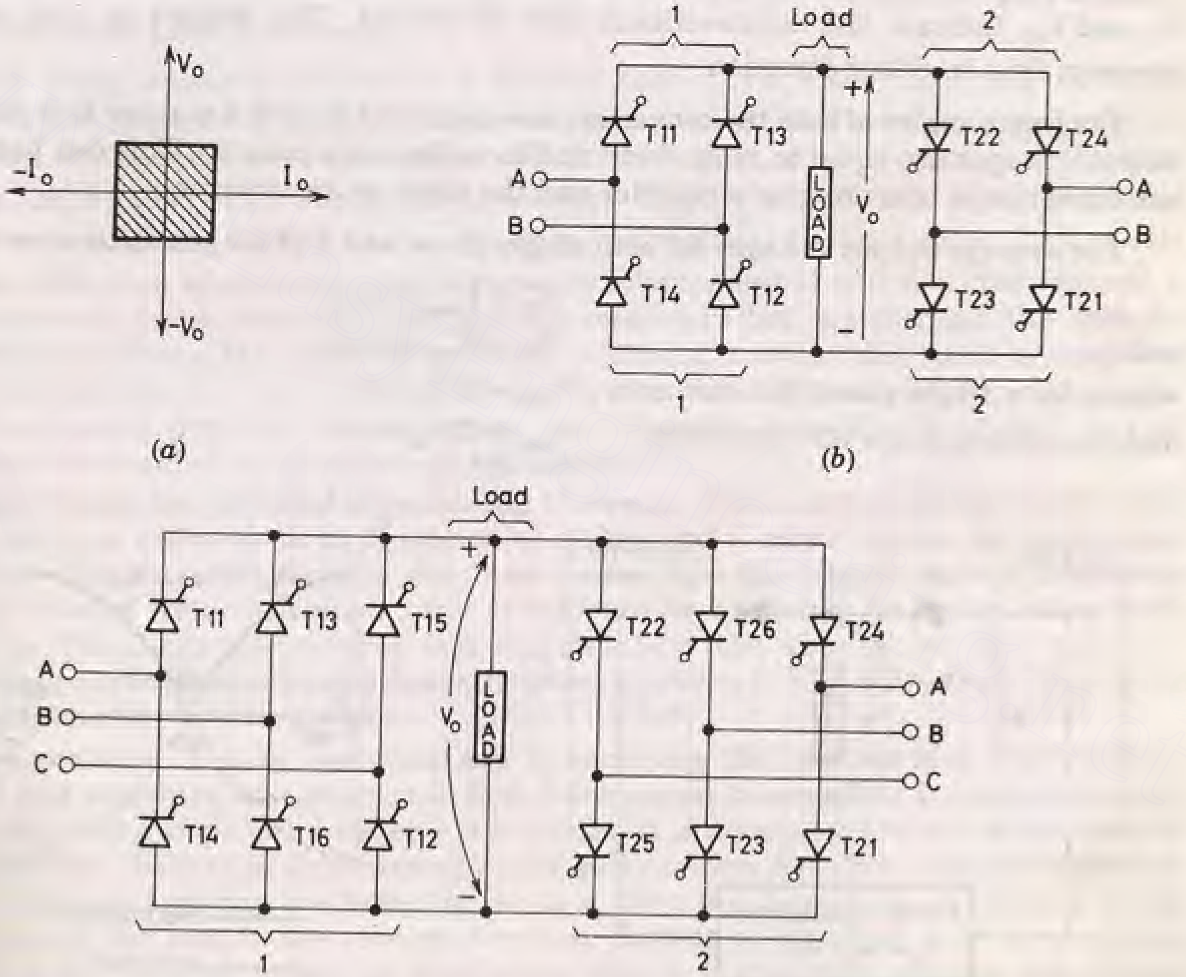
or
$$\alpha + \mu = \cos^{-1} \frac{396 \times \pi}{3\sqrt{6} \times 230} = 42.602°$$

∴
$$\mu = 42.602 - 34.382 = 8.22°$$

∴ Overlap angle in degrees = 8.22°.

## 6.8. DUAL CONVERTERS

Semi-converters are single quadrant converters. This means that over the entire firing angle range, load voltage and current have only one polarity as shown in Fig. 6.9 (*a*). In this figure, $V_0$ and $I_0$ represent, respectively, the average positive voltage and current of the semi-converter indicating rectification mode and power flow from ac source to the dc load. In full converters, direction of current cannot reverse because of the unidirectional properties of SCRs but polarity of output voltage can be reversed as shown in Fig. 6.9 (*b*). Thus, a full converter operates as a rectifier in first quadrant (both $V_0$, $I_0$ positive) from $\alpha = 0°$ to $90°$ and as an inverter ($V_0$ positive but $I_0$ negative) from $\alpha = 90°$ to $180°$ in the fourth quadrant. This shows that a full converter can operate as a two-quadrant converter, Fig. 6.9 (*b*). In the first quadrant, power flows from ac source to the dc load and in fourth quadrant, power flows from dc circuit to the ac source.



(*a*) (*b*)

(*c*)

Fig. 6.37. (*a*) Four-quadrant diagram. Non-circulating type (*b*) single-phase dual converter and (*c*) three-phase dual converter.

In case four quadrant operation is required without any mechanical changeover switch, two full converters can be connected back to back to the load circuit. Such an arrangement using two full converters in antiparallel and connected to the same dc load is called a *dual converter.*

There are two functional modes of a dual converter, one is non-circulating-current mode and the other is circulating-current mode. Non-circulating types of dual converters using single-phase and three-phase configurations are shown in Fig. 6.37 (*b*) and (*c*) respectively. If full converter marked 1, to the left of load circuit in Fig. 6.37 (*b*) and (*c*), is working alone operation in first and fourth quadrants can be obtained. With full converter marked 2 working alone in Fig. 6.37 (*b*) and (*c*), polarity of load voltage as well as direction of load current, with respect to converter 1, can be reversed. Hence, full converter marked 2 can operate in both second and third quadrants. Thus, a dual converter using two full converters can give four quadrant operation as shown in Fig. 6.37 (*a*).

### 6.8.1. Ideal Dual Converter

Assume that the dual converter consists of two ideal converters and that there is no ripple in their output voltages. Such a dual converter can be represented by an equivalent circuit shown in Fig. 6.38 (*a*). $V_{01}$ and $V_{02}$ are the magnitudes of average output voltages of converters 1 and 2 respectively. Diodes D1 and D2 shown here in series with the dc voltage sources $V_{01}$ and $V_{02}$ indicate the unidirectional flow of current. The current in load circuit can, however, flow in either direction.

The firing angles of both the converters are controlled in such a manner that their average output voltages are equal in magnitude and have the same polarity. This can happen only if one converter is operating as a rectifier and the other as an inverter.

The average output voltages for both single-phase and 3-phase converters are of the form.

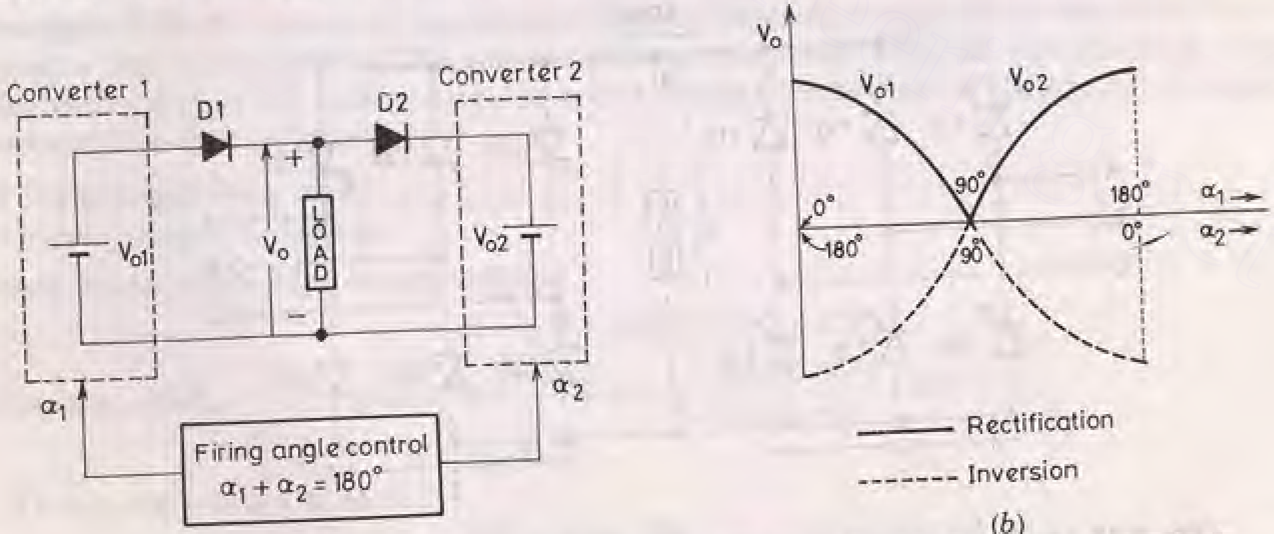
$$V_{01} = V_{max} \cos \alpha_1 \quad \ldots(6.50)$$

$$V_{02} = V_{max} \cos \alpha_2 \quad \ldots(6.51)$$

and

where, for a single-phase full converter, $V_{max} = (2V_m/\pi)$

and for a three-phase full converter, $V_{max} = (3V_{ml}/\pi)$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 6.38. (*a*) Equivalent circuit of an ideal dual converter (*b*) Variation of terminal voltage for an ideal dual converter with firing angle.

Under normal operation, $V_{01}$ has upper positive and lower negative polarities and $V_{02}$ has upper negative and lower positive polarities in Figs. 6.37 (*b*) and (*c*). It is assumed that the two converters have their average output voltages equal in magnitude. Their output voltages would have the same polarity only if polarity of $V_{02}$ is reversed. In other words, their average output voltage $V_0$ can be expressed as

$$V_0 = V_{01} = -V_{02} \quad \ldots(6.52)$$

Substitution of $V_{01}$ and $V_{02}$ from Eqs. (6.50) and (6.51) in Eq. (6.52) gives,

$$V_{max} \cos \alpha_1 = - V_{max} \cos \alpha_2$$

or
$$\cos \alpha_1 = - \cos \alpha_2 = \cos (180 - \alpha_2)$$

or
$$\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = 180° \qquad ...(6.53)$$

Also
$$\cos \alpha_1 = - \cos \alpha_2 = \cos (180 + \alpha_2)$$

or
$$\alpha_1 = 180° + \alpha_2 \qquad ...(6.53\ a)$$

As per Eq. (6.53 *a*), for some value of firing angle $\alpha_2$, $\alpha_1$ is always greater than 180°. But $\alpha_1$ can never be greater than 180°. Therefore, the solution as given by Eq. (6.53) is only possible.

From Eqs. (6.50), (6.51) and (6.53), the variation of output voltage with firing angle for the two converters is as shown in Fig. 6.38 (*b*). The firing control circuit changes the firing angle $\alpha_1$ and $\alpha_2$ in such a manner that Eq. (6.53) is always satisfied.

### 6.8.2. Practical Dual Converter

With the firing angles controlled in a manner that $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = 180°$ and with both the converters in operation, their average output voltages are equal and have the same polarity. One converter will be operating as a rectifier with firing angle $\alpha_1$ and the other as an inverter with firing angle $(180° - \alpha_1)$. Though their average output voltages are equal, yet their instantaneous voltages $v_{01}$ and $v_{02}$ are out of phase in a practical dual converter. This results in a voltage difference when the two converters are interconnected and as a consequence, a large circulating current flows between the two converters but not through the load. In practical dual converters, this circulating current is limited to a tolerable value by inserting a reactor between the two converters as shown in Fig. 6.39. The circulating current can however, be avoided provided the converters are triggered suitably. In general, a dual converter can be operated in the following two modes.

(*a*) **Dual Converter without Circulating Current.** With non-circulating current dual converter, only one converter is in operation at a time and it alone carries the entire load current. Only this converter receives the firing pulses from the trigger control. The other converter is blocked from conduction ; this is achieved by removing the firing pulses from this converter. Thus, only one converter is in operation at a time whereas the other converter is idle. Such an arrangement for the dual converters is shown in Fig. 6.37 where there is no reactor in-between the two converters.

Suppose converter 1 is in operation and is supplying the load current. For blocking convertor 1 and switching on converter 2, first firing pulses to converter 1 are immediately removed or the firing angle of converter 1 is increased to maximum value and then its firing pulses are blocked. With this, load current would decay to zero and then only converter 2 is made to conduct by applying the firing pulses to it. Now the current in converter 2 would build up through the load in the reverse direction. So long as converter 2 is in operation, converter 1 is idle as firing pulses are withdrawn from it. It should be ensured that during changeover from one converter to the other, the load current must decay to zero. After the outgoing converter has stopped conducting, a delay time of 10 to 20 msec is introduced before the firing pulses are applied to switch on the incoming converter. This time delay ensures reliable commutation of SCRs in the outgoing converter. If the incoming converter is triggered before the outgoing converter has been completely turned-off, a large circulating current would flow between the two converters.

With non-circulating current mode of dual converter, the load current may be continuous or discontinuous. The control circuitry for the dual converter is so designed as to give satisfactory operation during continuous as well as discontinuous load current.

(*b*) **Dual converter with circulating current.** In the circulating current mode of dual converter, a reactor is inserted in-between converters 1 and 2 as shown in Fig. 6.39. This reactor limits the magnitude of circulating current to a reasonable value.

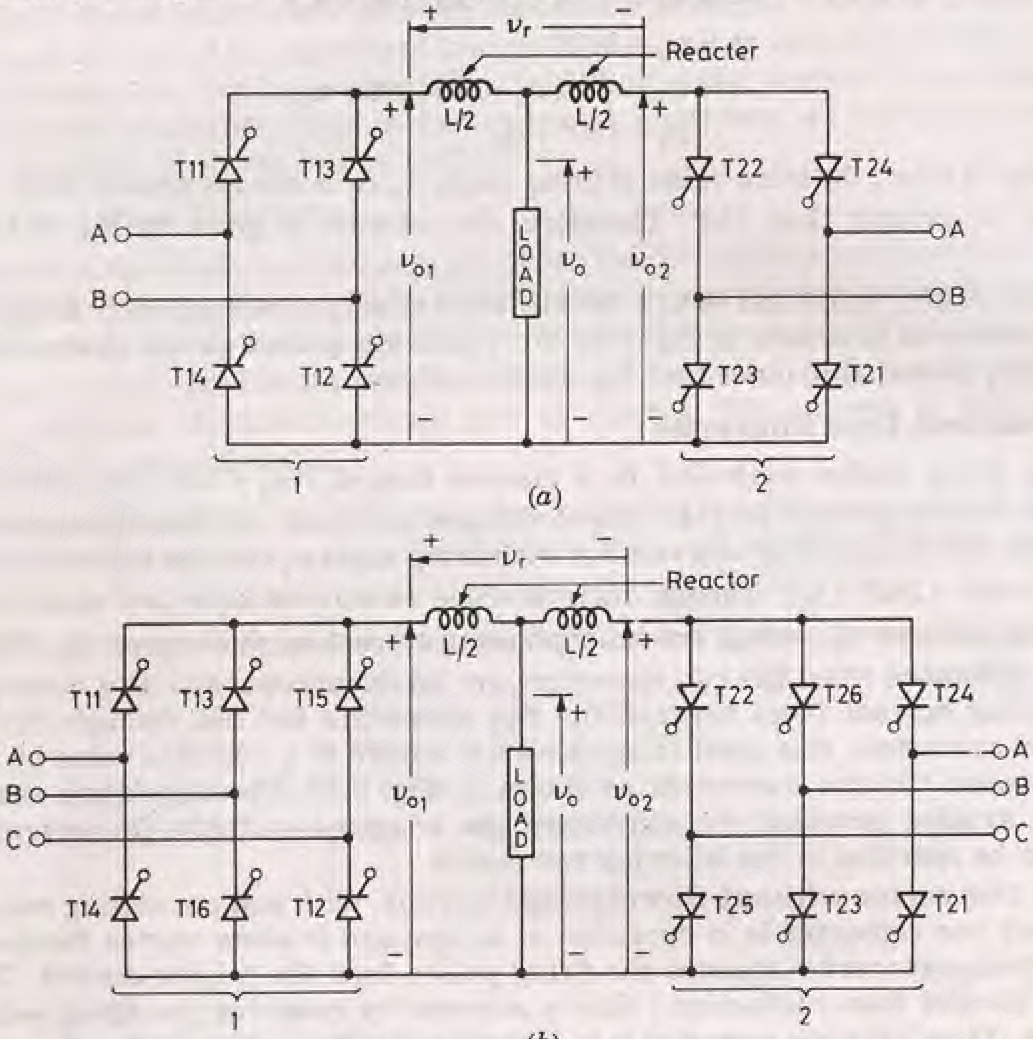


Fig. 6.39. Circulating current type dual converter for (*a*) single-phase supply and (*b*) three-phase supply.

The firing pulses of the two converters are so adjusted that $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = 180°$. As for example, if firing angle of converter 1 is 60°, then firing angle of converter 2 must be 120°. Therefore, for these firing angles, converter 1 is working as a rectifier and converter 2 as an inverter. Though the output voltage at the terminals of both converters 1 and 2 has the same average value and also has the same polarity, their instantaneous output voltage waveforms, however, are not similar as shown by $v_{01}$ and $v_{02}$ in Fig. 6.40 (*b*). As a consequence of it, circulating current flows between the two converters. This circulating current is limited by the reactor. If the load current is to be reversed, the role of two converters is interchanged. This means that converter 1 is now made to act as inverter by making its firing angle greater than 90° and converter 2 is made to work as rectifier by making its firing angle $\alpha_2$ less than 90° such that $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = 180°$. The normal delay period of 10 to 20 msec, as required in circulating-current free operation, is not needed here. This makes the dual converter with circulating current operation faster. The main disadvantages of this dual converter are as under :

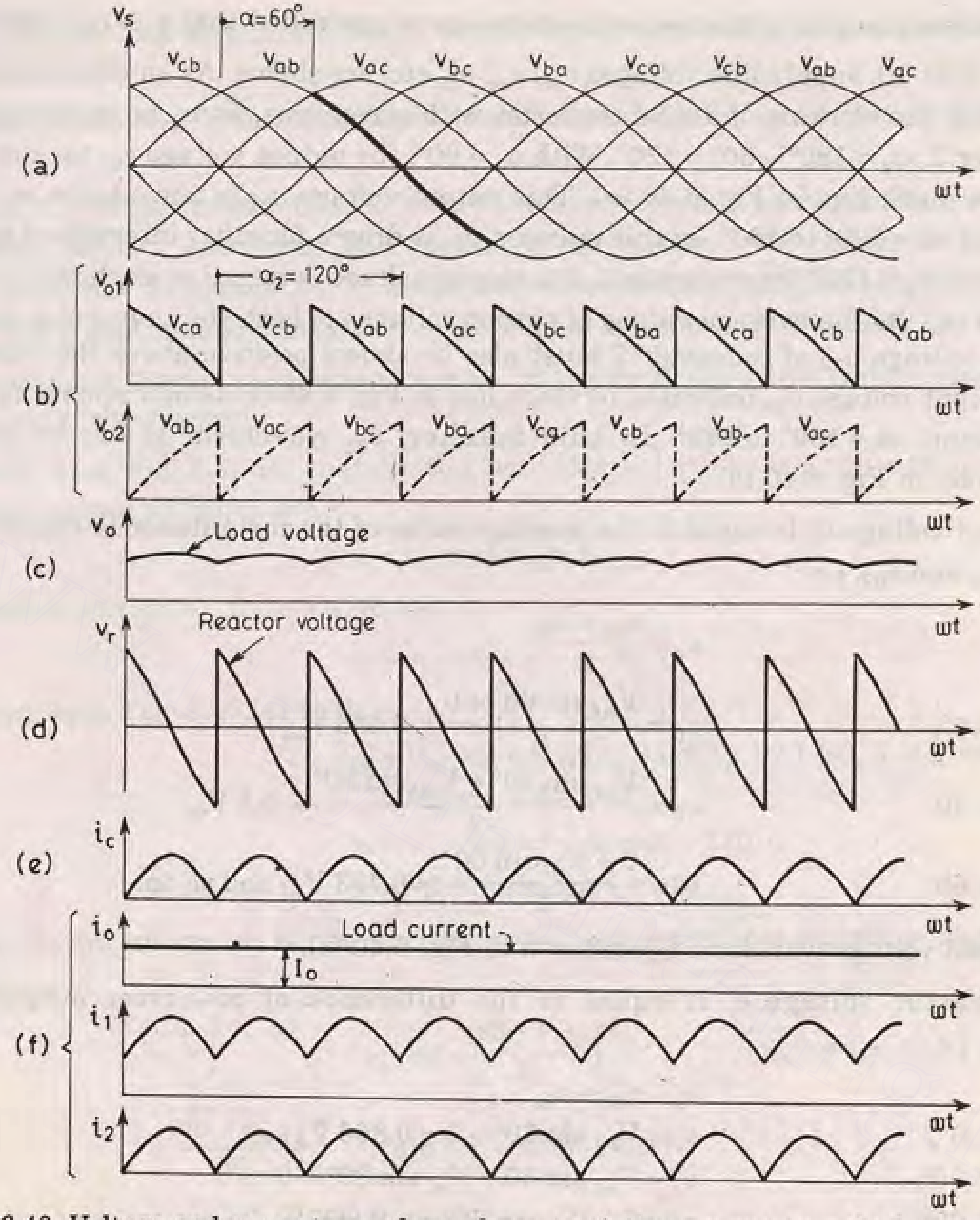


Fig. 6.40. Voltage and current waveforms for a circulating-current type dual converter.

(*i*) A reactor is required to limit the circulating current. The size and cost of this reactor may be quite significant at high power levels.

(*ii*) Circulating current gives rise to more losses in the converters, hence the efficiency and power factor are low.

(*iii*) As the converters have to handle load as well as circulating currents, the thyristors for the two converters are rated for higher currents.

In spite of these drawbacks, a dual converter with circulating current mode is preferred if load current is to be reversed quite frequently and a fast response is desired in the four-quadrant operation of the dual converter.

**Dual converter operation with waveforms.** The operation of the dual converter in the circulating-current mode is described here under the following assumptions :

(*i*) The reactor is lossless.

(*ii*) The firing angles of the two converters are so controlled that $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = 180°$.

In Fig. 6.40 (*a*), supply line voltages $v_{ab}, v_{ac}, v_{bc}$ etc. are shown. As an illustrative example for describing the working of a dual converter with waveforms, let $\alpha_1$ be equal to 60°. Then, for converter 2, $\alpha_2 = 180° - 60° = 120°$. With $\alpha_1 = 60°$, the output voltage $v_{01}$ for converter 1 is indicated by thick line in Fig. 6.40 (*a*). This output voltage $v_{01}$ is now shown as $v_{ab}$ in Fig. 6.40 (*b*) from $\omega t = 120°$ to 180°. In this manner, $v_{01}$ is drawn for other intervals of time in Fig. 6.40 (*b*). With $\alpha_2 = 120°$ for converter 2, the output voltage is negative as shown by thick line in Fig. 6.40 (*a*). As the average values of output voltages of both the converters are positive, the output voltage $v_{02}$ of converter 2 must also be shown positive above the reference line $\omega t$. This output voltage $v_{ab}$ indicated by thick line in Fig. 6.40 (*a*) is now shown as $v_{ba}$ in Fig. 6.40 (*b*) from $\omega t = 180°$ to 240°. In this manner, $v_{02}$ waveform is drawn positive as $v_{ba}, v_{ca}, v_{cb}$ etc. in Fig. 6.40 (*b*).

The load voltage $v_0$ is equal to the average value of the instantaneous converter output voltages $v_{01}$ and $v_{02}$, *i.e.*

$$v_0 = \frac{v_{01} + v_{02}}{2} \qquad \text{...(6.54)}$$

At $\omega t = 0°$, $$v_0 = \frac{V_{ml} \sin 60° + 0}{2} = 0.433\, V_{ml}$$

At $\omega t = 30°$, $$v_0 = \frac{V_{ml} \sin 30° + V_{ml} \sin 30°}{2} = 0.5\, V_{ml}$$

At $\omega t = 60°$, $$v_0 = \frac{0 + V_{ml} \sin 60°}{2} = 0.433\, V_{ml} \text{ and so on.}$$

This load voltage waveform $v_0$ is shown in Fig. 6.40 (*c*).

The reactor voltage $v_r$ is equal to the difference of converter output voltages $v_{01}$ and $v_{02}$, *i.e.*

$$v_r = v_{01} - v_{02} \qquad \text{...(6.55)}$$

At $\omega t = 0°$, $v_r = V_{ml} \sin 60° - 0 = 0.866\, V_{ml}$

At $\omega t = 30°$, $v_r = V_{ml} \sin 30 - V_{ml} \sin 30° = 0$

At $\omega t = 60°$, $v_r = 0 - V_{ml} \sin 60° = -0.866\, V_{ml}$

and so on. The variation of reactor voltage $v_r$ is plotted in Fig. 6.40 (*d*)

Now $$v_r = L \frac{di_c}{dt}$$

where $i_c$ is the circulating current through both the converters and reactor $L$. The waveform of $i_c$ can be drawn from the waveform of $v_r$ as under :

At $\omega t = 0°$, $v_r$ is maximum and positive, therefore slope of $i_c$ must be maximum and positive to satisfy the relation $v_r = L \frac{di_c}{dt}$. Thus, $i_c$ is shown rising in Fig. 6.40 (*e*) with a maximum positive slope. At $\omega t = 30°$, $v_r = 0$, therefore slope of $i_c = 0$ ; this is possible only when $i_c$ is maximum with $\frac{di_c}{dt} = 0$. After $\omega t = 30°$, $v_r$ starts becoming negative, the value of $i_c$ also starts falling so that $di_c/dt$ is negative. At $\omega t = 60°$, $v_r$ is maximum but negative, therefore slope of

$i_c$ must be negative but maximum. Based on this logic, waveform of $i_c$ is drawn as shown in Fig. 6.40 (*e*).

**No-load.** At no load, both converters handle only circulating current $i_c$ as shown in Fig. 6.40 (*e*).

**On-load.** Converter 1 (with $\alpha_1 < 90°$) works as a rectifier and carries load current as well as circulating current. Assuming load current $I_0$ as constant, the converter 1 current is $i_1 = I_0 + i_c$. Converter 2 (with $\alpha_2 > 90°$) works as an inverter and handles only the circulating current $i_c$. The waveforms for these currents $i_1$ and $i_2$ are shown in Fig. 6.40 (*f*).

The expression for the circulating current in the dual converter can be obtained from voltage $v_r$ across the reactor.

It is seen from Fig. 6.40 (*b*) that for the time interval $(\pi/3 + \alpha_1) < \omega t < (\pi/3 + \alpha_1 + \pi/3)$, the converter output voltages are

$$v_{01} = v_{ab} \text{ and } v_{02} = v_{bc}$$

The reactor voltage $v_r$, from Eq. (6.55), is

$$v_r = v_{01} - v_{02} = v_{ab} - v_{bc} \quad ...(6.56)$$

It is seen from Fig. 6.40 (*a*) that

$v_{ab} = V_{ml} \sin \omega t$. As $v_{bc}$ lags $v_{ab}$ by 120°, it is given by

$$v_{bc} = V_{ml} \sin (\omega t - 120°)$$

$$\therefore \quad v_r = V_{ml} [\sin \omega t - \sin (\omega t - 120°)]$$

or

$$v_r = \sqrt{3}\, V_{ml} \sin (\omega t + \pi/6) \quad ...(6.57)$$

The circulating current $i_c$ is obtained from the time integral of reactor voltage $v_r$ and is given by

$$i_c = \frac{1}{L}\int_{(\alpha_1+\pi/3)/\omega}^{t} v_r \cdot dt = \frac{\sqrt{3}\cdot V_{ml}}{L}\int_{(\alpha_1+\pi/3)/\omega}^{t} \sin (\omega t + \pi/6)\, dt$$

or

$$= \frac{\sqrt{3}\cdot V_{ml}}{\omega L}\int_{\alpha_1+\pi/3}^{\omega t} \sin (\omega t + \pi/6) \cdot d(\omega t) \quad ...(6.58)$$

or

$$i_c = \frac{\sqrt{3}\cdot V_{ml}}{\omega L} [-\sin \alpha_1 - \cos (\omega t + \pi/6)] \quad ...(6.58)$$

It is seen from Eq. (6.58) that the magnitude of circulating current depends upon the firing angle $\alpha_1$ and upon $\omega t$. For any value of firing angle, the peak value of circulating current occurs when $\omega t = 5\pi/6$. This peak value $i_{cp}$ is then given by

$$i_{cp} = \frac{\sqrt{3}\, V_{ml}}{\omega L} [1 - \sin \alpha_1] \quad ...(6.59)$$

Eq. (6.59) shows that peak value of firing angle depends upon the firing angle $\alpha_1$. For $\alpha_1 = 0$, the maximum value of $i_{cp}$ is $\sqrt{3}\, V_{ml}/\omega L$ and for $\alpha_1 = 90°$, $i_{cp} = 0$.

In Eqs. (6.58) and (6.59), $V_{ml}$ is the maximum value of line voltage.

**Example 6.20.** *A 3-phase dual converter, operating in the circulating-current mode, has the following data :*

*Per phase supply voltage* $= 230$ V, $f = 50$ *Hz*, $\alpha_1 = 60°$, *current limiting reactor,* $L = 15$ *mH. Calculate the peak value of circulating current.*

**Solution.** The peak value of circulating current, for firing angle $\alpha_1 = 60°$, is given by Eq. (6.59).

$$\therefore \qquad i_{cp} = \frac{\sqrt{3}\cdot\sqrt{6}\cdot 230}{2\pi \times 50 \times 15 \times 10^{-3}}\,[1 - \sin 60°] = 27.7425 \text{ A.}$$

## 6.9. SOME WORKED EXAMPLES

In this article, some typical problems on phase controlled rectifiers are solved.

**Example 6.21.** *A single-phase full converter is supplied from 230 V, 50 Hz source. The load consists of* $R = 10\ \Omega$ *and a large inductance so as to render the load current constant. For a firing angle delay of 30°, determine (a) average output voltage (b) average output current (c) average and rms values of thyristor currents and (d) the power factor.*

**Solution.** The waveforms for source voltage $v_s$, load current $i_0$, load voltage $v_0$, thyristor current $i_{T1}$ (or $i_{T2}$) and source current $i_s$ (refer to Fig. 6.10) are drawn in Fig. 6.41.

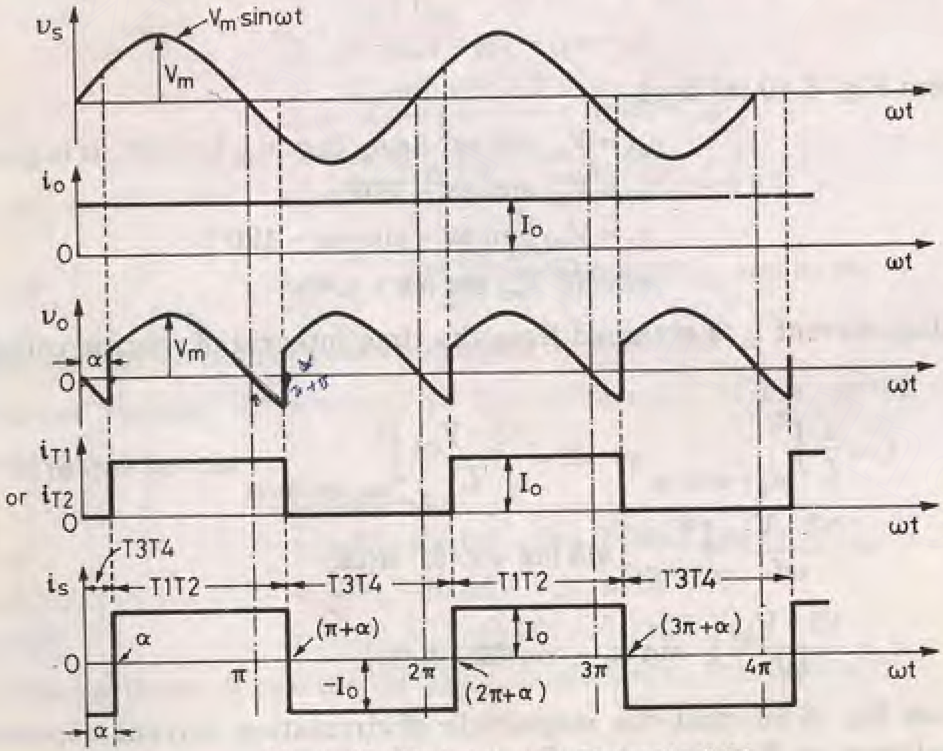


Fig. 6.41. Pertaining to Example 6.21.

(*a*) For a single-phase full converter, average output voltage $V_0$, Eq. (6.28), is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{2V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha = \frac{2\sqrt{2}\times 230}{\pi}\cos 30° = 179.303 \text{ V}$$

(*b*) Average output current, $I_0 = \dfrac{V_0}{R} = \dfrac{179.303}{10} = 17.93$ A

(*c*) It is seen from the waveform of thyristor current $i_{T1}$ (or $i_{T2}$) that its average value is given by

$$I_{T\cdot a} = I_0 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2\pi} = \frac{I_0}{2} = \frac{17.93}{2} = 8.965 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of thyristor current is

$$I_{T\cdot r} = \sqrt{I_0^2 \cdot \pi \times \frac{1}{2\pi}} = \frac{I_0}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{17.93}{\sqrt{2}} = 12.68 \text{ A}$$

(*d*) Rms value of source current, $I_s = \sqrt{I_0^2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{\pi}} = I_0 = 17.93 \text{ A}$

Load power $= V_0 I_0 = 179.3 \times 17.93 \text{ W}$

Input power $= V_s I_s \cos\phi$

For no loss in the power converter,

$$V_s I_s \cos\phi = V_0 I_0$$

∴ Power factor, $\cos\phi = \frac{179.3 \times 17.93}{230 \times 17.93} = 0.7796 \text{ lag}$

In general, for a 1-phase full converter with ripple free load current as in this example and with no device drops,

$$\text{input power} = \text{load power}$$

or

$$V_s I_s \cos\phi = V_0 I_0$$

∴ Input

$$pf = \frac{2\,V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha \cdot I_0 \times \frac{1}{V_s \cdot I_0}$$

$$= \frac{2\sqrt{2}\,V_s}{\pi}\cos\alpha \cdot \frac{1}{V_s} = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\pi}\cos\alpha$$

For this example, input $pf = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\pi}\cos 30° = 0.7796 \text{ lag}$.

**Example 6.22.** In Example 6.21, if source has an inductance of 1.5 mH, then determine (*a*) average output voltage (*b*) the angle of overlap and (*c*) the power factor.

**Solution.** (*a*) From Eq. (6.46), average output voltage is

$$V_0 = \frac{2\,V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha - \frac{\omega_0 L_s}{\pi} I_0$$

$$= \frac{2\sqrt{2}\times 230}{\pi}\cos 30° - \frac{2\pi\times 50\times 1.5\times 10^{-3}}{\pi}\times 17.93$$

$$= 176.614 \text{ V}$$

(*b*) From Eq. (6.44), $I_0 = \frac{V_m}{\omega L_s}[\cos\alpha - \cos(\alpha+\mu)]$

or

$$17.93 = \frac{\sqrt{2}\times 230\times 10^3}{2\pi\times 50\times 1.5}[\cos 30 - \cos(30+\mu)]$$

Its simplification gives overlap angle,

$$\mu = 32.855 - 30 = 2.855°$$

(*c*) Power factor $= \frac{V_0 I_0}{V_s I_s} = \frac{176.614\times 17.93}{230\times 17.93} = 0.7679 \text{ lag}.$

**Example 6.23.** *A 3-phase fully-controlled bridge converter with 415 V supply, 0.04 Ω resistance per phase and 0.25 Ω reactance per phase is operating in the inverting mode at a firing advance angle of 35°. Calculate the mean generator voltage when the current is level at 80 A. The thyristor voltage drop is 1.5 V.* [I.A.S., 1994]

**Solution.** Power circuit diagram of a 3-phase full converter reveals that source resistance $r_s$ will lead to a voltage drop of $2\,I_0\,r_s$. Two thyristors, one from positive group and another from negative group, conduct together, therefore there will be a constant thyristor voltage drop of $2\,V_T$. The source reactance leads to overlap and its effect is taken care of by Eq. (6.48). By taking into consideration these voltage drops, the average, or mean, output voltage $V_0$ in a 3-phase full converter is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha - 2\,I_0\,r_s - 2\,V_T - \frac{3\,\omega L_s}{\pi}\,I_0$$

In case 3-phase full converter is working in the inverting mode, then the load emf $E$ or $V_g$ (mean generator voltage in this example) can be obtained from the relation :

$$\frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha = -E + 2\,I_0\,r_s + 2V_T + \frac{3\omega L_s}{\pi}\,I_0$$

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{3\sqrt{2}\times 415}{\pi}\cos(180-35) = -E + 2\times 80\times 0.04 + 2\times 1.5 + \frac{3\times 0.25}{\pi}\times 80$$

or $$E = 459.022 + 6.4 + 3 + 19.1 = 487.522 \text{ V}$$

$\therefore$ Mean generator voltage $= E = 487.522$ V.

**Example 6.24.** *In Example 6.23, in case load consists of RLE, with R = 0.2 Ω, inductance large enough to make load current level at 80 A and emf E, then find the mean value of E for (i) firing angle of 35° and (ii) firing advance angle of 35°.*

**Solution.** (*i*) When firing angle is 35°, 3-phase full converter is in the rectifying mode. Therefore, from Example 6.23,

$$V_0 = E + I_0\,R = \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha - 2\,I_0\,r_s - 2V_T - \frac{3\,\omega L_s}{\pi}\,I_0$$

or $$\frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha = E + I_0R + 2\,I_0\,r_s + 2V_T + \frac{3\,\omega L_s}{\pi}\,I_0$$

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{3\,\sqrt{2}\times 415}{\pi}\cos 35^\circ = E + 80\times 0.2 + 2\times 80\times 0.04 + 2\times 1.5 + \frac{3\times 0.25}{\pi}\times 80$$

or $$E = 414.522 \text{ V}.$$

(*ii*) For firing advance angle of 35°, the full converter is in the inverting mode. From Example 6.23,

$$\frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha = -E + I_0R + 2\,I_0\,r_s + 2V_T + \frac{3\,\omega L_s}{\pi}\,I_0$$

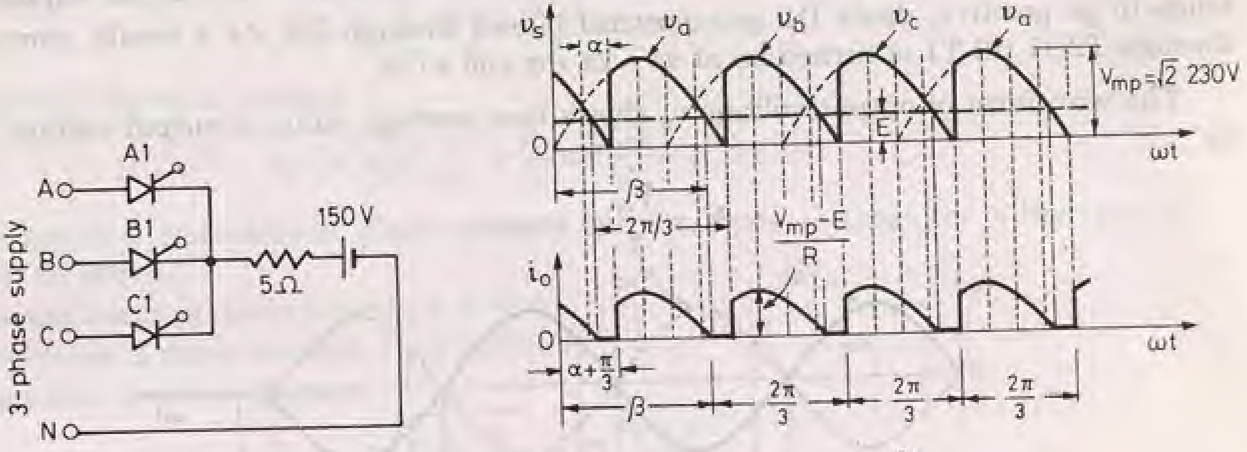
or $$E = 459.22 + 16 + 6.4 + 3 + 19.1 = 503.522 \text{ V}.$$

**Example 6.25.** *Fig. 6.42 (a) shows a battery charging circuit using SCRs. The input voltage from neutral to any line is 230 V (rms) and firing angle for thyristors is 30°. Find the average current flowing through the battery.*

*Derive the expression used.*

**Solution**. For the parameters given in this example, the waveform of load current is drawn in Fig. 6.42 (*b*). When thyristor $A_1$ is gated at $\alpha = 30°$, it begins conduction at $\omega t = 30 + \alpha = 60°$. After its turn-on, when $V_{mp}\sin\beta = 150$ V, thyristor $A_1$ gets turned off at $\omega t = \beta$. Note that here $\beta$ is more than 90° as is seen from Fig. 6.42 (*b*). Equation governing the conduction period in Fig. 6.42 is

$$V_m \sin\omega t - E = i_0 R$$



(a) (b)

Fig. 6.42. (a) 3-phase half-wave battery charging circuit and (b) its relevant waveforms, Example 6.25.

between the limits of $\left(\frac{\pi}{6}+\alpha\right)$ and $\beta > 90°$. Thus, average output current is given by

5π/6 | π/6

$$I_0 = \frac{3}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha+\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\beta} \frac{V_{mp}\sin\omega t - E}{R}\cdot d\,(\omega t)$$

5π/6

$$= \frac{3}{2\pi R}\left[V_{mp}\,\left|\cos\omega t\right|_{\beta}^{\alpha+\pi/6} - E\,(\beta-\alpha-30°)\right]$$

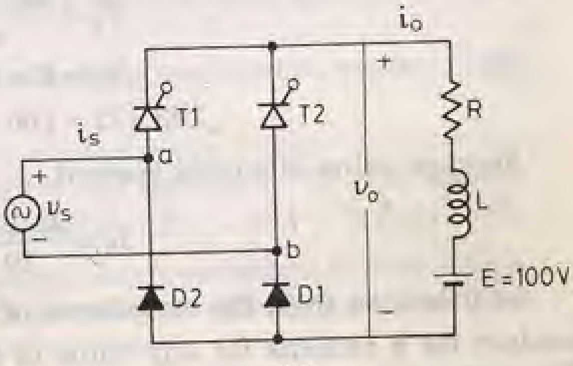
$$= \frac{3}{2\pi R}\left[V_{mp}\,\{\cos(\alpha+30)-\cos\beta\} - E\,(\beta-\alpha-30°)\right]$$

Here $\sqrt{2}\cdot 230\sin\beta = 150$ V. This gives $\beta = 27.47°$ or $152.53°$. As $\beta > 90°$, therefore $\beta = 152.53°$. This gives the value of average battery current $I_0$ as under :

$$I_0 = \frac{3}{2\pi\times 5}\left[\sqrt{2}\cdot 230\,(\cos 60° - \cos 152.53°) - 150\left(152.53-30-30)\times\frac{\pi}{180}\right)\right]$$

$$= \frac{3}{10\pi}\,[208.91928] = 19.95 \text{ A.}$$

**Example 6.26.** *A single-phase semiconverter, using two thyristors and two diodes as shown in Fig. 6.43 (a), is supplied from 230 V, 50 Hz source. The load consists of R = 10 Ω, E = 100 V and a large inductance so as to render the load current level. For a firing delay angle of 30°, determine (a) average output voltage (b) average output current (c) average and rms values of thyristor currents (d) average and rms values of diode currents (e) input power factor and (f) circuit turn-off time.*



(a)

Fig. 6.43. Pertaining to Example 6.26.

**Solution.** The waveforms for voltages and currents are sketched in Fig. 6.43 (b).

When forward-biased thyristor T1 is triggered at firing angle α, T1D2 start conducting the constant current $I_0$. Soon after $\omega t = \pi$, as supply voltage tends to go negative, diode D2 gets forward biased through D1. Therefore, from $\omega t = \pi$, load current begins to freewheel through T1D2. Thyristor T2 gets forward biased after $\omega t = \pi$. At $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$, when T2 is turned on, current $I_0$ begins to flow through T2D2 as shown. Soon after $\omega t = 2\pi$, as supply voltage tends to go positive, diode D1 gets forward biased through D2. As a result, current flows through T2D1 till T1 is turned on at $\omega t = 2\pi + \alpha$ and so on.

The waveform of output voltage $v_0$ shows that average value of output voltage is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{V_m}{\pi}(1 + \cos\alpha)$$

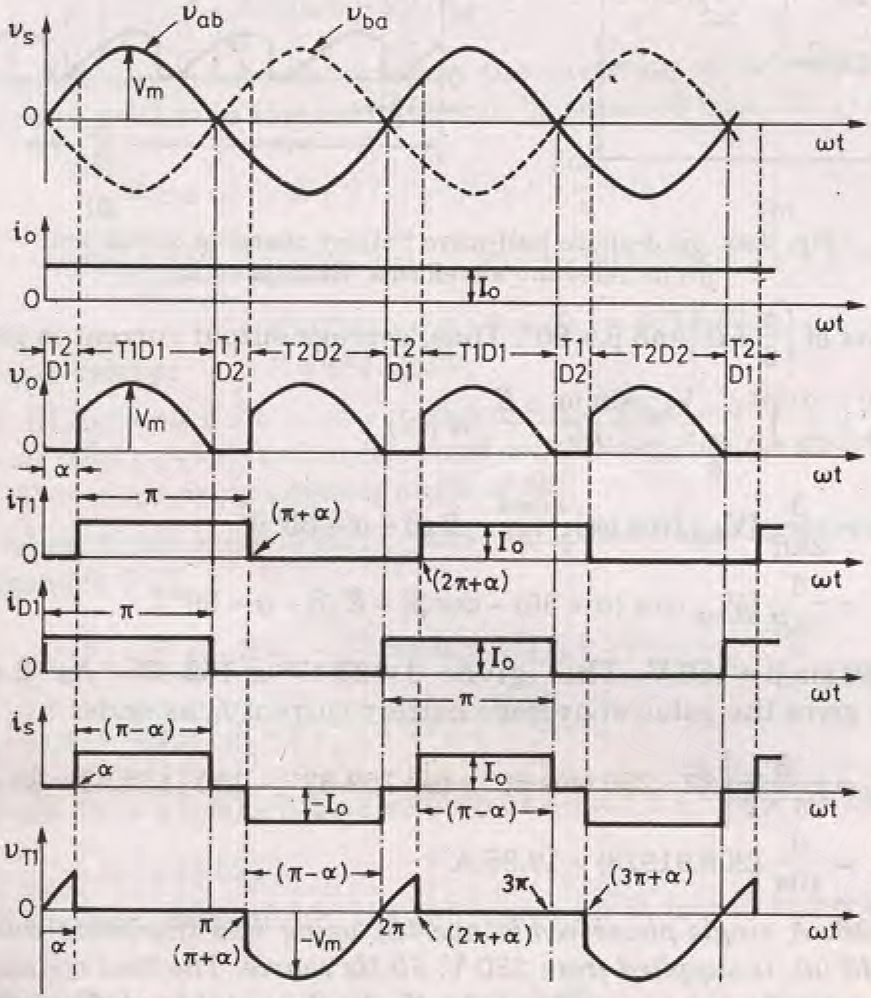


Fig. 6.43. (*b*) Voltage and current waveforms pertaining to Example 6.26.

(*a*) Average value of output voltage

$$V_0 = \frac{\sqrt{2}\cdot 230}{\pi}(1 + \cos 30°) = 193.172 \text{ V}$$

(*b*)
$$V_0 = E + I_0 R$$

$$193.172 = 100 + I_0 \times 10$$

Average value of output current

$$I_0 = \frac{93.172}{10} = 9.32 \text{ A}$$

(*c*) It is seen from the waveforms of thyristor current $i_{T1}$ and diode current $i_{D1}$ that both conduct for $\pi$ radians for any value of firing delay angle. On account of this, the circuit of Fig. 6.43 (*a*) is sometimes called *symmetrical configuration* for a single-phase semiconverter.

Average value of thyristor current

$$I_{T\cdot A} = I_0 \frac{\pi}{2\pi} = \frac{I_0}{2} = \frac{9.32}{2} = 4.66 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of thyristor current

$$I_{T\cdot r} = \sqrt{I_0^2 \frac{\pi}{2\pi}} = \frac{I_0}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{9.32}{\sqrt{2}} = 6.591 \text{ A}$$

(*d*) Average and rms value of diode currents are the same as those for a thyristor as discussed in (*c*) above.

$\therefore$ Average value of diode current $= 4.66$ A

Rms value of diode current $= 6.591$ A

(*e*) Rms value of source current

$$I_{s\cdot r} = \sqrt{I_0^2 \frac{\pi - \alpha}{\pi}} = I_0 \sqrt{\frac{\pi - \alpha}{\pi}}$$

$$= 9.32 \sqrt{\frac{\pi - (\pi/6)}{\pi}} = 8.508 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of load current $I_{or} = I_0 = 9.32$ A.

Power delivered to load $= E\, I_0 + I_{or}^2 \times R = 100 \times 9.32 + 9.32^2 \times 10$

Also $230 \times 8.508 \times \cos\phi =$ Power delivered to load

$\therefore$ Input $pf = \dfrac{932 + 9.32^2 \times 10}{230 \times 8.508} = 0.9202$ lag

(*f*) It is seen from the waveform of $v_{T1}$ that circuit turn-off time is

$$t_c = \frac{\pi - \alpha}{\omega} = \frac{\pi - \frac{\pi}{6}}{2\pi \times 50} \times 1000 \text{ ms} = 8.33 \text{ ms.}$$

## PROBLEMS

**6.1.** (*a*) A single-phase half-wave SCR circuit feeds power to a resistive load. Draw waveforms for source voltage, load voltage, load current and voltage across the SCR for a given firing angle α. Hence obtain expressions for average and rms load voltages in terms of source voltage and firing angle.

(*b*) A resistive load of 10 Ω is connected through a half-wave SCR circuit to 220 V, 50 Hz, single-phase source. Calculate the power delivered to load for a firing angle of 60°. Find also the value of input power factor. [**Ans.** (*b*) 1946 . 887 W, 0.6342]

**6.2.** (*a*) An RL load is fed from single-phase supply through a thyristor. Derive an expression for load current in terms of supply voltage, frequency, R, L etc. Indicate the time limits during which this solution is applicable.

For this thyristor-load combination, draw waveforms for load voltage, load current, source current and voltage across the thyristor.

(*b*) An RL load, energised from single-phase, 230 V, 50 Hz source through a single thyristor, has $R = 10\ \Omega$ and $L = 0.08$ H. If thyristor is triggered in every positive half cycle at $\alpha = 75°$, find current expression as a function of time. [ **Ans.** (*b*) $12.023 \sin(314\,t - 68.3°) - 2.3\,614\, e^{-125t}$]

**6.3.** (*a*) For a single-phase one-pulse controlled converter system, sketch waveforms for load voltage and load current for (*i*) RL load and (*ii*) RL load with freewheeling diode across RL. From a comparison of these waveforms, discuss the advantages of using a freewheeling diode.

(*b*) A battery is charged by a single-phase one-pulse thyristor controlled rectifier. The supply is 30 V, 50 Hz and battery emf is constant at 6 V. Find the resistance to be inserted in series with the battery to limit the charging current to 4 A on the assumption that SCR is triggered continuously. Take a voltage drop of 1 V across the SCR. Derive the expression used. [**Ans** (*b*) 2.5467 Ω]

**6.4.** (*a*) A dc battery is charged through a resistor $R$ as shown in Fig. 6.5 (*a*). Derive an expression for the average value of charging current in terms of $V_m, E, R$, firing-angle delay $\alpha$ etc. Here $\alpha > \theta_1$ where $\theta_1$ can be obtained from $V_m \sin \theta_1 = E$.

(*b*) For an ac source voltage of 230 V, 50 Hz, find the value of average charging current for $R = 10\ \Omega$, $E = 110$ V and for firing angle delay = 30°.

(*c*) Derive an expression for the rms value of charging current for the circuit described in part (*a*) above. Also, calculate the power delivered to battery and that dissipated in the resistor.

(*d*) Calculate the supply *pf*.

[**Ans.** (*a*) Eq. (6.21*a*), (*b*) 5.3743 A

$$(c)\ \frac{1}{2\pi R^2}\left\{(V_s^2+E^2)(\pi-\theta_1-\alpha)+\frac{V_s^2}{2}(\sin 2\alpha+\sin 2\theta_1)-2\,V_m\,E\,(\cos\alpha+\cos\theta_1)\right\}^{1/2};$$

591.173 W, 926.175 W (*d*) 0.6855 lag]

**6.5.** A single-phase one-pulse SCR controlled converter feeds an RL load with a freewheeling diode across the load. Discuss how freewheeling diode comes into play when supply voltage is passing through zero and becoming negative. Sketch waveforms for supply and load voltages, load current, supply current, freewheeling diode current and voltage across the SCR.

Derive expressions for the load current as a function of time during conduction as well as freewheeling periods. Derive also an expression for average load current.

**6.6.** (*a*) Describe the working of a single-phase one-pulse SCR controlled converter with RLE load through the waveforms of supply voltage, load voltage, load current and voltage across the SCR. Hence derive expression for the load current in terms of supply voltage, load impedance, firing angle, load voltage etc.

(*b*) A single-phase one-pulse converter with RLE load has the following data :

Supply voltage = 230 V at 50 Hz, $R = 2\ \Omega$, $L = 1$ m$H$, $E = 120$ V,

Extinction angle $\beta = 220°$, firing angle $\alpha = 25°$.

(*i*) Calculate the voltage across thyristor at the instant SCR is triggered.

(*ii*) Find the voltage that appears across SCR when current decays to zero.

(*iii*) Find the peak inverse voltage for the SCR. **Ans.** [17.465 V, 329.079 V, 445.27 V]

**6.7.** Describe the operation of a single-phase two-pulse mid-point converter with relevant voltage and current waveforms. Discuss how each SCR is subjected to a reverse voltage equal to double the supply voltage in case turns ratio from primary to each secondary is unity.

Find the circuit turn-off time provided to each SCR by this converter configuration.

**6.8.** In a single-phase mid-point converter, turns ratio from primary to each secondary is 1.25. The source voltage is 230 V, 50 Hz. For a resistive load of $R = 2\ \Omega$, determine

(*a*) maximum value of average output voltage and load current and the corresponding firing and conduction angles,

(*b*) maximum average and rms thyristor currents,

(*c*) maximum possible values of positive and negative voltages across SCRs,

(*d*) the value of $\alpha$ for load voltage of 100 V,

(*e*) the value of voltage across SCR at the instant of commutation for $\alpha$ of part (*d*).

$$\left[\textbf{Hint.}\ (b)\ \text{Maximum average thyristor current} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi}\frac{V_m}{R}\sin\omega t\cdot d(\omega t)\ \text{etc.}\right]$$

[**Ans.** (*a*) 165.63 V, 82.82 A, $\alpha = 0°$, $\gamma = 180°$ (*b*) 41.41 A, 65.054 A

(*c*) 520.4 V, 520.4 V (*d*) 52.862° (*e*) 414.82 V]

**6.9.** (*a*) A single-phase full converter charges a battery which offers a constant value of $E$. A resistor $R$ is inserted to limit the battery charging current. Derive an expression for the average charging current in terms of $V_m$, $E$, $R$ etc. on the assumption that each pair of SCRs is fired continuously in each half cycle. Take $V_r$ as the voltage drop in conducting SCRs.

(*b*) Find the value of $R$ in case battery charging current is 6 A, supply voltage is 40 V, 50 Hz, $E = 12$ V and $V_r = 1$ volt.

(*c*) Find the power dissipated in $R$.

(*d*) Find the supply power factor.

[**Hint.** Refer to example 6.2. (*b*) $\theta_1 = \sin^{-1} \dfrac{13}{\sqrt{2} \cdot 40}$

(*c*) Use Eq. (6.23) with $2\pi$ replaced by $\pi$ in the denominator].

[**Ans.** (*a*) $\dfrac{1}{\pi R}\,[2\,V_m \cos\theta_1 - (E + V_r)(\pi - 2\theta_1)]$

(*b*) 3.994 Ω (*c*) 206.446 W (*d*) 0.9891 lag]

**6.10.** A single-phase semi-converter delivers power to RLE load with $R = 5\ \Omega$, $L = 10$ mH and $E = 80$ V. The ac source voltage is 230 V, 50 Hz. For a continuous conduction, find the average value of output current for a firing angle delay of 50°.

If main SCR T2 is damaged and open circuited, find the new value of average output current on the assumption of continuous conduction. Sketch the output voltage waveform and indicate the conduction of various components. [**Ans.** 18.013 A ; T1 D1, FD ; T1 D1, FD and so on ; 1.0063 A]

**6.11.** A single-phase full converter feeding RLE load has the following data. Source voltage = 230 V, 50 Hz; $R = 2.5\ \Omega$, $E = 100$ V, Firing angle = 30°.

If load inductance is large enough to make the load current virtually constant, then

(*a*) sketch the time variations of source voltage, source current, load voltage, load current, current through one SCR and voltage across it,

(*b*) compute the average value of load voltage and load current,

(*c*) compute the input *pf*. [**Ans.** (*a*) Refer to Fig. 6.10 (*b*), (*b*) 179.30 V, 31.72 A (*c*) 0.7796 lag]

**6.12.** Repeat Prob. 6.11 in case a freewheeling diode is connected across RLE load.

[**Hint.** (*c*) Rms value of load current $= \left[ I_0^2 \dfrac{150}{180} \right]^{1/2}$ ] [**Ans.** (*b*) 193.17 V, 37.268 A (*c*) 0.8461 lag.]

**6.13.** Describe the working of a single-phase full converter in the rectifier mode with RLE load. Discuss how one pair of SCRs is commutated by an incoming pair of SCRs. Illustrate your answer with waveforms for source voltage, $E$, output voltage and current, source current, current through and voltage across one thyristor. Assume continuous conduction.

Derive an expression for the average output voltage in terms of source voltage and firing angle. From the voltage differential equation of this converter, show that $V_0 = I_0 R + E$.

**6.14.** Describe the working of a single-phase full converter in the inverter mode with RLE load. Illustrate your answer with waveforms for source voltage, $E$, load voltage and current, source current, current through and voltage across one SCR. Assume continuous conduction.

Find also the circuit turn-off time. Should the average output voltage be more than $E$ during inverter operation ? Discuss.

**6.15.** A single-phase semiconverter bridge feeds RLE load. Discuss how freewheeling diode comes into operation and holds the output voltage to almost zero for a given firing angle delay. Sketch the time variations of supply voltage, $E$, load voltage and current, freewheeling diode current and current through each pair consisting of SCR and diode. Find also the circuit turn-off time. Assume the load current continuous.

Also, derive an expression for the average output voltage in terms of source voltage and firing angle.

**6.16.** (*a*) Write the voltage differential equations for a single-phase semiconverter with RLE load for both conduction and freewheeling periods. Indicate the time intervals during which these equations are applicable. Integrate these differential equations to obtain

$$V_0 = E + I_0 R$$

(*b*) A separately-excited dc motor fed through a single-phase semiconverter runs at a speed of 1200 rpm when ac supply voltage is 230 V, 50 Hz and the motor counter emf is 140 V. The firing angle delay is 50°. Armature circuit resistance is 3 Ω. Compute the average armature current and motor torque.

[**Hint**. (*b*) Find $K_m = 1.114$ Nm/A and proceed] [**Ans**. (*b*) [10.021 A, 11.164 Nm]

**6.17.** A single-phase full converter is connected to RLE load. For discontinuous load current, draw the source voltage, output voltage, load current and source current waveforms as a function of time when

(*a*) extinction angle $\beta > \pi$

(*b*) extinction angle $\beta < \pi$ with $V_m \sin \beta < E$.

Explain how the various waveforms are obtained and discuss their nature.

**6.18.** A single-phase semiconverter feeds power to RLE load. For discontinuous load current, draw the source voltage, output voltage, load current, source current and freewheeling diode current waveforms as a function of time when

(*a*) extinction angle $\beta > \pi$

(*b*) extinction angle $\beta < \pi$ with $V_m \sin \beta < E$.

Explain how various waveforms are obtained and discuss their nature.

**6.19.** A single-phase full-converter supplies power to RLE load. The source voltage is 230 V, 50 Hz and for load $R = 2\ \Omega$, $L = 10$ mH, $E = 100$ V. For a firing angle of 30°, find the average value of output current and output voltage in case the load current extinguishes at (*a*) 200° and (*b*) 170°.

Derive the expressions used. [**Ans.** (*a*) 46.2424 A, 192.485 V (*b*) 56.911 A, 213.822 V]

**6.20.** A single-phase mid-point SCR converter supplies constant load current of 5 A when the triggering angle is maintained at 35°. The input voltage to the converter is 220 V at 50 Hz. The turns ratio from primary to each secondary is $\frac{1}{2}$. Determine the load voltage and input power factor.

[**Hint :** Primary $AT_s$ = secondary $AT_s$, $\therefore\ I_s N_1 = I_0 \cdot N_2$ or $I_s = 10$ A etc]

[**Ans :** 324.45 V, 0.7374 lag]

**6.21.** For a 3-phase half-wave diode rectifier, derive an expression for the average output voltage $V_0$ in terms of maximum value of source voltage from line to neutral.

If this rectifier feeds RL load with $R = 5\ \Omega$ and $L = 3$ mH, find the average load current for 3-phase input voltage of 400 V, 50 Hz. [**Ans.** 54.011 A]

**6.22.** (*a*) For a three-phase half-wave SCR converter delivering continuous output current, derive expressions for the average output voltage for firing angle of (*i*) $0° < \alpha < 30°$ and (*ii*) $30° < \alpha < 150°$.

(*b*) A three-phase half-wave SCR converter delivers constant load current of 30 A over the firing angle range of 0° to 80°. At these two firing angles, compute the power delivered to load for an ac input voltage of 400 V from a delta-star transformer.

$$\left[\textbf{Ans:}\ (a)\ \text{For both } (i) \text{ and } (ii),\ V_0 = \frac{3\sqrt{3}\,V_{mp}}{2\pi}\cos\alpha\ \ (b)\ 8.102\ \text{kW}\ \ (c)\ 1.4068\ \text{kW}\right]$$

**6.23.** Describe the evolution of 3-phase six-phase diode rectifier from 3-phase 3-pulse diode rectifiers with appropriate circuits and waveforms. Hence derive an expression for the average output voltage of a 3-phase six-pulse diode rectifier.

**6.24.** A 3-phase full converter is connected to a resistive load. Show that the average output voltage is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha \qquad \text{for} \quad 0 < \alpha < \frac{\pi}{3}$$

and $$V_0 = \frac{3\,V_{ml}}{\pi}\left[1 + \cos\left(\alpha + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)\right] \qquad \text{for} \quad \frac{\pi}{3} < \alpha < \frac{2\pi}{3}$$

where $V_m$ = maximum value of line voltage.

**6.25.** For a 3-phase full converter, explain how output voltage wave, for a firing angle of 30°, is obtained by using

(*a*) phase voltages and (*b*) line voltages.

**6.26.** (*a*) A resistive load of 10 Ω is connected to a 3-phase full converter. The load takes 5 kW for a firing angle delay of 70°. Find the magnitude of per phase input supply voltage. Derive the expression required for the output voltage in terms of firing angle etc.

(*b*) Repeat part (*a*) in case an inductor connected in series with the load makes the load current constant.

(*c*) Repeat part (*a*) in case an inductor connected in series with the load makes the load current continuous.

[**Hint.** (*a*) First derive an expression for the rms value of output voltage,

$$V_{or} = V_m \sqrt{\frac{3}{2\pi}}\left[\left(\frac{2\pi}{3} - \alpha\right) + \frac{1}{4}(\sqrt{3}\cos 2\alpha - \sin 2\alpha)\right]^{1/2}$$

[**Ans.** (*a*) 214.242 V (*b*) 279.55 V (*c*) 213.254 V]

**6.27.** For a 3-phase semiconverter, draw output voltage waveforms for a firing angle delay of 45° indicating the conduction of its various elements on the assumption of continuous output current. Discuss whether freewheeling diode comes into play or not. Hence obtain an expression for the average output voltage in terms of ac supply voltage, firing angle delay etc. by using both sine and cosine functions for the supply voltage.

**6.28.** Sketch output voltage waveform for a 3-phase semiconverter for a firing angle delay of 75°. Indicate the conduction of various elements and discuss whether freewheeling diode comes into play on the assumption of continuous load current. Hence obtain an expression for the average output voltage by using both sine and cosine functions for the supply voltage.

**6.29.** A 3-phase semiconverter is connected to RLE load. For a firing angle delay of 120°, draw output voltage and load current waveforms in case load current is (*a*) continuous and (*b*) discontinuous. For both parts, indicate the conducting elements of the semiconverter during three periodic times of the output voltage wave. Discuss briefly the nature of waveforms obtained.

**6.30.** A separately-excited dc motor fed from 3-phase semiconverter develops a full load torque at 1500 rpm when firing angle is zero, the armature taking 50 A at 400 V dc and having an armature-circuit resistance of 0.5 Ω. Calculate the supply voltage per phase. Find also the range of firing angle required to give speeds between 1500 rpm and 750 rpm at full-load torque.

[**Hint.** For $\alpha = 0°$ and 1500 rpm, $\dfrac{3\,V_m}{\pi} = 400$, $K = 0.25$ V/rpm etc.] [**Ans.** 171.006 V, $\alpha = 0°$ to 86.42°]

**6.31.** A 3-phase full converter thyristor bridge feeds a resistive load *R*.

(*a*) Sketch input voltage waveforms for $v_{ab}, v_{ac}, v_{bc}$ etc.

(*b*) From (*a*), sketch the waveform of the output current $i_0$ for a firing angle of 30°.

(*c*) From (*b*), sketch the waveform of input current $i_a$ for phase *A* for $\alpha = 30°$. Show the duration of conducting thyristors. In case input voltage is 400 V and $R = 200\ \Omega$, indicate the peak magnitude of current $i_a$.

[**Ans.** (*c*) Peak magnitude of $i_a = 2.828$ A]

**6.32.** For a 3-phase full converter, sketch the input voltage waveforms for $v_{ab}, v_{ac}, v_{bc}$ etc and voltage variation across any one thyristor for one complete cycle for a firing angle delay of (*a*) 60° and (*b*) 120°.

Find the magnitude of reverse voltage across this SCR and its commutation time for both parts (*a*) and (*b*) for a supply voltage of 230 V, 50 Hz. [**Ans.** (*a*) 325.22 V, 10 m sec (*b*) 281.69 V, 3.33 m sec]

**6.33.** A battery is charged from 3-phase supply mains of 230 V, 50 Hz through a 3-phase semiconverter. The battery emf is 190 V and its internal resistance is 0.5 Ω. An inductor connected in series with the battery renders the charging current of 20 A ripple free. Compute the firing angle delay and the supply power factor. [**Ans.** 73.263°, 0.652 lag]

**6.34.** (*a*) A 3-phase full converter is used for charging a battery with an emf of 110 V and an internal resistance of 0.2 Ω. For a constant charging current of 10 A, compute the firing angle delay for ac line voltage of 220 V. Find also the supply power factor.

(*b*) For the purpose of delivering energy from dc source to 3-phase system, the firing angle of the 3-phase converter has been increased to 150°. For the same value of dc source current of 10 A, compute the output ac line voltage. [**Ans.** (*a*) 67.85°, 0.36 lag (*b*) 92.36 V]

**6.35.** A 3-phase full converter is delivering a constant load current of 50 A at 230 V dc when its input is 3-phase, 415 V, 50 Hz. If each thyristor has a voltage drop of 1.1 V when conducting, calculate (*a*) the firing angle delay of SCRs (*b*) the rms current of SCRs (*c*) rms source current (*d*) the mean power loss in each SCR and (*e*) input *pf*. (*f*) In case ac supply has an inductance of 3 mH per phase, find the new value of firing angle for the same dc power output as before.

[**Hint :** (*e*) Input power = output power + power lost in SCRs

$$\sqrt{3} \times 415 \times 40.825 \times \cos\phi = 230 \times 50 + 1.1 \times \frac{50}{3} \times 6 \text{ etc.]}$$

[**Ans :** (*a*) 64.54° (*b*) 28.87 (*c*) 40.825 A (*d*) 18.33 W (*e*) 0.3936 lag (*f*) 59.12°]

**6.36.** (*a*) Discuss the effect of source inductance on the performance of a single-phase full converter indicating clearly the conduction of various thyristors during one cycle.

Derive expressions for its output voltage in terms of (*i*) maximum voltage $V_m$, firing angle α and overlap angle and (*ii*) $V_m$, *a*, $L_s$ and load current $I_0$. Here $L_s$ is the source inductance.

Show that the effect of source inductance is to present an equivalent resistance of $\frac{\omega L_s}{\pi}$ Ω in series with the internal rectifier voltage.

(*b*) A single-phase full-converter fed from 220 V, 50 Hz supply gives an output voltage of 180 V at no load. When loaded with a constant output current of 10 A, the overlap angle is found to be 6°. Compute the value of source inductance in henries. [**Ans.** (*b*) 4.8084 mH]

**6.37.** (*a*) Show that the performance of a single-phase full converter as effected by source inductance is given by the relation

$$\cos(\alpha + \mu) = \cos\alpha - \frac{\omega L_s I_0}{V_m}$$

where the symbols used have their usual meanings.

(*b*) A single-phase full converter is connected to ac supply of 330 sin 314 *t* volt and 50 Hz. It operates with a firing angle α = π/4 rad. The total load current is maintained constant at 5 A and the load voltage is 140 V. Calculate the source inductance, angle of overlap and the load resistance.

[**Ans :** 17.113 mH, 6.267°, 28 Ω]

**6.38.** (*a*) Show that the performance of a three-phase full converter as influenced by source inductance is given by the relation

$$\cos(\alpha + \mu) = \cos\alpha - \frac{2\,\omega L_s}{V_{ml}} I_0$$

The symbols used have their usual meanings.

(*b*) A 3-phase fully controlled bridge converter is fed from a 3-phase 400 V, 50 Hz mains. For firing angle of 60°, output current is level at 25 A and output voltage is 250 V. Calculate the load resistance, source inductance and angle of overlap. [**Ans :** 10 Ω, 2.667 mH, 4.8°]

**6.39.** A single-phase semiconverter, with two thyristors and two diodes as shown in Fig. 6.44, is supplied from 230 V, 50 Hz source. The load consists of $R = 10\ \Omega$, $E = 100$ V and a large inductance to make the load current level. For a firing angle delay of 30°, determine (*a*) average voltage (*b*) average output current (*c*) average and rms values of thyristor as well as diode currents (*d*) input power factor and (*e*) circuit turn-off time.

[**Ans :** (*a*) 193.172 V (*b*) 9.32 A (*c*) 3.883 A, 6.016 A ; 5.4367 A, 7.1183 A (*d*) 0.9202 lag (*e*) 10 ms]

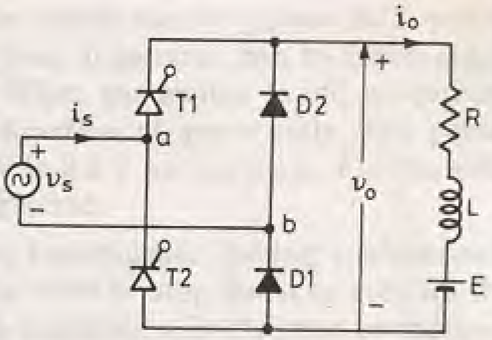


Fig. 6.44. Pertaining to Prob. 6.39.

**6.40.** Describe the effect of source inductance on the performance of a 3-phase full converter with the help of phase voltage waveforms. Indicate the sequence of conduction of various thyristors and sketch load current waveforms for both positive and negative group of thyristors.

Derive an expression for its output voltage in terms of supply voltage, source inductance, load current etc.

**6.41.** Repeat Example 6.18 for firing angle delay of 45° and overlap angle of 45°.

**6.42.** Explain how two 3-phase full converters can be connected back to back to form a circulating current type of dual converter. Discuss its operation with the help of voltage waveforms across (*a*) each converter (*b*) load and (*c*) reactor.

Describe how circulating current waveform can be obtained from reactor voltage waveform.

If one of the two converters is loaded, sketch the waveforms of their load currents also.

**6.43.** (*a*) For a 3-phase dual converter, derive an expression for the circulating current in terms of supply voltage, reactor inductance, firing angle delay etc. Relevant voltage and current waveforms, needed for this derivation, must be sketched.

(*b*) Two 3-phase full-converters are connected in antiparallel to form a 3-phase dual converter of the circulating-current type. The input to the dual converter is 3-phase, 400 V, 50 Hz. If peak value of circulating current is to be limited to 20 A, find the value of inductance needed for the reactor for firing angles of (*i*) $\alpha_1 = 30°$ and (*ii*) $\alpha_1 = 60°$. [**Ans.** (*b*) (*i*) 77.97 mH (*ii*) 20.892 mH]

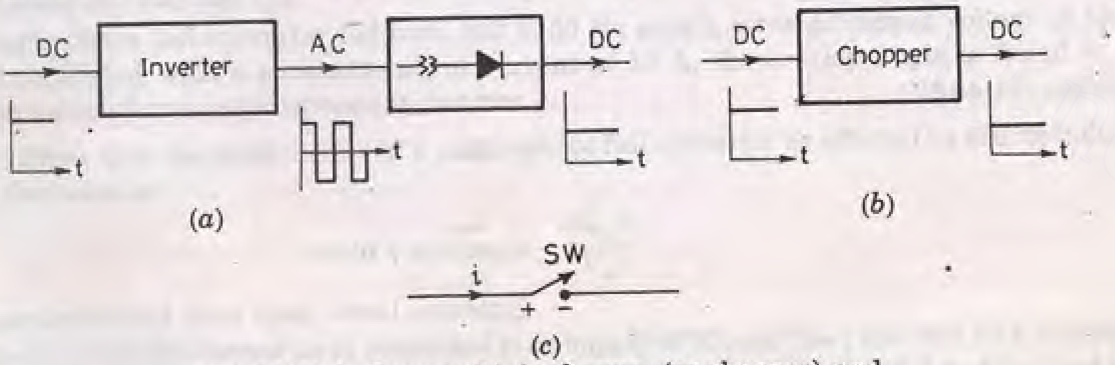
# SEVEN

# Choppers

Many industrial applications require power from dc voltage sources. Several of these applications, however, perform better in case these are fed from variable dc voltage sources. Examples of such dc systems are subway cars, trolley buses, battery-operated vehicles, battery-charging etc.

From ac supply systems, variable dc output voltage can be obtained through the use of phase-controlled converters (discussed in Chapter 6) or motor-generator sets. The conversion of fixed dc voltage to an adjustable dc output voltage, through the use of semiconductor devices, can be carried out by the use of two types of dc to dc converters given below [5].

**AC Link Chopper.** In the ac link chopper, dc is first converted to ac by an inverter (dc to ac converter). AC is then stepped-up or stepped-down by a transformer which is then converted back to dc by a diode rectifier Fig. 7.1 (*a*). As the conversion is in two stages, dc to ac and then ac to dc, ac link chopper is costly, bulky and less efficient.



(*a*) AC link chopper (*b*) dc chopper (or chopper) and
(*c*) Reproduction of a power semiconductor device.
Fig. 7.1

**DC Chopper.** A chopper is a static device that converts fixed dc input voltage to a variable dc output voltage directly Fig. 7.1 (*b*). A chopper may be thought of as dc equivalent of an ac transformer since they behave in an identical manner. As choppers involve one stage conversion, these are more efficient

Choppers are now being used all over the world for rapid transit systems. These are also used in trolley cars, marine hoists, forklift trucks and mine haulers. The future electric automobiles are likely to use choppers for their speed control and braking. Chopper systems offer smooth control, high efficiency, fast response and regeneration.

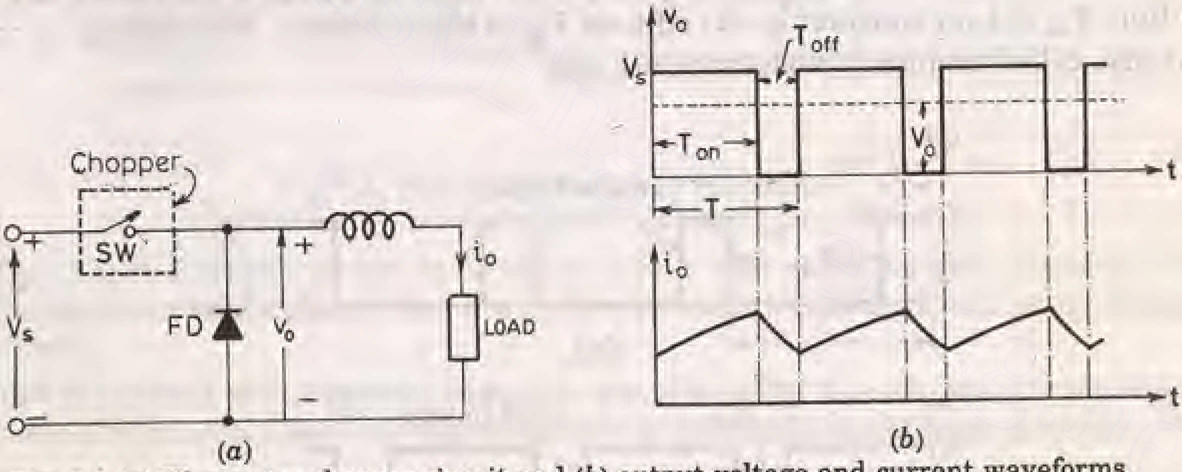
The power semiconductor devices used for a chopper circuit can be power BJT, power MOSFET, GTO or force-commutated thyristor. These devices, in general, can be represented by a switch SW with an arrow as shown in Fig. 7.1 (*c*). When the switch is off, no current can flow. When the switch is on, current flows in the direction of arrow only. The power semiconductor devices have on-state voltage drops of 0.5 V to 2.5 V across them. For the sake of simplicity, this voltage drop across these devices is neglected.

As stated above, a chopper is dc equivalent to an ac transformer having continuously variable turns ratio. Like a transformer, a chopper can be used to step down or step up the fixed dc input voltage. As step-down dc choppers are more common, a dc chopper, or chopper, in this book would mean a step-down dc chopper unless stated otherwise.

The object of this chapter is to discuss the basic principles of chopper operation and the more common types of chopper configurations using ideal switches.

## 7.1. PRINCIPLE OF CHOPPER OPERATION

A chopper is a high speed on/off semiconductor switch. It connects source to load and disconnects the load from source at a fast speed. In this manner, a chopped load voltage as shown in Fig. 7.2 (*b*) is obtained from a constant dc supply of magnitude $V_s$. In Fig. 7.2 (*a*), chopper is represented by a switch *SW* inside a dotted rectangle, which may be turned-on or turned-off as desired. For the sake of highlighting the principle of choper operation, the circuitry used for controlled the on, off periods of this switch is not shown. During the period $T_{on}$, chopper is on and load voltage is equal to source voltage $V_s$. During the interval $T_{off}$, chopper is off, load current flows through the freewheeling diode *FD*. As a result, load terminals are short circuited by *FD* and load voltage is therefore zero during $T_{off}$. In this manner, a chopped dc voltage is produced at the load terminals. The load current as shown in Fig. 7.2 (*b*) is continuous. From Fig. 7.2 (*b*), average load voltage $V_0$ is given by



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 7.2 (*a*) Elementry chopper circuit and (*b*) output voltage and current waveforms.

$$V_0 = \frac{T_{on}}{T_{on} + T_{off}} V_s = \frac{T_{on}}{T} V_s = \alpha V_s \qquad \text{...(7.1)}$$

where $T_{on}$ = on–time ; $T_{off}$ = off–time

$$T = T_{on} + T_{off} = \text{chopping period}$$

$$\alpha = \frac{T_{on}}{T} = \text{duty cycle}$$

Thus load voltage can be controlled by varying duty cycle α. Eq. (7.1) shows that load voltage is independent of load current. Eq. (7.1) can also be written as

$$V_0 = f \cdot T_{on} \cdot V_s \qquad \text{...(7.2)}$$

where $f = \frac{1}{T}$ = chopping frequency

## 7.2. CONTROL STRATEGIES

It is seen from Eq. (7.1) that average value of output voltage $V_0$ can be controlled through $\alpha$ by opening and closing the semiconductor switch periodically. The various control strategies for varying duty cycle $\alpha$ are as follows :

### 7.2.1. Constant Frequency System

In this scheme, the on-time $T_{on}$ is varied but chopping frequency $f$ (or chopping period $T$) is kept constant. Variation of $T_{on}$ means adjustment of pulse width, as such this scheme is also called *pulse-width-modulation scheme*. This scheme has also been referred to as *time-ratio control* (TRC) by some authors.

Fig. 7.3 illustrates the principle of pulse-width modulation. Here chopping period $T$ is constant. In Fig. 7.3 (*a*), $T_{on} = \frac{1}{4}T$ so that $\alpha = 0.25$ or $\alpha =$ 25%. In Fig. 7.3 (*b*), $T_{on} = \frac{3}{4}T$ so that $\alpha = 0.75$ or 75%. Ideally $\alpha$ can be varied from zero to infinity. Therefore output voltage $V_0$ can be varied between zero and source voltage $V_s$.

### 7.2.2. Variable Frequency System

In this scheme, the chopping frequency $f$ (or chopping period $T$) is varied and either (*i*) on-time $T_{on}$ is kept constant or (*ii*) off-time $T_{off}$ is kept constant. This method of controlling $\alpha$ is also called frequency-modulation scheme.

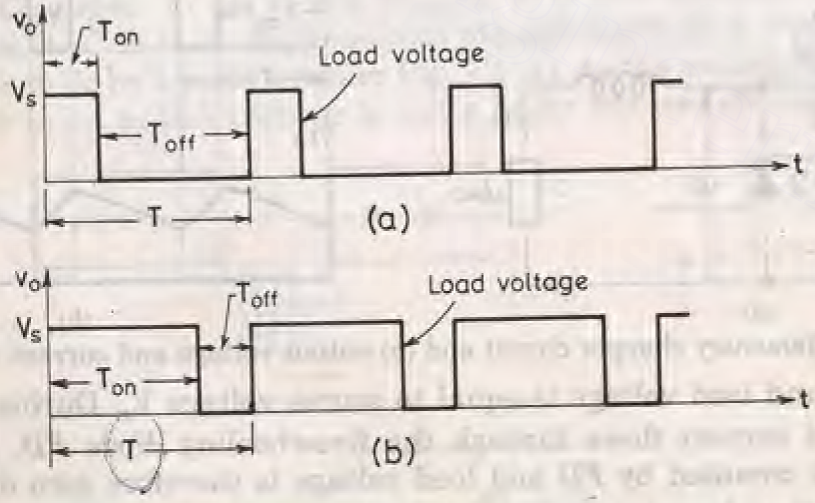


Fig. 7.3. Principle of pulse-width modulation (constant $T$).

Fig. 7.4 illustrates the principle of frequency modulation. In Fig. 7.4 (*a*), $T_{on}$ is kept constant but $T$ is varied. In the upper diagram of Fig. 7.4 (*a*), $T_{on} = \frac{1}{4}T$ so that $\alpha = 0.25$. In the lower diagram of Fig. 7.4 (*a*), $T_{on} = \frac{3}{4}T$ so that $\alpha = 0.75$. In Fig. 7.4 (*b*), $T_{off}$ is kept constant and $T$ is varied. In the upper diagram of this figure, $T_{on} = \frac{1}{4}T$ so that $\alpha = 0.25$ and in the lower diagram $T_{on} = \frac{3}{4}T$ so that $\alpha = 0.75$.

Frequency modulation scheme has some disadvantages as compared to pulse-width modulation scheme. These are as under :

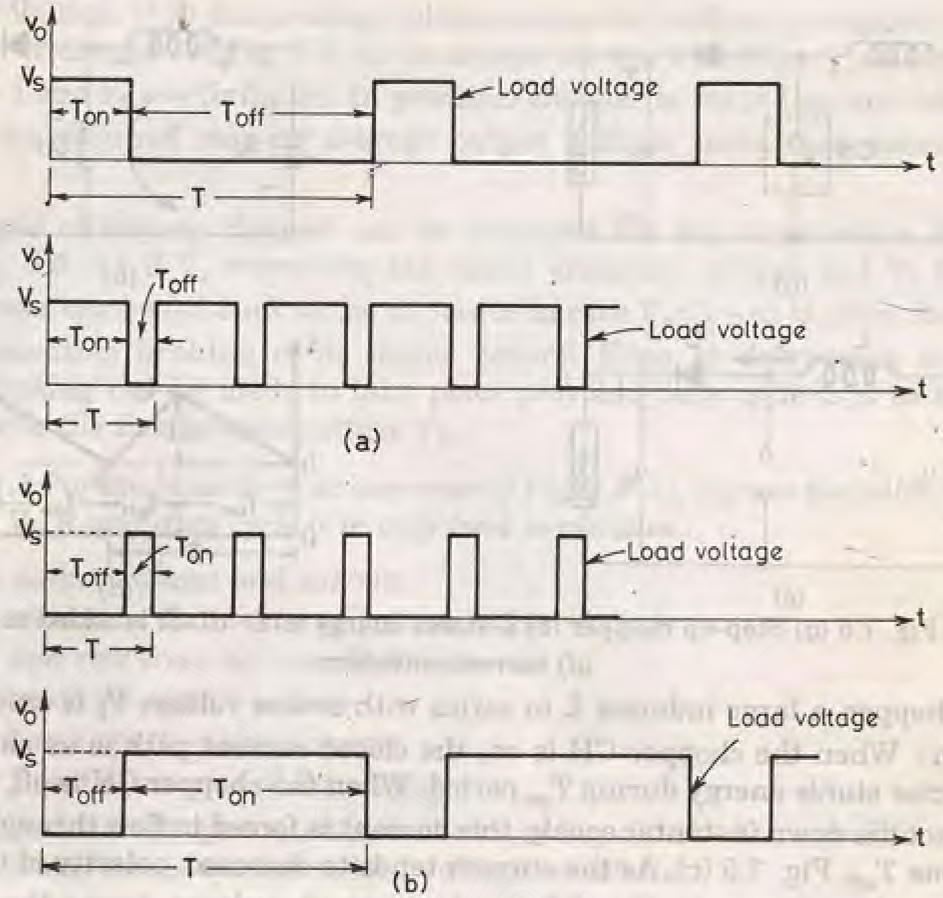


Fig. 7.4. Principle of frequency modulation.
(*a*) on-time $T_{on}$ constant and (*b*) off-time $T_{off}$ constant.

(*i*) The chopping frequency has to be varied over a wide range for the control of output voltage in frequency modulation. Filter design for such wide frequency variation is, therefore, quite difficult.

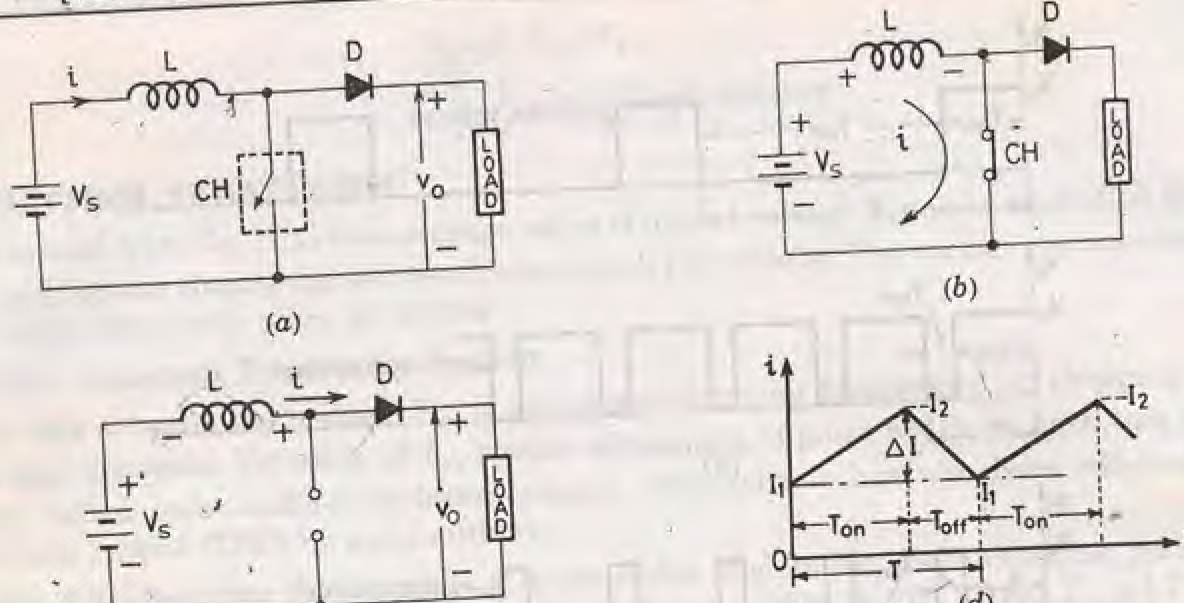
(*ii*) For the control of α, frequency variation would be wide. As such, there is a possibility of interference with signalling and telephone lines in frequency modulation scheme.

(*iii*) The large off-time in frequency modulation scheme may make the load current discontinuous which is undesirable.

It is seen from above that constant frequency (*PWM*) scheme is better than variable frequency scheme. *PWM* technique has, however, a limitation. In this technique, $T_{on}$ cannot be reduced to near zero for most of the commutation circuits used in choppers. As such, low range of α control is not possible in *PWM*. This can, however, be achieved by increasing the chopping period (or decreasing the copping frequency) of the chopper.

## 7.3. STEP-UP CHOPPERS

For the chopper configuration of Fig. 7.2 (*a*), average output voltage $V_0$ is less than the input voltage $V_s$, *i.e.* $V_0 < V_s$ ; this configuration is therefore called step-down chopper. Average output voltage $V_0$ greater than input voltage $V_s$ can, however, be obtained by a chopper called *step-up chopper.* Fig. 7.5 (*a*) illustrates an elementary form of a step-up chopper. In this article, working principle of a step-up chopper is presented.



(a) (b) (c) (d)

Fig. 7.5 (*a*) Step-up chopper (*b*) $L$ stores energy (*c*) $L \cdot di/dt$ is added to $V_s$ (*d*) current waveform.

In this chopper, a large inductor $L$ in series with source voltage $V_s$ is essential as shown in Fig. 7.5 (*a*). When the chopper CH is on, the closed current path is as shown in Fig. 7.5 (*b*) and inductor stores energy during $T_{on}$ period. When the chopper CH is off, as the inductor current cannot die down instantaneously, this current is forced to flow through the diode and load for a time $T_{off}$, Fig. 7.5 (*c*). As the current tends to decrease, polarity of the emf induced in $L$ is reversed as shown in Fig. 7.5 (*c*). As a result, voltage across the load, given by $V_0 = V_s + L\,(di/dt)$, exceeds the source voltage $V_s$. In this manner, the circuit of Fig. 7.5 (*a*) acts as a step-up chopper and the energy stored in $L$ is released to the load.

When CH is on, current through the load would increase from $I_1$ to $I_2$ as shown in Fig. 7.5 (*d*). When CH is off, current would fall from $I_2$ to $I_1$. With CH on, source voltage is applied to $L$ *i.e.* $v_L = V_s$. When CH is off, KCL for Fig. 7.5 (*c*) gives $v_L - V_0 + V_s = 0$, or $v_L = V_0 - V_s$. Here $v_L$ = voltage across $L$. Assuming linear variation of output current, the energy input to inductor from the source, during the period $T_{on}$, is

$$W_{in} = \text{(voltage across } L\text{) (average current through } L\text{) } T_{on}$$

$$= V_s \cdot \left(\frac{I_1 + I_2}{2}\right) T_{on} \qquad \text{...(7.3)}$$

During the time $T_{off}$, when chopper is off, the energy released by inductor to the load is

$$W_{off} = \text{(voltage across } L\text{) (average current through } L\text{) } T_{off}$$

$$= (V_0 - V_s)\left(\frac{I_1 + I_2}{2}\right) \cdot T_{off} \qquad \text{...(7.4)}$$

Considering the system to be lossless, these two energies given by Eqs. (7.3) and (7.4) will be equal.

$$\therefore \quad V_s \cancel{\left(\frac{I_1 + I_2}{2}\right)} T_{on} = (V_0 - V_s)\cancel{\left(\frac{I_1 + I_2}{2}\right)} \cdot T_{off}$$

or
$$V_0 = V_s \frac{T}{T - T_{on}} = V_s \frac{1}{1 - \alpha} \qquad \text{...(7.5)}$$

It is seen from Eqn. (7.5) that average voltage across the load can be stepped up by varying the duty cycle. If chopper of Fig. 7.5 (*a*) is always off, $\alpha = 0$ and $V_0 = V_s$. If this chopper is always on, $\alpha = 1$ and $V_0 = \infty$ (infinity). In practice, chopper is turned on and off so that $\alpha$ is variable and the required step-up average output voltage, more than source voltage, is obtained.

The principle of step-up chopper can be employed for the regenerative braking of dc motors. In Fig. 7.5 (*a*), if $V_s$ represents the motor armature voltage and $V_0$ the dc source voltage, the power can be fed back to the dc source in case $V_s/(1-\alpha)$ is more than $V_0$. In this manner, regenerative braking of dc motor occurs. Even at decreasing motor speeds, regenerative braking can be made to take place provided duty cycle $\alpha$ is so adjusted that $V_s/(1-\alpha)$ exceeds the fixed source voltage $V_0$.

**Example 7.1** *For the basic dc to dc converter of Fig. 7.2 (a), express the following variables as functions of $V_s$, R and duty cycle $\alpha$ in case load is resistive :*

*(a) Average output voltage and current*
*(b) Output current at the instant of commutation*
*(c) Average and rms freewheeling diode currents*
*(d) Rms value of the output voltage*
*(e) Rms and average thyristor currents*
*(f) Effective input resistance of the chopper.*

**Solution.** The load voltage variation is shown in Fig. 7.2 (*b*). For a resistive load, output or load current waveform is similar to load voltage waveform.

(*a*) Average output voltage, $V_0 = \frac{T_{on}}{T} V_s = \alpha V_s$

Average output current, $I_0 = \frac{V_0}{R} = \frac{T_{on}}{T} \cdot \frac{V_s}{R} = \alpha \frac{V_s}{R}$

(*b*) The output current is commutated by the thyristor at the instant $t = T_{on}$. Therefore, output current at the instant of commutation is $V_s/R$.

(*c*) For a resistive load, freewheeling diode FD does not come into play. Therefore, average and rms values of freewheeling diode currents are zero.

(*d*) Rms value of output voltage $= \left[\frac{T_{on}}{T} \cdot V_s^2\right]^{1/2} = \sqrt{\alpha} \cdot V_s$

(*e*) Average thyristor current $= \frac{T_{on}}{T} \cdot \frac{V_s}{R} = \alpha \frac{V_s}{R}$

Rms thyristor current $= \left[\frac{T_{on}}{T} \cdot \left(\frac{V_s}{R}\right)^2\right]^{1/2} = \sqrt{\alpha} \cdot \frac{V_s}{R}$

(*f*) Average source current = average thyristor current $= \alpha \cdot \frac{V_s}{R}$

Effective input resistance of the chopper

$$= \frac{\text{dc source voltage}}{\text{average source current}} = \frac{V_s \cdot R}{\alpha \cdot V_s} = \frac{R}{\alpha}$$

**Example 7.2.** *For type-A chopper of Fig. 7.2 (a), dc source voltage = 230 V, load resistance = 10 Ω. Take a voltage drop of 2 V across chopper when it is on. For a duty cycle of 0.4, calculate*

*(a) average and rms values of output voltage and*

*(b) chopper efficiency.*

**Solution.** (*a*) When chopper is on, output voltage is $(V_s - 2)$ volts and during the time chopper is off, output voltage is zero.

$$\therefore \text{ Average output voltage } = \frac{(V_s - 2)\,T_{on}}{T} = \alpha\,(V_s - 2)$$

$$= 0.4\,(230 - 2) = 91.2 \text{ V}$$

Rms value of output voltage,

$$V_{or} = \left[(V_s - 2)^2 \cdot \frac{T_{on}}{T}\right]^{1/2} = \sqrt{\alpha}\,(V_s - 2)$$

$$= \sqrt{0.4}\,(230 - 2) = 144.2 \text{ V}$$

(*b*) Power output or power delivered to load,

$$P_0 = \frac{V_{or}^2}{R} = \frac{(144.2)^2}{10} = 2079.364 \text{ W.}$$

$$\text{Power input to chopper}, \quad P_i = V_s \cdot I_0 = 230 \times \frac{91.2}{10} = 2097.6 \text{ W}$$

$$\text{Chopper efficiency} = \frac{P_0}{P_i} = \frac{2079.364}{2097.6} \times 100 = 99.13\%.$$

**Example 7.3.** *A step-up chopper has input voltage of 220 V and output voltage of 660 V. If the non-conducting time of thyristor-chopper is 100 μs, compute the pulse width of output voltage.*

*In case pulse width is halved for constant frequency operation, find the new output voltage.*

**Solution.** From Eq. (7.5), $660 = 220\,\dfrac{1}{1 - \alpha}$

or $$\alpha = \frac{2}{3} = \frac{T_{on}}{T}$$

$$\therefore \quad T_{on} = \frac{2}{3}T \text{ and } T_{off} = T - T_{on} = \frac{1}{3}T = \frac{1}{3}T = 100\ \mu\text{s (given)}$$

$$\therefore \quad T_{off} = 300\ \mu\text{s and } T_{on} = \frac{2}{3} \times 300 = 200\ \mu\text{s.}$$

When pulse width is halved, $T_{on} = \frac{1}{2} \times 200 = 100\ \mu\text{s}$

for constant frequency operation, $T = 300\ \mu\text{s}$ ; $T_{off} = T - T_{on} = 200\ \mu\text{s}$

$$\alpha = \frac{T_{on}}{T} = \frac{100}{300} = \frac{1}{3}$$

$$\therefore \text{ New output voltage, } V_0 = 220\,\frac{1}{1 - \frac{1}{3}} = 330 \text{ V.}$$

## 7.4. TYPES OF CHOPPER CIRCUITS

Power semiconductor devices used in chopper circuits are unidirectional devices ; polarities of output voltage $V_0$ and the direction of output current $I_0$ are, therefore, restricted.

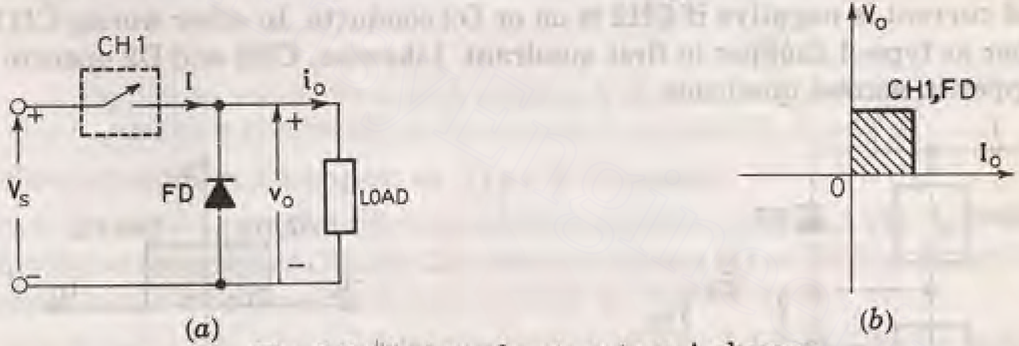
A chopper can, however, operate in any of the four quadrants by an appropriate arrangement of semiconductor devices. This characteristic of their operation in any of the four quadrants forms the basis of their classification as type-A chopper, type-B chopper etc. Some authors describe this chopper classification as class *A*, class *B*, ... in place of type-*A*, type-*B* .... respectively.

In the chopper-circuit configurations drawn henceforth, the current directions and voltage polarities marked in the power circuit would be treated as positive. In case current directions and voltage polarities turn out to be opposite to those shown in the circuit, these currents and voltages must be treated as negative.

In this section, the classification of various chopper configurations is discussed.

### 7.4.1. First-quadrant, or Type-A, Chopper

This type of chopper is shown in Fig. 7.6 (*a*). It is observed that chopper circuit of Fig. 7.2 (*a*) is also type-A chopper. In Fig. 7.6 (*a*), when chopper CH1 is on, $v_0 = V_s$ and current $i_0$ flows in the arrow direction shown. When CH1 is off , $v_0 = 0$ but $i_0$ in the load continues flowing in the same direction through freewheeling diode FD, Fig. 7.2 (*b*). It is thus seen that average values of both load voltage and current, *i.e.* $V_0$ and $i_0$ are always positive : this fact is shown by the hatched area in the first quadrant of $V_0 - I_0$ plane in Fig. 7.6 (*b*).



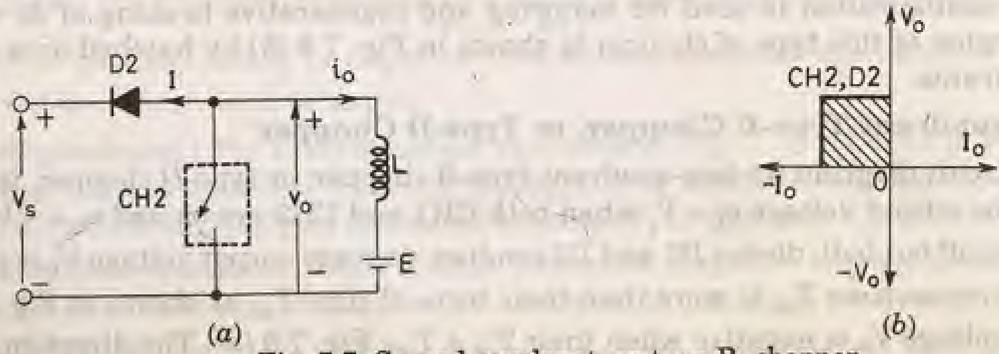
(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 7.6. First-quadrant, or type-A chopper.

The power flow in type-*A* chopper is always from source to load. This chopper is also called *step-down chopper* as average output voltage $V_0$ is always less than the input dc voltage $V_s$.

### 7.4.2. Second-quadrant, or Type-B, Chopper

Power circuit for this type of chopper is shown in Fig. 7.7 (*a*). Note that load must contain a dc source *E*, like a battery (or a dc motor) in this chopper.



(*a*) (*b*)

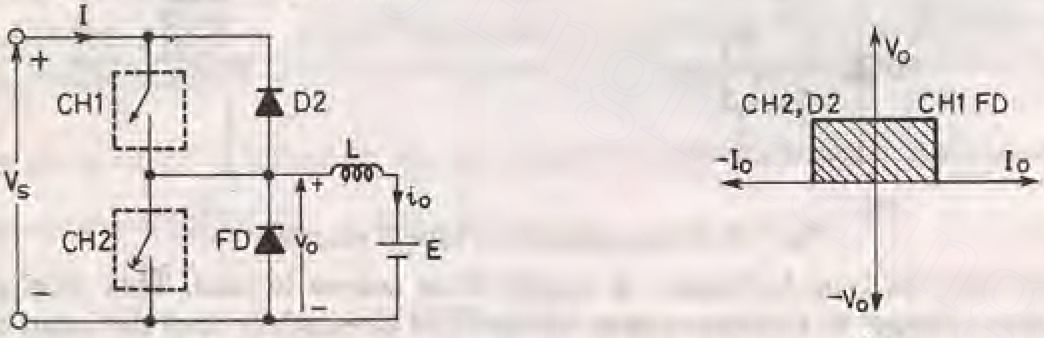
Fig. 7.7. Second-quadrant, or type-B, chopper.

When CH2 is on, $v_0 = 0$ but load voltage $E$ drives current through $L$ and CH2. Inductance $L$ stores energy during $T_{on}$ (= on period) of CH2. When CH2 is off, $v_0 = \left(E + L\frac{di}{dt}\right)$ exceeds source voltage $V_s$. As a result, diode D2 is forward biased and begins conduction, thus allowing power to flow to the source. Chopper CH2 may be on or off, current $I_0$ flows out of the load, current $i_0$ is therefore treated as negative. Since $V_0$ is always positive and $I_0$ is negative, power flow is always from load to source. As load voltage $V_0 = \left(E + L\frac{di}{dt}\right)$ is more than source voltage $V_s$, type-*B* chopper is also called *step-up chopper.*

Both type-*A* and type-*B* chopper configurations have a common negative terminal between their input and output circuits.

### 7.4.3. Two-quadrant type-A chopper, or Type-C Chopper

This type of chopper is obtained by connecting type-*A* and type-*B* choppers in parallel as shown in Fig. 7.8 (*a*). The output voltage $V_0$ is always positive because of the presence of freewheeling diode FD across the load. When chopper CH2 is on, or freewheeling diode FD conducts, output voltage $v_0 = 0$ and in case chopper CH1 is on or diode D2 conducts, output voltage $v_0 = V_s$. The load current $i_0$ can, however, reverse its direction. Current $i_0$ flows in the arrow direction marked in Fig. 7.8 (*a*), *i.e.* load current is positive when CH1 is on or FD conducts. Load current is negative if CH2 is on or D2 conducts. In other words, CH1 and FD operate together as type-*A* chopper in first quadrant. Likewise, CH2 and D2 operate together as type-*B* chopper in second quadrant.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 7.8. Two-quadrant type-A chopper, or type-C chopper.

Average load voltage is always positive but average load current may be positive or negative as explained above. Therefore, power flow may be from source to load (first-quadrant operation) or from load to source (second-quadrant operation). Choppers CH1 and CH2 should not be on simultaneously as this would lead to a direct short circuit on the supply lines. This type of chopper configuration is used for motoring and regenerative braking of dc motors. The operating region of this type of chopper is shown in Fig. 7.8 (*b*) by hatched area in first and second quadrants.

### 7.4.4. Two-quadrant Type-B Chopper, or Type-D Chopper

The power circuit diagram for two-quadrant type-*B* chopper, or type-*D* chopper, is shown in Fig. 7.9 (*a*). The output voltage $v_0 = V_s$ when both CH1 and CH2 are on and $v_0 = -V_s$ when both choppers are off but both diodes *D*1 and *D*2 conduct. Average output voltage $V_0$ is positive when choppers turn-on time $T_{on}$ is more than their turn-off time $T_{off}$ as shown in Fig. 7.9 (*c*). Average output voltage $V_0$ is negative when their $T_{on} < T_{off}$, Fig. 7.9 (*d*). The direction of load current is always positive because choppers and diodes can conduct current only in the direction of arrows shown in Fig. 7.9 (*a*). As $V_0$ is reversible, power flow is reversible. The operation of this type of chopper is shown by the hatched area in first and fourth quadrants in Fig. 7.9 (*b*).

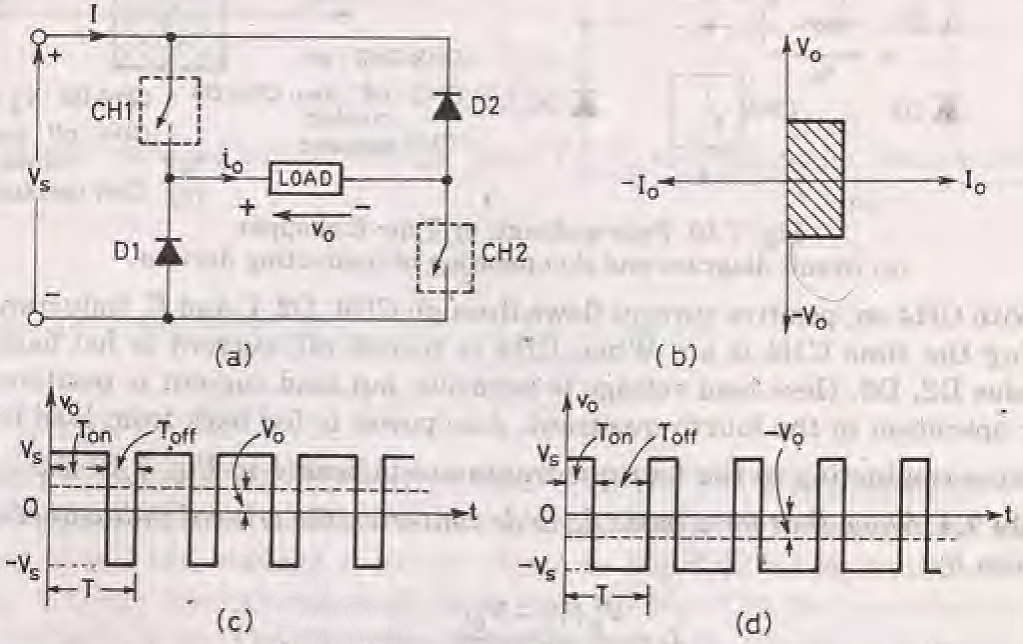


Fig. 7.9 (*a*) and (*b*) Two-quadrant type-B chopper, or type-D chopper (*c*) $V_0$ is positive, $T_{on} > T_{off}$ and (*d*) $V_0$ is negative, $T_{on} < T_{off}$

### 7.4.5. Four-quadrant Chopper, or Type-E Chopper

The power circuit diagram for a four-quadrant chopper is shown in Fig. 7.10 (*a*). It consists of four semiconductor switches CH1 to CH4 and four diodes D1 to D4 in antiparallel. Working of this chopper in the four quadrants is explained as under :

**First quadrant :** For first-quadrant operation of Fig. 7.10 (*a*), CH4 is kept on, CH3 is kept off and *CH1 is operated*. With CH1, CH4 on, load voltage $v_0 = V_s$ (source voltage) and load current $i_0$ begins to flow. Here both $v_0$ and $i_0$ are positive giving first quadrant operation. When CH1 is turned off, positive current freewheels through CH4, D2. In this manner, both $V_0, I_0$ can be controlled in the first quadrant.

**Second quadrant** : *Here CH2 is operated* and CH1, CH3 and CH4 are kept off. With CH2 on, reverse (or negative) current flows through $L$, CH2, D4 and $E$. Inductance $L$ stores energy during the time CH2 is on. When CH2 is turned off, current is fed back to source through diodes D1, D4. Note that here $\left(E + L\dfrac{di}{dt}\right)$ is more than the source voltage $V_s$. As load voltage $V_0$ is positive and $I_0$ is negative, it is second quadrant operation of chopper. Also, power is fed back from load to source.

**Third quadrant :** For third-quadrant operation of Fig. 7.10 (*a*), CH1 is kept off, CH2 is kept on and *CH3 is operated*. Polarity of load emf $E$ must be reversed for this quadrant working. With CH3 on, load gets connected to source $V_s$ so that both $v_0$, $i_0$ are negative leading to third quadrant operation. When CH3 is turned off, negative current freewheels through CH2, D4. In this manner, $v_0$ and $i_0$ can be controlled in the third quadrant.

**Fourth quadrant** : *Here CH4 is operated* and other devices are kept off. Load emf $E$ must have its polarity reversed to that shown in Fig. 7.10 (*a*) for operation in the fourth

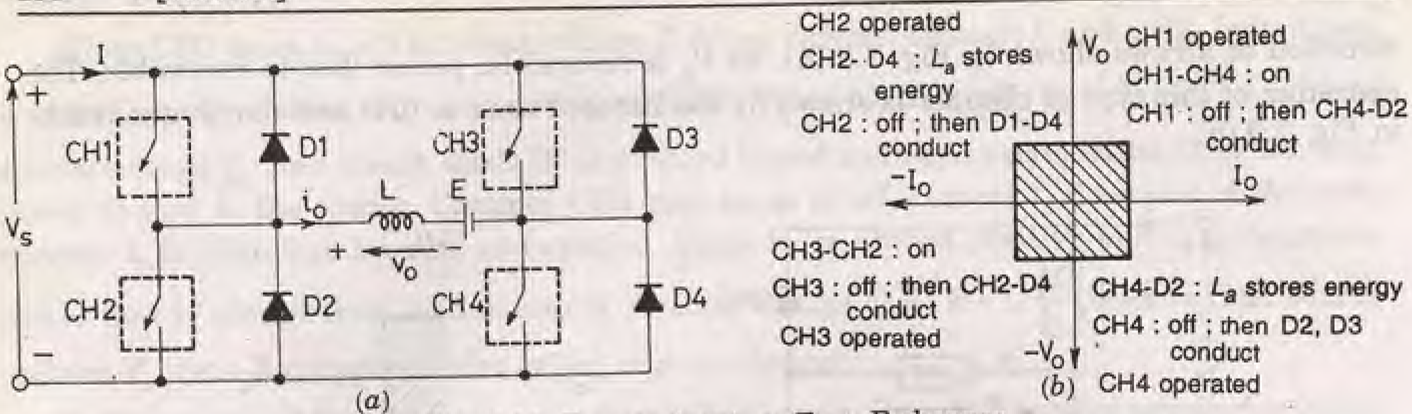

I
+
CH1
D1
CH3
D3
$V_s$
$i_o$
L
E
+
$v_o$
−
CH2
D2
CH4
D4
−
(a)
CH2 operated
CH2- D4 : $L_a$ stores energy
CH2 : off ; then D1-D4 conduct
$V_o$
CH1 operated
CH1-CH4 : on
CH1 : off ; then CH4-D2 conduct
$-I_o$
$I_o$
CH3-CH2 : on
CH3 : off ; then CH2-D4 conduct
CH3 operated
$-V_o$
CH4-D2 : $L_a$ stores energy
CH4 : off ; then D2, D3 conduct
CH4 operated
(b)

Fig. 7.10. Four-qudrant, or Type-E chopper
(a) circuit diagram and (b) operation of conducting devices.

quadrant. With CH4 on, positive current flows through CH4, D2, $L$ and $E$. Inductance $L$ stores energy during the time CH4 is on. When CH4 is turned off, current is fed back to source through diodes D2, D3. Here load voltage is negative, but load current is positive leading to the chopper operation in the fourth quadrant. Also power is fed back from load to source.

The devices conducting in the four quadrants are indicated in Fig. 7.10 (b).

**Example 7.4.** *Show that for a basic dc to dc converter, the critical inductance of the filter circuit is given by*

$$L = \frac{V_0^2 (V_s - V_0)}{2f V_s P_0}$$

*where* $V_0$, $V_s$, $P_0$ *and* $f$ *are load voltage, source voltage, load power and chopping frequency respectively.*

**Solution.** The critical inductance $L$ is that value of inductance for which the output current falls to zero at $t = T$ during the turn-off period of the chopper. A typical waveform of output current, with critical inductance in the load circuit, is shown in Fig. 7.11 (b). If current variation, from zero to $I_{mx}$ during $T_{on}$ and from $I_{mx}$ to zero during $T_{off}$, is assumed linear, then average value of output current $I_0$ is given by

$$I_0 \cdot T = \frac{1}{2} I_{mx} T_{on} + \frac{1}{2} I_{mx} T_{off}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} I_{mx} \left(T_{on} + T_{off}\right) = \frac{1}{2} I_{mx} T.$$

or $I_{mx} = 2 I_0$ = maximum value of chopper current at $t = T_{on}$. It is seen from Fig. 7.11 (a) that when chopper CH is on,

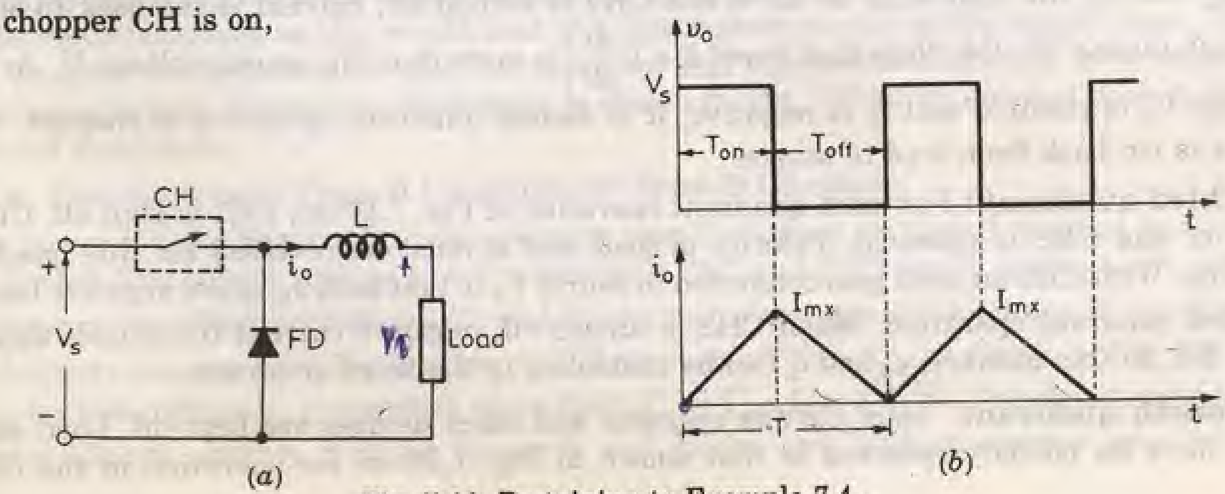


Fig. 7.11. Pertaining to Example 7.4.

$$V_0 + L\frac{di}{dt} = V_s \quad \text{or} \quad V_0 + L\frac{I_{mx}}{T_{on}} = V_s$$

or
$$L\frac{2\,I_0}{T_{on}} = V_s - V_0$$

∴
$$L = \frac{(V_s - V_0)\,T_{on}}{2\,I_0} \qquad \text{...}(i)$$

But average value of output voltage $V_0 = f\,T_{on}\,V_s$ and output, or load, power $P_0 = V_0\,I_0$. This gives

$$T_{on} = \frac{V_0}{f \cdot V_s} \quad \text{and} \quad I_0 = \frac{P_0}{V_0}$$

Substituting these values of $T_{on}$ and $I_0$ in Eq ($i$), we get

$$L = \frac{(V_s - V_0)\,V_0^2}{2\,f\,V_s\,P_0}$$

## 7.5. STEADY STATE TIME-DOMAIN ANALYSIS OF TYPE-A CHOPPER

For the type-*A* chopper of Fig. 7.6 (*a*) with *RLE* load, the waveforms for gate signal $i_g$, load current $i_0$ and load voltage $v_0$ are as shown in Fig. 7.12 (*a*) for continuous conduction and, in Fig. 7.12 (*b*) for discontinuous conduction. In Fig. 7.12 (*b*), periodic time $T$ is more than that in Fig. 7.12 (*a*). The determination of load current expression is useful for knowing (*i*) the current profile over periodic time $T$, (*ii*) the current ripple and (*iii*) whether the current is continuous or discontinuous. The object of this article is to study the type-A chopper with *RLE* load for current variation over $T$, current ripple and also for the Fourier analysis of output voltage.

For *RLE* type load, $E$ is the load voltage which may be a dc motor or a battery. When CH1 is on in Fig. 7.6 (*a*), the equivalent circuit is as shown in Fig. 7.12 (*c*). For this mode of operation, the differential equation governing its performance is

$$V_s = R\,i + L\frac{di}{dt} + E \qquad \text{...(7.6)}$$

for
$$0 \le t \le T_{on}.$$

When CH1 is off, the load current continues flowing through the freewheeling diode and the equivalent circuit is as shown in Fig. 7.12 (*d*). For this circuit, the differential equation is

$$0 = R\,i + L\frac{di}{dt} + E \qquad \text{...(7.7)}$$

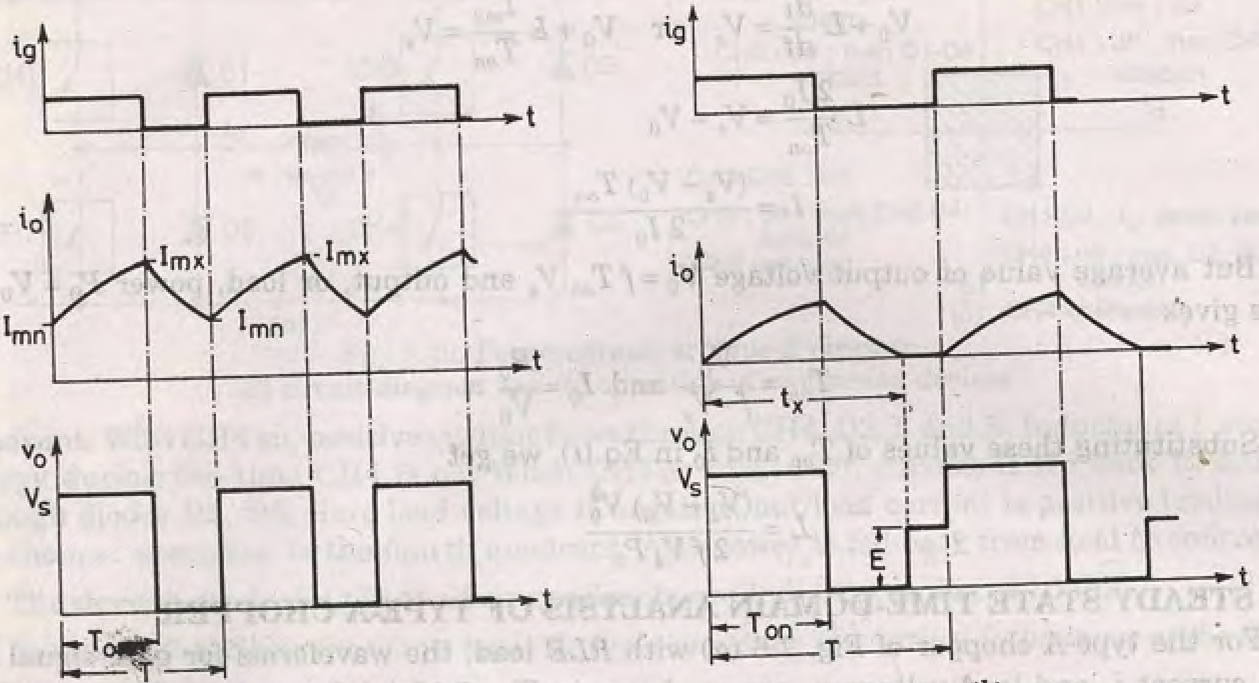
for
$$T_{on} < t \le T.$$

Solution of Eqs. (7.6) and (7.7) may be obtained by the use of Laplace transform. It is seen from Fig. 7.12 (*a*) that initial value of current is $I_{mn}$ for Eq. (7.6) and $I_{mx}$ for Eq. (7.7). Therefore, Laplace transform of Eqs. (7.6) and (7.7) is

$$RI(s) + L[sI(s) - I_{mn}] = \frac{V_s - E}{s} \qquad \text{...(7.8)}$$

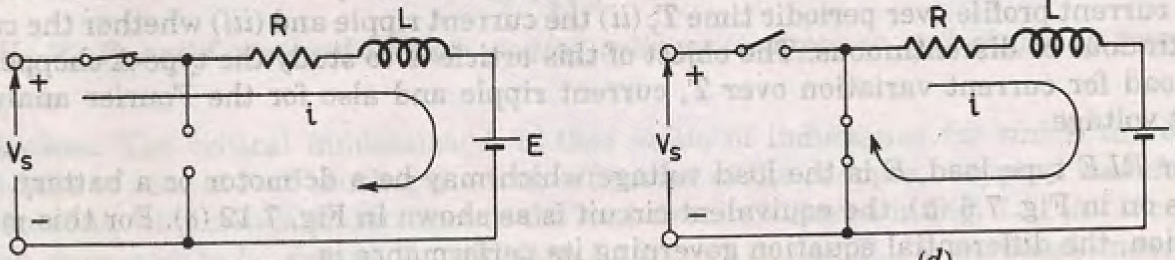
and
$$RI(s) + L[sI(s) - I_{mx}] - \frac{E}{s} \qquad \text{...(7.9)}$$

From Eq. (7.8),
$$I(s) = \frac{V_s - E}{s(R + L_s)} + \frac{L \cdot I_{mn}}{R + L_s} = \frac{V_s - E}{L_s\left(s + \dfrac{R}{L}\right)} + \frac{I_{mn}}{s + \dfrac{R}{L}}$$



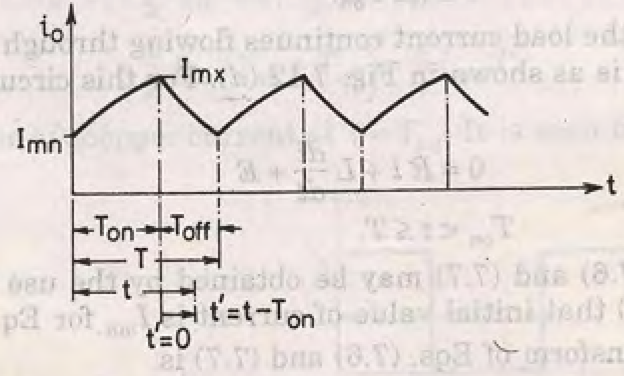
(a) (b)

Fig. 7.12. Type-A chopper (a) continuous load current and (b) Discontinuous load current.



(c) (d)

Fig. 7.12. Equivalent circuit for type-A chopper with (c) CH1 on and (d) CH1 off.



(e)

Fig. 7.12 (e) Pertaining to t'.

Laplace inverse of the above expression is

$$i(t) = \frac{V_s - E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right) + I_{mn}\, e^{-\frac{R}{L}t} \qquad \text{...(7.10)}$$

for $0 \le t \le T_{on}$.

Similarly, the time-domain expression for current from Eq. (7.9) is

$$i(t') = -\frac{E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{l}t'}\right) + I_{mx}\, e^{-\frac{R}{L}t'} \qquad \text{...(7.11)}$$

for $\quad T_{on} < t \le T$

where $t' = t - T_{on}$, see Fig. 7.12 (*e*), so that when

$$t = T_{on}, \quad t' = 0$$

and for $\quad t = T, \quad t' = T - T_{on} = T_{off}$

The variation of current $i(t)$ from $I_{mn}$ to $I_{mx}$ for $0 \le t \le T_{on}$ can be plotted from Eq. (7.10) and that of $i\,(t')$ from $I_{mx}$ to $I_{mn}$ for $0 < t' \le T_{off}$ from Eq. (7.11).

In Eq. (7.10), at $t = T_{on}$, $i(t) = I_{mx}$.

$$\therefore \quad I_{mx} = \frac{V_s - E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}\right) + I_{mn}\, e^{-T_{on}/T_a} \qquad \text{...(7.12)}$$

In Eq. (7.11), at $t' = T_{off} = T - T_{on}$, $i(t') = I_{mn}$

$$\therefore \quad I_{mn} = -\frac{E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-(T-T_{on})/T_a}\right) + I_{mx} \cdot e^{-(T-T_{on})/T_a} \qquad \text{...(7.13)}$$

where $\quad T_a = \frac{L}{R}$.

Eqs. (7.12) and (7.13) can be solved for $I_{mx}$ and $I_{mn}$ as under :

From Eq. (7.12), $\quad I_{mx} = \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-(T_{on}/T_a)}\right) - \frac{E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}\right) + I_{mn}\, e^{-T_{on}/T_a}$

Substitution of $I_{mn}$ from Eq. (7.13) in the above expression gives

$$I_{mx} = \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}\right) - \frac{E}{R} + \frac{E}{R} e^{-T_{on}/T_a} - \frac{E}{R} e^{-T_{on}/T_a}$$

$$+ \frac{E}{R} \cdot e^{-(T-T_{on})} / T_a \cdot e^{-T_{on})/T_a} + I_{mx}\, e^{-(T-T_{on}/T_a} \cdot e^{-T_{on}/T_a}$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}\right) - \frac{E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-T/T_a}\right) + I_{mx} \times e^{-T/T_a}$$

or $$I_{mx}\left(1 - e^{-T/T_a}\right) = \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}\right) - \frac{E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-T/T_a}\right)$$

or $$I_{mx} = \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}}{1 - e^{-T/T_a}}\right] - \frac{E}{R} \qquad \text{...(7.14)}$$

Substitution of $I_{mx}$ from Eq. (7.14) in (7.13) gives

$$I_{mx} = -\frac{E}{R} + \frac{E}{R} \cdot e^{-(T-T_{on})/T_a} + \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}}{1 - e^{-T/T_a}}\right] e^{-(T-T_{on})/T_a} - \frac{E}{R} \cdot e^{-(T-T_{on})/T_a}$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}}{1 - e^{-T/T_a}}\right] \frac{e^{T_{on}/T_a}}{e^{T/T_a}} - \frac{E}{R}$$

$$I_{mn} = \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{e^{T_{on}/T_a} - 1}{e^{T}/T_a - 1}\right] - \frac{E}{R} \qquad \text{...(7.15)}$$

In case CH1 conducts continuously, then $T_{on} = T$ and from Eqs. (7.14) and (7.15).

$$I_{mx} = I_{mn} = \frac{V_s - E}{R} \qquad \text{...(7.16)}$$

The maximum $I_{mx}$ and minimum $I_{mn}$ values of load current can be obtained from Eqs. (7.14) and (7.15) respectively for given $V_s$, $R$, $\alpha$, $T_a$ and $E$.

For those who are not familiar with Laplace-transform technique, the following method may be adopted for solving Eqs. (7.6) and (7.7).

Eq. (7.6) can be re-written as

$$Ri + L\frac{di}{dt} = V_s - E$$

$$(R + Lp)\, i = V_s - E \qquad \text{...}(i)$$

where $$p = \frac{d}{dt}$$

The solution of Eq. (*i*) consists of two parts, complementary function and the particular integral.

*Complementary Function* : It is obtained from force-free equation $(R + Lp)\, i = 0$. Its solution is of the type

$$i = Ae^{pt}.$$

Here $p$ is the root of the auxiliary equation $R + Lp = 0$ and this root is $p = -\frac{R}{L}$.

$$\therefore \qquad i_{C.F.} = Ae^{-\frac{R}{L}t}$$

*Particular Integral* : It is obtained from Eq. (*i*) by putting $p = 0$.

$$\therefore \qquad Ri = V_s - E$$

or $$i_{P.I.} = \frac{V_s - E}{R}$$

Therefore, the complete solution of Eq. (7.6) is

$$i = i_{P.I.} + i_{C.F.}$$

$$= \frac{V_s - E}{R} + Ae^{-\frac{R}{L}t}$$

Constant $A$ can be obtained from the initial condition. It is seen from Fig. 7.12 (*a*) that at $t = 0$, the initial current during $T_{on}$ is $i = I_{mn}$.

$$\therefore \qquad I_{mn} = \frac{V_s - E}{R} + A$$

or $$A = \left(I_{mn} - \frac{V_s - E}{R}\right)$$

$$\therefore \qquad i = \frac{V_s - E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right) + I_{mn} - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t} \qquad \text{...(7.10)}$$

This agrees with the solution in Eq. (7.10). Solution of Eq. (7.7) can also be obtained similarly as in Eq. (7.11).

### 7.5.1. Steady State Ripple

It is seen from Fig. 7.12 (*e*) that current pulsates between $I_{mx}$ and $I_{mn}$. The ripple current $(I_{mx} - I_{mn})$ can be obtained from Eqs. (7.14) and (7.15) as follows :

$$I_{mx} - I_{mn} = \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{1-e^{-T_{on}/T_a}}{1-e^{-T/T_a}} - \frac{e^{T_{on}/T_a}-1}{e^{T/T_a}-1}\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{1-e^{-T_{on}/T_a}}{1-e^{-T/T_a}} - \frac{(1-e^{-T_{on}/T_a})\,e^{T_{on}/T}}{(1-e^{-T/T_a})\cdot e^{T/T_a}}\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{(1-e^{-T_{on}/T_a}) - (1-e^{-T_{on}/T_a})\,e^{(T_{on}-T)/T_a}}{1-e^{-T/T_a}}\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{(1-e^{-T_{on}/T_a})\,(1-e^{-(T-T_{on})/T_a}}{1-e^{-T/T_a}}\right] \qquad \text{...(7.17)}$$

The ripple current given by Eq. (7.17) is seen to be independent of load counter emf $E$. With $T_{on} = \alpha\, T$ and $T - T_{on} = (1-\alpha)\, T$, Eq. (7.17), can be written as

$$I_{mx} - I_{mn} = \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{(1-e^{-\alpha\, T/T_a})\,(1-e^{-(1-\alpha)\,T/T_a})}{1-e^{-T/T_a}}\right]$$

$$\text{Per unit ripple current } = \frac{I_{mx}-I_{mn}}{V_s/R} = \frac{(1-e^{-\alpha T/T_a})\,(1-e^{-(1-\alpha)T/T_a})}{1-e^{-T/T_a}} \qquad \text{...(7.18)}$$

For $\alpha = 0.5$ and $T/T_a = 5$, p.u. ripple current $= 0.848$. For $\alpha = 0.5$ and $T/T_a = 25$, pu ripple current $= 1$. In this manner, the variation of pu ripple current as a function of duty cycle $\alpha$ and ratio $T/T_a$ can be plotted as shown in Fig. 7.13. Its value is maximum when $\alpha = 0.5$. As $L$ increases, $T_a\ (= L/R)$ increases and $T/T_a$ reduces and pu ripple current decreases, Fig. 7.13.

The peak to peak ripple current has maximum value $\Delta I_{mx}$ when duty cycle $\alpha = 0.5$ in Eq. (7.18). Putting $\frac{T}{T_a} = x$ for convenience, $\Delta I_{mx}$ from Eq. (7.18) is

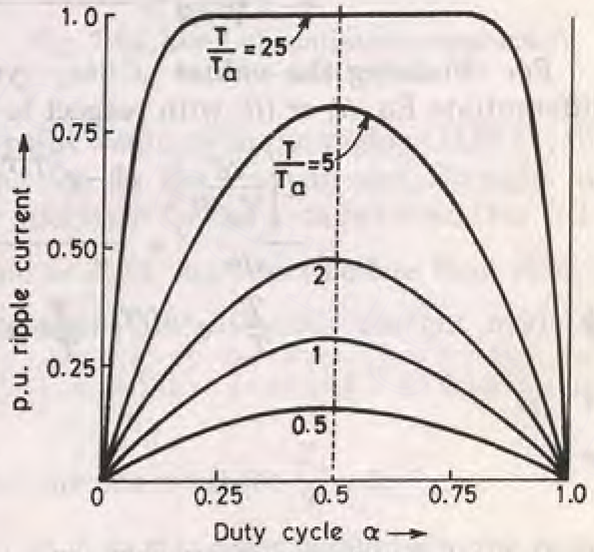


Fig. 7.13. Per unit ripple current as a function of $\alpha$ and $T/T_a$.

$$\Delta I_{mx} = \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{(1-e^{-0.5x}\,(1-e^{-0.5x}}{1-e^{-x}}\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{(1-e^{-0.5x})\,(1-e^{-0.5x})}{(1-e^{-0.5x})\,(1-e^{-0.5x})}\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{1-e^{-0.5x}}{1+e^{-0.5x}}\right] = \frac{V_s}{R}\tanh\frac{1}{4}x$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{R}\tanh\frac{T}{4T_a}$$

But $\qquad T = \frac{1}{f}$ and $T_a = \frac{L}{R}$

$$\therefore \qquad \Delta I_{mx} = \frac{V_s}{R} \tanh \frac{R}{4fL}.$$

In case $4fL > 7R$, then $\tanh \frac{R}{4fL} \cong \frac{R}{4fL}$. Under this condition, maximum value of ripple current is

$$\Delta I_{mx} = \frac{V_s}{R} \cdot \frac{R}{4fL} = \frac{V_s}{4fL}.$$

This shows that maximum value of ripple current is inversely proportional to chopping frequency and the circuit inductance.

**Example 7.5.** *In the continuous conduction mode of type-A chopper, show that per unit ripple in the load current is maximum when duty cycle is equal to 0.5.*

**Solution.** Eq. (7.18) can be used to prove that ripple in the output current, or per-unit ripple in load current is maximum when the duty cycle is equal to 0.5.

Therefore, from Eq. (7.18), ripple current $\Delta I$ is

$$\Delta I = \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{(1-e^{-\alpha T/T_a})(1-e^{-(1-\alpha)T/T_a})}{1-e^{-T/T_a}}\right] \qquad \ldots(i)$$

Also per-unit ripple in load current is

$$\frac{\Delta I}{V_s/R} = \frac{(1-e^{-\alpha T/T_a} - e^{-(1-\alpha)T/T_a} + e^{-T/T_a})}{1-e^{-T/T_a}} \qquad \ldots(ii)$$

For obtaining the values of duty cycle for which the ripple in current is maximum, differentiate Eq. (*i*) or (*ii*) with respect to $\alpha$ and equate to zero.

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{d\left(\frac{\Delta I}{V_s/R}\right)}{d\alpha} = \frac{(1-e^{-T/T_a})\left[0 - e^{-\alpha T/T_a}\cdot\left(-\frac{T}{T_a}\right) - e^{-(1-\alpha)T/T_a}\cdot\frac{T}{T_a} + 0\right]}{(1-e^{-T/T_a})^2} = 0$$

$$\text{or} \qquad \frac{T}{T_a}\cdot e^{-\alpha T/T_a} - \frac{T}{T_a}\cdot e^{-(1-\alpha)T/T_a} = 0$$

$$\text{or} \qquad e^{-\alpha T/T_a} = e^{-(1-\alpha)T/T_a}$$

$$\text{or} \qquad \frac{\alpha T}{T_a} = (1-\alpha)\frac{T}{T_a}$$

$$\therefore \qquad \alpha = (1-\alpha) \quad \text{or} \quad \alpha = \frac{1}{2} = 0.5.$$

This shows that for duty cycle equal to 0.5, ripple in load current is maximum.

### 7.5.2. Limit of Continuous Conduction

In a chopper, if $T_{on}$ is reduced, $T_{off}$ increases for a constant chopping period $T$. At some low value of $T_{on}$, the value of $T_{off}$ is large and the current $i$ may fall to zero. Since the current in type-A chopper cannot reverse, it stays at zero. The limit of continuous conduction is reached when $I_{mn}$ in Eq. (7.15) goes to zero. The value of duty cycle $\alpha$ at the limit of continuous conduction is obtained by equating $I_{mn}$ in Eq. (7.15) to zero. Therefore,

$$I_{mn} = \frac{V_s}{R}\left[\frac{e^{T_{on}/T_a}-1}{e^{T/T_a}-1}\right] - \frac{E}{R} = 0$$

or $$\frac{e^{T_{on}/T_a}-1}{e^{T/T_a}-1} = \frac{E}{V_s} = m$$

or $$e^{T_{on}/T_a} = 1 + m\,(e^{T/T_a} - 1)$$

or $$\alpha' = \frac{T_{on}}{T} = \frac{T_a}{T} \ln\left[1 + m\left(e^{T/T_a} - 1\right)\right] \qquad ...(7.19)$$

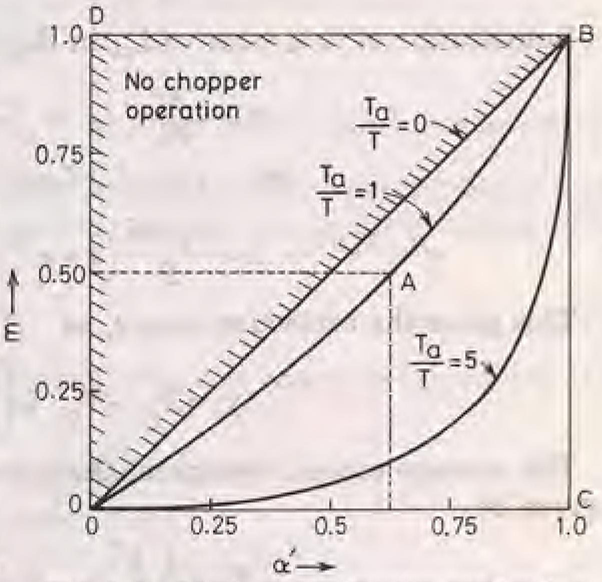


Fig. 7.14. Limit of continuous conduction for type-A chopper.

For given $E$, $V_s$, $T$ and $T_a$ ; if duty cycle is $\alpha'$ as given by Eq. (7.19), then the current is just continuous. If actual duty cycle is less than $\alpha'$ as given here, the load current would be discontinuous. For some value of $T_a/T$, say 1, value of $\alpha'$ is calculated for various values of $m$ from 0 to 1. For example, for $m = 0.5$,

$$\alpha' = 1 \ln [1 + 0.5\,(e^1 - 1)] = 0.6201.$$

For other values of $m$, $\alpha'$ is computed and plotted as curve $OAB$ in Fig. 7.14 with $T_a/T$ as one parameter. For this value of $T_a/T(= 1.0)$, the $OABCO$ represents continuous conduction region and the other area $OABDO$ as the region of discontinuous conduction. In Fig. 7.14, for $m = 0.5$ and $T_a/T = 1$, point $A$ gives the limit of continuous conduction with $\alpha' = 0.6201$. For these values of $m (= 0.5)$ and $(T_a/T (= 1)$, if actual duty cycle $\alpha$ is equal to 0.7 (say) , then this point would lie in the region $OABCO$ ; this value of $\alpha$ would therefore give continuous conduction for the load current. Straight line $OB$ corresponds to $T_a/T = 0$. Actually, the chopper operation for the area between (Fig. 7.14)

(*i*) the straight line $OB$ and $BOD$ is not possible as $T_a/T$ can never be less than zero,

(*ii*) the straight line $OB$ and curve $OAB$ represents discontinuous current mode for $0 < \frac{T_a}{T} < 1$.

(*iii*) curve $OAB$ and $OCB$ represents continuous current mode for $\frac{T_a}{T} > 1$.

In case actual duty cycle $\alpha$ is equal to 0.6 (say), then as this point would lie in the region between the curve $OAB$ and straight line $OB$, the load current would be discontinuous. Curves like $OAB$ can also be drawn for other values of $T_a/T$. One such curve for $T_a/T = 5$ is shown in Fig. 7.14. For this value of $T_a/T = 5$, load current is discontinuous for an operating point between straight line $OB$ and curve marked $(T_a/T) = 5$ ; load current is continuous for an operating point between the curve marked $(T_a/T) = 5$ and $OCB$.

### 7.5.3. Computation of Extinction Time $t_x$

The expressions for load current obtained in Eqs. (7.10) to (7.16) apply only when load current is continuous. For $T_{on} < t < T$, the load current may become discontinuous due to large $T_{off}$. The time $t_x$, called *extinction time* and measured from the instant $t = 0$, Fig. 7.12 (*b*), can be calculated as under :

As $t_x$ is within the time limits of $T_{on} < t < T$, Eqs. (7.11) and (7.13) should only be used for computing $t_x$. The value of $I_{mx}$ needed in these equations should, however, be obtained from Eq. (7.12). Thus, in Eq. (7.12), $I_{mn} = 0$ at $t = t_x$, *i.e.* within $T_{on} < t < T$. This equation gives $I_{mx}$ as

$$I_{mx} = \frac{V_s - E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}\right) \qquad \text{...(7.20)}$$

Substitution of this value of $I_{mx}$ in Eq. (7.11) at $t' = t_x - T_{on}$ gives $i(t') = 0$ as

$$0 = -\frac{E}{R}\left[1 - e^{-(t_x - T_{on})/T_a}\right] + \frac{V_s - E}{R}\left[1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}\right] e^{-(t_x - T_{on})/T_a}$$

or

$$E[1 - e^{-(t_x - T_{on})/T_a}] e^{(t_x - T_{on})/T_a} = (V_s - E)(1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a})$$

or

$$e^{(t_x - T_{on})/T_a} - 1 = \frac{V_s - E}{E}\left(1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}\right)$$

This gives the extinction time $t_x$ as

$$t_x = T_{on} + T_\alpha \cdot \mathrm{In}\left[1 + \frac{V_s - E}{E}\left(1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}\right)\right] \qquad \text{...(7.21)}$$

The average output voltage for the discontinuous current mode as shown in Fig. 7.11 (*b*) is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{1}{T}\int_0^T v_0 \cdot dt = \frac{1}{T}\left[\int_0^{T_{on}} V_s \cdot dt + \int_{T_{on}}^{t_x} 0 \cdot dt + \int_{t_x}^{T} E\,dt\right]$$

$$= V_s \frac{T_{on}}{T} + \frac{E}{T}(T - t_x)$$

or

$$V_0 = \alpha\, V_s + \left(1 - \frac{t_x}{T}\right) E \text{ volts.} \qquad \text{...(7.22)}$$

### 7.5.4. Fourier Analysis of Output Voltage

For continuous load current, the load voltage waveform $v_0$ is as shown in Fig. 7.12 (*a*). This voltage waveform is periodic in nature and is independent of load circuit parameters. Voltage wave of Fig. 7.12 (*a*) can be resolved into Fourier series as

$$v_0 = V_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} v_n \qquad \text{...(7.23)}$$

where $v_n$ = value of $n$th harmonic voltage

$$= \frac{2\,V_s}{n\pi} \cdot \sin n\pi\,\alpha \cdot \sin(n\,\omega t + \theta_n) \qquad \text{...(7.24)}$$

$$V_0 = \alpha V_s,\ \alpha = T_{on}/T \text{ and } \theta_n = \tan^{-1}\frac{\sin 2\pi n\,\alpha}{1 - \cos 2\pi n\,\alpha}.$$

The average value of output voltage $V_0$ can be controlled by varying the duty cycle $\alpha$. The amplitude of the harmonic voltages, *i.e.* $2\,V_s/n\pi \sin n\pi\,\alpha$, depends on $n$, the order of harmonic and also on the duty cycle $\alpha$. The maximum value of $n$th harmonic occurs when $\sin n\pi\,\alpha = 1$ and its value is

$$\frac{2\,V_s}{\pi n} = \frac{0.6366 V_s}{n} \text{ volts} \qquad \text{...(7.25a)}$$

and its rms value is $\dfrac{2\,V_s}{\pi n\sqrt{2}} = \dfrac{0.45\,V_s}{n}$ volts ...(7.25*b*)

The harmonic current in the load is given by

$$i_n = \frac{v_n}{Z_n}$$

where $Z_n$ is the load impedance at harmonic frequency $nf\,Hz$ and is given by

$$Z_n = \sqrt{R^2 + (n\omega L)^2}\,.$$

For negligible load resistance $R$, $i_n = \dfrac{v_n}{n\omega L}$ or $i_n \propto \dfrac{V_s}{n^2}$. This shows that harmonic current decreases as $n$, the order of harmonic, increases. Another term used for knowing the harmonic content of a waveform, without calculating its harmonic components, is the ac ripple voltage $V_r$. It is defined as

$$V_r = \sqrt{V_{rms}^2 - V_0^2} \qquad \text{...(7.26)}$$

In the above equation, $V_{rms}$ and $V_0$ are respectively the rms and average values of the output voltage. It is seen from Example 7.1 that

$$V_{rms} = \sqrt{\alpha}\,V_s \quad \text{from part } (d)$$

and $$V_0 = \alpha\,V_s \quad \text{from part } (a)$$

$\therefore$ $$V_r = \sqrt{\alpha\,V_s^2 - \alpha^2 V_s^2} = V_s\sqrt{\alpha - \alpha^2} \qquad \text{...(7.27)}$$

Ripple factor, defined as the ratio of ac ripple voltage to average voltage is given by

$$\text{ripple factor} = \frac{V_r}{V_0}$$

or $$RF = V_s \cdot \frac{\sqrt{\alpha - \alpha^2}}{V_s \cdot \alpha} = \sqrt{\frac{1-\alpha}{\alpha}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\alpha} - 1} \qquad \text{...(7.28)}$$

**Example 7.6.** *(a) For an ideal type-A chopper feeding RLE load, show that the average input (or thyristor) current is given by*

$$I_{T\,AV} = \frac{\alpha(V_s - E)}{R} - \frac{L}{RT}(I_{mx} - I_{mn}).$$

*(b) For the chopper of part (a), derive an expression for the average current in the freewheeling diode for a continuous load current.*

*(c) From parts (a) and (b), prove that average value of load current $I_{av}$ is given by*

$$I_{av} = \frac{V_0 - E}{R}.$$

**Solution.** For type-A chopper, the output voltage waveform $v_0$ and the waveforms for load current $i_0$, input (or thyristor) current $i_T$ and freewheeling diode current $i_{fd}$ are as shown in Fig. 7.15.

(*a*) When chopper is on, the voltage equation for the chopper circuit of Fig. 7.6 (*a*) is

$$Ri_T + L\frac{dir}{dt} + E = V_s$$

or $$Ri_T \cdot dt + L\frac{di_T}{dt}\,dt = (V_s - E)\,dt.$$

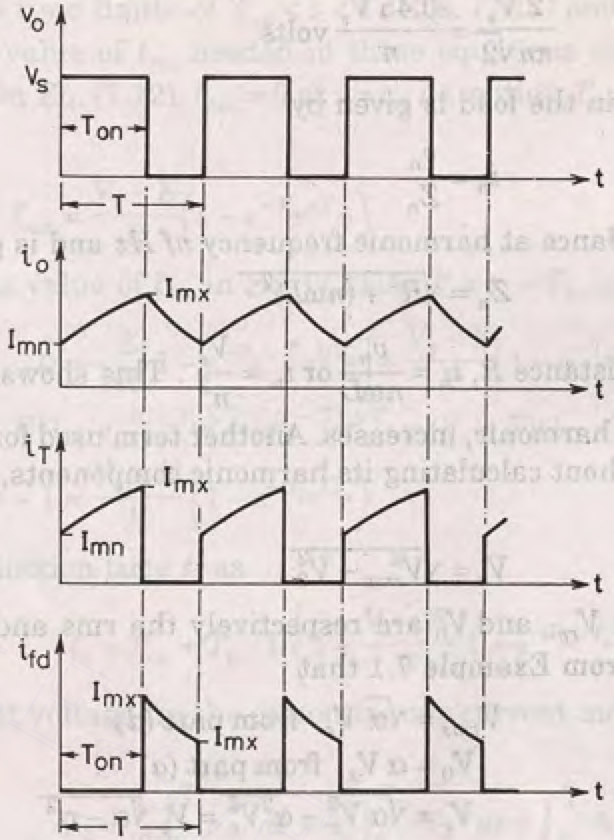


Fig. 7.15. Pertaining to Example 7.6.

Its average value, Fig. 7.15, is

$$R\cdot\frac{1}{T}\int_0^{T_{on}} i_T\cdot dt+\frac{1}{T}\int_0^{T_{on}} L\cdot\frac{di_T}{dt}\,dt=\frac{(V_s-E)}{T}\int_0^{T_{on}} dt$$

$$R\,I_{TAV}+\frac{1}{T}\int_{I_{mn}}^{I_{mx}} L\,di_T=(V_s-E)\,\frac{T_{on}}{T}$$

or
$$R\,I_{TAV}+\frac{L}{T}\,(I_{mx}-I_{mn})=(V_s-E)\,\alpha$$

or
$$I_{TAV}=\frac{\alpha\,(V_s-E)}{R}-\frac{L}{RT}\,(I_{mx}-I_{mn}) \qquad \text{...(7.29)}$$

(*b*) When the freewheeling diode is conducting, load voltage is zero. The voltage equation, when *FD* is conducting, is given by

$$R\,i_{fd}+L\,\frac{d\,i_{fd}}{dt}+E=0$$

Its average value, Fig. 7.15, is

$$R\cdot\frac{1}{T}\int_{T_{on}}^{T} i_{fd}\cdot dt+L\,\frac{1}{T}\int_{T_{on}}^{T}\frac{di_{fd}}{dt}\,dt+E\,\frac{1}{T}\int_{T_{on}}^{T} dt=0$$

or
$$R\cdot I_{fd}+\frac{L}{T}\int_{I_{mx}}^{I_{mn}} di_{fd}=-E\,\frac{T-T_{on}}{T} \quad \text{or} \quad R\,I_{fd}+\frac{L}{T}\,(I_{mn}-I_{mx})=-E(1-\alpha)$$

$$\therefore \qquad I_{fd}=\frac{L\,(I_{mx}-I_{mn})}{TR}-\frac{E\,(1-\alpha)}{R} \qquad \text{...(7.30)}$$

(c) Average load current over a complete cycle can be obtained by adding $I_{T\,AV}$ and $I_{fd}$ from Eqs. (7.29) and (7.30) respectively.

$$\therefore \quad I_{av} = \frac{\alpha(V_s - E)}{R} - \frac{L}{RT}(I_{mx} - I_{mn}) + \frac{L}{RT}(I_{mx} - I_{mn}) - \frac{E(1-\alpha)}{R}$$

$$= \frac{\alpha V_s - E}{R} = \frac{V_0 - E}{R} \cdot \text{This is the required result.}$$

**Example 7.7.** *For type-A chopper, feeding on RLE load, obtain maximum value of average current rating for the thyristor in case load current remains constant.*

**Solution.** For constant load current $I_0$, current waveform for thyristor current $i_T$ is as shown in Fig. 7.16. Here

$$I_0 = \frac{V_0 - E}{R}$$

The average thyristor current $I_T$ is given by

$$I_T = I_0 \frac{T_{on}}{T} = \frac{V_0 - E}{R}\,\alpha.$$

$$= \frac{\alpha V_s - E}{R} \cdot \alpha = \frac{\alpha^2 V_s - \alpha E}{R} \qquad \text{...(7.31)}$$

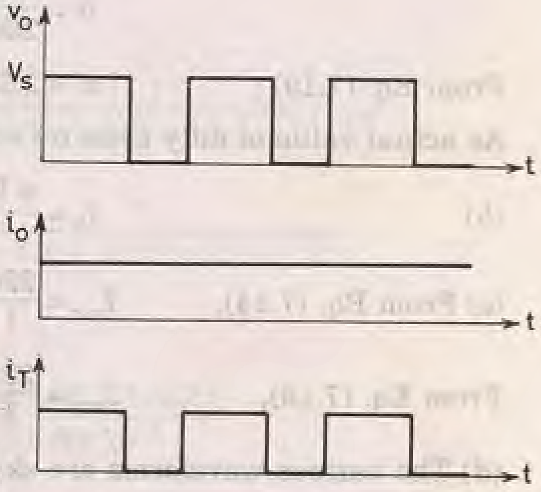


Fig. 7.16. Pertaining to Example 7.7

This will give a maximum value when

$$\frac{dI_T}{d\alpha} = \frac{2\alpha V_s - E}{R} = 0$$

and from this, $\alpha = \dfrac{E}{2V_s}$ ...(7.32)

Therefore maximum value of average thyristor current is obtained by substituting the value of α from Eq. (7.32) in Eq. (7.31).

$$\therefore \quad I_{T.mx} = \frac{E}{2V_s R} \cdot \left(\frac{E}{2V_s} \cdot V_s - E\right) = \frac{E^2}{4V_s R} \text{ Amps.}$$

**Example 7.8.** *For type-A chopper circuit, source voltage $V_s = 220$ V, chopping period $T = 2000$ μs, on-period = 600 μs, load circuit parameters : $R = 1\ \Omega$, $L = 5$ mH and $E = 24$ V.*

*(a) Find whether load current is continuous or not.*

*(b) Calculate the value of average output current.*

*(c) Compute the maximum and minimum values of steady state output current.*

*(d) Sketch the time variations of gate signal $i_g$, load voltage $v_0$, load current $i_0$, thyristor current $i_T$, freewheeling diode current $i_{fd}$ and voltage across thyristor $v_T$.*

*(e) Find rms values of the first, second and third harmonics of the load current.*

*(f) Compute the average value of supply current.*

*(g) Compute input power, the power absorbed by the load counter emf and the power loss in the resistor.*

*(h) Compute rms value of load current using the results of (b) and (g).*

*(i) Using results of (e), find the rms value of load current. Compare the result with that obtained in part (h).*

**Solution.** (*a*) $$T_a = \frac{L}{R} = \frac{5 \times 10^{-3}}{1} = 5 \times 10^{-3} \text{ sec}$$

$$\frac{T_a}{T} = \frac{5 \times 10^{-3}}{2000 \times 10^{-6}} = 2.5$$

$$\frac{T}{T_a} = 0.4 \; ; \; m = \frac{E}{V_s} = \frac{24}{220} = 0.11$$

$$\alpha = \frac{600}{2000} = 0.3, \; \frac{T_{on}}{T_a} = \frac{600}{5000} = 0.12.$$

From Eq. (7.19) ; $$\alpha' = 2.5 \ln \left[1 + 0.11 \left(e^{0.4} - 1\right)\right] = 0.13172$$

As actual value of duty cycle $\alpha$ ( = 0.3) is more than $\alpha'$, load current is continuous.

(*b*) $$I_0 = \frac{\alpha V_s - E}{R} = \frac{0.3 \times 220 - 24}{1} = 42 \text{ A}$$

(*c*) From Eq. (7.14), $$I_{mx} = \frac{220}{1}\left[\frac{1 - e^{-0.12}}{1 - e^{-0.4}}\right] - \frac{14}{1} = 51.46 \text{ A}$$

From Eq. (7.15), $$I_{mn} = \frac{220}{1}\left[\frac{e^{0.12} - 1}{e^{0.4} - 1}\right] - 24 = 33.031 \text{ A}$$

(*d*) The various waveforms are sketched in Fig. 7.17.

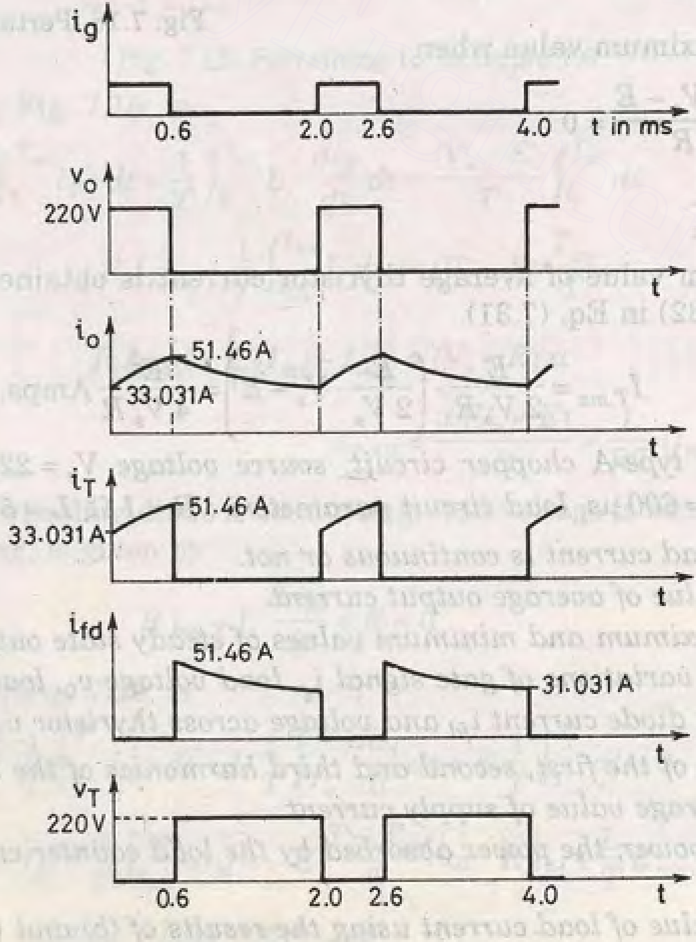


Fig. 7.17. Pertaining to Example 7.8.

(*e*) From Eq. (7.24), rms value of first harmonic voltage is

$$V_1 = \frac{2V_s}{\sqrt{2}\pi} \sin(\pi \times 0.3) = \frac{2 \times 220}{\sqrt{2}\,\pi} \sin 54° = 80.121 \text{ V}$$

Here chopping frequency, $f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{10^6}{2000} = 500$ Hz

$$\therefore \qquad Z_1 = \sqrt{R^2 + (\omega L)^2} = \sqrt{1^2 + (2\pi \times 500 \times 5 \times 10^{-3})^2} = 15.739762\,\Omega$$

$$\therefore \qquad I_1 = \frac{V_1}{Z_1} = \frac{80.121}{15.739762} = 5.0903 \text{ A}$$

Similarly,

$$I_2 = \frac{2 \times 220}{2 \cdot \sqrt{2} \cdot \pi} [\sin 108°] \frac{1}{\sqrt{1^2 + (2\pi \times 500 \times 2 \times 5 \times 10^{-3})^2}}$$
$$= 1.4983 \text{ A}$$

$$I_3 = \frac{2 \times 220}{3 \cdot \sqrt{2} \cdot \pi} [\sin 162°] \frac{1}{\sqrt{1^2 + (2\pi \times 1500 \times 5 \times 10^{-3})^2}}$$
$$= 0.21643 \text{ A}$$

(*f*) From Eq. (7.29), average supply current is

$$I_{TAV} = \frac{0.3\,(220 - 24)}{1} - \frac{5 \times 10^{-3}\,(51.46 - 33.031)}{1 \times 2000 \times 10^{-6}}$$
$$= 58.8 - 46.0725 = 12.7275 \text{ A}$$

(*g*) Input power $= V_s \times$ average supply current

$$= 220 \times 12.7275 = 2800.05 \text{ watts}$$

Power absorbed by load emf $= E \times$ average load current

$$= 24 \times 42 = 1008 \text{ watts}$$

Power loss in resistor $R = 2800.05 - 1008 = 1792.05$ W

(*h*)

$$I_{rms} = \sqrt{I_{av}^2 + I_1^2 + I_2^2 + I_3^2}$$
$$= \sqrt{42^2 + 5.0903^2 + 1.4983^2 + 0.21643^2} = 42.31 \text{ A}$$

(*i*) Power loss in resistor $= I^2 R = 1792.05$ W

$$\therefore \qquad I_{rms} = \sqrt{\frac{1792.05}{1}} = 42.333 \text{ A}$$

The results obtained in parts (*h*) and (*i*) are in complete agreement.

**Example 7.9.** *For type-A chopper, source voltage $V_s = 220$ V, chopping frequency $f = 500$ Hz, $T_{on} = 800\ \mu$s, $R = 1\,\Omega$, $L = 1$ mH and $E = 72$ V.*

*(a) Find whether load current is continuous or not.*

*(b) Calculate the values of average output voltage and average output current.*

*(c) Compute the maximum and minimum values of steady state output current.*

*(d) Sketch the time variations of gate signal $i_g$, load current $i_0$, load voltage $v_0$, thyristor current $i_T$, freewheeling diode current $i_{fd}$ and voltage across thyristor $v_T$.*

**Solution.** Here

$$T_a = \frac{L}{R} = 1 \times 10^{-3} \text{ sec},$$

$$T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{500} = 2000\ \mu\text{sec}$$

$$\frac{T_a}{T} = f\,T_a = 500 \times 10^{-3} = 0.5,\ \frac{T}{T_a} = \frac{1}{f\,T_a} = 2,$$

$$m = \frac{E}{V_s} = \frac{72}{220} = 0.327$$

$$\alpha = \frac{T_{on}}{T} = f \cdot T_{on} = 500 \times 800 \times 10^{-6} = 0.4,$$

$$\frac{T_{on}}{T_a} = 0.8$$

(*a*) From Eq. (7.19),

$$\alpha' = 0.5 \ln\left[1 + 0.327\,(e^{-2} - 1)\right] = 0.564$$

As α is less than α′, load current is discontinuous

(*b*) From Eq. (7.21),

$$t_x = 800 \times 10^{-6} + 1 \times 10^{-3} \ln\left[1 + \frac{220 - 72}{72}\,(1 - e^{-0.8})\right]$$

$$= 1.55703 \times 10^{-3} \text{ sec}$$

From Eq. (7.22),

$$V_0 = 0.4 \times 220 + \left(\frac{1 - 1.55703 \times 10^{-3}}{2 \times 10^{-3}}\right) \cdot 72$$

$$= 103.95 \text{ volts.}$$

$$I_0 = \frac{103.75 - 72}{1} = 31.95 \text{ A.}$$

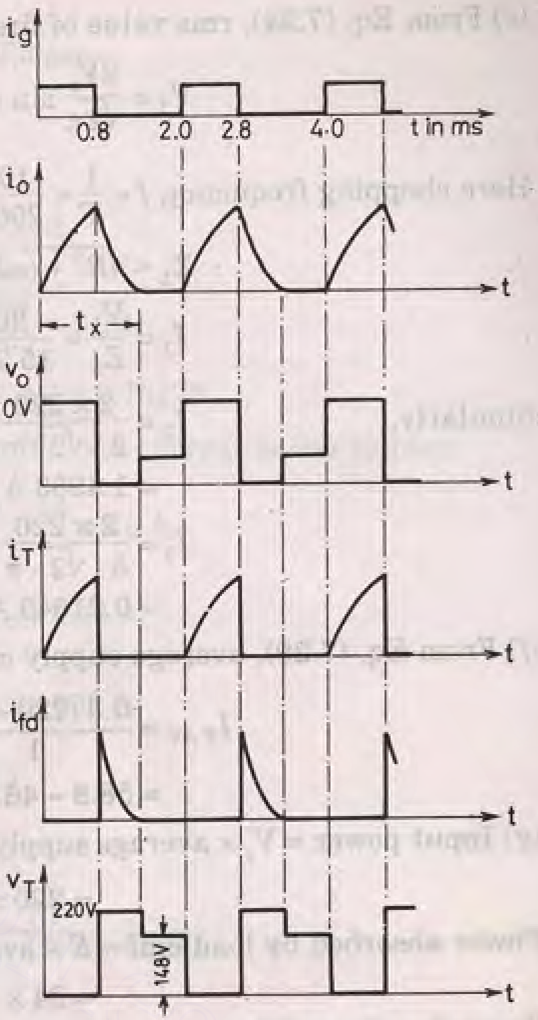


Fig. 7.18. Pertaining to Example 7.9.

(*c*) As the load current is discontinuous, $I_{mn} = 0$. The maximum value of current from Eq. (7.20) is

$$I_{mx} = \frac{220 - 72}{1}\,(1 - e^{-0.8}) = 81.5 \text{ A}$$

(*d*) The time variations of various waveforms are sketched in Fig. 7.18.

**Example 7.10.** *An RLE load is operating in a chopper circuit from a 500-volts dc source. For the load, L = 0.06 H and R = 0. For a duty cycle of 0.2, find the chopping frequency to limit the amplitude of load current excursion to 10 A.*

**Solution.** The average output, or load, voltage is given by

$$V_0 = \alpha V_s$$

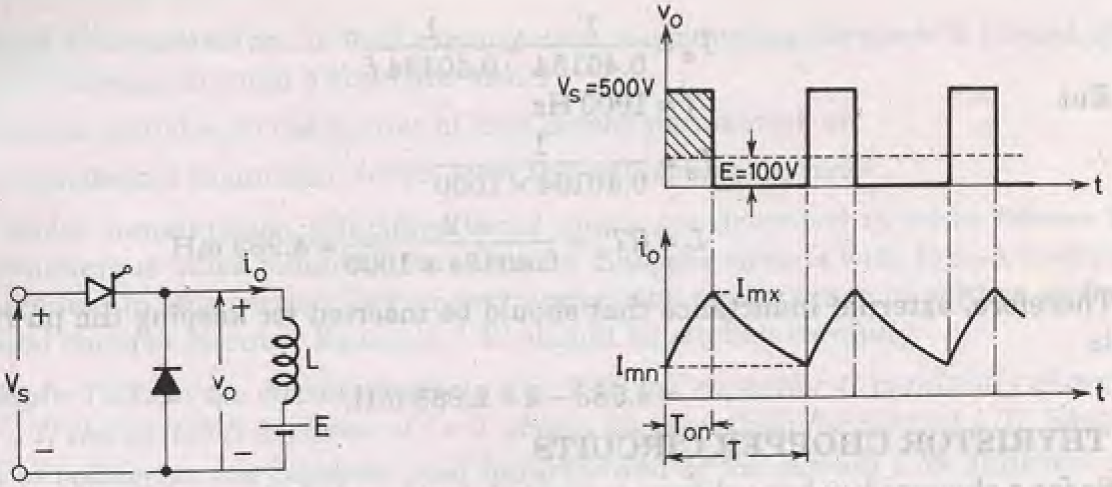
As the average value of voltage drop across $L$ is zero,

$$E = V_0 = \alpha V_s = 0.2 \times 500 = 100 \text{ Volts.}$$

During $T_{on}$, the difference in source voltage $V_s$ and load emf $E$, *i.e.*, $(V_s - E)$ appears across inductance $L$ as shown in Fig. 7.19.

∴ During $T_{on}$, volt-time area applied to inductance

$$= (500 - 100)\,T_{on} = 400\,T_{on} \text{ Volt–sec}$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 7.19. Pertaining to Example 7.10.

Also, during $T_{on}$, the current through $L$ rises from $I_{mn}$ to $I_{mx}$. From this, volt-time area across $L$ during this current change is given by

$$\int_0^{T_{on}} v_L \cdot dt = \int_0^{T_{on}} L\frac{di}{dt}dt = \int_{I_{mn}}^{I_{mx}} L \cdot di = (I_{mx} - I_{mn}) = L \cdot \Delta I$$

These two volt-time areas during $T_{on}$ must be equal.

$\therefore \quad 400\ T_{on} = L \cdot \Delta I$

or $\quad T_{on} = \dfrac{0.06 \times 10}{400} = 1.5$ msec

Thus, chopping frequency, $f = \dfrac{1}{T} = \dfrac{\alpha}{T_{on}} = \dfrac{0.2}{1.5 \times 10^{-3}} = 133.33$ Hz.

**Example 7.11.** *A series motor used for a rapid transit system is fed through a dc chopper. The series motor has total circuit resistance of 2 Ω and inductance of 2 mH. What external inductance should be inserted in series with the armature circuit in order to limit the per unit ripple in armature current to 10% for a duty cycle ratio of 0.5. The chopping frequency is 1 kHz.*

**Solution.** From Eq. (7.18), per unit ripple in current is given by

$$\frac{I_{mx} - I_{mn}}{V_s/R} = \left[\frac{(1 - e^{-\alpha T/T_a})(1 - e^{-(1-\alpha)T/T_a})}{1 - e^{-T/T_a}}\right]$$

Let $\dfrac{T}{T_a} = x$. Here $\alpha = 0.5$ and *pu* ripple $= \dfrac{10}{100} = 0.1$. Substitution of these in the above expression gives

$$0.1 = \frac{(1 - e^{-0.5x})(1 - e^{-0.5x})}{1 - e^{-x}} = \frac{(1 - e^{-0.5x})(1 - e^{-0.5x})}{(1 - e^{-0.5x})(1 + e^{-0.5x})} = \frac{1 - e^{-0.5x}}{1 + e^{-0.5x}}$$

or $\quad 0.1 = \dfrac{1 - y}{1 + y}$ where $y = e^{-0.5x}$

or $\quad y = \dfrac{0.9}{1.10} = e^{-0.5x}$

or $\quad e^{0.5x} = \dfrac{1.10}{0.9} = 1.22222$ or $x = \dfrac{T}{T_a} = 0.40134$

$$\therefore \qquad T_a = \frac{T}{0.40134} = \frac{1}{0.40134 f}$$

But $f = 1000$ Hz

$$\therefore \qquad T_a = \frac{1}{0.40134 \times 1000}$$

or

$$L = RT_a = \frac{2}{0.40134 \times 1000} = 4.983 \text{ mH}$$

Therefore, external inductance that should be inserted for keeping the pu ripple within limits

$$= 4.983 - 2 = 2.983 \text{ mH.}$$

## 7.6. THYRISTOR CHOPPER CIRCUITS

So far a chopper has been shown as a switch inside a dotted rectangle. Actually, a chopper consists of main power semiconductor device together with their turn-on and turn-off mechanisms. In low-power chopper circuits ; power transistors, GTOs etc. are being used widely. In high-power levels, however, thyristors are in common use. The object of this section is to study the thyristor chopper circuits along with their commutation circuitry.

The process of opening, or turning-off, a conducting thyristor is called commutation. In dc choppers, it is essential to provide a separate commutation circuitry to commutate the main power SCR. It may be recalled that a conducting thyristor can be turned off by reducing its anode current below holding current value and then applying a reverse voltage across the device to enable it to regain its forward blocking capability. There are several ways of turning-off of a thyristor. All these methods differ from one another in the manner in which commutation is achieved. In dc choppers, commutation circuitry has passed through numerous innovations. All these commutation circuits can, however, be broadly classified into two groups as under :

(*a*) **Forced Commutation.** In forced commutation, external elements $L$ and $C$ which do not carry the load current continuously, are used to turn-off a conducting thyristor. Forced commutation can be achieved in the following two ways :

(*i*) **Voltage commutation**. In this scheme, a conducting thyristor is commutated by the application of a pulse of large reverse voltage. This reverse voltage is usually applied by switching a previously charged capacitor. The sudden application of reverse voltage across the conducting thyristor reduces the anode current to zero rapidly. Then the presence of reverse voltage across the SCR aids in the completion of its turn-off process (*i.e.* aids in gaining the forward blocking capability of SCR).

(*ii*) **Current Commutation**. In this scheme, an external pulse of current greater than the load current is passed in the reversed direction through the conducting SCR. When the current pulse attains a value equal to the load current, net pulse current through thyristor becomes zero and the device is turned off. The current pulse is usually generated by an initially charged capacitor.

An important feature of current commutation is the connection of a diode in antiparallel with the main thyristor so that voltage drop across the diode reverse biases the main SCR. Since this voltage drop is of the order of 1 volt, the commutation time in current commutation is more as compared to that in voltage commutation.

In both voltage and current commutation schemes, commutation is initiated by gating an auxiliary SCR.

(*b*) **Load Commutation.** In load commutation, a conducting thyristor is turned off when load current flowing through a thyristor either

(*i*) becomes zero due to the nature of load circuit parameters or

(*ii*) is transferred to another device from the conducting thyristor.

Only three commutation principles listed above are described in what follows though there are numerous other commutation schemes. Chopper circuits with type-A configuration are only studied in this section. For understanding the performance of voltage and current commutated chopper circuits, Example 7.12 should be studied carefully.

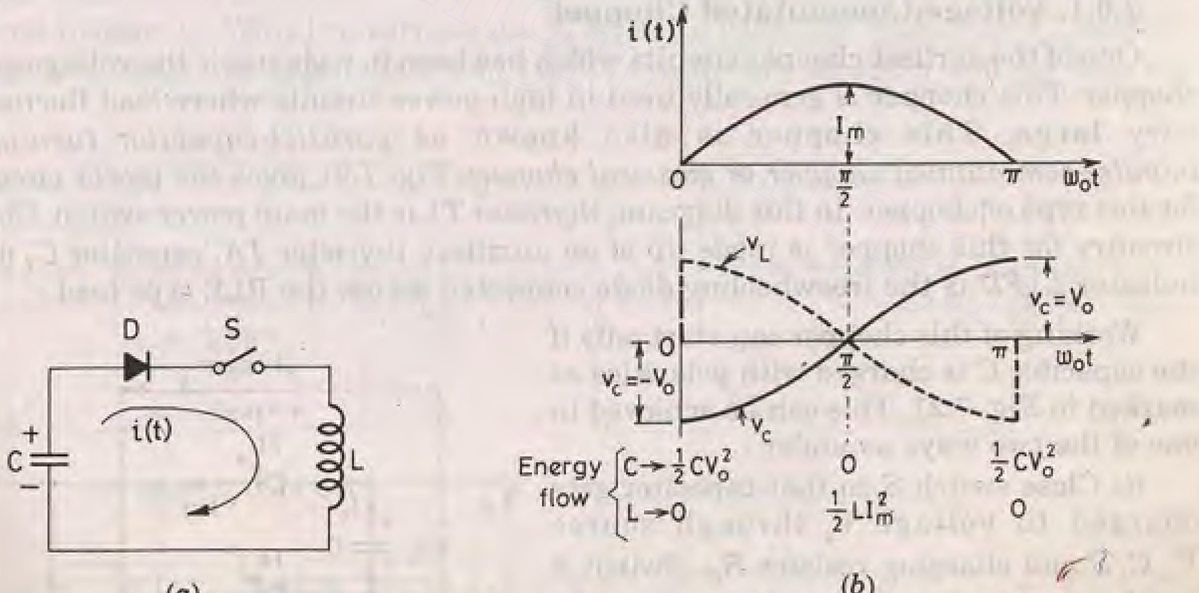
**Example 7.12.** *In the circuit shown in Fig. 7.20 (a), capacitor C is initially charged to a voltage* $V_0$. *If the switch S is closed at t = 0, obtain an expression for current i (t). Sketch time variation of voltage across capacitor and inductor and of the current i (t). Indicate also the flow of energy handled by L and C.*

*In case L = 1.6 mH and C = 4μF, find the time for which current i (t) flows in the circuit of Fig. 7.20 (a).*

**Solution.** When the switch $S$ is closed, KVL for the circuit is

$$L\frac{di(t)}{dt}+\frac{1}{C}\int i(t)\,dt=0$$

Its Laplace transform is $$sLI(s)+\frac{1}{C}\left[\frac{I(s)}{s}-\frac{CV_0}{s}\right]=0$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 7.20 (*a*) Circuit for Example 7.12 and (*b*) time variations of $i(t)$, $v_c$ and $v_L$

Here negative sign before $CV_0/s$ is used because current $i$ (*t*) leaves the positive terminal of $C$ and enter its negative terminal when switch $S$ is closed.

$$\therefore \qquad I(s)=\frac{V_0}{L}\,\frac{1}{s^2+1/LC}=\frac{V_o}{L}\cdot\frac{1/\sqrt{LC}}{1/\sqrt{LC}\,[s^2+(1/\sqrt{LC})^2]}$$

or $$I(s)=\frac{V_0}{\omega_0 L}\,\frac{\omega_0}{[s^2+\omega_0^2]}\quad\text{where }\omega_0=\frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$

Its Laplace inverse gives $i(t) = \dfrac{V_0}{\omega_0 L} \sin \omega_0 t$ ...(7.33)

Now $$v_c = \frac{1}{C}\int i(t)\,dt = \frac{1}{C}\cdot\frac{V_0}{\omega_0 L}\int \sin \omega_0 t \cdot dt$$

$$= -\frac{V_0}{\omega_0^2 LC}\cos \omega_0 t = -V_0 \cos \omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(7.34)}$$

Here $\omega_0^2 LC = 1$

Also $$v_L = L\frac{di(t)}{dt} = L\cdot\frac{V_0}{\omega_0 L}(\cos \omega_0 t)\cdot\omega_0 = V_0 \cos \omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(7.35)}$$

The time variation of $i(t)$, $v_c$ and $v_L$ obtained from Eqs. (7.33) to (7.35) is shown in Fig. 7.20 (*b*). When $i(t) = I_m$, $v_c = v_L = 0$. When $i(t)$ becomes zero at $\omega_0 t = \pi$, further conduction stops because diode can't conduct in the reversed direction. Therefore, at $\omega_0 t = \pi$, capacitor is charged to a voltage $V_0$ but with reversed polarity.

When switch $S$ is closed, voltage across $L$ at once becomes $V_0$, its value is zero at $\omega_0 t = \pi/2$ and $-V_0$ at $\omega_0 t = \pi$. As current $i(t)$ reduces to zero at $\omega_0 t = \pi$, $v_L$ finally reduces to zero as shown.

The flow of energy in $C$ and $L$ is also shown in Fig. 7.20 (*b*). At $\omega_0 t = 0$, capacitor has stored energy equal to $W_c = \frac{1}{2}CV_0^2$, at $\omega_0 t = \pi/2$, $W_c = 0$ and at $\omega_0 t = \pi$, $W_c = \frac{1}{2}CV_0^2$ again. The flow of energy in $L$ is also indicated in Fig. 7.20 (*b*).

### 7.6.1. Voltage-Commutated Chopper

One of the earliest chopper circuits which has been in wide use is the voltage-commutated chopper. This chopper is generally used in high-power circuits where load fluctuation is not very large. This chopper is also known as *parallel-capacitor turn-off chopper, impulse-commutated chopper* or *classical chopper*. Fig. 7.21 gives the power circuit diagram for this type of chopper. In this diagram, thyristor T1 is the main power switch. Commutation circuitry for this chopper is made up of an auxiliary thyristor $TA$, capacitor $C$, diode $D$ and inductor $L$. $FD$ is the freewheeling diode connected across the RLE type load.

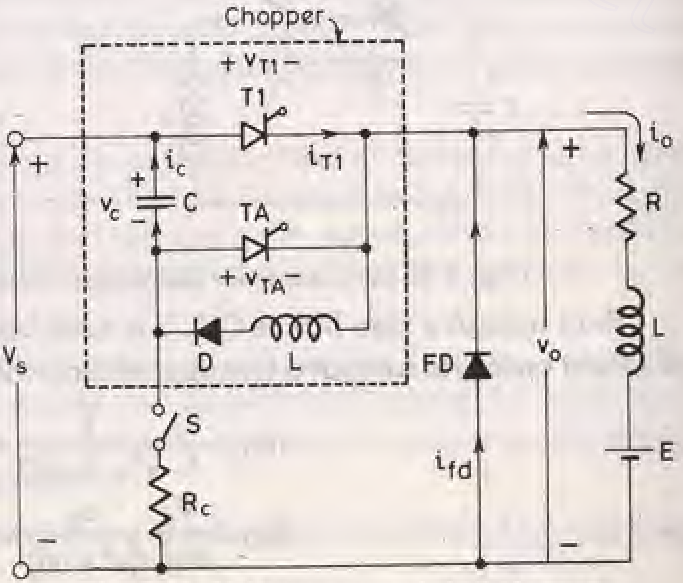


Fig. 7.21. Voltage-commutated chopper.

Working of this chopper can start only if the capacitor $C$ is charged with polarities as marked in Fig. 7.21. This can be achieved in one of the two ways as under :

(*i*) Close switch $S$ so that capacitor gets charged to voltage $V_s$ through source $V_s$, $C$, $S$ and charging resistor $R_C$. Switch $S$ is then opened.

(*ii*) Auxiliary thyristor TA is triggered so that $C$ gets charged through source $V_s$, $C$, TA and the load. The charging current through capacitor $C$ decays and as it reaches zero, $v_c = V_s$ and TA is turned off.

With capacitor $C$ charged with the polarities as shown in Fig. 7.21, the chopper circuit is ready for operation. The current

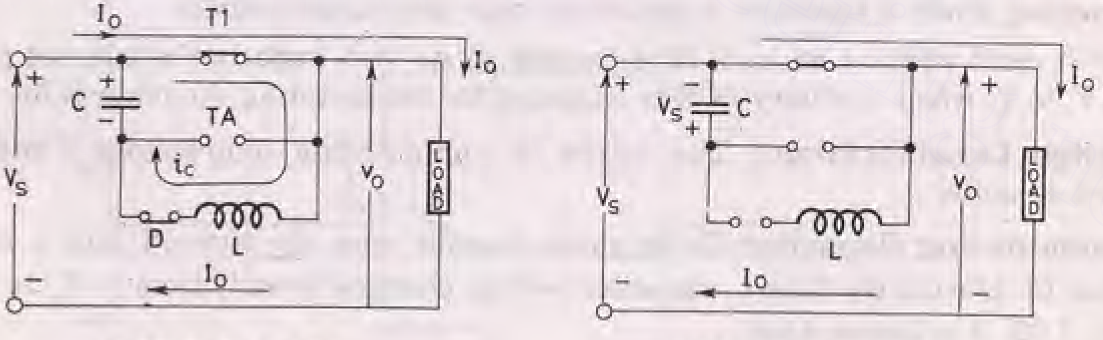
$i_c$, $i_{T1}$, $i_{fd}$ and $i_0$ are taken as positive in the arrow directions marked. Similarly, the voltages $v_c$, $v_{T1}$, $v_{TA}$ and $v_0$ across $C$, T1, TA and load are taken as positive with the polarities marked.

Simplifying assumptions for this chopper are (*i*) load current is constant and (*ii*) thyristors and diodes are ideal elements. The chopper operation, for convenience, is divided into certain modes and is explained as under :

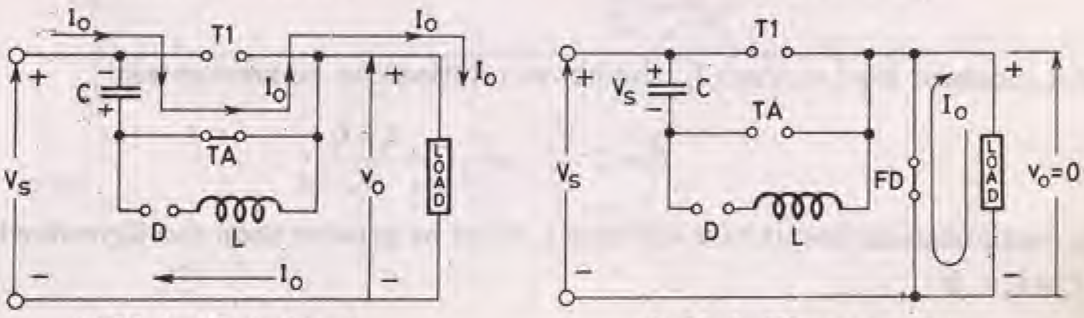
**Mode I**. The main thyristor is triggered at $t = 0$ and RLE load gets connected across source $V_s$ so that load voltage $v_0 = V_s$. During this mode, there are two current paths as shown in Fig. 7.22 (*a*). Load current $I_0$ constitute one path and commutation current $i_c$ the other path. Load current $I_0$ flows through source $V_s$, main thyristor T1 and load whereas the current $i_c$ flows through the oscillatory circuit formed by $C, T_1, L$ and $D$. The capacitor (or commutation) current first rises from zero to a maximum value when voltage across $C$ is zero at $t = t_1/2$. As $i_c$ decreases to zero, capacitor is charged to voltage $(-V_s)$ as shown at $t = t_1$ in Fig. 7.23, see Example 7.12. The capacitor current changes sinusoidally whereas the capacitor voltage cosinusoidally from $t = 0$ to $t = t_1$. This voltage is held constant at $(-V_s)$ by diode $D$. Voltage across TA is $(-V_s)$ at $t = 0$, zero at $t_1/2$ and $V_s$ at $t_1$, this variation is shown as cosine wave in Fig. 7.23. The thyristor current $i_{T1}$ has a peak at $t_1/2$, because $i_{T1} = i_C + I_0$ between $t = 0$ and $t = t_1$. At the end of mode *I*, *i.e.* at $t_1$ ; $i_C = 0$, $i_{T1} = I_0$, $v_c = -V_s$, $v_{TA} = V_s$, $v_0 = V_s$ as shown in Fig. 7.23.

**Mode II**. The conditions existing at $t_1$ continue during mode II. In other words, for $t_1 \le t < t_2$, $i_c = 0$, $i_{T1} = I_0$, $v_c = V_s$, $v_{TA} = V_s$, $v_0 = V_s$, $i_D = 0$ as shown. Note that during this mode, only main SCR T1 is conducting.

**Mode III**. When main thyristor T1 is to be turned off, auxiliary thyristor TA is triggered at the desired instant $t_2$. With the turning on of TA at $t_2$, capacitor voltage $(-V_s)$ appears across T1, it is therefore reverse biased and turned off. As the capacitor voltage does the



(*a*) Mode I, $0 < t < t_1$ (*b*) Mode II, $t_1 \le t \le t_2$



(c) Mode III, $t_2 \le t < t_3$ (*b*) Mode IV, $t_3 \le t < T$

Fig. 7.22. Different modes of voltage-commutated chopper.

required job of commutating the main thyristor T1, it is called voltage commutated chopper. Current $i_{T1}$ becomes zero at $t_2$. After T1 is turned off, capacitor $C$ and auxiliary SCR TA provided the path for load current $I_0$ through $V_s$, $C$, TA and the load, see Fig. 7.22 (*c*). The load voltage is the sum of source voltage and the voltage across capacitor. Therefore, at instant $t_2$, load voltage is $v_0 = V_s + V_s = 2V_s$ and it decreases linearly as the voltage across capacitor decreases. During this mode, $v_c = v_{T1}$, because capacitor is directly connected across $T_1$ through TA. As the capacitor discharges through the load, $v_c$ and $v_{T1}$ change from $(-V_s)$ to zero at $(t_2 + t_c)$. Load voltage $v_0$ changes from $2V_s$ at $t_2$ to $V_s$ at $(t_2 + t_c)$. After $(t_2 + t_c)$, $v_c$ and $v_{T1}$ start rising from zero towards $V_s$ whereas $v_0$ starts falling towards zero. For mode III, $t_2 \le t \le t_3$. Note that $v_c$ and $v_{T1}$ change linearly* from $(-V_s)$ at $t_2$ to $V_s$ at $t_3$, because load current $I_0$ is assumed constant. Similarly $v_0$ changes linearly from $2V_s$ at $t_2$ to zero at $t_3$.

**Mode IV.** For this mode, $t_3 \le t < T$. At $t_3$, $v_c = v_{T1} = V_s$, $v_0 = 0$, $i_c$ or $i_{TA}$ becomes zero and TA is therefore turned off naturally. As capacitor is slightly overcharged at $t_3$, freewheeling diode FD gets forward biased. The load current after $t_3$ freewheels through the load and FD, see Fig. 7.22 (*d*). Note that during freewheeling period from $t_3$ to $T$, $v_{TA}$ is slightly negative as $C$ is somewhat overcharged. During this mode, $i_c = 0$, $i_{T1} = 0$, $i_{fd} = I_0$, $v_{T1} = V_s$, $v_c = V_s + \Delta V$, $v_{TA} = -\Delta V$, $v_0 = 0$, $i_{TA} = 0$.

At $t = T$, the main thyristor T1 is triggered and the cycle as described from $t = 0$ to $t = T$ repeats.

Voltage commutated chopper is simple, it has therefore been used extensively. It, however, suffers from the following disadvantages.

(*i*) A starting circuit is required.

(*ii*) Load voltage at once rises to $2V_s$ at the instant commutation of main SCR is initiated. Freewheeling diode is therefore subjected to twice the supply voltage.

(*iii*) It can't work at no load. It is because at no load, capacitor would not get charged from $-V_s$ to $V_s$ when auxiliary SCR is triggered for commutating the main SCR.

**Design Considerations.** The values of commutating components $C$ and $L$ can be obtained as under :

**Commutating Capacitor C.** Its value depends upon the turn-off time $t_c$ of the main thyristor T1. During the time $t_c$, capacitor voltage changes linearly from $(-V_s)$ to zero, mode III, Fig. 7.23. It is known that

$$i_c = C\frac{dv}{dt}$$

For a constant load current $I_0$, the above relation can be written as

$$I_c = C\frac{V_s}{t_c} \quad \text{or} \quad C = \frac{t_c \cdot I_0}{V_s}$$

The commutation circuit turn-off time $t_c$ must be greater than the thyristor turn-off time $t_q$. Let $t_c = t_q + \Delta t$.

---

*In the relation $i = C(dv/dt)$, if $i$ is constant, $C$ is already constant, then $dv/dt$ must be constant.

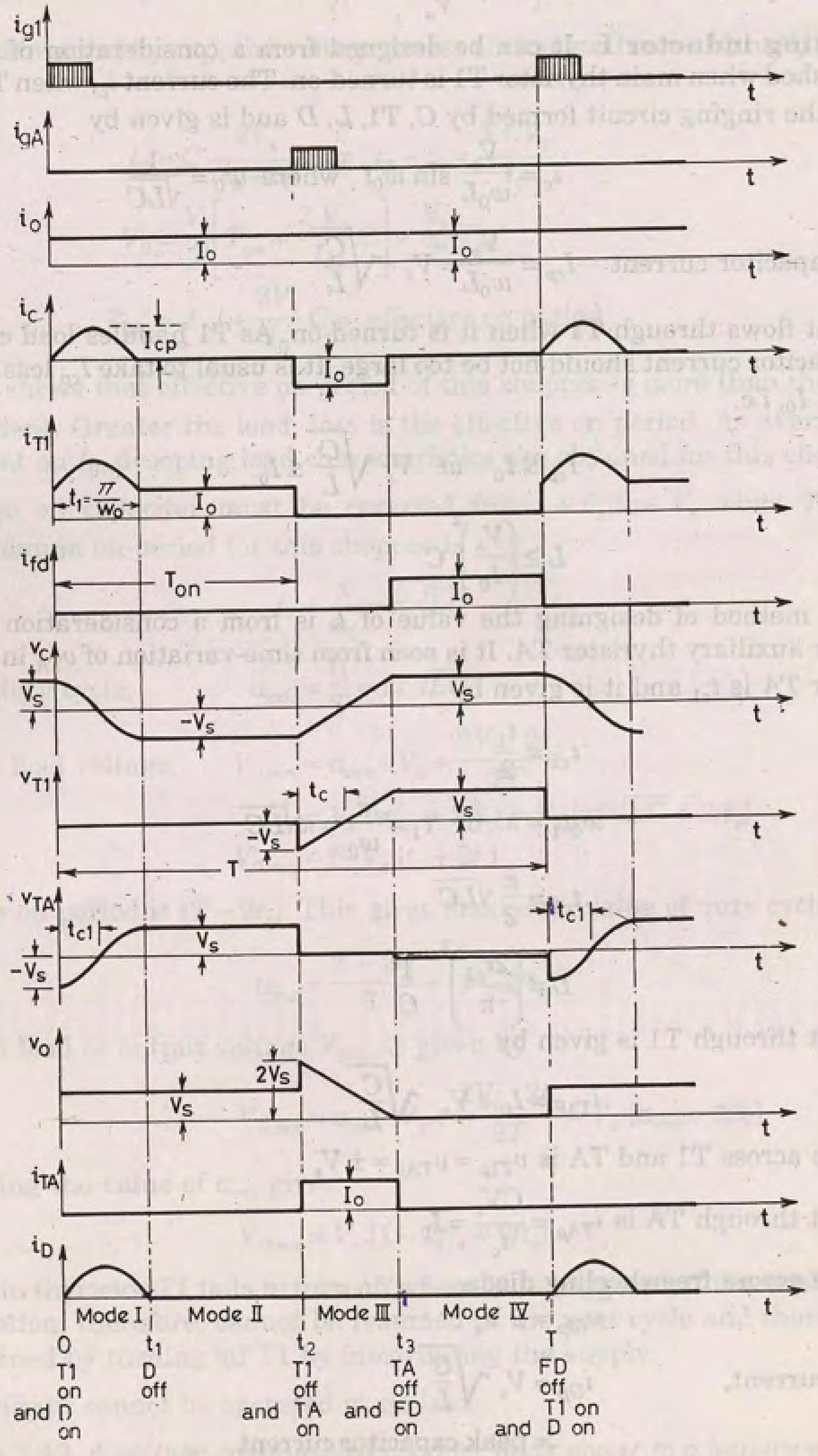


Fig. 7.23. Current and voltage waveforms for voltage-commutated chopper.

$$\therefore \qquad C = \frac{(t_q + \Delta t)\cdot I_0}{V_s} \qquad \text{...(7.36)}$$

**Commutating inductor L.** It can be designed from a consideration of the oscillatory current established when main thyristor T1 is turned-on. The current $i_c$, when T1 is triggered, flows through the ringing circuit formed by $C$, T1, $L$, $D$ and is given by

$$i_c = \frac{V_s}{w_0 L}\sin w_0 t \quad \text{where } w_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}\,.$$

The peak capacitor current $I_{cp} = \dfrac{V_s}{w_0 L} = V_s \cdot \sqrt{\dfrac{C}{L}}$

This current flows through T1 when it is turned-on. As T1 handles load current as well as $I_{cp}$, peak capacitor current should not be too large. It is usual to take $I_{cp}$ less than, or equal to, load current $I_0$, *i.e.*

$$I_{cp} \le I_0 \quad \text{or} \quad V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \le I_0$$

or

$$L \ge \left(\frac{V_s}{I_0}\right)^2 C \qquad \text{...(7.37)}$$

The second method of designing the value of $L$ is from a consideration of the circuit turn-off time for auxiliary thyristor $TA$. It is seen from time-variation of $v_{TA}$ in Fig. 7.23 that turn-off time for $TA$ is $t_{c1}$ and it is given by

$$t_{c1} = \frac{t_1}{2}$$

But

$$w_0 t_1 = \pi \quad \text{or} \quad t_1 = \frac{\pi}{w_0} = \pi\sqrt{LC}$$

$$\therefore \qquad t_{c1} = \frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{LC} \qquad \text{...(7.38)}$$

or

$$L = \left(\frac{2t_{c1}}{\pi}\right)^2 \cdot \frac{1}{C} \qquad \text{...(7.39)}$$

Peak current through T1 is given by

$$i_{T1P} = I_0 + V_s \cdot \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \qquad \text{...(7.40)}$$

Peak voltage across T1 and TA is $v_{T1p} = v_{TAp} = \pm V_s$ ...(7.41

Peak current through TA is $i_{TAp} = \dfrac{CV_s}{t_c} = I_0$ ...(7.42)

Peak voltage across freewheeling diode,

$$v_{fdp} = 2\,V_s \qquad \text{...(7.43)}$$

Peak diode current, $i_{Dp} = V_s\sqrt{\dfrac{C}{L}}$ ...(7.44)

= peak capacitor current.

**Important features of voltage-commutated chopper.** (*i*) Fig. 7.23 reveals that load voltage is $V_s$ from $t = 0$ to $t_2$ and it varies from $2V_s$ at $t_2$ to zero at $t_3$. Therefore average load voltage $V_0$ is given by

$$V_0 = \frac{V_s \cdot t_2 + 2V_s(t_3 - t_2)(1/2)}{T} = \frac{V_s}{T}[T_{on} + (t_3 - t_2)] \qquad (\text{As } t_2 = T_{on})$$

During the interval $(t_3 - t_2)$, the voltage across $C$ changes from $-V_s$ to $V_s$, *i.e.* total change is $2\,V_s$.

$$\therefore \quad I_0 = C\frac{2V_s}{(t_3 - t_2)} \quad \text{or} \quad t_3 - t_2 = \frac{2\,CV_s}{I_0}$$

$$\therefore \quad V_0 = \frac{V_s}{T}\left[T_{on} + \frac{2\,V_s}{I_0}C\right] = \frac{V_s}{T}T_{on}' \qquad \text{...(7.45)}$$

where $$T_{on}' = T_{on} + \frac{2V_s}{I_0}C = \text{effective on period} \qquad \text{...(7.45a)}$$

Eq. (7.45) shows that effective on period of this chopper is more than the period $T_{on}$ and is load dependent. Greater the load, less is the effective on period. As average load voltage $V_0$ is dependent on $I_0$, drooping load characteristics are obtained for this chopper.

(*ii*) Charge on capacitor must be reversed from $+V_s$ to $-V_s$ when T1 is turned on Therefore minimum on-period for this chopper is

$$t_1 = \frac{\pi}{\omega_0} = \pi\sqrt{LC}$$

Minimm duty cycle, $$\alpha_{mn} = \frac{t_1}{T} = \pi f\sqrt{LC} \qquad \text{...(7.46a)}$$

Minimum load voltage, $$V_{0.mn} = \alpha_{mn} \cdot V_s + \frac{2V_s \cdot 2t_c}{2T}$$

$$= V_s\,(\alpha_{mn} + 2ft_c) = V_s\,[\pi f\sqrt{LC} + 2ft_c]$$

$$\therefore \quad V_{0.mn} = f \cdot V_s\,[t_1 + 2t_c] \qquad \text{...(7.46b}$$

Maximum on period is $(T - 2t_c)$. This gives maximum value of duty cycle as

$$\alpha_{mx} = \frac{T - 2t_c}{T} = (1 - 2ft_c) \qquad \text{...(7.47}$$

Maximum load or output voltage $V_{0mx}$ is given by

$$V_{0.mx} = \alpha_{mx} \cdot V_s + \frac{2V_s \cdot 2t_c}{2T} = V_s\,[\alpha_{mx} + 2ft_c]$$

Substituting the value of $\alpha_{mx}$ gives

$$V_{0.mx} = V_s\,[1 - 2ft_c + 2ft_c] = V_s$$

(*iii*) If main thyristor T1 fails to turn off when *TA* is triggered, *C* is completely discharge The commutation, therefore, cannot be resumed in the next cycle and therefore control lo must be regained by turning off T1 by interrupting the supply.

(*iv*) The circuit cannot be operated at no load.

**Example 7.13.** *A voltage-commutated chopper feeds power to a battery-power electric c The battery voltage is 60 V, starting current is 60 A and thyristor turn-off time is 20 μs Calculate the values of the commutating capacitor C and the commutating inductor L.*

**Solution.** Let circuit turn-off time $t_c = t_q + \Delta t = 20 + 20 = 40$ μs for reliable turn-off of T1 and TA. In Eqs. (7.36) and (7.37), $I_0$ is the maximum load current that the commutation circuitry must be able to commutate.

∴ From Eq. (7.36), $$C = \frac{40 \times 60 \times 10^{-6}}{60} = 40\ \mu\text{F}$$

From Eq. (7.37), $$L \geq \left(\frac{60}{60}\right)^2 \times 40 \times 10^{-6} = 40\ \mu\text{H}$$

From Eq. (7.39), $$L = \left(\frac{2 \times 40 \times 10^{-6}}{\pi}\right)^2 \times \frac{1}{40 \times 10^{-6}} = 16.21\ \mu\text{H}$$

As per Eq. (7.37), value of $L$ should be equal to, or more than 40 μH, but Eq. (7.39) gives $L = 16.21$ μH. Low value of $L$ increases the peak value of capacitor current, see Eq. (7.44). So higher value of $L = 40$ μH should be chosen.

**Example 7.14.** *A voltage commutated chopper is shown in Fig. 7.24. With the main thyristor T1 conducting, the capacitor C is charged to a source voltage $V_s$ with the polarities as marked.*

*Now, after the auxiliary thyristor TA is turned on, the main SCR remains reverse biased for 100 microseconds. Calculate the value of the commutating component C.*

*Find also the value of commutating component L in case maximum permissible current through the main SCR is*

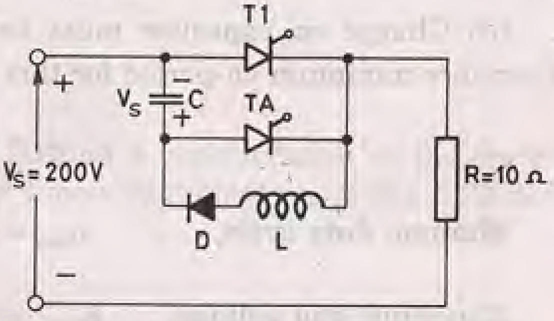


Fig. 7.24. Pertaining to Example 7.14.

*(a) 2.5 times the load current and*
*(b) 1.5 times the peak diode current.*

**Solution.** When auxiliary SCR *TA* is turned on, capacitor voltage $V_s$ at once appears across main thyristor *TI* and it is therefore turned off. After it, the load current completes its path through source $V_s$, *C*, *TA* and the load. The voltage equation for this circuit is

$$iR + \frac{1}{C}\int i\,dt = V_s \quad \text{or} \quad R\frac{dq}{dt} + \frac{q}{C} = V_s \qquad \ldots(i)$$

Laplace transform of above equation gives

$$R[s\,Q(s) + CV_s] + \frac{1}{C}\,Q(s) = \frac{V_s}{s}$$

After *TA* is turned on, capacitor voltage aids the current or capacitor *C* begins to discharge. Therefore the above equation in *s* domain becomes

$$R[s\,Q(s) + CV_s] + \frac{1}{C}\,Q(s) = \frac{V_s}{s} \quad \text{But} \quad Q(s) = C \cdot V_c(s)$$

$$\therefore \quad R[s \cdot CV_c(s) + CV_s] + V_c(s) = \frac{V_s}{s} \quad \text{or} \quad V_c(s)[RsC + 1] = \frac{V_s}{s} - RCV_s$$

or $$V_c(s) = \frac{V_s}{RsC\left(s + \dfrac{1}{RC}\right)} - \frac{V_s}{s + \dfrac{1}{RC}}$$

Partial fraction expansion of the first term of above expression gives

$$V_c(s) = \left[\frac{V_s}{s} - \frac{V_s}{s+\frac{1}{RC}}\right] - \frac{V_s}{s+\frac{1}{RC}} = \frac{V_s}{s} - \frac{2V_s}{s+\frac{1}{RC}}$$

Its Laplace inverse is $v_c(t) = V_s\,[1 - 2\,e^{-(t/RC)}]$

When $TA$ is turned on, $v_c = v_{T1} = V_s\,[1 - 2e^{-(t/RC)}]$ ...(7.48)

Eq. (*i*) given above can also be solved as under :

Eq. (*i*) can be re-written as

$$\left(Rp + \frac{1}{c}\right) q = V_s \quad \text{where } p \equiv \frac{d}{dt}$$

*P.I.* Its particular integral is obtained from $\frac{1}{c}\,q = V_s$

$$\therefore \qquad q_{P.I.} = CV_s$$

*C.F.* Its complemntary function is obtained from $\left(Rp + \frac{1}{c}\right) q = 0.$

$$\therefore \qquad q_{C.F.} = Ae^{pt}$$

where $p$ is obtained from $Rp + \frac{1}{c} = 0$. This gives $p = -\frac{1}{CR}$

$$\therefore \qquad q_{C.F.} = Ae^{-t/RC}$$

'Therefore, $q(t) = q_{P.I.} + q_{C.F.} = CV_s + Ae^{-t/RC}$

At $t = 0$, $q = -CV_s$. Here minus sign is used before $CV_s$ ; it is because charging current leaves the positive terminal of $C$ and enters its negative terminal.

$$\therefore \qquad -CV_s = CV_s + A \quad \text{or} \quad A = -2CV_s$$

This gives

$$q(t) = CV_s - 2CV_s\,e^{-t/RC}$$

$$= CV_s\,[1 - e^{(t/Rc)}] \qquad \text{...(7.48)}$$

When $V_{T1}$ reduces to zero after 100 μsec, thyristor T1 is turned off. Thus from Eq. (7.48),

$$v_{T1} = 0 = V_s\,[1 - 2e^{-(t/RC)}]$$

or

$$e^{-\frac{100\times10^{-6}}{10\,C}} = \frac{1}{2} \text{ or } C = 14.427\ \mu\text{F}$$

(*a*) Here load current, $I_0 = \frac{V_s}{R}$

Maximum permissible current through the main SCR, from Eq. (7.40) is

$$i_{T1p} = \frac{V_s}{R} + V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = 2.5\,\frac{V_s}{R} \quad \text{or} \quad V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = 1.5\,\frac{V_s}{R}$$

or

$$L = \frac{4}{9}\,CR^2 = \frac{4}{9}\,(14.427)(10)^2 = 641.2\ \mu\text{H}.$$

(*b*) Peak diode current, from Eq. (7.44), is

$$i_{Dp} = V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}$$

$$\therefore \qquad 1.5\,V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = i_{T1p} = \frac{V_s}{R} + V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}$$

or
$$\frac{1}{2}V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = \frac{V_s}{R}$$

or
$$L = \frac{CR^2}{4} = \frac{14.427 \times 10^{-6} \times 100}{4} = 360.68\ \mu\text{H}.$$

**Example 7.15.** *A voltage-commutated chopper has the following parameters :*

$V_s = 220$ *V, load circuit parameters* $= 0.5\ \Omega$, *2 mH, 40 V*

*Commutation circuit parameters :*

$L = 20\ \mu H$, *and* $C = 50\ \mu F$

$T_{on} = 800\ \mu sec$, $T = 2000\ \mu s$.

*For a constant load current of 80 A , compute the following :*

*(a) Effective on period.*

*(b) Peak currents through main thyristor T1 and auxiliary thyristor TA.*

*(c) Turn-off times for T1 and TA.*

*(d) Total commutation interval.*

*(e) Capacitor voltage 150 μs after TA is triggered.*

*(f) Time needed to recharge the capacitor to voltage* $V_s$.

**Solution.** (*a*) From Eq. (7.45), effective-on period

$$= T_{on} + \frac{2V_s}{I_0}C = 800 \times 10^{-6} + \frac{2 \times 220}{80} \times 50 \times 10^{-6} = 1075\ \mu\text{s}.$$

(*b*) From Eq. (7.40), $i_{T1p} = 80 + 220\sqrt{\frac{50}{20}} = 427.85$ A

Since load current is given as constant at 80 A, peak current through TA is 80 A.

(*c*) From Eq. (7.36), turn-off time for T1 is

$$t_c = \frac{CV_s}{I_0} = \frac{50 \times 10^{-6} \times 220}{80} = 137.5\ \mu\text{s}.$$

Turn-off time for thyristor TA, from Eq. (7.38), is

$$t_{c1} = \frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{LC} = \frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{20 \times 50 \times 10^{-6}}$$
$$= 49.673\ \mu\text{s}$$

(*d*) Total commutation interval

$$= 2\,t_c = 2 \times 137.5 = 275\ \mu\text{s}$$

(*e*) Capacitor voltage before TA is triggered is equal to $(-V_s)$. After TA is triggered, capacitor begins to charge from $(-V_s)$. Therefore, capacitor voltage, after TA is triggered, is given by

$$v_c = \frac{I_0 \cdot t}{C} - V_s$$

where $t$ = time measured from the instant TA is triggered

$$\therefore \quad v_c = \frac{80 \times 150 \times 10^{-6}}{50 \times 10^{-6}} - 220$$
$$= 20\ \text{V}$$

(*f*) Time needed to recharge the capacitor from $(-V_s)$ to $V_s$ is given by

$$\frac{\text{(Total change in voltage) (Capacitance)}}{\text{Load current}}$$

$$= \frac{[V_s - (-V_s)]\,C}{I_0} = \frac{2\,V_s \cdot C}{I_0} = \frac{2 \times 220 \times 50}{80} = 275\ \mu\text{s}.$$

**Example 7.16.** *An impulse-commutated chopper feeds inductive load requiring a constant current of 260 A. The source voltage is 220 V dc and the chopping frequency is 400 Hz. Turn-off time for main thrystor is 18 μs. Peak current through main thyristor is limited to 1.8 times the constant load current. Taking a factor of safety 2 for the main thyristor, calculate the values of (a) commutating components C and L and (b) the minimum and maximum output voltage.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Load current $I_0 = 260$ A, $V_s = 220$ V.

For a factor of safety 2, the commutation circuit turn-off time for main thyristor

$$t_c = 2 \times 18 = 36\ \mu\text{s}.$$

From Eq. (7.36),
$$C = \frac{36 \times 10^{-6} \times 260}{220} = 42.545\ \mu\text{F}$$

Peak current through main thyristor, from Eq. (7.40), is

$$1.8 I_0 = I_0 + V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \quad \text{or} \quad 220\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = 0.8 \times I_0$$

$$\therefore \qquad L = \left(\frac{220}{0.8 \times 260}\right)^2 \times 42.545 = 47.596\ \mu\text{H}.$$

(*b*) From Eq. (7.46*a*), minimum value of duty cycle is

$$\alpha_{mn} = \pi f \sqrt{LC} = \pi \times 400\sqrt{42.545 \times 47.596} \times 10^{-6} = 0.0565$$

Minimum value of output voltage, from Eq. (7.46*b*), is

$$V_{0.mn} = V_s\,(\alpha_{mn} + 2ft_c)$$
$$= 220\,(0.0565 + 2 \times 400 \times 36 \times 10^{-6}) = 18.766\ \text{V}$$

Maximum value of output voltage is $V_{0.mx} = 220$ V.

### 7.6.2. Current-Commutated Chopper

The power-circuit diagram for current-commutated chopper is shown in Fig. 7.25. In this diagram, T1 is the main thyristor. The other components, namely, auxiliary thyristor TA, capacitor *C*, inductor *L*, diodes D1 and D2 constitute commutation circuitry. FD is the freewheeling diode and $R_c$ is the charging resistor.

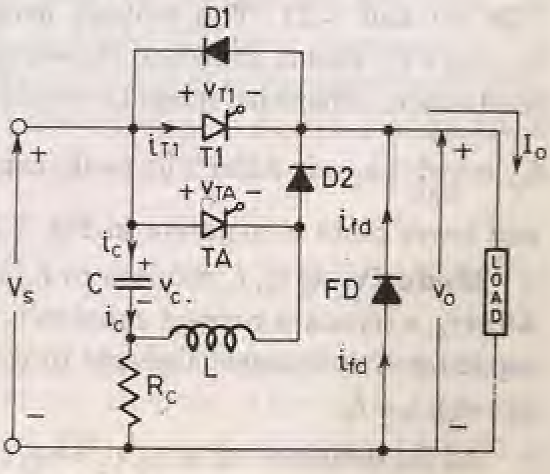


Fig. 7.25. Current-commutated chopper.

Simplifying assumptions for the chopper are as follows :

(*i*) Load current is constant.

(*ii*) SCRs and diodes are ideal switches.

(*iii*) Charging resistor $R_c$ is so large that it can be treated as open circuit during the commutation interval.

Currents $i_c$, $i_{T1}$, $i_{fd}$ and $i_0$ are treated as positive when these are in the arrow directions marked. Similarly, voltages $v_c$, $v_{T1}$, $v_{TA}$ and $v_0$ are taken as positive with the polarities as marked in Fig. 7.25.

Like voltage-commutated chopper, energy for current-commutation comes from the energy stored in a capacitor. Therefore, first of all, capacitor $C$ is charged to a voltage $V_s$ so that energy for commutation process is available. Capacitor $C$ in Fig. 7.25 is charged through source $V_s$, capacitor $C$ and the charging resistor $R_c$ to a voltage $V_s$. After this, main thyristor T1 is fired at $t = 0$ so that load voltage $v_0 = V_s$ and load current $i_0 = I_0$ as shown in Fig. 7.27 up to $t = t_1$. With the turning on of T1, commutation circuitry remains inactive. Initiation of commutation process begins with the turning-on of thyristor TA. The commutation process for its easy grasp is divided into various modes as follows :

**Mode I.** At time $t = t_1$, auxiliary thyristor TA is triggered to commutate main thyristor T1. With the turning-on of TA, an oscillatory current $i_c = \dfrac{V_s}{\omega_0 L} \sin \omega_0 t$ [Eq. (7.33)] is set up in the circuit consisting of $C$, TA and $L$ as shown in Fig. 7.26 (*a*). For the time interval $(t_2 - t_1)$, $i_c$ and $v_c$ vary sinusoidally through half cycle, Fig. 7.27. During this mode when $v_c$ is zero, $i_c$ is maximum though negative. At $t_2$, as $i_c$ tends to reverse in the auxiliary thyristor TA, it gets naturally commutated. At $t_2$, $v_c = -V_s$ as shown in Fig. 7.27 ; *i.e.* in Fig. 7.25, lower plate is positive and upper plate is negative. During this mode T1 remains uneffected, therefore load current and load voltage remain $I_0$ and $V_s$ respectively.

**Mode II.** As TA is turned off at $t_2$, oscillatory current $i_c$ begins to flow through $C$, $L$, D2 and T1 as shown in Fig. 7.26 (*b*). Note that after $t_2$, $i_c$ would flow through T1 and not through D1. It is because D1 is reverse biased by a small voltage drop across conducting thyristor T1. So after $t_2$, $i_c$ would pass through T1 and not through D1.

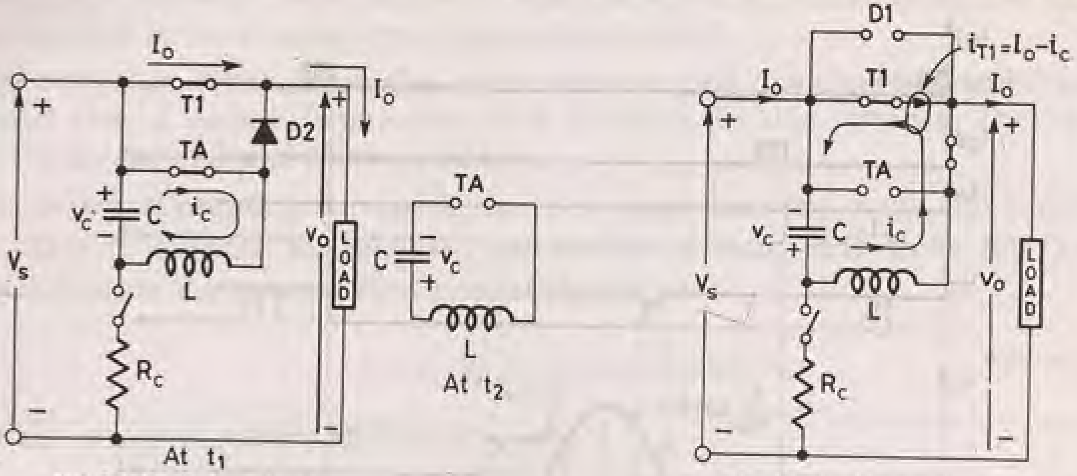
In thyristor T1, $i_c$ is in opposition to load current $i_0$ so that $i_{T1} = I_0 - i_c$. Note that $i_{T1}$ is in the forward direction through T1. At $t_3$, $i_c$ rises to $I_0$ so that $i_{T1} = 0$ ; as a result main SCR T1 is turned off at $t_3$. Since the oscillatory current through T1 turns it off, it is called *current-commutated chopper.*

During this mode, load voltage remains $V_s$ through T1. For this mode, $t_2 < t < t_3$.

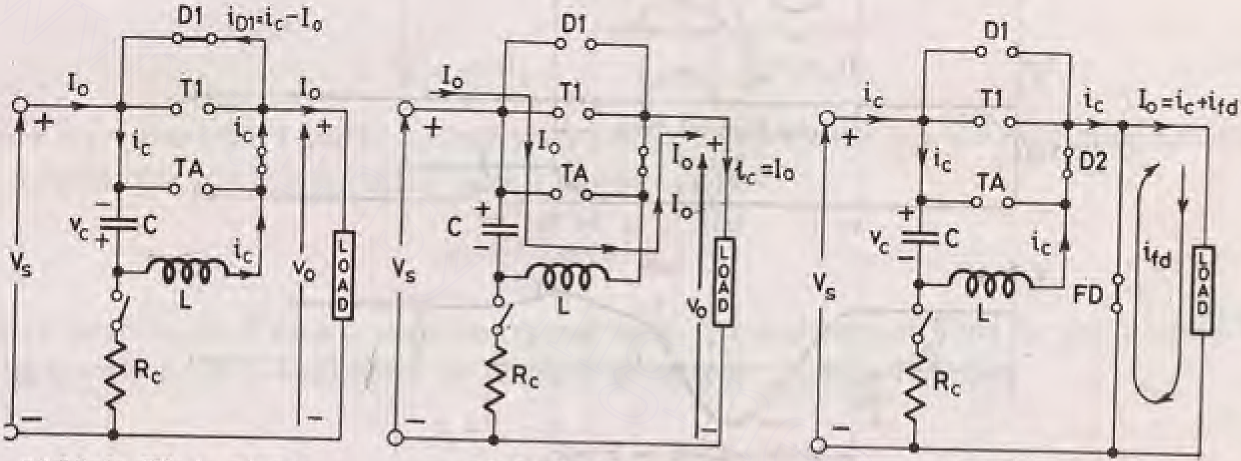
**Mode III.** As T1 is turned off at $t_3$, $i_c$ becomes more than $I_0$. After $t_3$, $i_c$ supplies load current $I_0$ and the excess current $i_{D1} = i_c - I_0$ is conducted through diode D1 as shown in Fig. 7.26 (*c*) and 7.27. The voltage drop in D1 due to $(i_c - I_0)$ keeps T1 reverse biased for $(t_4 - t_3) = t_c$ ; this is shown in the waveform for $v_{T1}$. At $t_4$, in case $v_c$ exceeds $V_s$, FD comes into conduction, otherwise mode IV would follow. During mode III, when $i_c$ is at its peak value of $I_{cp} \left( = \dfrac{V_s}{\omega_0 L} \right)$, $v_c = 0$. After this peak, capacitor voltage reverses and at $t_4$, upper plate is positive and lower plate is negative in Fig. 7.25.

**Mode IV.** At $t_4$, $i_c$ reduces to $I_0$, as a result $i_{D1} = 0$ and diode D1 is therefore turned off. After $t_4$, a constant current equal to $I_0$ flows through source $V_s$, $C$, $L$, D2 and load and therefore capacitor $C$ is charged linearly to source voltage $V_s$ at $t_5$, Fig. 7.26 (*d*). So during the time $(t_5 - t_4)$, $i_c = I_0$.

As D1 is turned off at $t_4$, $v_c = v_{T1}$ ; this is shown as *ab* in Fig. 7.27 for both $v_c$ and $v_{T1}$. Now the load voltage $v_0 = V_s - v_c = V_s$ – voltage *ab* at $t_4$. This is also marked in the waveform for



(a) Mode I, $t_1 < t < t_2$ (b) Mode II, $t_2 < t < t_3$



(c) Mode III, $t_3 < t < t_4$ (d) Mode IV, $t_4 < t < t_5$ (e) Mode V, $t_5 < t < t_6$

Fig. 7.26. Various modes of current-commutated chopper.

$v_0$ at $t_4$. At $t_5$, $v_c = V_s$, therefore load voltage $v_0 = V_s - V_s = 0$ at $t_5$. During the interval $(t_5 - t_4)$, $v_c$ increases linearly, therefore load voltage $v_0$ decreases to zero linearly during this interval.

**Mode V**. At $t_s$, capacitor $C$ is actually overcharged to a voltage somewhat more than source voltage $V_s$. Therefore, FD gets forward biased and starts to conduct load current $I_0$ at $t_5$. Load voltage $v_0$ is reduced to zero at $t_5$ as stated in mode IV. As $i_c$ is not zero at $t_5$, the capacitor $C$ is still connected to load through source $V_s$, $C$, $L$ and D2 ; as a consequence $C$ is overcharged by the transfer of energy from $L$ to $C$. At $t_6$, $i_c = 0$ and $v_c$ becomes more than source voltage $V_s$. During $(t_6 - t_5)$, $i_c + i_{fd} = I_0$. With the build up of $i_{fd}$, $i_c$ decays and finally at $t_6$, $i_c = 0$ and $i_{fd} = I_0$. Commutation process is completed at $t_6$. Total turn-off time, or commutation interval, is $(t_6 - t_1)$.

At $t_6$, $v_c$ is shown as equal to $xy$. As D2 is turned off at $t_6$, $v_c = v_{VA}$ = voltage $xy$ at $t_6$, Fig. 7.27.

From $t_6$ onwards, $i_0$ freewheels through FD. As $i_c$ is zero and D2 is open circuited ; $C$ now discharges through $R_c$ for the freewheeling interval of the chopper. After $t_5$, $v_{T1}$ remains constant at $V_s$, because $V_s$ reaches T1 terminals through FD. At $t = T$, the main SCR T1 is again triggered and the cycle repeats.

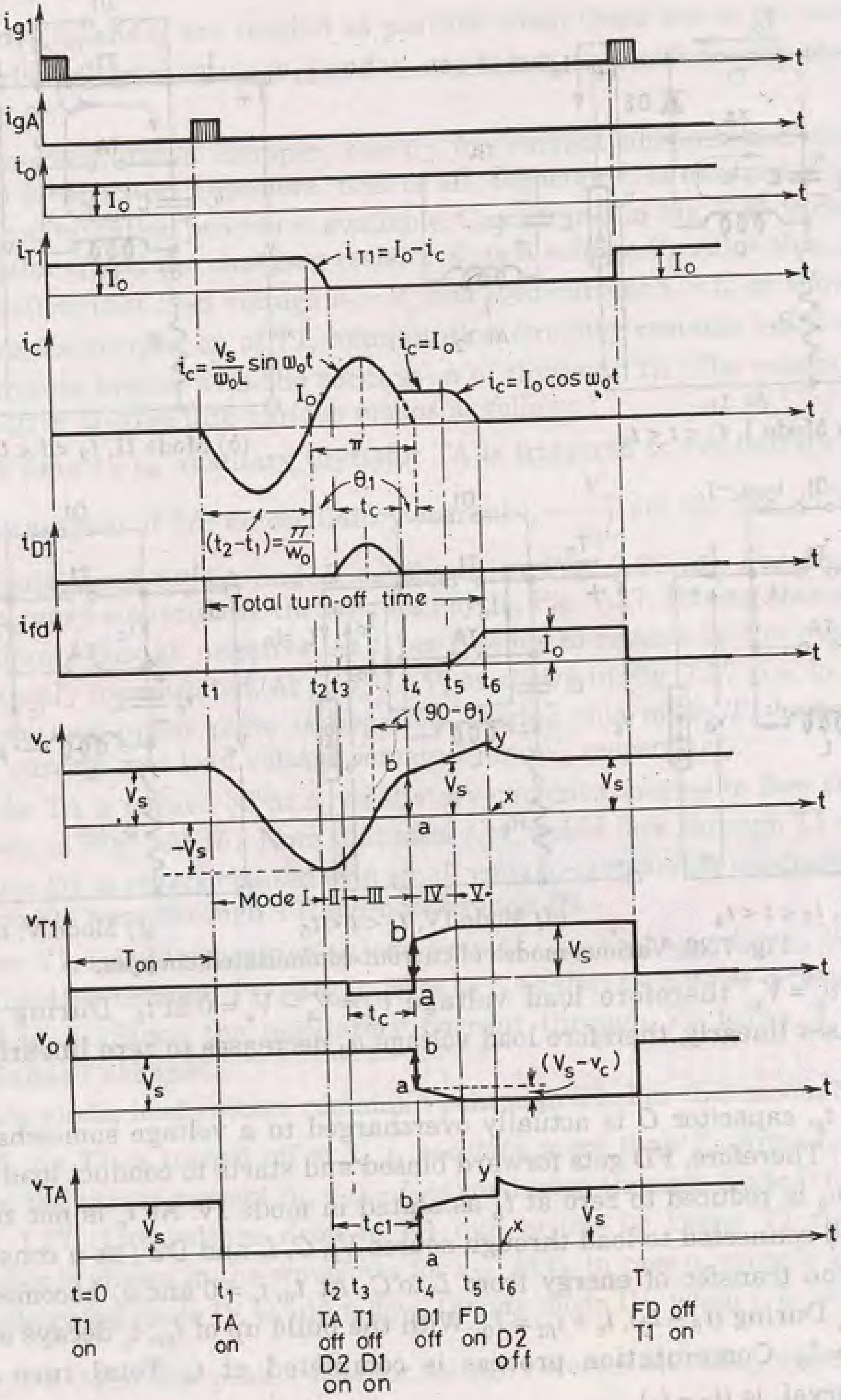


Fig. 7.27. Current and voltage waveforms for current-commutated chopper.

This chopper, developed by Hitachi Electric Co., Japan, is widely used in traction cars. The merits of this chopper are as under :

(*i*) Commutation is reliable so long as the load current is less than the peak commutating current $I_{cp}$.

(*ii*) Capacitor is always charged with the correct polarity.

(*iii*) Auxiliary thyristor TA is naturally commutated as its commutating current passes through zero value in the ringing circuit formed by $L$ and $C$.

**Design considerations.** The value of the commutating components $L$ and $C$ should be so calculated that a reliable commutation is realized for this chopper. The conditions governing the design of $L$ and $C$ are as under :

(*i*) The peak commutating current $I_{cp}$ must be more than the maximum possible load current $I_0$. This is essential for reliable commutation of main SCR. From Eq. (7.33), the oscillating current in the commutation circuit is given by

$$i_c = V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \sin \omega_0 t = I_{cp} \sin \omega_0 t$$

As per the design requirement,

$$I_{cp} = V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} > I_0$$

or
$$V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = x I_0 \qquad \text{...(7.49)}$$

where $x$ is greater than 1 and it varies from 1.4 to 3, *i.e.* $1.4 < x < 3$. $I_0$ is the maximum possible load current that the commutating circuit has to handle.

$$\therefore \qquad x = \frac{I_{cp}}{I_0}.$$

(*ii*) Circuit turn-off time $t_c$ must be greater than thyristor turn-off time for the main SCR. That is $t_c = t_q + \Delta t$. It is seen from the current waveform $i_c$ in Fig. 7.27 that

$$t_c = t_4 - t_3$$

or
$$\omega_0 t_c = \pi - 2\,\theta_1$$

Also
$$I_{cp} \sin \theta_1 = I_0$$

or
$$\theta_1 = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{I_0}{I_{cp}}\right) = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)$$

$\therefore$ Circuit turn-off time for main SCR,

$$t_c = \frac{1}{\omega_0}(\pi - 2\,\theta_1) \qquad \text{...(7.50 a)}$$

$$t_c = \frac{1}{\omega_0}\left[\pi - 2 \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{I_0}{I_{cp}}\right)\right] \qquad \text{...(7.50 b)}$$

The above relation reveals that as load current $I_0$ increases, turn-off time of main thyristor decreases. Thus for ensuring necessary turn-off time $t_c$, a certain value of ratio $(I_0/I_{cp})$ must be maintained. From above,

$$t_c = [\pi - 2 \sin^{-1}(1/x)]\sqrt{LC} \qquad \text{...(7.51)}$$

or
$$\sqrt{C} = \frac{t_c}{[\pi - 2 \sin^{-1}(1/x)]\sqrt{L}}$$

Substitution of this value of $\sqrt{C}$ in Eq. (7.49) gives

$$\frac{V_s}{L} \cdot \frac{t_c}{[\pi - 2 \sin^{-1}(1/x)]} = x\, I_0$$

or
$$L = \frac{V_s \cdot t_0}{x\, I_0\, [\pi - 2 \sin^{-1}(1/x)]} \qquad ...(7.52)$$

From Eq. (7.51),
$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{L}} = \frac{1}{t_c}\, [\pi - 2 \sin^{-1}(1/x)]\, \sqrt{C}$$

Substituting this value of $\sqrt{L}$ in the Eq. (7.49) gives

$$x\, I_0 = \frac{V_s}{t_c}\, [\pi - 2 \sin^{-1}(1/x)]\, C$$

or
$$C = \frac{x\, I_0 \cdot t_c}{V_s [\pi - 2 \sin^{-1}(1/x)]} \qquad ...(7.53)$$

**Total commutation interval.** The total turn-off time, or the commutation interval, is $(t_6 - t_1)$, Fig. 7.27. It can be expressed as a sum of the following components :

$$t_6 - t_1 = (t_2 - t_1) + (t_4 - t_2) + (t_5 - t_4) + (t_6 - t_5).$$

The above four time-components of $(t_6 - t_1)$ can be obtained as under :

$\boldsymbol{(t_2 - t_1)}$ **:** During $(t_2 - t_1)$, waveform of current $i_c$ , oscillating at frequency $\omega_0$, completes one negative half cycle of $\pi$ radians, Fig. 7.27.

$\therefore$ $(t_2 - t_1)$ = time period of half–cycle of oscillating current

$$= \frac{\pi}{\omega_0} = \pi\sqrt{LC}. \qquad ...(7.54)$$

$\boldsymbol{(t_4 - t_2)}$ **:** For $(t_4 - t_2)$, sine current waveform of $i_c$ is examined. At $t_2$, $i_c = 0$ and at $t_4$, $i_c$ attains a value $I_0$ after passing through its peak, Fig. 7.27. Angle covered by $i_c$ from $t_2$ to $t_4$ is equal to $(\pi - \theta_1)$ radians and as $\omega_0$ is the angular frequency for $i_c$, $(t_4 - t_2)$ is given by

$$(t_4 - t_2) = \frac{\pi - \theta_1}{\omega_0} = (\pi - \theta_1)\sqrt{LC} \qquad ...(7.55)$$

$\boldsymbol{(t_5 - t_4)}$ **:** The time $(t_5 - t_4)$ can be obtained from voltage considerations across $C$ at $t_4$ and at $t_5$.

Voltage across $C$ at $t_4 = ab = v_c$ at $t_4$. As this voltage at the instant $t_4$ is $(90 - \theta_1)^\circ$ away from zero crossing of the sine wave, $ab = V_s \sin(90 - \theta_1)$.

Voltage across $C$ at $t_5 = V_s$

$\therefore$ Increase in voltage across $C$ during $(t_5 - t_4) = V_s - V_s \sin(90 - \theta_1)$

We know that $i = C\dfrac{dv}{dt}$. As $I_0$ is constant,

$$I_0 = C\, \frac{V_s - V_s \sin(90 - \theta_1)}{(t_5 - t_4)}$$

or
$$(t_5 - t_4) = CV_s\, \frac{1 - \sin(90 - \theta_1)}{I_0} = CV_s\, \frac{1 - \cos\theta_1}{I_0} \qquad ...(7.56)$$

$\boldsymbol{(t_6 - t_5)}$ **:** During $(t_6 - t_5)$, current $i_c$ is assumed to be $I_0 \cos \omega_0 t$. As $(t_6 - t_5)$ is equal to one quarter cycle ($\pi/2$ rad.) of a sine wave,

$$(t_6 - t_5) = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\pi}{\omega_0} = \frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{LC} \qquad ...(7.57)$$

Addition of Eqs. (7.54) to (7.57) gives

$$(t_6 - t_1) = \text{total commutation interval}$$

$$= \left(\frac{5\pi}{2} - \theta_1\right)\sqrt{LC} + CV_s\,\frac{1-\cos\theta_1}{I_0} \qquad \text{...(7.58}a\text{)}$$

$$= \left(\frac{5\pi}{2} - \theta_1\right)\sqrt{LC} + 2\,CV_s\,\frac{\sin^2\theta_1/2}{I_0} \qquad \text{...(758}b\text{ )}$$

**Turn-off times.** For main SCR, turn-off time from Eq. (7.51) is

$$t_4 - t_3 = t_c = (\pi - 2\,\theta_1)\sqrt{LC}$$

$$= [\pi - 2\sin^{-1}(1/x)]\sqrt{LC}.$$

Turn-off time for auxiliary thyristor, from Eq. (7.55), is

$$t_4 - t_2 = t_{c1} = (\pi - \theta_1)\sqrt{LC} = [\pi - \sin^{-1}(1/x)]\sqrt{LC}$$

**Peak capacitor voltage.** Waveform of $v_c$ in Fig. 7.27 reveals that maximum capacitor voltage $xy$ is reached at $t_6$.

∴ Voltage at $t_6 = V_{cp}$ = voltage at $t_5$ + voltage rise due to the energy transferred from $L$ to $C$ during $(t_6 - t_5)$.

At $t_5$, energy in $L$ is $\frac{1}{2}LI_0^2$ and at $t_6$, this entire energy is transferred to $C$. Thus the voltage rise of $C$ due to this transfer of energy is

$$\frac{1}{2}CV_c^2 = \frac{1}{2}LI_0^2$$

or

$$V_c = I_0\sqrt{\frac{L}{C}}$$

∴

$$V_{cp} = V_s + I_0\sqrt{\frac{L}{C}}. \qquad \text{...(7.59)}$$

The values of $I_{cp}$ and $V_{cp}$ are also the peak ratings of the thyristors T1 and TA.

The value of charging resistor $R_c$ is usually taken such that the periodic time $T \geq 3CR_c$.

**Example 7.17.** *(a) For a current commutated chopper, peak commutating current is twice the maximum possible load current. The source voltage is 230 V dc and main SCR turn-off time is 30 μ sec. For a maximum load current of 200 A, calculate*

*(i) the values of the commutating inductor and capacitor,*

*(ii) maximum capacitor voltage and*

*(iii) the peak commutating current.*

*(b) Repeat part (a), in case peak commutating current is thrice the maximum possible load current.*

*Compare the results obtained in parts (a) and (b).*

**Solution.** (*a*) Here $x = 2,\quad t_q = 30$ μsec

$$t_c = t_q + \Delta t.$$

Taking $\Delta t = 30$ μsec, $t_c = (30 + 30)$ μsec $= 60$ μsec

(*i*) From Eq. (7.52),

$$L = \frac{230 \times 60 \times 10^{-6}}{2 \times 200\,[\pi - 2\sin^{-1}(\frac{1}{2})]} = 16.473\ \mu\text{H}$$

From Eq. (7.53),

$$C = \frac{2 \times 200 \times 60 \times 10^{-6}}{230\,[\pi - 2\sin^{-1}(\frac{1}{2})]} = 49.822\ \mu\text{F}$$

(*ii*) From Eq. (7.59), peak capacitor voltage is

$$V_{cp} = 230 + 200\sqrt{\frac{16.473}{49.822}} = 345 \text{ volts.}$$

(*iii*) Peak commutating current,

$$I_{cp} = x\,I_0 = 2 \times 200 = 400 \text{ A.}$$

(*b*) (*i*) Here $x = 3,$

$$\therefore \quad L = \frac{230 \times 60 \times 10^{-6}}{3 \times 200\,[\pi - 2\sin^{-1}(\tfrac{1}{2})]} = 9.342\ \mu\text{H}$$

$$C = \frac{3 \times 200 \times 60 \times 10^{-6}}{230\,[\pi - 2\sin^{-1}(\tfrac{1}{2})]} = 63.577\ \mu\text{F}$$

(*ii*) Peak capacitor voltage,

$$V_{cp} = 230 + 200\sqrt{\frac{9.342}{63.577}} = 306.67 \text{ V.}$$

(*iii*) Peak commutating current,

$$I_{cp} = 3 \times 200 = 600 \text{ A.}$$

It is seen from above that with the increase of $x$, $L$ is reduced while $C$ is increased, peak capacitor voltage is reduced but peak commutating current is increased.

**Example 7.18.** *A current commutated chopper is fed from a dc source of 230 V. Its commutating components are $L = 20\ \mu H$ and $C = 50\ \mu F$. If load current of 200 A is assumed constant during the commutation process, then compute the following :*

*(a) Turn-off time of main thyristor.*

*(b) Total commutation interval.*

*(c) Turn-off time of auxiliary thyristor.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Peak commutating current from Eq. (7.49) is

$$I_{cp} = V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = 230\sqrt{\frac{50}{20}} = 363.66 \text{ A}$$

$$\therefore \quad x = \frac{I_{cp}}{I_0} = \frac{363.66}{200} = 1.8183$$

Turn-off time of main SCR, from Eq. (7.51), is

$$t_c = [\pi - 2\sin^{-1}(1/1.8183)]\sqrt{20 \times 50 \times 10^{-12}} = 62.52\ \mu\text{sec}$$

(*b*)

$$\theta_1 = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{I_0}{I_{cp}}\right) = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{200}{363.66}\right) = 33.365°$$

Total commutation interval, from Eq. (7.58), is

$$\left(\frac{5\pi}{2} - \frac{33.365 \times \pi}{180}\right)\sqrt{1000} \times 10^{-6} + 50 \times 10^{-6} \times 230\,\frac{1 - \cos 33.365°}{200}$$

$$= 229.95 \times 10^{-6} + 9.477 \times 10^{-6} = 239.427\ \mu\text{sec.}$$

(*c*) Turn-off time of auxilary thyristor, from Eq. (7.55), is

$$\left(\pi - \frac{33.365 \times \pi}{180}\right)\sqrt{1000} \times 10^{-6} = 80.931\ \mu\text{sec.}$$

### 7.6.3. Load-Commutated Chopper

A load-commutated chopper is shown in Fig. 7.28. It consists of four thyristors T1 – T4 and one commutating capacitor $C$. The thyristors T1, T2 act together as one pair and thyristors T3, T4 act together as the second pair for conducting the load current alternately. When T1, T2 are conducting, these act as main thyristors and T3, T4 and $C$ as the commutating components. Likewise, with the conduction of T3, T4 ; these become main thyristors and T1, T2 and $C$ as the commutating components. FD is the freewheeling diode across the load.

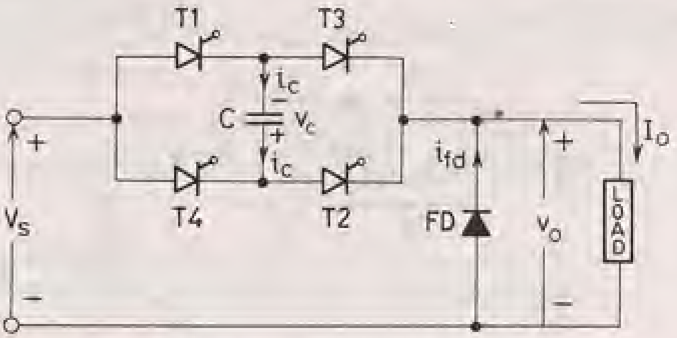


Fig. 7.28. Load commutated chopper.

Initially, the capacitor is charged to a voltage $V_s$ with upper plate negative and lower plate positive as shown in Fig. 7.28. Assumptions made in current-commutated chopper also apply here. The working of this chopper can be explained in various modes as under :

**Mode I.** With the capacitor $C$ charged with lower plate positive, the load commutated chopper is ready for operation. When thyristor pair T1, T2 is triggered at $t = 0$, circuit consisting of $V_s$, T1, $C$, T2 and load shows that load voltage at once shoots to $v_0 = V_s + v_c = 2\,V_s$. Load current now flows from source to load as shown in Fig. 7.29 ($a$).

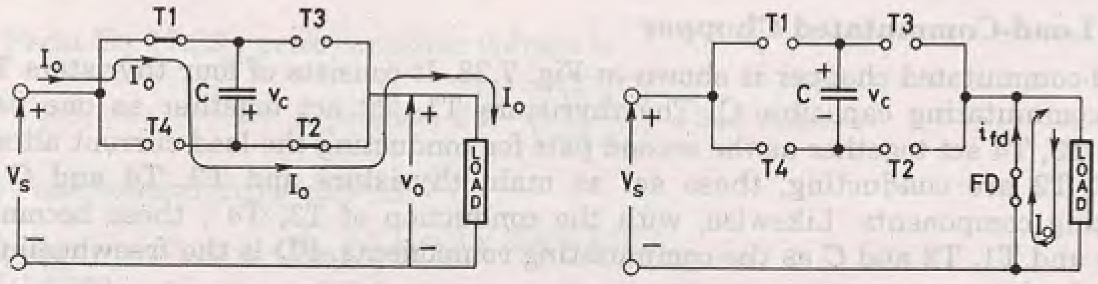
The capacitor $C$ is charged linearly by constant load current $I_0$ from $V_s$ at $t = 0$ to $(-V_s)$ at $t_1$. When the capacitor voltage becomes $(-V_s)$, the load voltage falls from $2\,V_s$ to $v_0 = V_s - V_s = 0$ at $t_1$. At $t = 0$, when T1, T2 are turned on, T3, T4 are reverse biased by capacitor voltage, *i.e.* at $t = 0$, $v_{T3} = v_{T4} = -V_s$. At $t_1$, $v_{T3} = v_{T4} = V_s$, *i.e.* T3, T4 are forward biased at $t_1$.

**Mode II.** At $t_1$, capacitor $C$ is slightly overcharged, as a result freewheeling diode gets forward biased and load current is transferred from T1, T2 to FD. From $t_1$ onwards, load current freewheels through FD, Fig. 7.29 ($b$). During $(t_2 - t_1)$, $v_c = -V_s$, $v_0 = 0$, $i_c = 0$, $i_{fd} = I_0$, $i_{T1} = i_{T2} = 0$, $v_{T3} = v_{T4} = V_s$ and $v_{T1} = v_{T2} = -\Delta V_s$ as capacitor is overcharged by a small voltage $\Delta V_s$.

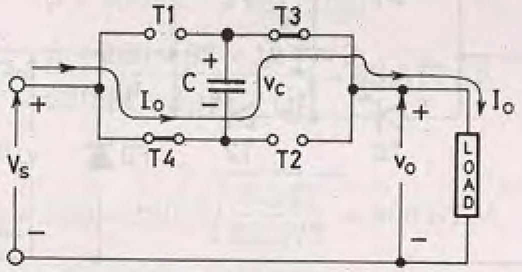
**Mode III.** At $t_2$, thyristor pair T3, T4 is triggered, load voltage at once becomes $v_0 = V_s + v_c = 2\,V_s$. Thyristor pair T1, T2 is reverse biased by $v_c$, this pair is therefore turned off at $t_2$. The load current, now flowing through $V_s$, T4, $C$, T3 and load charges capacitor linearly from $(-V_s)$ at $t_2$ to $V_s$ at $t_3$, Fig. 7.29 (c). Load voltage accordingly falls from $2\,V_s$ at $t_2$ to zero at $t_3$. During $(t_3 - t_2)$ ; $i_c = -I_0$, $i_{T3} = i_{T4} = I_0$ but $v_{T1} = v_{T2} = -V_s$ at $t_2$ and $V_s$ at $t_3$ ; *i.e.* thyristor pair T1, T2 gets forward biased at $t_3$.

At $t_3$, capacitor $C$ is somewhat overcharged, FD gets forward biased and therefore after $t_3$, load current freewheels through FD and load. This is not shown in Fig. 7.29.

When T1, T2 are turned on at $t_4$, mode I repeats.



($a$) Mode I, $0 < t < t_1$ ($b$) Mode II, $t_1 < t < t_2$



($c$) Mode III, $t_2 < t < t_3$

Fig. 7.29. Different operating modes of load-commutated chopper.

**Design of commutating capacitance.** For constant load current $I_0$, capacitor voltage changes from $-V_s$ to $V_s$ in time $T_{on}$, *i.e.* total change in voltage is $2\,V_s$ in time $T_{on}$.

$$\therefore \qquad I_0 = C\,\frac{2\,V_s}{T_{on}}$$

or
$$C = \frac{I_0 \cdot T_{on}}{2\,V_s} \qquad \text{...(7.60)}$$

Output voltage,
$$V_0 = \frac{1}{2}\,(2\,V_s)\,T_{on} \cdot \frac{1}{T} = V_s \cdot T_{on}\,f \qquad \text{...(7.61)}$$

Substitution of $T_{on} = \dfrac{2\,V_s}{I_0}$ in Eq. (7.61) gives average output voltage as

$$V_0 = V_s \cdot f \cdot \frac{2\,CV_s}{I_0} = \frac{2 \cdot V_s^2 \cdot C \cdot f}{I_0} \qquad \text{...(7.62)}$$

Minimum chopping period, $T_{min} = T_{on}$

$\therefore$ Maximum chopping frequency,

$$f_{max} = \frac{1}{T_{min}} = \frac{1}{T_{on}}$$

From Eq. (7.60),
$$C = \frac{I_0}{2\,V_s} \cdot \frac{1}{f_{max}} \qquad \text{...(7.63)}$$

It is seen from the waveform of $v_{T1}, v_{T2}, v_{T3}$, and $v_{T4}$ that circuit turn-off time for each thyristor is

$$t_c = \frac{1}{2}\,T_{on} = \frac{1}{2}\,C\,\frac{2\,V_s}{I_0} = \frac{C\,V_s}{I_0} \qquad \text{...(7.64)}$$

Total commutation interval
$$= T_{on} = \frac{2\,CV_s}{I_0}.$$

A load-commutated chopper has the following merits and demerits.

**Merits** : (*i*) It is capable of commutating any amount of load current.

(*ii*) No commutating inductor is required that is normally costly, bulky and noisy.

(*iii*) As it can work at high frequencies in the order of kHz, filtering requirements are minimal.

**Demerits :** (*i*) Peak load voltage is equal to twice the supply voltage. This peak can however be reduced by filtering.

(*ii*) For high-power applications, efficiency may become low because of higher switching losses at high operating frequencies.

(*iii*) Freewheeling diode is subjected to twice the supply voltage.

(*iv*) The commutating capacitor has to carry full load current at a frequency of half the chopping frequency.

(*v*) One pair of SCRs should be turned on only when the other pair is commutated. This can be done by sensing the capacitor current that is alternating.

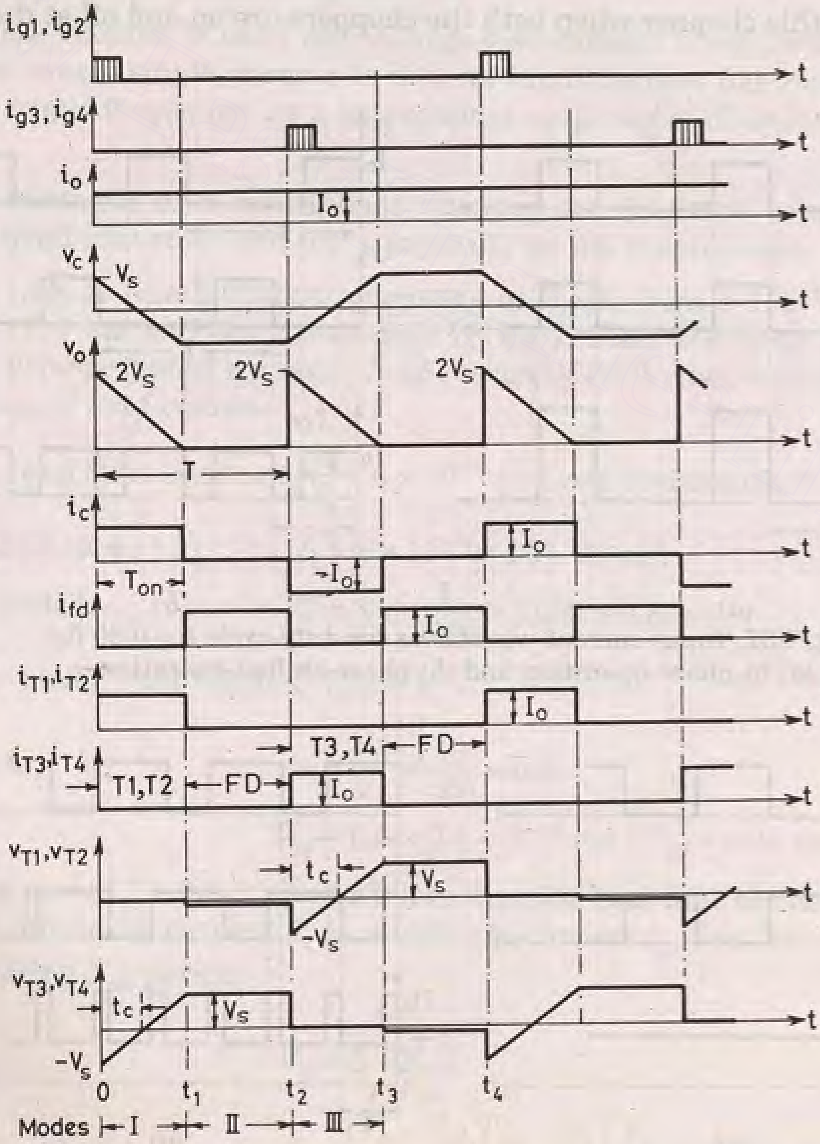


Fig. 7.30. Voltage and current waveforms for a load-commutated chopper.

## 7.7. MULTIPHASE CHOPPERS

A multiphase chopper is one that consists of two or more choppers connected in parallel. The two-chopper configuration shown in Fig. 7.31 is called a two-phase chopper. Similarly, three choppers connected in parallel will constitute a 3-phase chopper.

A multiphase chopper may be operated in two modes, *viz.* in-phase operation mode and the phase-shifted operation mode. In the in-phase operation mode, all the parallel connected choppers are on and off *at the same instant.* In the phase-shifted operation mode, different choppers are on and off at different instants of time.

In the two-phase chopper configuration shown in Fig. 7.31, inductance $L$ in series with each chopper is assumed to be sufficiently large in that each chopper operates independent of each other. Let the load current be $I_0$ and ripple free. For a duty cycle of $\alpha = 30\%$, Fig. 7.32 (*a*) shows the in-phase operation of this chopper when both the choppers are on and off at the same instant.

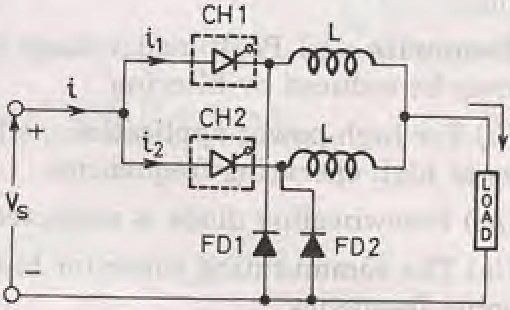
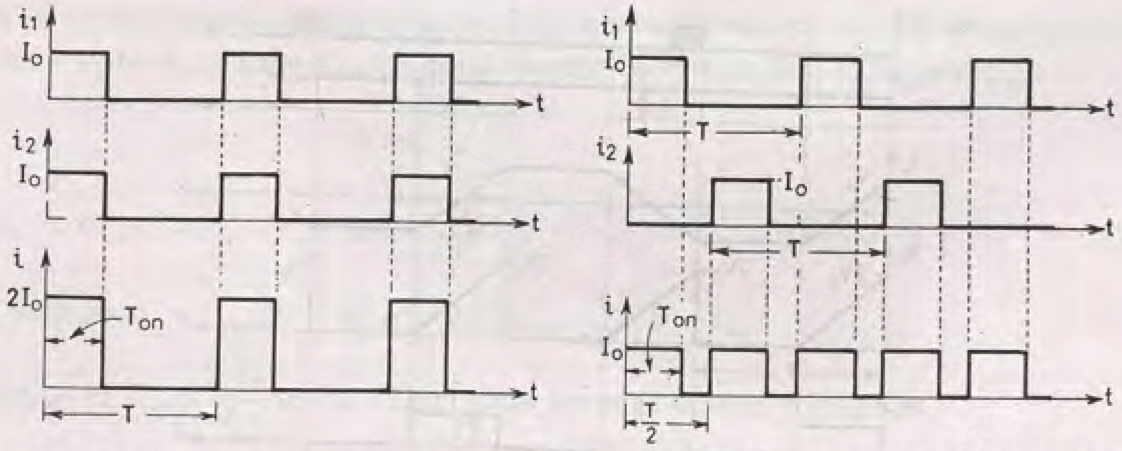
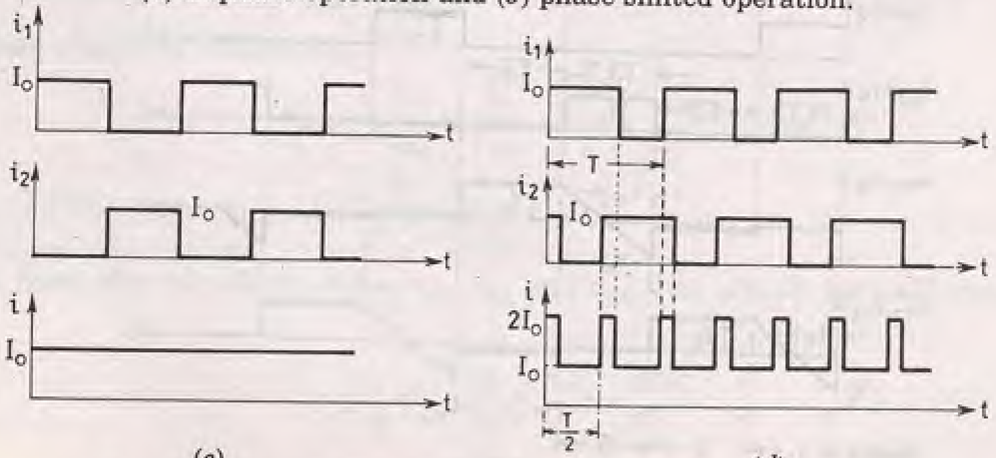


Fig. 7.31. Two-phase chopper.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 7.32. Input current waveforms for duty cycle $\alpha = 0.30$ for (*a*) in-phase operation and (*b*) phase-shifted operation.



(*c*) (*d*)

Fig. 7.32. Current waveform for phase-shifted operation for (*c*) $\alpha = 0.50$ and (*d*) $\alpha = 0.60$.

The input current $i$, obtained by the addition of $i_1$ and $i_2$, is seen to be doubled as shown. The in-phase operation of multiphase chopper is equivalent to a single-chopper operation.

Fig. 7.32 (*b*) shows the phase shifted operation for $\alpha = 30\%$. Chopper CH1 is on for 0.3 T from $t = 0$. Chopper CH2 is made on such that input current obtained from $i_1 + i_2$ is periodic in nature. A comparison of Figs. 7.32 (*a*) and (*b*) reveals that for phase-shifted operation, the frequency of input current is doubled and its ripple current amplitude (proportional to $I_{max} - I_{min}$) is halved as compared to the inphase-operation of chopper. In the in-phase operating mode, Fig. 7.32 (*a*) shows that frequency of harmonics in the input current is equal to the switching frequency ( $= 1/T$) of each chopper. But in phase-shifted operating mode, Fig. 7.32 (*b*) shows that frequency of harmonics in the input current is twice the switching frequency ($= 1/T$) of each chopper. As the frequency of harmonics in the input current is twice the switching frequency, the size of filter is reduced in the phase-shifted chopper. This shows that phase-shifted operation of multiphase choppers is usually preferred.

For $\alpha = 50\%$, the input supply current of phase-shifted operation is continuous and without any ripples, Fig. 7.32 (*c*). For $\alpha = 60\%$, the supply current is continuous but with a pedestal of half the load current, Fig. 7.32 (*d*).

A multiphase chopper is used where large load current is required. The main advantage of this chopper over a single chopper is that its input current has reduced ripple amplitude and increased ripple frequency. As a consequence of it, size of filter for a multiphase chopper is reduced.

The disadvantages of a multiphase chopper are (*i*) extra commutation circuits (*ii*) additional external inductors and (*iii*) complexity in the control logic.

**Example 7.19.** *A type-A chopper operating at 2 kHz from a 100 V dc source has a load time constant of 6 ms and load resistance of 10 Ω. Find the mean load current and the magnitude of current ripple for a mean load voltage of 50 V. Also, calculate the minimum and maximum values of load current.*

**Solution.** Load time constant, $\frac{L}{R} = 6 \times 10^{-3}$ s ; Load resistance, $R = 10\ \Omega$

∴ Load inductance, $L = 6 \times 10^{-3} \times 10 = 60$ mH

Chopping period, $T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{2000} \times 1000 = 0.5$ ms

Average, or mean, load voltage, $V_0 = \alpha V_s$

∴ Duty cycle, $\alpha = \frac{V_0}{V_s} = \frac{50}{100} = 0.5$

$$T_{on} = 0.5 \times 0.5 = 0.25 \text{ ms} ;\ T_{off} = 0.25 \text{ ms}.$$

As chopping period $T = 0.5$ ms is much less than the load time constant = 6 ms, the current variation from minimum current $I_1$ to maximum current $I_2$, Fig. 7.5 (*d*), must be taken as linear. Thus, during $T_{on}$ period,

$$V_s - V_0 = L \frac{I_2 - I_1}{T_{on}}$$

or,
$$I_2 - I_1 = \frac{(V_s - V_0)\, T_{on}}{L} = \frac{V_0}{L}\left[\frac{V_s}{V_0} - 1\right] T_{on}$$

$$= \frac{V_0}{L}\left[\frac{1}{\alpha}-1\right]T_{on} = \frac{V_0}{L}\left[\frac{T}{T_{on}}-1\right]T_{on}$$

$$\therefore \quad I_2 - I_1 = \frac{V_0}{L}\,T_{off} = \Delta I, \text{ current ripple} \qquad ...(i)$$

∴ Magnitude of current ripple,

$$\Delta I = I_2 - I_1 = \frac{V_0}{L}\,T_{off} = \frac{50}{60\times 10^{-3}}\times 0.25\times 10^{-3}$$

$$= 0.2083 \text{ A.}$$

Also, average or mean value of load current,

$$I_0 = \frac{I_1 + I_2}{2} = \frac{V_0}{R}$$

$$= \frac{50}{10} = 5 \text{ A}$$

An examination of Fig. 7.5 (*d*) shows that maximum value of load current $I_2$ is given by

$$I_2 = I_0 + \frac{\Delta I}{2} = I_0 + \frac{V_0}{2L}\cdot T_{off} = 5 + \frac{50\times 0.25\times 10^{-3}}{2\times 60\times 10^{-3}} = 5.104 \text{ A}$$

Minimum value of load current,

$$I_1 = I_0 - \frac{\Delta I}{2} = 5 - 0.104 = 4.896 \text{ A.}$$

**Example 7.20.** *For the circuit shown in Fig. 7.33, show that*

$$I_{max} = \frac{V_0}{R} + \frac{V_0}{2fL}\left[1 - \frac{V_0}{V_s}\right]$$

*and*

$$I_{min} = \frac{V_0}{R} - \frac{V_0}{2fL}\left[1 - \frac{V_0}{V_s}\right]$$

*where f = operating frequency of chopper switch S.*

*Assume L to be large enough to ensure linear growth and decay of the current through it and have continuous current.*

**Solution.** The function of capacitor $C$ across load resistance $R$ is to make the output voltage continuous. In this figure, $LC$ is a filter and $FD$ is a flywheel diode. Inductor stores energy during $T_{on}$ and delivers it during $T_{off}$ of a cycle.

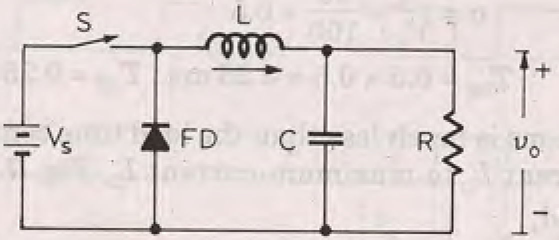


Fig. 7.33. Pertaining to Example 7.20.

The solution up to Eq. (*i*) in Example 7.19 is the same for this example also. Therefore, Eq. (*i*) in Example 7.19 gives current ripple as

$$\Delta I = I_2 - I_1 = I_{max} - I_{min} = \frac{V_0}{L} T_{off}$$

Average load voltage, $\quad V_0 = \alpha\, V_s = \dfrac{T_{on}}{T} V_s$

or $\quad T_{on} = \dfrac{V_0}{V_s} T = \dfrac{V_0}{f V_s}$

Also, $\quad T_{off} = T - T_{on} = \dfrac{1}{f} - \dfrac{V_0}{f V_s} = \dfrac{1}{f}\left(1 - \dfrac{V_0}{V_s}\right)$

Average load current, $\quad I_0 = \dfrac{V_0}{R}$

It is seen from Fig. 7.5 (*d*) that

$$I_{max} = I_0 + \frac{\Delta I}{2} = \frac{V_0}{R} + \frac{V_0}{2L} T_{off}$$

$$= \frac{V_0}{R} + \frac{V_0}{2fL}\left(1 - \frac{V_0}{V_s}\right)$$

Similarly, $\quad I_{min} = \dfrac{V_0}{R} - \dfrac{V_0}{2fL}\left(1 - \dfrac{V_0}{V_s}\right)$

**Example 7.21.** *For type-A chopper feeding an RLE load, show that maximum value of rms current rating for the freewheeling diode, in case load current is ripple free, is given by* $0.3849\, \dfrac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - \dfrac{E}{V_s}\right)^{3/2}$.

**Solution.** For chopper with RLE load, average load current $I_0$ is

$$I_0 = \frac{V_0 - E}{R} = \frac{\alpha\, V_s - E}{R}$$

Freewheeling-diode current flows during the period $T_{off}$. Therefore, rms value of freewheeling-diode current, when $I_0$ is ripple free, is given by

$$I_{fdr} = \sqrt{\frac{T_{off}}{T}} \cdot I_0 = \left[\frac{T - T_{on}}{T}\right]^{1/2} \left[\frac{\alpha\, V_s - E}{R}\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{R}(\alpha\, V_s - E)(\sqrt{1-\alpha}) \qquad \ldots(i)$$

$$= \frac{1}{R}\left[\alpha\sqrt{1-\alpha} \cdot V_s - \sqrt{1-\alpha} \cdot E\right]$$

or $\quad I_{fd.r} = \dfrac{1}{R}\left[\sqrt{\alpha^2 - \alpha^3} \cdot V_s - \sqrt{1-\alpha} \cdot E\right]$

This current $I_{fd.r}$ will have maximum value when

$$\frac{d\, I_{fd.r}}{d\,\alpha} = \frac{1}{R}\left[\frac{1}{2}\frac{(2\alpha - 3\alpha^2)\, V_s}{\sqrt{\alpha^2 - \alpha^3}} + \frac{1}{2}\frac{E}{\sqrt{1-\alpha}}\right] = 0$$

or $\quad \dfrac{(2\alpha - 3\alpha^2)\, V_s}{\sqrt{\alpha^2 - \alpha^3}} = -\dfrac{E}{\sqrt{1-\alpha}}$

or $\quad \dfrac{(2\alpha - 3\alpha^2)\sqrt{1-\alpha}}{\alpha\sqrt{1-\alpha}} = -\dfrac{E}{V_s}$

or $$3\alpha - 2 = \frac{E}{V_s} \quad \text{or} \quad \alpha = \frac{1}{3}\left(2 + \frac{E}{V_s}\right)$$

Substituting this value of α in Eq. (*i*), we get maximum value of rms current rating $I_{fd.rm}$ of freewheeling diode as under :

$$\begin{aligned}
I_{fd.rm} &= \frac{1}{R}\left[\frac{1}{3}\left(2 + \frac{E}{V_s}\right)V_s - E\right]\left[1 - \frac{1}{3}\left(2 + \frac{E}{V_s}\right)\right]^{1/2} \\
&= \frac{1}{R}\left[\frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{2V_s + E}{V_s}\right)V_s - E\right]\left[1 - \frac{2V_s + E}{3\,V_s}\right]^{1/2} \\
&= \frac{1}{R}\left[\frac{2\,V_s + E - 3E}{3}\right]\left[\frac{3\,V_s - 2\,V_s - E}{3\,V_s}\right]^{1/2} \\
&= \frac{1}{R}\left[\frac{2V_s - 2E}{3}\right]\left[\frac{V_s - E}{3V_s}\right]^{1/2} = \frac{1}{R}\cdot\frac{2}{3}\left[V_s - E\right]^{3/2}\cdot\frac{1}{\sqrt{3V_s}} \\
&= \frac{1}{R}\cdot\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{V_s\cdot\sqrt{V_s}}{\sqrt{3}V_s}\left[1 - \frac{E}{V_s}\right]^{3/2} \\
&= \frac{2}{3\sqrt{3}}\cdot\frac{V_s}{R}\left[1 - \frac{E}{V_s}\right]^{3/2} \\
&= 0.3849\,\frac{V_s}{R}\left[1 - \frac{E}{V_s}\right]^{3/2}
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 7.22.** *The speed of a separately excited dc motor is controlled below base speed by type-A chopper. The supply voltage is 220 V dc. The armature circuit has* $r_a = 0.5\ \Omega$ *and* $L_a = 10$ mH. *The motor constant is k = 0.1 V/rpm. The motor drives a constant torque load requiring an average armature current of 30 A. On the assumption of continuous armature current, calculate (a) the range of speed control and (b) the range of duty cycle.*

**Solution.** For a motor, $V_t = V_0 = E_a + I_a\, r_a$

The minimum possible speed of dc motor is zero. This gives motor counter emf

$$E_a = 0$$

∴ $$\alpha\, V_s = V_0 = 0 + I_a\, r_a$$

or $$\alpha \times 220 = 0 + 30 \times 0.5 = 15\ \text{V}$$

or $$\alpha = \frac{15}{220} = \frac{3}{44}$$

Maximum possible value of duty cycle is 1

∴ $$\alpha\, V_s = E_a + I_a\, r_a$$

or $$1 \times 220 = \text{K.N} + 30 \times 0.5$$

or $$N = \frac{220 - 15}{0.10} = 2050\ \text{rpm}$$

Therefore (*a*) range of speed control is $0 < N < 2050$ rpm and

(*b*) the range of duty cycle is $\frac{3}{44} < \alpha < 1$.

**Example 7.23.** *In a battery-powered dc drive scheme, a chopper-controlled motor rated at 72 V, 200 A and 2500 rpm is separately-excited at a flux corresponding to its full rating.*

*The current pulsation during acceleration is maintained between 180 A and 230 A. The motor resistance is 0.045 Ω, while the inductance is 7 mH. The battery resistance is 0.065 Ω. Neglecting the semiconductor losses, determine the chopping frequency and the duty cycle ratio when the speed is 1000 rpm. Draw diagrams to show the circuit arrangement and performance during one chopping cycle.* (*I.A.S., 1988*)

**Solution.** For a separately-excited dc motor,

$$V_t = V_0 = E_a + I_a\, ra$$

or $$72 = K.N + 200 \times 0.045$$

∴ $$K = \frac{72 - 9}{2500} = \frac{63}{2500} \text{ V/rpm}$$

At 1000 rpm, counter emf of motor

$$E_a = K \times 1000 = \frac{63}{2500} \times 1000 = 25.2 \text{ V}$$

From Eq. (7.12), $$I_{mx} = \frac{V_s - E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}\right) + I_{mn}\, e^{-T_{on}/T_a}$$

Here circuit time constant, $$T_a = \frac{L}{R} = \frac{7 \times 10^{-3}}{0.045 + 0.065} = 0.064 \text{ s}, R = 0.11\, \Omega$$

∴ $$I_{mx} = 230 = \frac{72 - 25.2}{0.11}\left[1 - e^{-T_{on}/0.064}\right] + 180\, e^{-T_{on}/0.064}$$

or $$245.45\, e^{-T_{on}/0.064} = 195.45$$

or $$T_{on} = 0.01458 \text{ s}$$

From Eq. (7.13), $$I_{mn} = -\frac{E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-T_{off}/T_a}\right) + I_{mx}\, e^{-T_{off}/T_a}$$

During the freewheeling period,

$$T_a = \frac{L}{R} = \frac{7 \times 10^{-3}}{0.045} = 0.1556 \text{ s} \quad \text{and} \quad R = 0.045\, \Omega$$

∴ $$180 = -\frac{25.2}{0.045}\,(/1 - e^{-T_{off}/0.1556}) + 230\, e^{-T_{off}/0.1556}$$

or $$T_{off} = 0.1556 \ln \frac{790}{740} = 0.010174 \text{ s}$$

Chopping period, $$T = T_{on} + T_{off} = 0.01458 + 0.010174 = 0.024754 \text{ s}$$

Chopping frequency, $$f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{0.024754} = 40.4 \text{ Hz}$$

Duty cycle ratio, $$\alpha = \frac{T_{on}}{T} = \frac{0.01458}{0.024754} = 0.588995$$

$$= 0.589 \text{ or } 58.9\%$$

**Example 7.24.** *Show by diagram with necessary explanation a battery-powered dc drive scheme using a chopper controlled motor. Sketch the voltage and current waveforms. Define chopping frequency and duty cycle ratio.*

*In the drive scheme stated above, the maximum possible value of accelerating current is 425 A, the lower limit of the current pulsation is 180 A, length of ON period is 14 ms and that of OFF period is 11 ms, the time constant being 63.5 ms. Determine the higher limit of current pulsation, the chopping frequency and the duty cycle ratio.* [*I.A.S., 1989*]

**Solution.** Maximum value of current, $I_{mx} = 425$ A

Lower limit of current pulsation = 180 A

∴ Minimum value of current, $I_{mn} = 425 - 180 = 245$ A

Here $T_{on} = 14$ ms, $T_{off} = 11$ ms, $T = 25$ ms, $T_a = 63.5$ ms, $\alpha = \frac{14}{25} = 0.56$

From Eq. (7.12),
$$I_{mx} = \frac{V_s - E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-T_{on}/T_a}\right) + I_{mn} \cdot e^{-T_{on}/T_a}$$

or
$$425 = \frac{V_s - E}{R}\left(1 - e^{-14/63.5}\right) + 245\, e^{-14/63.5}$$

or
$$\frac{V_s - E}{R} = 1175.023 \text{ A}$$

For higher current pulsation, $T_{on}$ is kept 14 ms. For duty cycle ratio α less than 0.56, the current pulsation will be more. For $\alpha = 0.5$, the current pulsation is the highest, So with $\alpha = 0.5$, $T_{on} = 14$ ms, from Eq. (7.12), we get

$$425 = 1175.023\,(1 - e^{-14/63.5}) + I_{mn}\, e^{-14/63.5}$$

or
$$I_{mn} = 239 \cdot 9956 \cong 240 \text{ A}$$

Higher limit of current pulsation $= 425 - 240 = 185$ A

Chopping period, $$T = \frac{T_{on}}{\alpha} = \frac{14}{0.5} = 28 \text{ ms}$$

Chopping frequency, $$f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{28 \times 10^{-3}} = 35.714 \text{ Hz}$$

Duty cycle ratio, $\alpha = 0.50$

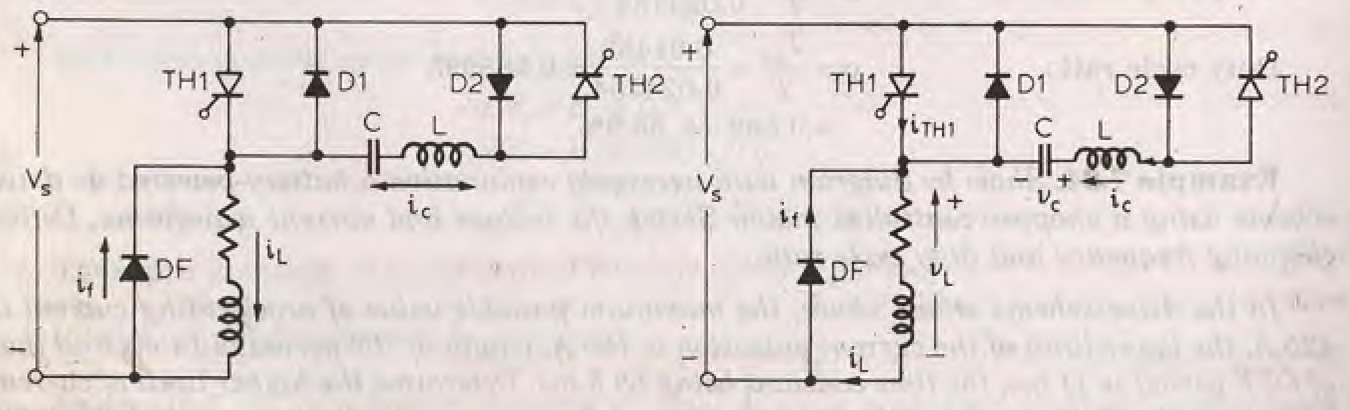
**Example 7.25.** *Fig. 7.34 (a) shows a chopper circuit operating at 100 Hz with $K_d = 0.5$. The load current at steady state is continuous but varies between 3 amps and 10 amps. Sketch the waveshape of*

*(a) the load current $i_L$*

*(b) the current $i_f$ through the freewheeling diode $D_f$*

*(c) the current $i_c$ through the commutating capacitor.* *[GATE, 1994 ; I.A.S., 1997]*

**Solution.** The circuit of Fig. 7.34 (*a*) is redrawn in Fig. 7.34 (*b*) where the positive directions for $i_c$, $v_c$, $i_L$, $v_L$, $i_{TH1}$ and $i_f$ are indicated. Source voltage $V_s$ charges commutating

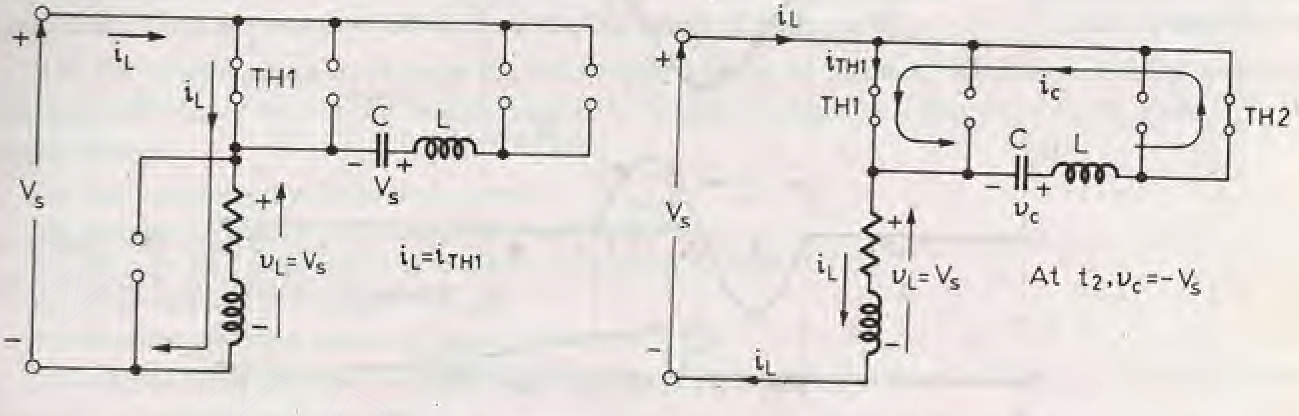


(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 7.34. Pertaining to Example 7.25.

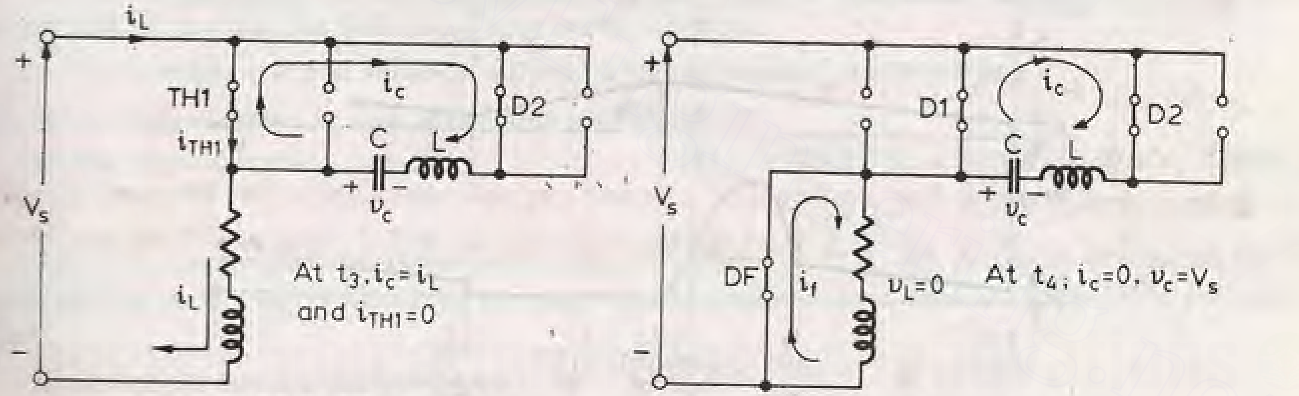
capacitor $C$ to voltage $+V_s$ through D2, $L$, $C$, load parameters $R$, $L$ and source voltage $V_s$. The working of this chopper is divided into certain modes as under :

**Mode I :** Main thyristor TH1 is turned on at $t = 0$, load voltage $v_L = V_s$ and load current $i_L$ begins to build up from 3 A. Capacitor voltage remains dormant. The waveforms for $v_C$, $v_L$, $i_L$ and $i_{TH1}$ $(= i_2)$ are shown in Fig. 7.36. The circuit operation during this mode is shown in Fig. 7.35 ($a$).



($a$) Mode I, $0 < t < t_1$

($b$) Mode II, $t_1 < t < t_2$



($c$) Mode III, $t_2 < t < t_3$

($d$) Mode IV, $t_3 < t < t_4$

Fig. 7.35

**Mode II :** Auxiliary thyristor TH2 is turned on at $t_1$ to commutate main thyristor TH1. With TH2 on, $i_c$ begins to flow through $C$, $L$, TH2 and TH1. During this mode, $i_{TH1} = i_L + i_C$. At time $t_2$ ; $i_c = 0$, $v_c = -V_s$, $v_L = V_s$. As $i_c$ tends to reverse soon after $t_2$, TH2 is turned off. Capacitor current during this mode is given by Eq. (7.33), *i.e.* $V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \cdot \sin \omega_0 t$.

**Mode III** : After TH2 is turned off at $t_2$, reversed current $i_c$ now begins to flow through $C$, TH1, D2 and $L$. Note that during this mode, $i_{TH1} = i_L - i_C$. When $i_c$ rises and becomes equal to $i_L$, $i_{TH1}$ decays to zero and thyristor TH1 is therefore turned off at time $t_3$. This means that source voltage is disconnected from load RL at $t_3$. As $i_L$ tends to decay from 10 A, DF gets forward biased by $L\frac{di}{dt}$ and load current begins to freewheel through $R$, $L$ and $DF$ after $t_3$. Eventually, $i_L$ decays to 3 A at $t_5$. At $t_3$, capacitor voltage $v_c$ is still negative as shown in Fig. 7.36.

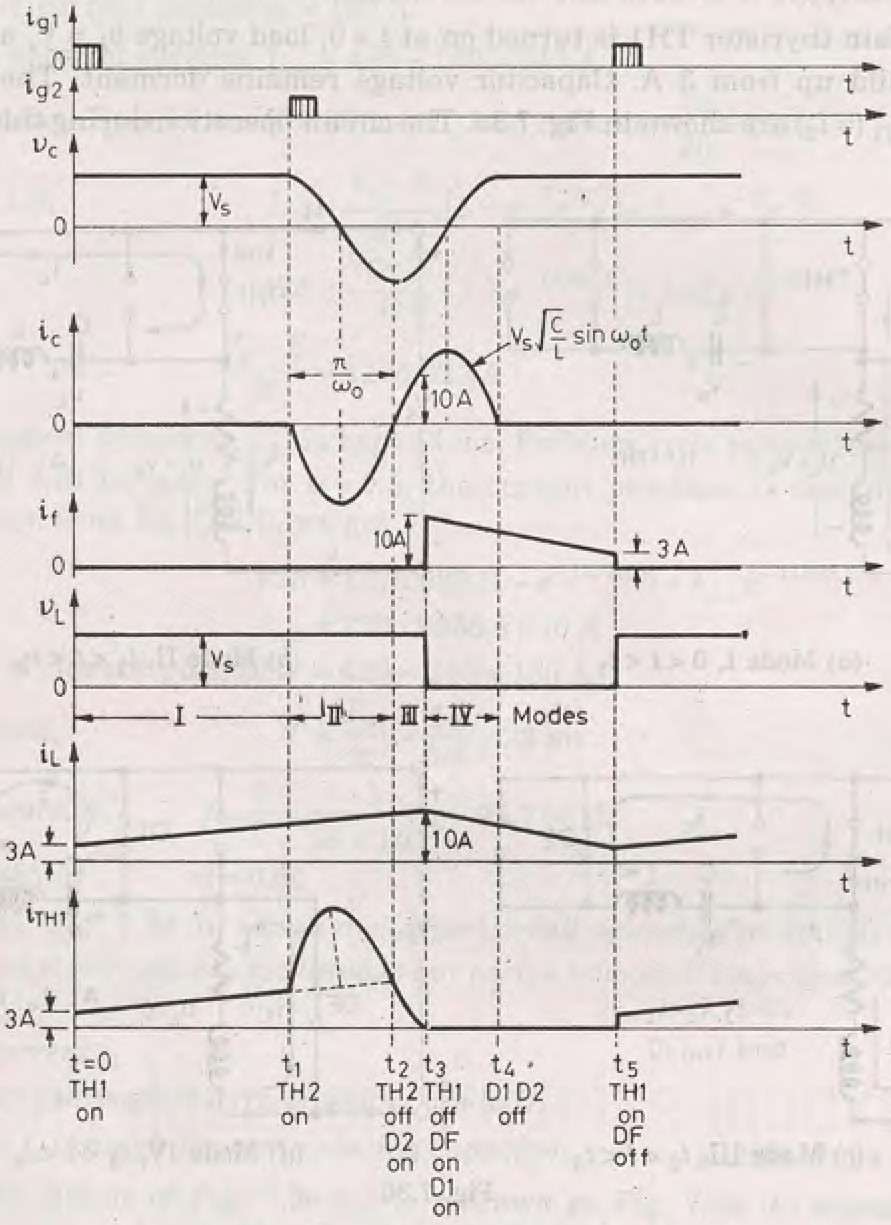


Fig. 7.36. Pertaining to chopper circuit of Example 7.25.

**Mode IV :** After TH1 is turned off at $t_3$, $i_c$ rises through the oscillating circuit formed by D1, D2, *L* and *C*. Finally, at $t_4$, $i_c = 0$ and $v_c = V_s$. Soon after $t_4$, as $i_c$ tends to reverse, diodes D1, D2 get turned off. Capacitor *C* charged to proper polarity and voltage is now suitable for next repeat cycle initiated by triggering TH1 on at $t_5$. During the interval $(t_5 - t_3)$, load current freewheels through DF, *R* and *L* and decays from 10 A at $t_3$ to 3 A at $t_5$ as shown in Fig. 7.36.

## PROBLEMS

**7.1.** (*a*) Discuss the main classification of dc to dc thyristor converters. Which of these is more commonly employed and why ?

(*b*) Describe the principle of dc chopper operation. Derive an expression for its average dc output voltage.

(*c*) Explain, with appropriate waveforms, the different control strategies used for obtaining variable output voltage from a dc chopper. Which one of these is preferred over the other and why ?

**7.2.** (*a*) What is a dc chopper ? Describe the various types of chopper configurations with appropriate diagrams wherever necessary.

(*b*) A dc battery is charged from a constant dc source of 220 V through a chopper. The dc battery is to be charged from its internal emf of 90 V to 122 V. The battery has internal resistance of 1 Ω. For a constant charging current of 10 A, compute the range of duty cycle. [**Ans.** 0.4545 to 0.6]

**7.3.** For type-A chopper, express the following variables in terms of $V_s, R, I_0$ and duty cycle $\alpha$ in case load inductance causes the load current $I_0$ to remain constant at a value $I_0 = V_0/R$. Here $V_s$ is the source voltage.

(*a*) Average output voltage and current.
(*b*) Output current at the instant of commutation.
(*c*) Average and rms values of freewheeling diode current.
(*d*) Rms value of the output voltage.
(e) Average and rms values of thyristor current.

Sketch the time variations of gate signal $i_g$, output voltage $v_0$, output current $i_0$, thyristor current '$i_T$' and freewheeling diode current $i_{fd}$. [**Ans.** (*a*) $\alpha V_s$, $V_0/R$ (*b*) $V_0/R$ (*c*) $(1-\alpha) I_0$, $\sqrt{(1-\alpha)}\, I_0$
(*d*) $\sqrt{\alpha}\, V_s$ (e) $\alpha I_0$, $\sqrt{\alpha}\, I_0$]

**7.4.** Draw the power circuit diagram for a type-*A* chopper. Show load voltage waveforms for (*i*) $\alpha = 0.3$ and (*ii*) $\alpha = 0.8$. For both these duty cycles, calculate.

(*a*) the average and rms values of output voltage in terms of source voltage $V$

(*b*) the output power in case of resistive load $R$ and

(*c*) the ripple factors. [**Ans.** (*a*) (*i*) 0.3 $V_s$, 0.5477 $V_s$ (*ii*) 0.8 $V_s$, 0.8944 $V_s$
(*b*) 0.3 $V_s^2/R$, 0.8 $V_s^2/R$ (*c*) 1.5275, 0.5.]

**7.5.** (*a*) A chopper controls power given to an *R–L* load. For $T/T_a = Q$, derive an expression for the value of duty cycle $\alpha$ below which the per unit value of minimum load current falls below $x$ per unit of $V_s/R$.

(*b*) A chopper has the following data :

$$T = 1000\ \mu s,\ R = 2\Omega,\ L = 5\ \text{mH}$$

Find the duty cycle $\alpha$ so that per unit value of minimum load current does not fall below (*i*) 0.1 and (*ii*) 0.3 of $V_s/R$.

$$\left[\textbf{Hint.}\ (a)\ \text{Use Eq. (7.15) with } E = 0.\ \text{ Here } x = \frac{I_{mn}}{V_s/R}\right]$$

$$\left[\textbf{Ans.}\ (a)\ \alpha = \frac{1}{Q} \ln [1 + x(e^Q - 1)]\ \ (b)\ 0.12,\ 0.344\right]$$

**7.6.** (*a*) A chopper, fed from a 220-V dc source, is working at a frequency of 50 Hz and is connected to an *R–L* load of $R = 5\ \Omega$ and $L = 40$ mH. Determine the value of duty cycle at which the minimum load current will be (*i*) 5 A (*ii*) 10 A (*ii*) 20 A and (*iv*) 30 A.

(*b*) For the values of $\alpha$ obtained in (*a*), calculate the corresponding values of maximum currents and the ripple factors. [**Ans.** (*a*) 0.328, 0.50582, 0.7222, 0.86184
(*b*) 26.823 A, 1.4313 ; 34.3996 A, 0.9884 ; 40.055 A, 0.6202 ; 42.3767 A, 0.4004]

**7.7.** (*a*) A dc chopper feeds power to an RLE load with $R = 2\Omega$, $L = 10$ mH and $E = 6$ V. If this choppper is operating at a chopping frequency of 1 kHz and with duty cycle of 10% from a 220-V dc source, compute the maximum and minimum currents taken by the load.

(*b*) A dc chopper is used to control the speed of a separately excited dc motor. The dc supply voltage is 220 V, armature resistance $r_a = 0.2\ \Omega$ and motor constant $K_a\phi = 0.8$ V/rpm.

The motor drives a constant torque load requiring an average armature current of 25 A. Determine (*i*) the range of speed control (*ii*) the range of duty cycle. Assume the motor current to be continuous.

(*I.A.S., 1990*)

[**Ans.** (*a*) 9.016 A, 7.0367 A (*b*) Duty cycle : $\frac{1}{44} < \alpha < 1$, Speed : $0 < N < 2687.5$ rpm]

**7.8.** (*a*) Describe the principle of step-up chopper. Derive an expression for the average output voltage in terms of input dc voltage and duty cycle. State the assumptions made.

(*b*) A step-up chopper has output voltage of two to four times the input voltage. For a chopping frequency of 2000 Hz, determine the range of off-periods for the gate signal. [**Ans.** 250 μs to 125 μs]

**7.9.** For type-A chopper connected to RLE load, write the basic voltage equations and derive the expressions for the maximum and minimum values of load current in terms of source voltage $V_s$, $R$, $E$ etc.

Hence show that the expression for per unit ripple in the load current is given by

$$\frac{(1 - e^{-\alpha T/T_a})\,(1 - e^{-(1-\alpha)T/T_a})}{(1 - e^{-T/T_a})}$$

where $T$ = chopping period, $\alpha$ = duty cycle and $T_a = L/R$

**7.10.** A type-A chopper feeds RLE load. For low value of $T_{on}$, limit of continuous conduction is reached when load current during $T_{on} < t < T$ falls to zero. Derive an expression for this load current from basic voltage equations and hence obtain therefrom that the duty cycle $\alpha'$ at the limit of continuous conduction is given by

$$\alpha' = \frac{T_a}{T} \ln\left[1 + \frac{E}{V_s}(e^{T/T_a} - 1)\right]$$

where $V_s$ = source voltage, $T_a = L/R$ and $T$ = chopping period.

**7.11.** For type-A chopper feeding an RLE load, show that the maximum value of average current rating for the freewheeling diode, in case load current remains constant, is given by

$$\left[\frac{V_s}{4R}\left(1 - \frac{E}{V_s}\right)^2\right]$$

**7.12.** A battery with its terminal voltage of 200 V is supplied with power from type-A chopper circuit. The output voltage of the chopper consists of rectangular pulses of 2 ms duration in an overall cycle time of 5 ms. Internal resistance of the battery is negligible. Calculate :

(*a*) ripple factor

(*b*) average and rms values of output voltage

(*c*) rms value of the fundamental component of output voltage

(*d*) ac ripple voltage [**Ans.** (*a*) 1.2247 (*b*) 80 V 126.49 V (*c*) 85.63 V (*d*) 97.98 V]

**7.13.** A type-A chopper feeds power to RLE load with $R = 1.5\ \Omega$, $L = 6$ mH and $E = 44$ V. Other data for this chopper is as under :

Source voltage =220 V dc, chopping frequency = 1 kHz,

Output voltage pulse duration =400 μsec.

Repeat parts (*a*) to (*i*) of Example 7.8. [**Ans.** (*a*) $\alpha'$ – 0.221, current is continuous (*b*) 29.33 A (*c*) 33.764 A, 24.975 A (*e*) 2.496 A, 0.7719 A, – 0.1716 A, (*f*) 11.781 A, (*g*) 2591.82 W, 1290.52 W, 1300.5 W, (*h*) 29.445 A (*i*) 29.445 A].

**7.14.** A 500 kW dc series motor used in a high-speed train is controlled by a chopper circuit. The inductance of the armature and series field windings is augmented by an external inductance. The dc source voltage for the train is 1000 V. The duty cycle varies from 0.15 to 0.9. Find the range of total inductance (its maximum and minimum values) in the armature circuit in terms of chopping period in case the amplitude of armature current excursion is limited to 25 A. [**Ans.** 3.6 T to 10 T henries]

**7.15.** Write voltage equations governing the performance of type-A chopper during $T_{on}$ and $T_{off}$ periods for an RLE load. Hence obtain therefrom expressions for the maximum and minimum currents taken by the load.

**7.16.** Describe a voltage-commutated chopper with relevant current and voltage waveforms as a function of time. The chopper operation may be divided into certain well-defined modes. Enumerate the various simplifying assumptions made.

Show that effective on-period for this chopper is load dependent. Find also the minimum permissible on-period in terms of commutating parameters.

**7.17.** A voltage-commutated chopper delivers power to RLE load for which $R = 0$ and $L = 8$ mH. For a chopping frequency of 200 Hz and dc source voltage of 400 V, find the chopper duty cycle so as to limit the load current excursion to 40 A. [**Ans.** 0.8 or 0.2]

**7.18.** (*a*) Derive expressions for computing the magnitude of commutating components $C$ and $L$ for a voltage-commutated chopper. Relevant voltage and current waveforms may be drawn to assist these derivations. Discuss the considerations on which design value of these components depend.

(*b*) Describe the various important features of a voltage-commutated chopper, such as effective on period, minimum on-period etc.

**7.19.** Draw the power circuit diagram for a current commutated chopper. Explain the working of this chopper by dividing its commutation-process interval into some well-defined modes. Show distinctly the total turn-off time, turn-off times for main and auxiliary thyristors in the relevant waveforms drawn.

**7.20.** (*a*) Discuss the conditions governing the design of commutating components $L$ and $C$ for a current-commutated chopper and hence obtain expressions for these parameters in terms of source voltage, load current, circuit turn-off time etc. The current and voltage waveforms needed for obtaining the expressions of $L$ and $C$ may be sketched.

(*b*) A current-commutated chopper has the following date : Source voltage = 220 V dc ; Peak commutating current = 1.8 times the load current ; Main SCR $t_q = 20$ μs ; Factor of safety =2 ; Load current = 180 A.

Determine the values of the commutating inductor and capacitor, maximum capacitor voltage and the peak commutating current. [**Ans.** 13.832 μH, 30.002 μF, 342.22 V, 324 A]

**7.21.** The commutating components for a current-commutated chopper are $C = 40$ μF and $L = 18$ μH. DC source voltage is 220 V and load current is constant at a value of 180 A during the commutation interval. For this chopper, calculate

(*a*) circuit turn-off time for main thyristor,
(*b*) circuit turn-off time for auxiliary thyristor, and
(*c*) total commutation interval.

Derive the expressions used in parts of (*a*), (*b*) and (*c*).

[**Ans.** (*a*) 46.846 μs (*b*) 60.595 μs (*c*) 180.132 μs]

**7.22.** (*a*) Discuss the working of a load-commutated chopper with relevant voltage and current waveforms. Show voltage variation across each pair of SCRs as a function of time.

Derive an expression from which the value of commutating capacitor of this chopper can be computed.

(*b*) A load-commutated chopper, fed from 230 V dc source, has a constant load current of 50 A. For a duty cycle of 0.4 and a chopping frequency of 2 kHz, compute

(*i*) the average output voltage,

(*ii*) the value of commutating capacitance,
(*iii*) circuit turn-off time for one thyristor pair and
(*iv*) total commutation interval. [**Ans.** (*b*) 92 V ; 21.739 μF ; 100 μs ; 200 μs]

**7.23.** What is a multiphase chopper ? Bring out clearly, with appropriate waveforms, the difference between the in-phase operation and phase-shifted operation of a multiphase chopper. Hence show why phase-shifted operation is always preferred.

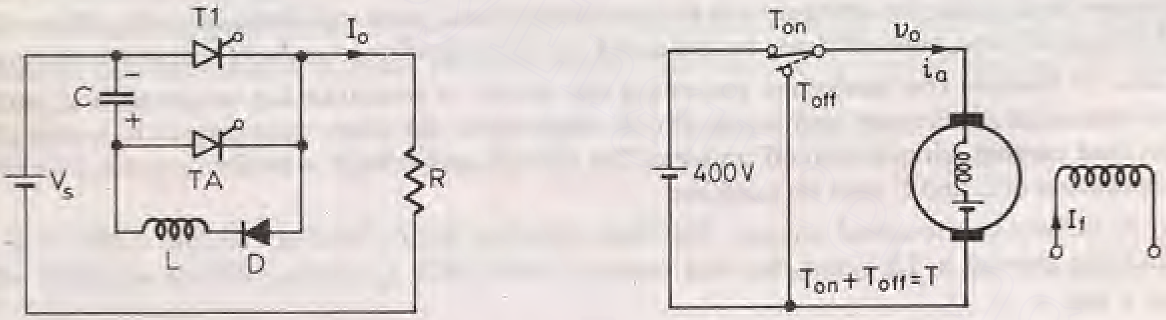
Enumerate the merits and demerits of multiphase choppers.

**7.24.** Describe a three-phase chopper with appropriate circuit diagram. Draw the input current waveforms for both in-phase and phase-shifted operations of this chopper on the assumption of ripple free output current. Suitable values of duty cycle may be chosen to illustrate your answer.

**7.25.** (*a*) A chopper circuit drives an inductive load from a 200 V dc supply. Given the load resistance of 40 Ω, the average load current 30 A and the operating frequency of the chopper 400 Hz, compute the ON and OFF periods of the chopper.

(*b*) A separately-excited dc motor is supplied from a 60 V dc source through a fixed frequency chopper. The rated speed is 900 rpm and the rated current is 30 A. Armature circuit resistance is 0.25 Ω. Find the duty cycle ratio of the chopper at rated motor torque for a speed of 300 rpm ignoring current pulsations. [**Ans.** (*a*) 2.083 ms, 0.417 ms (*b*) 0.4176]

**7.26.** (*a*) A chopper circuit as shown in Fig. 7.37 (*a*) is inserted between a battery, $V_s = 150$ V and a load resistance $R = 10\ \Omega$. The turn-off time for the main thyristor T1 is 110 μs and the maximum permissible current through it is 30 A. Calculate the values of the commutating components $L$ and $C$. [*I.A.S., 1995*]



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 7.37. Pertaining to Problem 7.26.

(*b*) Fig. 7.37 (*b*) shows the circuit schematic of a chopper driven separately-excited dc motor. The single-pole double-throw switch operates with a switching period $T$ of 1 ms. The duty ratio of the switch ($T_{on}/T$) is 0.2. The motor may be assumed lossless, with an armature inductance of 10 mH. The motor draws an average current of 20 A at a constant back emf of 80 V, under steady state.

(*i*) Sketch and label the voltage waveform $v_0(t)$ of the chopper for one switching period
(*ii*) Sketch and label the motor current $i_a(t)$ for one switching period $T$
(*iii*) Evaluate the peak-to-peak current ripple of the motor.

[**Ans.** (*a*) $L = 1.587$ mH, $C = 15.87$ μF
(*b*) Minimum current = 16.8 A, maximum current = 23.2 A,
peak-to-peak current = 6.4 A]

# EIGHT

# *Inverters*

A device that converts dc power into ac power at desired output voltage and frequency is called an inverter. Some industrial applications of inverters are for adjustable-speed ac drives, induction heating, stand by air-craft power supplies, UPS (uninterruptible power supplies) for computers, hvdc transmission lines etc. Phase-controlled converters, when operated in the inverter mode, are called line-commutated inverters, Chapter 6. But line-commutated inverters require at the output terminals an existing ac supply which is used for their commutation. This means that line-commutated inverters can't function as isolated ac voltage sources or as variable frequency generators with dc power at the input. Therefore, voltage level, frequency and waveform on the ac side of line-commutated inverters cannot be changed. On the other hand, force commutated inverters provide an independent ac output voltage of adjustable voltage and adjustable frequency and have therefore much wider applications. In this chapter, force-commutated and load commutated inverters are described.

The dc power input to the inverter is obtained from an existing power supply network or from a rotating alternator through a rectifier or a battery, fuel cell, photovoltaic array or magneto hydrodynamic (MHD) generator. The configuration of ac to dc converter and dc to ac inverter is called a dc-link converter. The rectification is carried out by standard diodes or thyristor converter circuits discussed in Chapter 6. The inversion is performed by the methods discussed in this chapter.

Inverters can be broadly classified into two types ; voltage source inverters and current source inverters. A voltage-fed inverter (VFI), or voltage-source inverter (VSI), is one in which the dc source has small or negligible impedance. In other words, a voltage source inverter has stiff dc voltage source at its input terminals. A current-fed inverter (CFI) or current-source inverter (CSI) is fed with adjustable current from a dc source of high impedance, *i.e.* from a stiff dc current source. In a CSI fed with stiff current source, output current waves are not affected by the load.

In VSIs using thyristors, some type of forced commutation is usually required. In case VSIs are made up of using GTOs, power transistors, power MOSFETS or IGBTs, *self-commutation* with base or gate drive signals is employed for their controlled turn-on and turn-off.

The object of this chapter is to describe the operating principles of both single-phase and three-phase inverters and to present their elementary analysis. As before, switching devices are assumed to possess ideal characteristics.

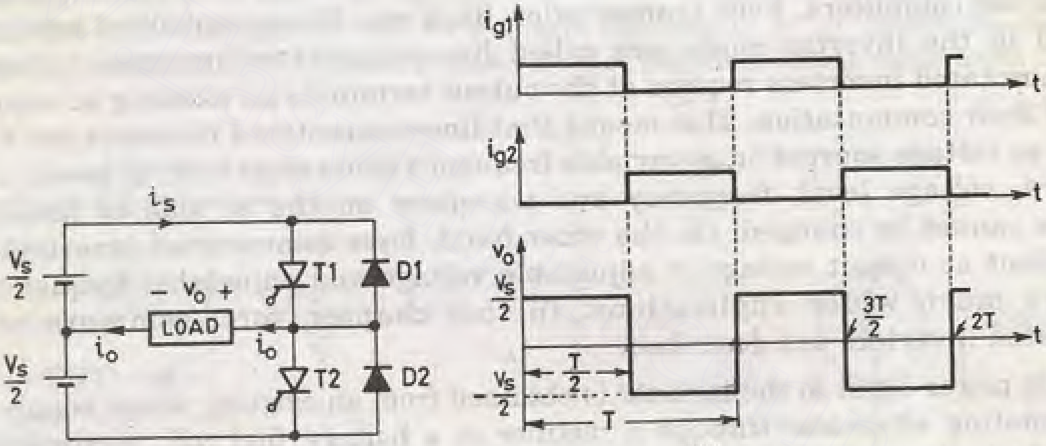
## 8.1. SINGLE-PHASE VOLTAGE SOURCE INVERTERS : OPERATING PRINCIPLE

In this section, operating principle of single-phase voltage source inverters is discussed.

### 8.1.1. Single-phase Bridge Inverters

Single-phase bridge inverters are of two types, namely *(i)* single-phase half-bridge inverters and *(ii)* single-phase full-bridge inverters. Basic principles of operation of these two types are presented here.

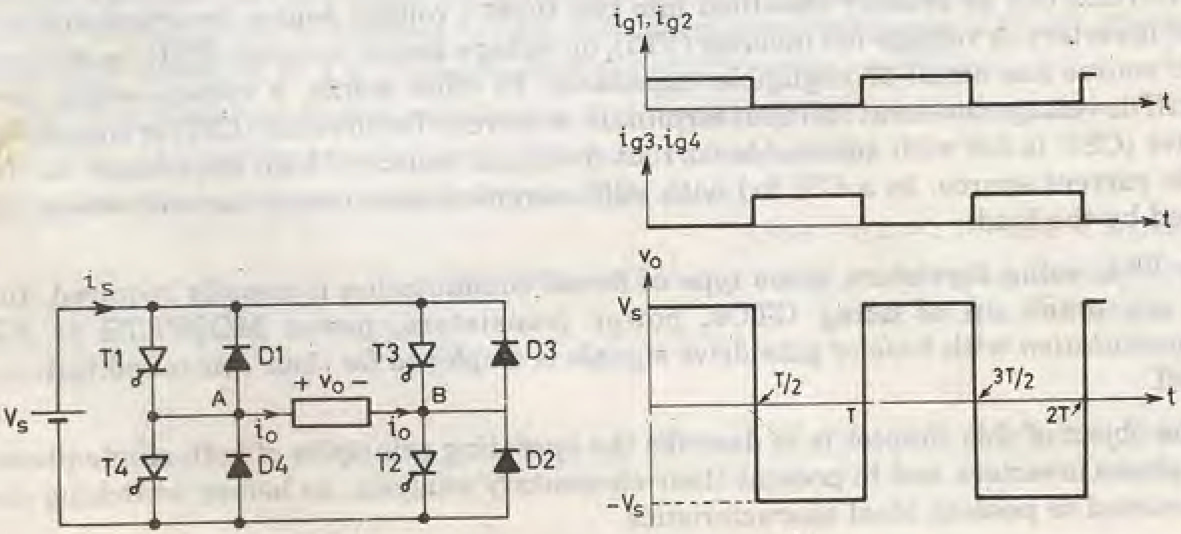
Power circuit diagrams of the two configurations of single-phase bridge inverter, as stated above, are shown in Fig. 8.1 *(a)* for half-bridge inverter and in Fig. 8.2 *(a)* for full-bridge inverter. In these diagrams, the circuitry for turning-on or turning-off of the thyristors is not shown for simplicity. The gating signals for the thyristors and the resulting output voltage waveforms are shown in Figs. 8.1 *(b)* and 8.2 *(b)* for half-bridge and full-bridge inverters respectively. These voltage waveforms are drawn on the assumption that each thyristor conducts for the duration its gate pulse is present and is commutated as soon as this pulse is removed. In Figs. 8.1 *(b)* and 8.2 *(b)*, $i_{g1} - i_{g4}$ are gate signals applied respectively to thyristors T1-T4.



*(a)* *(b)*

Fig. 8.1. Single-phase half-bridge inverter.

Single-phase half bridge inverter, as shown in Fig. 8.1 *(a)*, consists of two SCRs, two diodes and three-wire supply. It is seen from Fig. 8.1 *(b)* that for $0 < t \le T/2$, thyristor T1



*(a)* *(b)*

Fig. 8.2. Single-phase full-bridge inverter.

conducts and the load is subjected to a voltage $V_s/2$ due to the upper voltage source $V_s/2$. At $t = T/2$, thyristor T1 is commutated and T2 is gated on. During the period $T/2 < t \leq T$, thyristor T2 conducts and the load is subjected to a voltage $(-V_s/2)$ due to the lower voltage source $V_s/2$. It is seen from Fig. 8.1 (*b*) that load voltage is an alternating voltage waveform of amplitude $V_s/2$ and of frequency $1/T$ Hz. Frequency of the inverter output voltage can be changed by controlling $T$.

The main drawback of half-bridge inverter is that it requires 3-wire dc supply. This difficulty can, however, be overcome by the use of a full-bridge inverter shown in Fig. 8.2 (*a*). It consists of four SCRs and four diodes. In this inverter, number of thyristors and diodes is twice of that in a half bridge inverter. This, however, does not go against full inverter because the amplitude of output voltage as well as its output power is doubled in this inverter as compared to their values in the half-bridge inverter. This is evident from Figs. 8.1 (*b*) and 8.2 (*b*).

For full-bridge inverter, when T1, T2 conduct, load voltage is $V_s$ and when T3, T4 conduct load voltage is $-V_s$ as shown in Fig. 8.2 (*b*). Frequency of output voltage can be controlled by varying the periodic time $T$.

In Fig. 8.1 (*a*), thyristors T1, T2 are in series across the source ; in Fig. 8.2 (*a*) thyristors T1, T4 or T3, T2 are also in series across the source. During inverter operation, it should be ensured that two SCRs in the same branch, such as T1, T2 in Fig. 8.1 (*a*), do not conduct simultaneously as this would lead to a direct short circuit of the source.

For a resistive load, two SCRs in Fig. 8.1 (*a*) and four SCRs in Fig. 8.2 (*a*) would suffice, because load current $i_0$ and load voltage $v_0$ would always be in phase with each other. This, however, is not the case when the load is other than resistive. For such types of loads, current $i_0$ will not be in phase with voltage $v_0$ and diodes connected in antiparallel with thyristors will allow the current to flow when the main thyristors are turned off. These diodes are called *feedback diodes.*

### 8.1.2. Steady-state Analysis of Single-phase Inverter

Figs. 8.1 (*b*) and 8.2 (*b*) reveal that load voltage waveform does not depend on the nature of load. The load voltage is given by

for half-bridge inverter, $$v_0 = \frac{V_s}{2} \text{ ....... } 0 < t << T/2$$

$$= -\frac{V_s}{2} \text{ ....... } T/2 < t < T$$

and for full-bridge inverter, $$v_0 = V_s \text{ ........ } 0 < t < T/2$$

$$= -V_s \text{ ....... } T/2 < t < T$$

The load current is, however, dependent upon the nature of load. Let the load, in general, consist of RLC in series. The circuit model of single-phase half-bridge or full-bridge inverter is as shown in Fig. 8.3 (*a*). In this circuit, load current would finally settle down to steady state conditions and would vary periodically as shown in Figs. 8.3 (*c*) to (*f*). It is seen from these waveforms that

$$i_0 = -I_0 \text{ .......... at } t = 0, T, 2T, 3T, \ldots\ldots$$

and $$i_0 = I_0 \text{ .......... at } t = T/2, 3T/2, 5T/2, \ldots\ldots$$

The voltage equation for the circuit model of Fig. 8.3 (*a*) for half-bridge inverter and for $0 < t < T/2$ is given by

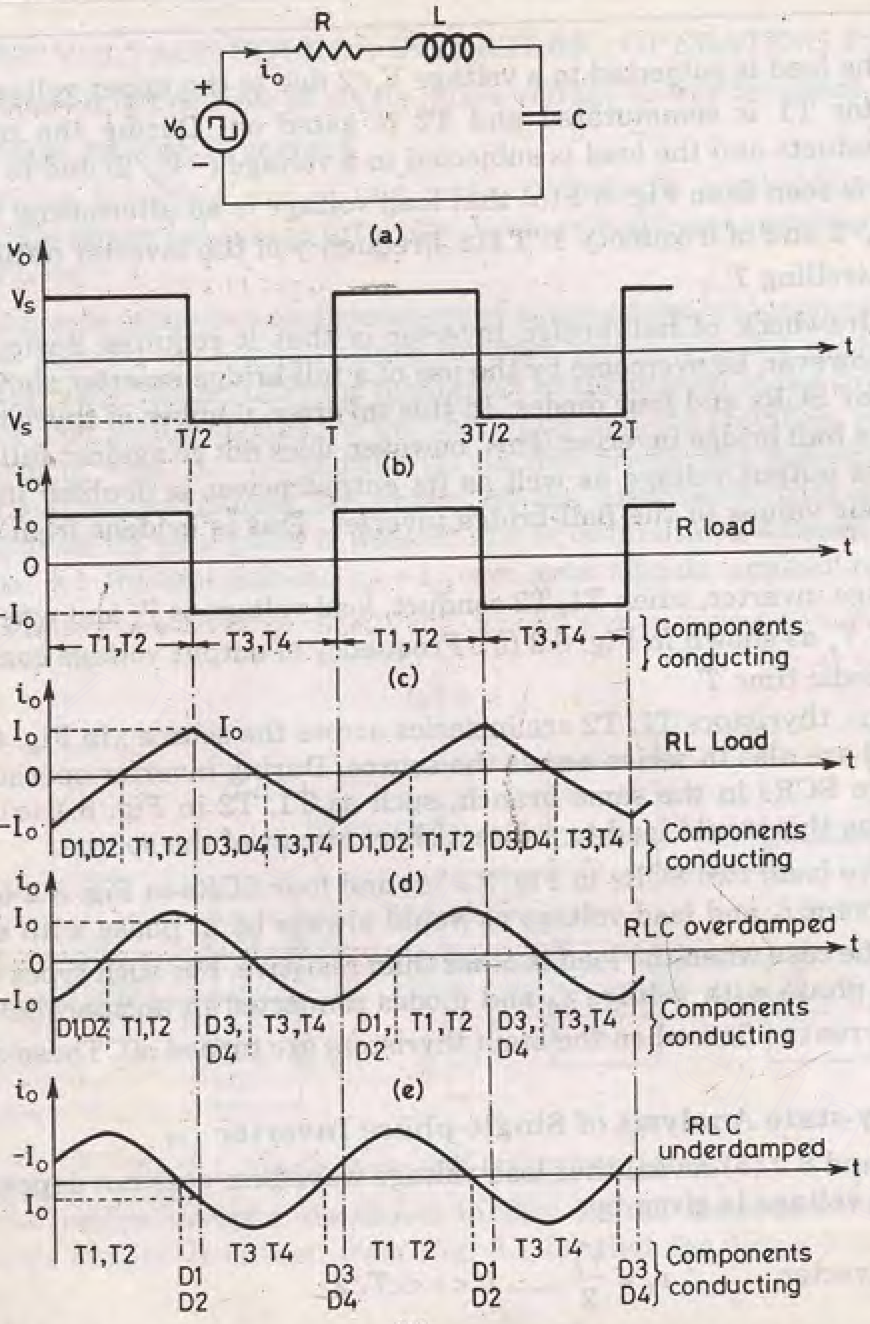


Fig. 8.3. Load voltage and current waveforms for single-phase bridge inverter.

$$\frac{V_s}{2} = R\,i_0 + L\frac{d\,i_0}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}\int i_0 dt + V_{c1} \qquad ...(8.1)$$

For full-bridge inverter, replace $V_s/2$ by $V_s$ in Eq. (8.1). In this equation, $V_{c1}$ is the initial voltage across capacitor at $t = 0$.

For $T/2 < t < T$, or $0 < t' < T/2$, the voltage equation for half-bridge inverter is

$$-\frac{V_s}{2} = R\,i_0 + L\frac{di}{dt'} + \frac{1}{C}\int i dt' + V_{c2} \qquad ...(8.2)$$

and for a full-bridge inverter, replace $(-V_s/2)$ by $(-V_s)$ in Eq. (8.2). In this equation, $V_{c2}$ is the initial voltage across capacitor at $t = 0$

Differentiation of Eqs. (8.1) and (8.2) gives

$$\frac{d^2 i_0}{dt^2} + \frac{R}{L}\frac{d i_0}{dt} + \frac{1}{LC} i_0 = 0$$

and
$$\frac{d^2 i_0}{dt'^2} + \frac{R}{L}\frac{d i_0}{dt'} + \frac{1}{LC} i_0 = 0$$

The solution of these second order differential equations can be obtained by using initial conditions as specified above. Components constituting the load decide the nature of load current waveforms.

For a full inverter, the rectangular output voltage waveform is shown in Fig. 8.3 (*b*). For this inverter, various current waveforms for different load characteristics are drawn in Fig. 8.3 (*c*) to (*f*). The nature of these current waveforms is briefly discussed in what follows :

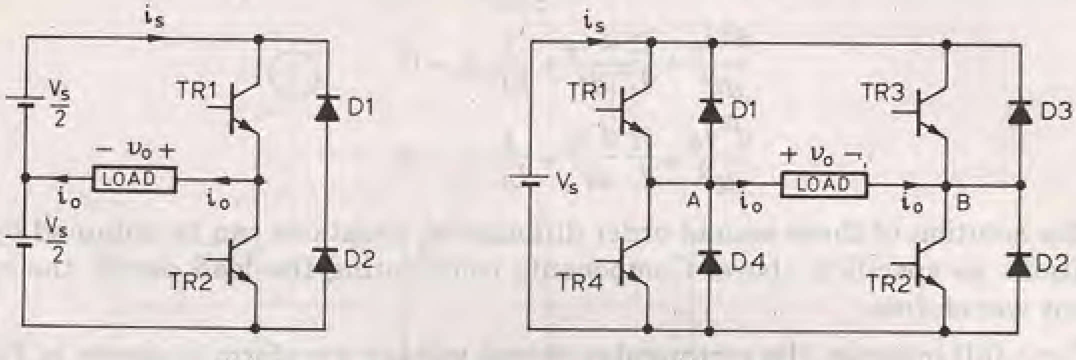
**R load.** For a resistive load $R$, load current waveform $i_0$ is identical with load voltage waveform $v_0$ and diodes D1-D4 do not come into conduction, Fig. 8.3 (*c*).

**RL and RLC overdamped loads.** The load current waveforms for RL and RLC overdamped loads are shown in Figs. 8.3 (*d*) and (*e*) respectively. Before $t = 0$, thyristors T3, T4 are conducting and load current $i_0$ is flowing from $B$ to $A$, *i.e.* in the reversed direction, Fig. 8.2 (*a*). This current is shown as $-I_0$ at $t = 0$ in Figs. 8.3 (*d*) and (*e*). After T3, T4 are turned off at $t = 0$, current $i_0$ cannot change its direction immediately because of the nature of load. As a result, diodes D1, D2 start conducting after $t = 0$ and allow $i_0$ to flow against the supply voltage $V_s$. As soon as D1, D2 begin to conduct, load is subjected to $V_s$ as shown. Though T1, T2 are gated at $t = 0$, these SCRs will not turn on as these are reverse biased by voltage drops across diodes D1 and D2. When load current through $D1$, $D2$ falls to zero, T1 and T2 become forward biased by source voltage $V_s$, T1 and T2 therefore get turned on as these are gated for a period $T/2$ sec. Now load current $i_0$ flows in the positive direction from $A$ to $B$ . At $t = T/2$ ; T1, T2 are turned off by forced commutation and as load current cannot reverse immediately, diodes D3, D4 come into conduction to allow the flow of current $i_0$ after $T/2$.

Thyristors T3, T4, though gated, will not turn on as these are reverse biased by the voltage drop in diodes D3, D4. When current in diodes D3, D4 drops to zero ; T3, T4 are turned on as these are already gated. The conduction of various components of the full-bridge inverter is shown in Figs. 8.3 (*d*) and (*e*).

**RLC underdamped load.** The load current $i_0$ for RLC underdamped load is shown in Fig. 8.3 (*f*). After $t = 0$ ; T1, T2 are conducting the load current. As $i_0$ through T1, T2 reduces to zero at $t_1$, these SCRs are turned off before T3, T4 are gated. As T1, T2 stop conducting, current through the load reverses and is now carried by diodes D1, D2 as T3, T4 are not yet gated. The diodes D1, D2 are connected in antiparallel to T1, T2 ; the voltage drop in these diodes appears as a reverse bias across T1, T2. If duration of this reverse bias is more than the SCR turn-off time $t_q$, *i.e.* If $(T/2 - t_1) > t_q$ ; T1, T2 will get commutated naturally and therefore no commutation circuitry will be needed. This method of commutation, knows as *load commutation*, is in fact used in high frequency inverters used for induction heating.

In single-phase bridge inverters shown in Figs. 8.1 (*a*) and 8.2 (*a*), thyristors are shown as switching devices. Note that basic inverter operation is not dependent on the particular semiconductor device used. It means that if *npn* transistors (or GTOs, IGBTs etc) are used as switching devices in place of thyristors as shown in Fig. 8.4, normal inverter operation is



(a) (b)

Fig. 8.4. Single-phase (*a*) half-bridge and (*b*) full-bridge inverters using transistors.

obtained. The operating principle of an inverter using transistors, Fig. 8.4, can be described merely replacing T (for thyristor) by TR (for transistor) in Figs. 8.1 (*b*), 8.2 (*b*) and 8.3 (*c* to *f*).

**Example. 8.1**. *(a) A single-phase full bridge inverter is connected to an RL load. For a dc source voltage of $V_s$ and output frequency $f = 1/T$, obtain expressions for load current as a function of time for the first two half cycles of the output voltage.*

*(b) Derive also the expressions for steady-state current for the first two half cycles.*

*(c) For $R = 20\ \Omega$ and $L = 0.1\ H$, obtain current expressions for parts (a) and (b) in case source voltage is 240 V dc and frequency of output voltage is 50 Hz.*

**Solution**. (*a*) For the first half cycle, Fig. 8.3 (*b*), *i.e.* for $0 < t < T/2$, the voltage equation for *RL* load is

$$V_s = Ri_0 + L\frac{di_0}{dt} \qquad \text{...(8.3)}$$

Its Laplace transform, with zero initial conditions, is

$$\frac{V_s}{s} = R\,I(s) + Ls \cdot I(s) = I(s)\ [R + Ls]$$

Its time solution is,

$$i_0(t) = \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right) \qquad \text{...(8.4)}$$

for $\qquad 0 < t < T/2.$

This is the expression of current as a function of time for the first half cycle from the instant of switching in with $i_0(t) = 0$ at $t = 0$.

At $t = T/2$, current $i_0(t)$ of Eq. (8.4) becomes the initial value for second half cycle.

$$\therefore \qquad i_0(T/2) = \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{RT}{2L}}\right) \qquad \text{...(8.5)}$$

For second half cycle, time limit is from $T/2$ to $T$ or $0 < t' < T/2$ where $t' = t - T/2$. The voltage equation for *RL* load during second half cycle is

$$-V_s = R\,i_0 + L\frac{di_0}{dt'} \qquad \text{...(8.6)}$$

Its Laplace transform, with initial current $i_0\ (T/2)$ given by Eq. (8.5), is

$$-\frac{V_s}{s} = I(s)\ [R + Ls] - i_0(T/2) \cdot L$$

or $$I(s) = -\frac{V_s}{s(R+Ls)} + \frac{L \cdot i_0(T/2)}{R+Ls}$$

Its time solution is $$i_0(t') = -\frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t'}\right) + i_0\,(T/2)e^{-\frac{R}{L}t'}$$

$$= -\frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t'}\right) + \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{RT}{2L}}\right)e^{-\frac{R}{L}t'}$$

or $$i_0(t') = -\frac{V_s}{R} + \frac{V_s}{R}\left(2 - e^{-\frac{RT}{2L}}\right)e^{-\frac{R}{L}t'} \qquad ...(8.7)$$

for $0 < t' < T/2$.

Eqs. (8.4) and (8.7) give the transient solution for load current for first and second half cycles respectively.

(*b*) Under steady-state conditions, at $t = 0$, $i_0(0) = -I_0$, Fig. 8.3 (*d*). Under this condition, Laplace transform of Eq. (8.3), is

$$\frac{V_s}{s} = I(s)\,[R + Ls] + L\,I_0$$

Its time solution is $$i_0(t) = \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right) - I_0\,e^{-\frac{R}{L}t} \qquad ...(8.8)$$

At $t = T/2$, $i_0\,(t) = I_0$ Fig. 8.3 (*d*), therefore from Eq. (8.8)

$$i_0(T/2) = I_0 = \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{RT}{2L}}\right) - I_0 \cdot e^{-\frac{RT}{2L}}$$

or $$I_0 = \frac{V_s}{R} \cdot \frac{1 - e^{-\frac{RT}{2L}}}{1 + e^{-\frac{RT}{2L}}} \qquad ...(8.9)$$

Substituting this value of $I_0$ in Eq. (8.8), gives

$$i_0(t) = \frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right) - \frac{V_s}{R}\,\frac{1 - e^{-\frac{RT}{2L}}}{1 + e^{-\frac{RT}{2L}}}\,e^{-\frac{R}{L}t} \qquad ...(8.10)$$

Eq. (8.10), gives the steady-state solution during the first half cycle, *i.e.* for $0 < t < T/2$.

For second half cycle, at $t = T/2$, $i_0\,(T/2) = I_0$, Fig. 8.3 (*d*). Under this initial condition, Laplace transform of Eq. (8.6), is

$$-\frac{V_s}{R} = I(s)\,[R + Ls] - L\,I_0$$

Its time solution is $$i_0(t) = -\frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t'}\right) + I_0\,e^{-\frac{R}{L}t'}$$

$$= -\frac{V_s}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t'}\right) + \frac{V_s}{R} \cdot \frac{1 - e^{-\frac{RT}{2L}}}{1 + e^{-\frac{RT}{2L}}} \cdot e^{-\frac{R}{L}t'} \qquad ...(8.11)$$

Eq. (8.11) gives the steady-state solution during the second half cycle, *i.e.* for $0 < t' < T/2$ where $t' = t - T/2$.

(*c*) Here $\frac{R}{L} = 200$, $T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{50} = 0.02$ sec., $\frac{RT}{2L} = 2$.

Expression for transient current during the first half cycle from Eq. (8.4), is

$$i_0(t) = \frac{240}{20}\left(1 - e^{-200t}\right) = 12\left(1 - e^{-200t}\right)$$

Expression for transient current for second half cycle, from Eq. (8.7), is

$$i_0(t') = -\frac{240}{20} + \frac{240}{20}\left(2 - e^{-2}\right)e^{-200t'}$$

$$= -12 + 22.376\, e^{-200t'}$$

From Eq. (8.9), $$I_0 = \frac{240}{20} \cdot \frac{1 - e^{-2}}{1 + e^{-2}} = 9.139 \text{ Amps.}$$

Steady-state current for the first half cycle, *i.e.* for $0 < t < T/2$, is obtained from Eq. (8.10) as

$$i_0(t) = 12\,(1 - e^{-200t}) - 9.139\, e^{-200t}$$

$$= 12 - 21.139\, e^{-200t} \quad \text{for } 0 < t' < T/2$$

For the second half cycle, steady state current from Eq. (8.11), is

$$i_0(t') = -12\,(1 - e^{-200t'}) + 9.139\, e^{-200t'}$$

$$= -12 + 21.139\, e^{-200t'} \quad \text{for } 0 < t' < T/2.$$

**Example 8.2.** *(a) Repeat parts (a) and (b) of Example 8.1 in case load consists of resistor R and capacitor C in series.*

*(b) For $R = 20\ \Omega$ and $C = 50\ \mu F$, obtain current expressions for part (a) for input voltage of 240 V and output frequency of 500 Hz.*

**Solution.** (*a*) For the first half cycle, *i.e.* for $0 < t < T/2$, voltage equation for RC load is

$$V_s = R\, i_0 + \frac{1}{C}\int i_0\, dt$$

or $$R\frac{dq}{dt} + \frac{q}{C} = V_s \qquad \text{...(8.12)}$$

Its Laplace transform, with zero initial conditions, is

$$R[s\,Q(s) - q(0)] + \frac{Q(s)}{C} = \frac{V_s}{s}$$

or $$Q(s) = \frac{V_s}{R} \cdot \frac{1}{s(s + 1/RC)}$$

Its time solution is, $$q(t) = CV_s\,(1 - e^{-t/RC})$$

or $$v_c(t) = \frac{q(t)}{C} = V_s\left(1 - e^{-t/RC}\right) \qquad \text{...(8.13)}$$

Also, $$i_0(t) = C\frac{dv_c(t)}{dt} = \frac{V_s}{R}\, e^{-t/RC} \qquad \text{...(8.14)}$$

Eqs. (8.13) and (8.14) give the transient solution for $v_c(t)$ across $C$ and $i_0(t)$ through $RC$ load during the first half cycle.

At $t = T/2$, $v_c(t)$ of Eq. (8.13) becomes the initial value of the second half cycle,

∴ $$v_c(T/2) = V_s\left[1 - e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}\right] \qquad \text{...(8.15)}$$

Voltage equation for $RC$ load for second half cycle is

$$-V_s = R\,i_0 + \frac{1}{C}\int i_0\,dt'$$

or
$$R\frac{dq}{dt'} + \frac{q}{C} = -V_s \qquad \text{...(8.16)}$$

Its Laplace transform, with initial voltage $v_c(T/2)$ given in Eq. (8.15), is

$$R[s\,Q(s) - C\cdot v_c(T/2)] + \frac{Q(s)}{C} = -\frac{V_s}{s}$$

or
$$Q(s) = -\frac{C\cdot V_s}{s(RCs+1)} + \frac{C\,v_c(T/2)}{\left(s+\dfrac{1}{RC}\right)}$$

Its time solution is
$$q(t') = -C\,V_s(1-e^{-t'/RC}) + C\,v_c(T/2)\,e^{-t'/RC}$$

or
$$v_c(t') = -V_s\left(1-e^{-\frac{t'}{RC}}\right) + V_s\left(1-e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}\right)e^{-\frac{t'}{RC}}$$
$$= -V_s + V_s\left(2-e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}\right)e^{-\frac{t'}{RC}} \qquad \text{...(8.17)}$$

Also
$$i_0(t') = C\frac{d\,v_c(t')}{dt} = -\frac{V_s}{R}\left(2-e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}\right)e^{-\frac{t'}{RC}} \qquad \text{...(8.18)}$$

Voltage and current solutions in the first half cycle are given by Eqs. (8.13) and (8.14) and in the second hlaf cycle by Eqs. (8.17) and (8.18).

(*b*) Under steady state working, the waveform for voltage $v_0$ across capacitor and load current $i_0$ through $RC$ are as shown in Fig. 8.5.

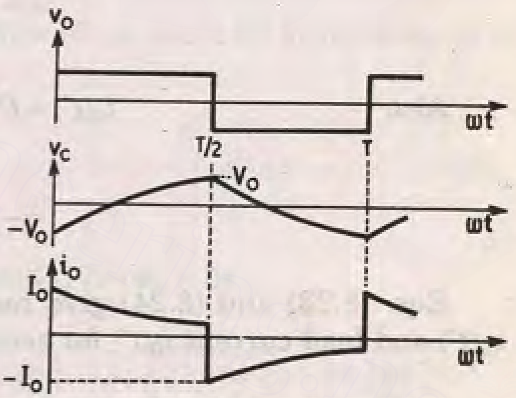


Fig. 8.5. Pertaining to Example 8.2.

At $t = 0$, $v_c(0) = -V_0$. Therefore, Laplace transform of Eq. (8.12) under this condition is

$$R\,[s\,Q(s) + CV_0] + \frac{Q(s)}{C} = \frac{V_s}{s}$$

or
$$Q(s)\left[Rs + \frac{1}{C}\right] = \frac{V_s}{s} - CR\,V_0$$

or
$$Q(s) = \frac{V_s}{R}\cdot\frac{1}{s\left(s+\dfrac{1}{RC}\right)} - \frac{CV_0}{\left(s+\dfrac{1}{RC}\right)}$$

Its time solution is
$$q(t) = CV_s\,(1-e^{-t/RC}) - C\,V_0\,e^{-t/RC}$$

or
$$v_c(t) = V_s\,(1-e^{-t/RC}) - V_0\,e^{-t/RC} \qquad \text{...(8.19)}$$

At $t = T/2$, $v_c(T/2) = V_0$, Fig. 8.5, therefore, from Eq. (8.19),

$$v_c(T/2) = V_0 = V_s\left(1-e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}\right) - V_0\,e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}$$

or
$$V_0 = V_s\,\frac{1-e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}}{1+e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}} \qquad \text{...(8.20}$$

From Eq. (8.19), $$v_c(t) = V_s\left(1 - e^{-\frac{T}{RC}}\right) - V_s\,\frac{1 - e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}}{1 + e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}}\cdot e^{-\frac{t}{RC}} \qquad \text{...(8.21)}$$

From above equation, $$i_0(t) = C\,\frac{dv_c(t)}{dt} = \frac{2\,V_s}{R}\cdot\frac{e^{-\frac{t}{RC}}}{1 + e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}} \qquad \text{...(8.22)}$$

Eqs. (8.21) and (8.22) give the steady-state solution for $v_c(t)$ and load current $i_0(t)$ for the first half cycle, *i.e.* for $0 < t < T/2$.

For second half cycle, at $t = T/2$, $v_c(T/2) = V_0$. Under this condition, Laplace transform of Eq. (8.16) is

$$R[s\,Q(s) - CV_0] + \frac{Q(s)}{C} = -\frac{V_s}{s}$$

or $$Q(s) = -\frac{V_s}{R}\cdot\frac{1}{s\left(s + \frac{1}{RC}\right)} + \frac{CV_0}{s + \frac{1}{RC}}$$

Its time solution is $$q(t') = -\,CV_s\,(1 - e^{-t'/RC}) + CV_0\,e^{-t'/RC}$$

or $$v_c(t') = -\,V_s\cdot(1 - e^{-t'/RC}) + V_0\,e^{-t'/RC}$$

$$= -\,V_s\left(1 - e^{-\frac{t'}{RC}}\right) + V_s\,\frac{1 - e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}}{1 + e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}}\,e^{-\frac{t'}{RC}} \qquad \text{...(8.23)}$$

Also $$i_0(t') = C\,\frac{d\,v_c(t')}{dt}$$

$$= -\,\frac{2V_s}{R}\,\frac{e^{-\frac{t'}{RC}}}{1 + e^{-\frac{T}{RC}}} \qquad \text{...(8.24)}$$

Eqs. (8.23) and (8.24) give respectively the steady-state solution for capacitor voltage $v_c(t')$ and load current $i_0(t')$ for second half cycle, *i.e.* for $0 < t' < T/2$.

(*c*) Here $R = 20\ \Omega$. $C = 50\ \mu\text{F}$. $\frac{1}{RC} = 1000$, $T = \frac{1}{f} = 0.002$

From Eqs. (8.13) and ( 8.14), the transient expressions for the first half cycle are

$$v_c(t) = 240\,(1 - e^{-1000\,t})$$

and $$i_0(t) = 12\,e^{-1000\,t})$$

From Eqs. (8.17) and (8.18), the transient expressions for the second half cycle are

$$v_c(t') = -\,240 + 240\,(2 - e^{-2})\,e^{-1000\,t'}$$

$$= -\,240 + 512\cdot 48\,e^{-1000\,t'}$$

and $$i_0(t') = -\,12\,(2 - e^{-2})\,e^{-1000\,t'} = -\,22.376\,e^{-1000\,t'}$$

From Eq. (8.20), $$V_0 = 240\,\frac{1 - e^{-1}}{1 + e^{-1}} = 110.91\ \text{volts.}$$

For the first half cycle, steady state voltage and current, from Eqs. (8.21) and (8.22) are

$$v_c(t) = 240\,(1 - e^{-1000\,t}) - 110.91\,e^{-1000\,t} = 240 - 350.91\,e^{-1000\,t}$$

and $$i_0(t) = \frac{2 \times 240}{20} \cdot \frac{e^{-1000\,t}}{1 + e^{-1}} = 17.545\, e^{-1000\,t}$$

For the second half cycle, steady state voltage and current, from Eqs. (8.23) and (8.24) are

$$v_c(t') = -\,240\,(1 - e^{-1000\,t'}) + 110.91\, e^{-1000\,t'} = -\,240 + 350.91\, e^{-1000\,t'}$$

and $$i_0(t') = -\,17.545\, e^{-2000\,t'}$$

**Example 8.3.** *A single-phase bridge inverter delivers power to a series connected RLC load with $R = 2\ \Omega$ and $\omega L = 10\ \Omega$. The periodic time $T = 0.1$ msec. What value of C should the load have in order to obtain load commutation for the SCRs. The thyristor turn-off time is 10 μsec. Take circuit turn off time as $1.5\, t_q$. Assume that load current contains only fundamental component.*

**Solution**. The value of $C$ should be such that RLC load is underdamped. Moreover when load voltage passes through zero, the load current must pass through zero before the voltage wave, *i.e.* the load current must lead the load voltage by an angle $\theta$ as shown in Fig. 8.6. Recall the phasor diagam for RLC series circuit. From this phasor diagram,

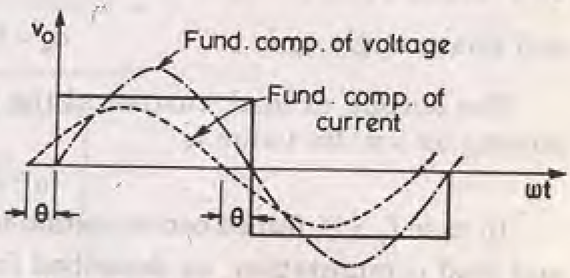


Fig. 8.6. Pertaining to Example 8.3.

$$\tan\theta = \frac{X_C - X_L}{R}$$

Here $X_C > X_L$ as the current is leading the voltage. Now $(\theta/\omega)$ must be at least equal to circuit turn-off time, *i.e.* $1.5 \times 10 = 15$ μsec.

$$\therefore \quad \frac{\theta}{\omega} = 15 \times 10^{-6} \text{ sec}$$

Now $$f = \frac{10^3}{0.1} = 10^4 \text{ Hz}$$

$$\therefore \quad \theta = 2\pi \times 10^4 \times 15 \times 10^{-6} = 0.9424778 \text{ rad} = 54°$$

$$\therefore \quad \tan 54° = \frac{X_C - 10}{2}$$

or $$X_C = 12.752764 = \frac{1}{2\pi \times 10^4 \times C}$$

or $$C = 1.248\ \mu\text{F}.$$

## 8.2. FOURIER ANALYSIS OF SINGLE-PHASE INVERTER OUTPUT VOLTAGE

The output voltage $v_0$ is shown in Fig. 8.1 (*b*) for a single-phase half-bridge inverter and in Fig. 8.2 (*b*) for a single-phase full-bridge inverter. These output or load voltage waveforms do not depend on the nature of load. Voltage waveshapes of Figs. 8.1 (*b*) and 8.2 (*b*) can be resolved into Fourier series as under :

$$v_0 = \sum_{n=1,3,5,\ldots\ldots}^{\infty} \frac{2V_s}{n\pi} \sin n\omega t \text{ volts} \qquad \ldots(8.25)$$

for single-phase half-bridge inverter and

$$v_0 = \sum_{n=1,3,5,\ldots\ldots}^{\infty} \frac{4\,V_s}{n\pi} \sin n\omega t \text{ volts} \qquad \ldots(8.26)$$

for single-phase full-bridge inverter.

Here $n$ is the order of the harmonic and $\omega = 2\pi f$ is the frequency of the output voltage in rad/s.

The load current $i_0$ can, therefore, be expressed as

$$i_0 = \sum_{n=1,3,5,\ldots\ldots}^{\infty} \frac{4\,V_s}{n\pi \cdot Z_n} \sin(n\omega t - \phi_n) \text{ Amps} \qquad \ldots(8.27)$$

where $Z_n$ = load impedance at frequency $n.f$

$$= \left[R^2 + \left(n\omega L - \frac{1}{n\omega C}\right)^2\right]^{1/2} \qquad \ldots(8.28)$$

and phase angle $\phi_n$ is

$$\phi_n = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{n\omega L - \frac{1}{n\omega C}}{R}\right) \text{ rad} \qquad \ldots(8.29)$$

The output, or load, current at the instant of commutation is obtained from Eq. (8.27) by putting $\omega t = \pi$. Its value is

$$i_0 = I_0 \quad \text{at} \quad \omega t = \pi \text{ rad}$$

In case $I_0 > 0$, forced commutation is essential. If $I_0 < 0$, no forced commutation is required and load commutation, as described for RLC underdamped load in Art. 8.1.2, can be relied upon.

If $I_{01}$ = *rms* value of the fundamental component of load current, then the fundamental load power $P_{01}$ is given by

$$P_{01} = I_{01}^2 R = V_{01}\, I_{01} \cos\phi_1$$

where $V_{01}$ = rms value of fundamental output voltage.

The fundamental output power $P_{01}$ does the useful work in most of the applications (*e.g.* electric motor drives). The output power associated with harmonic current does no useful work and is dissipated as heat leading to rise in load temperature.

**Example 8.4.** *A single-phase half-bridge inverter has load $R = 2\Omega$. and dc source voltage*

$$\frac{V_s}{2} = 115 \text{ V}$$

*(a) Sketch the waveforms for $v_0$, load current $i_{01}$, currents through thyristor 1 and diode 1 and voltage across thyristor T1. Harmonics other than fundamental component are neglected. Indicate the devices that conduct during different intervals of one cycle.*

*(b) Find the power delivered to load due to fundamental current.*

*(c) Check whether forced commutation is required.*

**Solution.** (*a*) The fundamental component of output voltage, from Eq. (8.25), is

$$v_{01} = \frac{2\,V_s}{\pi} \sin\omega t$$

The rms value of this voltage,

$$V_{01} = \frac{2 \times 230}{\pi \cdot \sqrt{2}} = 103.552 \text{ V}$$

and the load current,

$$I_{01} = \frac{V_{01}}{R} = \frac{103.552}{2} = 51.776 \text{ A}$$

The fundamental frequency component of load current is

$$i_{01} = 51.776\sqrt{2} \sin\omega t$$

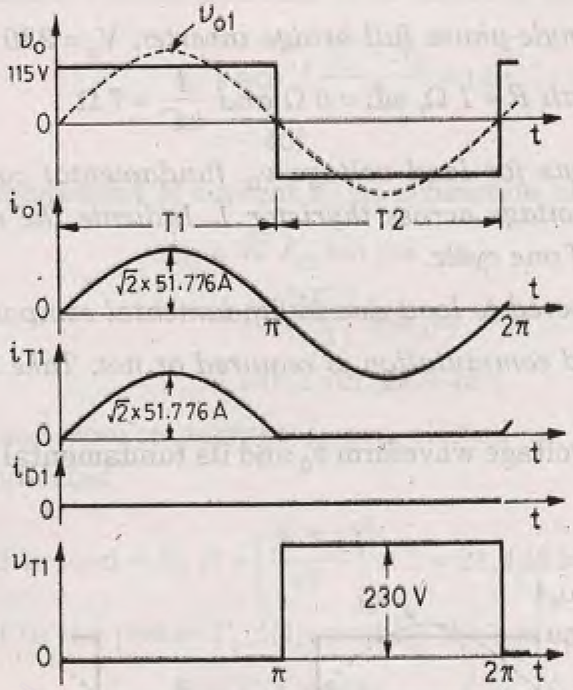


Fig. 8.7. Pertaining to Example 8.4.

**The waveforms for the various voltages and currents are shown in Fig. 8.7. For resistive load, diodes do not come into conduction, therefore $i_{D1}$ is zero. When T1 conducts, $v_{T1} = 0$. When T2 conducts, $v_{T1} = V_s$ as shown.**

**(b) Power delivered to load $= I_{01}^2\, R = (51.776)^2 \times 2 = 5361.5$ watts**

When T1 is conducting, power to load is delivered by upper source $\frac{V_s}{2}$ and when T2 is on, lower source delivers power to load.

Power delivered by each source $= \frac{V_s}{2} \cdot I_s$

Here $I_s$ = average value of fundamental component of source current over one cycle.

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi} \sqrt{2}\, I_{01} \sin \omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{2}\, I_{01}}{\pi}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 51.776}{\pi} = 23.304 \text{ A}$$

Power delivered by each source $= 115 \times 23.304$

$= 2679.96$ watts

Power delivered by both the sources

$= 2 \times 2679.96$

$\cong 5360$ W

Power delivered by both the sources is equal to that consumed by the load.

(c) As the diodes do not conduct, forced commutation is essential.

**Example 8.5.** *For a single-phase full-bridge inverter,* $V_s = 230$ *V dc,* $T = 1$ *ms. The load consists of RLC in series with* $R = 1\ \Omega$, $\omega L = 6\ \Omega$ *and* $\frac{1}{\omega C} = 7\ \Omega$.

*(a) Sketch the waveforms for load voltage* $v_0$, *fundamental component of load current* $i_{01}$, *source current* $i_s$ *and voltage across thyristor 1. Indicate the devices under conduction during different intervals of one cycle.*

*(b) Find the power delivered to load due to fundamental component.*

*(c) Check whether forced commutation is required or not. Take thyristor turn-off time as 100 μs.*

**Solution.** (*a*) The load voltage waveform $v_0$ and its fundamental component $v_{01}$ are shown in Fig. 8.8.

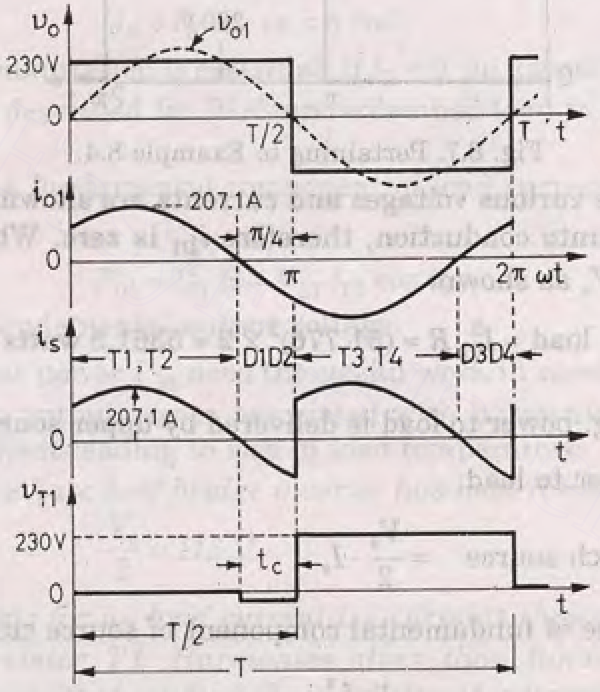


Fig. 8.8. Pertaining to Example 8.5.

Rms value of load voltage, from Eq. (8.26), is

$$V_{01} = \frac{4\,V_s}{\pi\sqrt{2}} = \frac{4 \times 230}{\pi\sqrt{2}} = 207.1 \text{ V}$$

Rms value of current, $$I_{01} = \frac{V_{01}}{Z_1}$$

$$= \frac{V_{01}}{\left[R^2 + \left(\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C}\right)^2\right]^{1/2}}$$

$$= \frac{207.1}{\left[1^2 + (-1)^2\right]^{1/2}} = \frac{207.1}{\sqrt{2}} = 146.46 \text{ A}$$

$$\phi_1 = \tan^{-1}\frac{X_L - X_C}{R} = \tan^{-1}(-1)$$
$$= -45°$$

The fundamental component of current $i_{01}$ as a function of time is

$$i_{01} = \sqrt{2}\, I_{01} \sin(\omega t - \phi_1)$$
$$= \sqrt{2}\,\frac{207.1}{\sqrt{2}} \sin(\omega t + 45°)$$
$$= 207.1 \sin(\omega t + 45°)$$

Load current $i_{01}$ and source current $i_s$ are plotted in Fig. 8.8 and the conducting components are also indicated.

(*b*) Power delivered to load $= I_{01}^2 R = \left(\frac{207.1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2 \times 1 = 21.445$ kW

This must be equal to the power $P_s$ delivered by the source.

$\therefore$ $$P_s = V_s I_s \text{ watts}$$

where $I_s$ = average value of the fundamental component of source current

$$= \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} \sqrt{2}\, I_{01} \sin(\omega t + 45°)\, d(\omega t)$$
$$= \frac{207.1}{\pi}\left[-\cos(\omega t + 45°)\right]_0^{\pi} = \frac{207.1}{\pi}[2\cos 45°] = 93.23 \text{ A}$$

$\therefore$ $$P_s = 230 \times 93.23 = 21.443 \text{ kW}$$

(*c*) Fig. 8.8 reveals that $v_{T1}$ is negative for some time before T3, T4 are triggered. Thus circuit turn-off time can be obtained from

or $$\omega t_c = \frac{\pi}{4}$$
$$t_c = \frac{1}{4}\cdot\frac{T}{2} = 0.125 \text{ ms} = 125\ \mu\text{s}$$

As voltage drop in diodes D1, D2 reverse biases T1, T2 for 125 μs, which is more than the thyristor turn-off time of 100 μs, no forced commutation is required.

**Example 8.6.** *A single-phase full-bridge inverter is fed from a dc source such that fundamental component of output voltage is 230 V. Find the rms value of thyristor and diode currents for the following loads :*

(*a*) $R = 2\ \Omega$ (*b*) $R = 2\ \Omega,\ X_L = 8\ \Omega,\ X_C = 6\ \Omega.$

**Solution.** (*a*) Rms value of fundamental component of load current

$$I_{01} = \frac{230}{2} = 115 \text{ A}$$

Fundamental component of output voltage $v_{01}$ is shown in Fig. 8.9 (*a*). For resistive load, load current waveform $i_{01}$ and thyristor current $i_{T1}$ handled by T1 are also shown in Fig. 8.9 (*a*). For $R$ load, diode does not conduct, therefore diode current $i_{D1}$ is zero. From the waveform of $i_{T1}$, rms value of thyristor current is

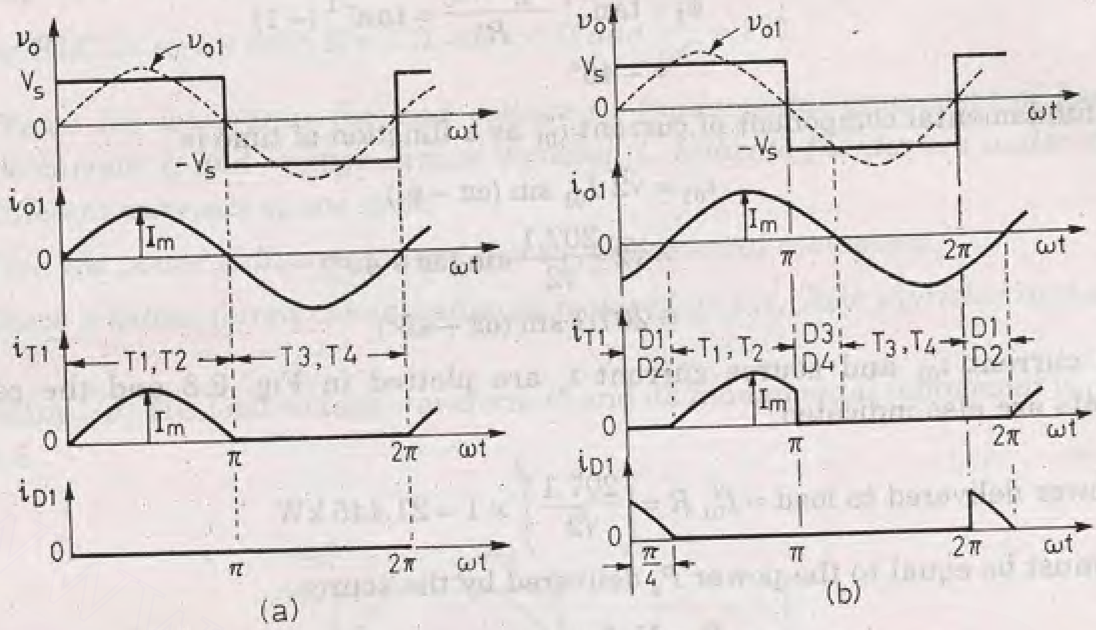


Fig. 8.9. Pertaining to Example 8.6.

$$I_{T1} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi} (I_m \sin \omega t)^2 \cdot d\,(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{I_m}{2\sqrt{\pi}}\left[\int_0^{\pi} (1 - \cos 2\,\omega t) \cdot d\,(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{I_m}{2} = \frac{115\sqrt{2}}{2} = 81.33 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of diode current, $I_{D1} = 0$

(*b*) Rms value of load current, $I_{01} = \dfrac{230}{[2^2 + (8-6)^2]^{1/2}} = 81.317$ A

Phase angle, $\phi_1 = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{X_L - X_C}{R} = 45°$

For $R = 2\,\Omega$, $X_L = 8\,\Omega$ and $X_C = 6\,\Omega$, the fundamental component of load current lags the output voltage by 45°, this is shown in Fig. 8.9 (*b*). The thyristor-current waveform $i_{T1}$ and diode-current waveform $i_{D1}$ are also shown in Fig. 8.9 (*b*). It is observed from this figure that rms value of thyristor current is

$$I_{T1} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{3\pi/4} (I_m \sin \omega t)^2 \cdot d\,(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{I_m}{2\sqrt{\pi}}\left[\left|\omega t - \frac{\sin 2\,\omega t}{2}\right|_0^{3\pi/4}\right]^{1/2} = 0.47675\, I_m$$

$$= 0.47675 \times \sqrt{2} \times 81.317 = 54.818 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of diode current, $I_{D1} = \left[\dfrac{1}{2\pi}\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/4} (I_m \sin \omega t)^2 \cdot d\,(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$

$$= 0.1507025\, I_m = 0.1507025 \times \sqrt{2} \times 81.317 = 17.328 \text{ A}$$

As the load current $i_0$ does not change from positive to negative at an angle $\omega t < \pi$, no time is available for SCR to turn off ; forced commutation is therefore essential.

**Example 8.7.** *A single-phase full-bridge inverter has RLC load of $R = 4\ \Omega$, $L = 35$ mH and $C = 155\ \mu F$. The dc input voltage is 230 V and the output frequency is 50 Hz.*

*(a) Find an expression for load current up to fifth harmonic. Also, calculate*

*(b) rms value of fundamental load current,*

*(c) the power absorbed by load and the fundamental power,*

*(d) the rms and peak currents of each thyristor,*

*(e) conduction time of thyristors and diodes if only fundamental component were considered.*

**Solution.** (*a*) From Eq. (8.26), an expression for output voltage is

$$v_0 = \frac{4V_s}{\pi}\sin\omega t + \frac{4V_s}{3\pi}\sin 3\,\omega t + \frac{4V_s}{5\pi}\sin 5\,\omega t$$

$$= \frac{4\times 230}{\pi}\left[\sin\omega t + \frac{1}{3}\sin 3\omega t + \frac{1}{5}\sin 5\,\omega t\right]$$

$$= 292.85\sin 314t + 97.62\sin(3\times 314t) + 58.57\sin(5\times 314t)$$

Load impedance at frequency $n.f$ is

$$Z_n = 4 + j\left(2\pi\times 50\times 35\times 10^{-3}\times n - \frac{10^6}{2\pi\times 50\times 155\times n}\right)$$

$$= 4 + j\left(11n - \frac{20.54}{n}\right)\Omega$$

$\therefore$ $$Z_1 = \sqrt{4^2 + (11 - 20.54)^2} = 10.345\ \Omega$$

and $$\phi_1 = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{11 - 20.54}{4}\right) = -67.25°$$

$$Z_3 = \sqrt{4^2 + \left(11\times 3 - \frac{20.54}{3}\right)^2} = 26.46\ \Omega$$

and $$\phi_3 = \tan^{-1}\left[\frac{33 - 20.54/3}{4}\right] = 81.3°$$

Similarly, $$Z_5 = 51.05\ \Omega \text{ and } \phi_5 = 85.5°$$

Load current, from Eq. (8.27), is given by

$$i_0 = \frac{292.85}{10.345}\sin(\omega t + 67.25°) + \frac{97.62}{26.46}\sin(3\omega t - 81.3°) + \frac{58.57}{51.05}\sin(5\,\omega t - 85.5°)$$

$$= 28.31\sin(314\,t + 67.25°) + 3.689\sin(3\times 314t - 81.3°) + 1.1473\sin(5\times 314t - 85.5°)$$

(*b*) Rms value of fundamental load current,

$$I_{01} = \frac{I_{m1}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{28.31}{\sqrt{2}} = 20.02\ \text{A}$$

(*c*) Peak load current

$$I_m = \sqrt{28.31^2 + 3.689^2 + 1.1473^2} = 28.572 \text{ A}$$

Rms load current $= \dfrac{28.572}{\sqrt{2}} = 20.207$ A

Load power $= (20.207)^2 \times 4 = 1633.3$ W

Fundamental load power,

$$P_{01} = I_{01}^2 \times R = (20.02)^2 \times 4 = 1603.2 \text{ W}$$

(*d*) Peak thyristor current $= I_m = 28.572$ A

Rms value of thyristor current

$$= \frac{28.572}{2} = 14.286 \text{ A}$$

(*e*) Fundamental component of current is

$$i_{01} = 28.31 \sin (314t + 67.25°)$$

This current leads the fundamental voltage component by 67.25°. This means that diode conducts for 67.25° and thyristor for 180 – 67.25 = 112.75°

∴ Conduction time for thyristors

$$= \frac{112.75 \times \pi}{180 \times 314} = 6.267 \text{ ms}$$

Conduction time for diodes $= \dfrac{67.25 \times \pi}{180 \times 314} = 3.738$ ms,

In case SCR turn-off time is less than 3.738 ms, load commutation will occur and no forced commutation will be required under the assumption of no harmonics.

## 8.3. FORCE-COMMUTATED THYRISTOR INVERTERS

For low-and medium-power applications, inverters using transistors, GTOs and IGBTs are becoming increasingly popular. However, for high-voltage and high-current applications, thyristors are more suitable.

In voltage fed inverters, thyristors remain forward biased by the dc supply voltage. This entails the use of forced commutation for inverter circuits using thyristors. As stated earlier, forced commutation requires a precharged capacitor of correct polarity to turn-off an already conducting thyristor. A large variety of forced commutation circuits have been described in the technical literature. Here popularly used McMurray technique will be described leading to the discussion of two types of force-commutated inverters, *viz* Modified McMurray inverter and Modified McMurray-Bedford inverter. These are now described in what follows :

### 8.3.1. Modified McMurray Half-bridge Inverter

Load commutated voltage-source inverter has been discussed in the latter part of the Section 8.1.2. It is shown there that for obtaining load commutation in VSI, the load circuit must be underdamped, *i.e.* capacitive reactance of the load must be more than its inductive reactance.

The object of this section is to describe modified McMurray half-bridge inverter which is a current-commutated VSI.

Fig. 8.10 shows a single-phase modified McMurray half-bridge inverter. It consists of main thyristors T1, T2 and main diodes D1, D2. The commutation circuit consists of auxiliary

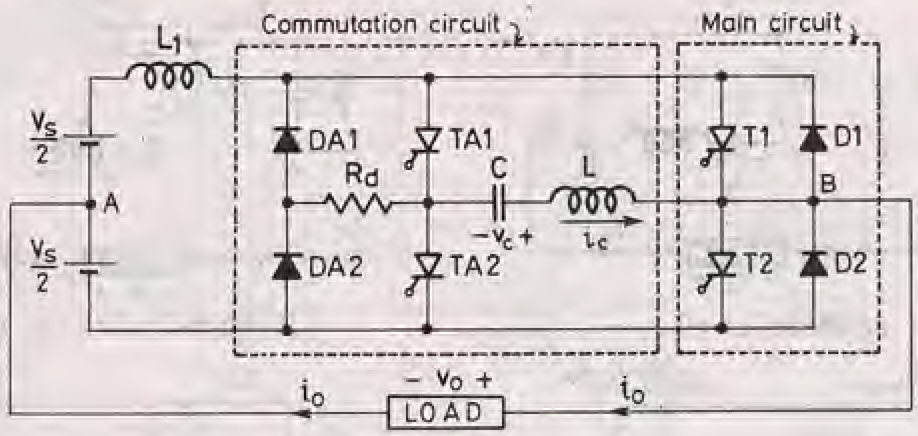


Fig. 8.10. Power circuit diagram for a single-phase modified McMurray half-bridge inverter.

thyristors TA1, TA2, auxiliary diodes DA1, DA2 ; damping resistor $R_d$, inductor $L$ and capacitor $C$. Three-wire dc supply is required and ac load is connected between terminals $A$ and $B$ as shown in Fig. 8.10. The function of capacitor is to provide the energy required for commutating the main thyristors. Inductance $L_1$ is for limiting $di/dt$ to a safe value in main and auxiliary thyristors. As an auxiliary thyristor is used for commutating the main thyristor, this inverter is also known as auxiliary-commutated inverter.

In the original inverter circuit given by McMurray, elements DA1, DA2 and $R_d$ were not present, hence the circuit of Fig. 8.10 is now commonly known as the modified McMurray inverter. As three-wire dc supply is required, as in Fig. 8.1, the term "half-bridge" is added to this inverter of Fig. 8.10.

The following simplifying assumptions are made for this inverter :

(*i*) Load current remains constant during the commutation interval.

(*ii*) SCRs and diodes are ideal switches.

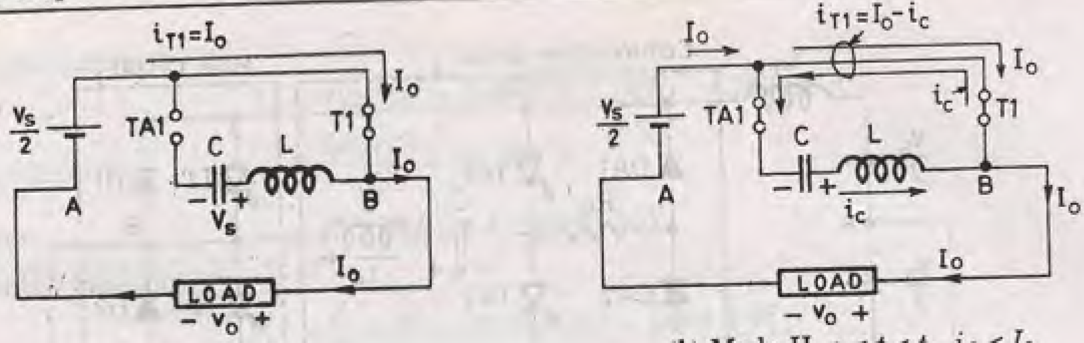
(*iii*) Inductor $L$ and capacitor $C$ are ideal in that they have no resistance.

The operation of this inverter of Fig. 8.10 may be subdivided into various modes as follows:

**Mode I** : Thyristor T1 is conducting a constant load current $I_0$, *i.e.* $i_{T1} = I_0$. Capacitor $C$ is already charged to a voltage $V_s$ with right hand plate positive because of the commutation of previously conducting thyristor T2. In this mode, the equivalent circuit of this inverter is as shown in Fig. 8.11 (*a*). With T1 conducting, commutation circuit is passive in this mode.

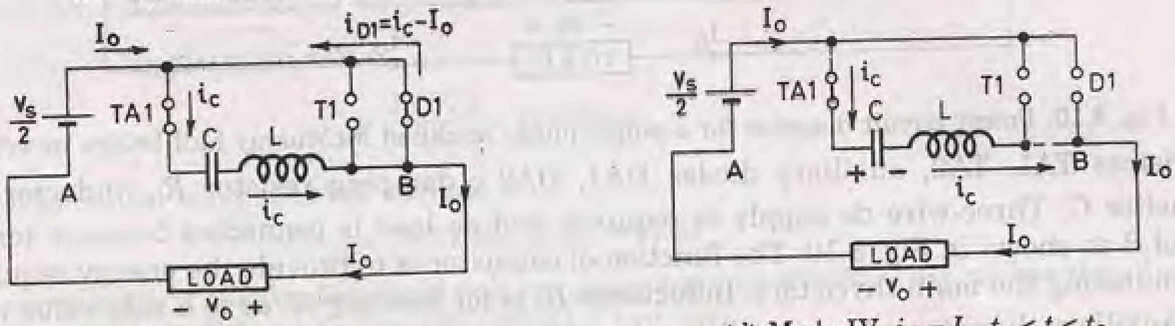
**Mode II.** Auxiliary thyristor TA1 is triggered at $t = 0$ to turn off the main thyristor T1. As TA1 is fired, capacitor current $i_c$ starts building up through resonant circuit consisting of $L$, T1, TA1 and $C$. Voltage drop across T1 reverse biases D1, current $i_c$ can therefore flow only through T1 and not through D1. As $I_0$ is constant, an increase in $i_c$ causes a corresponding decrease in $i_{T1}$ so that $i_{T1} = I_0 - i_c$ (KCL at node $B$ ). Waveforms of $i_c$, $i_{T1}$, $I_0$ and $v_c$ are shown in Fig. 8.12 and equivalent circuit is as shown in Fig. 8.11 (*b*). At $t_1$, $i_c$ rises to $I_0$ and therefore $i_{T1} = 0$. As a result, main thyristor T1 is turned off at $t_1$.

**Mode III.** After $t_1$, as resonant current $i_c$ exceeds $I_0$, the excessive current $i_c - I_0 = i_{D1}$ circulates through feedback diode D1, Fig. 8.11 (*c*). The voltage drop across D1 reverse biases T1 to bring it to forward blocking capability. When capacitor voltage $v_c$ discharges to zero, resonant current $i_c$ rises to peak value $I_{cp}$ as shown in Fig. 8.12. After attaining $I_{cp}$, $i_c$ begins



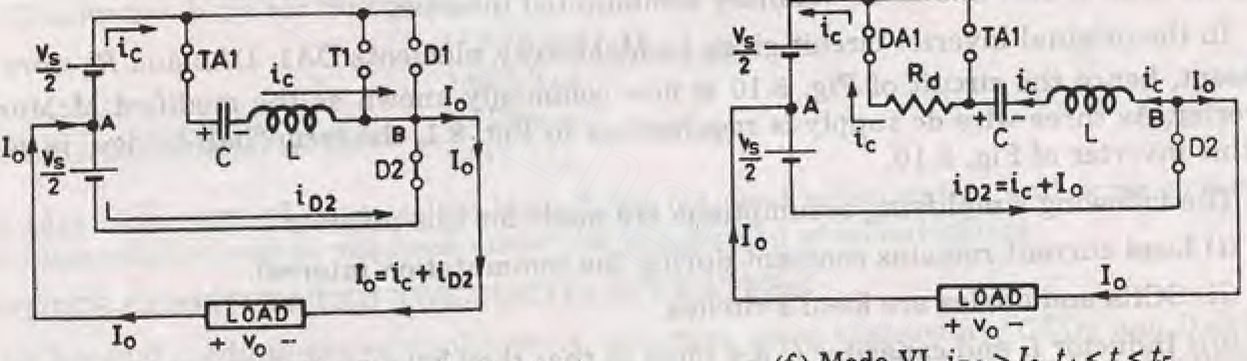
(*a*) Mode I, $t < 0$

(*b*) Mode II, $o < t < t_1, i_C < I_0$



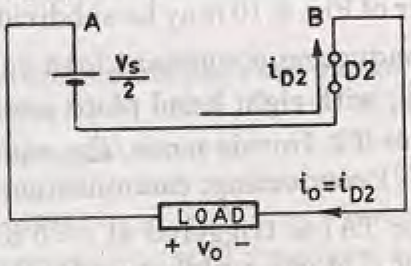
(c) Mode III, $i_c > I_0, t_1 < t < t_2$

(*d*) Mode IV, $i_C = I_0, t_2 < t < t_3$



(*e*) Mode V, $i_C < I_0$ and $i_C + i_{D2} = I_0, t_3 < t < t_4$

(*f*) Mode VI, $i_{D2} > I_0, t_4 < t < t_5$



(*g*) Mode VII, $i_c = 0, i_{D2} = i_0, t_5 < t < t_6$

Fig. 8.11. Operating modes of modified McMurray inverter of Fig. 8.10.

to decrease and in so doing, *C* begins to get charged in the reverse direction. At $t_2$, $i_C$ falls to $I_0$. In case $v_C$ is somewhat more than source voltage $V_s$ at $t_2$, diode D2 gets forward biased and starts conducting. In such a case, mode IV is absent ; otherwise mode IV follows.

**Mode IV**. After $t_2$, as $i_C$ tends to fall below $I_0$, diode current $i_{D1}$ becomes zero and D1, therefore, stops conducting. Constant load current $I_0$ continues flowing through $V_s/2$, TA1, C, L and load as shown in Fig. 8.11 (*d*). Load current charges capacitor *C* linearly with reverse polarity and at $t_3$, $v_C$ is somewhat more than $V_s$.

**Mode V**. At $t_3$, as $v_C$ becomes slightly more than $V_s$, an examination of Fig. 8.10 reveals that diode D2 gets forward biased and thus an alternate path for $I_0$ is provided. Load current

© Wiki Engineering Downloaded From : www.EasyEngineering.net www.raghul.org

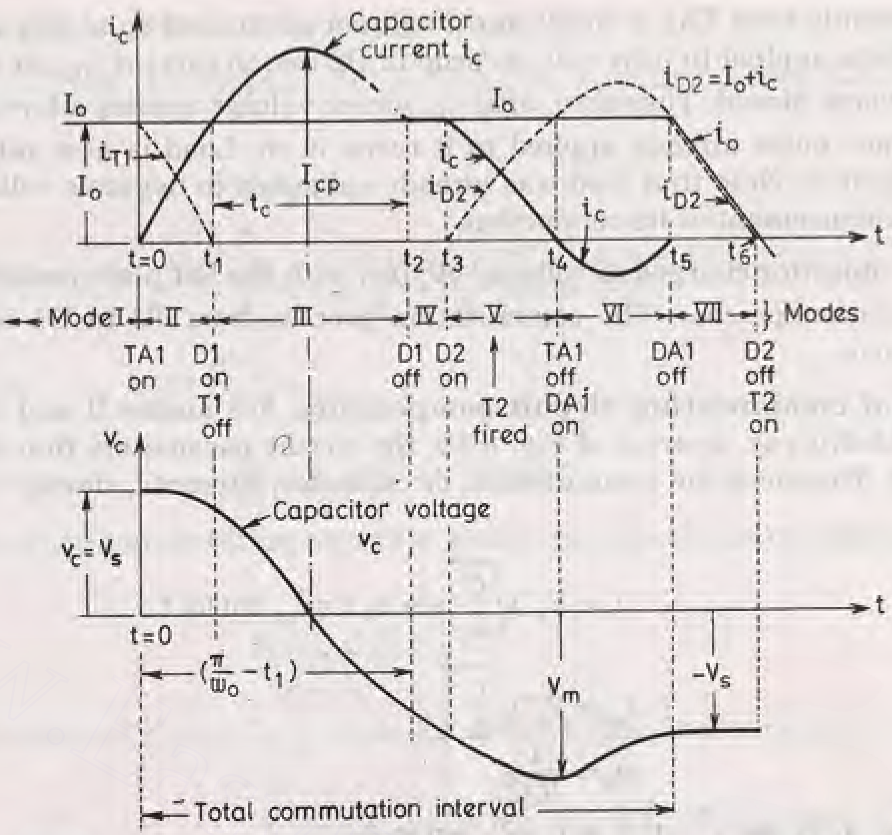


Fig. 8.12. Voltage and current waveforms for inverter of Fig. 8.10.

$I_0$ is now shared by resonant circuit and D2. Current through D2 flows through lower source $V_s/2$, D2 and load. After $t_3$, $i_C$ begins to decrease whereas $i_{D2}$ starts building up so that the sum of $i_C$ and $i_{D2}$ is equal to $I_0$, *i.e.* $i_C+i_{D2}=I_0$ (KCL at node *B*), Fig. 8.11 (*e*). The supply voltage $V_s$, through D2, is now impressed across the resonant circuit. The energy stored in *L* is transferred to *C* and as a consequence, capacitor is overcharged to a peak voltage $V_m$ at $t_4$.

The main thyristor T2 is usually given the trigger pulse $\pi\sqrt{LC}$ seconds after thyristor TA1 is fired, *i.e.* between the interval $t_3$ and $t_4$. But T2 will not turn on because of the reverse bias applied to it by the voltage drop in D2.

**Mode VI**. At $t_4$, $i_{D2}$ rises to $I_0$ and at the same time $i_C$ falls to zero. As $i_C$ tends to reverse. TA1 is turned off at $t_4$. Now $v_c>V_s$, capacitor *C* therefore discharges through $R_d$, DA1, source voltage $V_s$, D2, *L* and *C*, Fig. 8.11 (*f*). Note that current $i_C$ is now negative as it is flowing opposite to its positive direction. For a constant load current $I_0$, KCL at node *B* gives $i_{D2}=i_C+I_0$. During this mode, $i_{D2}$ is more than $I_0$.

The circuit traced by $i_C$ is usually critically damped so that $v_C$ gradually reduces to $V_s$. At $t_5$, $i_C$ becomes zero, $v_c=-V_s$ and $i_{D2}=I_0$. This is the end of mode VI and also the end of commutation interval.

The voltage drop across $R_d$ and DA1 applies a reverse bias across TA1 and completes its commutation process.

**Mode VII**. After $t_5$, the circuit model is as shown in Fig. 8.11 (*g*). The decreasing load current $i_0=i_{D2}$ becomes zero at $t_6$. Main thyristor T2 is already gated on during $t_4-t_3$ interval, *i.e.* $\pi\sqrt{LC}$ seconds after TA1 is fired. But it will not get turned on at this moment because of the reverse bias applied to it by voltage drop in D2 due to current $i_{D2}$. At $t_6$, $i_{D2} = 0$ and T2 is no longer reverse biased. Therefore, after $t_6$, source voltage applies a forward bias across T2 and the trigger pulse already applied to it turns it on. Load is now subjected to negative current as desired. Note that load was already subjected to negative voltage through D2 at $t_3$ at the commencement of its conduction.

After $t_6$, capacitor charged to voltage $-V_s$ (*i.e.* with the left plate positive) is ready for the next commutation process. The commutation process from T2 to D1 is identical to that described above.

**Design of commutating circuit components.** For modes II and III of the modified half-bridge McMurray inverter of Fig. 8.10, the circuit parameters that come into play are $L$ and $C$ only. Therefore the commutation, or capacitor, current $i_c$ during these two modes is given by

$$i_c = V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}\sin\omega_0 t = I_{cp}\sin\omega_0 t$$

where

$$\left.\begin{aligned} I_{cp} &= V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \\ \text{and} \qquad \omega_0 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad \ldots(8.30)$$

From Fig. 8.12, at $t_1$, $i_c = I_0 = I_{cp}\sin\omega_0 t_1$

or
$$t_1 = \frac{1}{\omega_0}\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{I_0}{I_{cp}}\right) \qquad \ldots(8.31)$$

Fig. 8.12 also reveals that

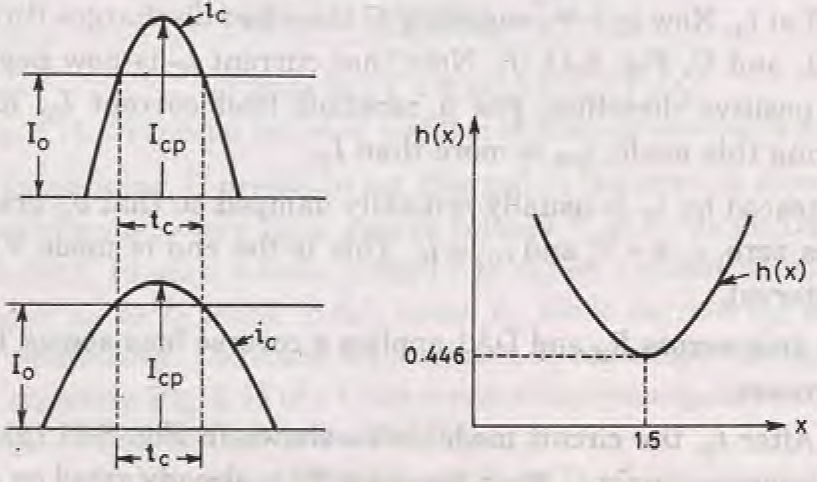
$$\omega_0 t_2 = \pi - \omega_0 t_1 = \pi - \sin^{-1}(I_0/I_{cp})$$

or
$$t_2 = 1/\omega_0\,[\pi - \sin^{-1}(I_0/I_{cp})]$$

Therefore, circuit turn-off time for main thyristor T1 is

or
$$t_c = t_2 - t_1 = \frac{1}{\omega_0}[\pi - 2\sin^{-1}(I_0/I_{cp})] \qquad \ldots(8.32)$$

This time $t_c$ must be greater than the thyristor turn-off time $t_q$. In practice, this condition can be realized by several different combinations of $C$ and $L$ as shown in Fig. 8.13 (*a*). The



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 8.13. Pertaining to the choice of $L$ and $C$ for the inverter circuit of Fig. 8.10.

current commutation pulse $i_c$ that gives the required turn-off time with the minimum amount of capacitor energy $\frac{1}{2}CV^2$, is the optimum pulse. This can be achieved from Eqs. (8.31) and (8.32) as under.

From Eq. (8.32), $$\frac{\omega_0 t_c}{2} = \frac{\pi}{2} - \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{I_0}{I_{cp}}\right)$$

or $$\frac{I_0}{I_{cp}} = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\omega_0 t_c}{2}\right) = \cos\frac{\omega_0 t_c}{2}$$

Let $\frac{I_{cp}}{I_0} = x$ so that $$\cos\frac{\omega_0 t_c}{2} = \frac{1}{x} \qquad ...(8.33)$$

or $$\frac{t_c}{\sqrt{LC}} = 2\cos^{-1}(1/x) = g(x) \qquad ...(8.34)$$

The energy $W$ that the commutating capacitor should provide for commutating the main thyristor is

$$W = \frac{1}{2}CV_s^2 = \frac{1}{2}LI_0^2$$

Substituting the value of $V_s = I_{cp}\sqrt{\frac{L}{C}}$ from Eq. (8.30) in the above relation, we get

$$W = \frac{1}{2}CV_s \cdot I_{cp}\sqrt{\frac{L}{C}} = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{LC}\cdot V_s I_{cp}$$

From Eq. (8.34), $\sqrt{LC} = \frac{t_c}{2\cos^{-1}(1/x)}$. Substituting this value of $\sqrt{LC}$ in the above relation, we get

$$W = \frac{1}{2}\frac{t_c \cdot V_s \cdot I_{cp}}{2\cos^{-1}(1/x)} = \frac{t_c \cdot V_s \cdot x\, I_0}{4\cos^{-1}(1/x)}$$

Here $V_s I_0 t_c$ has the dimensions of energy. In normalized form, the above relation is

$$\frac{W}{V_s I_0 t_c} = \frac{x}{4\cos^{-1}(1/x)} = h(x) \qquad ...(8.35)$$

On plotting $h(x)$ against $x$ from Eq. (8.35), it is found that normalized commutation energy $h(x)$ has a minimum value of 0.446 when $x = 1.5$, Fig. 8.13 (*b*)

From Eq. (8.34), $$g(x) = 2\cos^{-1}(1/1.5) = 1.682$$

The disign is carried out on the basis of worst operating conditions which consist of minimum supply voltage $V_{mn}$ and maximum load current $I_{om}$.

∴ From Eq. (8.30), $V_{mn}\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = I_{cp} = x\,I_{om} = 1.5\,I_{om}$

or $$\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = \frac{1.5\,I_{om}}{V_{mn}} \qquad ...(8.36)$$

From Eq. (8.34), $$\sqrt{LC} = \frac{t_c}{g(x)} = \frac{t_c}{1.682} \qquad ...(8.37)$$

Multiplication of Eqs. (8.36) and (8.37) gives

$$C = \frac{1.5\,t_c\,I_{om}}{1.682\,V_{mn}} = 0.892\frac{t_c\,I_{om}}{V_{mn}} \qquad ...(8.38)$$

From Eq. (8.36), $$\sqrt{\frac{L}{C}} = \frac{V_{mn}}{1.5\,I_{om}} \quad \text{...(8.39)}$$

Multiplication of Eqs. (8.37) and (8.39) gives

$$L = \frac{t_c \cdot V_{mn}}{1.682 \times 1.5\,I_{om}} = 0.3964\,\frac{t_c\,V_{mn}}{I_{om}} \quad \text{...(8.40)}$$

For critical damping of the resonant circuit consisting of $R_d$, $L$, $C$ in series in Fig. 8.10,

$$\sqrt{\frac{1}{LC} - \left(\frac{R_d}{2L}\right)^2} = 0$$

From above, the value of resistance that gives critical damping is

$$R_d = 2\sqrt{\frac{L}{C}} \quad \text{...(8.41)}$$

### 8.3.2. Modified McMurray full-bridge inverter

A single-phase modified McMurray full-bridge inverter is shown in Fig. 8.14. The number of thyristors, diodes and other components in full-bridge inverter is double of those in half-bridge inverter of Fig. 8.10. The operation of this inverter during commutation process is similar to that described in the previous section for a single-phase half-bridge inverter. For example, for mode I, thyristors T1, T2 are conducting and the load current completes its path through source $V_s$, T1, load, T2 and back to source. For mode II, TA1 and TA2 are triggered together for commutating main SCRs T1 and T2. For mode III, commutating current $i_c$ in both the circuits goes beyond load current $I_0$ so that T1 and T2 are turned off and so on.

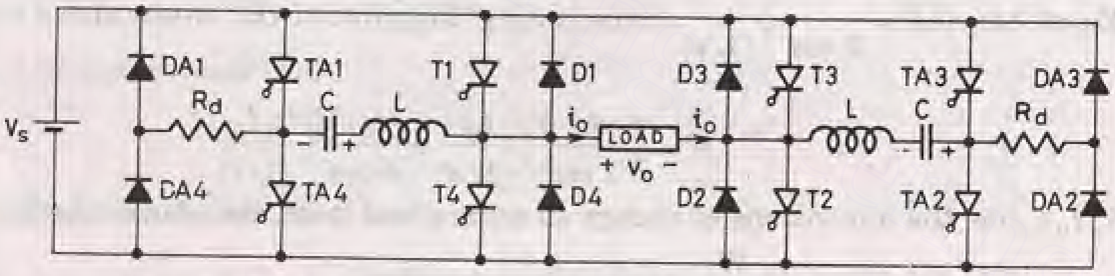


Fig. 8.14. Single-phase modified McMurray full-bridge inverter.

### 8.3.3. Modified McMurray-Bedford half-bridge inverter

Power circuit diagram of a modified McMurray-Bedford half-bridge inverter is shown in Fig. 8.15. It uses less number of thyristors and diodes as compared to modified McMurray half-bridge inverter, The number of capacitors and inductors is, however, large. This inverter, Fig. 8.15, consists of main thyristors T1, T2 and feedback diodes D1, D2. Commutation circuitry consists of two capacitors C1, C2 and magnetically coupled inductors L1, L2. Actually L1 and L2 constitute one inductor with a centre tap so that L1 = L2 = L. The inductance of this centre-tapped inductor is usually of the order of about 50 μH. The inductor is wound on a core with an air gap so as to avoid saturation. The value of capacitance for the two capacitors is the same, *i.e.* C1 = C2 = C. The inverter of Fig. 8.15 is a voltage-commutated VSI.

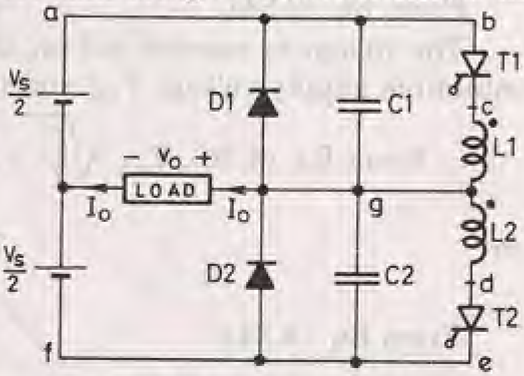


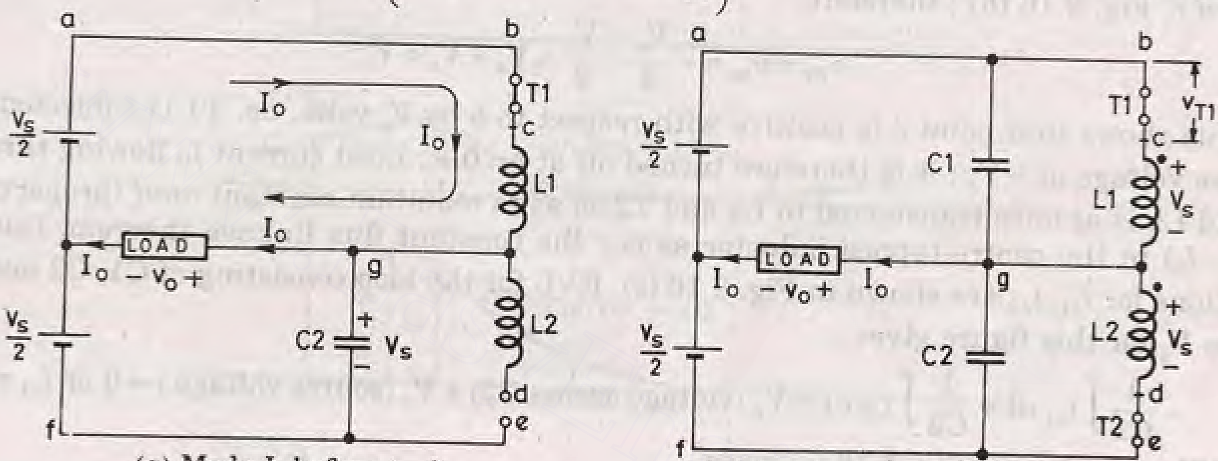
Fig. 8.15. Single-phase modified McMurray-Bedfored half-bridge inverter with L1 = L2 = L and C1 = C2 = C.

In a branch consisting of two tightly coupled inductors in series with two thyristors, if one thyristor is turned on, the other conducting thyristor gets turned off. This type of commutation is called *complementary commutation*. As a consequence, inverter shown in Fig. 8.15 is also known as *complementary-commutated inverter*.

The simplifying assumptions are the same as for the inverter discussed in previous section.

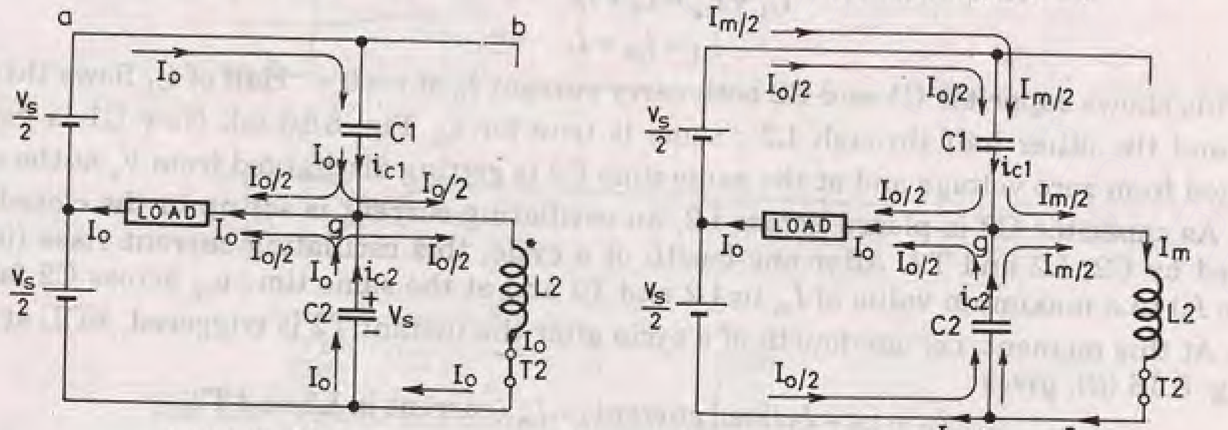
The working of this inverter can be explained in different modes as follows :

**Mode I.** In this mode, thyristor T1 is conducting and upper dc source supplies load current $I_0$ to the load, Fig. 8.16 (*a*). As the load current is almost constant, voltage drop across commutating inductance L1 $\left(\text{proportional to L1.}\frac{di}{dt}\right)$ is negligible. With zero voltage drop



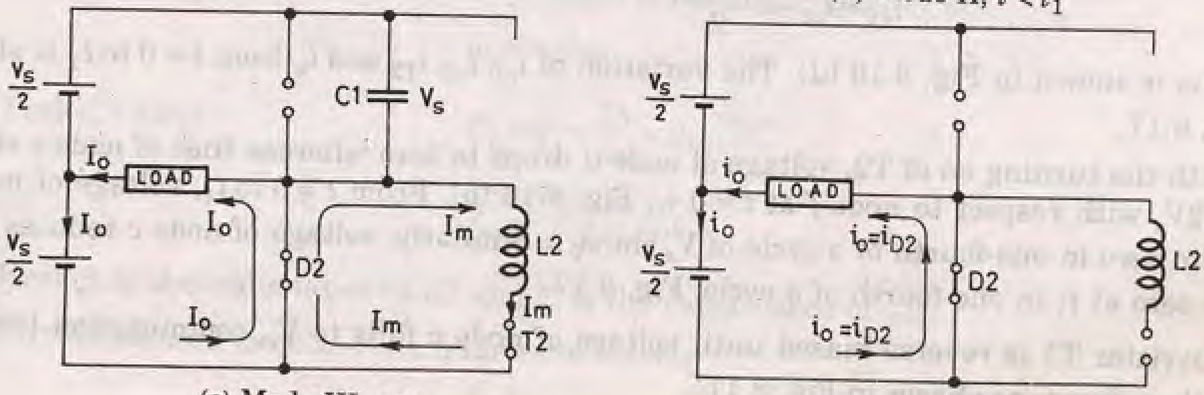
(*a*) Mode I, before $t = 0$

(*b*) Mode II, at $t = 0-$



(*c*) Mode II, $t = 0+$

(*d*) Mode II, $t < t_1$



(*e*) Mode III, at $t_1$

(*f*) Mode IV

Fig. 8.16. Different modes for the inverter of Fig. 8.15.

across L1 and T1, voltage across C1 is zero and voltage across C2 is $V_s$ because point $g$ is now effectively connected to point $a$ through L1 and T1 and lower plate of C2 is connected to point $f$. The equivalent circuit for this mode is as shown in Fig. 8.16 ($a$). In this figure, voltage of node $g$ with respect to point $f$ is $V_s$. The potential of points $d$ and $c$ is the same as that of point $g$ with respect to $f$. In other words, the potential of all the three nodes $g$, $d$, $c$ with respect to point $f$ is $V_s$; this is shown in Fig. 8.17.

**Mode II.** At $t = 0-$, thyristor T2 is triggered to initiate the commutation of T1. With the turning-on of T2, point $d$ gets connected to $e$ or $f$, *i.e.* to the negative supply terminal. Voltage across C1 and C2 cannot change instantaneously, therefore a voltage $V_s$ appears across L2. As L1 and L2 are magnetically coupled, an equal voltage is induced across L1 with terminal $c$ positive. Voltage $v_{T1}$ across terminals of thyristor T1 can be found by traversing the loop $b\ a\ f\ e\ d\ c$, Fig. 8.16 ($b$) ; therefore

$$v_{T1} = v_{bc} = -\frac{V_s}{2} - \frac{V_s}{2} + V_s + V_s = V_s$$

This shows that point $c$ is positive with respect to $b$ by $V_s$ volts, *i.e.* T1 is subjected to a reverse voltage of $-V_s$ ; it is therefore turned off at $t = 0+$. Load current $I_0$ flowing through T1 and L1 is at once transferred to L2 and T2 so as to maintain constant *mmf* (proportional to L1, $I_0$) in the centre-tapped inductor as per the constant flux linkage theorem. Current directions for $i_{c1}$, $i_{c2}$ are shown in Fig. 8.16 ($c$). KVL for the loop consisting of C1, C2 and the source $V_s$ for this figure gives

$$-\frac{1}{C1}\int i_{c1}\,dt + \frac{1}{C2}\int i_{c2}\,dt - V_s \text{ (voltage across C2)} + V_s \text{ (source voltage )} = 0 \text{ or } i_{c1} = i_{c2}.$$

KCL at node $g$ in Fig. 8.16 ($c$) gives

$$i_{c1} + i_{c2} = I_0 + I_0$$

or

$$i_{c1} = i_{c2} = I_0$$

This shows capacitor C1 and C2 both carry current $I_0$ at $t = 0+$. Half of $i_{c1}$ flows through load and the other half through L2 ; same is true for $i_{c2}$, Fig. 8.16 ($c$). Now C1 is getting charged from zero voltage and at the same time C2 is getting discharged from $V_s$ at the same rate. As capacitor C2 is placed across L2, an oscillating current is set up in the closed loop formed by C2, L2 and T2. After one-fourth of a cycle, this oscillating current rises (initial value $I_0$) to a maximum value of $I_m$ in L2 and T2 and at the same time $v_{c2}$ across C2 falls to zero. At this moment, *i.e.* one-fourth of a cycle after the instant T2 is triggered, KCL at node $g$, Fig. 8.16 ($d$), gives

$$i_{c1} + i_{c2} = I_0 \text{ (load current)} + I_m \text{ (current in L2 and T2)}$$

or

$$i_{c1} = i_{c2} = \frac{I_0 + I_m}{2}$$

This is shown in Fig. 8.16 ($d$). The variation of $i_{c1}$, $i_{c2}$, $i_{T2}$ and $i_0$ from $t = 0$ to $t_1$ is shown in Fig. 8.17.

With the turning on of T2, voltage of node $d$ drops to zero whereas that of node $c$ shoots up to $2V_s$ with respect to node $f$ at $t = 0+$, Fig. 8.16 ($b$). From $t = 0$ to $t_1$, voltage of node $g$ drops to zero in one-fourth of a cycle of $V_s \sin \omega_0 t$. Similarly, voltage of node $c$ reduces from $2V_s$ to zero at $t_1$ in one-fourth of a cycle, Fig. 8.17.

Thyristor T1 is reverse biased until voltage of node $c$ falls to $V_s$, commutation time for T1 is therefore $t_c$ as shown in Fig. 8.17.

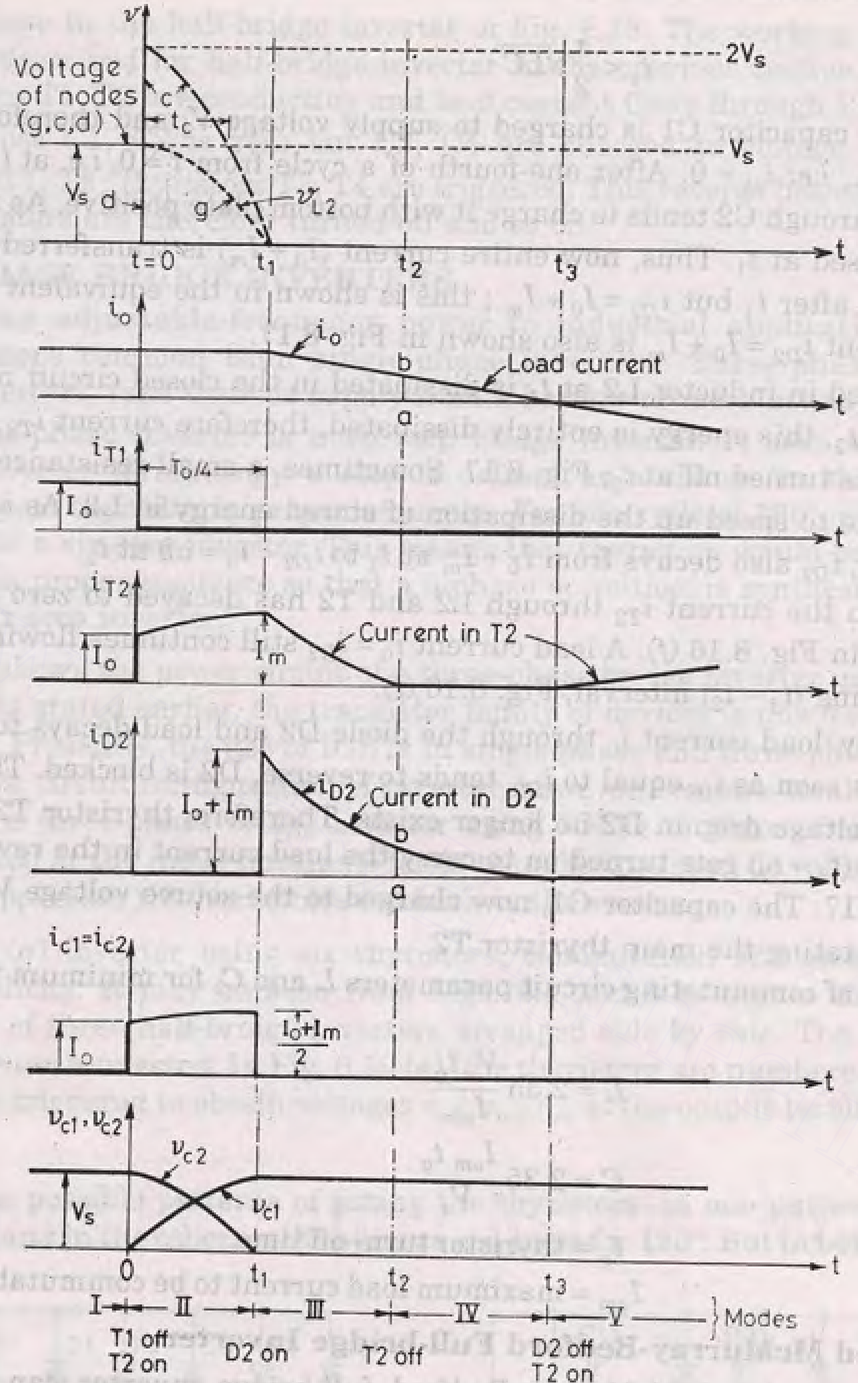


Fig. 8.17. Voltage and current wave-forms for the inverter of Fig. 8.15.

For the circuit consisting of C2, L2 and T2, ringing frequency is

$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$

Periodic time $$T_0 = \frac{1}{f_0} = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0} = 2\pi\sqrt{LC}$$

$\therefore$ $$t_1 = \frac{T_0}{4} = \frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{LC}$$

Here $L$ is the inductance of L2 and $C$ is the capacitance of C2.

Circuit turn-off time $t_c$ < one quarter of a cycle

or $$t_c < t_1$$

or
$$t_c < \frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{LC}$$

**Mode III.** At $t_1$, capacitor C1 is charged to supply voltage $V_s$ and therefore no current can flow through C1, *i.e.* $i_{c1} = 0$. After one-fourth of a cycle from $t = 0$, *i.e.* at $t_1$, $v_{c2} = 0$. Just after $t_1$, $(I_0 + I_m)/2$ through C2 tends to charge it with bottom plate positive. As a result, diode D2 gets forward biased at $t_1$. Thus, now entire current $(I_0 + I_m)$ is transferred to D2 so that both $i_{c1} = i_{c2} = 0$ just after $t_1$ but $i_{D2} = I_0 + I_m$ ; this is shown in the equivalent circuit of Fig. 8.16 (*e*). Diode current $i_{D2} = I_0 + I_m$ is also shown in Fig. 8.17.

The energy stored in inductor L2 at $t_1$ is dissipated in the closed circuit made up of L2, T2 and D2. At time $t_2$, this energy is entirely dissipated, therefore current $i_{T2}$ decays to zero and as a result, T2 is turned off at $t_2$, Fig. 8.17. Sometimes, a small resistance is included in series with the diode to speed up the dissipation of stored energy in L2. As $i_{T2}$ decays from $I_m$ at $t_1$ to zero at $t_2$, $i_{D2}$ also decays from $I_0 + I_m$ at $t_1$ to $i_{D2} = i_0 = ab$ at $t_2$.

**Mode IV**. When the current $i_{T2}$ through L2 and T2 has decayed to zero the equivalent circuit is as shown in Fig. 8.16 (*f*). A load current $i_0 = i_{D2}$ still continues flowing through the diode D2 as $i_{D2}$ during $(t_3 - t_2)$ interval, Fig. 8.16 (*f*).

**Mode V**. Finally, load current $i_0$ through the diode D2 and load decays to zero at $t_3$ and is then reversed. As soon as $i_0$, equal to $i_{D2}$, tends to reverse, D2 is blocked. The reverse bias across T2, due to voltage drop in D2 no longer exists. Therefore, thyristor T2 already gated during the interval $(t_3 - t_2)$ gets turned on to carry the load current in the reversed direction as shown in Fig. 8.17. The capacitor C1, now charged to the source voltage $V_s$, Fig. 8.16 (*e*), is ready for commutating the main thyristor T2.

The magnitude of commutating circuit parameters $L$ and $C$, for minimum trapped energy, is given by

$$L = 2.35\frac{V_s t_q}{I_{om}} \quad ...(8.42)$$

and
$$C = 2.35\frac{I_{om} t_q}{V_s} \quad ...(8.43)$$

where $t_q$ = thyristor turn–off time.

and $I_{om}$ = maximum load current to be commutated.

### 8.3.4. Modified McMurray-Bedford Full-bridge Inverter

A single-phase modified McMurray-Bedford full-bridge inverter can be realized by connecting two half-bridge inverters as shown in Fig. 8.18. The various components required

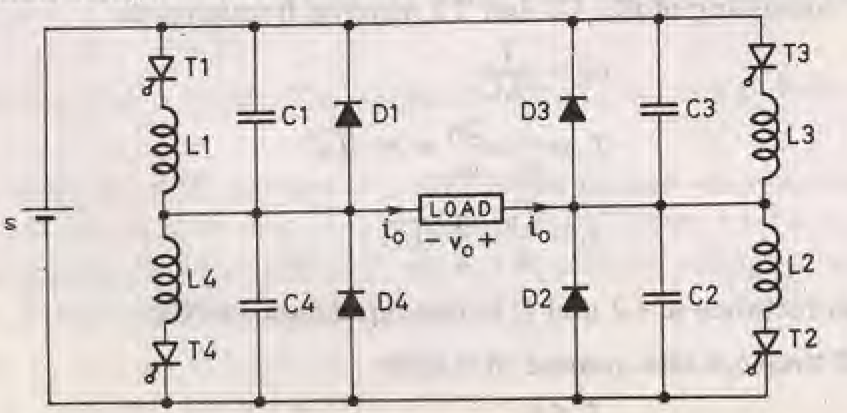


Fig. 8.18. Single-phase modified McMurray-Bedford full-bridge inverter.

are double of those in the half-bridge inverter of Fig. 8.15. The working of this inverter is similar to that described for half-bridge inverter in the previous section. For example, for mode I, thyristors T1, T2 are conducting and load current flows through $V_s$, T1, L1, load, L2, T2. Voltage across C1, C2 is zero but C3, C4 are charged to voltage $V_s$. For initiating commutation of T1, T2 ; thyristors T3, T4 are triggered. This reverse biases T1, T2 by voltage $-V_s$, these thyristors are therefore turned off and so on.

## 8.4. THREE PHASE BRIDGE INVERTERS

For providing adjustable-frequency power to industrial applications, three-phase inverters are more common than single-phase inverters. Three-phase inverters, like single-phase inverters, take their dc supply from a battery or more usually from a rectifier.

A basic three-phase inverter is a six-step bridge inverter. It uses a minimum of six thyristors. In inverter terminology, a step is defined as a change in the firing from one thyristor to the next thyristor in proper sequence. For one cycle of 360°, each step would be of 60° interval for a six-step inverter. This means that thyristors would be gated at regular intervals of 60° in proper sequence so that a 3-phase ac voltage is synthesized at the output terminals of a six-step inverter.

Fig. 8.19 (*a*) shows the power circuit of a three-phase bridge inverter using six thyristors and six diodes. As stated earlier, the transistor family of devices is now very widely used in inverter circuits. Presently, the use of IGBTs in single-phase and three-phase inverters is on the rise. The basic circuit configuration of inverter, however, remains unaltered as shown in Fig. 8.19 (*b*) for a three-phase bridge inverter using IGBTs in place of thyristors. A large capacitor connected at the input terminals tends to make the input dc voltage constant. This capacitor also suppresses the harmonics fed back to the source.

In Fig. 8.19 (*a*) inverter using six thyristors, commutation and snubber circuits are omitted for simplicity. It may be seen from Figs. 8.1 and 8.19 that a three-phase bridge inverter consists of three half-bridge inverters arranged side by side. The three-phase load is assumed to be star connected. In Fig. 8.19 (*a*), the thyristors are numbered in the sequence in which they are triggered to obtain voltages $v_{ab}$, $v_{bc}$, $v_{ca}$ at the output terminals *a*, *b*, *c* of the inverter.

There are two possible patterns of gating the thyristors. In one pattern, each thyristor conducts for 180° and in the other, each thyristor conducts for 120°. But in both these patterns,

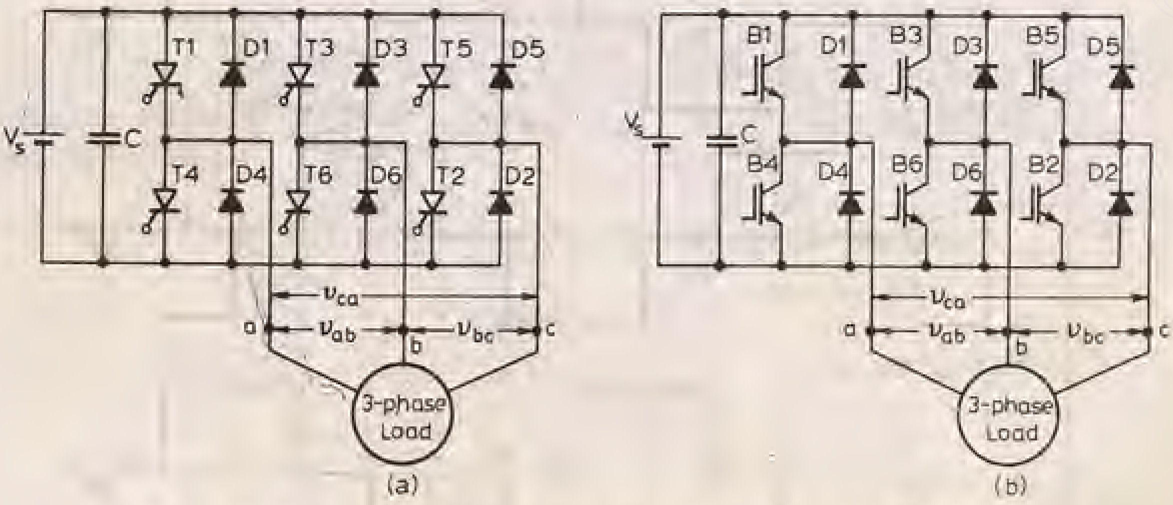


**Fig. 8.19.** Three-phase bridge inverter using (*a*) thyristors (*b*) IGBTs.

gating signals are applied and removed at 60° intervals of the output voltage waveform. Therefore, both these modes require a six step bridge inverter. These modes of thyristor conduction are described in what follows :

### 8.4.1. Three-phase 180 Degree Mode VSI

In the three-phase inverter of Fig. 8.19, each SCR conducts for 180° of a cycle. Thyristor pair in each arm, *i.e.* T1, T4 ; T3, T6 and T5, T2 are turned on with a time interval of 180°.

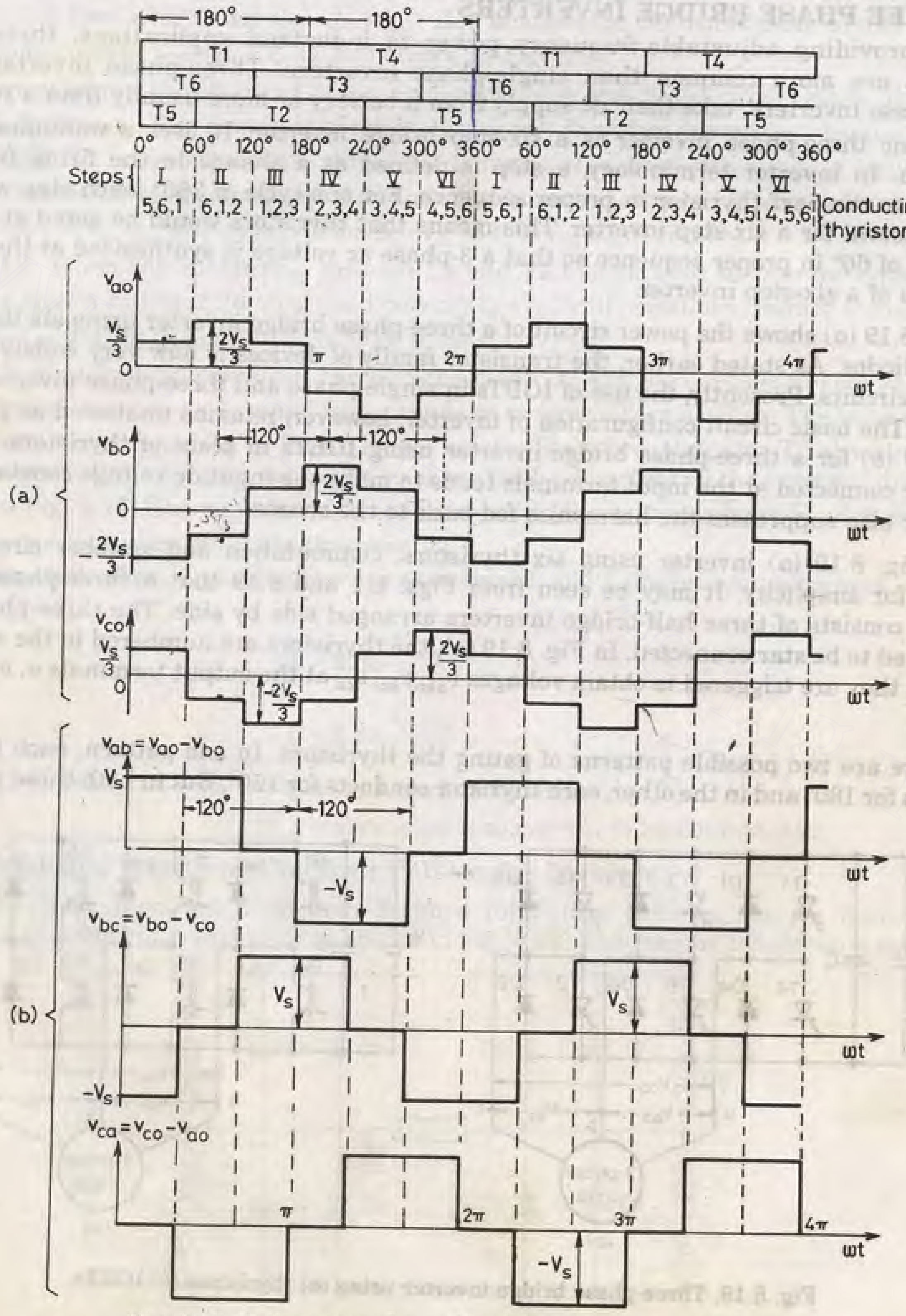


Fig. 8.20. Voltage waveforms for 180° mode 3-phase VSI.

It means that T1 conducts for 180° and T4 for the next 180° of a cycle. Thyristors in the upper group, *i.e.* T1, T3, T5 conduct at an interval of 120°. It implies that if T1 is fired at $\omega t = 0°$, then T3 must be fired at $\omega t = 120°$ and T5 at $\omega t = 240°$. Same is true for lower group of SCRs. On the basis of this firing scheme, a table is prepared as shown at the top of Fig. 8.20. In this table, first row shows that T1 from upper group conducts for 180°, T4 for the next 180° and then again T1 for 180° and so on. In the second row, T3 from the upper group is shown to start conducting 120°after T1 starts conducting. After T3 conduction for 180°, T6 conducts for the next 180° and again T3 for the next 180° and so on. Further, in the third row, T5 from the upper group starts conducting 120° after T3 or 240° after T1. After T5 conduction for 180°, T2 conducts for the next 180°, T5 for the next 180° and so on. In this manner, the pattern of firing the six SCRs is identified. This table shows that T5, T6, T1 should be gated for step I ; T6, T1, T2 for step II ; T1, T2, T3 for step III ; T2, T3, T4 for step IV and so on. Thus the sequence of firing the thyristors is T1, T2, T3, T4, T5, T6 ; T1, T2.... It is seen from the table that in every step of 60° duration, only three SCRs are conducting-one from upper group and two from the lower group or two from the upper group and one from the lower group.

The circuit models for step I-IV are shown in Fig. 8.21. During step I, thyristors 5, 6, 1 are conducting. These are shown as closed switches and non-conducting SCRs 2, 3, 4 as open switches in Fig. 8.21 (*a*). The load terminals *a* and *c* are connected to the positive bus of dc source whereas terminal *b* is connected to the negative bus of dc source, Fig. 8.21 (*a*). The load voltage is $v_{ab} = v_{cb} = V_s$ in magnitude. The magnitude of line to neutral voltage can be obtained as under :

During step I, $0 \le \omega t < \frac{\pi}{3}$, Fig. 8.21 (*a*), thyristors conducting 5, 6, 1.

Current,
$$i_1 = \frac{V_s}{Z + \frac{Z}{2}} = \frac{2}{3} \cdot \frac{V_s}{Z}$$

The line to neutral voltages are

$$v_{ao} = v_{co} = i_1 \frac{Z}{2} = \frac{V_s}{3}$$

and
$$v_{0b} = i_1 Z = \frac{2\,V_s}{3}$$

The above line to neutral voltages may be written as $v_{a0} = v_{c0} = \frac{V_s}{3}$ and $v_{b0} = -\frac{2V_s}{3}$. These voltages are shown in Fig. 8.20 (*a*) during step I. For the next step II, the line to neutral voltages are as under :

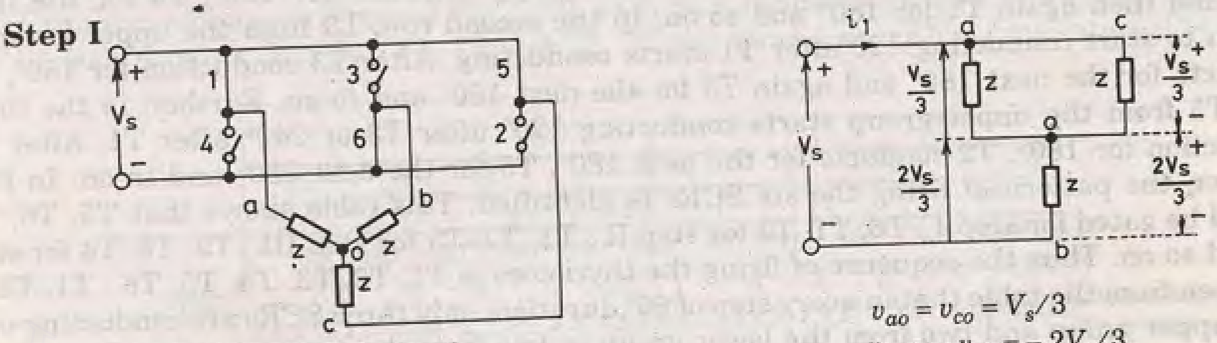
During step II, $\frac{\pi}{3} \le \omega t < \frac{2\pi}{3}$, Fig. 8.21 (*b*), thyristor conducting 6, 1, 2.

Current,
$$i_2 = \frac{2}{3}\frac{V_s}{Z}$$

$\therefore$
$$v_{a0} = i_2 Z = \frac{2\,V_s}{3}\ ; v_{0b} = v_{0c} = i_2 \frac{Z}{2} = \frac{V_s}{3}$$

or
$$v_{a0} = \frac{2V_s}{3},\ v_{b0} = v_{c0} = -\frac{V_s}{3}.$$

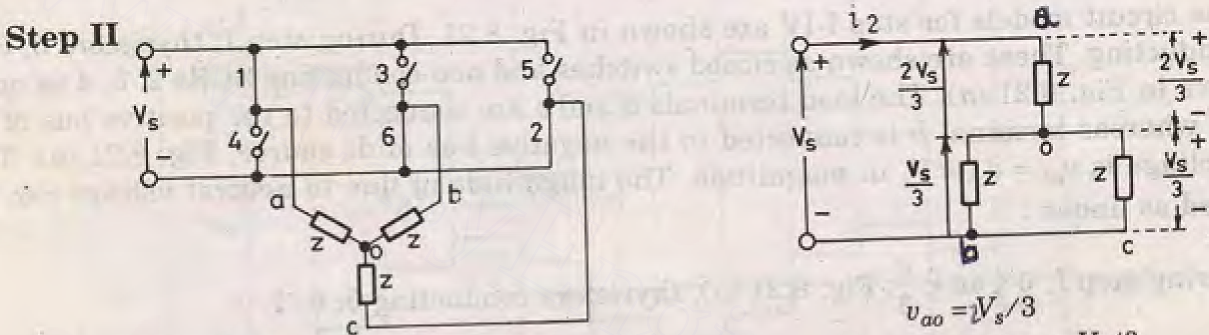
These output voltages are plotted in Fig. 8.20 (*a*). In this manner, the variation of phase voltages $v_{ao}$, $v_{bo}$, $v_{co}$ as obtained in Fig. 8.21 up to step IV and similarly for other steps, is plotted in Fig. 8.20 (*a*). It is clear that for each cycle of output voltage of each phase, six steps are required and each step has a duration of 60°.



$v_{ao} = v_{co} = V_s/3$

$v_{bo} = -v_{ob} = -2V_s/3$

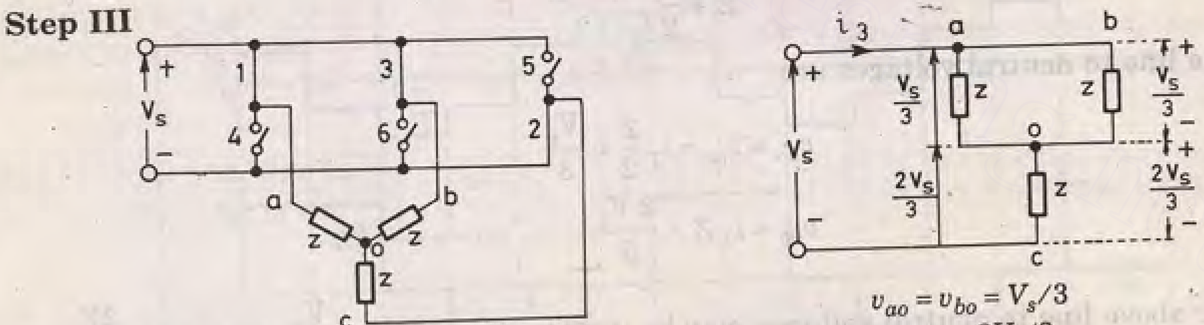
(*a*) 0—60° ; 5, 6, 1 closed.



$v_{ao} = 2V_s/3$

$v_{bo} = v_{co} = -V_s/3$

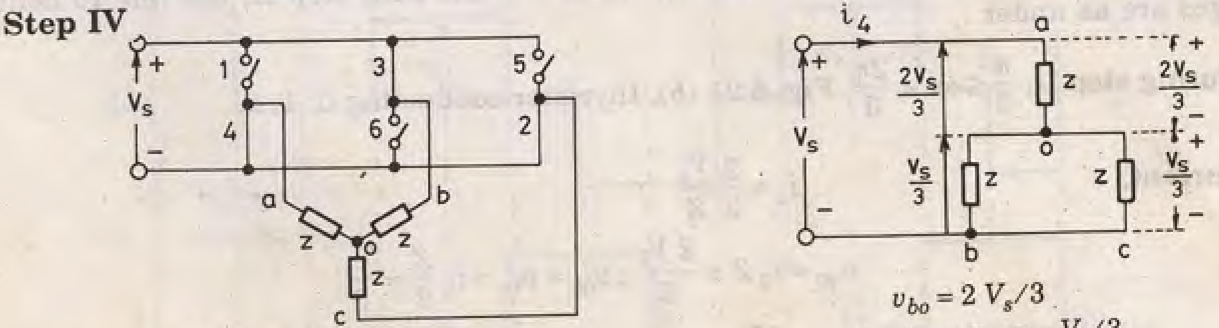
(*b*) 60—120° ; 6, 1,2 closed.



$v_{ao} = v_{bo} = V_s/3$

$v_{co} = -2V_s/3$

(*c*) 120—180° ; 1, 2, 3 closed.



$v_{bo} = 2\,V_s/3$

$v_{ao} = v_{co} = -V_s/3$

(*d*) 180—240° ; 2, 3, 4 closed.

Fig. 8.21. Equivalent circuits for a 3-phase six-step 180° mode inverter with a balanced star-connected load.

The line voltage $v_{ab} = v_{ao} + v_{ob}$ or $v_{ab} = v_{ao} - v_{bo}$ is obtained by reversing $v_{bo}$ and adding it to $v_{ao}$ as shown in Fig. 8.20 (*b*). Similarly, line voltages $v_{bc} = v_{bo} - v_{co}$ and $v_{ca} = v_{co} - v_{ao}$ are plotted in Fig. 8.20 (*b*).

The three rows in the top of Fig. 8.20 also indicate the pattern of gating signal waveforms. At $\omega t = \pi$, when $i_{g1}$ is removed, T1 is turned off and simultaneously $i_{g4}$ is applied to turn on T4. Similarly, at $\omega t = 2\pi/3$, when $i_{g6}$ is cut off, T6 is turned off and at the same instant $i_{g3}$ is applied to turn on T3. Same is true for other thyristors.

It is seen from Fig. 8.20 that phase voltages have six steps per cycle and line voltages have one positive pulse and one negative pulse (each of 120° duration) per cycle. The phase as well as line voltages are out of phase by 120°. The function of diodes D1 to D6 is to allow the flow of currents through them when the load is reactive in nature.

The three line output voltages can be described by the Fourier series as follows :

$$v_{ab} = \sum_{n=1,3,5,}^{\infty} \frac{4V_s}{n\pi} \cos\frac{n\pi}{6} \sin n(\omega t + \pi/6) \qquad ...(8.44)$$

$$v_{bc} = \sum_{n=1,3,5,}^{\infty} \frac{4V_s}{n\pi} \cos\frac{n\pi}{6} \sin n(\omega t - \pi/2) \qquad ...(8.45)$$

$$v_{ca} = \sum_{n=1,3,5,-}^{\infty} \frac{4V_s}{n\pi} \cos\frac{n\pi}{6} \sin n\left(\omega t + \frac{5\pi}{6}\right) \qquad ...(8.46)$$

For $n = 3$, $\cos\frac{3\pi}{6} = 0$. Thus, all triplen harmonics are absent from the line voltages as given by Eqs. (8.44) to (8.46).

The line voltage waveforms shown in Fig. 8.20 represent a balanced set of three-phase alternating voltages. During the six intervals, these voltages are well defined. Therefore, these voltages are independent of the nature of load circuit which may consist of any combination of resistance, inductance and capacitance and the load may be balanced or unbalanced, linear or nonlinear.

Fourier series expansion of line to neutral voltage $v_{ao}$ in Fig. 8.20 is given by

$$v_{ao} = \sum_{n=6k\pm1}^{\infty} \frac{2\,V_s}{n\pi} \sin n\omega t \qquad ...(8.47)$$

where $k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

For a linear star-connected balanced load, phase or line currents can be obtained from Eq. (8.47). Expressions similar to Eq. (8.47) can be written for $v_{bo}$ and $v_{co}$ by replacing $\omega t$ by $(\omega t - 120°)$ and $(\omega t - 240°)$ respectively.

In Fig. 8.21, load is assumed star connected and three phase and line voltages are obtained as shown in Fig. 8.20. For a delta connected load also, phase or line voltage waveforms $v_{ab}, v_{bc}, v_{ca}$ as shown in Fig. 8.20 would be obtained directly. Therefore, for a linear delta-connected load, phase and line currents can be obtained from Eqs. (8.44) to (8.46). From Eq. (8.44), rms value of *n*th component of line voltage is

$$V_{Ln} = \frac{4\,V_s}{\sqrt{2}\,n\pi} \cos\frac{n\pi}{6} \qquad ...(8.48)$$

Rms value of fundamental line voltage,

$$V_{L1} = \frac{4\,V_s}{\sqrt{2}\cdot\pi}\cos\frac{\pi}{6} = 0.7797\,V_s \qquad ...(8.49)$$

It is seen from line voltage waveform $v_{ab}$ in Fig. 8.20 (*a*) that line voltage is $V_s$ from 0° to 120°. Therefore, rms value of line voltage $V_L$ is

$$V_L = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi/3} V_s^2\,d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}\,V_s = 0.8165\,V_s \qquad ...(8.50)$$

Rms value of phase voltage $V_p$ is

$$V_p = \frac{V_L}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}\,V_s = 0.4714\,V_s \qquad ...(8.51)$$

Rms value of fundamental phase voltage, from Eq. (8.47), is

$$V_{p1} = \frac{2V_s}{\sqrt{2}\,\pi} = 0.4502\,V_s = \frac{V_{L1}}{\sqrt{3}} \qquad ...(8.52)$$

### 8.4.2. Three-phase 120 Degree Mode VSI

The power circuit diagram of this inverter is the same as that shown in Fig. 8.19. For the 120-degree mode VSI, each thyristor conducts for 120° of a cycle. Like 180° mode, 120° mode inverter also requires six steps, each of 60° duration, for completing one cycle of the output ac voltage.

For this inverter too, a table giving the sequence of firing the six thyristors is prepared as shown in the top of Fig. 8.22. In this table, first rows shows that T1 conducts for 120° and for the next 60°, neither T1 nor T4 conducts. Now T4 is turned on at $\omega t = 180°$ and it further conducts for 120°, *i.e.* from $\omega t = 180°$ to $\omega t = 300°$. This means that for 60° interval from $\omega t = 120°$ to $\omega t = 180°$, series connected SCRs do not conduct. At $\omega t = 300°$, T4 is turned off, then 60° interval elapses before T1 is turned on again at $\omega t = 360°$. In the second row, T3 is turned on at $\omega t = 120°$ as in 180° mode inverter. Now T3 conducts for 120°, then 60° interval elapses during which neither T3 nor T6 conducts. At $\omega t = 300°$, T6 is turned on, it conducts for 120° and then 60° interval elapses after which T3 is turned on again. The third row is also completed similarly. This table shows that T6, T1 should be gated for step I ; T1, T2 for step II ; T2, T3 for step III and so on. The sequence of firing the six thyristors is the same as for the 180° mode inverter. During each step, only two thyristors conduct for this inverter — one from the upper group and one from the lower group ; but in 180° mode inverter, three thyristors conduct in each step.

The circuit models for steps I-IV are shown in Fig. 8.23, where load is assumed to be resistive and star connected. During step I, thyristors 6, 1 are conducting and as such load terminal *a* is connected to the positive bus of dc source whereas terminal *b* is connected to negative bus of dc source, Fig. 8.23 (*a*). Load terminal *c* is not connected to dc bus. The line to neutral voltages, from Fig. 8.23 (*a*) are

$$v_{ao} = \frac{V_s}{2},\quad v_{ob} = \frac{V_s}{2}$$

or

$$v_{bo} = -\frac{V_s}{2}$$

and

$$v_{co} = 0$$

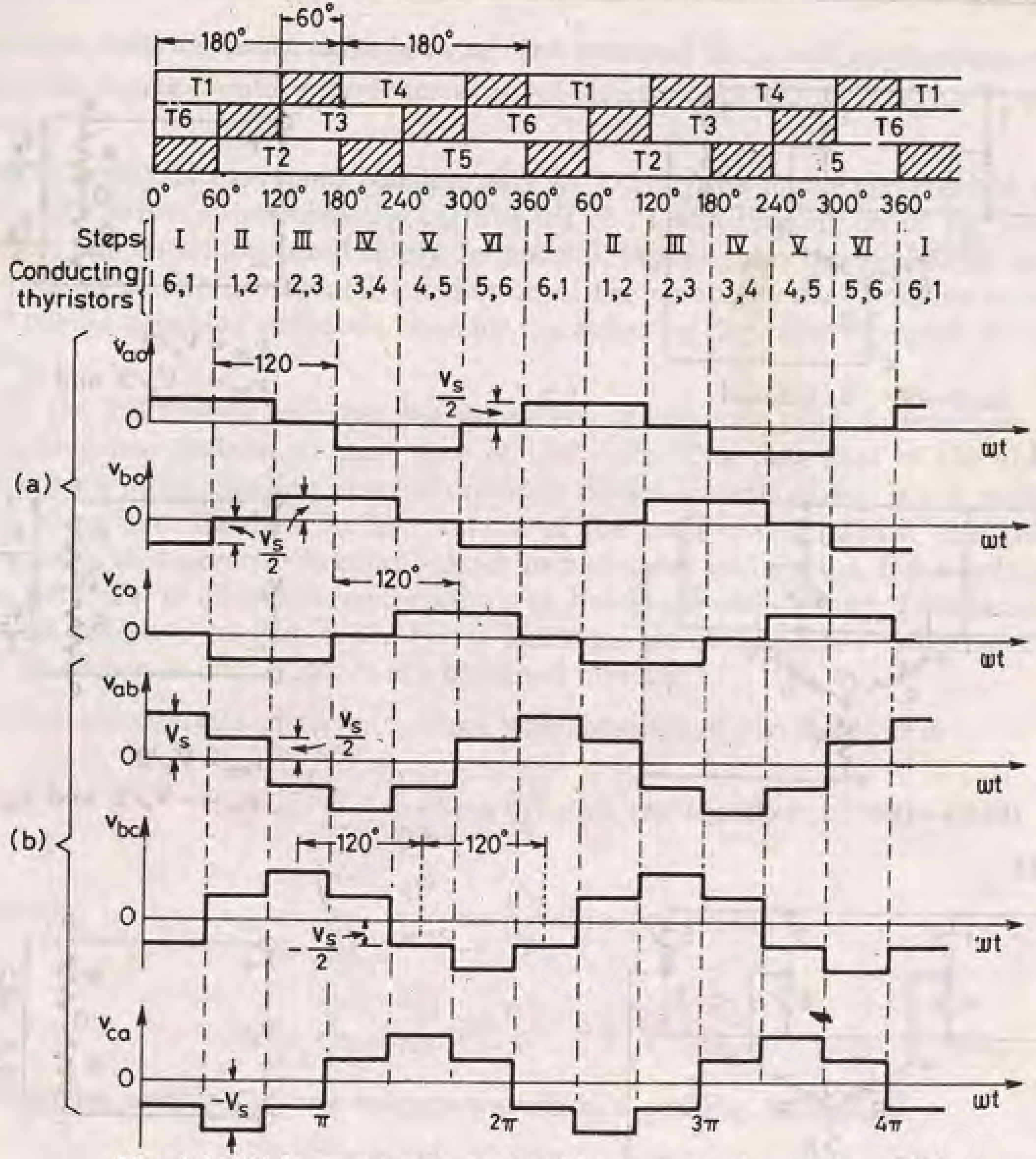


Fig. 8.22. Voltage waveforms for 120°mode six-step 3-phase VSI.

These voltages are shown in Fig. 8.22 ($a$) during step I of 0° – 60°. For step II, thyristors 1, 2 conduct and load voltages are $v_{ao} = V_s/2$, $v_{co} = -V_s/2$ and $v_{bo} = 0$, Fig. 8.23 ($b$) ; these voltages are plotted in Fig. 8.22 ($a$). This procedure is followed for obtaining load voltages for the remaining steps and these phase voltages are then plotted in Fig. 8.22 ($a$).

The line voltages
$$v_{ab} = v_{ao} - v_{bo}$$
$$v_{bc} = v_{bo} - v_{co}$$
and
$$v_{ca} = v_{co} - v_{ao}$$

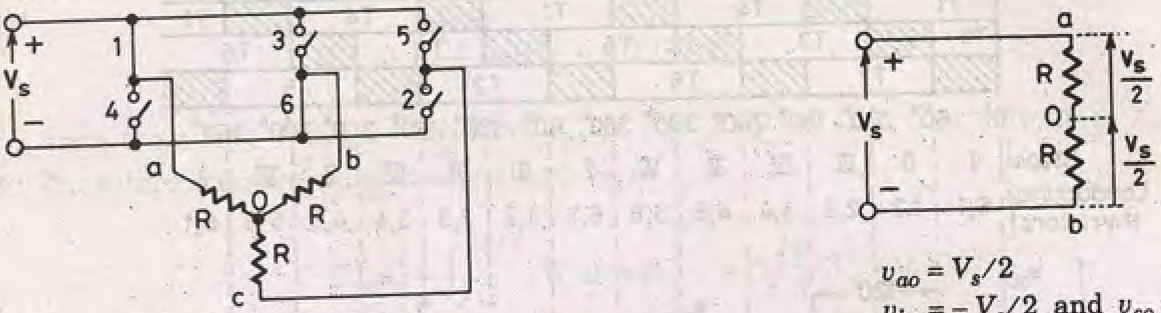
are also plotted in Fig. 8.19 ($b$).

It is seen from Fig. 8.22 that phase voltages have one positive pulse and one negative pulse (each of 120° duration) for one cycle of output alternating voltage. The line voltages, however, have six steps per cycle of output alternating voltage.

As stated before, the three rows in the top of Fig. 8.22 indicate the pattern of gating signal waveforms.

The merits and demerits of 120-degree mode inverter over 180-degree mode inverter are as follows :

**Step I**

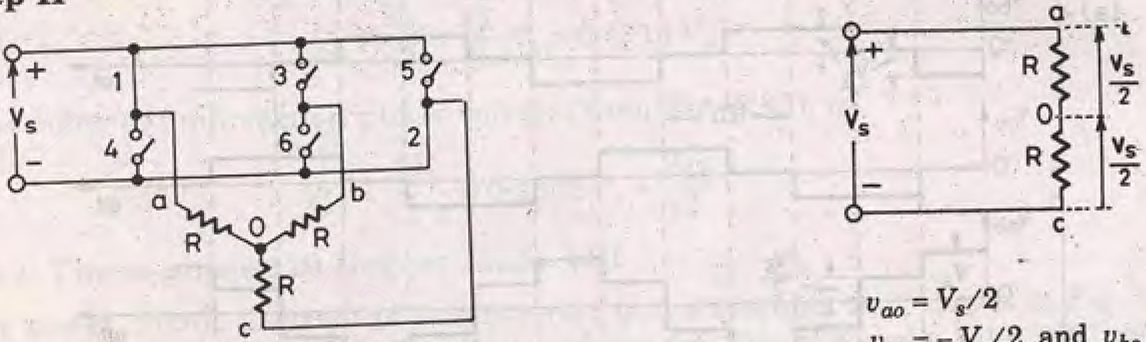


$v_{ao} = V_s/2$

$v_{bo} = -V_s/2$ and $v_{co} = 0$

(*a*) 0—60° ; 6, 1 closed

**Step II**

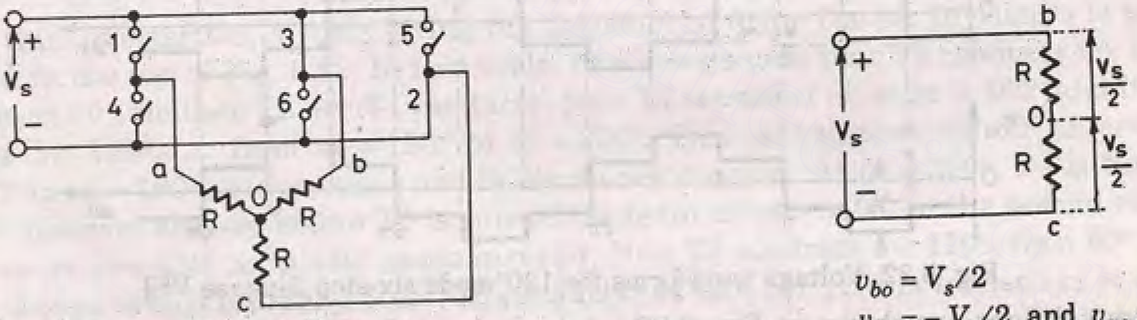


$v_{ao} = V_s/2$

$v_{co} = -V_s/2$ and $v_{bo} = 0$

(*b*) 60—120° ; 1, 2 closed

**Step III**

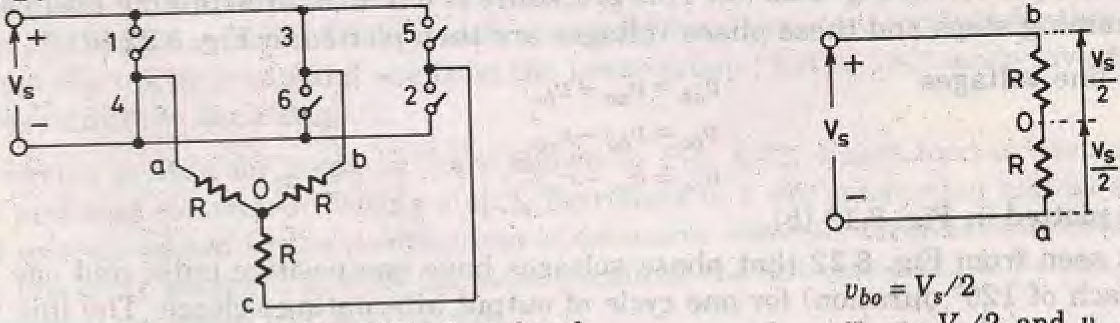


$v_{bo} = V_s/2$

$v_{co} = -V_s/2$ and $v_{ao} = 0$

(*c*) 120—180° ; 2, 3 closed

**Step IV**



$v_{bo} = V_s/2$

$v_{ao} = -V_s/2$ and $v_{co} = 0$

(*d*) 180—240° ; 3, 4 closed

Fig. 8.23. Equivalent circuits for a 3-phase six-step 120° mode inverter with balanced star-connected resistive load.

(*i*) In the 180° mode inverter, when gate signal $i_{g1}$ is cut-off to turn off T1 at $\omega t = 180°$, gating signal $i_{g4}$ is simultaneously applied to turn on T4 in the same leg. In practice, a commutation interval must exist between the removal of $i_{g1}$ and application of $i_{g4}$, because otherwise dc source would experience a direct short-circuit through SCRs T1 and T4 in the same leg.

This difficulty is overcome considerably in 120-degree mode inverter. In this inverter, there is a 60° interval between the turning off of T1 and turning on of T4. During this 60° interval, T1 can be commutated safely. In general, this angular interval of 60° exists between the turning-off of one device and turning-on of the complementary device in the same leg. This 60° period provides sufficient time for the outgoing thyristor to regain forward blocking capability.

(*ii*) In the 120° mode inverter, the potentials of only two output terminals connected to the dc source are defined at any time of the cycle. The potential of the third terminal, pertaining to a particular leg in which neither device is conducting, is not well defined ; its potential therefore depends on the nature of the load circuit. Thus, the analysis of the performance of this inverter is complicated for a general load circuit. For a balanced resistive load, the potential of all the three terminals is, however, well defined. This is the reason load is assumed resistive in Fig. 8.23. For a balanced delta-connected resistive load, the line voltages as shown in Fig. 8.22 (*b*) are obtained directly.

The Fourier analysis of phase voltage waveform $v_{ao}$ of Fig. 8.22 (*a*) is

$$v_{ao} = \sum_{n=1,3,5}^{\infty} \frac{2\,V_s}{n\pi} \cos\frac{n\pi}{6} \sin n\,(\omega t + \pi/6) \qquad \text{...(8.53)}$$

Similarly,
$$v_{bo} = \sum_{n=1,3,5,\,......}^{\infty} \frac{2V_s}{n\pi} \cos\frac{n\pi}{6} \sin n\,(\omega t - \pi/2) \qquad \text{...(8.54)}$$

and
$$v_{co} = \sum_{n=1,3,5,\,......}^{\infty} \frac{2V_s}{n\pi} \cos\frac{n\pi}{6} \sin n\left(\omega t + \frac{5\pi}{6}\right) \qquad \text{...(8.55)}$$

The Fourier analysis of line voltage waveform $v_{ab}$ of Fig. 8.22 (*b*) is

$$v_{ab} = \sum_{n=6k\pm1}^{\infty} \frac{3\cdot V_s}{n\pi} \sin n\left(\omega t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) \qquad \text{...(8.56)}$$

where $k = 0, 1, 2, 3...$

Similar expressions for $v_{bc}$ and $v_{ca}$ can also be written.

Rms value of fundamental phase voltage, from Eq. (8.53), is

$$V_{p1} = \frac{2V_s}{\sqrt{2}\cdot\pi}\cdot\cos\frac{\pi}{6} = 0.3898\,V_s \qquad \text{...(8.57)}$$

Rms value of phase voltage,

$$V_p = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi/3}\left(\frac{V_s}{2}\right)^2\cdot d\,(\omega t)\right]^{1/2} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}\cdot\frac{V_s}{2} = \frac{V_s}{\sqrt{6}} = 0.4082\,V_s \qquad \text{...(8.58)}$$

Rms value of fundamental line voltage, from Eq. (8.56), is

$$V_{L1} = \frac{3V_s}{\sqrt{2}\,\pi} = 0.6752\,V_s = \sqrt{3}\,V_{p1} \qquad \text{...(8.59)}$$

Rms value of line voltage,

$$V_L = \sqrt{3}\ V_p = \frac{V_s}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.7071\ V_s \qquad \text{...(8.60)}$$

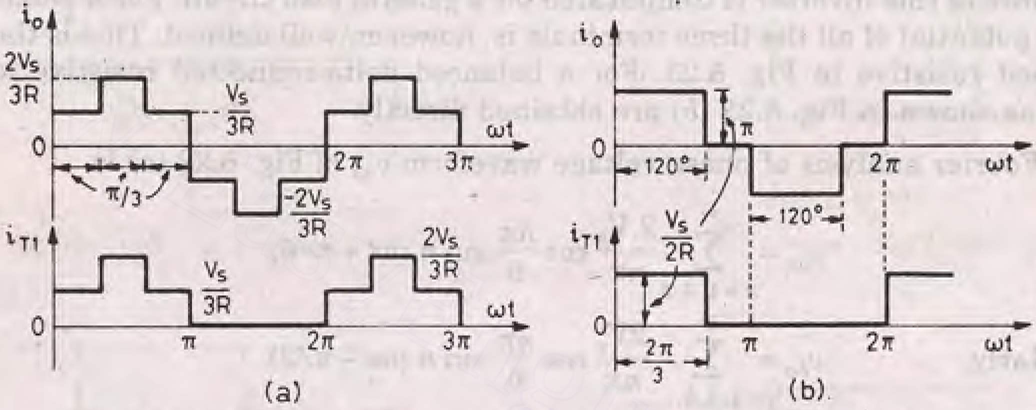
**Example 8.8.** *A three-phase bridge inverter delivers power to a resistive load from a 450 V dc source. For a star-connected load of 10 Ω per phase, determine for both (a) 180° mode and (b) 120° mode,*

*(i) rms value of load current*

*(ii) rms value of thyristor current*

*(iii) load power.*

**Solution.** For a resistive load, the waveform of load current is the same as that of the applied voltage. In view of this, waveforms of phase-load current and thyristor current are as shown in Fig. 8.24 (*a*) for 180° mode operation and in Fig. 8.24 (*b*) for 120° mode operation.



(a) (b)

Fig. 8.24. Pertaining to example 8.8 (*a*) 180° mode (*b*) 120° mode.

(*a*) **180° mode :** Upper waveform of Fig. 8.24 (*a*) shows that rms value of per-phase load current $I_{or}$ is given by

$$I_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}\left\{\left(\frac{V_s}{3R}\right)^2 \frac{\pi}{3} + \left(\frac{2V_s}{3R}\right)^2 \times \frac{\pi}{3} + \left(\frac{V_s}{3R}\right)^2 \frac{\pi}{3}\right\}\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \left[\left(\frac{450}{3 \times 10}\right)^2 \times \frac{2}{3} + \left(\frac{2 \times 450}{3 \times 10}\right)^2 \times \frac{1}{3}\right]^{1/2} = \sqrt{350} = 18.708 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of thyristor current is

$$I_{T1} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\left\{\left(\frac{450}{3 \times 10}\right)^2 \times \frac{2\pi}{3} + \left(\frac{2 \times 450}{3 \times 10}\right)^2 \times \frac{\pi}{3}\right\}\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \sqrt{175} = 13.229 \text{ A}$$

Power delivered to load

$$= 3\, I_{or}^2\, R = 3\,(\sqrt{350})^2 \times 10 = 10.5 \text{ kW}$$

(*b*) **120° mode :** Upper waveform in Fig. 8.24 (*b*) gives rms value of per-phase load current $I_{or}$ as under :

$$I_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}\left(\frac{450}{2 \times 10}\right)^2 \times \frac{2\pi}{3}\right]^{1/2} = \sqrt{337.5} = 18.371 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of thyristor current,

$$I_{T1} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\left(\frac{450}{2\times 10}\right)^2 \times \frac{2\pi}{3}\right]^{1/2} = 12.99 \text{ A}$$

Load power $= 3\, I_{or}^2\, R = 3\,(\sqrt{337.5})^2 \times 10 = 10.125 \text{ kW}$

## 8.5. VOLTAGE CONTROL IN SINGLE-PHASE INVERTERS

AC loads may require constant or adjustable voltage at their input terminals. When such loads are fed by inverters, it is essential that output voltage of the inverters is so controlled as to fulfil the requirement of ac loads. Examples of such requirements are as under :

(*i*) An ac load may require a constant input voltage though at different levels. For such a load, any variations in the dc input voltage must be suitably compensated in order to maintain a constant voltage at the ac load terminals at a desired level.

(*ii*) In case inverter supplies power to a magnetic circuit, such as an induction motor, the voltage to frequency ratio at the inverter output terminals must be kept constant. This avoids saturation in the magnetic circuit of the device fed by the inverter.

The various methods for the control of output voltage of inverters are as under :

(*a*) External control of ac output voltage

(*b*) External control of dc input voltage

(*c*) Internal control of inverter.

The first two methods require the use of peripheral components whereas the third method requires no peripheral components. These methods are now briefly discussed.

### 8.5.1. External Control of ac Output Voltage

There are two possible methods of external control of ac output voltage obtained from inverter output terminals. These methods are :

(*a*) AC voltage control

(*b*) Series-inverter control

These are now discussed briefly.

(*a*) **AC voltage control** : In this method, an ac voltage controller is inserted between the output terminals of inverter and the load terminals as shown in Fig. 8.25. The voltage input to the ac load is regulated through the firing angle control of ac voltage controller. This method gives rise to higher harmonic content in the output voltage ; particularly when the output voltage from the ac voltage controller is at low level. This method is, therefore, rarely employed except for low power applications.

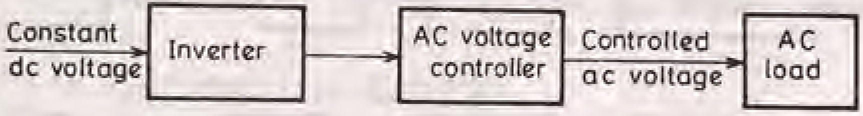
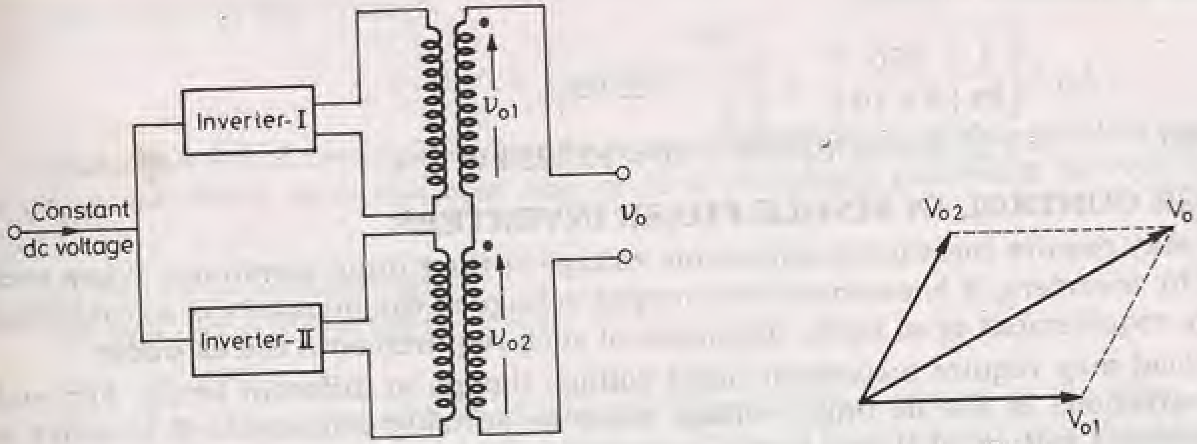


Fig. 8.25. External control of ac output voltage.

(*b*) **Series-inverter control** : This method of voltage control involves the use of two or more inverters in series. Fig. 8.26 (*a*) illustrates how the output voltage of two inverters can be summed up with the help of transformers to obtain an adjustable output voltage. In this figure, the inverter output is fed to two transformers whose secondaries are connected in series. Phasor sum of the two fundamental voltages $V_{01}$, $V_{02}$ gives the resultant fundamental voltage $V_0$ as shown in Fig. 8.26 (*b*). Here $V_0$ is given by

$$V_0 = \left[V_{01}^2 + V_{02}^2 + 2\, V_{0'} \cdot V_{02} \cos\theta\right]^{1/2}$$



(a) (b)

Fig. 8.26. Series inverter control of two inverters.

It is essential that the frequency of output voltages $V_{01}$, $V_{02}$ from the two inverters is the same. When θ is zero, $V_0 = V_{01} + V_{02}$ and for $\theta = \pi$, $V_0 = 0$ in case $V_{01} = V_{02}$. The angle θ can be varied by the firing angle control of two inverters. The series connection of inverters, called *multiple converter control*, does not augment the harmonic content even at low output voltage levels.

### 8.5.2. External Control of dc Input Voltage

In case the available voltage source is ac, then dc voltage input to the inverter is controlled through a fully-controlled rectifier, Fig. 8.27 (*a*) ; through an uncontrolled rectifier and a chopper, Fig. 8.27 (*b*) ; or through an ac voltage controller and an uncontrolled rectifier, Fig. 8.27 (*c*). If available voltage is dc, then dc voltage input to the inverter is controlled by means of a chopper as shown in Fig. 8.27 (*d*).

Input voltage-control techniques shown in Fig. 8.27, in which dc voltage input to inverter is controlled by means of components external to the inverter, has the following main advantage.

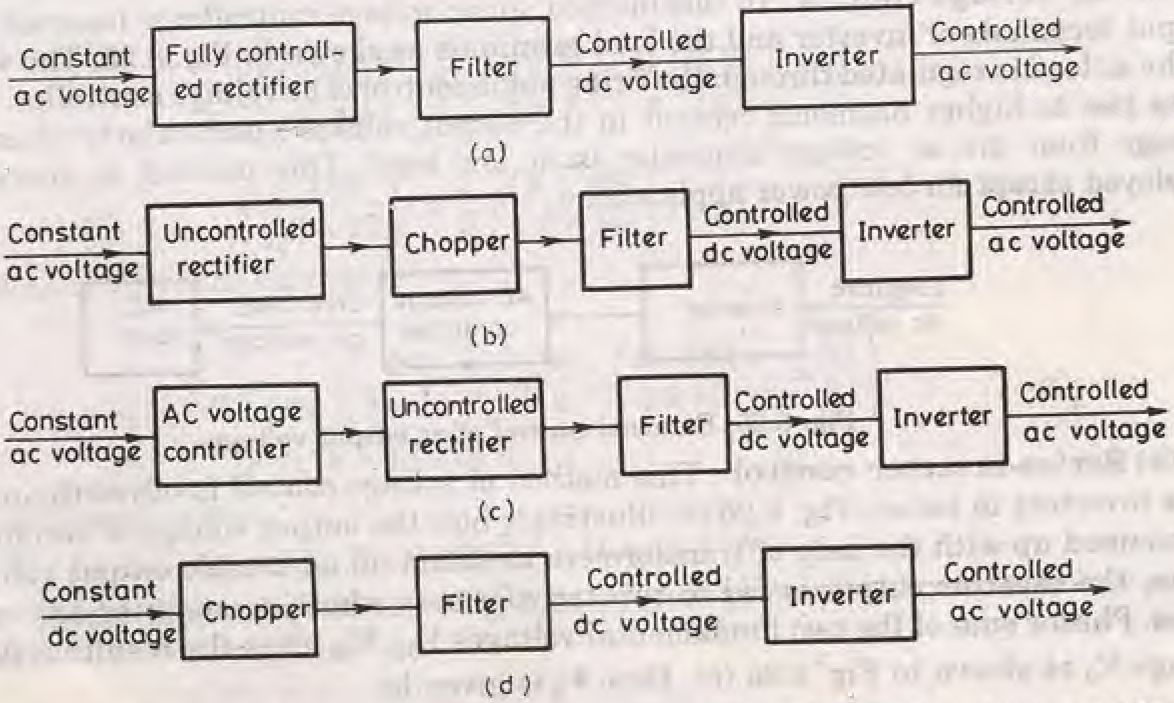


Fig. 8.27. External control of dc input voltage to inverter ; (*a*), (*b*) and (*c*) with ac source on the input (*b*) with dc source on the input.

(i) Output voltage waveform and its harmonic content are not affected appreciably as the inverter output voltage is controlled through the adjustment of dc input voltage to the inverter.

This method of voltage control, however, suffers from the following disadvantages :

(i) The number of power converters used for the control of inverter output voltage varies from two to three, Fig. 8.27. More power-handling stages result in more losses and reduced efficiency of the entire scheme.

(ii) For reducing the ripple content of dc voltage input to the inverter, filter circuit is required in all types of schemes shown in Fig. 8.27. Filter circuit increases the cost, weight and size and at the same time reduces efficiency and makes the transient response sluggish.

(iii) As the dc input is decreased, the commutating capacitor voltage also decreases.

This has the effect of reducing the circuit turn-off time $\left(t = C\,\frac{V}{I}\right)$ for the SCR for a constant load current. Therefore, for a large variation of output voltage for a constant load current, control of dc input voltage is not conducive. This difficulty can, however, be overcome by a separate fixed dc source for charging the commutating capacitor, but this makes the scheme costly and complicated.

### 8.5.3. Internal Control of Inverter

Output voltage from an inverter can also be adjusted by exercising a control within the inverter itself. The most efficient method of doing this is by pulse-width modulation control used within an inverter. This is discussed briefly in what follows.

**Pulse width modulation control**. In this method, a fixed dc input voltage is given to the inverter and a controlled ac output voltage is obtained by adjusting the on and off periods of the inverter components. This is the most popular method of controlling the output voltage and this method is termed as *pulse–width modulation* (PWM) control.

The advantages possessed by PWM technique are as under :

(i) The output voltage control with this method can be obtained without any additional components.

(ii) With this method, lower order harmonic can be eliminated or minimised along with its output voltage control. As higher order harmonics can be filtered easily, the filtering requirements are minimised.

The main disadvantage of this method is that the SCRs are expensive as they must possess low turn-on and turn-off times.

PWM inverters are quite popular in industrial applications, these are therefore discussed in detail in the next section.

## 8.6. PULSE-WIDTH MODULATED INVERTERS

PWM inverters are gradually taking over other types of inverters in industrial applications. PWM techniques are characterised by constant amplitude pulses. The width of these pulses is, however, modulated to obtain inverter output voltage control and to reduce its harmonic content. Different PWM techniques are as under :

(a) Single-pulse modulation
(b) Multiple-pulse modulation
(c) Sinusoidal-pulse modulation.

In PWM inverters, forced commutation is essential. The three PWM techniques listed above differ from each other in the harmonic content in their respective output voltages. Thus, choice of a particular PWM technique depends upon the permissible harmonic content in the inverter output voltage.

In industrial applications, PWM inverter is supplied from a diode bridge rectifier and an *LC* filter. The inverter topology remains the same as in Fig. 8.2 (*a*) for a single-phase inverter and in Fig. 8.19 for a three-phase inverter. But now the devices are switched on and off several times within each half cycle to control the output voltage which has low harmonic content.

In the following lines, the basic principles of PWM techniques for single-phase inverters are illustrated and then the methods of obtaining such output voltages are considered.

### 8.6.1. Single-pulse Modulation

The output voltage from single-phase full-bridge inverter is shown in Fig. 8.28 (*a*). When this waveform is modulated, the output voltage is of the form shown in Fig. 8.28 (*b*). It consists of a pulse of width $2d$ located symmetrically about $\pi/2$ and another pulse located symmetrically about $3\pi/2$. The range of pulse width $2d$ varies from 0 to $\pi$ ; *i.e.* $0 < 2d < \pi$. The output voltage is controlled by varying the pulse-width $2d$. This shape of the output voltage wave shown in Fig. 8.28 (*b*) is called quasi-square wave.

Fourier analysis of Fig. 8.28 (*b*) is as under :

$$A_n = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_{(\pi/2-d)}^{(\pi/2+d)} V_s \sin n\omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t) = \frac{4V_s}{n\pi}\left[\sin\frac{n\pi}{2}\sin nd\right] \qquad ...(8.61)$$

Positive and negative half cycles of $v_0$ in Fig. 8.28 (*b*) are symmetrical about $\pi/2$ and $3\pi/2$ respectively. In addition, these half cycles are also identical. As a result, coefficient $B_n = 0$. Thus the waveform of Fig. 8.28 (*b*) can be described by Fourier series as

$$v_0 = \sum_{n=1,3,5}^{\infty} \frac{4V_s}{n\pi}\sin\frac{n\pi}{2}\sin nd\sin n\omega t \qquad ...(8.62)$$

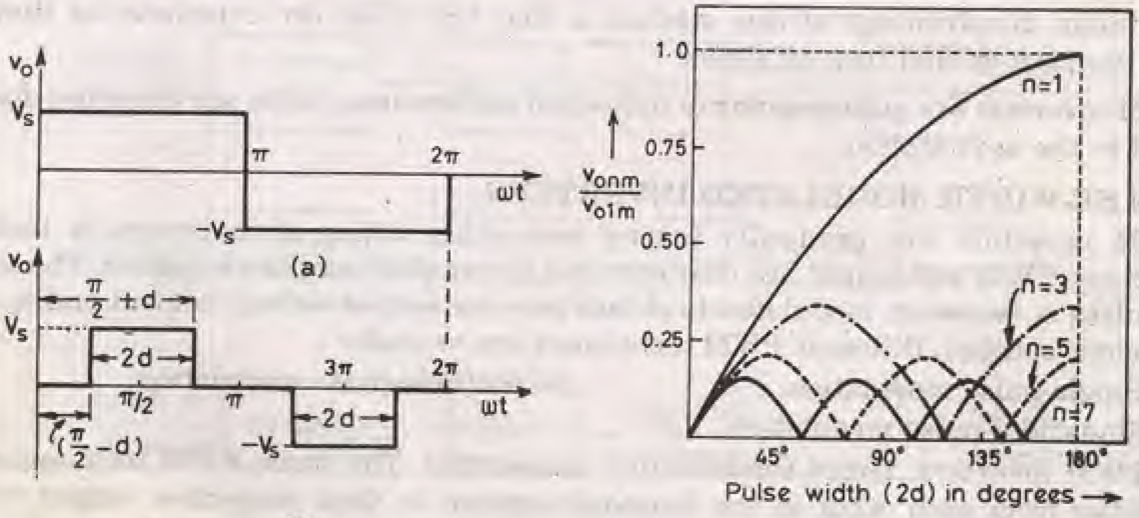
or

$$v_0 = \frac{4V_s}{\pi}\left[\sin d\sin\omega t - \frac{1}{3}\sin 3d\sin 3\omega t + \frac{1}{5}\sin 5d\sin 5\omega t......\right] \qquad ...(8.63)$$

When pulse width $2d$ is equal to its maximum value of $\pi$ radians, then the fundamental component of output voltage, from Eq. (8.63), has a peak value of

$$v_{01m} = \frac{4V_s}{\pi} \qquad ...(8.64)$$

For pulse width other than $2d = \pi$ radians, the peak value of fundamental component, from Eq. (8.63), is $\frac{4V_s}{\pi}\sin d$.



(*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 8.28. (*a*), (*b*) Single-pulse modulation (SMP) (*c*) Harmonic content in SPM.

If $nd$ is made equal to $\pi$ or $d = \frac{\pi}{n}$ or if pulse width is made equal to $2d = \frac{2\pi}{n}$, Eq. (8.62) shows that $n$th harmonic is eliminated from the inverter output voltage. For example, for eliminating third harmonic, pulse width of $2d$ must be equal to 120°.

The peak value of $n$th harmonic, from Eq. (8.62), is

$$v_{onm} = \frac{4\,V_s}{n\pi} \sin nd \qquad \text{...(8.65)}$$

From Eqs. (8.64) and (8.65), $\dfrac{v_{onm}}{v_{01m}} = \dfrac{\sin nd}{n}$ ...(8.66)

In Eq. (8.66), note that $v_{01m}$ is the peak value of the fundamental component of rectangular voltage wavefrom of width $2d = \pi$. The ratio as given by Eq. (8.66) is plotted in Fig. 8.28 (*c*) for $n = 1$ (plot of $\sin d$), $n = 3$ (plot of $\sin 3d/3$), $n = 5, 7$ for different pulse widths. It is seen from these curves that when fundamental component is reduced to 0.5 for $2d = 60°$, the amplitude of third harmonic is $\frac{1}{3} \sin 90 = 0.33$. When fundamental component is reduced to about 0.143, all the three harmonics (3, 5, 7) become almost comparable to the fundamental. This shows that in this method of voltage control, a great deal of harmonic content is introduced in the output voltage, particularly at low output voltage levels.

The rms value of output voltage, from Fig. 8.28 (*b*), is

$$V_{or} = \left[\frac{V_s^2 \cdot 2d}{\pi}\right]^{1/2} = V_s \left[\frac{2d}{\pi}\right]^{1/2} \qquad \text{...(8.67)}$$

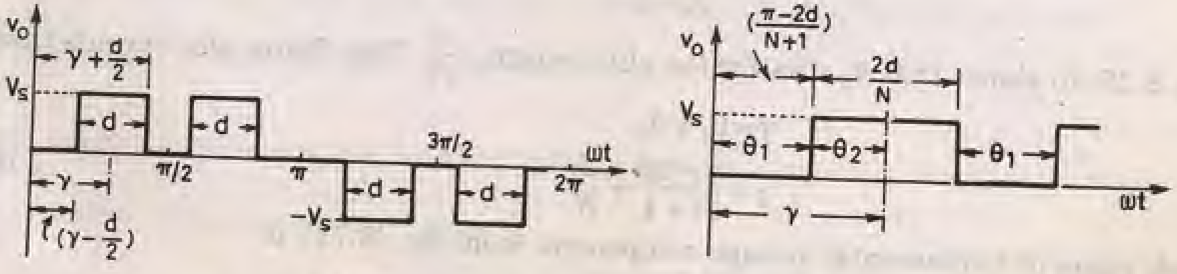
### 8.6.2. Multiple-pulse Modulation

This method of pulse modulation is an extension of single-pulse modulation. In multiple-pulse modulation (MPM), several equidistant pulses per half cycle are used. For simplicity, the effect of using two symmetrically spaced pulses per half cycle, Fig. 8.29 (*a*), is investigated here. In this figure, pulse width is taken half of that in Fig. 8.28 (*b*), but their amplitudes are the same. This means that rms values of pulses in Figs. 8.28 (*b*) and 8.29 (*a*) are equal to that given in Eq. (8.67). For the waveform of Fig. 8.29 (*a*), Fourier constants are as under :

$$A_n = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} v_0 \sin n\omega t \cdot d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{2}{\pi} \int_{(\gamma - d/2)}^{(\gamma + d/2)} V_s \cdot \sin n\omega t \cdot d(\omega t) \cdot 2$$

The use of factor 2 in the above expression accounts for the two pulses from 0 to $\pi$ in Fig. 8.29 (*a*)



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 8.29. Symmetrical two-pulse modulation pertaining to MPM.

$$\therefore \qquad A_n = \frac{4\,V_s}{n\,\pi}\left|\cos n\,\omega t\right|_{\gamma+d/2}^{\gamma-d/2} = \frac{8V_s}{n\pi}\sin n\gamma \sin\frac{nd}{2} \qquad \text{...(8.68)}$$

As in Fig. 8.28 (*b*), $B_n = 0$ in Fig. 8.29 (*a*) also.

Therefore, the waveform of Fig. 8.29 (*a*) can be described by Fourier series as

$$v_0 = \sum_{n=1,3,5}^{\infty} \frac{8\,V_s}{n\pi}\sin n\gamma \sin\frac{nd}{2}\sin n\omega t \qquad \text{...(8.69)}$$

or

$$v_0 = \frac{8\,V_s}{\pi}\left[\sin\gamma\sin\frac{d}{2}\sin\omega t + \frac{1}{3}\sin 3\gamma\cdot\sin\frac{3d}{2}\sin 3\,\omega t + \frac{1}{5}\sin 5\gamma\sin\frac{5d}{2}\sin 5\omega t + \ldots\right] \qquad \text{...(8.70)}$$

The amplitude of the *n*th harmonic of the two-pulse waveform of Fig. 8.29 (*a*), from Eq. (8.69), is

$$v_n = \frac{8\,V_s}{n\pi}\sin n\gamma\cdot\sin\frac{nd}{2} \qquad \text{...(8.71)}$$

Eq. (8.71) shows that magnitude of $v_n$ depends upon $\gamma$ and $d$. This expression also shows that when $\gamma = \frac{\pi}{n}$ or $d = \frac{2\pi}{n}$, *n*th harmonic can be eliminated from the output voltage. But this has the effect of reducing the fundamental component of output voltage. For example, take pulse width $2d = 72°$ for single-pulse modulation of Fig. 8.28 (*b*). Then, from Eq. (8.65), the peak value of fundamental voltage component is

$$v_{01m} = \frac{4\,V_s}{\pi}\sin 36° = 0.7484\,V_s.$$

For two-pulse modulation and pulse width $d = 36°$. $\gamma$ in Fig. 8.29 (*a*), is

$$\gamma = \frac{180-72}{3} + \frac{72}{4} = 54°$$

or in general.

$$\gamma = \frac{\pi - 2d}{N+1} + \frac{d}{N} \qquad \text{...(8.72)}$$

Eq. (8.72) is valid in case pulses of equal width are symmetrically spaced. Here $N$ is the number of pulses per half cycle.

Eq. (8.72) can also be obtained by referring to Fig. 8.29 (*b*). For $N$ pulses per half cycle, there are $(N+1)$ intervening equidistant spaces, each of width $\theta_1$ as shown in Fig. 8.29 (*b*). Note that for these equidistant spaces, $v_0 = 0$. Total width of these $(N+1)$ equidistant spaces $= (N+1)\,\theta_1 = (\pi - \text{width of } N \text{ pulses}) = (\pi - 2d)$

or

$$\theta_1 = \frac{\pi - 2d}{N+1}$$

Fig. 8.29 (*b*) shows that $\theta_2 =$ half of the pulse width $= \frac{d}{N}$. This figure also reveals that

$$\gamma = \theta_1 + \theta_2$$

or

$$\gamma = \frac{\pi - 2d}{N+1} + \frac{d}{N} \qquad \text{...(8.72)}$$

Peak value of fundamental voltage component, from Eq. (8.71), is

$$v_{01m} = \frac{8\,V_s}{\pi}\sin 54 \sin 18° = 0.637\,V_s.$$

It is seen from above that fundamental component of output voltage is lower ($0.637\ V_s$) for two-pulse modulation than it is for single-pulse modulation ($0.7484\ V_s$). It can be shown that for a larger value of pulses per half cycle, the amplitudes of lower order harmonics are reduced but those of some higher harmonics are increased significantly. But this is no disadvantage as higher order harmonics can be filtered out easily.

The symmetrical modulated wave shown in Fig. 8.29 (*a*) can be generated by comparing an adjustable square voltage wave $V_r$ of frequency $\omega$ with a triangular carrier wave $V_c$ of frequency $\omega_c$ as shown in Fig. 8.30 (*b*). This comparison is done in a comparator, Fig. 8.30 (*a*). In Fig. 8.29 (*a*), there are only two pulses per half-cycle but in Fig. 8.30 (*b*), there are four pulses per half cycle. The triggering pulses for thyristors are generated at the points of intersection of the carrier and reference signal waves. The firing pulses so generated turn-on the SCRs so that output voltage $v_0$ is available during the interval triangular voltage wave exceeds the square modulating wave shown in Fig. 8.30 (*b*). In this figure, $f_c$ and $f$ are the frequencies in Hz for the carrier signal and reference signal respectively. This figure reveals that $\frac{1}{f_c} = \frac{\pi}{4}$ and $\frac{1}{2f} = \pi$ and the number of trigger pulses is $\frac{4}{\pi} \times \frac{\pi}{1} = 4$. In general, the number of pulses generated per half cycle can be determined from Fig. 8.30 (*b*) as under :

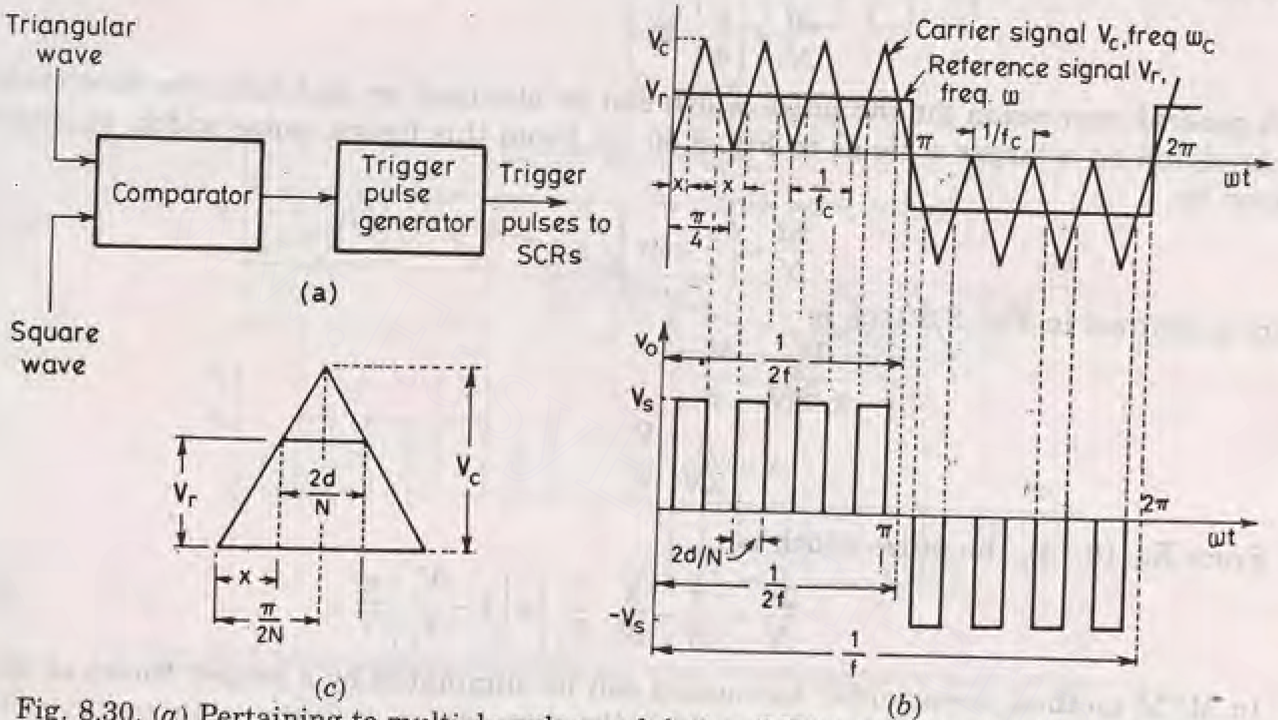


Fig. 8.30. (*a*) Pertaining to multiple-pulse modulation (MPM) (*b*) Output voltage wavefor with MPM (*c*) $V_c$ and $V_r$ shown on a larger scale.

For triangular carrier wave, pulse width $= \frac{1}{f_c}$.

For square reference wave, width of half-cycle $= \frac{1}{2f}$.

∴ Number of pulses per half-cycle

$$= \text{Number of hill-tops per half-cycle}$$

$$= \frac{\text{Length of half-cycle of square reference wave}}{\text{Width of one cycle of triangular carrier wave}}$$

or
$$N = \frac{1/2f}{1/f_c} = \frac{f_c}{2f} = \frac{\omega_c}{2\omega} \qquad ...(8.73)$$

Note that $N$ in Eq. (8.73) must be an integer. The pulse height of the reference, or modulating, signal can be controlled within the range $0 < V_r < V_c$ and pulse width $\frac{2d}{N}$ varied in the range $0 < \frac{2d}{N} < \frac{\pi}{N}$ by adjusting the magnitude $V_r$ of the reference square wave. The pulse width is $2d/N$ on the assumption of same rms voltage as in single-pulse modulation.

In Fig. 8.30 (*b*), pulse width $2d/N$ is given by

$$\frac{2d}{N} = \left(\frac{\pi}{4} - 2x\right)$$

A general expression for the pulse width can be obtained by sketching the first cycle of carrier signal on a larger scale as in Fig. 8.30 (*c*). From this figure, pulse width, in general, is given by

$$\frac{2d}{N} = \left(\frac{\pi}{4} - 2x\right) \qquad ...(8.74)$$

where $x$, defined in Fig. 8.30 (*c*), is

$$\frac{V_c}{\pi/2N} = \frac{V_r}{x}$$

or
$$x = \frac{\pi}{2N} \cdot \frac{V_r}{V_c}$$

From Eq. (8.74), the pulse width is

$$\frac{2d}{N} = \left(\frac{\pi}{N} - \frac{\pi}{N} \cdot \frac{V_r}{V_c}\right) = \left(1 - \frac{V_r}{V_c}\right)\frac{\pi}{N} \qquad ...(8.75)$$

In MPM method, lower order harmonics can be eliminated by a proper choice of $2d$ and $\gamma$. But the rms voltage in Figs. 8.28 to 8.30 is the same, *i.e.*

$$V_{or} = V_s \left[\frac{2d}{\pi}\right]^{1/2}$$

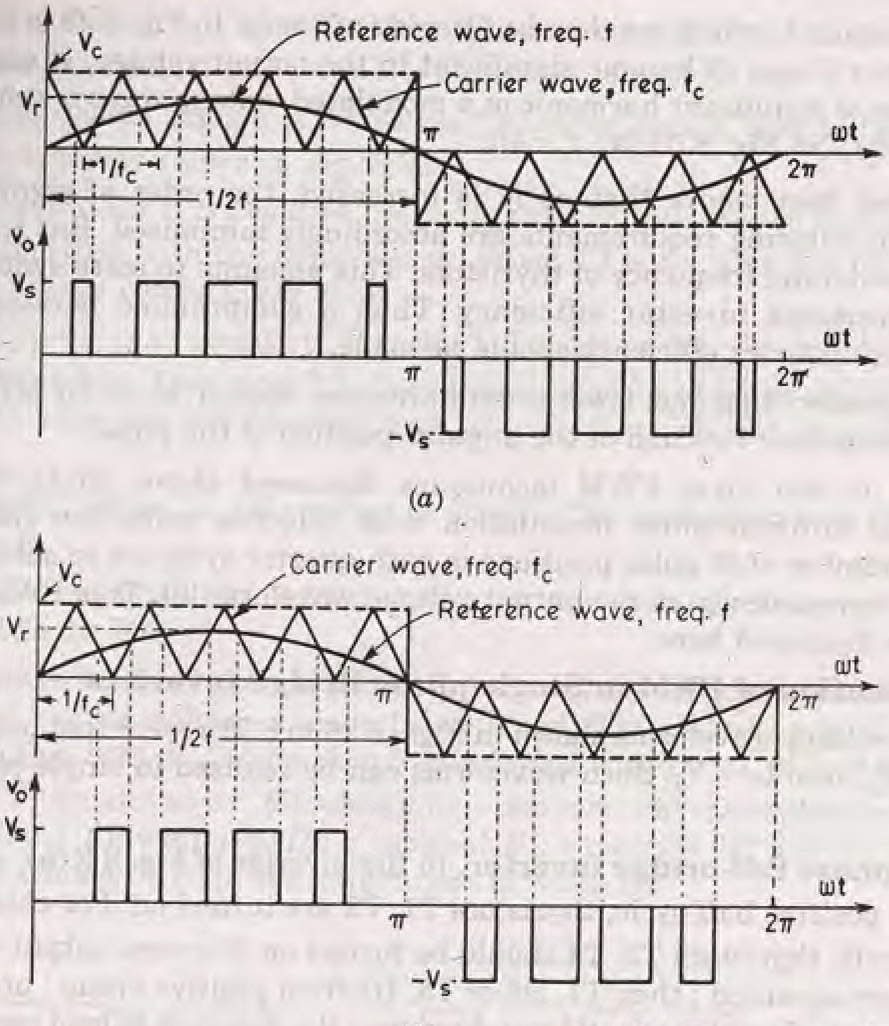
This means that if lower order harmonics are eliminated, the magnitude of higher order harmonics would go up. But this is not a disadvantage, as higher order harmonics can be filtered out by the use of filters at the output terminals of the inverters.

### 8.6.3. Sinusoidal-pulse Modulation (sin M)

In this method of modulation, several pulses per half cycle are used as in the case of multiple-pulse modulation (MPM). In MPM, the pulse width is equal for all the pulses. But is sin $M$, the pulse width is a sinusoidal function of the angular position of the pulse in a cycle as shown in Fig. 8.31.

For realizing sin $M$, a high-frequency triangular carrier wave $v_c$ is compared with a sinusoidal reference wave $v_r$ of the desired frequency. The intersection of $v_c$ and $v_r$ waves determines the switching instants and commutation of the modulated pulse. In Fig. 8.31, $V_C$ is the peak value of triangular carrier wave and $V_r$ that of the reference, or modulating, signal.

The carrier and reference waves are mixed in a comparator. When sinusoidal wave has magnitude higher than the triangular wave, the comparator output is high, otherwise it is



(*a*)

(*b*)

Fig. 8.31. Output voltage waveforms with sinusoidal pulse modulation.

low. The comparator output is processed in a trigger pulse generator in such a manner that the output voltage wave of the inverter has a pulse width in agreement with the comparator output pulse width.

When triangular carrier wave has its peak coincident with zero of the reference sinusoid, there are $N = \frac{f_c}{2f}$ pulses per half cycle ; Fig. 8.31 (*a*) has five pulses. In case zero of the triangular wave coincides with zero of the reference sinusoid, there are $(N-1)$ pulses per half cycle ; Fig. 8.31 (*b*) has $\left(\frac{f_c}{2f} - 1\right)$, *i.e.* four, pulses per cycle.

The ratio of $V_r/V_c$ is called the *modulation index* (MI) and it controls the harmonic content of the output voltage waveform. The magnitude of fundamental component of output voltage is proportional to MI, but MI can never be more than unity. Thus the output voltage is controlled by varying MI.

Harmonic analysis of the output modulated voltage wave reveals that sin $M$ has the following important features :

(*i*) For MI less than one, largest harmonic amplitudes in the output voltage are associated with harmonics of order $f_c/f \pm 1$ or $2N \pm 1$, where $N$ is the number of pulses per half cycle. Thus, by increasing the number of pulses per half cycle, the order of dominant harmonic frequency can be raised, which can then be filtered out easily. In Fig. 8.31 (*a*), $N = 5$, therefore harmonics of order 9 and 11 become significant in the output voltage. It may be noted that the highest order of significant harmonic of a modulated voltage wave is centred around the carrier frequency $f_c$ [in Fig. 8.31 (*a*), $f_c = 10$].

It is observed from above that as $N$ is increased, the order of significant harmonic increases and the filtering requirements are accordingly minimised. But higher value of $N$ entails higher switching frequency of thyristors. This amounts to more switching losses and therefore an impaired inverter efficiency. Thus a compromise between the filtering requirements and inverter efficiency should be made.

(*ii*) For $MI$ greater than one, lower order harmonics appear, since for $MI > 1$, pulse width is no longer a sinusoidal function of the angular position of the pulse.

In addition to the three PWM techniques discussed above, there is another PWM technique called multiple-pulse modulation with selective reduction (MPMSR). In this technique, the number of $M$ pulse positions in each quarter cycle are so selected as to reduce or eliminate $M$ harmonics from the output voltage waveform [6]. This PWM technique will, however, not be discussed here.

### 8.6.4. Realization of PWM in Single-phase Bridge Inverters

The output voltage waveforms shown in Figs. 8.28 to 8.31 reveal that output voltage from an inverter is $V_s$, zero or $-V_s$. Such waveforms can be realized in single-phase inverters as under :

(*a*) **Single-phase full-bridge inverter**. In the inverter of Fig. 8.2 (*a*), when $+V_s$ is to be obtained in the positive half cycle, thyristors T1, T2 are turned on. For obtaining $-V_s$ in the negative half cycle, thyristors T3, T4 should be turned on. For zero output voltage, *i.e.* if the load is to be short-circuited ; then T1, D3 or T3, D1 from positive group ; or T4, D2 or T2, D4 from negative group should conduct depending upon the direction of load current. This means that for obtaining zero output voltage at the end of each pulse, one of the two conducting SCRs should only be turned off. Under this strategy, only one thyristor need be turned on for obtaining the next voltage pulse. Switching on and commutation of thyristors should be so arranged as to utilize the thyristors symmetrically. Let us illustrate this with an example.

Suppose output voltage of pulse width $2\pi/3$ radians is to be obtained in each half cycle. This pulse width is symmetrically placed as shown in Fig. 8.32. The waveform of load current

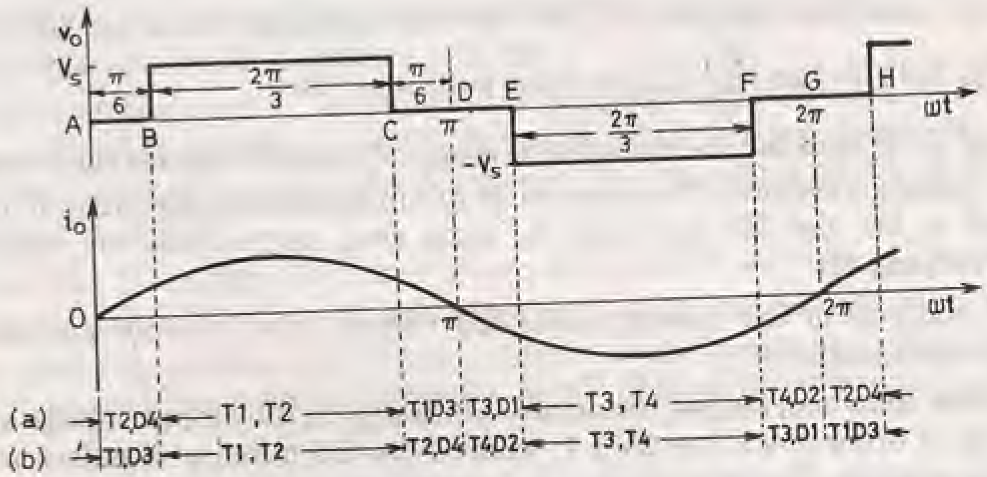


Fig. 8.32. Conduction of various components for single-phase bridge inverter of Fig. 8.2 (*a*).

$i_0$ is assumed as sketched in Fig. 8.32. It is obvious from these two waveforms that from $B$ to $C$ ; T1, T2 should conduct and from $E$ to $F$ ; T3, T4 should be on.

From $C$ to $D$, $v_0 = 0$ but current $i_0$ is positive. Therefore, from $C$ to $D$ ; either T1, D3 or T2, D4 should conduct, this is shown in Fig. 8.32.

From $D$ to $E$, $v_0 = 0$ but $i_0$ is negative. Negative current with zero output voltage can exist only if T3 or T4 together with one diode are on. When T3 is on, then T3, D1 should conduct and with T4, D2 should conduct, Fig. 8.32.

From $F$ to $G$, $v_0 = 0$, $i_0$ is negative. For this ; T4, D2 or T3, D1 should conduct. From $D$ to $E$, if T3, D1 conduct, then now T2, D4 must conduct in order to utilize the thyristors symmetrically. In case T4, D2 conduct from $D$ to $E$, then T3, D1 should conduct from $F$ to $G$.

From $G$ to $H$ ; T2, D4 or T1, D3 conduct as shown. The conduction from $G$ to $H$ is similar to that from $A$ to $B$.

It may be observed from Fig. 8.32 that, during one cycle, each thyristor conducts for 150° and each diode for 30°.

(*b*) **Single-phase half-bridge inverter.** In single-phase half-bridge inverter of Fig. 8.1 (*a*), zero value of output voltage cannot be obtained. The output voltage can either be $V_s/2$ or $-V_s/2$. In Fig. 8.33, $V_s/2$ from $A$ to $B$ is obtained with T1 on, from $B$ to $C$ with T2 on, from $C$ to $D$ with T1 on and so on. For obtaining a symmetrical waveform for output voltage in Fig. 8.33, interval $AB$ = interval $DE$ ; interval $BC$ = interval $EF$ and so on. The output voltage can be controlled through the adjustment of width $2d$.

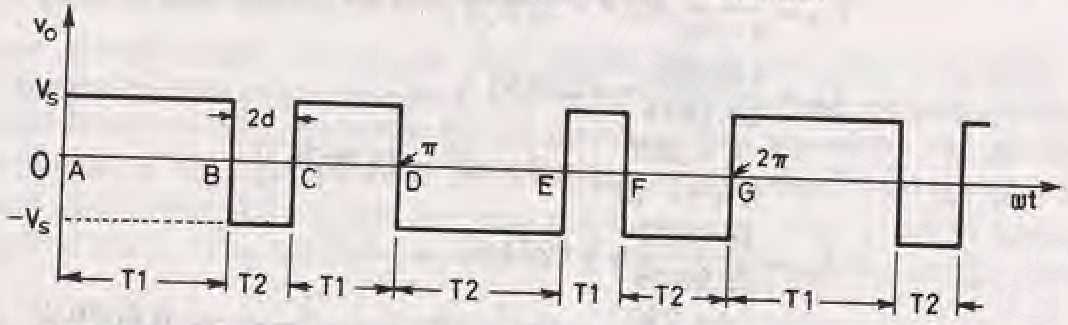


Fig. 8.33. Output voltage waveform obtained through PWM in half-bridge inverter.

**Example 8.9.** *A single-phase bridge inverter, fed from 230 V dc, is connected to load R = 10 Ω and L = 0.03 H. Determine the power delivered to load in case the inverter is operating at 50 Hz with (a) square wave output (b) quasi-square wave output with an on-period of 0.5 of a cycle and (c) two symmetrically spaced pulses per half cycle with an on-period of 0.5 of a cycle.*

**Solution.** In order to calculate the power delivered to load fairly accurately, harmonics up to seventh may be considered.

(*a*) Square-wave output : From Eq. (8.26), rms value of fundamental voltage is

$$V_{01} = \frac{4V_s}{\pi \cdot \sqrt{2}} = \frac{4 \times 230}{\pi \cdot \sqrt{2}} = 207.10 \text{ V}$$

Load impedance at fundamental frequency is

$$Z_1 = [10^2 + (2\pi \times 50 \times 0.03)^2]^{1/2} = 13.7414\ \Omega$$

$$I_{01} = \frac{207.10}{13.7414} = 15.0712 \text{ A}$$

$$V_{03} = \frac{4 \times 230}{3 \times \pi \times r\sqrt{2}} = 69.035 \text{ V}$$

and $$Z_3 = \sqrt{10^2 + (2\pi \times 50 \times 3 \times 0.03)^2} = 29.9906\ \Omega$$

$$I_{03} = \frac{69.035}{29.9906} = 2.302 \text{ A}$$

Similarly, $$I_{05} = \frac{920}{5 \times \pi \times \sqrt{2}} \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{10^2 + (2\pi \times 50 \times 5 \times 0.03)^2}} = 0.8598 \text{ A}$$

$$I_{07} = \frac{920}{7 \times \pi \times \sqrt{2}} \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{10^2 + (2\pi \times 50 \times 7 \times 0.03)^2}} = 0.4434 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of resultant load current,

$$I_0 = \left[I_{01}^2 + I_{03}^2 + I_{05}^2 + I_{07}^2\right]^{1/2}$$

Power delivered to load $$= I_0^2 R$$

$$= [15.0712^2 + 2.302^2 + 0.8598^2 + 0.4434^2] \times 10$$

$$= 2333.76 \text{ W}$$

(*b*) **Quasi-square wave output** : For quasi-square wave or single-pulse modulated wave, use Eq. (8.62), where pulse width, $2d = 0.5 \times 180° = 90°$ or $d = 45°$. From this equation, rms value of fundamental voltage is

$$V_{01} = \frac{4V_s}{\pi \cdot \sqrt{2}} \sin d = \frac{4 \times 230}{\pi \cdot \sqrt{2}} \sin 45° = 146.423 \text{ V}$$

$$I_{01} = \frac{146.423}{13.7414} = 10.6556 \text{ A}$$

$$V_{03} = \frac{4 \times 230}{3 \times \pi \times \sqrt{2}} \sin 3 \times 45° = 48.8075 \text{ V}$$

$$I_{03} = \frac{48.8075}{29.9906} = 1.6274 \text{ A}$$

Similarly, $$I_{05} = \frac{4 \times 230}{5 \times \pi \times \sqrt{2}} \sin (5 \times 45°) \times \frac{1}{48.17324} = -0.6079 \text{ A}$$

$$I_{07} = \frac{4 \times 230}{7 \times \pi \times \sqrt{2}} \sin (7 \times 45°) \times \frac{1}{66.727} = -0.3135 \text{ A}$$

Power delivered to load $$= (10.6556^2 + 1.6274^2 + 0.6079^2 + 0.3135^2) \times 10$$

$$= 1166.58 \text{ W}$$

(*c*) For two symmetrically spaced pulses per half cycle, use Eq. (8.69). For this equation, $2d = 0.5 \times 180 = 90°$ or $d = 45°$ and $\gamma = \frac{180 - 90}{3} + \frac{45}{2} = 52.5°$. From Eq. (8.69), rms value of fundamental voltage is

$$V_{01} = \frac{8V_s}{\pi \cdot \sqrt{2}} \sin \gamma \sin \frac{d}{2} = \frac{8 \times 230}{\pi \cdot \sqrt{2}} \sin 52.5° \sin \frac{45}{2} = 125.755 \text{ V}$$

$$I_{01} = \frac{125.755}{13.7414} = 9.1515 \text{ A}$$

$$V_{03} = \frac{8 \times 230}{3 \times \pi \times \sqrt{2}} \cdot \sin (52.5 \times 3) \cdot \sin \left(\frac{45}{2} \times 3\right) = 48.815 \text{ V}$$

$$I_{03} = \frac{48.815}{29.9906} = 1.6277 \text{ A}$$

$$I_{05} = \frac{8 \times 230}{5 \times \pi \sqrt{2}} \sin (52.5 \times 5) \sin (22.5 \times 5) \times \frac{1}{48.17324} = 1.575 \text{ A}$$

$$I_{07} = \frac{8 \times 230}{7 \times \pi \times \sqrt{2}} \sin (52.5 \times 7) \sin (22.5 \times 7) \times \frac{1}{66.727} = 0.0443 \text{ A}$$

Power delivered to load $= (9.1515^2 + 1.6277^2 + 1.575^2 + 0.0443^2) \times 10$

$= 888.82$ W.

## 8.7. REDUCTION OF HARMONICS IN THE INVERTER OUTPUT VOLTAGE

There are several industrial applications which may allow a harmonic content of 5% of its fundamental component of input voltage when inverters are used. Actually, the inverter output voltage may have harmonic content much higher than 5% of its fundamental component. In order to bring this harmonic content to a reasonable limit of 5%, one method is to insert filters between the load and inverter. If the inverter output voltage contains high frequency harmonics, these can be reduced by a low-size filter. For the attenuation of low-frequency harmonics, however, the size of filter components increases. This makes the filter circuit costly, bulky and weighty and in addition, the transient response of the system becomes sluggish. This shows that lower order harmonics from the inverter output voltage should be reduced by some means other than the filter. Subsequent to this, high frequency component from this voltage can easily be attenuated by a low-size, low-cost filter. The object of this section is to study these methods of reducing low-order harmonics from the output voltage of an inverter.

### 8.7.1. Harmonic Reduction by PWM

It has already been discussed that when there are several pulses per half cycle, lower-order harmonics are eliminated. Fig. 8.34 illustrates output voltage waveform that can be obtained from a single-phase full-bridge inverter. This waveform can also be obtained from a single-phase half-bridge inverter, but then the amplitude of voltage wave would be $V_s/2$. The waveform of Fig. 8.34 needs ten commutations per cycle (= 360°) instead of two in an unmodulated wave. The voltage waveform of Fig. 8.34 is symmetrical about $\pi$ as well as $\pi/2$.

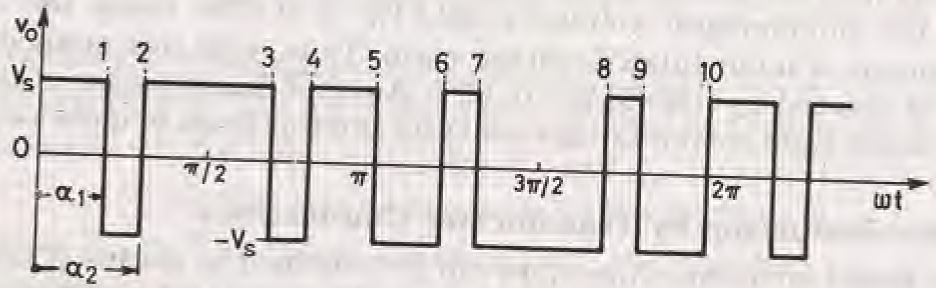


Fig. 8.34. Harmonic reduction by PWM in single-phase inverter.

As this voltage waveform has quarter-wave symmetry, $B_n = 0$.

$$\therefore \quad A_n = \frac{4}{\pi} V_s \left[ \int_0^{\alpha_1} \sin n\omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t) - \int_{\alpha_1}^{\alpha_2} \sin n\omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t) + \int_{\alpha_2}^{\pi/2} \sin n\omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t) \right] \quad \text{...(8.76)}$$

$$= \frac{4V_s}{\pi} \left[ \frac{1 - 2 \cos n\alpha_1 + 2 \cos n\alpha_2}{n} \right] \quad \text{...(8.76)}$$

If third and fifth harmonics are to be eliminated, then from Eq. (8.76),

$$A_3 = \frac{4V_s}{\pi}\left[\frac{1 - 2\cos 3\alpha_1 + 2\cos 3\alpha_2}{3}\right] = 0$$

and
$$A_5 = \frac{4V_s}{\pi}\left[\frac{1 - 2\cos 5\alpha_1 + 2\cos 5\alpha_2}{5}\right] = 0$$

or
$$1 - 2\cos 3\alpha_1 + 2\cos 3\alpha_2 = 0$$

and
$$1 - 2\cos 5\alpha_1 + 2\cos 5\alpha_2 = 0$$

The above two simultaneous equations can be solved numerically to calculate $\alpha_1$ and $\alpha_2$ under the condition that $0 < \alpha_1 < 90°$ and $\alpha_1 < \alpha_2 < 90°$. This gives $\alpha_1 = 23.62°$ and $\alpha_2 = 33.304°$.

With these values of $\alpha_1$, $\alpha_2$, the amplitudes of 7th, 9th and 11th harmonics, from Eq. (8.76), are as under :

$$A_7 = \frac{4V_s}{7\pi}[1 - 2\cos 7\times 23.62 + 2\cos 7\times 33.304] = 0.31555\ V_s$$

$$A_9 = \frac{4V_s}{9\pi}[1 - 2\cos 9\times 23.62 + 2\cos 9\times 33.304] = 0.5202\ V_s$$

and
$$V_{11} = \frac{4V_s}{11\pi}[1 - 2\cos 11\times 23.62 + 2\cos 11\times 33.304] = 0.3867\ V_s$$

The amplitude of the fundamental component for these values of $\alpha_1$ and $\alpha_2$ is

$$A_1 = \frac{4V_s}{\pi}[1 - 2\cos 23.62 + 2\cos 33.304] = 1.0684\ V_s$$

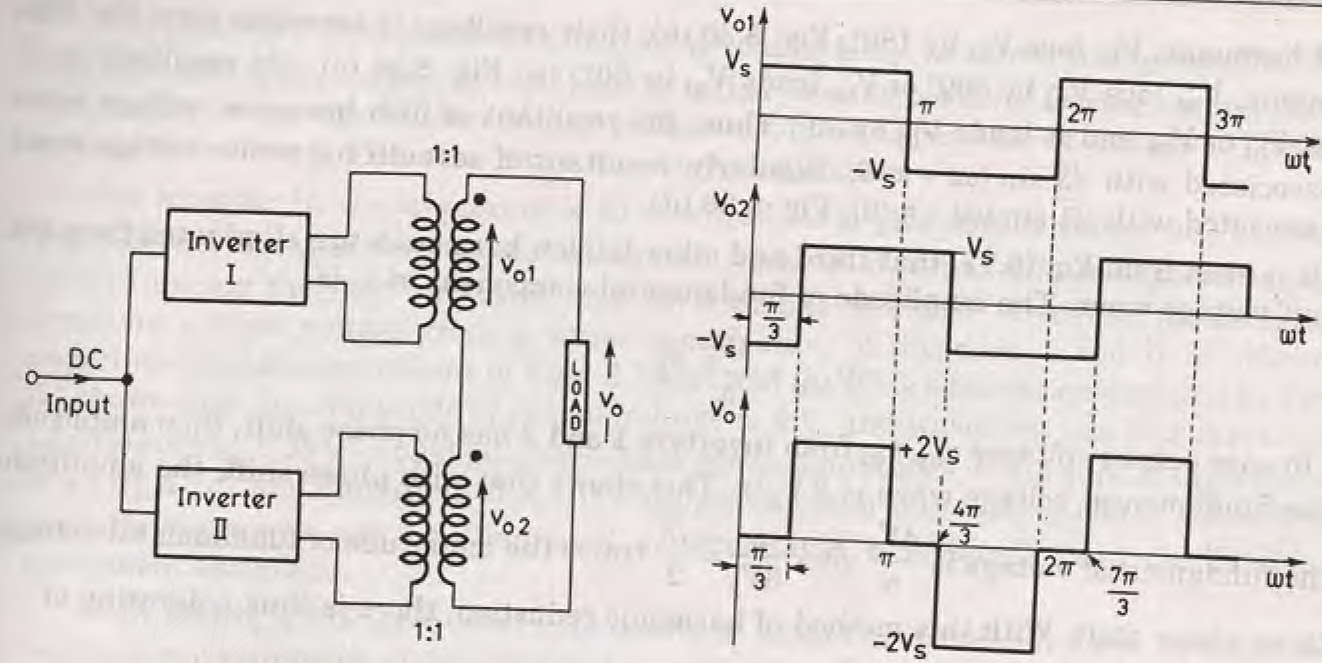
The amplitude of the fundamental component of unmodulated output voltage wave is

$$A_{1\cdot n} = \frac{4V_s}{\pi} = 1.27324\ V_s$$

In terms of the fundamental component of unmodulated voltage wave, the amplitude of 7th, 9th and 11th harmonics are respectively 24.78% (= 0.31555 × 100/1.27324), 40.86% and 30.37% but third and fifth harmonics are eliminated from the inverter output voltage wave. The amplitude of the fundamental voltage is 83.91% or 0.8391 times the amplitude of fundamental component of unmodulated voltage wave. Thus, with this method of harmonic reduction inverter is derated by (100-83.91) 16.09%. Another disadvantage of this method is that there are additional eight commutations per cycle and this leads to more switching losses in the thyristors.

### 8.7.2. Harmonic Reduction by Transformer Connections

Output voltage from two or more inverters can be combined by means of transformers to get a net output voltage with reduced harmonic content. The essential condition of this scheme is that the output voltage waveforms from the inverters must be similar but phase-shifted from each other. Fig. 8.35 (*a*) illustrates two transformers in series. Their output voltages, $v_{01}$ from inverter 1 and $v_{02}$ from inverter 2, are shown in Fig. 8.34 (*b*). Here $v_{02}$ waveform is taken to have a phase shift of $\pi/3$ radians with respect to $v_{01}$ waveform as shown. The resultant output voltage $v_0$ is obtained by adding the vertical ordinates of $v_{01}$ and $v_{02}$. It is seen that $v_0$ has an amplitude of $2\ V_s$ from $\frac{\pi}{3}$ to $\pi$, $\frac{4\pi}{3}$ to $2\pi$ and so on. Note that shape of the output voltage wave $v_0$ is a quasi-square wave.



(a) (b)

Fig. 8.35. (a) Harmonic reduction by transformer connections (b) Elimination of third and other triplen harmonics.

The Fourier analysis of waveforms $v_{01}$ and $v_{02}$ gives

$$v_{01} = \frac{4V_s}{\pi}\left[\sin \omega t + \frac{1}{3}\sin 3\omega t + \frac{1}{5}\sin 5\omega t + \frac{1}{7}\sin 7\omega t + \ldots\right]$$

$$v_{02} = \frac{4V_s}{\pi}\left[\sin\left(\omega t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + \frac{1}{3}\sin 3\left(\omega t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + \frac{1}{5}\sin 5\left(\omega t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + \frac{1}{7}\sin 7\left(\omega t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + \cdots\right]$$

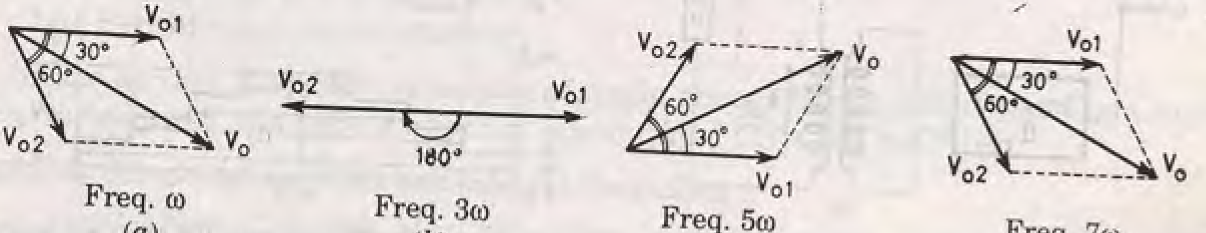
The resultant voltage $v_0$ is

$$v_0 = v_{01} + v_{02}$$

$$= \frac{4V_s}{\pi}\sqrt{3}\left[\sin\left(\omega t - \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + \frac{1}{5}\sin\left(5\omega t + \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + \frac{1}{7}\sin\left(7\,\omega t - \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + \ldots\right] \quad \ldots(8.77)$$

The expression for resultant voltage $v_0$ as given above can be obtained from $v_{01}$ and $v_{02}$ analytically or graphically. The summation by graphical method is carried out as under :

An examination of the expressions for $v_{01}$ and $v_{02}$ reveals that for the fundamental frequency ; $V_{02}$ lags $V_{01}$ by 60°, this is shown in Fig. 8.36 (a). The resultant of $V_{01}$ and $V_{02}$ must be $\sqrt{3}$ times $V_{01}$ (or $V_{02}$) and at the same time, the resultant lags $V_{01}$ by 30°. Net value of fundamental frequency voltage must, therefore, be associated with $\sqrt{3}\sin(\omega t - \pi/6)$. For



Freq. ω (a) Freq. 3ω (b) Freq. 5ω (c) Freq. 7ω (d)

Fig. 8.36. Pertaining to the summation of first, third, fifth and seventh harmonic voltages.

third harmonic, $V_{02}$ lags $V_{01}$ by 180°, Fig. 8.36 (*b*), their resultant is therefore zero. For fifth harmonic, $V_{02}$ lags $V_{01}$ by 300° or $V_{02}$ leads $V_{01}$ by 60°, see Fig. 8.36 (*c*) ; its resultant is $\sqrt{3}$ times $V_{01}$ or $V_{02}$ and it leads $V_{01}$ by 30°. Thus, the resultant of fifth harmonic voltage must be associated with $\sqrt{3}\sin(\omega t + \pi/6)$. Similarly, resultant of seventh harmonic voltage must be associated with $\sqrt{3}\sin(\omega t - \pi/6)$, Fig. 8.36 (*d*).

It is seen from Eq. (8.77) that third and other triplen harmonics are eliminated from net output voltage wave. The amplitude of fundamental component of $v_0$ is

$$V_{01m} = \frac{4V_s}{\pi}\sqrt{3}$$

In case output voltages $v_{01}$, $v_{02}$ from inverters 1 and 2 has no phase shift, then amplitude of the fundamental voltage wave is $8\,V_s/\pi$. This shows that with phase shift, the amplitude of the fundamental voltage is $\frac{4V_s}{\pi}\sqrt{3}\times\frac{\pi}{8V_s} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ times the amplitude of fundamental voltage with no phase shift. With this method of harmonic reduction, there is thus a derating of

$$\left(\frac{\frac{8V_s}{\pi}I - \frac{4}{\pi}V_s\cdot\sqrt{3}\,I}{\frac{8V_s}{\pi}I}\right)100 = \left(1 - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)100 = 13.4\%$$

in their net output power so far as fundamental component is concerned. The degree of derating with this method is, however, less than that obtained in PWM harmonic reduction method.

The disadvantage of this method of harmonic reduction is the need for more number of inverters and transformers of similar ratings.

### 8.7.3. Harmonic Reduction by Stepped-wave Inverters

In this method, pulses of different widths and heights are superimposed to produce a a resultant stepped wave with reduced harmonic content. Fig. 8.37 illustrates two stepped-wave inverters fed from a common dc supply. The two transformers used have different turns ratio from primary to secondary. In this figure, the turns ratio from primary to secondary is assumed three for transformer 1 and unity for transformer 2.

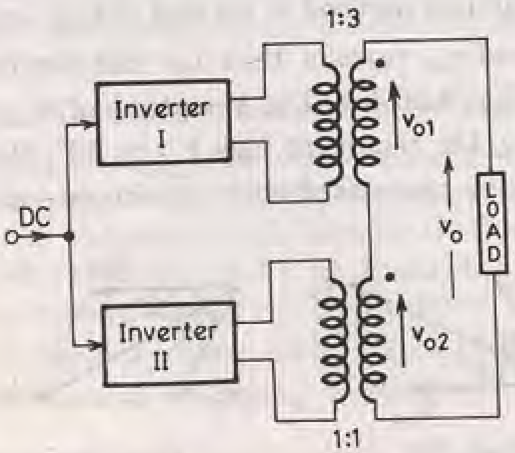


Fig. 8.37. Harmonic reduction by stepped wave inverters.

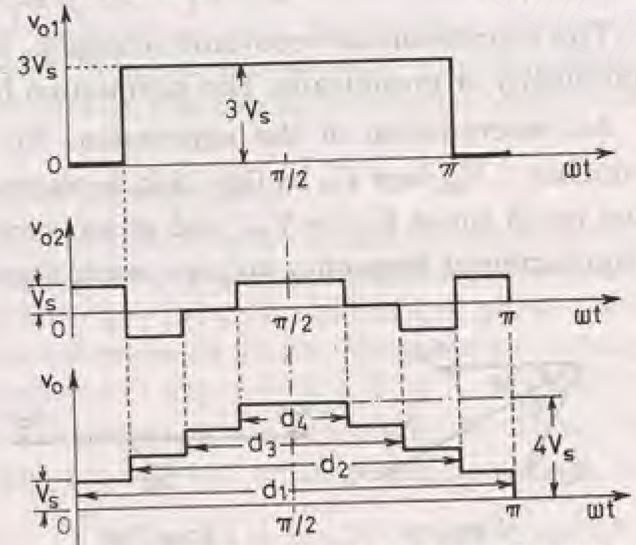


Fig. 8.38. Waveforms for stepped-wave inverters.

The inverter *I* is so gated that its output voltage is $v_{01}$ as shown in Fig. 8.38 (*a*). During the first-half cycle, output voltage level is either zero or positive. During second half cycle (not shown in the figure), the output voltage would be either zero or negative. This output voltage waveform is given the name *two-level modulation.*

For inverter II, the triggering is so arranged as to give output voltage $v_{02}$ as shown in Fig. 8.38 (*b*). It is seen from $v_{02}$ waveform that the level of output voltage is positive, negative or zero during the first half cycle, this inverter has therefore *three-level modulation*. The resultant output voltage from a series combination of inverters I and II is obtained by superimposing the waveforms of Figs. 8.38 (*a*) and (*b*). This summation depicted in Fig. 8.38 (*c*) shows that the amplitude of output voltage is 4 $V_s$ and waveform has four steps. Fourier analysis of Fig. 8.38 (*c*) would give harmonics whose amplitudes would depend upon the values of $d_1$, $d_2$, $d_3$, $d_4$ and amplitude of $v_0$. By a proper choice of these parameters ; third, fifth and seventh harmonics can be eliminated or attenuated considerably and the fundamental component optimised.

Note that it is the three-level modulation of second inverter that helps in achieving the required wave-stepping of the resultant output voltage waveform.

## 8.8. CURRENT SOURCE INVERTERS

So far, voltage-source inverters have been discussed. In these inverters, input voltage is maintained constant and the amplitude of output voltage does not depend on the load. However, the waveform of load current as well as its magnitude depends upon the nature of the load impedance.

In the current-source inverters (CSIs), input current is constant but adjustable. The amplitude of output current from CSI is independent of the load. However, the magnitude of output voltage and its waveform output from CSI is dependent upon the nature of load impedance. The dc input to CSI is obtained from a fixed voltage ac source through a controlled rectifier bridge, or through a diode bridge and a chopper. In order that current input to CSI is almost ripple free, L-filter is used before CSI.

A CSI converts the input dc current to an ac current at its output terminals. The output frequency of ac current depends upon the rate of triggering the SCRs. The amplitude of ac output current can be adjusted by controlling the magnitude of dc input current.

A CSI does not require any feedback diodes, whereas these are required in a VSI. Commutation circuit is simple, as it contains only capacitors. As power semi-conductors in a CSI have to withstand reverse voltage, devices such as GTOs, power transistors, power MOSFETs cannot be used in a CSI.

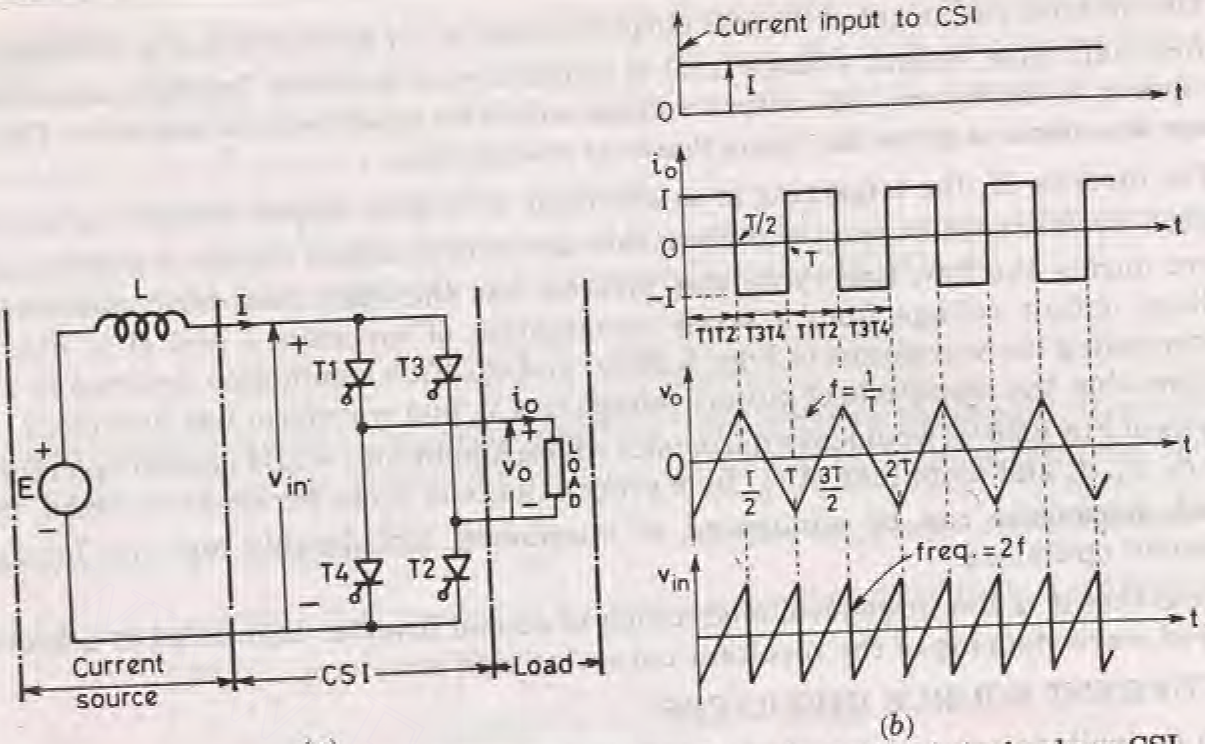
The CSIs find their use in the following applications :

(*i*) Speed control of ac motors
(*ii*) Induction heating
(*iii*) Lagging VAr compensation
(*iv*) Synchronous motor starting.

In this section, first basic principles of single-phase CSI are considered. Then single-phase force-commutated and auto-sequential commutated CSIs are described.

### 8.8.1. Single-phase CSI with Ideal Switches

A single-phase CSI with ideal thyristors is shown in Fig. 8.39 (*a*). Here a thyristor is assumed an ideal switch with zero commutation time. Positive directions for load voltage



(a) (b)

Fig. 8.39. (a) Power circuit diagram and (b) waveforms for an ideal single-phase CSI.

$v_0$ and load current $i_0$ are indicated in Fig. 8.39 (a). The source consists of a voltage source $E$ and a large inductance $L$ in series with it. The function of high-impedance reactor in series with voltage source is to maintain a constant current at the input terminals of CSI. In other words, dc input current $I$ to CSI is constant as shown in Fig. 8.39 (b).

In Fig. 8.39 (a), when T1, T2 are on, load current $i_0$ is positive and equal to $I$. When T3, T4 are on, load current $i_0$ is negative and equal to $-I$ as shown in Fig. 8.39 (b). The output frequency of $i_0$ can be varied by controlling the frequency of triggering the thyristor pairs T1, T2 and T3, T4. It is seen from Fig. 8.39 (b) that output current $i_0$ is a square wave of amplitude equal to the dc input current $I$.

Assume that load consists of a capacitor $C$. It is known for a capacitor that

$$i_0 = C\frac{dv_0}{dt}$$

As $i_0$ is constant, slope $\frac{dv_0}{dt}$ must be constant over every half cycle. This slope is positive from zero to $T/2$ and negative from $T/2$ to $T$. On this basis, waveform of load voltage $v_0$ is drawn in Fig. 8.39 (b). The input voltage to the CSI, *i.e.* $v_{in}$, is positive when T1, T2 conduct and it is negative when T3, T4 conduct. Note that waveshape of $v_{in}$ can be drawn by referring to the waveform of $v_0$. For $f = 1/T$ as the frequency of output voltage or current, input voltage $v_{in}$ has a frequency of $2f$, this is revealed by an examination of Fig. 8.39 (b).

The dc current $I$, input to CSI, is always unidirectional. If average value of $v_{in}$ is positive, power flows from source to load. In case average value of $v_{in}$ is negative, power flows from load to source, *i.e.* regeneration of power takes place.

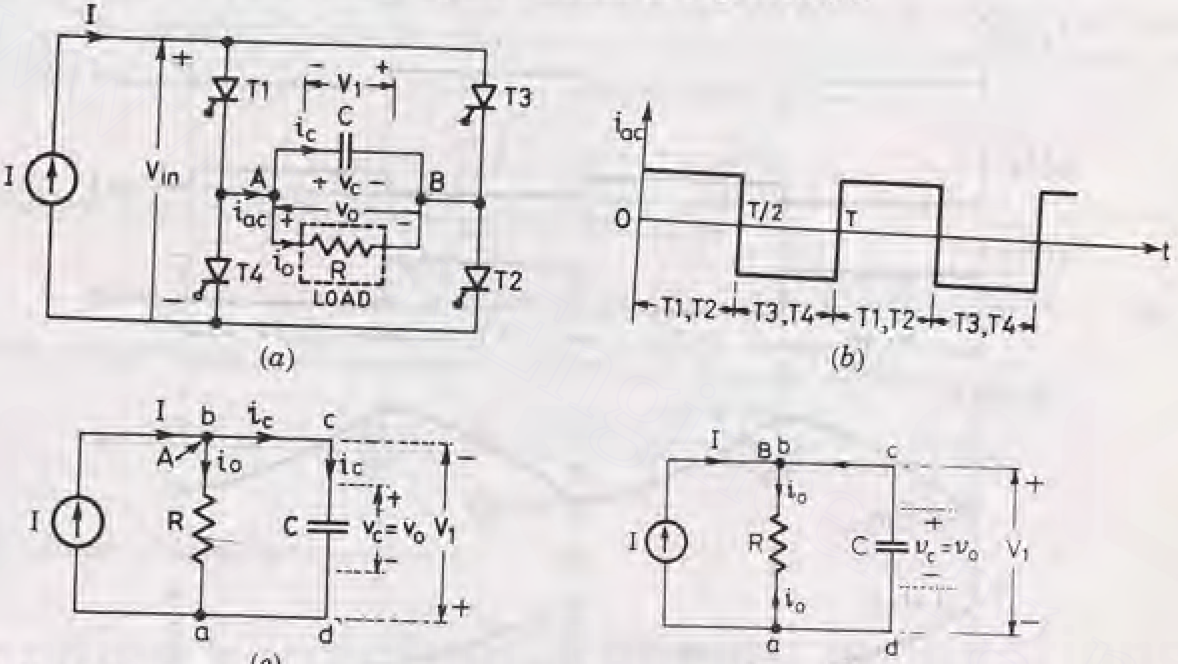
In a practical inverter, the load current waveform is not a square wave owing to the fact that rise and fall of current can't be instantaneous as shown in Fig. 8.39 (b). On account of finite commutation time, a practical inverter has finite times for the rise and fall of current.

CSIs may be load or force commutated. Load commutation is possible when load pf is leading. For lagging pf loads, forced-commutation is essential. Here single-phase CSIs using forced commutation are studied. Use of commutating capacitor is an important feature of force-commutated CSIs.

### 8.8.2. Single-phase Capacitor-Commutated CSI with R Load

As stated above, all force-commutated CSIs need capacitors for their commutation. Here the term 'capacitor commutated' is used just to distinguish this CSI from other CSIs.

Power circuit diagram for a single-phase CSI with resistive load $R$ is shown in Fig. 8.40 (*a*). The source for this inverter is a constant but adjustable dc current source. Capacitor $C$ in parallel with the load is used for storing the charge for force-commutating the SCRs. The thyristors T1 to T4 are the four power switches. These SCRs are gated in pairs ; T1, T2 together by gating signals $i_{g1}, i_{g2}$ and T3, T4 by $i_{g3}, i_{g4}$ as shown in Fig. 8.41. Positive directions for load current $i_0$ and load voltage $v_0$ are marked in Fig. 8.40 (*a*).



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*) (*d*)

Fig. 8.40. (*a*) Power circuit diagram of 1—ϕ CSI with R load (*b*) AC output current waveform (*c*) Equivalent circuit of Fig. (*a*) for $0 < t < T/2$ and (*d*) Equivalent circuit of Fig. (*a*) for $T/2 < t < T$.

Before $t = 0$, let the capacitor voltage be $v_c = -V_1$, *i.e.* capacitor has left plate negative and right plate positive in Fig. 8.40 (*a*). When T1, T2 are gated at $t = 0$, the capacitor voltage $v_c$ reverse biases conducting thyristors T3, T4 ; these are therefore commutated immediately. The source current $I$ now flows through T1, parallel combination of $R$ and $C$ and through T2. From zero to $T/2$, $i_{T1} = i_{T2} = I$, output current $i_{ac} = I$ ; capacitor voltage $v_c$ changes from $-V_1$ to $V_1$ through the charging of $C$ by current $i_c$. Note that here load voltage $v_0 = v_c$. Thus, the waveform of $i_0 = \frac{v_0}{R} = \frac{v_c}{R}$ has the same nature as that of $v_c$, see Fig. 8.41. When T3, T4 are gated at $t = T/2$, $v_c = V_1$ reverse biases T1, T2 ; these are therefore turned-off immediately. The source current low flows through T3, parallel combination of $R, C$ and T4. From $T/2$ to $T$, $i_{T3} = i_{T4} = +I$ but $i_{ac} = -I$. The variation of ac current $i_{ac}$ is shown in Fig. 8.40 (*b*).

Under steady state operation of the CSI, various current and voltage waveforms are sketched in Fig. 8.41. At $t = 0$, when the capacitor is charged with voltage $v_c = -V_1$, then

$v_0 = v_c = -V_1$ and load current $i_0 = -\frac{V_1}{R_1} = -I_1$. From $t = 0$ to $T/2$, capacitor charges from $-V_1$ to $V_1$. Therefore, at $t = \frac{T}{2}$, $i_0 = \frac{v_c}{R} = \frac{v_0}{R} = \frac{V_1}{R} = I_1$. This is shown in Fig. 8.41. Input voltage $v_{in} = v_0$ from $t = 0$ to $T/2$ whereas $v_{in} = -v_0$ from $T/2$ to $T$.

It is seen from Fig. 8.40 (*a*) that when T1, T2 are conducting for $0 < t < T/2$, currents $i_c$, $i_0$ are leaving the node *A* and current *I* is entering the node *A*. Therefore, equivalent circuit for Fig. 8.40 (*a*) for $0 < t < \frac{T}{2}$ may be drawn as shown in Fig. 8.40 (*c*). KCL at node *A* in Fig. 8.40 (*a*) or at node *b* in Fig. 8.40 (*c*) gives

$$i_0 + i_c = I$$

or

$$i_c = I - i_0$$

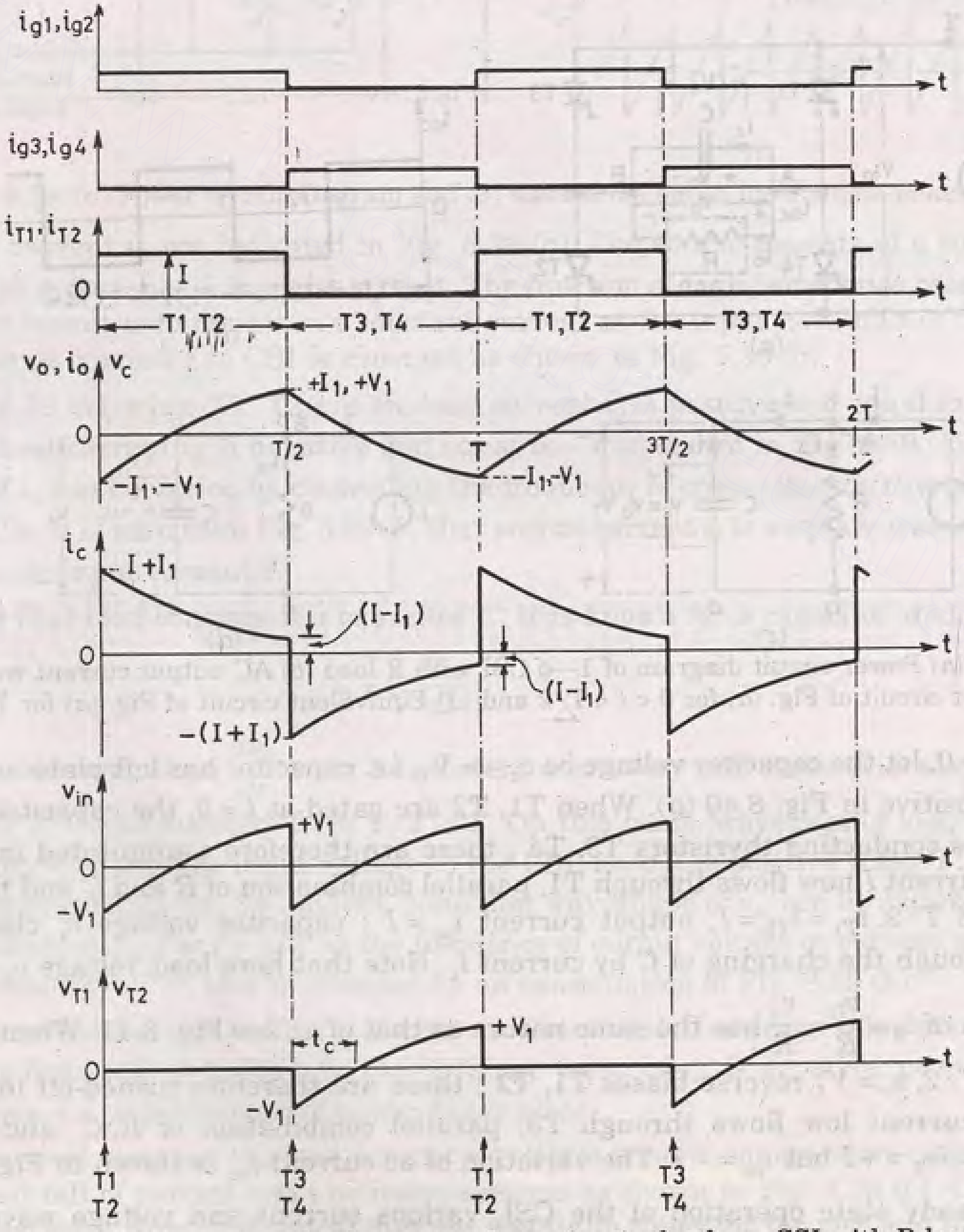


Fig. 8.41. Current and voltage waveforms for single-phase CSI with R load.

At $t = 0$, $i_0 = -I_1$, therefore, $i_c = I + I_1$. Just before $T/2$, $i_0 = I_1$, therefore $i_c = I - I_1$. This is shown in Fig. 8.41.

Just after $T/2$, when T1, T2 are off and T3, T4 are conducting, currents $i_0$, $i_c$ will continue flowing in the same direction. As such, all the three currents $i_0$, $i_c$, $I$ enter the node $B$ in Fig. 8.40 (*a*). This gives the equivalent circuit of Fig. 8.40 (*d*). KCL at node $b$ of this figure gives

$$i_0 + i_c + I = 0$$

or

$$i_c = -I - i_0$$

At $t = T/2$, $i_0 = +I_1$, therefore, $i_c = -I - I_1 = -(I + I_1)$. This is shown in Fig. 8.41.

At $t = T$, $i_0 = -I_1$, therefore, $i_c = -I + I_1 = -(I - I_1)$ and so on.

Voltage across thyristor T1 is zero when T1, T2 are on. At $T/2$, when T3, T4 are turned on, $v_{T1} = v_{T2} = -v_c = -v_0 = v_{in}$ from $T/2$ to $T$. These waveforms are sketched in Fig. 8.41.

**Analysis.** From $0 < t < T/2$, equivalent circuit for the CSI of Fig. 8.40 (*a*) is as shown in Fig. 8.40 (*c*). The capacitor is initially charged to a voltage $-V_1$. Traversing the closed path *a bcd a*, we get

$$Ri_0 - \frac{1}{C}\int (I - i_0)\,dt + v_1 = 0 \qquad \text{...(8.78)}$$

Differentiation of Eq. (8.78) with respect to time gives

$$R\frac{di_0}{dt} + \frac{i_0}{C} = \frac{I}{C} \quad \text{or} \quad \left(Rp + \frac{1}{C}\right) i_0 = \frac{I}{C} \qquad \text{...(8.79)}$$

Complementary function of the solution is obtained form force-free equation

$$\left(Rp + \frac{1}{C}\right) I_{cp} = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad p = -\frac{1}{RC}$$

$$\therefore \qquad I_{cp} = A\,e^{-t/RC}$$

For particular integral, put $p = 0$ in Eq. (8.79)

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{i_0}{C} = \frac{I}{C} \quad \text{or} \quad i_0 = I$$

Thus, complete solution for load current $i_0$, from Eq. (8.79), is

$$i_0 = \text{P.I.} + \text{C.F} = I + A\,e^{-t/RC} \qquad \text{...(8.80)}$$

Under steady state operation, the load current at $t = 0$, from Fig. 8.41, is $i_0 = -I_1$. Therefore, from Eq. (8.80),

$$-I_1 = I + A$$

or

$$A = -(I + I_1)$$

$$\therefore \qquad i_0 = I - (I + I_1)\,e^{-t/RC}$$

or

$$i_0 = I(1 - e^{-t/RC}) - I_1\,e^{-t/RC} \qquad \text{...(8.81)}$$

for

$$0 < t < T/2.$$

As only steady solution is desired, current $i_0$ at $t = T/2$ becomes $I_1$. Substitution of these values in Eq. (8.81), gives

$$I_1 = I\,(1 - e^{-T/2RC}) - I_1\,e^{T/2RC}$$

or
$$I_1 = I\left[\frac{1-e^{-T/2RC}}{1+e^{-T/2RC}}\right] \qquad \text{...(8.82)}$$

$$= I \text{ if } \frac{T}{2RC} \gg 1 \quad \text{or} \quad T \gg RC$$

Substitution of $I_1$ from Eq. (8.82) in Eq. (8.81), gives

$$i_0 = I\,(1-e^{-t/RC}) - I\left\{\frac{1-e^{-T/2RC}}{1+e^{-T/2RC}}\right]$$

or
$$i_0 = I\left[1 - 2\,\frac{e^{-t/RC}}{1+\exp\,(-T/2RC)}\right] \qquad \text{...(8.83)}$$

The output voltage $v_0$, or capacitor voltage $v_c$ is given by

$$v_0 = v_c = R\,i_0 = RI\left[1 - 2\,\frac{e^{-t/RC}}{1+\exp\,(-T/2RC)}\right]$$

The turn-off time $t_c$ provided by the circuit to each SCR is obtained from the condition that when $t = t_c$, $v_0 = v_c = i_0 R = 0$. Therefore, from the above equation,

$$v_0 = v_c = i_0 R = RI\left[1 - 2\,\frac{e^{-t_c/RC}}{1+e^{-T/RC}}\right] = 0$$

or
$$\exp\,(-t_c/RC) = \frac{1}{2}\,[1+\exp\,(-T/2\,RC)]$$

or
$$t_c = RC\ln\left[\frac{2}{1+\exp\cdot(-T/2\,RC)}\right] \qquad \text{...(8.84)}$$

The average value of the input voltage $V_{in}$ is obtained from the equation

$$V_{in} = \frac{1}{T/2}\int_0^{T/2} i_0 R\,dt$$

$$= \frac{2}{T}\,IR\int_0^{T/2}\left[1 - 2\,\frac{e^{-\frac{t}{RC}}}{1+e^{-\frac{T}{2RC}}}\right]dt$$

or
$$V_{in} = IR\left[1 - \frac{4RC}{T}\left(\frac{1-\exp.\,(-T/2RC)}{1+\exp.\,(-T/2RC)}\right)\right] \qquad \text{...(8.85)}$$

When input power $V_{in}\cdot I$ is positive, power is delivered to the load.

**Design considerations.** (*i*) It is seen from Eq. (8.84) that as $T$ is reduced (*e.g.* with $T = 0$, $t_c = 0$), or inverter frequency is increased, $t_c$ reduces. But the circuit commutating time $t_c$ should not be less than the SCR turn off time $t_q$. This means that there is an upper limit to the inverter frequency beyond which inverter SCRs will fail to commutate.

(*ii*) When $T$ is large or inverter frequency ($= 1/T$) is low, the plot of $i_0$, or $v_0$, versus time $t$, from Eq. (8.83), becomes flatter as shown by dotted curve in Fig. 8.42. As this curve shape is nearer to a square

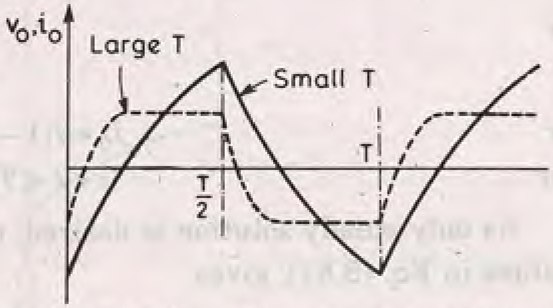


Fig. 8.42. Waveforms for 1-phase CSI with $R$ load

wave, it can be inferred that for low inverter frequencies, inverter has square wave output for load current $i_0$ or load voltage $v_0$.

When $T$ is small, or inverter frequency is high, waveform of $v_0$, or $i_0$ is shown by full-line curve in Fig. 8.42. As this full-line curve is closer to a sine wave, it can be said that for high inverter frequency, CSI has sinusoidal waveshape for output load current or load voltage.

(*iii*) *Square–wave current.* It has been found that for obtaining square wave of the load current, $\frac{T}{2RC} > 5.00$.

If $t_q$ is the turn-off time for the SCRs used in the CSI, then from Eq. (8.84),

$$t_q = RC\ \text{In}\ \frac{2}{1+e^{-5}} \cong RC \ln 2 = 0.69\, RC$$

or
$$C = \frac{t_q}{0.69\, R} \qquad \text{...(8.86)}$$

For $\frac{T}{2RC} = 5$ or for $T = 10\, RC$, maximum frequency,

$$f_{max} = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{10RC}$$

Substituting the value of $C$ from Eq. (8.86),

$$f_{max} = \frac{1}{10\, R} \cdot \frac{0.69\, R}{t_c} = \frac{0.069}{t_q}$$

(*iv*) *Sinusoidal wave output.* For obtaining sinusoidal waveshape for load current, frequency domain analysis shows that capacitive reactance $X_c$ at 3 times the minimum frequency $f_{min}$ should be less than $R/2$, *i.e.*

$$X_c \text{ at } 3\, f_{min} \le \frac{R}{2}$$

or
$$\frac{1}{3 \cdot 2\pi f_{min} \cdot C} \le \frac{R}{2}$$

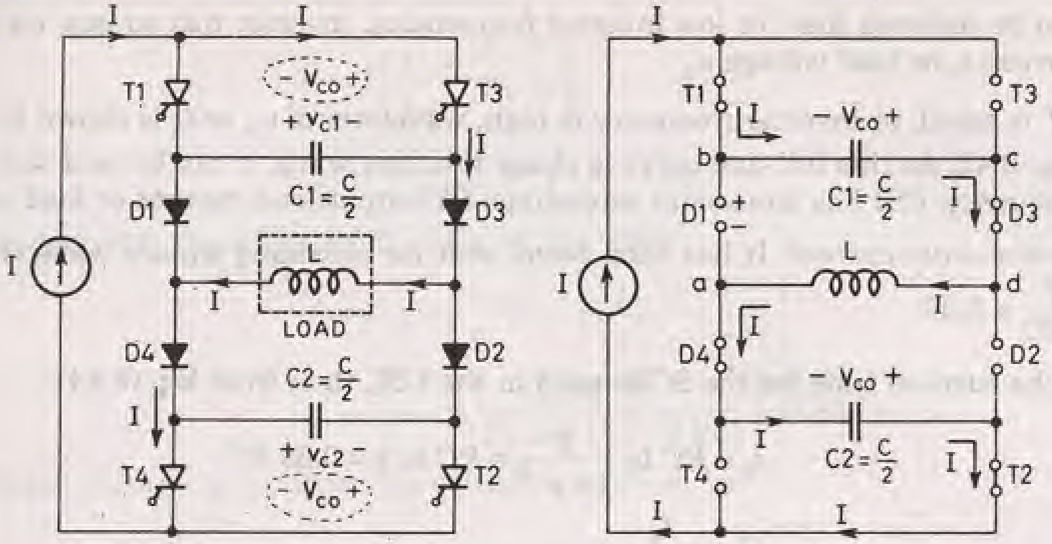
or
$$\frac{R}{2} \cdot \frac{3 \cdot 2\pi f_{min} - C}{1} \ge 1$$

or
$$C \ge \frac{0.106}{R \cdot f_{min}} \qquad \text{...(8.87)}$$

### 8.8.3. Single-phase Auto-sequential Commutated Inverter (1-phase ASCI)

Out of the force-commutated current source inverters, auto-sequential commutated inverter is the most popular. Though three-phase ASCI is the universal choice in industrial applications, here only single-phase ASCI is presented so as to highlight the basic concepts of this type of inverter.

Fig. 8.43 (*a*) shows a single-phase bridge inverter with auto-sequential commutation. A constant current source $I$ feeds the load which is assumed here an inductance $L$ for simplicity. Thyristor pairs T1, T2 and T3, T4 are alternatively switched to obtain a nearly square wave load current. Two commutating capacitors, one C1 in the upper half and the other C2 in the lower half are connected as shown. In Fig. 8.43 (*a*), diodes D1 to D4 are connected in series



(a) (b)

Fig. 8.43. (a) Single-phase bridge auto-sequential commutated inverter with L load (b) Mode I.

with each SCR to prevent the commutation capacitors from discharging into the load. The inverter output frequency is controlled by adjusting the period $T$ through the triggering circuits of thyristors. The operation of this inverter can be explained in two modes as under.

**Mode I.** In the beginning, *i.e.* before $t = 0$, assume that T3, T4 are conducting and a steady current $I$ flows through the path T3, D3, L, D4, T4 and source $I$ as shown in Fig. 8.43 (*a*). The commutating capacitors are assumed to be initially charged equally with the polarity as shown in Fig. 8.43 (*a*), *i.e.* $v_{c1} = v_{c2} = -V_{c0}$. This means that both capacitors C1 and C2 have right hand plate positive and left hand plate negative.

At time $t = 0$, thyristors T1, T2 are gated. The thyristor pair T3, T4 is turned-off by the application of reverse capacitor voltages. Now pair T1, T2 conducts current $I$. The path for this current $I$ is through T1, C1, D3, L, D4, C2 and T2 as shown in Fig. 8.43 (*b*). Both the capacitors will now begin charging linearly from $-V_{c0}$ by the constant current $I$. The diodes D1, D2 remain reverse biased by $V_{c0}$ initially. The voltage $v_{D1}$ across D1, when it is forward biased, can be obtained by traversing-closed path *abcda* as

$$v_{D1} + V_{c0} - \frac{1}{C/2}\int I\,dt = 0$$

Note that voltage across $L$ is zero because of constant current $I$.

$$\therefore \quad v_{D1} = -V_{c0} + \frac{2}{C}\int I\,dt \qquad \text{...(8.88)}$$

As the capacitor charges, voltages $v_{D1}$ across D1 rises linearly. Eventually, at some time $t_1$, reverse bias across D1 vanishes, $v_{D1}$ becomes zero and diode D1 starts conducting. An equation, identical to Eq. (8.88), holds good for diode D2 also. Actually, D1 and D2 start conducting at the same instant $t_1$. The time for which D1, D2 remain reverse biased is obtained from Eq. (8.88) by equating $v_{D1} = 0$.

$$\therefore \quad 0 = -V_{c0} + \frac{2}{C} I\, t_1$$

or

$$t_1 = \frac{C}{2I} V_{c0} \qquad \text{...(8.89)}$$

The capacitor voltage $v_{c1}=v_{c2}=v_c$ appears as reverse voltage across thyristors T3, T4 when T1, T2 are gated. The value of $v_c$ is given as

$$v_{c1}=v_{c2}=v_c=-V_{c0}+\frac{2}{C}\int I\,dt$$

Its value at time $t_1$ is $\quad v_{c1}=v_{c2}=v_c\,(t_1)=-V_{c0}+\frac{2}{C}I\,t_1$

Substituting the value of $t_1$ from Eq. (8.89) in the above expression,

$$v_{c1}=v_{c2}=v_c\,(t_1)=-V_{c0}+\frac{2I}{C}\left(\frac{C}{2I}V_{c0}\right)=0$$

This means that voltage across C1, C2 varies linearly from $-V_{c0}$ to zero in time $t_1$. Mode I ends when $t=t_1$ and $v_c=0$. Note that $t_1$ is also the circuit turn-off time for thyristors of Fig. 8.43.

**Mode II.** Diodes D3, D4 are already conducting, but at $t=t_1$, diodes D1, D2 get forward biased and start conducting. Thus, at the end of time $t_1$, all four diodes D1, D2, D3 and D4 conduct. As a result, commutating capacitors now get connected in parallel with the load as shown in Fig. 8.44 (*a*). For simplicity in analysis, Fig. 8.44 (*a*) is redrawn as shown in Fig. 8.44(*b*) where two parallel capacitors C1 and C2 are combined into one as $C\ (=C/2+C/2)$. In this figure, KCL gives

$$I+i_0=i_c\ (=i_{c1}+i_{c2})$$

As $\quad i_{c1}=i_{c2},\ i_{c1}=i_{c2}=\frac{1}{2}i_c$

For this figure, KVL gives, $\quad L\frac{di_0}{dt}+\frac{1}{C}\int i_c\cdot dt=0$

or

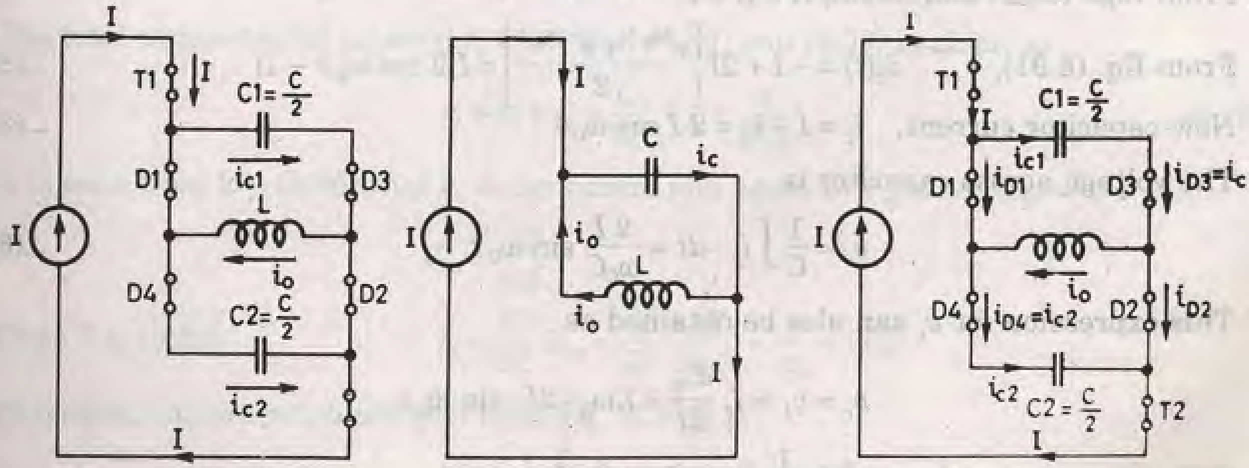
$$L\frac{di_0}{dt}+\frac{1}{C}\int (I+i_0)\,dt=0$$

or

$$L\frac{d^2i_0}{dt^2}+\frac{i_0}{C}=-\frac{I}{C} \qquad ...(8.90)$$

For solving Eq. (8.90), the initial conditions at $t=0$ are

$$i_0=I \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{di_0}{dt}=0$$



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 8.44. Equivalent circuits for 1-phase ASCI with load L.

It should be noted that in Eq. (8.90), time $t$ is measured from the instant D1, D2 begin conduction, *i.e.* time $t$ for mode II is measured from the instant mode I is over.

In Eq. (8.90), for particular integral

$$\frac{i_{os}}{C} = -\frac{I}{C}$$

or

$$i_{os} = -I$$

and for complementary function,

$$\left(Lp^2 + \frac{1}{C}\right) i_0 = 0$$

or

$$Lp^2 + \frac{1}{C} = 0$$

This gives

$$p^2 = -\frac{1}{LC} = -\,\omega_0^2 = j^2\omega_0^2$$

or

$$p = \pm j\omega_0$$

where

$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$

$\therefore$

$$i_{ot} = Ae^{j\omega_0 t} + Be^{-j\omega_0 t}$$

The total solution for the current is obtained by adding $i_{os}$ and $i_{ot}$

$\therefore$

$$i_0(t) = i_{os} + i_{ot}$$

$$= -I + Ae^{j\omega_0 t} + Be^{-j\omega_0 t} \qquad \text{...(8.91)}$$

At

$$t = 0,\ i_0 = I$$

$\therefore$

$$I = -I + A + B$$

or

$$A + B = 2I \qquad \text{...(8.92)}$$

At $t = 0$, $\dfrac{di_0}{dt} = 0$, from Eq. (8.91),

$$\frac{di_0}{dt} = j\omega_0\, Ae^{j\omega_0 t} - j\omega_0\, Be^{-j\omega_0 t} = 0$$

or

$$j\omega_0 (A - B) = 0$$

or

$$(A - B) = 0 \qquad \text{...(8.93)}$$

From Eqs. (8.92) and (8.93), $A = B = I$

From Eq. (8.91),

$$i_c(t) = -I + 2I\left[\frac{e^{j\omega_0 t} + e^{-j\omega_0 t}}{2}\right] = I[2\cos\omega_0 t - 1] \qquad \text{...(8.94)}$$

Now capacitor current, $i_c = I + i_0 = 2\,I\cos\omega_0 t$ ...(8.95)

The voltage across capacitor is

$$v_c = \frac{1}{C}\int i_c \cdot dt = \frac{2\,I}{\omega_0 C}\sin\omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(8.96)}$$

This expression for $v_c$ can also be obtained as

$$v_c = v_L = L\,\frac{di_0}{dt} = L\omega_0 \cdot 2I \cdot \sin\omega_0 t$$

But

$$\omega_0^2 = \frac{1}{LC} \quad \text{or} \quad L\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\omega_0 C}$$

$\therefore$

$$v_c = \frac{2I}{\omega_0 C} \sin \omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(8.96)}$$

Also

$$v_c = \frac{2I}{C} \cdot \sqrt{LC} \cdot \sin \omega_0 t = 2I \cdot \sqrt{L/C} \sin \omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(8.97)}$$

From Eq. (8.95),

$$i_{c1} = i_{c2} = \frac{1}{2}\ i_c = I \cos \omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(8.98)}$$

The existence of various currents $i_{C1}, i_{C2}, i_{D1}$ etc. is marked in Fig. 8.44 (*c*). Diode currents are given by

$$\left.\begin{aligned} i_{D2} &= i_{C1} = I \cos \omega_0 t \\ \text{and} \quad i_{D1} &= I - i_{C1} = I\,(1 - \cos \omega_0 t) \end{aligned}\right\} \text{for } 0 < t < t_2$$

As current $i_{C1}$ tends to reverse, diode D3 prevents its reversal. Similarly, diode D4 prevents the reversal of current $i_{C2}$.

From the initiation of mode II, a time $t_2$ must elapse for the current $i_{C1}$ to become zero. This time $t_2$ can be obtained by equating $i_{C1}$ to zero.

$\therefore$

$$i_{C1} = I \cos \omega_0 t_2 = 0$$

or

$$\cos \omega_0 t_2 = \cos \frac{\pi}{2}$$

or

$$t_2 = \frac{\pi}{2\omega_0} \qquad \text{...(8.99)}$$

The capacitor voltage $v_c$ at the end of mode II, *i.e.* at $t = t_2 = \frac{\pi}{2\omega_0}$, can be obtained from Eq. (8.96).

$\therefore$

$$v_c = \frac{2I}{\omega_0 C}$$

Load current at $t = t_2$ is $i_0 = 2I \cos \frac{\pi}{2} - I = -I$. This shows that load current has reversed from $+I$ to $-I$ during mode II of $t_2$ duration.

The waveforms for $v_c, i_0, i_{C1}, i_{D1}$ etc. are plotted in Fig. 8.45. It is seen from the waveform for $v_c$ that capacitor voltage changes by 2 $V_{co}$ during each commutation interval.

The total commutation interval $t_c$ from Eqs. (8.89) and (8.99) is given as

$$t_c = t_1 + t_2 = \frac{C}{2I}\ V_{co} + \frac{\pi}{2\omega_0} \qquad \text{...(8.100)}$$

It is seen from Eq. (8.96) that $v_c$ is maximum and equal to $V_{co}$ when $\omega_0 t = \pi/2$

$\therefore$

$$V_{co} = \frac{2I}{\omega_0 C}$$

From Eq. (8.89),

$$t_1 = \frac{C}{2I}\ V_{co} = \frac{C}{2I} \cdot \frac{2I}{\omega_0 C} = \frac{1}{\omega_0} = \sqrt{LC}$$

Therefore, commutation interval from Eq. (8.100) is

$$t_c = \left(\frac{1}{\omega_0} + \frac{\pi}{2\omega_0}\right) = \left(1 + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)\sqrt{LC} \qquad \text{...(8.101)}$$

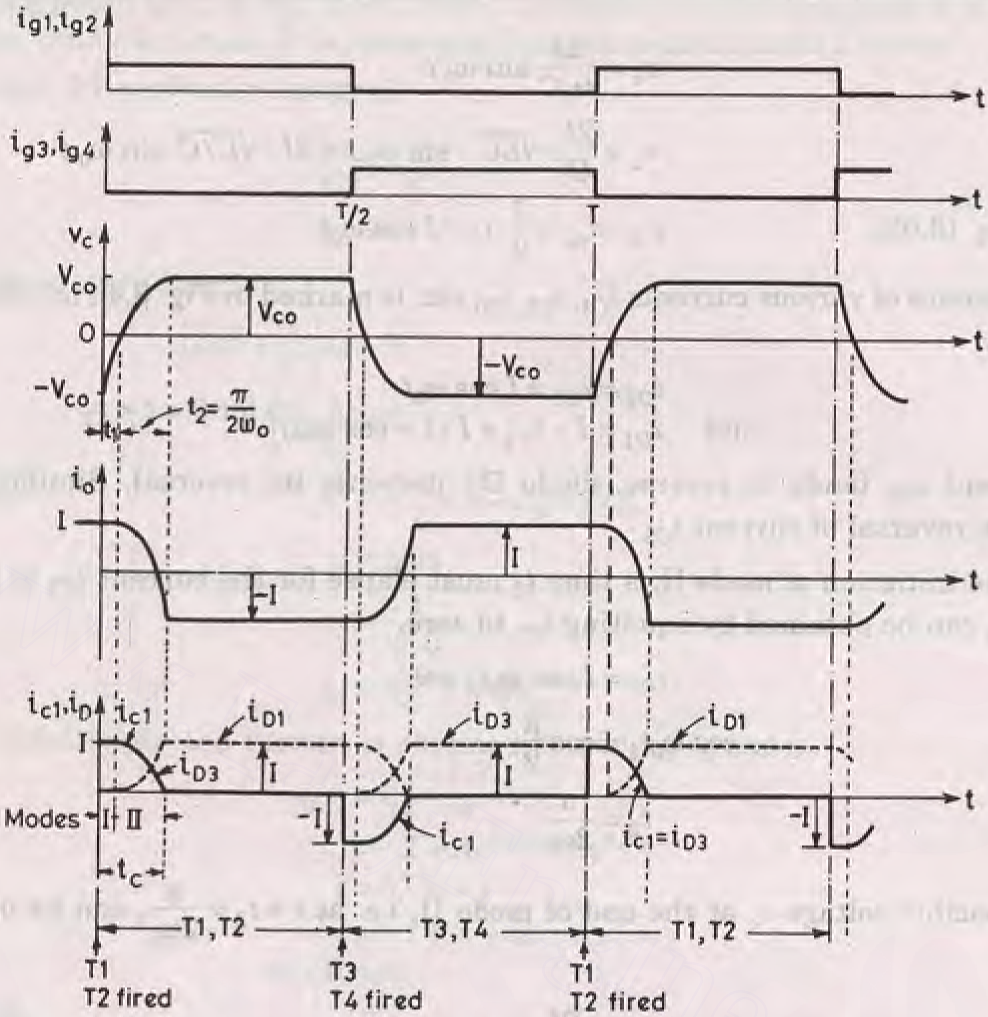


Fig. 8.45. Voltage and current waveforms for 1-phase ASCI.

At the end of total commutation interval $(t_1 + t_2)$, the steady input current $I$ flows through T1, D1, load L, D2 and T2. This constant current continues to flow till the next commutation process is initiated by gating SCRs, T3 and T4.

**Example 8.10.** *A single-phase autosequential commutated current source inverter feeds a load R. Describe its working with appropriate circuit and waveforms. Find also the circuit turn-off time for the thyristors.*

**Solution.** For the circuit diagram, replace $L$ by $R$ in Fig. 8.43 (*a*). In other words, Figs. 8.43 and 8.44 are being used here to describe the working of this inverter with $R$ as load in place of $L$. Working of this inverter is explained in two modes as before.

**Mode I :** Initially, it is assumed that T3, T4 are conducting. A constant current $I$ is flowing through the path T3 D3 R D4 T4 and the source $I$. Capacitors are initially charged so that $v_{c1} = v_{c2} = -V_{c0}$. Voltage across load is $IR = V_{c0}$.

When T1 T2 are turned on at $t = 0$, T3 T4 are turned off by the reverse voltage $V_{c0}$ appearing across them. Current $I$ now starts flowing through T1 C1 D3 R D4 T2. Capacitor voltages $v_{c1}$ and $v_{c2}$ start rising from $-V_{c0}$ towards zero. If $v_{D1}$ is the forward voltage drop across D1, then KVL for the loop *abcd* in Fig. 8.43 (*b*), (with $L$ replaced by $R$), gives

$$v_{D1} + V_{c0} - \frac{2}{C}\int I\,dt - IR = 0$$

or $$v_{D1} = -V_{c0} + IR + \frac{2}{C} I \int dt$$

But $$V_{c0} = IR, \quad \therefore \quad v_{D1} = \frac{2}{C} I \int dt.$$

Diode D1 will start conducting when $v_{D1}$ becomes zero. If $t_1$ is time after which $v_{D1} = 0$ and D1 begins conduction, then $v_{D1} = 0 = \frac{2}{C} I\, t_1 = 0$ or $t_1 = 0$. This means that when T1 T2 are turned on, T3 T4 are turned off immediately and diodes D1 D2 start conducting at the same time. In other words, all the four diodes start conducting as soon as T1 T2 are turned on.

**Mode II :**

With all the four diodes on, the equivalent circuit is shown in Fig. 8.44 (*a*) which is simplified to that given in Fig. 8.44 (*b*), (with *L* replaced by *R*). In this figure, KCL gives

$$I + i_0 = i_c$$

KVL for the loop consisting of *R* and *C* gives

$$R\, i_0 + \frac{1}{C} \int i_c\, dt = 0$$

$$R\, i_0 + \frac{1}{C} \int (I + i_0)\, dt = 0$$

or $$R \frac{di_0}{dt} + \frac{i_0}{C} = -\frac{I}{C}$$

Its particular integral gives the steady-state solution as $i_s = -I$. For transient part of the solution, proceed as under :

$$\left(Rp + \frac{1}{C}\right) i_0 = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad p = -\frac{1}{RC}$$

$$\therefore \quad i_t = A\, e^{-t/RC}$$

Total solution for load current is $i_0 = i_s + i_t = -I + A\, e^{-t/RC}$

When $t = 0$, initial current through *R* is $i_0 = I$, $\therefore A = 2I$

$\therefore$ Load current, $$i_0 = -I + 2I\, e^{-t/RC} = I\,(2\, e^{-t/RC} - 1) \qquad \text{...}(i)$$

Capacitor current, $$i_c = I + i_0 = 2I\, e^{-t/RC}$$

$$\therefore \quad i_{c1} = i_{c2} = \frac{1}{2} i_c = I\, e^{-t/RC} \qquad \text{...}(ii)$$

Diode D1 current, $$i_{D1} = I - i_{c1} = I\,(1 - e^{-t/RC}) \qquad \text{...}(iii)$$

Capacitor voltage $$v_{c1} = \frac{1}{C/2} \int i_{c1} \cdot dt = \frac{2}{C} \int I\, e^{-t/RC} \cdot dt$$

$$= -\frac{2I}{C} e^{-t/RC} \cdot (-RC) + k$$

or $$v_{c1} = -2IR\, e^{-t/RC} + k = -2\, V_{c0}\, e^{-t/RC} + k$$

When $t = 0$, initial voltage across capacitor is $v_{c1} = -V_{c0}$, this gives $k = V_{c0}$.

$$\therefore \quad v_{c1} = V_{c0}\, [1 - 2\, e^{-t/RC}] \qquad \text{...}(iv)$$

When T1 T2 are on ; $v_{c1}$, $v_{c2}$ appear as reverse bias across T3, T4 respectively. Therefore, circuit turn-off time $t_c$ for T3, T4 (or for any thyristor in Fig. 8.43 with *R* as the load) can be obtained from Eq. (*iv*) by putting $v_{c1} = 0$.

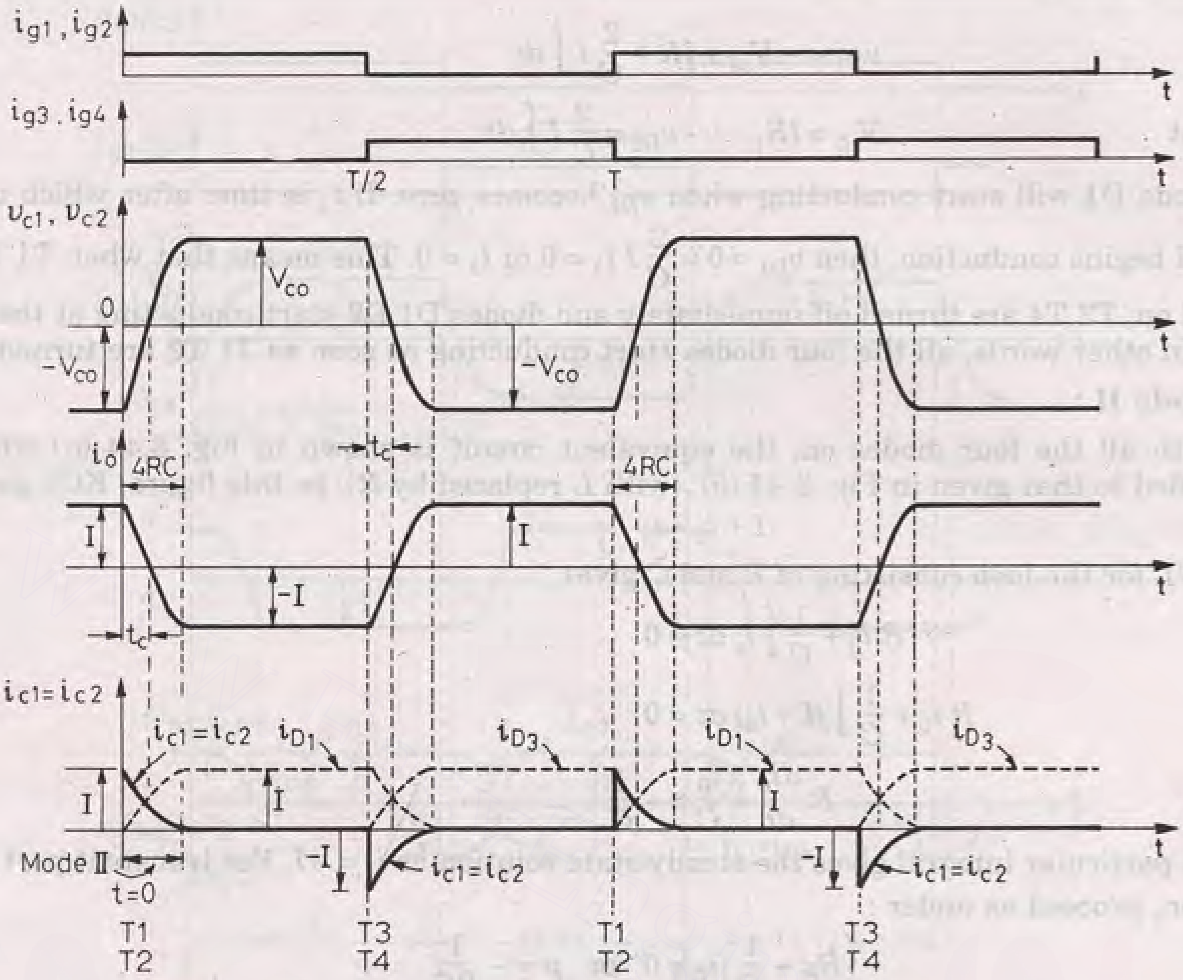


Fig. 8.46. Pertaining to Example 8.10.

$$\therefore \quad 0 = V_{c0}\,[1 - 2\,e^{-t_c/RC}]$$

$$\text{or} \quad t_c = RC \ln 2 \qquad \ldots(v)$$

From above, waveforms for $v_{c1}$ from Eq. (*iv*), $i_0$ from Eq. (*i*), $i_{c1} = i_{c2}$ from Eq. (*ii*) and $i_{D1}$ from Eq. (*iii*) are plotted in Fig. 8.46. It is seen from Eq. (*iv*) that $v_{c1}$ will change from $-V_{c0}$ at $t = 0$ to $+V_{c0}$ after an infinite time. But it is usual to take that in time 4 RC, $v_{c1}$ varies from $-V_{c0}$ to $+V_{c0}$ as shown in Fig. 8.46.

**Example 8.11.** *A single-phase auto-sequential commutated CSI is fed from 220 V dc source. The load is R = 10 Ω. Thyristors have turn-off time of 20 μs and inverter output frequency is 50 Hz. Take a factor of safety of 2.*

*Determine suitable value of source inductance assuming a maximum current change of 0.5 A in one cycle. Neglect all losses. Find also the values of commutating capacitors.*

**Solution.** Time of one cycle, $T = \dfrac{1}{f} = \dfrac{1}{50}$ sec

$\therefore$ Rate of change of current, $\dfrac{di}{dt} = \dfrac{0.5A}{T} = 0.5 \times 50 = 25$ A/sec

A short circuit at the load terminals of the inverter puts the most severe conditions on the source. So the value of source inductance must be obtained from these considerations.

$$\therefore \quad V_s = L\,\frac{di}{dt}$$

∴ Source inductance, $$L = \frac{220}{25} = 8.8 \text{ H}$$

From the previous example, from Eq. (*v*), circuit-turn-off time is given by

$$t_c = RC \ln 2$$

or $$20 \times 2 \times 10^{-6} = 10 \cdot C \ln 2$$

or $$C = \frac{40 \times 10^{-6}}{10 \ln 2} = 5.77 \,\mu\text{F}.$$

## 8.9. SERIES INVERTERS

Inverters in which commutating components are permanently connected in series with the load are called *series inverters*. The series circuit so formed must be underdamped. As the current attains zero value due to the nature of the series circuit, series inverters are also classified as *self-commutated inverters* or *load-commutated inverters*. These inverters operate at high frequencies (200 Hz to 100 kHz), the size of commutating components is, therefore, small. These inverters are used extensively in induction heating, fluorescent lighting etc.

The object of this section is to describe single-phase series inverters.

### 8.9.1. Basic Series Inverter

The circuit diagram for a basic series inverter is shown in Fig. 8.47. It consists of load resistance $R$ in series with commutating components $L$ and $C$. The values of $L$ and $C$ are so chosen that the series RLC circuit forms an underdamped circuit. Two thyristors T1 and T2 are turned on appropriately so that output voltage of desired frequency can be obtained.

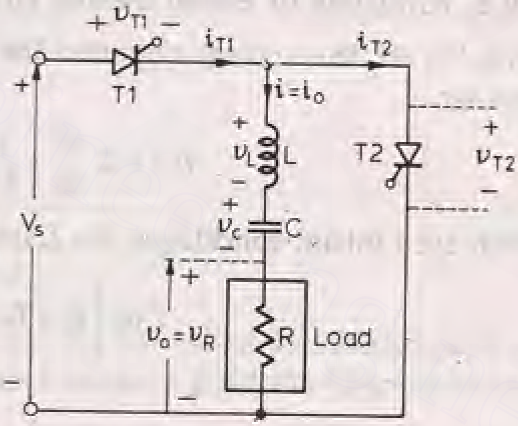


Fig. 8.47. Basic series inverter.

When thyristor T1 is turned on, with T2 off, current $i$ starts building up in the RLC circuit, Fig. 8.48. As the circuit is underdamped ; the load current, after reaching some peak value, decays to zero at point a, Fig. 8.48. At point *a*, as the load current tends to reverse, SCR T1 is turned off. After instant *a*, some minimum time $t_{q \cdot min}$ must elapse for T1 to regain its forward blocking capability. This minimum time is given by

$$t_{q.min} = \frac{\pi}{\omega} - \frac{\pi}{\omega_r} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{f_r}\right) \qquad \text{...(8.102)}$$

where $\omega$ = output frequency in rad/sec

and $\omega_r$ = circuit ringing frequency in rad/sec.

In Fig. 8.48, time interval between the instant T1 is turned off and the instant T2 is turned on is indicated by $T_{off} = ab$, where $T_{off} > t_{q \cdot min}$. After thyristor T1 has commutated, upper plate of capacitor attains positive polarity. Now when T2 is turned on at instant *b*, capacitor begins to discharge and load current in the reversed direction builds up to some peak negative value and then decays to zero at instant *c*. After this, time $T_{off} = cd$ must elapse

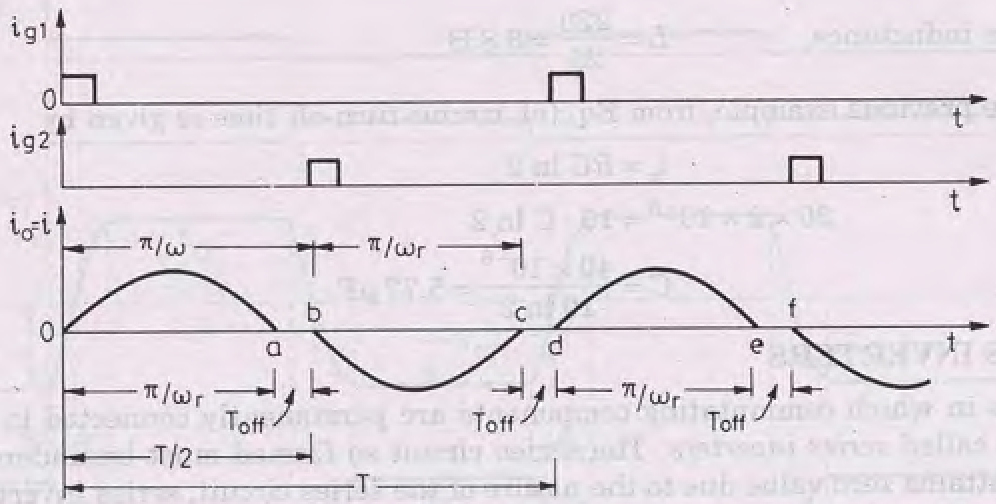


Fig. 8.48. Load current waveform for basic series inverter of Fig. 8.47.

for T2 to recover. At *d*, T1 is again turned on and the process repeats. In this manner, dc is converted to ac with the help of series inverter.

The capacitor stores charge during one half cycle and releases the same amount of charge during the next half cycle. As a consequence, the positive half cycle of current is identical with the negative half cycle of load current.

### 8.9.2. Analysis of Basic Series Inverter

With T2 off, the voltage equation for the series circuit of Fig. 8.47, when T1 is turned on, is given by

$$R\,i + L\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}\int i\,dt = V_s \qquad \text{...(8.103)}$$

With zero initial conditions, its Laplace transform is

$$I(s)\left[R + Ls + \frac{1}{sC}\right] = \frac{V_s}{s}$$

or

$$I(s) = \frac{V_s}{L}\,\frac{1}{s^2 + \frac{R}{L}s + \frac{1}{LC}} \qquad \text{...(8.104)}$$

The roots of $s^2 + \frac{R}{L}s + \frac{1}{LC} = 0$ are $s = -\frac{R}{2L} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{R}{2L}\right)^2 - \frac{1}{LC}}$

As the circuit is underdamped, $\sqrt{\left(\frac{R}{2L}\right)^2 - \frac{1}{LC}}$ must be negative, *i.e.*

$$\sqrt{\left(\frac{R}{2L}\right)^2 - \frac{1}{LC}} < 0 \text{ or } R^2 < \frac{4L}{C}$$

$$\therefore \qquad s = -\frac{R}{2L} \pm j\sqrt{\frac{1}{LC} - \left(\frac{R}{2L}\right)^2}$$

or

$$s = -\xi \pm j\,\omega_r$$

where

$$\xi = \frac{R}{2L},\quad \omega_r = \sqrt{\frac{1}{LC} - \left(\frac{R}{2L}\right)^2}$$

If $\omega_0 = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$, then $\omega_r = \sqrt{\omega_0^2 - \xi^2}$ or $\omega_0 = \sqrt{\omega_r^2 + \xi^2}$. Therefore, from Eq. (8.104),

$$I(s) = \frac{V_s}{L}\left[\frac{1}{(s+\xi-j\,\omega_r)\,(s+\xi+j\,\omega_r)}\right]$$

Let $$\frac{1}{(s+\xi-j\,\omega_r)\,(s+\xi+j\,\omega_r)} = \frac{A}{s+\xi-j\,\omega_r} + \frac{B}{s+\xi+j\,\omega_r}$$

From above, $$A = \frac{1}{2j\,\omega_r} \text{ and } B = \frac{-1}{2j\,\omega_r}$$

$\therefore$ $$I(s) = \frac{V_s}{L}\cdot\frac{1}{2j\,\omega_r}\left[\frac{1}{s+\xi-j\,\omega_r} - \frac{1}{s+\xi+j\,\omega_r}\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{L}\cdot\frac{1}{\omega_r}\left[\frac{\omega_r}{(s+\xi)^2+\omega_r^2}\right]$$

Its Laplace inverse is $$i(t) = \frac{V_s}{\omega_r \cdot L}\cdot e^{-\xi t}\cdot \sin\omega_r t \qquad \text{...(8.105)}$$

The plot of this current shows that load current $i(t)$ will be zero when $\omega_r t = \pi$ or $t = \dfrac{\pi}{\omega_r}$ sec. This is shown as $oa = \dfrac{\pi}{\omega_r}$ in Fig. 8.48.

Time period of oscillation, $$oa = \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{1/LC - (R/2L)^2}} \qquad \text{...(8.106)}$$

Output frequency, $$f = \frac{1}{2\,(oa + T_{off})}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\dfrac{2\pi}{\sqrt{1/LC-(R/2L)^2}} + 2\,T_{off}} \qquad \text{...(8.107)}$$

It is seen from Eq. (8.107) that output frequency can be controlled by varying *(i)* $T_{off}$, *(ii)* $R$, *(iii)* $L$ or *(iv)* $C$. In any case, output frequency $f$ cannot be more than the ringing frequency $f_r = \dfrac{1}{2\pi}\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1/LC-(R/2L)^2}}$ Hz, *i.e.* $f < f_r$.

From Eq. (8.105), the voltage across inductance $L$ is

$$v_L = L\frac{di}{dt} = L\cdot\frac{V_s}{L}\cdot\frac{1}{\omega_r}\left[e^{-\xi t}\cdot\omega_r\cos\omega_r t - \xi\, e^{-\xi t}\cdot\sin\omega_r t\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{\omega_r}\cdot e^{-\xi t}\,[\omega_r\cos\omega_r t - \xi\sin\omega_r t]$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{\omega_r}\cdot e^{-\xi t}\sqrt{\omega_r^2+\xi^2}\left[\frac{\omega_r}{\sqrt{\omega_r^2+\xi^2}}\cos\omega_r t - \frac{\xi}{\sqrt{\omega_r^2+\xi^2}}\sin\omega_r t\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_s}{\omega_r}\cdot e^{-\xi t}\cdot\sqrt{\omega_r^2+\xi^2}\,[\cos\psi\cos\omega_r t - \sin\psi\sin\omega_r t]$$

$$= V_s\cdot\frac{\omega_0}{\omega_r}\cdot e^{-\xi t}\cdot\cos(\omega_r t+\psi) \qquad \text{...(8.108)}$$

where $\omega_0$ = resonant frequency $= \sqrt{\omega_r^2 + \xi^2}$ and $\psi = \tan^{-1}\left(\dfrac{\xi}{\omega_r}\right)$, see Fig. 8.49.

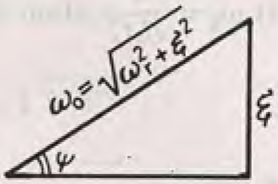


Fig. 8.49. Pertaining to ringing frequency $\omega_r$ and damping ratio $\xi$.

The voltage across capacitor $C$ is

$$v_c = V_s - v_R - v_L$$

$$v_c = V_s - \frac{V_s}{\omega_r} \cdot \frac{R}{L} e^{-\xi t} \sin \omega_r t - V_s \cdot \frac{\omega_0}{\omega_r} e^{-\xi t} \cdot \cos(\omega_r t + \psi)$$

$$= V_s \left[1 - \frac{1}{\omega_r} \cdot \frac{R}{L} e^{-\xi t} \sin \omega_r t - \frac{\omega_0}{\omega_r} e^{-\xi t} \cos(\omega_r t + \psi)\right]$$

But $$\frac{R}{L} = 2\xi$$

$\therefore$ $$v_c = V_s \left[1 - e^{-\xi t}\left\{\frac{2\xi}{\omega_r} \cdot \frac{\omega_0}{\omega_0} \sin \omega_r t + \frac{\omega_0}{\omega_r} \cdot \cos(\omega_r t + \psi)\right\}\right]$$

$$= V_s \left[1 - e^{-\xi t} \cdot \frac{\omega_0}{\omega_r}\left\{\frac{2\xi}{\omega_0} \sin \omega_r t + \cos(\omega_r t + \psi)\right\}\right]$$

$$= V_s \left[1 - e^{-\xi t} \cdot \frac{\omega_0}{\omega_r}\{2 \sin \psi \sin \omega_r t + \cos(\omega_r t + \psi)\}\right]$$

$$= V_s \left[1 - e^{-\xi t} \cdot \frac{\omega_0}{\omega_r}\{2 \sin \psi \sin \omega_r t + \cos \omega_r t \cos \psi - \sin \omega_r t \sin \psi\}\right]$$

$$= V_s \left[1 - e^{-\xi t} \cdot \frac{\omega_0}{\omega_r} \cos(\omega_r t - \psi)\right] \quad \text{...(8.109)}$$

**Example 8.12.** *In a self-commutated SCR circuit, the load consists of $R = 10\ \Omega$ in series with commutating components of $L = 10$ mH and $C = 10\ \mu$F. Check whether the circuit will commutate by itself when triggered from zero voltage condition on the capacitor. What will be the voltage across the capacitor and inductor at the time of commutation ?*

*Find also $\dfrac{di}{dt}$ at $t = 0$*

**Solution.** Here $R^2 = 10 \times 10 = 100$ ; $\dfrac{4L}{C} = \dfrac{4 \times 10 \times 10^{-3}}{10 \times 10^{-6}} = 4000$

As $R^2 < \dfrac{4L}{C}$, the circuit is underdamped. Therefore, the series circuit will commutate on its own when triggered from zero voltage condition on the capacitor.

Also $$\xi = \frac{R}{2L} = \frac{10 \times 1000}{2 \times 10} = 500$$

$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} = \sqrt{10^7} = 3.1623 \times 10^3 \text{ rad/sec}$$

$$\omega_r = \sqrt{\omega_0^2 - \xi^2} = \left[10^7 - 2.5 \times 10^5\right]^{1/2} = 3.1225 \times 10^3 \text{ rad/sec}$$

$$\psi = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\xi}{\omega_r}\right) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{500}{3.1225 \times 10^3}\right) = 9.097°$$

The load current is zero, *i.e.* SCR will commutate when $\omega_r t = \pi$

or
$$t = \frac{\pi}{3.1225 \times 1000} = 1.006 \text{ ms}$$

$$\xi t = 500 \times 1.006 \times 10^{-3} = 0.503$$

From Eq. (8.108), the voltage across $L$ at the time of commutation is

$$v_L = V_s \cdot \frac{3.1623}{3.1225} \cdot e^{-0.503} \cos(180° + 9.097°)$$

$$= -0.60472\, V_s$$

From Eq. (8.109), the voltage across $C$ at the time of commutation is

$$v_c = V_s \left[ 1 - e^{-0.503} \times \frac{3.1623}{3.1225}, \cos(180° - 9.097°) \right]$$

$$= 1.60472\, V_s$$

The voltage across capacitor can also be obtained as under. Note that $v_R = 0$ at the time of commutation.

$$v_c = V_s - v_R - v_L = V_s - 0 - (-0.60472) = 1.60472\, V_s$$

From Eq. (8.105),
$$\frac{di}{dt} = \frac{V_s}{\omega_r L} \left[ e^{-\xi t}\, \omega_r \cos \omega_r t - \xi e^{-\xi t} \cdot \sin \omega_r t \right]$$

$$\therefore \qquad \left( \frac{di}{dt} \right)_{t=0} = \frac{V_s}{L} = \frac{V_s}{10 \times 10^{-3}} = 100\, V_s \text{ A/s}$$

**Example 8.13.** *Calculate the output frequency of a series inverter with the following parameters :*

*Inductance $L = 6$ mH, capacitance $C = 1.2$ microfarad, load resistance $R = 100$ ohms, $T_{off} = 0.2$ ms.*

*If the load resistance is varied from 40 to 140 ohms, find out the range of output frequency.*

*[I.A.S., 1986]*

**Solution.** From Eq. (8.106), the time period of oscillation is given by

$$\frac{\pi}{\sqrt{1/LC - (R/2L)^2}} = \frac{\pi}{\left[ \dfrac{10^3 \times 10^6}{6 \times 1.2} - \dfrac{100^2 \times 10^6}{4 \times 36} \right]^{1/2}} = \frac{\pi}{1000\,(8.333)} = 0.377 \text{ ms}$$

From Eq. (8.107), the output frequency,

$$f = \frac{10^3}{0.377 \times 2 + 2 \times 0.2} = 866.55 \text{ Hz.}$$

When $R = 40\ \Omega$, output frequency

$$= \frac{1}{\dfrac{2\pi}{\left[ \dfrac{10^3 \times 10^6}{6 \times 1.2} - \dfrac{1600 \times 10^6}{4 \times 36} \right]^{1/2}} + 0.4 \times 10^{-3}} = 1046.2 \text{ Hz.}$$

When $R = 140\ \Omega$, output frequency

$$= \frac{1}{\dfrac{2\pi}{\left[\dfrac{10^3 \times 10^6}{6 \times 1.2} - \dfrac{140^2 \times 10^6}{4 \times 36}\right]^{1/2}} + 0.4 \times 10^{-3}} = 239.8 \text{ Hz}$$

$\therefore$ Range of output frequency $= 239.8$ Hg to $1046.2$ Hz

## 8.10. SINGLE-PHASE PARALLEL INVERTER

The basic inverter circuit for a single-phase parallel inverter, utilizing capacitor for its commutation, is shown in Fig. 8.50. It consists of two thyristors T1 and T2, an inductor $L$, an output transformer and a commutating capacitor $C$. The transformer turns ratio from each primary half to secondary winding is assumed unity. The output voltage and current are $v_0$ and $i_0$ respectively. The function of $L$ is to make the source current constant at $I_0$. Positive directions for voltages and currents are marked in Fig. 8.50.

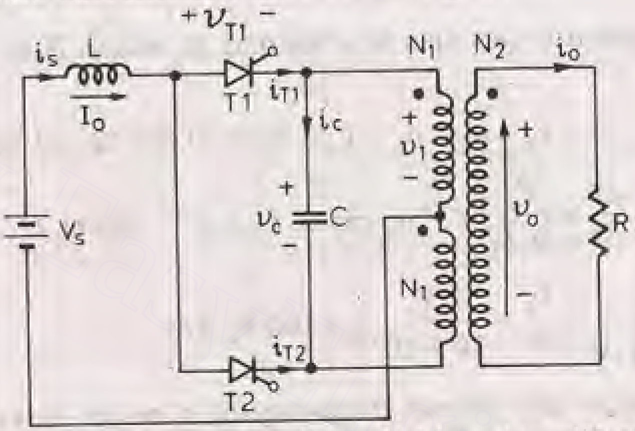


Fig. 8.50. Single-phase capacitor commutated parallel inverter with centre-tapped transformer.

The operation of this inverter can be explained in some well-defined modes as under :

**Mode I** : In this mode, thyristor T1 is conducting and a current flows in the upper half of primary winding. This current establishes magnetic flux that links both the halves of primary winding. As a result, an emf $V_s$ is induced across upper as well as lower half of primary winding. In other words, total voltage across primary winding is $2V_s$. This voltage charges the commutating capacitor $C$ to a voltage of $2V_s$ with upper plate positive as shown in Fig. 8.51 (*a*). Thyristor T2 is forward biased through T1 by the capacitor voltage $2V_s$. Eventually, a steady state current $I_0$ flows through $V_s$, $L$, T1 and upper half of primary winding.

**Mode II** : At time $t = 0$, thyristor T2 is turned on by applying a triggering pulse to its gate. At this time $t = 0$, capacitor voltage $2V_s$ appears as a reverse bias across T1, it is therefore turned off. A current $I_0$ begins to flow through T2, lower half of primary winding, $V_s$ and $L$ as shown in Fig. 8.51 (*b*). At the same time, capacitor voltage $2V_s$ is applied across the transformer primary and a capacitor current $-i_c$ is established. Negative sign before $i_c$ means that current $i_c$ flows opposite to its positive direction assumed in Fig. 8.50. Before T2 is on, *i.e.* at $t = 0-$, mmf in upper primary winding is $I_0 N_1$ and zero in the lower primary winding. Soon after T2 is on, *i.e.* at $t = 0+$, mmfs linking both upper and lower halves cannot change suddenly. Therefore, at $t = 0+$, $-i_c = I_0$ such that mmf in the lower half remains zero and mmf in the upper half is equal to mmf at $t = 0-$. After $t = 0+$, capacitor $C$ discharges and current $i_c$ is such that it supplies the load current $i_0$ and balances the primary and secondary ampere

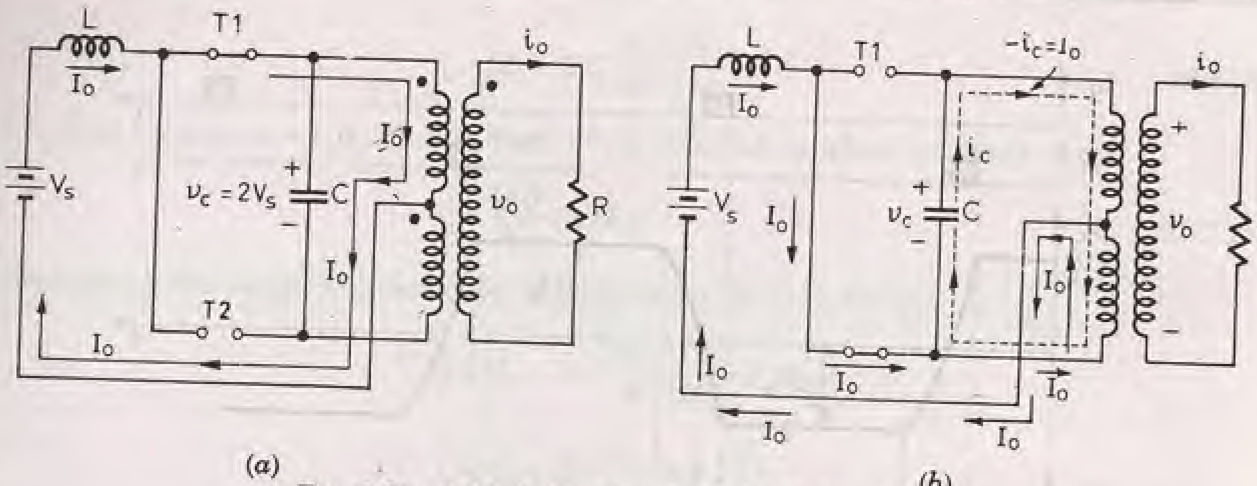


Fig. 8.51 (*a*) Mode I, $t < 0$ ; (*b*) Mode II, $t = 0+$

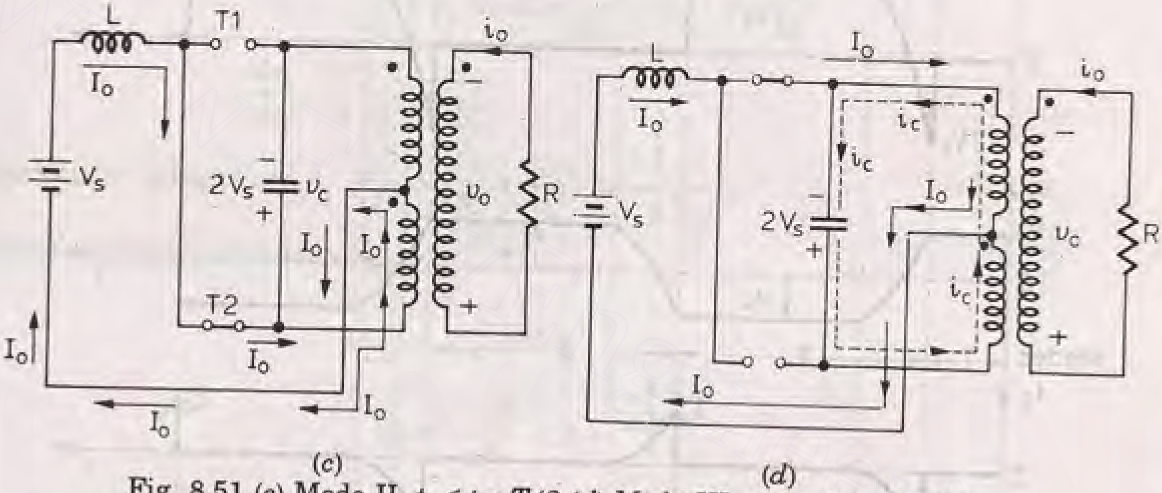


Fig. 8.51 (*c*) Mode II, $t_1 \leq t < T/2$ (*d*) Mode III, just after $t = T/2$.

turns of the transformer. Capacitor current continues flowing till capacitor has charged from $+2V_s$ to $-2V_s$ at time $t = t_1$. Load voltage also changes from $V_s$ at $t = 0$ to $-V_s$ at $t = t_1$, Fig. 8.52 (*c*) and Fig. 8.53.

**Mode III** : When capacitor has charged to $-2V_s$ with upper plate negative and lower plate positive, SCR T1 may be turned on at any time. In Fig. 8.51 (*d*), T1 is triggered at $t = T/2$. Capacitor voltage $2V_s$ applies a reverse bias across T2, it is therefore turned off. After T2 is off, capacitor starts discharging as shown in Fig. 8.52 (*d*). Current $i_c$ is now positive. Mmmfs in the upper and lower halves remain unchanged from their values just before $T/2$. When $i_c$ decays to zero, $v_c = +2V_s$, $v_0 = V_s$, $i_{T1} = I_0 = V_s/R$, Fig. 8.52.

The waveforms for $v_c$, $v_{T1}$, $v_0$ etc are shown in Fig. 8.52. At $t = 0+$, when T2 is turned on; $v_{T1} = -2V_s$, $i_c = -I_0$, $i_{T1} = 0$ and $i_{T2} = I_0$ as shown. As the turns ratio from whole primary to secondary winding is 2, the load voltage has half the amplitude of capacitor voltage. However, the load voltage has the same waveform as the capacitor voltage, see Fig. 8.52.

### 8.10.1. Analysis of Parallel Inverter

In Fig. 8.51 (*b*), the secondary mmf must be balanced by the primary mmf at any time $t$. It is seen from this figure that net current in the lower primary half is $(I_0 - i_c)$ upward and in the upper primary half is $i_c$ downward.

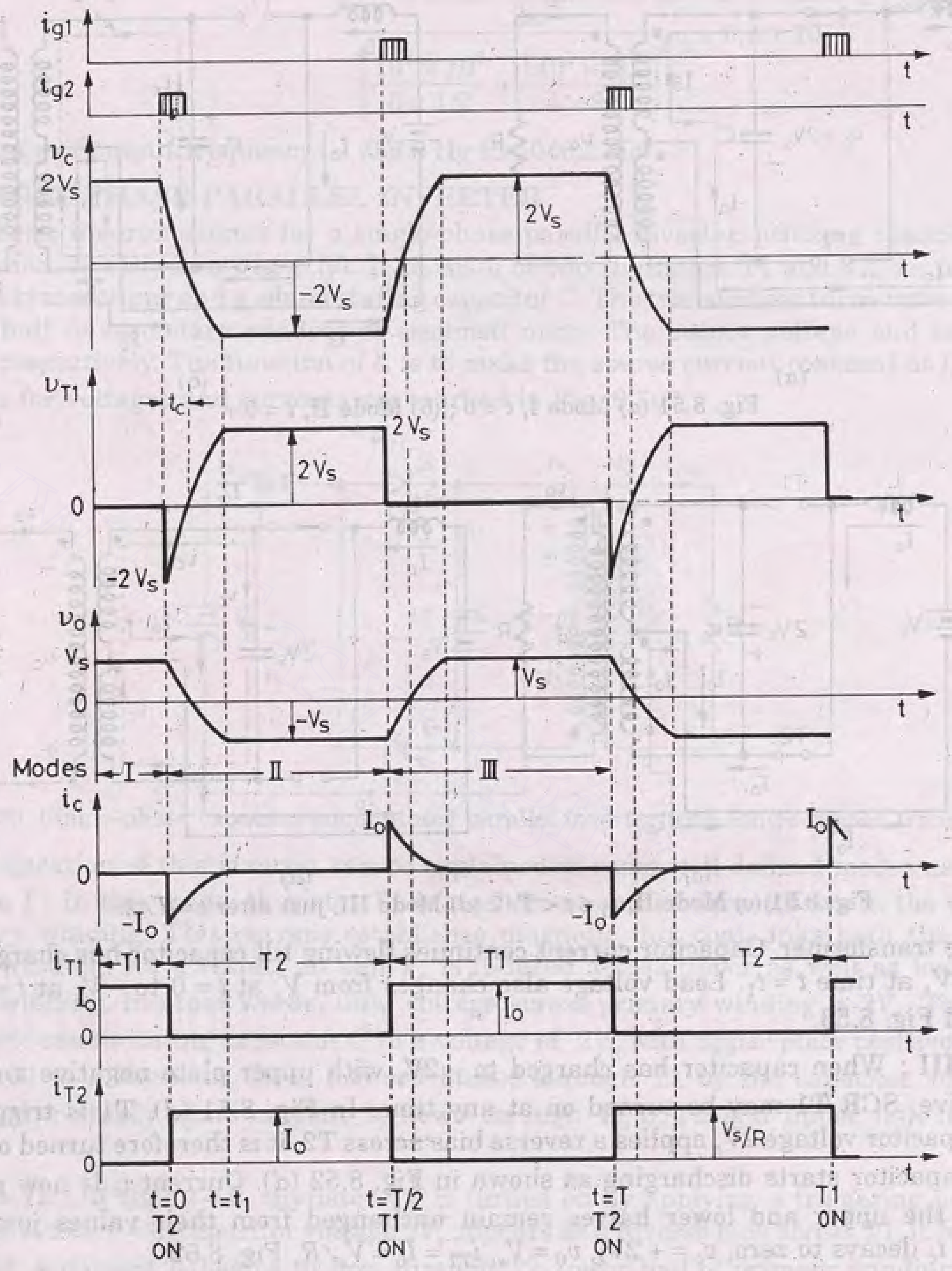


Fig. 8.52. Waveforms for currents and voltages pertaining to single-phase parallel inverter.

Secondary *mmf* = *mmf* in the lower primary half + *mmf* in the upper primary half.

$$\therefore \qquad i_0 N_2 = (I_0 - i_c) N_1 - i_c N_1$$

Load or secondary current, $\quad i_0 = (I_0 - 2\, i_c) \dfrac{N_1}{N_2}$

But $\quad i_c = C \dfrac{dv_c}{dt}$

$$\therefore \qquad i_0 = \left(I_0 - 2\,C\,\frac{dv_c}{dt}\right)\frac{N_1}{N_2} \qquad \text{...(8.110)}$$

Also, load voltage $v_0 = i_0 R$. This voltage when referred to whole primary is

$$v_c = \frac{i_0\,R}{N_2}\,(2\,N_1) \qquad \text{...(8.111)}$$

Substituting the value of $i_0$ from Eq. (8.110) in Eq. (8.111), we get

$$v_c = \left(I_0 - 2\,C\,\frac{dv_c}{dt}\right)\frac{N_1}{N_2}\cdot 2\,R\,\frac{N_1}{N_2}$$

$$= \left(I_0 - 2C\,\frac{dv_c}{dt}\right)2R\left(\frac{N_1}{N_2}\right)^2$$

If $\dfrac{N_2}{N_1} = n$, then $\dfrac{n^2\cdot v_c}{2R} = I_0 - 2C\,\dfrac{dv_c}{dt}$

or $$\frac{dv_c}{dt} + \frac{n^2\cdot v_c}{4\,RC} = \frac{I_0}{2C}$$

Its particular integral is, $V_{P.I.} = \dfrac{I_0}{2C}\times\dfrac{4RC}{n^2} = \dfrac{2\,I_0\,R}{n^2}$

Its complementary function is,

$$V_{C.F.} = A\,e^{-\frac{n^2}{4RC}t}$$

$$\therefore \qquad v_c = \frac{2\,I_0\,R}{n^2} + A\,e^{-\frac{n^2}{4RC}t} \qquad \text{...(8.112)}$$

Here $\dfrac{R}{n^2} = R\left(\dfrac{N_1}{N_2}\right)^2$ is the load resistance referred to one half of the primary winding. $I_0$ is the current in this load when $\dfrac{dv_c}{dt} = 0$.

$\therefore$ $2\,I_0$ (resistance referred to one half of primary winding) $= 2V_s$

or $$\frac{2\,I_0\,R}{n^2} = 2V_s$$

With this, Eq. (8.112) becomes

$$v_c = 2V_s + A\,e^{-\frac{n^2}{4RC}t}$$

At $t = 0$, $V_c = 2V_s$, $\therefore$ $2V_s = 2V_s + A$. But this gives redudant solution.

At $t = T/2$, voltage across capacitor becomes opposite to what it is at $t = 0$, This fact can be expressed as

$$[v_c \text{ at } t = 0] = -\,[v_c \text{ at } t = T/2]$$

or $$2V_s + A = -\,2V_s - A\,e^{-\frac{n^2T}{8RC}}$$

or
$$A = \frac{-4V_s}{1 + e^{-n^2T/8RC}}$$

$\therefore$
$$v_c = 2V_s \left[ 1 - \frac{2\,e^{-n^2t/4RC}}{1 + \exp\left(-\frac{n^2T}{8RC}\right)} \right] \qquad \text{...(8.113)}$$

For practical circuits, $\exp\left[-\frac{n^2T}{8RC}\right] << 1.$

$\therefore$
$$v_c = 2V_s \left[ 1 - 2\exp\left(-\frac{n^2T}{4RC}\right) \right] \qquad \text{...(8.114)}$$

In Fig. 8.52, $v_c$ at $t = 0$ is $2V_s$. But in Eq. (8.114) ; at $t = 0$, $v_c = -2V_s$. In order that Eq. (8.114) is compatible with the waveform for $v_c$ in Fig. 8.52, we re-write Eq. (8.114) as

$$v_c = 2V_s \left[ 2\exp\left(-\frac{n^2t}{4RC}\right) - 1 \right] \qquad \text{...(8.115)}$$

It is seen from the waveform of $v_c$ and $v_{T1}$ in Fig. 8.52 during the interval $t = 0$ to $t = t_1$ that $v_{T1} = -v_c = 2V_s\left[1 - \exp\left(-\frac{n^2t}{4RC}\right)\right]$. Circuit turn-off time $t_c$ is the time taken by $v_{T1}$ to become zero from its initial value of $-2V_s$. Therefore,

$$v_{T1} = 2V_s\left[1 - e^{-\frac{n^2t_c}{4RC}}\right] = 0$$

or
$$\frac{n^2\,t_c}{4RC} = \ln 2$$

or
$$t_c = \frac{4RC \cdot \ln 2}{n^2} \qquad \text{...(8.116)}$$

Also, commutating capacitance,

$$C = \frac{n^2 \cdot t_c}{4R \cdot \ln 2} \qquad \text{...(8.117)}$$

Eq. (8.116) reveals that for a given value of load resistance, the value of capacitor should be so selected as to give adequate circuit turn-off time $t_c$ for the off-going thyristor. In Eq. (8.116), $t_c > t_{off}$, where $t_{off}$ is the thyristor turn-off time. It is seen from Eq. (8.117) that if load resistance is small, size of capacitor required is large.

**Example 8.14.** *In a single-phase capacitor commutated parallel inverter using two thyristors and a center-tapped transformer, the source voltage is 220 V dc. The centre-tapped transformer has a turns ratio from each half primary winding to secondary winding of 3 : 1. For a load resistance of 20 Ω, find the value of capacitor C to obtain 20 μs turn-off time on the thyristor. Assume the inductor L large and transformer ideal. Take factor of safety as 2.*

**Solution.** From Eq. (8.115), $v_c = 2V_s\left[2\exp\left(-\frac{n^2t}{4RC}\right) - 1\right]$

Here $n = \frac{1}{3}$ . Circuit turn-off time $t_c = 2 \times 20 = 40$ μs

The circuit turn-off time is obtained when $v_c$ reduces to zero from $2V_s$. This gives

$$C = \frac{n^2 t_c}{4R \ln 2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{9} \cdot \frac{40 \times 10^{-6}}{4 \times 20 \ln 2} = 0.0815 \, \mu\text{F}.$$

## PROBLEMS

**8.1.** (*a*) What is an inverter ? List a few industrial applications of inverters.

(*b*) What are line-commutated inverters ? How do they operate ? Explain the difference between line-commutated and force-commutated inverters.

(*c*) What are the two main types of inverters ? Distinguish between them explicitly.

**8.2.** (*a*) Describe the working of a single-phase half-bridge inverter. What is its main drawback ? Explain how this drawback is overcome.

Discuss how output power in single-phase full-bridge inverter is doubled than that of a single-phase half-bridge inverter.

(*b*) What is the purpose of connecting diodes in antiparallel with thyristors in inverter circuits ? Explain how these diodes come into play.

**8.3.** A single-phase full-bridge inverter may be connected to a load consisting of (*a*) *R* (*b*) *RL* or *RLC* overdamped (*c*) *RLC* underdamped. For all these loads, draw the load voltage and load current waveforms under steady operating condition. Discuss the nature of these waveforms. Also indicate the conduction of the various elements of the inverter circuit.

Is it possible for this inverter to have load commutation ? Explain.

**8.4.** For a single-phase full bridge inverter, $V_s = 230$ V dc, $T = 1$ ms. The load consists of RLC in series with $R = 1.2\ \Omega$, $\omega L = 8\ \Omega$, $\frac{1}{\omega C} = 7\ \Omega$.

(*a*) Sketch the waveforms for load voltage $v_0$, fundamental component of output current $i_{01}$, source current $i_s$ and voltage across thyristor 1. Indicate the devices that conduct during different intervals of one cycle. Find also the rms value of fundamental component of load current.

(*b*) Find the power delivered to load due to fundamental component.

(*c*) Check whether forced commutation is required or not.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 132.586 A (*b*) 21094.8 W (*c*) It is required.]

**8.5** (*a*) Write Fourier series expression for the output voltages and currents obtained from single-phase half-bridge and full-bridge inverters.

(*b*) A single-phase bridge inverter is fed from 230 V dc. In the output voltage wave, only fundamental component of voltage is considered. Determine the rms current ratings of an SCR and a diode of the bridge for the following types of loads :

(*i*) $R = 2\ \Omega$ (*ii*) $\omega L = 2\ \Omega$

Find also the repetitive peak voltage that may appear across a thyristor in parts (*i*) and (*ii*).

[**Ans.** (*i*) 73.211 A, zero A, 230 V (*ii*) 51.776 A, 51.776 A, 230 V]

**8.6** (*a*) A single-phase full bridge inverter is connected to a dc source of $V_s$. Resolve the output voltage waveshape into Fourier series.

(*b*) A single-phase full-bridge inverter delivers power to RLC load with $R = 3\ \Omega$ and $X_L = 12\ \Omega$. The bridge operates with a periodicity of 0.2 ms. Calculate the value of $C$ so that load commutation is achieved for the thyristors. Turn-off time for thyristors is 12 μs. Factor of safety is 2. Assume the load current to contain only the fundamental component. [**Ans.** (*b*) $C = 2.148\ \mu F$.]

**8.7.** A single-phase full-bridge inverter feeds power at 50 Hz to RLC load with $R = 5\ \Omega$, $L = 0.3$ H and $C = 50\ \mu F$. The dc input voltage is 220 V dc.

(*a*) Find an expression for load current up to fifth harmonic. Also, calculate :

(*b*) power absorbed by the load and the fundamental power,

(*c*) the rms and peak currents of each thyristor,

(*d*) conduction time of thyristors and diodes if only fundamental component were considered.

[**Ans.** (*a*) $9.036 \sin(\omega t - 80.72°) + 0.357 \sin(3\omega t - 88.90°) + 0.122 \sin(5\omega t - 89.38°)$
(*b*) 204.54 W, 204.12 W (*c*) 9.044 A, 4.522 A (*d*) 5.513 ms, 4.487 ms]

**8.8.** Describe modified McMurray half-bridge inverter with appropriate voltage and current waveforms. The total commutation interval may be subdivided into certain well-defined modes for the purpose of explaining its operation.

**8.9.** (*a*) For a modified McMurray half-bridge single-phase inverter, find an expression that gives the circuit turn-off time for the main thyristor in terms of load current, peak capacitor current etc.

Discuss how commutating circuit components can be designed on the basis of minimum commutation energy. The relevant voltage and current waveforms must be drawn.

(*b*) A single-phase modified McMurray inverter is fed by a dc source of 230 V. The dc source voltage may fluctuate by ± 25%. The load current during commutation may vary from 20 to 80 A. If thyristor turn-off time is 20 μsec, calculate the values of *C* and *L*. Use a factor of safety of 2 .

Also, obtain the value of resistance that gives critical damping.

[**Ans.** (*b*) 16.547 μF, 34.1895 μH, 2.875 Ω]

**8.10.** Describe modified McMurray-Bedford half-bridge single-phase inverter with relevant voltage and current waveforms. The working of this inverter may be explained in certain well defined modes. Enumerate the simplifying assumptions made.

**8.11.** Discuss the principle of working of a three-phase bridge inverter with an appropriate circuit diagram. Draw phase and line voltage waveforms on the assumption that each thyristor conducts for 180° and the resistive load is star-connected. The sequence of firing of various SCRs should also be indicated in the diagram.

**8.12.** Repeat Problem 8.11 in case each thyristor conducts for 120°.

**8.13.** Repeat Problem 8.11 in case load is delta-connected.

**8.14.** A star-connected load of 15 Ω per phase is fed from 420 V dc source through a 3-phase bridge inverter. For both (*a*) 180° mode and (*b*) 120° mode, determine

(*i*) rms value of load current

(*ii*) rms value of thyristor current

(*iii*) load power. [**Ans.** (*a*) 13.2 A, 9.333 A, 7840.8 W (*b*) 11.43 A, 8.083 A, 5879.02 W]

**8.15.** (*a*) What is the need for controlling the voltage at the output terminals of an inverter ? Describe briefly and compare the various methods employed for the control of output voltage of inverters.

(*b*) For the series-inverter control of voltage, two single-phase inverters are connected in series. Each inverter has output voltage of 400 V and each transformer has primary to secondary turns ratio of 1/2. Calculate the resultant output voltage from this scheme in case firing angles for the two inverters differ by 30°

[**Ans :** (*b*) 1545.48 V]

**8.16.** (*a*) What is pulse width modulation ? List the various PWM techniques. How do these differ from each other ?

(*b*) For a single-pulse modulation used in inverters, show that output voltage can be expressed as

$$v_0 = \sum_{n=1,3,5}^{\infty} \frac{4V_s}{n\pi} \cdot \sin\frac{n\pi}{2} \sin nd \sin n\omega t$$

where 2*d* is the pulse width.

Sketch the variation of $\dfrac{v_{0nm}}{v_{01m}}$ as function of pulse width $2d$. Here $v_{onm}$ is the peak value of $n$th harmonic component and $v_{01m}$ that of the fundamental component.

(*c*) A single-phase full bridge inverter has rms value of the fundamental component of output voltage, with single-pulse modulation, equal to 110 V. Compute the pulse width required and the rms value of output voltage in case dc source voltage is 220 V. [**Ans :** (*c*) 67.471°, 134.693 V]

**8.17.** For a single-phase bridge inverter, source voltage is 230 V dc and the load is series *RLC* with $R = 1\,\Omega$, $\omega L = 2\Omega$ and $\dfrac{1}{\omega C} = 1.5\,\Omega$. The output voltage is controlled by single pulse modulation and the pulse width is 120°. Determine the magnitude of rms values of fundamental, third, fifth and seventh harmonic components of the output current.

Also, find the power delivered to load. [**Ans :** 160.43 A, zero, 3.6786 A, 1.8537 A, 25754.7 W]

**8.18.** (*a*) For the symmetrical two-pulse modulation shown in Fig. 8.29, prove that

(*i*) the magnitude of $n$th harmonic voltage is

$$\frac{8\,V_s}{n\pi}\sin n\gamma \sin\frac{nd}{2}$$

(*ii*)
$$\gamma = \frac{\pi - 2\,d}{n+1} + \frac{d}{N}$$

where $N$ = number of pulses per half cycle.

(*b*) Describe how multiple-pulse modulated wave can be generated from carrier and reference waves. Hence show that

(*i*) number of pulse per half-cycle, $N = \dfrac{\omega_c}{2\omega}$.

(*ii*) pulse width,
$$\frac{2d}{N} = \left(1 - \frac{V_r}{V_c}\right)\cdot\frac{\pi}{N}$$

where $V_c$ and $V_r$ are the amplitudes of carrier and reference signals respectively.

**8.19.** Explain sinusoidal-pulse modulation as used in PWM inverters. Discuss the conditions under which the number of pulses generated per half cycle are $\dfrac{f_c}{2f}$ or $\left(\dfrac{f_c}{2f} - 1\right)$. Here $f_c$ and $f$ are the frequencies of carrier and reference signals respectively.

**8.20.** A single-phase bridge inverter feeds power to a load of $R = 12\,\Omega$ and $L = 0.04$ H from a 400 V dc source. If the inverter operates at a frequency of 50 Hz, determine the power delivered to load for (*a*) square wave operation (*b*) quasi-square wave operation with an on-period of 0.6 of a cycle (*c*) two symmetrically spaced pulse per half cycle with an on-period of 0.6 of a cycle.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 5285.56 W (*b*) 3400.96 W (*c*) 2706.34 W]

**8.21.** (*a*) For harmonic reduction in single-phase inverters, two identical transformers are used in series. If their rectangular output voltage waveforms are shifted from each other by 120°, then sketch

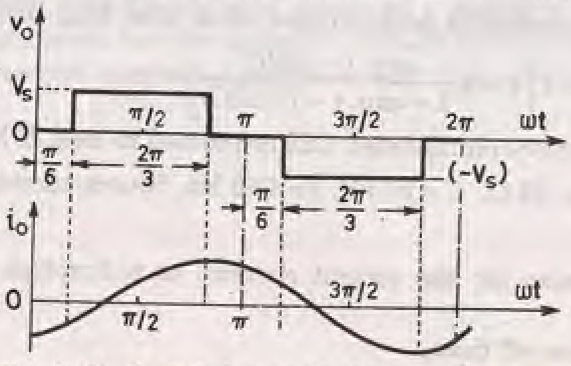


Fig. 8.53. Pertaining to Problem 8.21 (*b*).

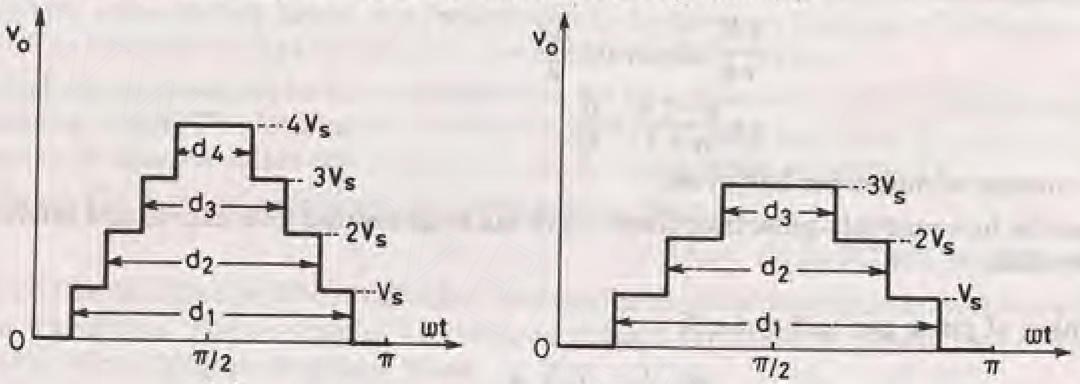
these voltage waveforms and their resultant waveform on the assumption that transformer secondary voltages oppose each other. Find also an expression for the net output voltage as a function of time. Hence find the percentage derating of the inverter so far as its fundamental power component is concerned.

(*b*) A single-phase full bridge inverter has waveforms for its output voltage $v_0$ and output current $i_0$ as shown in Fig. 8.53. Explain and indicate the devices that conduct in the various intervals throughout the cycle. $\left[\textbf{Ans.}\ (a)\ v_0 = \frac{4V_s}{\pi}\sqrt{3}\left[\sin\left(\omega t + \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + \frac{1}{5}\sin\left(5\omega t - \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + \frac{1}{7}\sin\left(7\omega t + \frac{\pi}{6}\right)\ldots\right], 13.4\%\right]$

(*b*) T4D2, D1D2, T1T2, T1D3, T2D4, D3D4, T3T4, T3D1, T4D2 etc

or T3D1, D1D2, T1T2, T1D3, T2D4, D3D4, T3T4, T4D2, T3D1 etc.

**8.22.** The stepped wave output voltage waveforms of Figs. 8.54 (*a*) and (*b*) are to be obtained by the series cascading of two stepped-wave inverters. Describe how these wave-forms can be realized. Illustrate your answer with appropriate waveforms through the use of two-level or three-level modulations. For Fig. 8.54 (*a*) and only two-level modulations for Fig. 8.54 (*b*).



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 8.54. Pertaining to Problem 8.22.

**8.23.** (*a*) A single-phase CSI is fitted with ideal SCRs. Describe its working when its load is a capacitor *C*. Show that the frequency of input voltage to CSI is twice the frequency of triggering the thyristors.

(*b*) A single-phase CSI (with ideal switches) has the following data :

$$I = 30\text{ A},\ f = 500\text{ Hz, Load capacitance} = 20\ \mu\text{F}$$

For this inverter, calculate

(*i*) the circuit turn-off time.

(*ii*) the peak value of reverse voltage that appears across thyristors, **[Ans.** (*b*) 500 μs, 500 V]

**8.24.** (*a*) Describe a single-phase capacitor-commutated CSI connected to load *R* with the help of its power circuit diagram and waveforms for gating signals, load current, capacitor voltage and current, input voltage and voltage across one thyristor.

From the equations governing its performance, show that load current is given by

$$i_0 = I\left[1 - 2\frac{\exp.(-t/RC)}{1 + \exp.(-T/2RC)}\right]$$

(*b*) A single-phase capacitor-commutated CSI connected to load *R* has the following data :

$$R = 40\ \Omega,\ C = 50\ \mu\text{F},\ f = 500\text{ Hz, Source current} = 40\text{ A}$$

For this CSI.

(*i*) obtain an expression for the output current as a function of time and find its value at $t = 0$ and $t = T/2$,

(*ii*) find the circuit turn-off time,

(*iii*) compute the average value of input voltage and the power delivered to load.

**[Ans.** (*b*) 40 [1 – 1.245 exp. (– 500 *t*)], – 9.8 A, 9.8 A ; 438.14 μs ; 32.52 V, 1300.8 W]

**8.25.** Describe a single-phase auto-sequential commutated CSI with *L* load. Write appropriate expressions governing its performance and prove therefrom that total circuit turn-off time for this inverter is given by

$$t_c = \left(1 + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)\sqrt{LC}$$

Waveforms for gating signals, capacitor voltage and current and load current should also be sketched. Find also the circuit turn-off time for each thyristor. **[Ans.** $t_c$ for each thyristor $= \sqrt{LC}$]

**8.26.** A single-phase ASCI has the following data :

Load inductance, $L = 4\ \mu$H, Source current = 20 A

Time during which four diodes conduct = 10 μs

For this CSI, determine

(*a*) the value of commutating capacitance,

(*b*) the total commutation interval

(*c*) the maximum capacitor voltage and

(*d*) the circuit turn-off time for each thyristor. **[Ans.** 10.132 μF, 16.366 μs, 25.133 V, 6.366 μs]

**8.27.** In a 1-phase ASCI, with load *L*, SCRs T3, T4 are conducting a constant current $I = 10$ A. If T1 and T2 are turned on at $t = 0$ to force commutate T3, T4 ; find the time required for the load current to fall to zero. Load $L = 10\ \mu$H and commutating capacitance $C = 6\ \mu$F. Find also the total commutation interval and the circuit turn-off time for each of the SCRs. **[Ans.** 15.858 μs, 19.913 μs, 7.746 μs]

**8.28.** A single phase auto-sequential commutated inverter is used to deliver power to a load of $R = 12\ \Omega$ from a 240 V dc source. If the inverter output frequency is 60 Hz, thyristor turn-off time 15 μs and factor of safety 2, then determine the suitable values for source inductance and the commutating capacitors. Neglect all losses and assume a maximum current change of 0.4 in one cycle.

Derive the formula used for determining *C*. **[Ans.** 10 H, 3.6067 μF]

**8.29** (*a*) Describe the working of a single-phase series inverter with appropriate circuit and waveforms.

(*b*) For this inverter, derive an expression for the output frequency in terms of circuit parameters and $T_{off}$.

**8.30** In a self-commutated SCR circuit, the load consists of an inductance of 12 mH, a capacitance of 8 μF and a resistance of 15 Ω all connected in series. Check that the circuit will commutate by itself when triggered from zero charge conditions on the capacitor.

Calculate the voltage across the inductor and capacitor at the time of commutation. Find also $\left(\frac{di}{dt}\right)$ at $t = 0$.

**[Ans.** It will commutate, – 0.538 $V_s$, 1.538 $V_s$, 83.33 A/s]

**8.31** Describe the working of a single-phase parallel inverter with relevant circuit and waveforms.

**8.32** A single-phase parallel inverter delivers power to a resistive load through a centre-tapped ideal transformer. Derive expression for the capacitor voltage on the assumption of constant source current. Hence obtain therefrom an expression for the circuit turn-off time.

# NINE

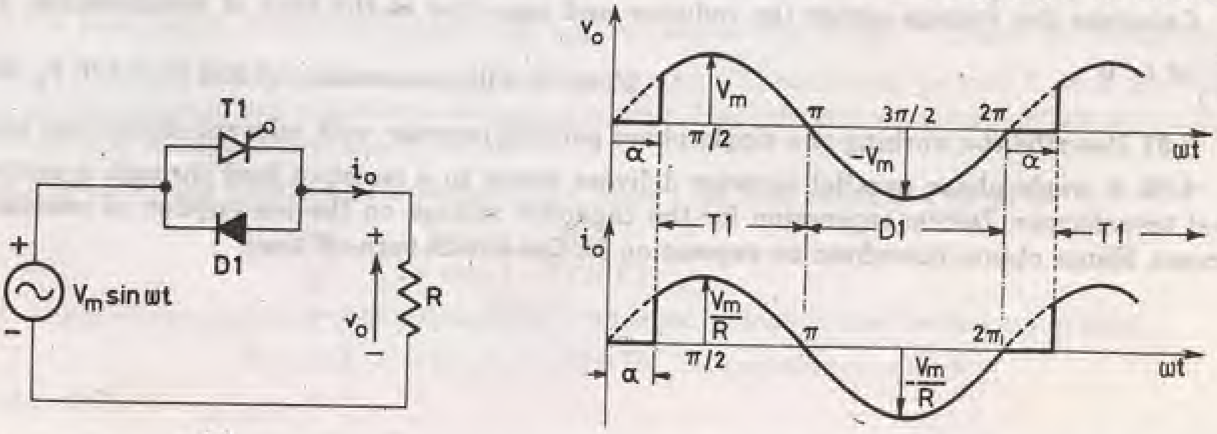
# AC Voltage Controllers

AC voltage controllers are thyristor based devices which convert fixed alternating voltage directly to variable alternating voltage without a change in the frequency. Some of the main applications of ac voltage controllers are for domestic and industrial heating, transformer tap changing, lighting control, speed control of single-phase and three-phase ac drives and starting of induction motors. Earlier, the devices used for these applications were auto-transformers, tap-changing transformers, magnetic amplifiers, saturable reactors etc. But these devices are now replaced by thyristor-and triac-based ac voltage controllers because of their high efficiency, flexibility in control, compact size and less maintenance. AC voltage controllers are also adaptable for closed-loop control systems. Since the ac voltage controllers are phase-controlled devices, thyristors and triacs are line commutated and as such no complex commutation circuitry is required in these controllers. The main disadvantage of ac voltage controllers is the introduction of objectionable harmonics in the supply current and load voltage waveforms, particularly at reduced output voltage levels.

The object of this chapter is to study single-phase ac voltage controllers so far as their principle of working and gating signal requirements are concerned. Their use in transformer tap changers is also considered.

## 9.1. TYPES OF AC VOLTAGE CONTROLLERS

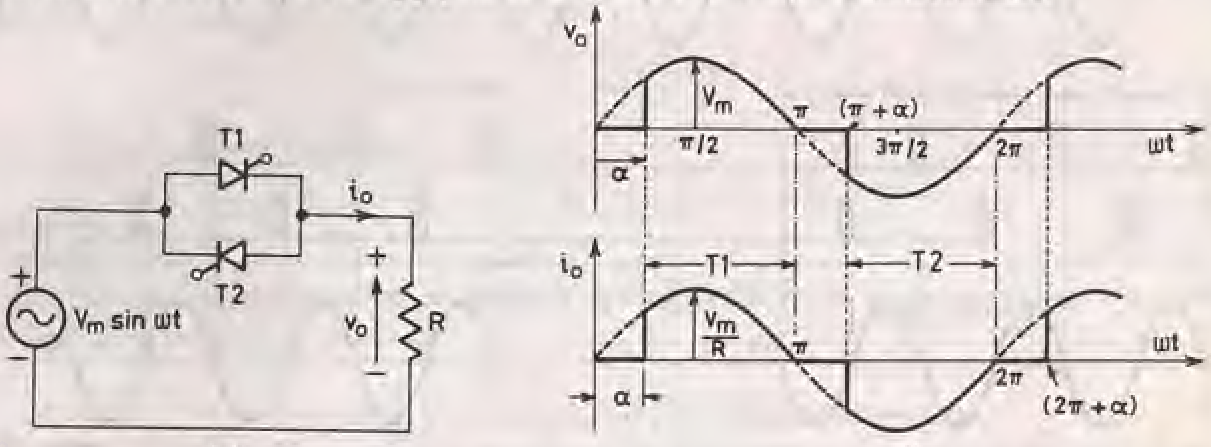
The power circuit diagram of a single-phase half-wave ac voltage controller using one thyristor in antiparallel with one diode is shown in Fig. 9.1 (*a*). In this figure, *R* is taken as



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 9.1. Single-phase half-wave ac voltage controller (*a*) Power-circuit diagram and (*b*) voltage and current waveforms.

the load for simplicity. The output voltage and current waveforms obtained from this controller are shown in Fig. 9.1 (*b*). It is seen from this figure that positive half cycle is not identical with negative half cycle for both voltage and current waveforms. As a result, dc component is introduced in the supply and load circuits which is undesirable.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 9.2. Single-phase full-wave ac voltage controller (*a*) Power-circuit diagram and (*b*) voltage and current waveforms.

Fig. 9.2 (*a*) shows the power circuit diagram of a single-phase full-wave ac voltage controller with two SCRs connected in antiparallel. For this controller, voltage and current waveforms are shown in Fig. 9.2 (*b*). This figure reveals that positive half cycle is identical with negative half cycle for both voltage and current waveforms. The power circuit of Fig. 9.2 (*a*), therefore, introduces no direct component in the supply and load circuit. This circuit is thus more suited to practical circuits than single-phase half-wave circuit. In this chapter, therefore, only full-wave ac voltage controllers are described.

## 9.2. INTEGRAL CYCLE CONTROL

It is stated above that ac voltage controllers are phase-controlled devices. The principle of phase control is illustrated in Figs. 9.1 and 9.2. In these figures, the *phase* relationship between the start of load current and the supply voltage is *controlled* by varying the firing angle. As the controlled output is ac, these are called phase-controlled ac voltage controllers or ac voltage controllers.

In industry, there are several applications in which mechanical time constant or thermal time constant is of the order of several seconds. For example, mechanical time constant for many of the speed-control drives, or thermal time constant for most of the heating loads is usually quite high. For such applications, almost no variation in speed or temperature will be noticed if control is achieved by connecting the load to source for some on-cycles and then disconnecting the load for some off-cycles. This form of power control is called integral cycle control. So *integral cycle control* consists of switching on the supply to load for an integral number of cycles and then switching off the supply for a further number of integral cycles, Fig. 9.3.

The principle of integral cycle control can be explained by referring to Fig. 9.2 for a single-phase voltage controller with resistive load. Gate pulses $i_{g1}$, $i_{g2}$ turn on the thyristors T1, T2 respectively at zero-voltage crossing of the supply voltage. The source energises the load for $n$ (= 3) cycles. When gate pulses are withdrawn, load remains off for $m$ (= 2) cycles. In this manner, process of turn-on and turn-off is repeated for the control of load power. By varying the number of $n$ and $m$ cycles, power delivered to load can be regulated as desired. The waveforms for source voltage $v_s$, gate pulses and output voltage $v_0$ are shown in Fig. 9.3

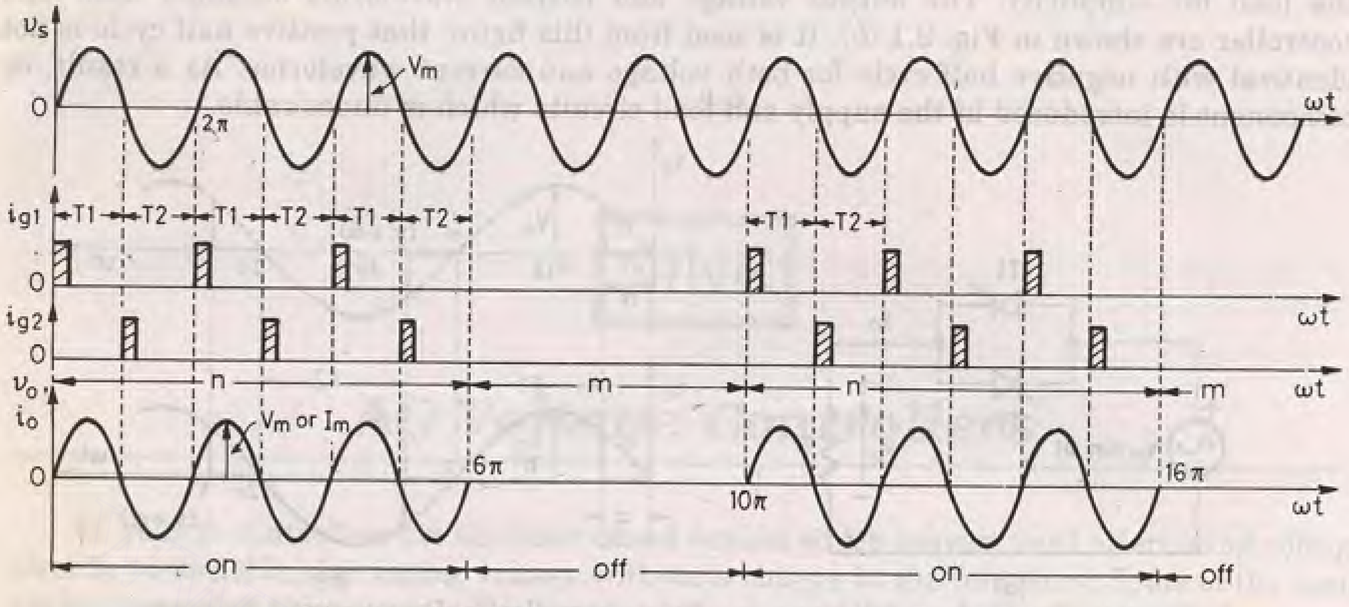


Fig. 9.3. Waveforms pertaining to integral cycle control.

for $n = 3$ and $m = 2$. Power is delivered to load for $n$ cycles. No power is delivered to load for $m$ cycles. It is the average power in the load that is controlled.

In literature, integral cycle control is also known as *on-off control, burst firing, zero-voltage switching, cycle selection* or *cycle syncopation.*

For sinusoidal supply voltage, the rms value of output voltage $V_{or}$ can be obtained as under :

$$V_{or} = \frac{1}{\text{periodicity}}\left[\int_0^{2\pi} V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \, d(\omega t), \text{ for first on-cycle} \right.$$
$$+ \int_0^{2\pi} V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t), \text{ for second on-cycle} + \ldots\ldots +$$
$$\left. \int_0^{2\pi} V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t), \text{ for } n\text{th on–cycle} \right]$$

For $n$ on-cycles and $m$ off-cycles, the periodicity = $(n + m)\, 2\pi$ radians, see Fig. 9.3.

$$\therefore \qquad V_{or} = \left[\frac{n}{2\pi(n+m)}\int_0^{2\pi} V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \left[\frac{n V_m^2}{4\pi(n+m)}\int_0^{2\pi} (1 - \cos 2\omega t)\, d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

or
$$V_{or} = \frac{V_m}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot \sqrt{\frac{n}{n+m}} = V_s \sqrt{\frac{n}{n+m}} = V_s \sqrt{k} \qquad \ldots(9.1)$$

where $V_s$ = rms value of source voltage

and $k = \frac{n}{n+m}$ is the duty cycle of ac voltage controller.

Rms load current, $I_{or} = \frac{V_{or}}{R}$

Power delivered to load $= \dfrac{V_{or}^2}{R} = \dfrac{V_s^2}{R}\left(\dfrac{n}{n+m}\right) = \dfrac{k \cdot V_s^2}{R}$ ...(9.2)

Rms value of input current, $I_s$ = rms value of load current, $I_{or}$

Input $VA = V_s$ (rms value of source current)

$$= V_s \cdot I_s = V_s \cdot I_{or} = V_s \cdot \frac{V_{or}}{R}$$

Input VA × pf = power delivered to load

$\therefore$ Input pf $= \dfrac{V_{or}^2}{R} \cdot \dfrac{R}{V_s \cdot V_{or}} = \dfrac{V_{or}}{V_s} = \sqrt{\dfrac{n}{n+m}} = \sqrt{k}$ ...(9.3)

As each thyristor conducts for $\pi$ radians during each cycle of $n$ on-cycles, the average value of thyristor current is given by

$$I_{TA} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi} I_m \sin \omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t), \text{ for first on–cycle } +$$

$$\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi} I_m \cdot \sin \omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t), \text{ for second on–cycle} + \ldots\ldots +$$

$$\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi} I_m \cdot \sin \omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t), \text{ for } n\text{th on–cycle]}$$

$$= \frac{n}{2\pi\,(n+m)}\int_0^{\pi} I_m \cdot \sin \omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{I_m}{\pi} \cdot \frac{n}{m+n} = \frac{k \cdot I_m}{\pi} \qquad \text{...(9.4)}$$

Similarly, rms value of thyristor current is

$$I_{TR} = \left[\frac{n}{2\pi\,(n+m)}\int_0^{\pi} I_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{I_m}{2}\sqrt{\frac{n}{n+m}} = \frac{I_m\sqrt{k}}{2} \qquad \text{...(9.5)}$$

Integral cycle control introduces less harmonics into the supply system, the supply undertakings therefore insist upon the consumers to use integral-cycle method for heating loads and for motor-control drives.

AC voltage controllers with on-off control has specific applications as discussed above. Phase-controlled ac voltage controllers are, however, more common. As such, phase-controlled ac voltage controllers will only be discussed and analysed in what follows :

**Example 9.1.** *A single-phase voltage controller has input voltage of 230 V, 50 Hz and a load of R = 15 Ω. For 6 cycles on and 4 cycles off, determine (a) rms output voltage, (b) input pf and (c) average and rms thyristor currents.*

**Solution.** (*a*) From Eq. (9.1), rms value of output voltage is

$$V_{or} = V_s\sqrt{\frac{n}{n+m}} = 230\sqrt{\frac{6}{6+4}} = 178.157 \text{ V}$$

(*b*) From Eq. (9.3), input pf $= \sqrt{k} = \sqrt{\dfrac{n}{n+m}} = \sqrt{\dfrac{6}{6+4}} = 0.7746$ lag.

Also power delivered to load $= I_{or}^2 R = \frac{V_{or}^2}{R} = \frac{178.157^2}{15} = 2116$ W

Input VA $= 230 \times \frac{230\sqrt{6.6}}{15} = 2731.74$ VA

$\therefore$ Input pf $= \frac{2116}{2731.74} = 0.7746$ lag

(*c*) Peak thyristor current, $I_m = \frac{230\sqrt{2}}{15} = 21.681$ A

From Eq. (9.4), average value of thyristor current,

$$I_{TA} = \frac{k\, I_m}{\pi} = \frac{0.6 \times 21.681}{\pi} = 4.1407 \text{ A}$$

From Eq. (9.5), rms value of thyristor current,

$$I_{TR} = \frac{I_m \cdot \sqrt{k}}{2} = \frac{21.681 \times \sqrt{0.6}}{2} = 8.397 \text{ A}$$

## 9.3. SINGLE-PHASE VOLTAGE CONTROLLERS

Fig. 9.4 shows three possible configurations of single-phase ac voltage controllers. Fig. 9.4 (*a*), similar to Fig. 9.2 (*a*), uses two thyristors connected in antiparallel. The trigger sources for the two thyristors must be isolated from one another because otherwise the two cathodes would be connected together and the two thyristors would be out of circuit as shown in Fig. 9.4 (*b*). Thus, no control of the output voltage would be possible.

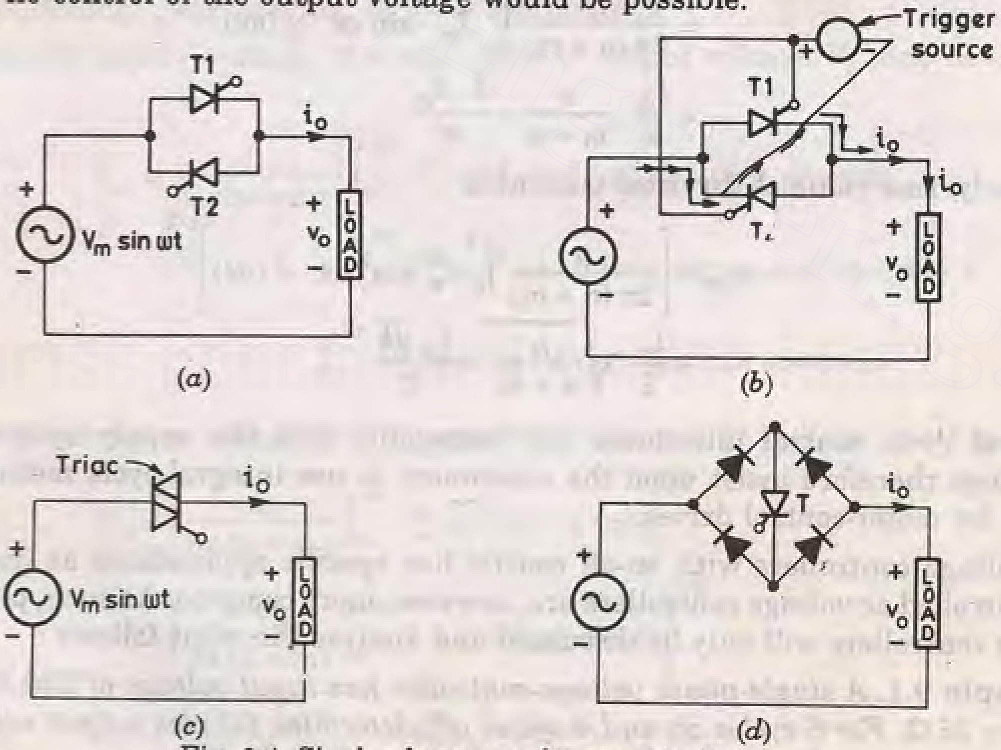


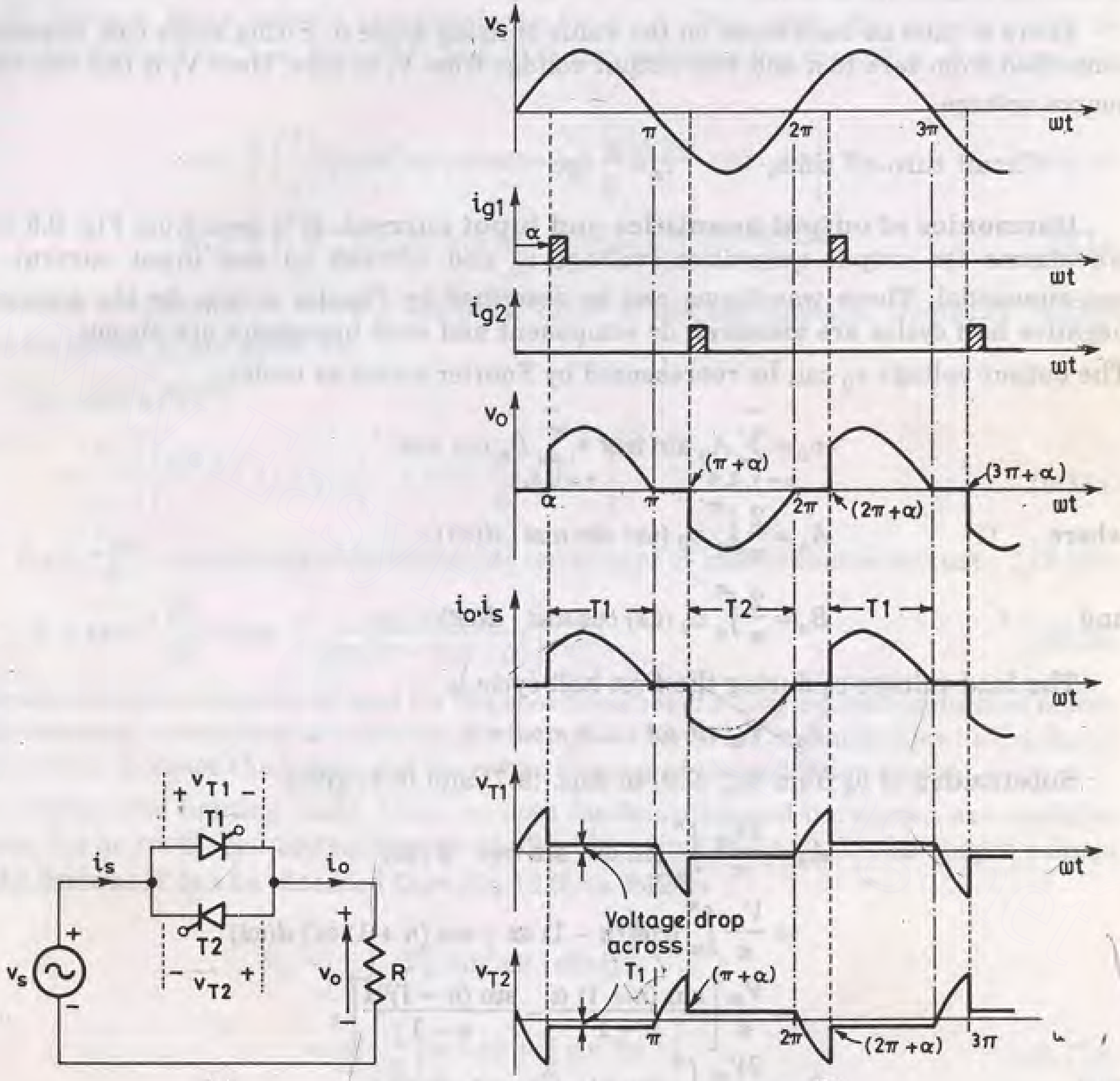
Fig. 9.4. Single-phase ac voltage controllers.

Scheme shown in Fig. 9.4 (*c*) employs four diodes and one thyristor. For this circuit, there is no need for any isolation between control and power circuits. This scheme, therefore offers a cheap ac voltage controller. The voltage drop in the three conducting devices (two diodes and one thyristor) will, however, be more than in Fig. 9.4 (*a*).

The circuit shown in Fig. 9.4 (*d*) uses one triac. This configurtion is suitable for low-power applications where the load is resistive or has only a small inductance. The triggering circuit for the triac need not be isolated from the power circuit.

### 9.3.1. Single-phase Voltage Controller with R Load

Fig. 9.5 (*a*) shows a single-phase voltage controller feeding power to a resistive load $R$. As stated before, two thyristors are connected in antiparallel. Waveforms for source voltage $v_s$, gating pulses $i_{g1}$, $i_{g2}$, load current $i_0$, source current $i_s$, load voltage $v_0$, voltage across T1 as $v_{T1}$ and that across T2 as $v_{T2}$ are shown in Fig. 9.5 (*b*).



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 9.5. (*a*) Single-phase ac voltage controller with R load
(*b*) Voltage and current waveforms for figure (*a*).

Thyristors T1 and T2 are forward biased during positive and negative half cycles respectively. During positive half cycle, T1 is triggered at a firing angle α. T1 starts conducting and source voltage is applied to load from α to π. At π, both $v_0$, $i_0$ fall to zero. Just after π, T1 is subjected to reverse bias, it is therefore turned off. During negative half cycle, T2 is triggered at (π + α). T2 conducts from π + α to 2π. Soon after 2π, T2 is subjected to a reverse bias, it is therefore commutated. Load and source currents have the same waveform.

From zero to α, T1 is forward biased, $v_{T1} = v_s$ as shown. From α, T1 conducts, $v_{T1}$ is therefore about 1 V. After π, T1 is reverse biased by source voltage, therefore $v_{T1} = v_s$ from

$\pi$ to $\pi + \alpha$. From $\pi + \alpha$ to $2\pi$, T2 conducts ; T1 is therefore reverse biased by voltage drop across T2 which is about 1 to 1.5 V. The voltage variation $v_{T1}$ across SCR T1 is shown in Fig. 9.5(*b*). Similarly, the variation of voltage $v_{T2}$ across T2 can be drawn. In Fig. 9.5 (*b*), voltage drop across thyristors T1 and T2 is purposely shown just to highlight the duration of reverse bias across T1 and T2. Examination of this figure reveals that for any value of $\alpha$, each thyristor is reverse biased for $\pi/\omega$ sec.

There is thus no restriction on the value of firing angle $\alpha$. Firing angle can, therefore, be controlled from zero to $\pi$ and rms output voltage from $V_s$ to zero. Here $V_s$ is the rms value of source voltage.

$\therefore$ Circuit turn-off time, $$t_c = \frac{\pi}{\omega} \text{ sec.}$$

**Harmonics of output quantities and input current.** It is seen from Fig. 9.5 (*b*) that waveforms for output quantities (voltage $v_0$ and current $i_0$) and input current $i_s$ are non-sinusoidal. These waveforms can be described by Fourier series. As the positive and negative half cycles are identical, dc component and even harmonics are absent.

The output voltage $v_0$ can be represented by Fourier series as under :

$$v_0 = \sum_{n=1,3,5}^{\infty} A_n \sin n\omega t + \sum_{n=1,3,5}^{\infty} B_n \cos n\omega t \qquad \text{...(9.6)}$$

where $$A_n = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} v_0\,(\omega t) \sin n\omega t \cdot d(\omega t) \qquad \text{...(9.7)}$$

and $$B_n = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} v_0\,(\omega t) \cos n\omega t \cdot d(\omega t) \qquad \text{...(9.8)}$$

The load voltage $v_0$ during the first half cycle is

$$v_0 = V_m \sin \omega t \text{ ......} \alpha < \omega t < \pi \qquad \text{...(9.9)}$$

Substitution of $v_0$ from Eq. (9.9) in Eqs. (9.7) and (9.8) gives

$$\begin{aligned} A_n &= \frac{2V_m}{\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi} \sin \omega t \cdot \sin n\omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t) \\ &= \frac{V_m}{\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi} [\cos (n-1)\,\omega t - \cos (n+1)\,\omega t]\, d(\omega t) \\ &= \frac{V_m}{\pi}\left[\frac{\sin (n+1)\,\alpha}{n+1} - \frac{\sin (n-1)\,\alpha}{n-1}\right] \end{aligned} \qquad \text{...(9.10)}$$

and $$\begin{aligned} B_n &= \frac{2V_m}{\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi} \sin \omega t \cdot \cos n\omega t \cdot d(\omega t) \\ &= \frac{V_m}{\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi} [\sin (n+1)\,\omega t - \sin (n-1)\,\omega t]\, d(\omega t) \\ &= \frac{V_m}{\pi}\left[\frac{\cos (n+1)\,\alpha - 1}{n+1} - \frac{\cos (n-1)\,\alpha - 1}{n-1}\right] \end{aligned} \qquad \text{...(9.11)}$$

where $V_m = \sqrt{2}\, V_s$ and $V_s$ = rms value of source voltage .

For obtaining Eq. (9.11), note that for $n = 1, 3, 5 \ldots \cos (n+1)\,\pi = 1$ and $\cos (n-1)\,\pi = 1$.

The amplitude of the $n$th harmonic output voltage $V_{nm}$ and its phase $\phi_n$ are given by

$$V_{nm} = \sqrt{A_n^2 + B_n^2} \text{ and } \phi_n = \tan^{-1}\frac{B_n}{A_n} \qquad ...(9.12a)$$

and $$I_{nm} = \frac{V_{nm}}{R} = n\text{th harmonic load current} \qquad ...(9.12b)$$

For fundamental frequency, *i.e.* for $n = 1$, $V_{1m}$ and $\phi_1$ cannot be obtained from Eqs. (9.10) to (9.12), because these become indeterminate for $n = 1$. This difficulty can, however, be overcome by putting $n = 1$ in Eqs. (9.7) and (9.8) and substituting the value of $v_0$ from Eq. (9.9).

$$\therefore \quad A_1 = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_\alpha^\pi V_m \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{\pi}\left[\frac{\sin 2\alpha}{2} + (\pi - \alpha)\right] \qquad ...(9.13)$$

and $$B_1 = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_\alpha^\pi V_m \sin \omega t \cdot \cos \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{\pi}\left[\frac{\cos 2\alpha - 1}{2}\right] \qquad ...(9.14)$$

From the coefficients $A_1$ and $B_1$, the peak value of the fundamental frequency voltage $V_{1m}$ and its phase $\phi_1$ are given by

$$V_{1m} = [A_1^2 + B_1^2]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{\pi}\left[\left\{\frac{\sin 2\alpha}{2} + (\pi - \alpha)\right\}^2 + \left\{\frac{\cos 2\alpha - 1}{2}\right\}^2\right]^{1/2} \qquad ...(9.15a)$$

$$I_{1m} = \frac{V_{1m}}{R} = \text{amplitude of fundamental component of load or source current} \qquad ...(9.15b)$$

and $$\phi_1 = \tan^{-1}\frac{B_1}{A_1} = \tan^{-1}\left[\frac{\cos 2\alpha - 1}{\sin 2\alpha + 2(\pi - \alpha)}\right] \qquad ...(9.16)$$

When ac voltage controller is used for the speed control of a single-phase induction motor, only fundamental component is useful in producing the torque. The harmonics in the motor current merely increase the losses and therefore heating of the induction motor.

For heating and lighting loads, however, both fundamental and harmonics are useful in producing the ac controlled power. In such applications, rms value $V_{or}$ of the output voltage should be known. It can be obtained from Eq. (9.9) as follows :

$$V_{or} = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}\int_\alpha^\pi V_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{\sqrt{2}}\left[\frac{1}{\pi}\left\{(\pi - \alpha) + \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right\}\right]^{1/2} \qquad ...(9.17a)$$

and $$I_{or} = \frac{V_{or}}{R} = \text{rms value of load, or source current} \qquad ...(9.17b)$$

The average power $P$ delivered to load of resistance $R$ is

$$P = I_{or}^2 R = \frac{V_{or}^2}{R} = \frac{V_m^2}{2\pi R}\left[(\pi - \alpha) + \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_s^2}{\pi R}\left[(\pi - \alpha) + \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right] \qquad ...(9.18)$$

Maximum power $P_{max}$ is delivered to load when $\alpha = 0$.

$\therefore$

$$P_{max} = \frac{V_s^2}{\pi R}$$

This gives

$$\frac{P}{P_{max}} = \left[(\pi - \alpha) + \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right]$$

In terms of harmonic components,

$$P = R\,(I_{01}^2 + I_{03}^2 + I_{05}^2 + \ldots\ldots)$$

$$= \frac{1}{R}\,(V_{01}^2 + V_{03}^2 + V_{05}^2 + \ldots\ldots)$$

Fig. 9.5 (*b*) shows that source current waveform is identical with load current waveform. This shows that expressions for both load and source currents for the appropriate harmonics are the same.

**Power Factor.** Assuming that source voltage remains sinusoidal even though non-sinusoidal current is drawn from it, the power factor is given by

$$pf = \frac{\text{Real power}}{\text{Apparent power}} = \frac{V_s I_1 \cos\phi_1}{V_s \cdot I_{rms}} = \frac{I_1 \cdot \cos\phi_1}{I_{rms}} \qquad \ldots(9.19)$$

where $I_1 = \dfrac{I_{1m}}{\sqrt{2}}$ = rms value of fundamental component of source current given by Eq. (9.15 *b*)

$I_{rms} = I_{or}$ = rms value of source current, Eq. (9.17 *b*),

$\phi_1$ = phase angle between $V_s$ and $I_1$, Eq. (9.16)

Another expression for pf can be obtained as follows :

Real power delivered to load $= \dfrac{V_{or}^2}{R}$

Apparent power delivered to load

$$= V_s \cdot I_{or} = V_s \cdot \frac{V_{or}}{R}$$

$\therefore$

$$pf = \frac{V_{or}^2/R}{V_s \cdot V_{or}/R} = \frac{V_{or}}{V_s}$$

From Eq. (9.17*a*),

$$pf = \frac{V_{or}}{V_s} = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}\left\{(\pi - \alpha) + \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right\}\right]^{1/2} \qquad \ldots(9.20)$$

The maximum value of rms output voltage and current occurs at $\alpha = 0$ and are given by $V_s$ and $V_s/R$ respectively, Eq. (9.17). For $\alpha = 0$, harmonics are absent, these are therefore also the maximum values of fundamental rms voltage and current.

**Example 9.2.** *A single-phase voltage controller feeds power to a resistive load of 3 Ω from 230 V, 50 Hz source. Calculate :*

*(a) the maximum values of average and rms thyristor currents for any firing angle α,*

*(b) the minimum circuit turn-off time for any firing angle α,*

*(c) the ratio of third-harmonic voltage to fundamental voltage for* $\alpha = \dfrac{\pi}{3}$,

*(d) the maximum value of di/dt occurring in the thyristors,*

*(e) the angle α at which the greatest forward or reverse voltage is applied to either of the thyristors and the magnitude of these voltages.*

**Solution.** (*a*) It is seen from Fig. 9.5 (*b*) that current through thyristor flows from α to π for the first cycle of 2π radians. Therefore, average thyristor current is given by

$$I_{TAV} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi} \frac{V_m}{R} \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{V_m}{2\pi R}(1 + \cos \alpha)$$

Its maximum value occurs when $\alpha = 0$. Therefore, maximum value of average thyristor current is

$$I_{TAVM} = \frac{V_m}{\pi R} = \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi \times 3} = 34.512 \text{ A}$$

Rms thyristor current is

$$I_R = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi}\left(\frac{V_m}{R}\sin \omega t\right)^2 \cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{2R\sqrt{\pi}}\left[(\pi - \alpha) + \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right]^{1/2}$$

Its maximum value occurs at $\alpha = 0$.

$$\therefore \qquad I_{RM} = \frac{V_m}{2R} = \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{2 \times 3} = 54.211 \text{ A}$$

Also $$\frac{I_{RM}}{I_{TAVM}} = \frac{V_m}{2R} \cdot \frac{\pi R}{V_m} = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore \qquad I_{RM} = \frac{\pi}{2} \times 34.512 = 54.211 \text{ A}$$

(*b*) Waveforms for $v_{T1}, v_{T2}$ in Fig. 9.5 (*b*) show that for any value of firing angle α, the circuit turn-off time is always π radians.

$$\therefore \text{ Circuit turn-off time} = \frac{\pi}{\omega} = \frac{\pi}{2\pi f} = \frac{1}{2f} = \frac{1}{2 \times 50} = 0.01 \text{ sec} = 10 \text{ m-sec.}$$

(*c*) For third harmonic, from Eq. (9.10),

$$A_3 = \frac{V_m}{\pi}\left[\frac{\sin 240^\circ}{4} - \frac{\sin 120^\circ}{2}\right] = 0.64952\,\frac{V_m}{\pi}$$

and from Eq. (9.11), $$B_3 = \frac{V_m}{\pi}\left[\frac{\cos 240^\circ - 1}{4} - \frac{\cos 120^\circ - 1}{2}\right] = 0.375\,\frac{V_m}{\pi}$$

The amplitude of third harmonic voltage, from Eq. (9.12), is

$$V_{3m} = [A_3^2 + B_3^2]^{1/2} = 0.75\,\frac{V_m}{\pi}$$

The amplitude of fundamental frequency voltage from Eq. (9.15*a*) is

$$V_{1m} = \frac{V_m}{\pi}\left[\left\{\frac{\sin 120}{2} + \left(\pi - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)\right\}^2 + \left\{\frac{\cos 120^\circ - 1}{2}\right\}^2\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= 2.63634\,\frac{V_m}{\pi}$$

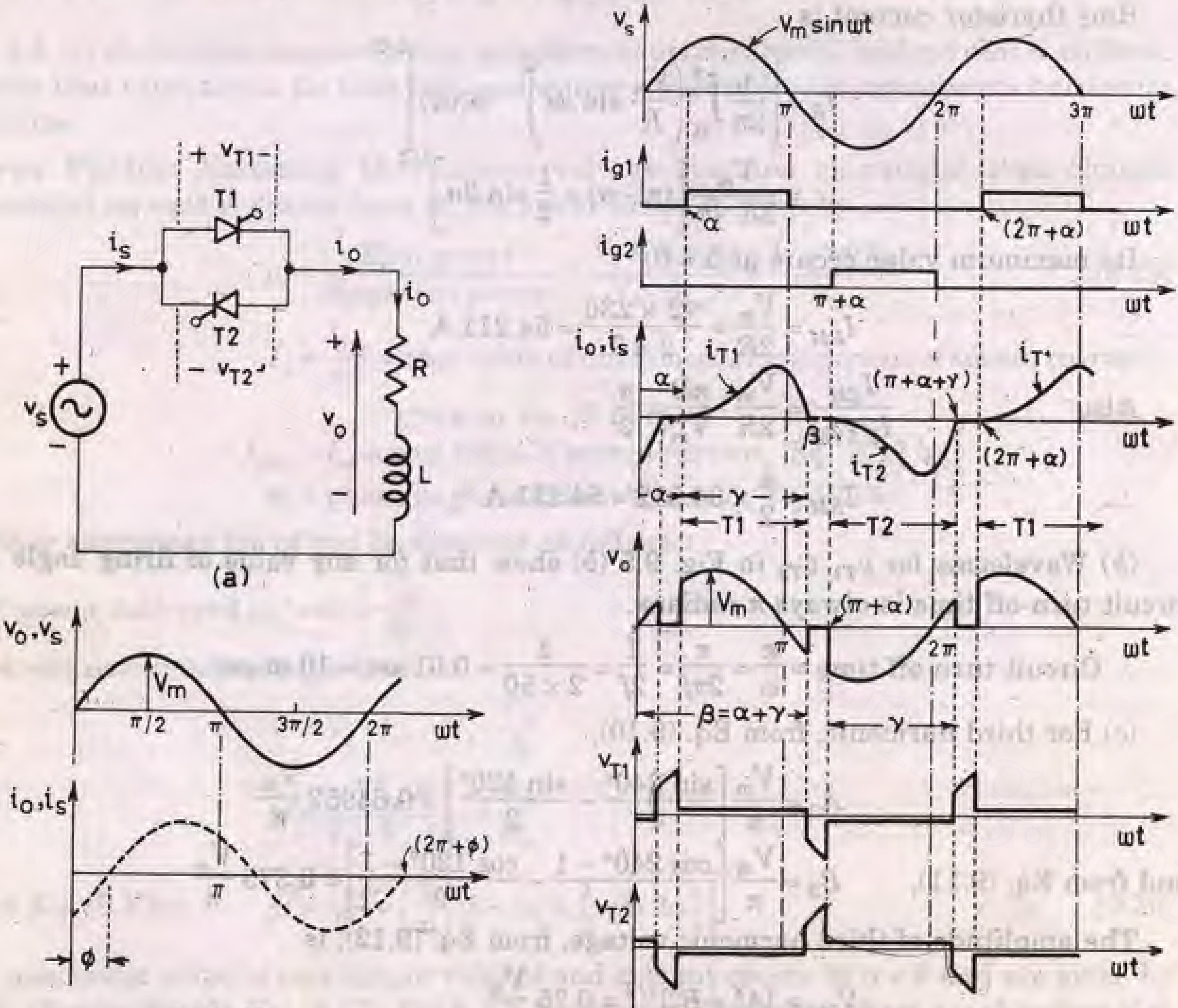
$$\therefore \qquad \frac{V_{3m}}{V_{1m}} = \frac{0.75}{2.63634} = 0.2845$$

(*d*) As there is a sudden rise of current from zero to $V_m/R \sin \alpha$ at firing angle α, *di*/*dt* is infinity.

(e) The waveforms of $v_{T1}, v_{T2}$ in Fig. 9.5 (b) reveal that the greatest forward or reverse voltage would appear across either of the thyristors when $\alpha = \frac{\pi}{2}$ or $\alpha > \frac{\pi}{2}$. The magnitude of these voltages is $V_m = \sqrt{2}\, V_s$.

### 9.3.2. Single-phase Voltage Controller with RL Load

Fig. 9.6 (a) shows a single-phase voltage controller with *RL* load. In Fig. 9.6 (b) are shown waveforms for source voltage $v_s$, gate currents $i_{g1}$ and $i_{g2}$, load and source currents $i_0$ and $i_s$, load voltage $v_0$, voltage $v_{T1}$ across SCR T1 and voltage $v_{T2}$ across thyristor T2.



(c) α ≤ φ (b) α > φ

Fig. 9.6. Single-phase voltage controller with RL load.

During zero to π, T1 is forward biased. At $\omega t = \alpha$, T1 is triggered and $i_0 = i_{T1}$ starts building up through the load. At π, load and source voltages are zero but the current is not zero because of the presence of inductance in the load circuit. At $\beta > \pi$, load current reduces to zero. Angle β is called the extinction angle. After π, T1 is reverse biased but does not turn off because $i_0$ is not zero. At β only, when $i_0$ is zero, T1 is turned off as it is already reverse biased. After the commutation of T1 at β, a voltage of magnitude $V_m \sin\beta$ at once appears as a reverse bias across T1 and as a forward bias across T2, Fig. 9.6 (b). From β to $\pi + \alpha$, no current exists in the power circuit. Thyristor T2 is turned on at $(\pi + \alpha) > \beta$. Current $i_0 = i_{T2}$ starts building up in the reversed direction through the load. At 2π, $v_s$ and $v_0$ are zero but $i_{T2} = i_0$ is not zero.

At $(\pi+\alpha+\gamma)$, $i_{T2}=0$ and T2 is turned off because it is already reverse biased. At $(\pi+\alpha+\gamma)$, $V_m \sin(\pi+\alpha+\gamma)$ appears as a forward bias across T1 and as a reverse bias across T2, Fig. 9.6 (*b*). From $(\pi+\alpha+\gamma)$ to $(2\pi+\alpha)$, no current exists in the power circuit. At $(2\pi+\alpha)$, T1 is turned on and current starts building up as before.

When T1 conducts, voltage drop across it appears as a reverse bias across T2. Similarly, when T2 conducts, $v_{T2}$ appears as a reverse bias across T1. It is seen from Fig. (9.6 *b*) that waveform $v_{T2}$ is obtained after inverting waveform $v_{T1}$. Waveform $v_{T1}$ shows that T1 is reverse biased for $\pi$ radians. Same is true for thyristor T2. Therefore, circuit turn-off time $t_c$ for each SCR, for any firing angle $\alpha$, is

$$t_c = \pi/\omega \text{ sec.}$$

The expression for load current $i_0$ can be obtained as under :

The KVL for the circuit of Fig. 9.6 (*a*) gives

$$v_s = V_m \sin\omega t = Ri_0 + L\frac{di_0}{dt} \quad \ldots \alpha < \omega t < \beta$$

The solution of this equation is of the form

$$i_0 = \frac{V_m}{Z}\sin(\omega t-\phi) + Ae^{-(R/L)t} \qquad \ldots(9.21)$$

where $Z = [R^2 + (\omega L)^2]^{1/2}$

and $\phi = \tan^{-1}(\omega L/R)$ ...(9.22)

Constant $A$ can be obtained from the initial condition according to which $i_0 = 0$ at $\omega t = \alpha$ *i.e.* at $t = \alpha/\omega$. Therefore,

$$0 = \frac{V_m}{Z}\sin(\alpha-\phi) + Ae^{-R\alpha/L\omega}$$

or

$$A = -\frac{V_m}{Z}\sin(\alpha-\phi)\,e^{R\alpha/L\omega}$$

Substitution of this value of $A$ in Eq. (9.21) gives $i_0$ as

$$i_0 = \frac{V_m}{Z}\left[\sin(\omega t-\phi) - \sin(\alpha-\phi)\exp\left\{\frac{R}{L}\left(\frac{\alpha}{\omega}-t\right)\right\}\right] \qquad \ldots(9.23)$$

It is seen from Fig. 9.6 (*b*) that $i_0 = 0$ again at $\omega t = \beta$ or at $t = \beta/\omega$. Substitution of this condition in Eq. (9.23) gives

$$\sin(\beta-\phi) = \sin(\alpha-\phi)\cdot\exp\left[\frac{R}{L}\left(\frac{\alpha-\beta}{\omega}\right)\right] \qquad \ldots(9.24)$$

Extinction angle $\beta$ can be obtained from Eq. (9.24).

The conduction angle $\gamma$ during which current flows from angle $\alpha$ to angle $\beta$ is given by

$$\gamma = \beta - \alpha \qquad \ldots(9.25)$$

For a given value of load phase angle $\phi$, angle $\beta$ is determined for various values of $\alpha$ from Eq.

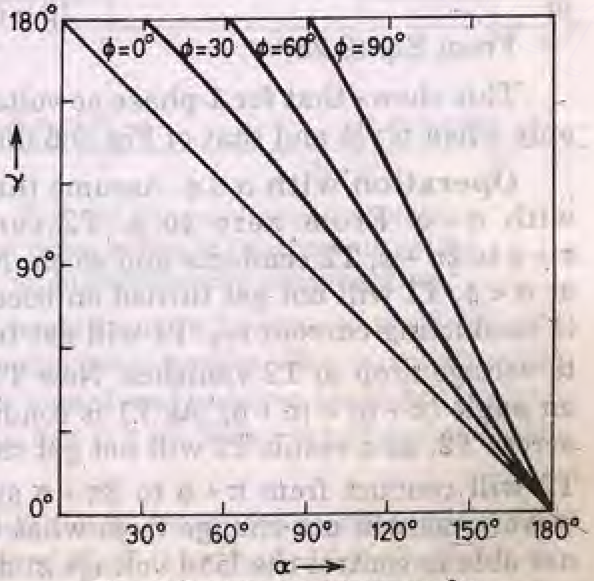


Fig. 9.7. $\gamma$ versus $\alpha$ curves for ac voltage controller of Fig. 9.6 (*a*).

(9.24) and thus a relationship between $\gamma$ and $\alpha$ can be realized from Eq. (9.25). For the various values of $\gamma$ and $\alpha$, curves shown in Fig. 9.7 are obtained for different values of $\phi$. Note that phase angle $\phi$ cannot exceed 90°.

It is seen from Figs. 9.6 (*b*) and 9.7 that as $\alpha$ is decreased, the conduction angle $\gamma$ increases. The waveform of current $i_0$ in Fig. 9.6 (*b*) reveals that for $\gamma < \pi$, $i_{T1}$ through T1 flows from $\alpha$ to $(\alpha + \gamma) = \beta$. T1 remains off from $\alpha + \gamma$ upto $(\pi + \alpha)$. At $(\pi + \alpha)$, $i_{T2}$ through T2 flows from $\pi + \alpha$ to $\pi + \alpha + \gamma$. T2 remains off from $\pi + \alpha + \gamma$ to $2\pi + \alpha$. At $2\pi + \alpha$, T1 is turned on. With progressive decrease in $\alpha$, $\gamma$ may become equal to $\pi$. Under this condition, when $\gamma$ is just equal to $\pi$, T1 will be on from $\alpha$ to $\pi + \alpha$ and $i_{T1}$ flows from $\alpha$ to $\pi + \alpha$. Further, T2 will be on from $\pi + \alpha$ to $2\pi + \alpha$ and current $i_{T2}$ flows from $\pi + \alpha$ to $2\pi + \alpha$. Thus,

$$\text{when } \gamma = \pi, \quad \left.\begin{array}{r} 0 \text{ to } \alpha \text{ —T2 conducts} \\ \alpha \text{ to } (\pi + \alpha) \text{ —T1 conducts} \\ (\pi + \alpha) \text{ to } (2\pi + \alpha) \text{ —T2 conducts and so on} \end{array}\right\} \quad \ldots(A)$$

This shows that load current will never become zero for any segment of time and therefore for all the time, load is connected to source. Thus, for $\gamma = \pi$, the load voltage is equal to sinusoidal source voltage provided the voltage drop in thyristors is neglected. Under these conditions, load behaves as if it is being fed directly by the ac source.

What is the value of $\alpha$ for which $\gamma = \pi$ and load is directly connected to ac source ? For this, consider that *RL* load, with load phase angle $\phi$, is connected directly to ac source. Under steady state, the load current will be a sine wave and lag behind the voltage wave by an angle $\phi$ as shown in Fig. 9.6 (*c*). The current is positive from $\phi$ to $\pi + \phi$ and negative from $\pi + \phi$ to $2\pi + \phi$, Fig. 9.6 (*c*). If it is required to obtain the current waveform of Fig. 9.6 (*c*) through the operation of power circuit of Fig. 9.6 (*a*), then

$$\text{from} \quad \left.\begin{array}{r} 0 \text{ to } \phi \text{ —T2 conducts} \\ \phi \text{ to } (\pi + \phi) \text{ —T1 conducts} \\ (\pi + \phi) \text{ to } (2\pi + \phi) \text{ —T2 conducts and so on} \end{array}\right\} \quad \ldots(B)$$

A comparison of expressions (*A*) and (*B*) reveals that when $\alpha = \phi$, $\gamma = \pi$. This can be verified by referring to Eqs. (9.24) and (9.25). When $\alpha = \phi$, Eq. (9.24) gives

$$\sin(\beta - \alpha) = 0 = \sin \pi$$

or

$$(\beta - \alpha) = \pi$$

From Eq. (9.25)

$$\gamma = \beta - \alpha = \pi.$$

This shows that for 1-phase ac voltage controller, waveforms of Fig. 9.6 (*b*) are applicable only when $\alpha > \phi$ and that of Fig. 9.6 (*c*) for $\alpha \le \phi$.

**Operation with $\alpha \le \phi$.** Assume that ac voltage controller is working under steady state with $\alpha = \phi$. From zero to $\phi$, T2 conducts and from $\phi$ to $(\pi + \phi)$, T1 conducts ; from $\pi + \phi$ to $2\pi + \phi$, T2 conducts and so on. Now let $\alpha$ be decreased below $\phi$. When T1 is triggered at $\alpha < \phi$, T1 will not get turned on because it is reverse biased by voltage drop in T2 which is conducting current $i_{T2}$. T1 will get turned on only at $\phi$ when $i_{T2} = 0$ and reverse bias due to voltage drop in T2 vanishes. Now T1 will conduct from $\phi$ to $\pi + \phi$. T2 will be triggered at an angle $(\pi + \alpha) < (\pi + \phi)$. As T1 is conducting, a voltage drop in T1 will apply a reverse bias across T2, as a result T2 will not get turned on at $\pi + \alpha$, but only at $\pi + \phi$, when $i_{T1} = 0$. Now T2 will conduct from $\pi + \phi$ to $2\pi + \phi$ and so on. This shows that load voltage and current waveforms will not change from what they are at $\alpha = \phi$. Thus the reduction of $\alpha$ below $\phi$ is not able to control the load voltage and load current. The ac output power can be controlled only for $\alpha > \phi$. Note that for $\alpha \le \phi$, $\gamma$ remains equal to $\pi$. Thus the control range of firing angle is $\phi < \alpha < 180°$.

**Gating signal requirements**. For $R$ load as in Fig. 9.5, thyristor T1 stops conducting at $\pi$, T2 is now forward biased after $\pi$. When T2 is triggered at $\pi + \alpha$, it gets turned on as it is already forward biased by source voltage. Thus pulse gating is suitable for $R$ load as shown in Fig. 9.5.

Pulse gating is, however, not suitable for $RL$ loads. The reason for this can be explained by referring to Fig. 9.8. At $\alpha$, T1 is fired and the current flows as shown. At $\pi + \alpha$, T2 is fired. As T1 is still conducting, voltage drop across T1 reverse biases T2 at $\pi + \alpha$, T2 is therefore not turned on at $\pi + \alpha$. At $(\alpha + \gamma)$, $i_{T1}$ decays to zero and T1 stops conducting, as a result T2 gets forward biased but the gate pulse $i_{g2}$ applied to T2 at $\pi + \alpha$ is already zero and therefore T2 does not get turned on. At $(2\pi + \alpha)$, gate pulse is applied to T1, it gets turned on because it is already forward biased by source voltage. At $(3\pi + \alpha)$, when T2 is pulse gated, it will not turn on as explained earlier. Thus, the a.c. voltage controller gives asymmetrical output voltage waveform due to the conduction of T1 alone. This half-wave rectifier operation of the ac voltage controller is undesirable. This difficulty can be overcome by applying a *continuous gate* single to the SCRs T1 and T2 so that when $i_{T1}$ becomes zero at $(\alpha + \gamma)$, T2 gets turned on due to the presence of continuous signal. A continuous gate signal is shown in Fig. 9.6 (*b*). The duration of a continuous gate signal should last for a period of $(\pi - \alpha)/\omega$ seconds. Strictly speaking, sustained gate pulse may not last from $\alpha$ to $\pi$ as shown. For $\alpha = \phi$ or $\alpha > \phi$, a gate pulse of narrow width is sufficient to trigger the SCR. In case $\alpha < \phi$, minimum width of gate pulse should be equal to $\phi$ plus the angle required for the current to reach latching current value.

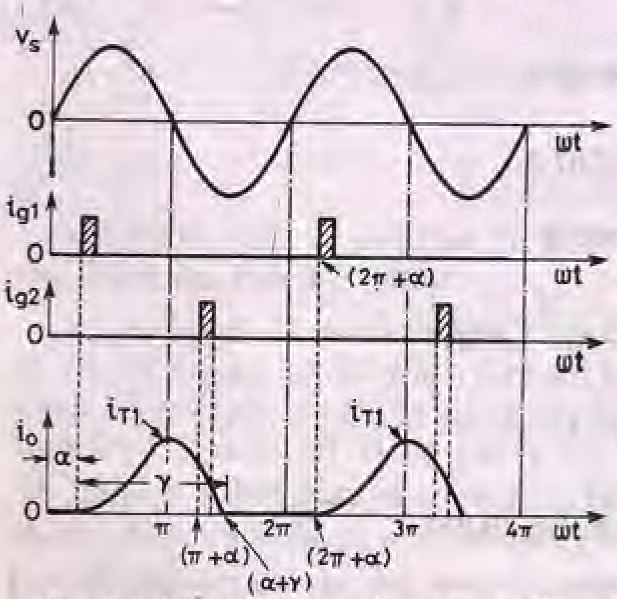


Fig. 9.8. Single-phase voltage controller with $RL$ load with pulse gating.

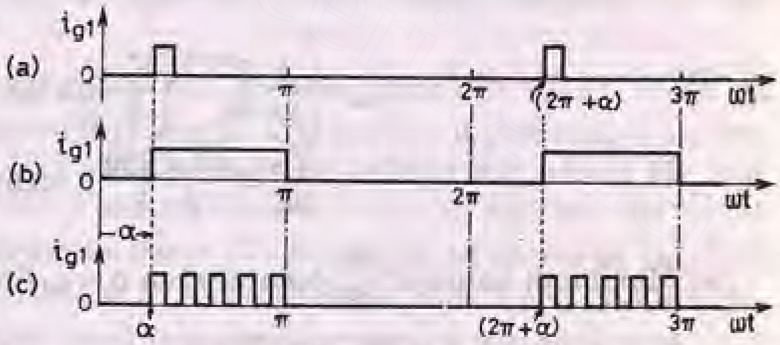


Fig. 9.9. Types of gating signals (*a*) pulse gating (*b*) continuous gating (*c*) high-frequency carrier gating.

In practice continuous gating is undesirable as it leads to more heating of the SCR gate and at the same time, it increases the size of the pulse transformer. The technique that mitigates the above disadvantages of continuous gate signal and ensures thyristor turn on is to use a train of firing pulses from $\alpha$ to $\pi$ as shown in Fig. 9.9 (*c*). This type of signal is also termed as high-frequency carrier gating.

**Example 9.3.** *A single-phase voltage controller is employed for controlling the power flow from 230 V, 50 Hz source into a load circuit consisting of $R = 3\ \Omega$ and $\omega L = 4\ \Omega$. Calculate*

*(a) the control range of firing angle,*

*(b) the maximum value of rms load current,*

*(c) the maximum power and power factor,*

*(d) the maximum values of average and rms thyristor currents,*

*(e) the maximum possible value of di/dt that may occur in the thyristor and*

*(f) the conduction angle for α = 0° and α = 120° assuming a gate pulse of duration π radian.*

**Solution.** (*a*) For controlling the load, the minimum value of firing angle α = load phase angle, $\phi = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{\omega L}{R} = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{4}{3} = 53.13°$. The maximum possible value of α is 180°.

∴ Firing angle control range is $53.13° \le \alpha \le 180°$.

(*b*) The maximum value of rms load current $I_0$ occurs when $\alpha = \phi = 53.13°$. But at this value of firing angle, the power circuit of ac voltage controller behaves as if load is directly connected to ac source. Therefore, maximum value of rms load current is

$$I_0 = \frac{230}{\sqrt{R^2 + (\omega L)^2}} = \frac{230}{\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}} = 46 \text{ A.}$$

(*c*) Maximum power $= I_0^2 R = 46^2 \times 3 = 6348$ W

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{I_0^2 R}{V_s I_0} = \frac{46 \times 3}{230} = 0.6.$$

(*d*) Average thyristor current is maximum when $\alpha = \phi$ and conduction angle $\gamma = \pi$. From Fig. 9.6 (*c*),

$$I_{TAVM} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\alpha+\pi} \frac{V_m}{Z} \sin(\omega t - \phi)\, d(\omega t)$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{\pi Z} = \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi \times \sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}} = 20.707 \text{ A.}$$

Similarly, maximum value of rms thyristor current is

$$I_{Tm} = \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\alpha+\pi}\left\{\frac{V_m}{Z}\sin(\omega t - \alpha)\right\}^2 d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \frac{V_m}{2Z} = \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{2 \times 5} = 32.527 \text{ A.}$$

(*e*) Maximum value of $\dfrac{di_0}{di}$ occurs when $\alpha = \phi$. From Eq. (9.23),

$$\frac{di_0}{dt} = \frac{\omega \cdot V_m}{Z}\cos(\omega t - \phi) - 0.$$

Its value is maximum when $\cos(\omega t - \phi) = 1$

$$\therefore \quad \left(\frac{di_0}{dt}\right)_{max} = \frac{\sqrt{2}.230 \cdot 2\pi \times 50}{5} = 2.0437 \times 10^4 \text{ A/sec.}$$

(*f*) For α = 0°, Fig. 9.7 shows that conduction angle γ is 180°. For α = 120° and φ = 53.13°, Fig. 9.7 gives a conduction angle of about 95°.

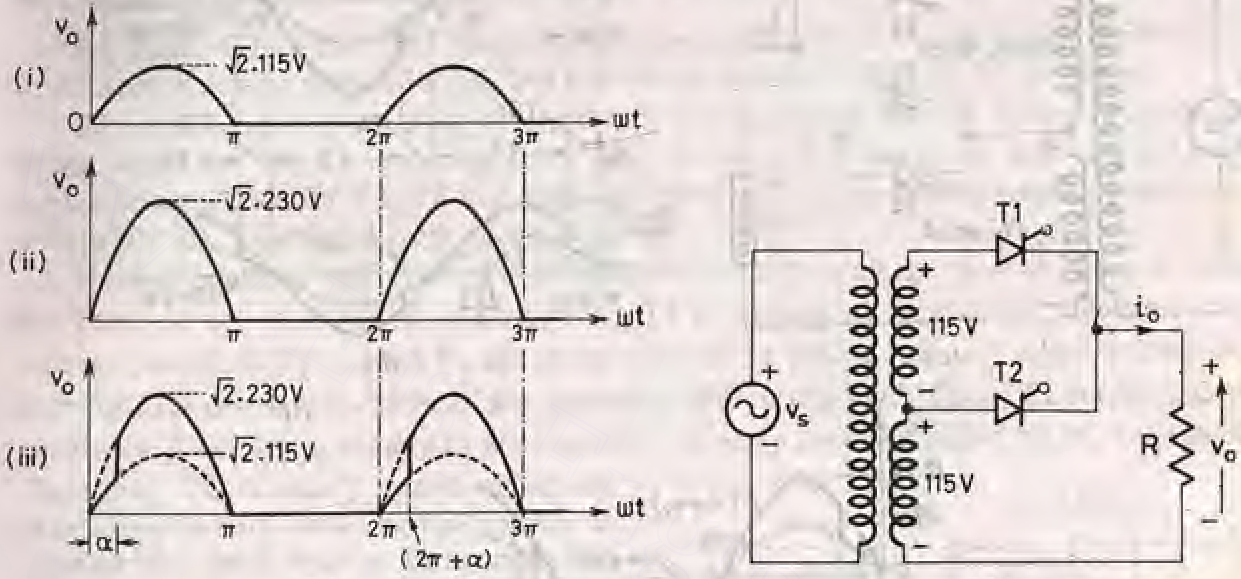
**Example 9.4.** *For the circuit shows in Fig. 9.10 (a), sketch the waveforms of output voltage and current for the following values of firing angles.*

*(a) Only T2 is triggered at ωt = 0, 2π, 4π etc.*

*(b) Only T1 is triggered at* $\omega t = 0, 2\pi, 4\pi$ *etc.*

*(c) T2 is triggered at* $\omega t = 0, 2\pi, 4\pi$ *etc. But T1 is triggered at* $\omega t = \alpha, 2\pi + \alpha, 4\pi + \alpha$ *and s on. Take* $\alpha$ *around* $40°$.

**Solution.** (*a*) At $\omega = 0°$, supply voltage is passing through zero and becoming positiv Therefore, when thyristor T2 is triggered at $\omega t = 0, 2\pi, 4\pi$ etc. it gets turned on and loa voltage $v_0$ equals source voltage $v_s$. At $\pi$, $3\pi$ etc, as source voltage tends to become negativ T2 is turned off as load current $i_0$ is zero. Load voltage $v_0 = 0$ from $\pi$ to $2\pi$ etc. as shown i Fig. 9.10 (*b-i*). For *R* load, current waveform is identical with voltage waveform.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 9.10. Pertaining to Example 9.4.

(*b*) This part is similar to part (*a*), except that the voltage amplitude is no $\sqrt{2} \cdot 230$ volts, Fig. 9.10 (*b-ii*).

(*c*) At $\omega t = 0, 2\pi, 4\pi$ etc. when T2 is triggered, it gets turned on and $v_0 = \sqrt{2}.115 \sin \omega t$. A $\omega t = \alpha, 2\pi + \alpha, 4\pi + \alpha$ etc. when forward biased thyristor T1 is triggered, it gets turned on. Bu when T1 gets on, a voltage equal to $\sqrt{2} \cdot 115 \sin \alpha$ appears as reverse bias across T2, it i therefore turned off at $\omega t = \alpha, 2\pi + \alpha$ etc. Thus, from $\omega t = 0$ to $\alpha$, $v_0$ follows the curv $\sqrt{2} \cdot 115 \sin \omega t$ but from $\omega t = \alpha$ to $\pi$, $v_0$ follows the curve $\sqrt{2} \cdot 230 \sin \omega t$ as shown in Fig. 9.1 (*b-iii*). From $\pi$ to $2\pi$, $v_0 = 0$. From $2\pi$ to $2\pi + \alpha$, $v_0 = \sqrt{2}.115 \sin \omega t$ and from $2\pi + \alpha$ to 3 $v_0 = \sqrt{2} \cdot 230 \sin \omega t$. As the load is resistive, load current waveform is identical with loa voltage waveform.

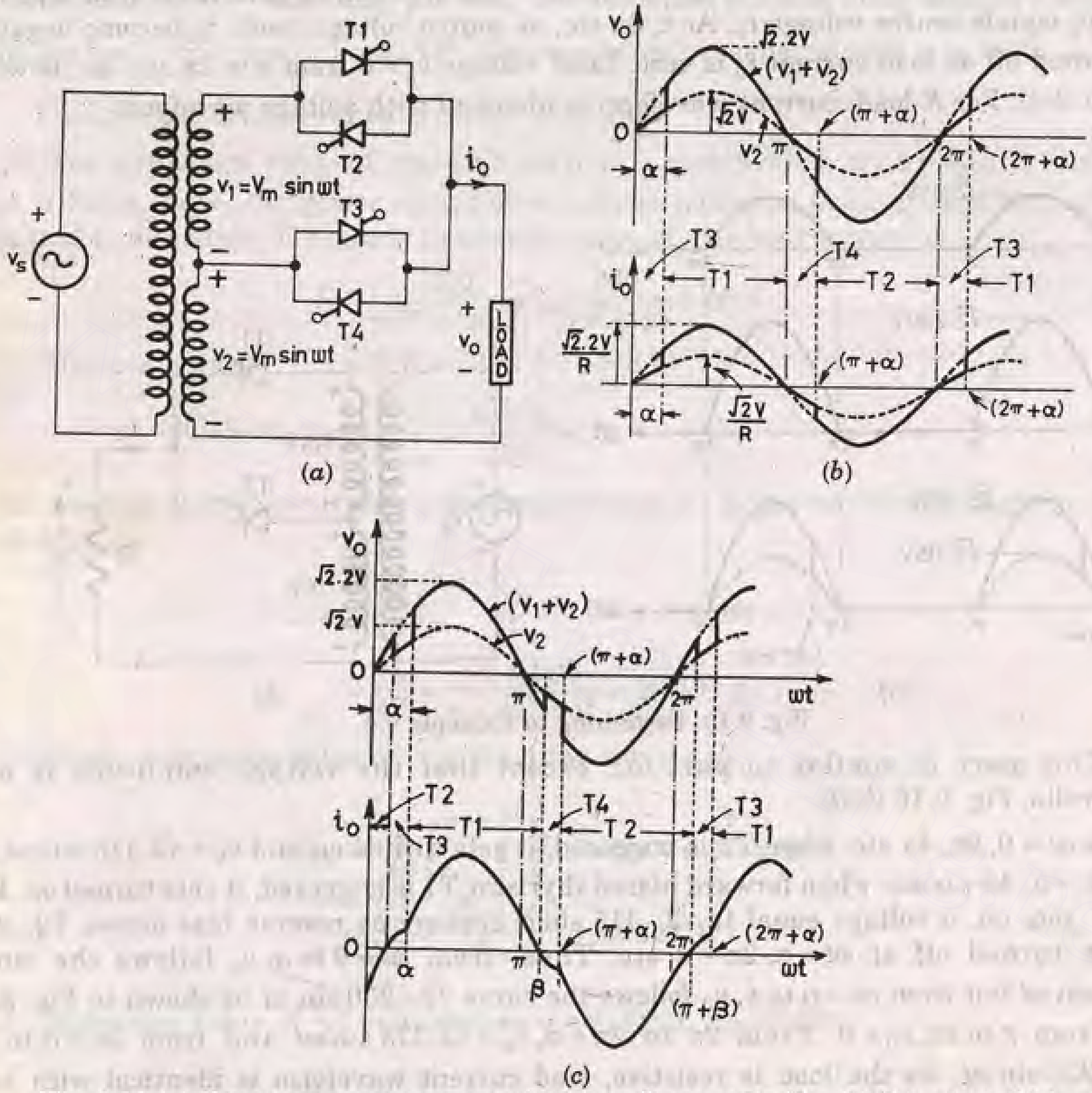
## 9.4. SEQUENCE CONTROL OF AC VOLTAGE CONTROLLERS (TRANSFORMER TAP CHANGERS)

Sequence control of ac voltage controllers is employed for the improvement of system p and for the reduction of harmonics in the input current and output voltage. Sequence contr of ac voltage controllers means the use of two or more stages of voltage controllers in parall for the regulation of output voltage. The term 'sequence control' means that the stages o voltage controllers in parallel are triggered in a proper sequence one after the other so as t obtain a variable output with low harmonic content.

The object of this section is to describe two-stage as well as multistage sequence contr of voltage controllers. A single-phase sinusoidal voltage controller is also explained.

### 9.4.1. Two-stage Sequence Control of Voltage Controllers

A two-stage sequence control of ac voltage regulators employs two stages in parallel as shown in Fig. 9.11 (*a*). The turns ratio from primary to each secondary is taken as unity for convenience. This means that for source voltage $v_s = V_m \sin \omega t$, $v_1 = v_2 = V_m \sin \omega t$ and sum of two secondary voltages is $2V_m \sin \omega t$.



(*a*) (*b*)

(*c*)

Fig. 9.11 (*a*) Two-stage sequence controlled ac voltage controller (*b*) *R* load (*c*) *RL* load.

The load may be *R* or *RL*. For both types of loads, for obtaining output voltage control from zero to rms value *V*, use only thyristor pair T3, T4 in Fig. 9.11. For zero output voltage, $\alpha$ is 180° for T3, T4 and for *V*, $\alpha$ is zero. For output voltage control from *V* to 2*V*, $\alpha$ for thyristor pair T3, T4 is always zero and for thyristor pair T1, T2 ; $\alpha$ is varied from zero to 180°.

The main advantage of two-stage sequence control of ac voltage controller over single-phase full-wave ac voltage controller is the reduction of harmonics in the load and line currents.

(*a*) **Resistance load**. For resistance load, the load current waveform is identical with output voltage waveform. When thyristor pair T3, T4 is in operation, then the output voltage and current waveforms are as shown in Fig. 9.5 (*b*). When both pairs T1, T2 and T3, T4 are in operation, then firing angle for T3, T4 is always zero whereas firing angle $\alpha$ for pair T1, T2 is varied from 180° to zero for obtaining output voltage from *V* to 2*V*.

The output voltage, when thyristor T3 is triggered at $\omega t = 0$, follows $v_2 = V_m \sin \omega t$ curve. When SCR T1 is triggered at $\omega t = \alpha$, voltage $v_1$ reverse biases T3, it is therefore turned off. After this, T1 begins conduction and the output voltage jumps from $v_2$ to $(v_1 + v_2)$ and follows $2\,V_m \sin \omega t$ curve. At $\omega t = \pi$, output voltage and current are zero. At this instant, T4 is triggered and output voltage follows $V_m \sin \omega t$ curve. At $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$, when forward biased SCR T2 is triggered, T4 is reverse biased by $V_m \sin \alpha$, it is therefore turned off. When T2 begins conduction, output voltage follows $2\,V_m \sin \omega t$ curve as shown by the negative half cycle in Fig. 9.11 (*b*). In this figure, output current waveform $i_0$ is shown identical with output voltage waveform $v_0$.

**RL load**. When pair T3, T4 alone is in operation, then the waveforms of output voltage and current are as shown in Fig. 9.6 (*b*) for $\alpha > \phi$ and in Fig. 9.6 (*c*) for $\alpha \le \phi$.

For obtaining output voltage from $V$ to $2\,V$, firing angle for T3, T4 is always zero whereas firing angle for T1, T2 is varied from 180° to zero. It is assumed that during positive half cycle, firing pulses for T1, T3 last from $\omega t = 0$ to $\omega t = \pi$ and during negative half cycle, firing pulses for T2, T4 extend from $\omega t = \pi$ to $2\pi$.

During positive half cycle, T3 is conducting and a voltage $v_2 = \sqrt{2}\,V \sin \omega t$ is applied to the load. At $\omega t = \alpha$, when T1 is triggered, T3 is turned off by reverse voltage $v_1$ and output voltage jumps to $v_1 + v_2 = 2\,V_m \sin \omega t$ as shown. At $\omega t = \pi$, $(v_1 + v_2)$ reaches zero but output current $i_0$ is not zero because of the presence of $L$ in the load. Thus, T1 continues conducting until $\omega t = \beta$, where $i_0$ decays to zero and T1, already reverse biased by $(v_1 + v_2)$ is turned-off. Thyristor T4, already gated at $\omega t = \pi$, starts conducting lowering the voltage to $v_2$ as shown. At $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$, T2 is triggered, $v_1$ turns off T4 and output voltage in the negative half cycle jumps to $(v_1 + v_2)$ as shown. At $\omega t = 2\pi$, $(v_1 + v_2)$ reaches zero but $i_0$ is not zero because of $L$. At $\omega t = \pi + \beta$, $i_0$ reaches zero. T2, already reverse biased by $(v_1 + v_2)$, is turned off and T3 already gated at $\omega t = 2\pi$ is turned on lowering the voltage to $v_2$ at $\omega t = \pi + \beta$. At $\omega t = 2\pi + \alpha$, already gated T1 turns on and T3 turns off and output voltage jumps from $v_2$ to $(v_1 + v_2)$ in the positive half cycle. The output voltage and output current waveforms are shown in Fig. 9.11 (*c*).

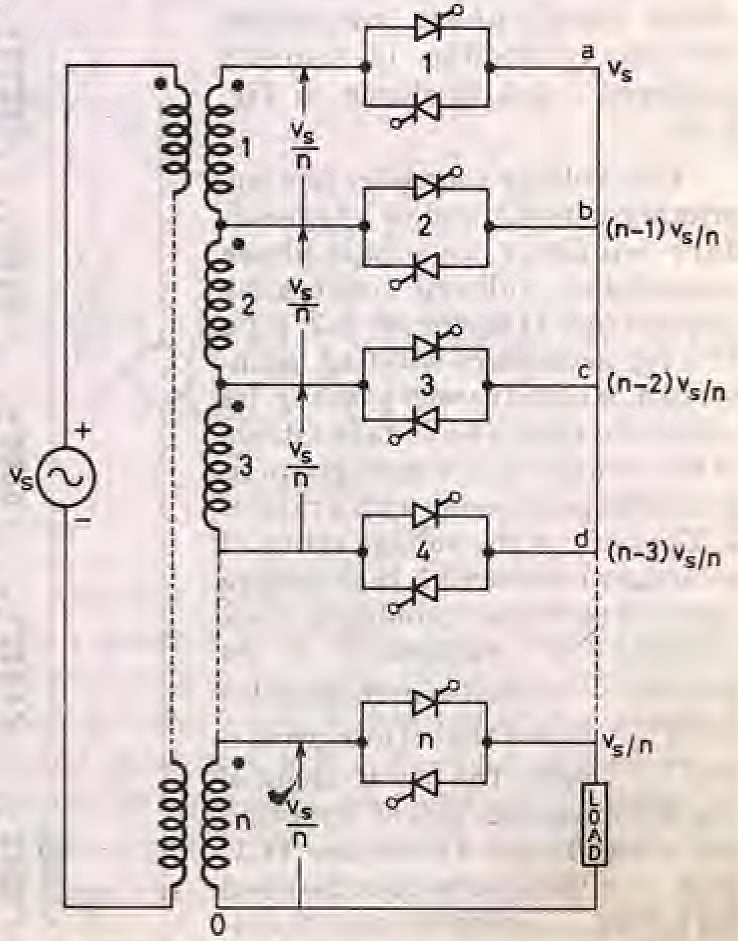


Fig. 9.12. Multistage sequence control of ac voltage controllers.

### 9.4.2. Multistage Sequence Control of Voltage Controllers

Multistage sequence control of ac voltage controllers is employed when it is desired to have harmonic content lower than that in a two-stage sequence control. Fig. 9.12 shows the power circuit for $n$-stage sequence control of voltage controllers. In this figure, the transformer has $n$

secondary windings. Each secondary is rated for $v_s/n$ where $v_s$ is the source voltage. Voltage of terminal $a$ with respect to 0 is $v_s$. Voltage of terminal $b$ is $(n-1)\,v_s/n$ and so on. If voltage control from $v_{d0} = (n-3)\,v_s/n$ to $v_{co} = (n-2)\,v_s/n$ is required, then thyristor pair 4 is fired at $\alpha = 0°$ and the firing angle of thyristor pair 3 is controlled from $\alpha = 0°$ to 180° whereas all other thyristor pairs are kept off. Similarly, for controlling the voltage from $v_{bo} = (n-1)\,v_s/n$ to $v_{ao} = v_s$, thyristor pair 2 is triggered at $\alpha = 0°$ whereas for pair 1, $\alpha$ is varied from 0° to 180° by keeping the remaining $(n-2)$ SCR pairs off. Thus, the load voltage can be controlled from $v_s/n$ to $v_s$ by an appropriate control of triggering the adjacent thyristor pairs.

The presence of harmonics in the output voltage depends upon the magnitude of voltage variation. If this voltage variation is a small fraction of the total output voltage, the harmonic content in the output voltage is small. For example, for voltage control from $(n-2)\,v_s/n$ to $(n-1)\,v_s/n$, if voltage variation $v_s/n \ll (n-1)\,v_s/n$, then the harmonic content in the output voltage would be small.

### 9.4.3. Single-phase Sinusoidal Voltage Controller

For obtaining continuous voltage control over a wide range with low harmonic content and improved pf, a multistage sequence voltage controller must have quite a large number of stages. This is, however, an expensive proposition. An alternative to this, with less number of stages and called single-phase sinusoidal voltage controller is usually employed ; this is shown in Fig. 9.13.

This voltage controller has one primary winding and $(n+1)$ secondary windings, *i.e.* single-phase sinusoidal voltage controller employs $(n+1)$ stages ; 0, 1, 2, 3...$n$. The top secondary winding, numbered $A$, is called *vernier winding*. Its rating is $v$ volts. The voltage ratings of the remaining $n$ windings are in geometric progression with a ratio of 2. Thus, if $v$ is the voltage rating of secondary numbered 1, then voltage rating of secondary numbered 2 is 2 $v$, that of numbered 3 is $4\,v\;(= 2^{3-1}\cdot v)$, that of numbered 4 is $8\,v\;(2^{4-1}\cdot v)$ and that of numbered $n$ is $2^{n-1}\cdot v$ volts. The power circuit of Fig. 9.13 uses two sets of thyristors for $n$ windings. These are TC1, TC2,..... called *control thyristors* and TB1, TB2..... called *by-pass thyristors*. Vernier winding has two pairs of thyristors marked TCA and TBA.

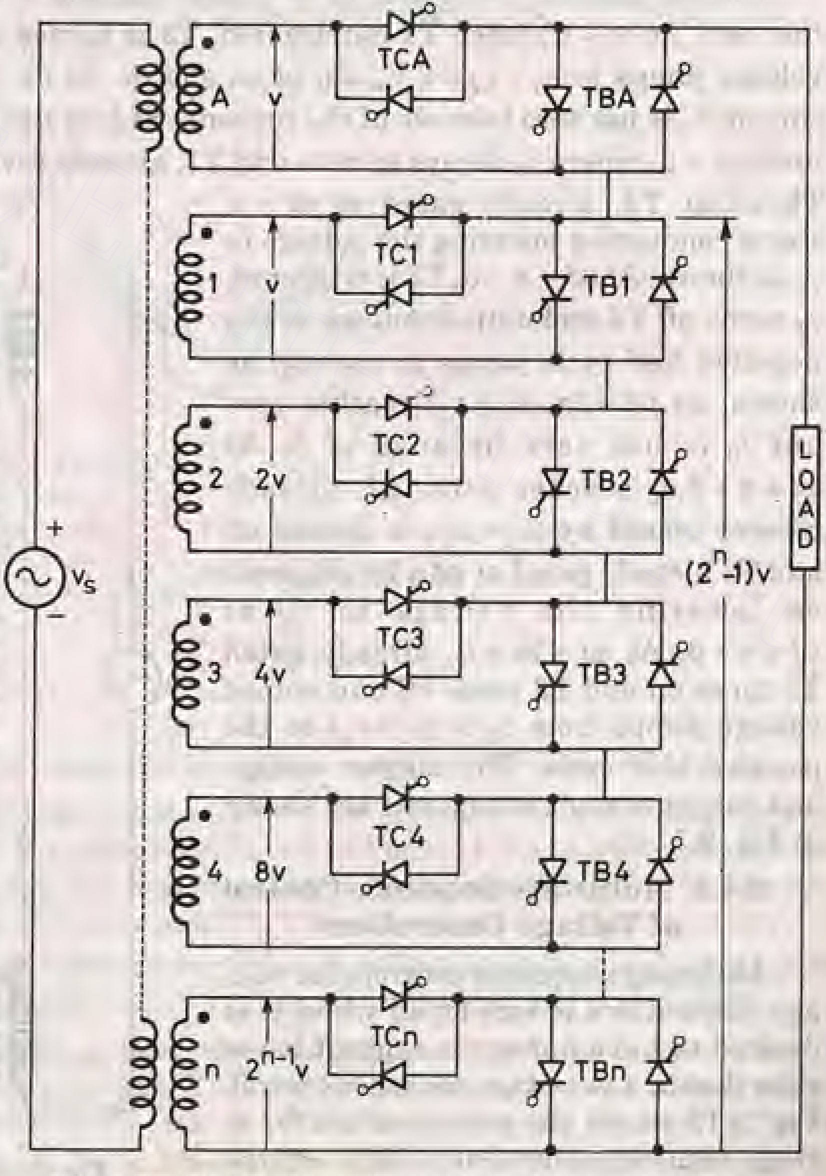
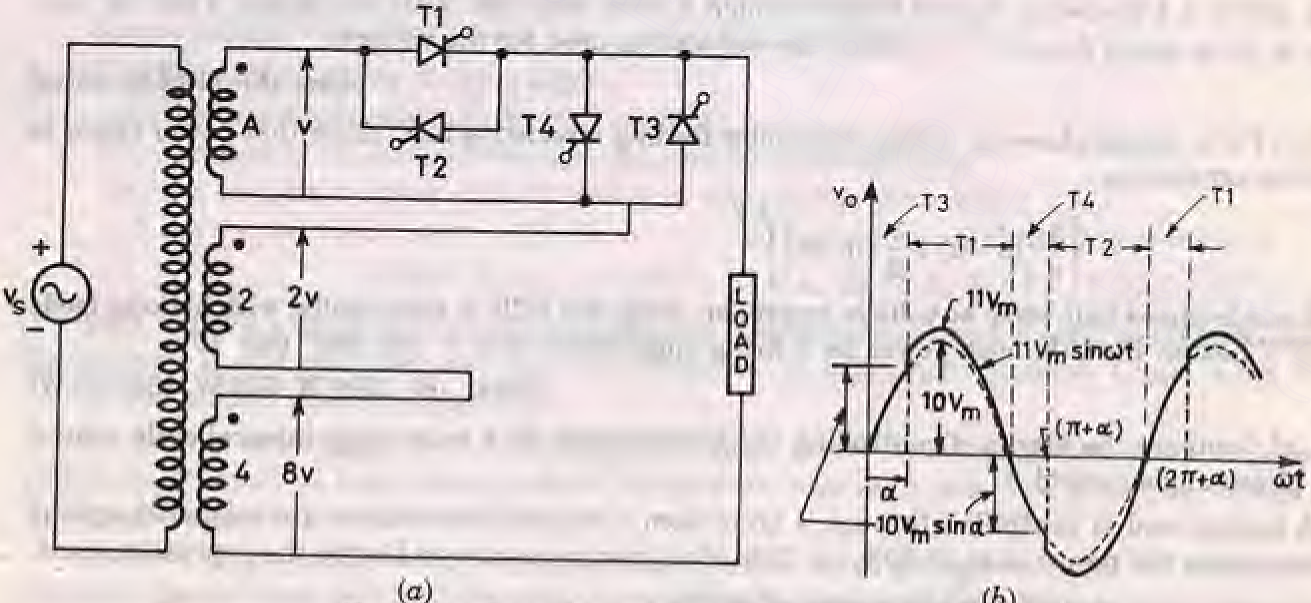


Fig. 9.13. Single-phase sinusoidal voltage controller.

Thyristors pertaining to $n$ stages, *i.e.* TC1, TC2,..., TCn and TB1, TB2,..., TBn are either on or off throughout a cycle. This means that control and by-pass thyristors are made to act as switches which remain either on or off during a cycle. When control SCR pair for any stage is on and its by-pass thyristor pair is off, then voltage of that stage would appear across the load and a load current would flow accordingly. On the other hand, if control SCR pair is off and by-pass pair is on for any stage, then this particular stage would be by-passed and will not contribute any voltage across the load. Thus, with an appropriate series combination of secondaries from 1 to $n$ (without vernier winding), the load voltage can be varied from $v$ to $(2^n - 1)\,v$ in discrete steps of $v$. This special feature of choosing any series combination of secondary windings is, however, not available in the multistage sequence control of thyristors in Fig. 9.12.

As stated above, an additional stage $A$, is employed as a vernier to permit continuous control of voltage from zero to $v$. It is a phase-controlled secondary winding. This winding contributes harmonics to line and load currents. The harmonic content would, however, be much lower because contribution of voltage by vernier winding to the load voltage is only a small fraction of the total load voltage.

The operation of the power circuit of Fig. 9.13 can now be explained for a resistance load. Let it be required to vary the load voltage from $10\,v$ to $11\,v$. For obtaining this voltage range, stages 2 and 4 together with vernier winding are required. For stages 2 and 4, by-pass SCRs are kept off but their control SCRs are kept on all the time. For the remaining stages from 1 to $n$, all by-pass SCRs are kept on while their control SCRs are kept off all the time. With this, the circuit of Fig. 9.13 reduces to that shown in Fig. 9.14 (*a*)



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 9.14. Operation of voltage controller of Fig. 9.13.

During the positive half cycle, thyristor T3 is turned on at $\omega t = 0°$ and as a result, a voltage $10\,v$ is applied to the load. At $\omega t = \alpha$, T1 is turned on and this turns off T3, the voltage now jumps from $10v$ to $11v$, *i.e.* from $10\,V_m \sin\alpha$ to $11V_m \sin\alpha$, Fig. 9.14 (*b*). After $\omega t = \alpha$, output voltage follows $11\,V_m \sin\omega t$ curve. At the end of positive half cycle, T4 is turned on at $\omega = \pi$, the load voltage is now $10\,v$. At $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$, T2 is turned on and with this T4 is turned off and load voltage jumps from $10\,v$ $(10\,V_m \sin\alpha)$ to $11v$ $(11\,V_m \sin\alpha)$ in the negative half cycle. In this manner, load voltage can be continuously controlled from zero to $2^n\,v$ by a suitable choice of output voltage range.

## PROBLEMS

**9.1.** (*a*) What is an ac voltage controller ? List some of its industrial applications. Enumerate its merits and demerits.

(*b*) Describe the two types of ac voltage controllers. Which one of these is preferred and why ?

(*c*) Draw the possible configurations of a single-phase voltage controller and compare them.

A single-phase voltage controller using two SCRs in antiparallel must have its trigger sources isolated from each other. Why ? Explain with a suitable diagram.

**9.2.** (*a*) Describe the principle of burst firing control for a single-phase ac voltage controller.

(*b*) A single-phase ac voltage controller uses burst firing control for heating a load of $R = 5\ \Omega$ with an input voltage of 230 V, 50 Hz. For a load power of 5 kW, determine (*i*) the duty cycle (*ii*) input power factor (*iii*) average and rms thyristor currents. Derive the expressions used.

[**Ans.** (*b*) 0.4726, 0.6875 lag, 9.785 A, 22.3575 A]

**9.3.** (*a*) For a single-phase voltage controller feeding a resistive load, draw the waveforms of source voltage, gating signals, output voltage, source and output currents and voltage across one SCR. Describe its working with reference to the waveforms drawn.

(*b*) Analyse the output voltage waveform into various harmonics with Fourier series and find expressions for the amplitude of *n*th harmonic $V_{nm}$ and its phase $\phi_n$.

**9.4.** (*a*) For single-phase voltage controller, connected to a resistive load, analyse the output voltage waveform into various harmonics using Fourier series and find expressions for the amplitude of fundamental voltage component $V_{1m}$ and its phase $\phi_1$.

(*b*) A 230-V, 1 kW electric heater is fed through a triac from 230 V, 50 Hz source. Find the load power for a firing angle delay of 70°. Derive the expression used for the voltage.

[**Ans.** (*b*) 713.414 watts]

**9.5.** (*a*) For a single-phase ac voltage controller feeding a resistive load, show that power factor is given by the expression :

$$\left[\frac{1}{\pi}\left\{(\pi-\alpha)+\frac{1}{2}\sin 2\alpha\right\}\right]^{1/2}$$

(*b*) A single-phase half-wave ac voltage controller, using one SCR in antiparallel with a diode, feeds 1 kW, 230 V heater. Find the load power for a firing-angle delay of (*i*) 0° (*ii*) 180° (*iii*) 70°.

[**Ans.** (*b*) 1000 W, 500 W, 856.707 W]

**9.6.** (*a*) Compare the merits of controlling the heater power by a triac using integral cycle control over the phase-angle control.

(*b*) A heater load is controlled through a triac from a single-phase source. Determine the firing angle delay when the power is at (*i*) 50%, (*ii*) 70% of its maximum power. Derive the expression used.

(*c*) A heater load is controlled by means of single-phase ac voltage controller. Determine the firing angle delay, when the controlled power is at (*i*) 50%, (*ii*) 70% of its maximum power. Derive the expression used.

[**Ans.** (*b*) 90°, 71.5° (*c*) 180°, 99°]

**9.7.** (*a*) Define the term 'power factor'. Derive its expression for a single-phase voltage controller feeding a resistive load circuit and show that

$$\text{Power factor} = [\text{per unit power}]^{1/2}$$

(*b*) For the circuit shown in Fig. 9.15, do the following :

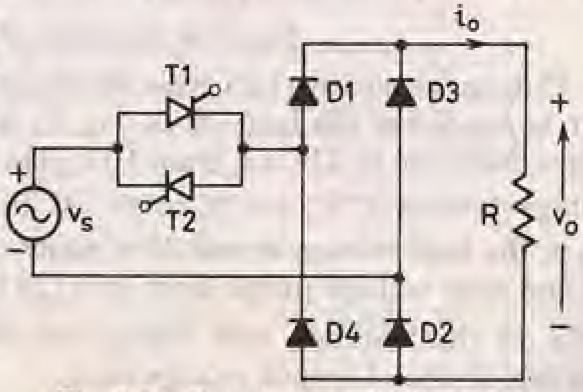


Fig. 9.15. Pertaining to Prob. 9.7 (*b*).

(*i*) Sketch the waveforms for two cycles of supply voltage, supply current, load voltage and load current for a firing angle of about 45° for the two thyristors.

(*ii*) For 230 V, 50 Hz as the supply voltage, find the power consumed by load in case $\alpha = 60°$ and $R = 10\ \Omega$. Derive the expression used for power.

(*iii*) In case diode D1 gets open circuited, draw the load current waveform and calculate the power delivered to load. **[Ans.** (*b*) (*ii*) 4255.8 W (*iii*) 2127.9 W]

**9.8.** A single-phase voltage controller with resistance load has the following data :

Supply mains : 230 V, 50 Hz, $R = 4\ \Omega$. Calculate :

(*a*) the firing angle $\alpha$ at which the greatest forward or reverse voltage is applied to either of the thyristors and the magnitude of these voltages ;

(*b*) the greatest forward or reverse voltage that appears across either of the thyristors for firing angles of 60° and 120° ;

(*c*) the rms value of fifth harmonic current and its phase for $\alpha = \pi/4$.

**[Ans.** (*a*) $\alpha = \frac{\pi}{2}$ or at $\alpha > \frac{\pi}{2}$, 325.27 V (*b*) 281.691 V, 325.27 V (*c*) 27.284 V, – 63.435°]

**9.9.** (*a*) A single-phase voltage controller, with two thyristors arranged in antiparallel, is connected to *RL* load. Discuss its working when firing angle is more than the load pf angle. Illustrate your answer with waveforms of source voltage, gate singals, load and source currents, output voltage and voltage across both the thyristors.

Hence derive an expression for the output current in terms of source voltage, load impedance, firing angle etc.

(*b*) A single-phase voltage controller has the following data :

Source voltage = 230 V at 50 Hz, Load = $0 + j\,4\ \Omega$. Calculate :

(*i*) the control range of firing angle,
(*ii*) the maximum value of rms load current,
(*iii*) the maximum value of average and rms thyristor currents,
(*iv*) the maximum value of $di/dt$ that may occur in the thyristors,
(*v*) the value of conduction angle for $\alpha = 90°$ assuming gate pulse width of $\pi$ radians.

**[Ans.** (*b*) $90° \le \alpha \le 180°$ ; 57.5 A ; 25.88 A, 40.66 A ; $2.5546 \times 10^4$ A/sec ; 180°]

**9.10.** (*a*) For a single-phase voltage controller, develop a relation between conduction angle $\gamma$ and firing angle $\alpha$ and plot their variation as a function of load phase angle $\phi$. Under what conditions conduction angle $\gamma$ becomes equal to $\pi$ ?

(*b*) Discuss the operation of a single-phase voltage controller with *RL* load when firing angle $\alpha$ is less than, or equal to, load phase angle $\phi$. Hence show that for $\alpha$ less than $\phi$, output voltage of the ac voltage controller cannot be regulated.

(*c*) For a single-phase voltage controller, discuss how pulse gating is suitable for *R* load and not for *RL* load. Hence show that high-frequency carrier gating is essential for *RL* loads.

**9.11.** (*a*) Describe the working of a two-stage sequence control of voltage controllers for both *R* and *RL* loads. What is the advantage of this controller over single-phase full-wave voltage controller?

(*b*) Distinguish between two-stage and multistage sequence control of voltage controllers. What are the advantages of multistage over two-stage sequence control ? Describe multistage sequence control of voltage controllers.

**9.12.** Describe a single-phase sinusoidal voltage controller with vernier winding. What are the functions of controlled and by-pass thyristors ? Discuss how output voltage waveform from 7 *v* to 8 *v* can be obtained from this voltage controller.

# TEN

# Cycloconverters

A device which converts input power at one frequency to output power at a different frequency with one-stage conversion is called a cycloconverter. A cycloconverter is thus a one-stage frequency changer. Basically, cycloconverters are of two types, namely :

(*i*) step-down cycloconverters and
(*ii*) step-up cycloconverters.

In step-down cycloconverters, the output frequency $f_0$ is lower than the supply frequency $f_s$, *i.e.* $f_0 < f_s$. In step-up cycloconverters, $f_0 > f_s$.

The operating principles of step-down cycloconverters were developed as far back as 1930. At that time, mercury-arc rectifier was used as a cycloconverter for converting three-phase 50 Hz supply to single-phase $16\frac{2}{3}$ Hz supply for use in ac traction system in Germany. A single-phase series motor, when operated at a lower frequency, gives better operating characteristics. In the United States, a cycloconverter comprising 18 thyratrons was employed to drive a 400-HP synchronous motor for several years in Logan power station [6]. The cycloconverter systems at that time did not find widespread use only because early systems were not technically attractive and economically viable.

With the advent of high-power thyristors, cycloconverters are again becoming popular. At present, the applications of cycloconverters include the following :

(*i*) Speed control of high-power ac drives
(*ii*) Induction heating
(*iii*) Static VAR generation
(*iv*) For converting variable-speed alternator voltage to constant frequency output voltage for use as power supply in aircraft or shipboards.

The general use of cycloconverter is to provide either a variable frequency power from a fixed input frequency power (as in ac motor speed control) or a fixed frequency power from a variable input frequency power (as in aircraft or shipboard power supplies).

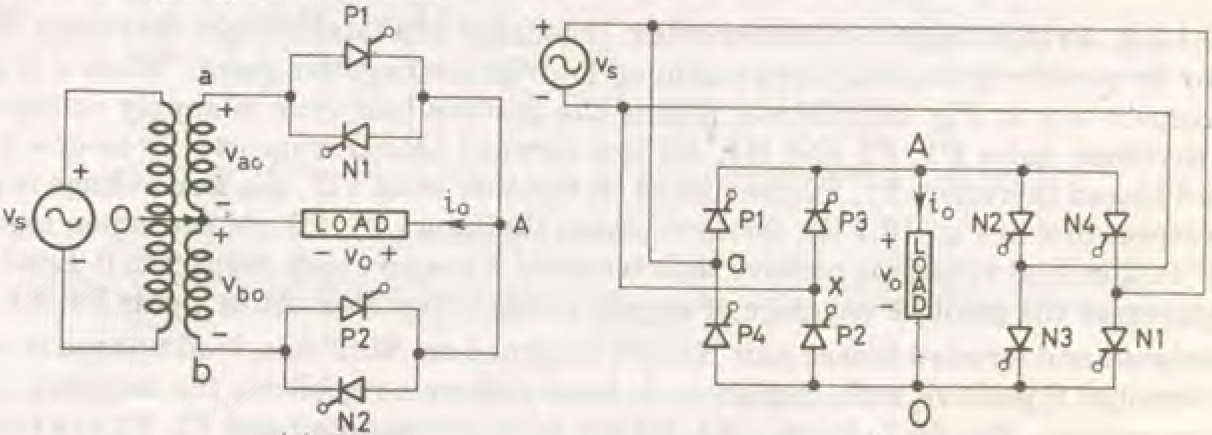
The object of this chapter is to present both single-phase and three-phase cycloconverters at an introductory level.

## 10.1. PRINCIPLE OF CYCLOCONVERTER OPERATION

In this section, basic principle of operation of step-up as well as step-down cycloconverter is presented. Single-phase to single-phase cycloconverter, though seldom used in practice, is considered here for describing the principle of operation of both the types of cycloconverters. A single-phase to single-phase device of the mid-point type is shown in Fig. 10.1 (*a*) and of the bridge type in Fig. 10.1 (*b*). With the help of this figure, the basic principles of both types of cycloconverters are described here.

### 10.1.1. Single-phase to Single-phase Circuit–Step-up Cycloconverter

For understanding the operating principle of step-up device, the load is assumed to be resistive for simplicity. It should be noted that a step-up cycloconverter requires forced commutation. The basic principle of step-up device is described here first for mid-point and then for bridge-type cycloconverters.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 10.1. Single-phase to single-phase cycloconverter circuit (*a*) mid-point type and (*b*) bridge type.

**10.1.1.1. Mid-point cycloconverter.** It consists of a single-phase transformer with mid-tap on the secondary winding and four thyristors. Two of these thyristors P1, P2 are for positive group and the other two N1, N2 are for the negative group. Load is connected between secondary winding mid-point 0 and terminal *A* as shown in Fig. 10.1 (*a*). Positive directions for output voltage $v_0$ and output current $i_0$ are marked in Fig. 10.1.

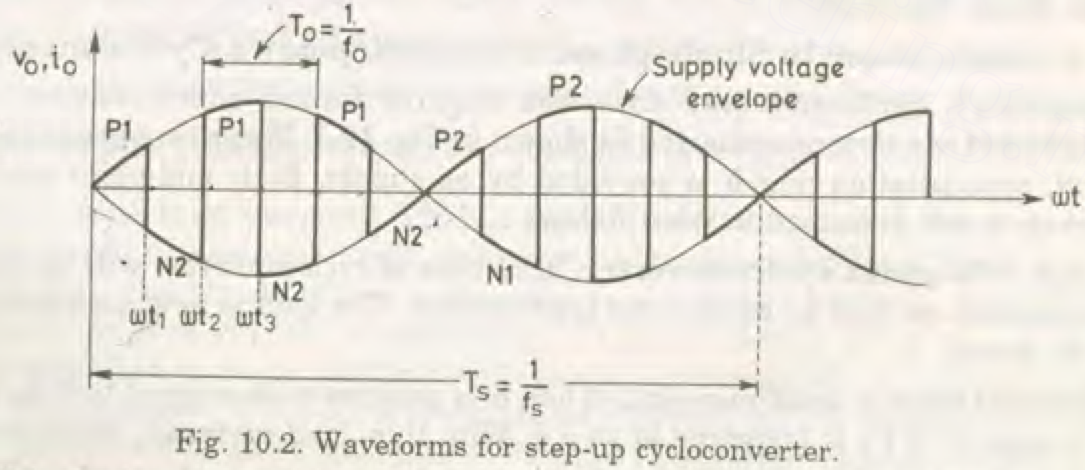


Fig. 10.2. Waveforms for step-up cycloconverter.

In Fig. 10.1, during the positive half cycle of supply voltage of Fig. 10.2, terminal *a* is positive with respect to terminal *b*. Therefore, in this positive half cycle, both SCRs P1 and N2 are forward biased from $\omega t = 0$ to $\omega t = \pi$. As such SCR P1 is turned on at $\omega t = 0°$ so that load voltage is positive with terminal *A* positive and 0 negative. The load voltage now follows the positive envelope of the supply voltage, Fig. 10.2. At instant $\omega t_1$, P1 is force commutated and forward-biased thyristor N2 is turned on so that load voltage is negative with terminal 0 positive and *A* negative. The load, or output, voltage now traces the negative envelope of the supply voltage, Fig. 10.2. At $\omega t_2$, N2 is force commutated and P1 is turned on, the load voltage is now positive and follows the positive envelope of supply voltage, Fig. 10.2. After

$\omega t = \pi$, terminal $b$ is positive with respect to terminal $a$ ; both SCRs P2 and N1 are therefore forward biased from $\omega t = \pi$ to $2\pi$. At $\omega t = \pi$, N2 is force commutated and forward biased SCR P2 is turned on. At $\omega t = \frac{1}{2_{fs}} + \frac{1}{2_{f0}}$, P2 is force commutated and forward biased SCR N1 is turned on. In this manner, thyristors P1, N2 for first half cycle ; P2, N1 in the second half cycle and so on are switched alternately between positive and negative envelopes at a high frequency. As a result, output voltage of frequency $f_0$, higher than the supply frequency $f_s$, is obtained. In Fig. 10.2, $f_s$ is the supply frequency and $f_0$ is the output frequency. Also $f_0 = 6 f_s$ in Fig. 10.2.

**10.1.1.2. Bridge-type cycloconverter.** It consists of a total of eight thyristors, P1 to P4 *i.e.* four for positive group and the remaining four for the negative group. When $a$ is positive with respect to $x$ in Fig. 10.1 ($b$), *i.e.* during the positive half cycle of supply voltage of Fig. 10.2, thyristor pairs P1, P2 and N1, N2 are forward biased from $\omega t = 0°$ to $\omega t = \pi$. When forward biased thyristors P1, P2 are turned on together at $\omega t = 0°$, the load voltage is positive with respect to $x$ in Fig. 10.1 ($b$), forward-biased thyristors P1, P2 are turned on together at $\omega t = 0°$ so that load voltage is positive with terminal $A$ positive with respect to 0. Load voltage now traverses the positive envelope of supply voltage, Fig. 10.2. At $\omega t_1$, pair P1, P2 is force commutated and forward biased pair N1, N2 is turned on. With this, load voltage is negative with terminal 0 positive with respect to $A$. Load voltage now follows the negative envelope of source voltage, Fig. 10.2. At $\omega t_2$ ; N1, N2 are force commutated and P1, P2 are turned on. The load voltage is now positive and follows the positive envelope of source voltage. After $\omega t = \pi$, thyristor pairs P3, P4 and N3, N4 are forward biased, these can therefore be turned on and force commutated from $\omega t = \pi$ to $\omega t = 2\pi$. In this manner, a high-frequency turning-on and force commutation of pairs P1, P2, N1 N2 and pairs P3 P4, N3 N4 gives a carrier-frequency modulated output voltage across load terminals.

In Fig. 10.2 conduction of thyristors P1, P2 and N1, N2 for mid-point cycloconverter of Fig. 10.1 ($a$) is only shown. It is fairly easy to indicate the conduction of thyristors P1 to P4 and N1 to N4 in Fig. 10.2.

### 10.1.2. Single-phase to Single-phase Circuit–Step-down Cycloconverter

A step-down cycloconverter does not require forced commutation. It requires phase-controlled converters connected as shown in Fig. 10.1. These converters need only line, or natural, commutation which is provided by ac supply. Both mid-point and bridge-type cycloconverters are described in what follows :

**10.1.2.1. Mid-point cycloconverter.** This type of cycloconverter will be described both for discontinuous as well as continuous load current. The load is now assumed to consist of $R$ and $L$ in series.

($a$) **Discontinuous load current.** When $a$ is positive with respect to 0 in Fig. 10.1 ($a$), forward biased SCR P1 is triggered at $\omega t = \alpha$. With this, load current $i_0$ starts building up in the positive direction from $A$ to $O$. Load current $i_0$ becomes zero at $\omega t = \beta > \pi$ but less than $(\pi + \alpha)$, Fig. 10.3 ($c$). Thyristor P1 is thus naturally commutated at $\omega t = \beta$ which is already reverse biased after $\pi$. After half a cycle, $b$ is positive with respect to 0. Now forward biased thyristor P2 is triggered at $\omega t = \pi + \alpha$. Load current is again positive from $A$ to $O$ and builds up from zero as shown in Fig. 10.3 ($c$). At $\omega t = \pi + \beta$, $i_0$ decays to zero and P2 is naturally commutated. At $2\pi + \alpha$, P1 is again turned on. Load current in Fig. 10.3 ($c$) is seen to be discontinuous. After four positive half cycles of load voltage and load current, thyristor N2 (after P2, N2 should be fired) is gated at $(4\pi + \alpha)$ when 0 is positive with respect to $b$. As N2

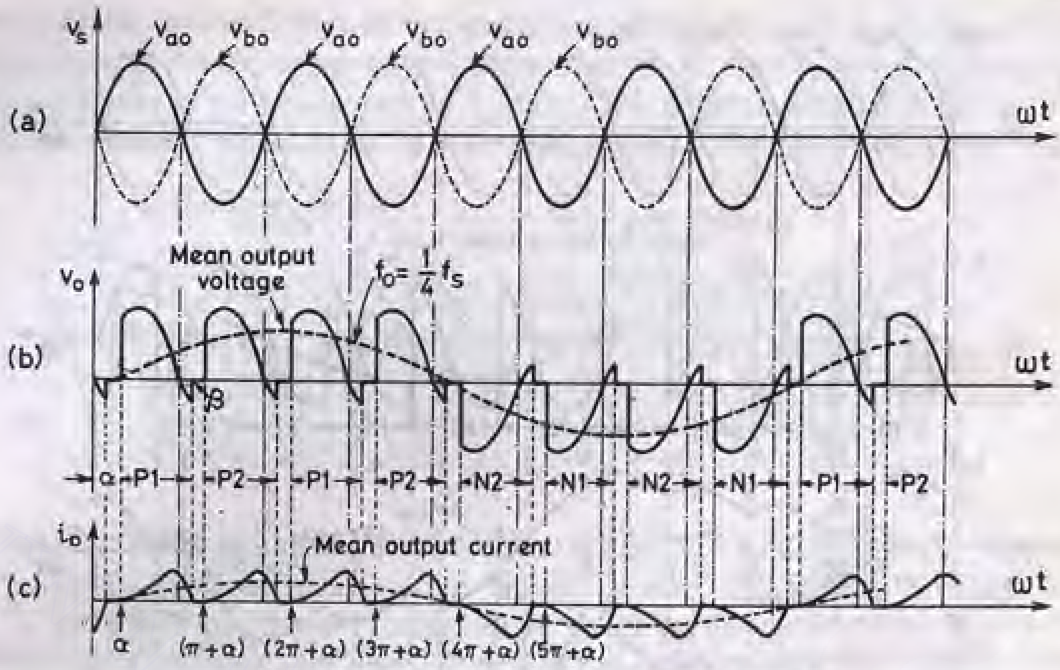


Fig. 10.3. Voltage and current waveforms for step-down cycloconverter with discontinuous load current.

is forward biased, it starts conducting but load current direction is reversed, *i.e.* it is now from 0 to *A*. After N2 is triggered, load current builds up in the negative direction as shown in Fig. 10.3 (*c*). In the next half-cycle, 0 is positive with respect to *a* but before N1 is fired, $i_0$ decays to zero and N2 is naturally commutated. Now when N1 is gated at $(5\pi + \alpha)$, $i_0$ again builds up but it decays to zero before thyristor N2 in sequence is again gated. In this manner, four negative half cycles of load voltage and load current, equal to the number of four positive half cycles, are generated. Now P1 is again triggered to fabricate further four positive half cycles of load voltage and so on. For discontinuous load current, natural commutation is achieved, *i.e.* P1 goes to blocking state before P2 is gated and so on.

In Fig. 10.3, mean output voltage and current waves are also shown. It is seen from this figure that frequency of output voltage and current is $f_0 = \frac{1}{4} f_s$.

(*b*) **Continuous load current.** When *a* is positive with respect to 0 in Fig. 10.1 (*a*), P1 is triggered at $\omega t = \alpha$, positive output voltage appears across load and load current starts building up, Fig. 10.4 (*c*). At $\omega t = \pi$, supply and load voltages are zero. After $\omega t = \pi$, P1 is reverse biased. As load current is continuous, P1 is not turned off at $\omega t = \pi$. When P2 is triggered in sequence at $\pi + \alpha$, a reverse voltage appears across P1, it is therefore turned off by natural commutation. When P1 is commutated load current has built up to a value equal to *RR*, Fig. 10.4 (*c*). With the turning on of P2 at $(\pi + \alpha)$, output voltage is again positive as it was with P1 on. As a consequence, load current builds up further than *RR* as shown in Fig. 10.4 (*c*). At $(2\pi + \alpha)$, when P1 is again turned on, P2 is naturally commutated and load current through P1 builds up beyond *RS* as shown. At the end of four positive half cycles of output voltage, load current is *RU*. When N2 is now triggered after P2, load is subjected to a negative voltage cycle and load current $i_0$ decreases from positive *RU* to negative *AB* (say) as shown in Fig. 10.4 (*c*). Now N2 is commutated and N1 is gated at $(5\pi + \alpha)$. Load current $i_0$ becomes more negative than *AB* at $(6\pi + \alpha)$, this is because with N1 on, load voltage is negative. For four negative half cycles of output voltage, current $i_0$ is shown in Fig. 10.4 (*c*). Load current

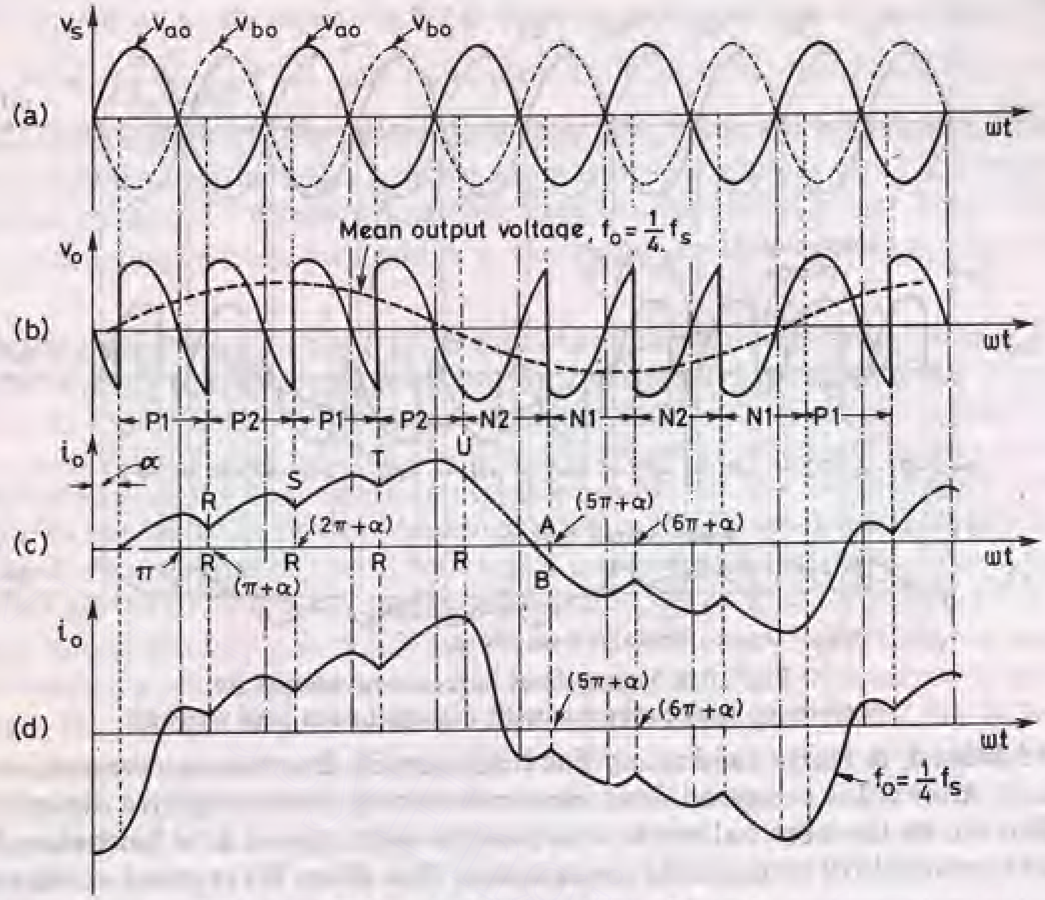


Fig. 10.4. Voltage and current waveforms for step-down cycloconverter with continuous load current.

waveform is redrawn in Fig. 10.4 (*d*) under steady state conditions. It is seen from load current waveform that $i_0$ is symmetrical about $\omega t$ axis in Fig. 10.4 (*d*). The positive group of voltage group and current wave consists of four pulses and same is true for negative group of wave. One positive group of pulses along with one negative group of identical pulses constitute one cycle for the load voltage and load current. The supply voltage has, however, gone through four cycles. The output frequency is, therefore, $f_0=\frac{1}{4}f_s$ in Fig. 10.4.

**10.1.2.2. Bridge-type cycloconverter.** The operation of bridge type cycloconverter shown in Fig. 10.1 (*b*) can be easily explained for both discontinuous and continuous load currents. The voltage and current waveforms would again be as shown in Fig. 10.3 for discontinuous load current and as in Fig. 10.4 for continuous load current. The explanation of bridge-type cycloconverter is left as an exercise to the reader.

## 10.2. THREE-PHASE HALF-WAVE CYCLOCONVERTER

The object of this section is to consider how single-phase low-frequency output voltage is fabricated from the segments of 3-phase input voltage waveform. Then three-phase to three-phase cycloconverters are described.

### 10.2.1. Three-phase to Single-phase Cycloconverters

For converting three-phase supply at one frequency to single-phase supply at a lower frequency, the basic principle is to vary progressively the firing angle of the three thyristors of a 3-phase half-wave circuit. In Fig. 10.5, firing angle at *A* to 90°, at *B* firing angle is somewhat less than 90°, at *C* the firing angle is still further reduced than it is at *B* and so on. In this manner, a small delay in firing angle is introduced at $C, D, E, F$ and $G$. At $G$, the firing angle is zero and the mean output voltage, given by $V_0 = V_{do} \cos \alpha$, is maximum at $G$. At $A$, the mean output voltage is zero as $\alpha = 90°$. After point $G$, a small delay in firing angle is further introduced progressively at points $H, I, J, K, L$ and $M$. At $M$, the firing angle is again 90° and the value of mean output voltage is zero. The gating circuitry is suitably designed to introduce progressive firing angle delay as discussed here. In Fig. 10.5, the single-phase output voltage, fabricated from 3-phase input voltage, is shown by thick curve. Mean output voltage wave is obtained by joining points pertaining to average voltage values. For example, at $A$, $\alpha = 90°$, $V_0 = 0$ ; at $G$, $\alpha = 0°$, therefore $V_0$ has maximum mean output voltage and so on. It is seen from Fig. 10.5 that fabricated output voltage given by thick curve can be resolved into fundamental frequency output voltage plus several other harmonic components. The load inductance can, however, filter out the high-frequency unwanted harmonics. Fig. 10.5 reveals that for one half-cycle of fundamental frequency output voltage (marked mean output voltage in this figure), there are eight half cycles of supply frequency voltage. This shows that output frequency $f_0 = \frac{1}{8} f_s$ where $f_s$ is the supply frequency.

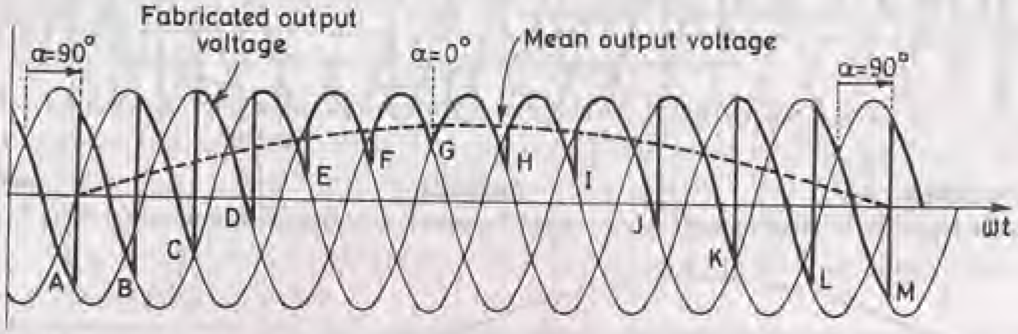


Fig. 10.5. Fabricated and mean output voltage waveforms for a single-phase cycloconverter.

It is obvious from Fig. 10.5 that for obtaining positive half cycle of low-frequency output voltage, firing angle is varied from 90° to zero degree and then to 90°. For obtaining one cycle (consisting of one positive half cycle and one negative half cycle) of low frequency output voltage, the firing angle should be varied from 90° to zero degree to 90° for positive half cycle and from 90° to 180° and back to 90° for negative half cycle. This is illustrated in Fig. 10.6.

It is thus seen from above that a complete cycle of low-frequency output voltage can be fabricated from the segments of 3-phase input voltage waveform by the use of phase-controlled converters. The cycloconverter can be made to deliver any pf load. In Fig. 10.6, the device is shown to deliver a lagging pf load. In a thyristor converter circuit, current can only flow in one direction. For allowing the flow of current in both the directions during one complete cycle of load current, two three-phase half-wave converters must be connected in antiparallel as shown in Fig. 10.7. The converter circuit that permits the flow of current during positive half cycle of low-frequency output current is called *positive converter group*. The other group permitting the flow of current during the negative half cycle of output current is called *negative converter group*. For a three-phase to single phase cycloconverter, schematic diagram is shown in Fig. 10.7 ($a$) and basic circuit configuration in Fig. 10.7 ($b$). This figure uses two 3-phase half wave converters in anti-parallel, the positive group for the conduction of positive load current and the negative group for the flow of negative load current.

Examination of Fig. 10.6 reveals that when output current is positive (above the reference line $\omega t$), positive converter conducts. Under this condition, positive converter acts as a rectifier when output voltage is positive and as an inverter when output voltage is negative. When

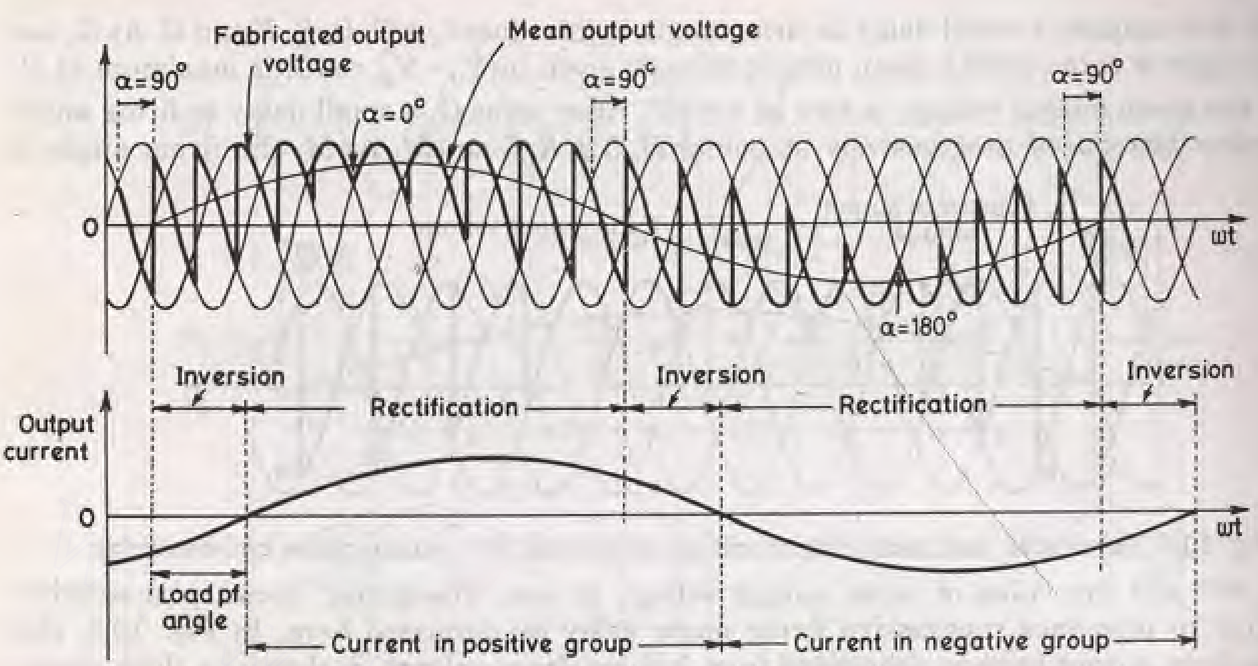


Fig. 10.6. Voltage and current waveforms for a 3-phase half-wave cycloconverter.

output current is negative, the negative converter conducts ; under this condition, negative converter acts as a rectifier when output voltage is negative and as an inverter when output voltage is positive. It can thus be inferred, in general, that one of two component converters in Fig. 10.7 would operate as rectifier if the output voltage and current have the same polarity and as an inverter if these are of opposite polarity.

Fig. 10.7 is almost similar to Fig. 6.39 for a dual converter where two phase-controlled converters are connected in antiparallel. As in a dual converter ; in Fig. 10.7 also, both the component converters belonging to one phase can be phase-controlled simultaneously to

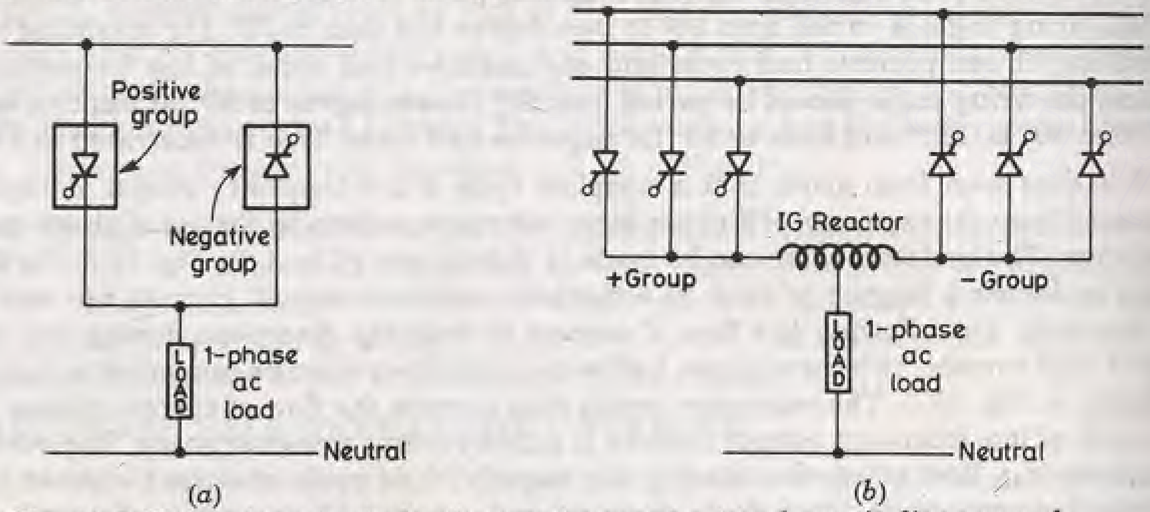
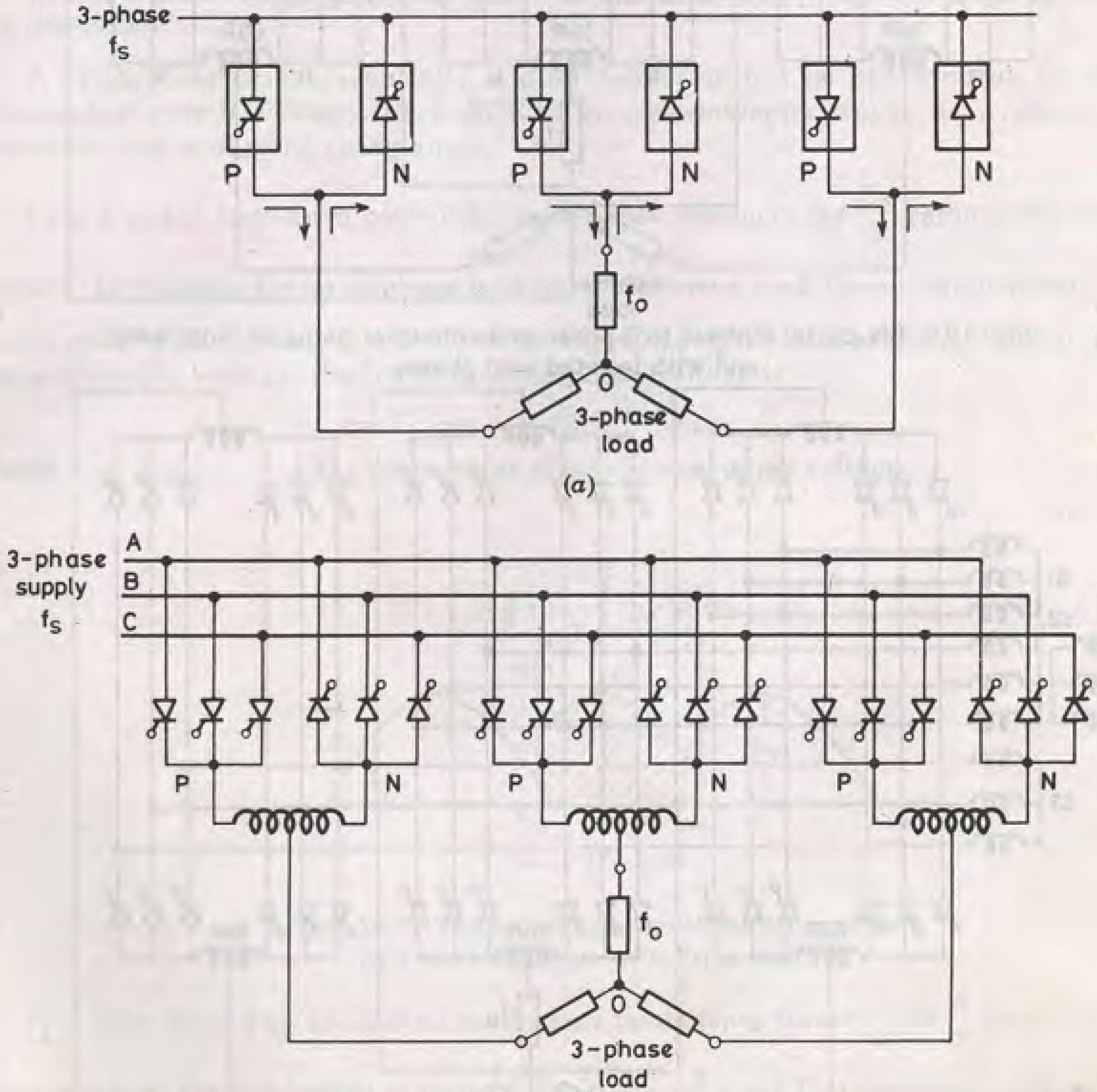


Fig. 10.7. Three-phase to single-phase cycloconverter (*a*) schematic diagram and (*b*) basic circuit configuration with *IG* reactor.

fabricate the output voltage. Though the output voltages of the two converters in the same phase have the same average value, their output voltage waveforms as a function of time are, however, different and as a result, there will be a net potential difference across the two converters of Fig. 10.7 (*a*). This net voltage would cause a circulating current in the two converters, this is similar to a dual converter. This circulating current can be avoided by removing the gating signals from idle converter or can be limited to a low value by inserting an intergroup reactor (IGR) between the positive and negative group converters as shown in Fig. 10.7 (*b*). In order that the average value of the two converters are equal in magnitude and opposite in sign, the sum of their firing angles must be 180°. In other words, if $\alpha_p$ and $\alpha_n$ are the firing angles for positive and negative group converters respectively, then these firing angles should be so controlled as to satisfy the relation $\alpha_p + \alpha_n = 180°$.

### 10.2.2. Three-phase to Three-phase Cycloconverters

When 3-phase low-frequency output is required, then three sets of phase-controlled 3-phase to single-phase circuits are inter connected as shown in Fig. 10.8 (*a*). Each phase of the 3-phase output must have a phase displacement of 120°. Fig. 10.8 (*b*) shows the circuit arrangement of 3-phase to 3-phase cycloconverter using three sets of three-phase half-wave circuits employing a total of 18 thyristors. The device of Fig. 10.8 is also called three-pulse 3-phase to 3-phase cycloconverter.



(*a*)

(*b*)

Fig. 10.8. 3-phase to 3-phase cycloconverter employing 3-phase half-wave circuits (*a*) schematic diagram and (*b*) basic circuit arrangement.

**Three-phase bridge circuit.** Out of the several configurations of 3-phase to 3-phase cycloconverters ; here only one important scheme, used for large industrial drives, is presented. This scheme, shown in Fig. 10.9, employs thirty-six thyristors and is called 6-pulse, 3-phase to 3-phase cycloconverter. In this circuit, each phase group consists of a 3-phase dual-converter with two IGRs. The load phases, shown in star in Fig. 10.9, must not be

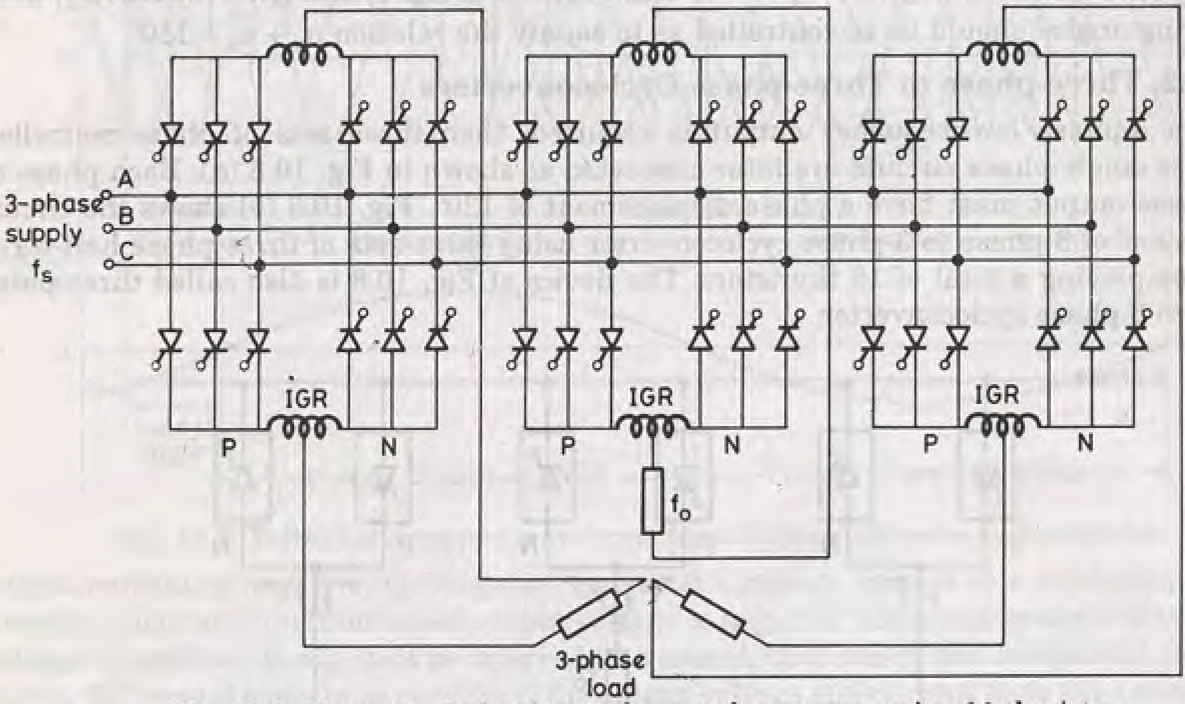


Fig. 10.9. Six-pulse, 3-phase to 3-phase cycloconverter using 36 thyristors and with isolated load phases.

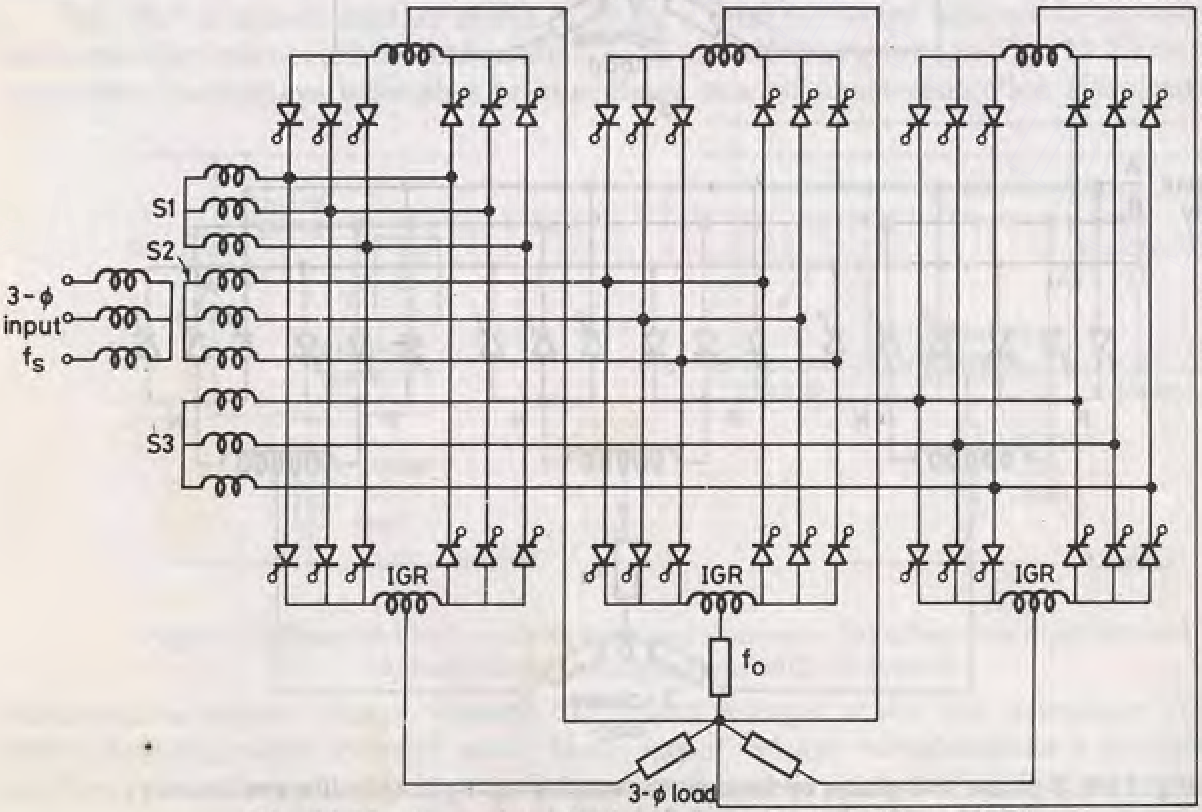


Fig. 10.10. Three-phase bridge cycloconverter using 36-thyristors and with non-isolated load phases.

interconnected. If it is done, then positive group of one output phase and negative group of other output phase would be joined together through IGRs without load impedance which is undesirable. In case it is essential to interconnect the load phases in star or delta, then each phase group is supplied separately from three secondary windings S1, S2 and S3 of a three-phase transformer as shown in Fig. 10.10. In this arrangement, as individual phase groups are isolated from each other on the input side, the interconnection of load phases in star or delta is permissible.

The magnitude of output voltage in a 3-phase bridge circuit of Fig. 10.9 is double of that in the 18-thyristor circuit of Fig. 10.8 (*b*). In case voltage and current ratings of all the SCRs in Figs. 10.8 (*b*) and 10.9 are identical, then total VA rating of bridge circuit would be double of that of the 18-thyristor circuit. Three-phase bridge circuit gives a smooth variation of output voltage, but its control circuit is complex and expensive.

## 10.3. OUTPUT VOLTAGE EQUATION FOR A CYCLOCONVERTER

In this section, emf expressions for the line-commutated phase-controlled cycloconverters are discussed.

A cycloconverter is essentially a dual converter but so operated as to produce an alternating output voltage. Each SCR in a cycloconverter works as a phase-controlled converter with a varying firing angle.

In a 3-phase half-wave converter, each phase conducts for $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ radians of a cycle of $2\pi$ radians. In general, for an $m$-phase half-wave converter, each phase conducts for $\frac{2\pi}{m}$ radians in one cycle of $2\pi$ radians, this is shown in Fig. 10.11. With time origin $AA'$ taken at the peak value of supply voltage, the instantaneous phase voltage is

$$v = V_m \cos \omega t = \sqrt{2}\, V_{ph} \cos \omega t$$

where $V_{ph}$ = rms value of per–phase supply voltage.

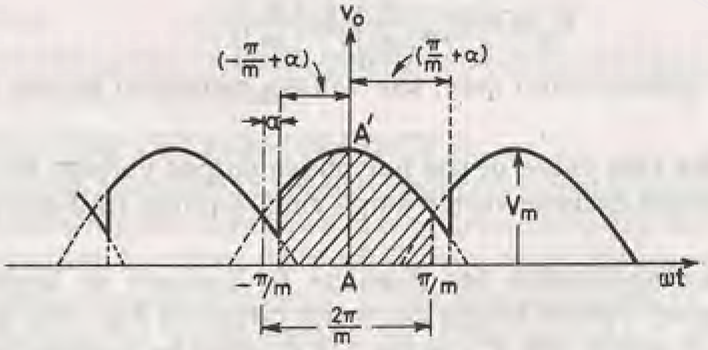


Fig. 10.11. Output voltage waveform for $m$-phase half-wave converter with firing angle α.

It is seen from Fig. 10.11 that conduction takes place from $-\frac{\pi}{m}$ to $\frac{\pi}{m}$ for $\alpha = 0°$. For any firing angle α, the conduction is from $\left(-\frac{\pi}{m}+\alpha\right)$ to $\left(\frac{\pi}{m}+\alpha\right)$. Thus average value of output dc voltage $V_d$, equal to the average height of shaded area in Fig. 10.11, is

$$V_d = \frac{m}{2\pi}\int_{\left(-\frac{\pi}{m}+\alpha\right)}^{\left(\frac{\pi}{m}+\alpha\right)} V_m \cos \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = V_m\left[\left(\frac{m}{\pi}\right)\sin\frac{\pi}{m}\right]\cos\alpha \qquad \text{...(10.1)}$$

For zero firing angle delay, the average value of direct voltage $V_{do}$ is given as

$$V_{do} = V_m\left(\frac{m}{\pi}\right)\sin\frac{\pi}{m} = \sqrt{2}\, V_{ph}\left(\frac{m}{\pi}\right)\sin\frac{\pi}{m}$$

In an actual cycloconverter, the firing angle is gradually varied. For any firing angle, the output phase voltage at any point of the low-frequency voltage wave is equal to $V_{do}\cos\alpha$ on the assumption of continuous conduction. Note that the relation $V_{do}\cos\alpha$ neglects the voltage fluctuations superimposed on the average low-frequency waveform.

If $V_{or}$ is the fundamental rms value of per phase output voltage of cycloconverter, the peak output voltage for zero firing angle is

$$\sqrt{2}\, V_{or} = V_{do} = \sqrt{2}\, V_{ph}\left(\frac{m}{\pi}\right)\sin\frac{\pi}{m}$$

or

$$V_{or} = V_{ph}\left(\frac{m}{\pi}\right)\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{m}\right) \qquad \text{...(10.2)}$$

In practice, the firing angle $\alpha_p$ of positive group cannot be reduced to zero, for this firing angle corresponds to $\alpha_n = 180 - \alpha_p = 180°$ for negative group. Actually, inverter firing angle can never be equal to 180° because of commutation overlap and thyristor turn off time. As a result, firing angle for positive group can never be zero but must have some finite value. Let this minimum value of firing angle for positive group be $\alpha_{mn}$ that is possible in a practical cycloconverter. For this firing angle, maximum output voltage per phase is

$$V_{d\cdot mx} = V_{do}\cos\alpha_{mn} = r\cdot V_{do} \qquad \text{...(10.3)}$$

where $r = \cos\alpha_{mn}$ and is called the *voltage reduction factor*.

Thus the expression for the fundamental rms phase value of the output voltage of a cycloconverter is given by

$$V_{or} = r\left[V_{ph}\left(\frac{m}{\pi}\right)\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{m}\right)\right] \qquad \text{...(10.4)}$$

As $\alpha_{mn}$ is always greater than zero, the voltage reduction factor, $r$, is always less than unity.

Eq. (10.4) gives the rms value of the per phase output voltage for a 3-phase to 3-phase or 3-phase to single phase cycloconverter employing $m$-phase half-wave circuits as shown in Fig. 10.7 or 10.8.

Eq. (10.4) is also applicable for 3-phase to 3-phase or 3-phase to single-phase cycloconverter employing 6-pulse bridge converter circuit of Fig. 10.9 or 10.10, but then $m$ is equal to the number of pulses and $V_{ph}$ in Eq. (10.4) must be replaced by line to line voltage.

**Example 10.1.** *A 3-phase to single-phase cycloconverter employs 3-pulse positive and negative group converters. Each converter is supplied from delta / star transformer with per phase turns ratio of 2 : 1. The supply voltage is 400 V, 50 Hz. The RL load has $R = 2\ \Omega$ and at low output frequency, $\omega_0 L = 1.5\ \Omega$. In order to account for commutation overlap and thyristor turn-off time, the firing angle in the inversion mode should not exceed 160°. Compute*

*(a) the value of the fundamental rms output voltage ,*

*(b) rms output current and*

*(c) output power.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Per phase input voltage to transformer = 400 V.

Per phase input voltage to converter,

$$V_{ph} = \frac{400}{2} = 200 \text{ V}$$

Voltage reduction factor, $r = \cos(180 - 160) = \cos 20°$

For 3-phase pulse device, $m = 3$. From Eq. (10.4), the rms value of fundamental voltage is

$$V_{or} = \cos 20 \left[ 200 \left( \frac{3}{\pi} \right) \cdot \sin \frac{\pi}{3} \right] = 155.424 \text{ V}$$

(*b*) Rms output current $= \frac{155.424}{\sqrt{2^2 + 1.5^2}} \underline{\big| -6\tan^{-1} \frac{1.5}{20}}$

$$I_{or} = 62.17 \ \underline{\big| -36.87°} \text{ Amps.}$$

(*c*) Output power $= I_{or}^2 \cdot R = (62.17)^2 \times 2 = 7730.22 \text{ W.}$

**Example 10.2.** *Repeat Example 10.1 in case 3-phase to 1-phase cycloconverter employs 6-pulse bridge converter.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Per phase input voltage to converter = 200 V

Line voltage input to bridge converter = $200\sqrt{3}$ V

Voltage reduction factor, $r = \cos 20°$

For 6-pulse device, $m = 6$. From Eq. (10.4), the rms value of output voltage is

$$V_{or} = \cos 20 \left[ 200\sqrt{3} \left( \frac{6}{\pi} \right) \sin \frac{\pi}{6} \right] = 310.84 \text{ V}$$

This example demonstrates that output voltage in a 6-pulse bridge converter employing 36 thyristors is double of that in a 3-pulse half-wave converter using 18 thyristors.

(*b*) Rms output current $= \frac{3.10.84}{\sqrt{2^2 + 1.5^2}} \underline{\big| -\tan^{-1} \frac{1.5}{2}}$

$$= 124.34 \ \underline{\big| -36.87°} \text{ Amps}$$

(*c*) Rms output power $= (124.34)^2 \times 2 = 30920.88 \text{ W.}$

This example shows that output power handled by a 6-pulse bridge converter is four times the power handled by a 3-pulse converter.

## 10.4. LOAD-COMMUTATED CYCLOCONVERTER

A step-up cycloconverter discussed previously requires forced-commutation. An additional circuitry for force-commutating the thyristors in a cycloconverter is, therefore, essential. The process of force commutation, however, does not depend upon the source or load voltage.

In the step-down cycloconverter discussed in the previous sections, the phase-controlled cycloconverter rely on natural commutation for their operation. The natural, or line, commutation is provided by the supply voltage. In these cycloconverters, the output frequency $f_0$ is less than the input supply frequency $f_s$.

A load-commutated cycloconverter differs from the force-commutated and line-commutated cycloconverters discussed so far. In load-commutated circuit, the thyristors are commutated by the reversal of the load voltage. This implies that the load circuit must have a generated emf that should be independent of the source voltage. The most usual example for such a load is wound-field or permanent-magnet synchronous machine. For such loads, the load frequency may be equal to, or greater than, the source frequency and for both these cases, thyristors will be naturally commutated by the reversal of the load circuit emf.

## PROBLEMS

**10.1** (*a*) What is a cycloconverter ? Enumerate some of its industrial applications.

(*b*) Describe the operating principle of single-phase to single-phase step-up cycloconverter with the help of mid-point and bridge type configurations. Illustrate your answer with appropriate circuit and waveforms. The conduction of various thyristors must also be indicated on the waveforms.

**10.2.** Describe the basic principle of working of single-phase to single-phase step-down cycloconverter for both continuous and discontinuous conductions for a bridge-type cycloconverter. Mark the conduction of various thyristors also.

**10.3.** A single-phase to single-phase mid-point cycloconverter is delivering power to a resistive load. The supply transformer has turns ratio of 1 : 1: 1. The frequency ratio is $f_0/f_s = 1/5$. The firing angle delay α for all the four SCRs are the same. Sketch the time variations of the following waveforms for $\alpha = 0°$ and $\alpha = 30°$ :

(*a*) Supply voltage (*b*) Output current and (*c*) Supply current.

Indicate the conduction of various thyristors also.

**10.4.** A single-phase to single-phase cycloconverter of Fig. 10.12 is used for obtaining an output frequency of $\frac{1}{3}$ of the input frequency. Turns ratio from primary to upper secondary is 1/1 and to lower secondary is 1/2. The thyristors are so triggered as to obtain a symmetrical output voltage waveform.

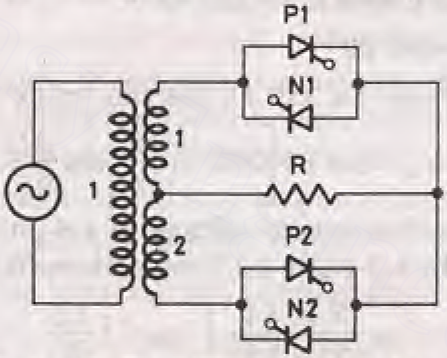


Fig. 10.12. Pertaining to Example 10.4.

Sketch the output voltage and output current waveforms for a resistive load for firing angle $\alpha = 0°$ and $\alpha = 30°$. Indicate the conduction of various components.

**10.5.** Describe how single-phase low-frequency output voltage can be fabricated from the segments of 3-phase input-voltage waveform through the use of a 3-phase half-wave circuit ? Show a complete cycle of low-frequency outputs voltage. In case load current lags the low-frequency output voltage, discuss the operation of positive and negative group phase-controlled converters.

**10.6.** (*a*) Discuss why 3-phase to 1-phase cycloconverter requires positive and negative group phase-controlled converters. Under what conditions, the groups work as inverters or rectifiers ? How should the firing angles of the two converters be controlled ?

(*b*) Describe 3-phase to 3-phase cycloconverter with relevant circuit arrangements using 18 SCRs and 36 SCRs.

What are the advantages of 3-phase bridge circuit cycloconverter over 18-thyristor device ?

**10.7.** (*a*) Show that the fundamental rms value of per-phase output voltage of low-frequency for an *m*-pulse cycloconverter is given by

$$V_{or} = V_{ph}\left(\frac{m}{\pi}\right)\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{m}\right)$$

Hence express $V_{or}$ in terms of voltage reduction factor.

(*b*) What is a load commutated cycloconverter ? How does it differ from force-commutated and line-commutated cycloconverters ?

**10.8.** A 3-phase to single-phase cycloconverter employs a 6-pulse bridge circuit. This device is fed from 400 V, 50 Hz supply through a delta/star transformer whose per-phase turns ratio is 3 : 1. For an output frequency of 2 Hz, the load reactance is $\omega_0 L = 3\ \Omega$. The load resistance is $4\ \Omega$. The commutation overlap and thyristor turn-off time limit the firing angle in the inversion mode to 165°. Compute

(*a*) peak value of rms output voltage (*b*) rms output current and (*c*) output power.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 301.215 V (*b*) 42.605 $\underline{/-36.87^\circ}$ A (*c*) 7260.74 W]

**10.9.** Repeat Problem 10.8 in case 3-phase to 1-phase cycloconverter employs 3-pulse positive and negative group converters. [**Ans.** (*a*) 150.602 V (*b*) 21.302 $\underline{/-36.87^\circ}$ A (*c*) 1815.1 W]

# ELEVEN

# Some Applications

Several applications of power electronics are listed in Art 1.2. Study of all these applications will be a voluminous task. Even then, some of these applications described in this chapter will be of interest to the reader.

## 11.1. SWITCHED MODE POWER SUPPLY (SMPS)

With advances in electronics, need for dc power supplies for use in integrated circuits (ICs) and digital circuits has increased manifold. For such electronic circuits, NASA was the first to develop a light-weight and compact switched mode power supply in the 1960s for use in its space vehicles. Subsequently, this power supply became popular and presently, annual production of SMPSs may be as high as 70 to 80% of the total number power supplies produced.

At this juncture, a question may arise that controlled dc supply can also be obtained from phase-controlled rectifiers. Then why go in for SMPS ? An ac to dc rectifier operates at supply frequency of 50 (or 60) Hz. In order to obtain almost negligible ripple in the dc output voltage, physical size of filter circuits required is quite large. This makes the dc power supply inefficient, bulky and weighty. On the other hand, SMPS works like a dc chopper. By operating the on/off switch very rapidly, ac ripple frequency rises which can be easily filtered by *L* and *C* filter circuits which are small in size and less weighty. It may therefore be inferred that it is the requirement of small physical size and weight that has led to the wide spread use of SMPSs.

As stated above, SMPS is based on the chopper principle The output dc voltage is controlled by varying the duty cycle of chopper by PWM or FM techniques. The circuit configurations used for SMPS can be classified into four broad categories; namely flyback, pushfull, half bridge and full-bridge.

In SMPS circuits discussed here, PWM technique is used for the inverter. The output of the inverter is then converted to dc by a diode rectifier. As the inverter is made to operate at very high frequency, the ripples on the dc output voltage can be filtered out easily by using small filter components. If the switching devices are power transistors, the chopping frequency is limited to 40 kHz. For power MOSFETs, the chopping frequency is of the order of 200 kHz; as a result, size of the filter circuit and transformer decreases leading to considerable savings. At such high frequency, ferrite core is used in transformers.

The four categories of SMPSs listed above are now discussed briefly.

### 11.1.1. Flyback Converter

The circuit configuration for flyback converter is shown in Fig. 11.1. It consists of a power MOSFET M1, transformer for isolation purposes, diode *D*, capacitor *C* and load. An uncontrolled rectifier converts ac to dc output which is fed to flyback SMPS as shown in Fig. 11.1.

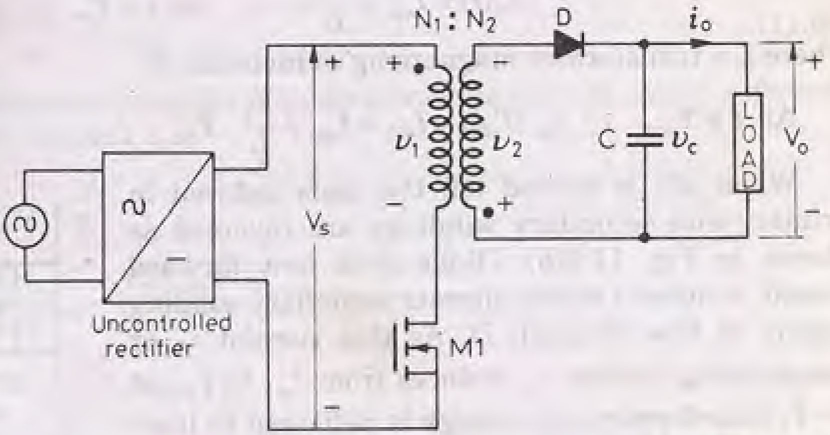
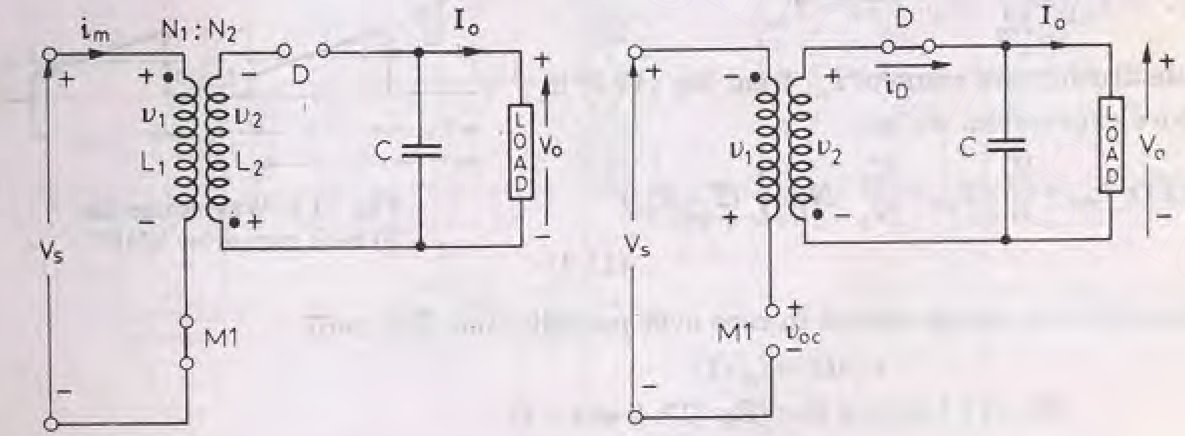


Fig. 11.1. Flyback SMPS.

When power MOSFET is turned on, supply voltage $V_s$ is applied to the transformer primary, *i.e.* $v_1 = V_s$. A corresponding voltage $v_2$, with the polarity as shown in Fig. 11.2(*a*), is induced in the transformer secondary, *i.e.* $v_2 = \frac{V_s}{N_1} N_2$. As $v_2$ reverse biases diode *D*, equivalent circuit of Fig. 11.2(*a*) is obtained. Filter capacitance *C* is assumed large enough so that capacitor voltage $v_c(t)$ = load or output voltage $V_0$ is taken as almost constant. When M1 is turned off, a voltage of opposite polarity is induced in primary and secondary windings as shown in Fig. 11.2(*b*). Voltage across transformer secondary is $v_2 = -V_0 = -\frac{V_s}{N_1} N_2$. Diode *D* is forward biased and starts conducting a current $i_D$. As a result, energy stored in the transformer core is delivered partly to load and partly to charge the capacitor *C*.



(*a*)

(*b*)

Fig. 11.2. Flyback SMPS equivalent circuit during (*a*) $T_{on}$ and (*b*) $T_{off}$.

Waveforms for $v_1$, $v_2$, transformer magnetizing current $i_m$ and diode current $i_D$ are shown in Fig. 11.3. During the time M1 is on, $v_1 = V_s$, $v_2 = \frac{V_s}{N_1} . N_2$. For magnetizing current, it is assumed that transformer core is not demagnetized completely at the end of periodic time $T = T_{on} + T_{off}$. In other words, it means that transformer magnetizing current at $t = 0$ is not zero but has some positive value $I_{mo}$. Therefore, during $T_{on}$, magnetizing current rises linearly from its initial value $I_{mo}$ to $I_{m1}$ at $t = T_{on}$. With the rise of $i_m$ during $T_{on}$, magnetic energy gets stored in the transformer core. The variation of $i_m$ as shown in Fig. 11.3 can be expressed as under :

$$i_m(t) = I_{mo} + \frac{V_s}{L}t \quad \ldots\ldots \quad 0 < t < T_{on} \qquad \ldots(11.1)$$

where $L$ = transformer magnetizng inductance, $H$

$$\text{At } t = T_{on}, \qquad i_m(T_{on}) = I_{m1} = I_{mo} + \frac{V_s}{L}\cdot T_{on} \qquad \ldots(11.2)$$

When M1 is turned off, the emfs induced in primary and secondary windings are reversed as shown in Fig. 11.2(*b*). Diode *D* is now forward biased. A current in transformer secondary winding begins to flow through *D*. As this current $i_D$ or magnetizing current $i_m$ reduces from $I_{m1}$ to $I_{mo}$ at $t = T$, transformer core energy is delivered to load. During $T_{off}$, M1 is off and $v_2 = -V_0$. This voltage when referred to primary is $v_1 = -\frac{V_0}{N_2}N_1$. The fall of current $i_m$ during $T_{off}$ can be expressed as under:

$$i_m(t) = I_{m1} - \frac{V_0}{N_2}N_1 \cdot \frac{1}{L}(t - T_{on}) \quad \ldots\ldots \quad T_{on} < t < T \qquad \ldots(11.3)$$

At $t = T$,

$$i_m(T) = I_{m1} - \frac{V_0}{N_2}\cdot N_1 \cdot \frac{1}{L}(T - T_{on})$$

Substituting the value of $I_{m1}$ from Eq. (11.2) in the above expression, we get

$$i_m(T) = I_{mo} + \frac{V_s}{L}\cdot T_{on} - \frac{V_0}{N_2}\cdot N_1 \cdot \frac{1}{L}(T - T_{on}) \qquad \ldots(11.4)$$

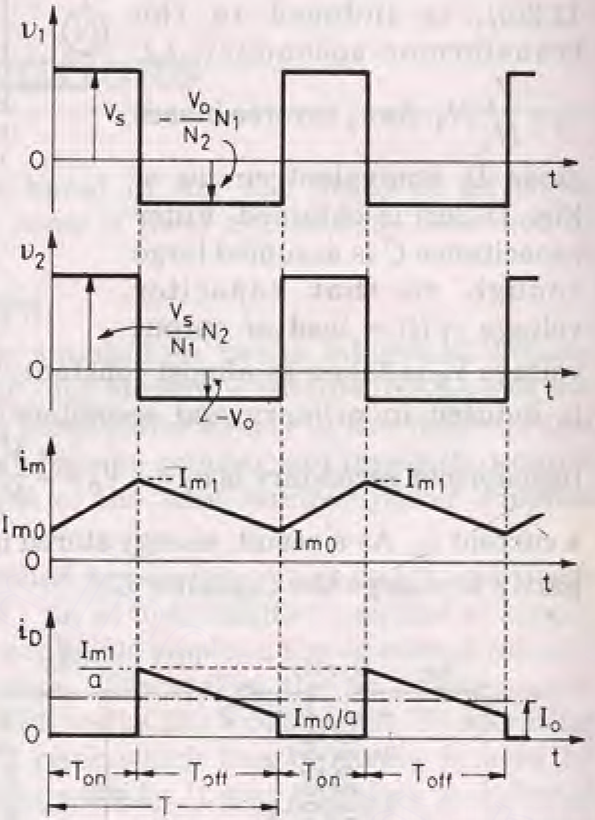


Fig. 11.3. Waveforms for flyback converter SMPS.

Since the net energy stored in core over periodic time $T$ is zero,

$$i_m(O) = i_m(T)$$

or [Eq. (11.1) at $t = 0$] = [Eq. (11.4) at $t = T$]

$$I_{mo} = I_{mo} + \frac{V_s}{L}\cdot T_{on} - \frac{V_0}{N_2}\cdot N_1 \cdot \frac{1}{L}(T - T_{on})$$

or

$$V_s \cdot T_{on} = \frac{V_0}{a}(T - T_{on})$$

$$\therefore \text{ Load voltage,} \qquad V_0 = \frac{a \cdot V_s \cdot T_{on}}{T - T_{on}} = \frac{a \cdot V_s \cdot k}{1 - k} \qquad \ldots(11.5)$$

where $a = \frac{N_2}{N_1}$, transformer turns ratio from secondary to primary

and $k = \frac{T_{on}}{T}$, duty cycle of flyback converter.

It is seen from Fig. 11.2 (*b*) that open circuit voltage across M1 is

$$V_{oc} = v_1 + V_s = \frac{V_0}{N_2} \cdot N_1 + V_s = \frac{V_0}{a} + V_s$$

From Eq. (11.5), $$V_{oc} = \frac{Vs \cdot k}{1-k} + V_s = \frac{V_s}{1-k} \quad ...(11.6)$$

Eq. (11.3) gives current on primary side of the transformer. This current, when referred to secondary side, is equal to diode current $i_D$.

$$\therefore \quad i_D(t) = i_m(t) \cdot \frac{N_1}{N_2}$$

$$= \frac{N_1}{N_2}\left[I_{m1} - \frac{V_0}{N_2} \cdot N_1 \cdot \frac{1}{L}(t - T_{on})\right]$$

$$= \frac{I_{m1}}{a} - \frac{V_0}{a^2 \cdot L}(t - T_{on}) \quad ...(11.7)$$

Flyback converter offers simple SMPS and is useful for applications below about 500 W.

### 11.1.2. Push-pull Converter

SMPS with push-pull configuration is shown in Fig. 11.4. It uses two power MOSFETs M1 and M2 and a transformer with mid-taps on both primary and secondary sides. As in flyback converter, an uncontrolled rectifier feeds push-pull SMPS. Inductor *L* and capacitor *C* are the filter components.

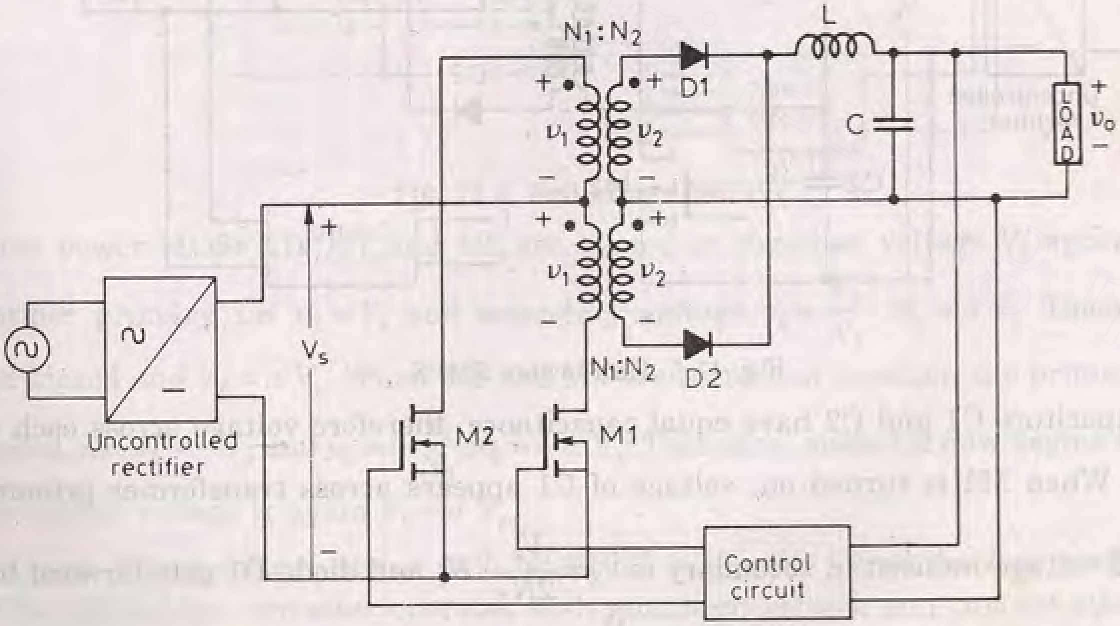


Fig. 11.4. Push-pull SMPS.

When M1 is turned on, $V_s$ is applied to lower half of transformer primary, *i.e.* $v_1 = V_s$. As a result, voltage $v_2 = \frac{V_s}{N_1} N_2$ is induced in both the secondary windings. Voltage $v_2$ in the upper half secondary forward biases diode D1, therefore load voltage $V_0$ is given by $V_0 = \frac{V_s}{N_1} N_2 = aV_s$.

When M2 is turned on, $v_1 = -V_s$ is applied to upper half of primary winding. Consequently, $v_2 = -\frac{V_s}{N_1} N_2$ is induced in both the transformer secondaries. As $v_2$ is negative, diode D2 gets forward biased and $V_0 = a\, V_s$ as before.

This shows that voltage on primary swings from $+V_s$ with M1 on to $-V_s$ with M2 on. Power MOSFETs M1 and M2 operate with duty cycle of 0.5. When M1 is off, the voltage across M1 terminals is $V_{oc} = 2V_s$. As both M1 and M2 are subjected to open-circuit voltage of $2V_s$, this configuration is suitable for low-voltage applications only.

### 11.1.3. Half-bridge Converter

The circuit for half-bridge SMPS configuration is shown in Fig. 11.5. It consists of an uncontrolled rectifier, two capacitors C1 and C2, two power MOSFETs M1 and M2, one transformer with mid-tap on the secondary side, two diodes D1 and D2 and filter components $L$ and $C$.

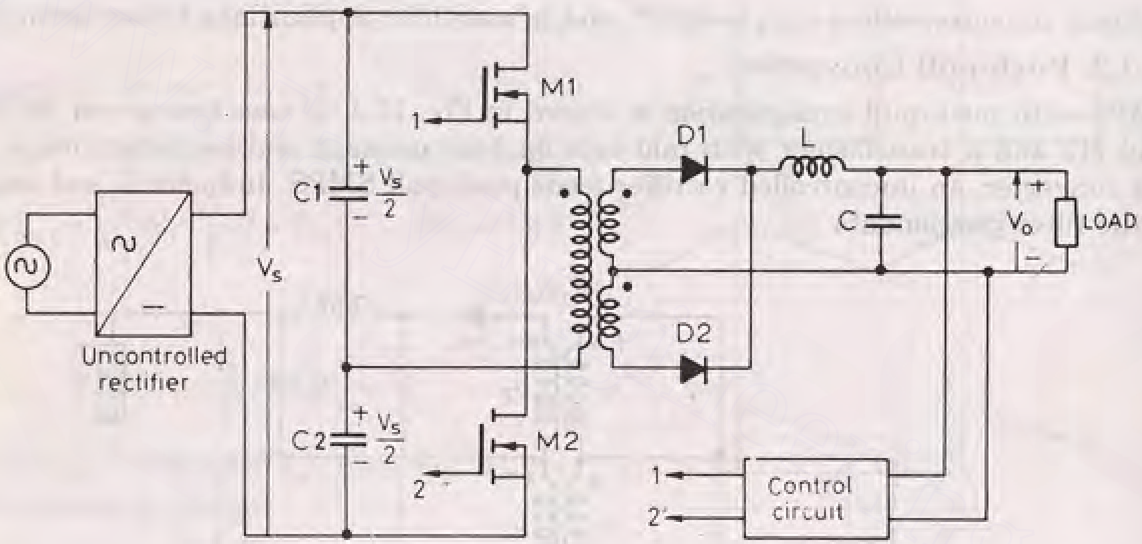


Fig. 11.5. Half-bridge SMPS.

Two capacitors C1 and C2 have equal capacitance, therefore voltage across each of the two is $\frac{V_s}{2}$. When M1 is turned on, voltage of C1 appears across transformer primary, *i.e.* $v_1 = \frac{V_s}{2}$ and voltage induced in secondary is $v_2 = \frac{V_s}{2N_1} \cdot N_2$ and diode D1 gets forward biased. When M2 is turned on, a reverse voltage of $\frac{V_s}{2}$ appears across transformer primary from C2, *i.e.* $v_1 = -\frac{V_s}{2}$ and voltage induced in secondary winding is $v_2 = -\frac{V_s}{2N_1} N_2$, therefore diode D2 gets forward biased. This means that transformer primary voltage swings from $-\frac{V_s}{2}$ to $+\frac{V_s}{2}$. Average output voltage, however, is

$$V_0 = \frac{V_s}{2N_1} \cdot N_2 = 0.5\, a\, V_s$$

When M1 is off, open circuit voltage across M1 terminals is $V_{oc} = V_s$. When M2 is off, as before $V_{oc} = V_s$. For *h.v. dc* applications, half-bridge converter is, therefore, preferred over push-pull converters. For *l.v. dc* applications, push-pull SMPS is preferred due to low MOSFET currents.

### 11.1.4. Full-bridge Converter

The circuit arrangement for a full-bridge SMPS is shown in Fig. 11.6. It consists of an uncontrolled rectifier, four power MOSFETs, transformer with mid- tap secondary, two diodes and *LC* filter circuit. As in all the previous circuits, the function of control circuit is to sense the output load voltage and to decide about the duty ratio of MOSFETs.

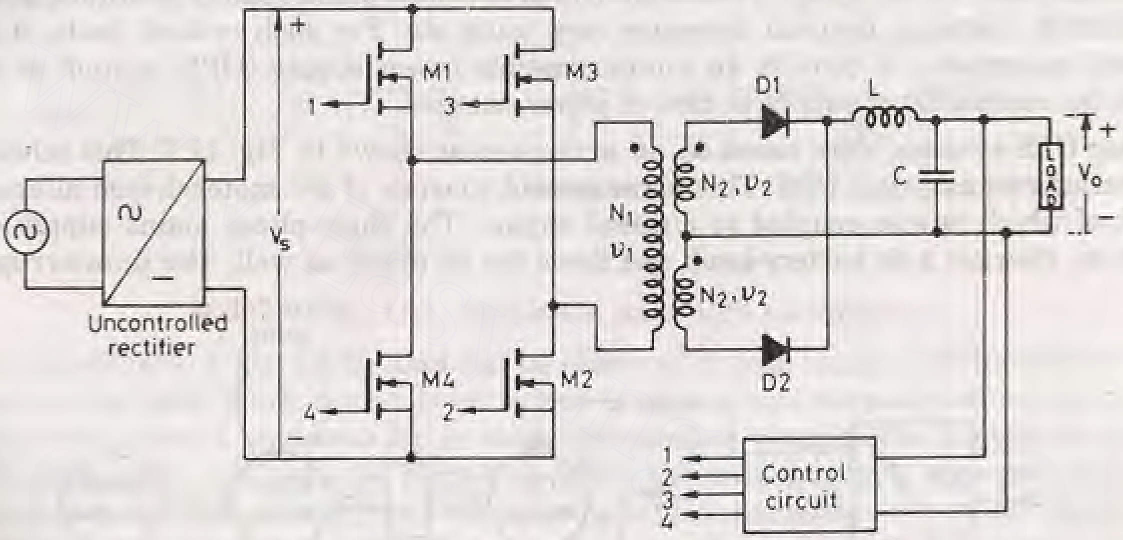


Fig. 11.6. Full bridge SMPS.

When power MOSFETs M1 and M2 are turned on together, voltage $V_s$ appears across transformer primary, *i.e.* $v_1 = V_s$ and secondary voltage $v_2 = \frac{V_s}{N_1} \cdot N_2 = a\, V_s$. Diode D1 gets forward biased and $V_0 = a\, V_s$. When M3 and M4 are turned on together, the primary voltage is reversed, *i.e.* $v_1 = -V_s$ and $v_2 = -\frac{V_s}{N_1} N_2 = -a\, V_s$. Therefore, diode D2 now begins to conduct and the output voltage is again $V_0 = a\, V_s$.

The open circuit voltage across each MOSFET is $V_{oc} = V_s$. Of all the four configurations of SMPSs, full-bridge converter operates with minimum voltage and current stress on the power MOSFET. It is therefore very popular for high power applications above 750 W.

The overall size of SMPSs is dependent on its operating frequency. Use of power transistors is limited to approximately 40 to 50 kHz. Above this operating frequency, power MOSFETs are used up to about 200 kHz.

The main advantages of SMPSs over conventional linear power supplies are as under :

(*i*) For the same power rating, SMPS is of smaller size, lighter in weight and possesses higher efficiency because of its high-frequency operation.

(*ii*) SMPS is less sensitive to input voltage variations.

The disadvantages of SMPS are as under :

(*i*) SMPS has higher output ripple and its regulation is worse

(*ii*) SMPS is a source of both electromagnetic and radio interference due to high frequency switching.

(*iii*) Control of radio frequency noise requires the use of filters on both input and output of SMPS.

The advantages possessed by SMPSs far outweigh their shortcomings. This is the reason for their wide-spread popularity and growth.

## 11.2. UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLIES

There are several applications where even a temporary power failure can cause a great deal of public inconvenience leading to large economic losses. Examples of such applications are major computer installations, process control in chemical plants, safety monitors, general communication systems, hospital intensive care units etc. For such critical loads, it is of paramount importance to provide an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) system so as to maintain the continuity of supply in case of power outages.

Earlier UPS systems were based on an arrangement shown in Fig. 11.7. This scheme is usually called rotating-type UPS. This arrangement consists of DC motor-driven alternator, the shaft of which is also coupled to a diesel engine. The three-phase mains supply, after rectification, charges a dc battery-bank and feeds the dc motor as well. The uninterruptible power supply needed is taken from the alternator output terminals. When mains supply fails, the diesel engine is run to take over the load. Starting of the diesel engine takes 10 to 15 seconds. During this period, the battery-bank is able to maintain the alternator speed through the dc motor and the flywheel, thus giving a no-break supply to the critical load. At present, however, static UPS systems are becoming popular up to a few kVA ratings.

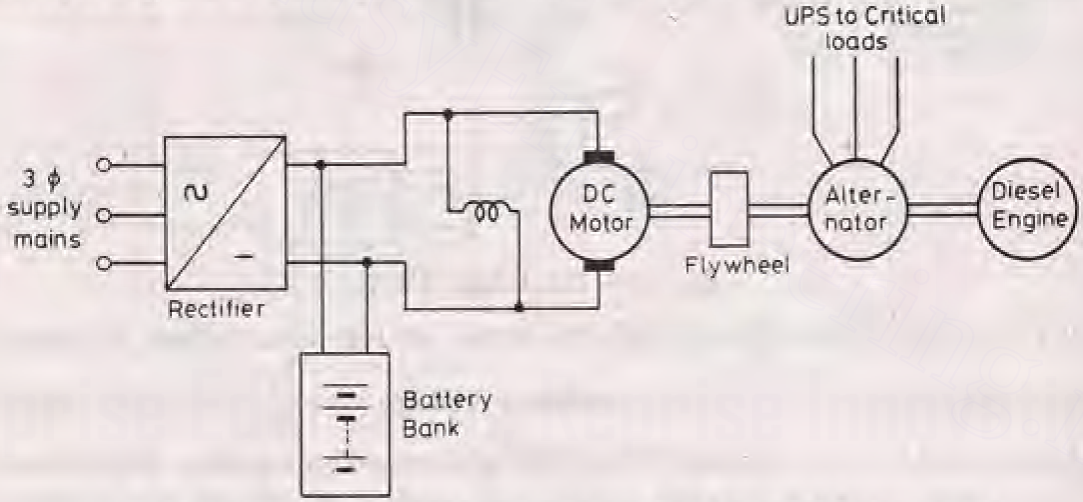


Fig. 11.7. Rotating-type UPS system based on dc motor/alternator set.

Static UPS systems are of two types ; namely short-break UPS and no-break UPS. In short-break UPS, the load gets disconnected from the power source for a short duration of the order of 4 to 5 ms. In no-break UPS, load gets continuous uninterrupted supply from the power source. These are now discussed briefly.

**Short-break UPS.** In situations where short interruption (4 to 5 ms) in supply can be tolerated, the short-break UPS shown in Fig. 11.8 is used. In this system, main ac supply is rectified to dc. This dc output from the rectifier charges the batteries and is also converted to ac by an inverter, Fig. 11.8. After passing through the filter, ac can be delivered to load in case normally-off contacts are closed. Under normal circumstances, normally-on contacts are closed and normally-off contacts are open and the main supply delivers ac power to the load. At the same time, the rectifier supplies continuous trickle charge to batteries to keep them fully charged. In the event of power outage, normally-off switch is turned-on and the batteries deliver ac power to critical load through the inverter and filter. A momentary interruption in the supply (4 to 5 ms) to the load can be observed in case lamps and fluorescent tubes are a part of the load. When normally-on switch is opened and normally-off switch is turned on, lamps will have a transient dip in their illumination whereas the fluorescent tubes will be off momentarily and then get turned on. When the main ac supply appears, critical load gets connected, through normally-on switch, to the supply mains. Again, a momentary interruption in the illumination is noticed. The arrangement shown in Fig. 11.8 is also referred to as *stand-by power supply.*

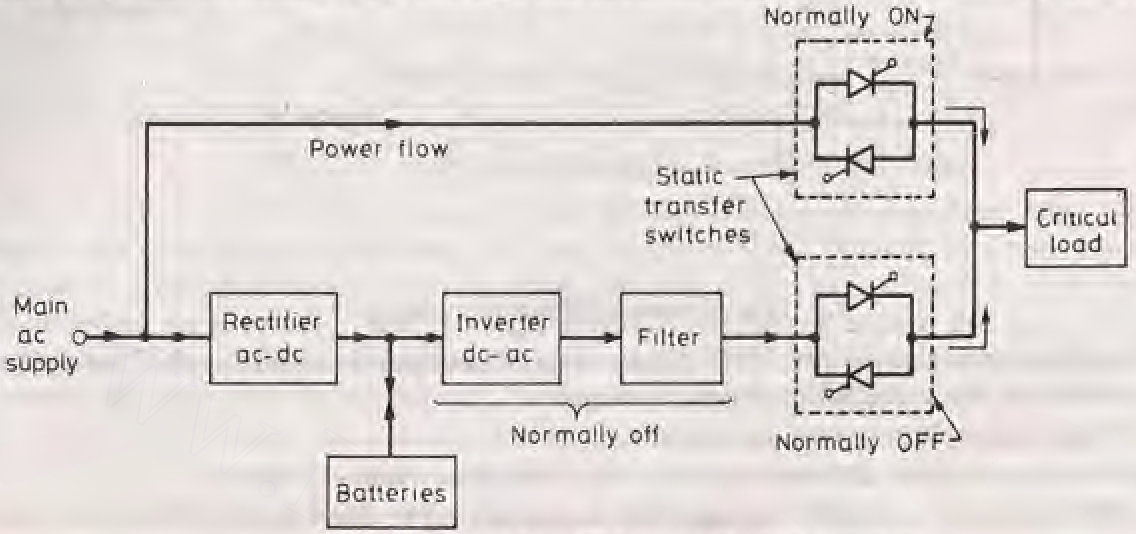


Fig. 11.8. Short-break static UPS configuration.

**No-break UPS.** When a no-break supply is required, the static UPS system shown in Fig. 11.9 is used. In this system, main ac supply is rectified and the rectifier delivers power to maintain required charge on the batteries. Rectifier also supplies power to inverter continuously which is then given to ac-type load through filter and normally-on switch. In case of main-supply failure, batteries at once take over with no-break of supply to the critical load. No dip or discontinuity in the illumination is observed in case of no-break UPS. This configuration of Fig. 11.9 has the following additional advantages :

(*i*) The inverter can be used to condition the supply delivered to load.
(*ii*) Load gets protected from transients in the main ac supply.
(*iii*) Inverter output frequency can be maintained at the desired value.

In case inverter failure is detected, the load is switched on to the main ac supply directly by turning on the normally-off static switch and opening the normally-on static switch. The transfer of load from inverter to main ac supply takes 4 to 5 ms by static transfer switch as compared to 40 to 50 ms for a mechanical contactor. After inverter fault is cleared, uninterruptible power supply is again restored to the load through the normally on switch. The batteries are now recharged from the main supply by adjusting the charger at maximum charge rate so that batteries are charged to their full capacity in the shortest possible time.

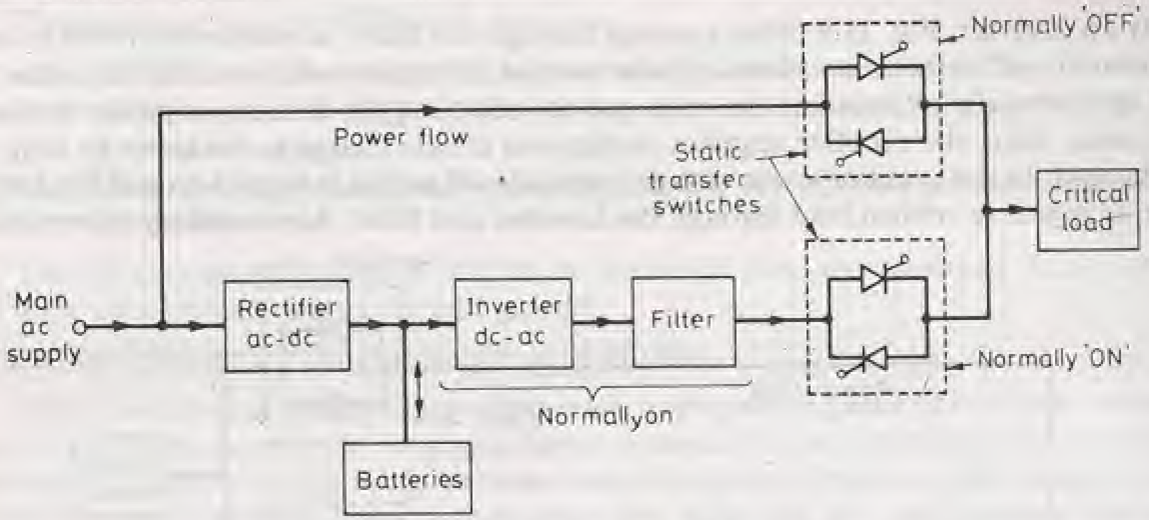


Fig. 11.9. No-break UPS configuration.

The standby batteries in the UPS system are either nickel-cadmium (NC) or lead-acid type. NC batteries have the following advantages :

(*a*) Their electrolyte is non-corrosive.

(*b*) Their electrolyte does not emit an explosive gas when charging.

(*c*) NC batteries cannot be damaged by overcharging or discharging, these have therefore longer life.

Cost of NC batteries is, however, two or three times that of lead-acid batteries.

The time period for which a battery or a battery-bank can deliver power to load through inverter at the required voltage level depends upon (*i*) the size of the batteries and (*ii*) nature of the load.

## 11.3. HIGH VOLTAGE DC TRANSMISSION

It is well known that electric power generated in power plants in transmitted to the load centre on three-phase ac transmission lines. However, for bulk power transmission over long distances, high voltage dc (HVDC) transmission lines are preferred. HVDC transmission possesses the following advantages over AC transmission system :

(*i*) In HVDC transmission system, one or two conductors and smaller towers are required as against three conductors and tall towers in AC transmission system. HVDC transmission, therefore, costs less.

(*ii*) Fault clearance in HVDC is faster, therefore DC transmission system possesses improved transient stability.

(*iii*) Size of conductors in DC transmission can be reduced as there is no skin effect.

(*iv*) Two AC systems at different frequencies can be interconnected through HVDC transmission lines.

(*v*) For power transmission through cables, HVDC is preferred as it requires no charging current and the reactive power.

The additional cost of converting the inverting equipments makes HVDC transmission uneconomical for low-power supply over short distances. However, for large-power transmission over long distances, HVDC turns out to be economical. As a result, HVDC links are being used worldwide at power levels of several gigawatts with the use of thyristor valve*.

---

* The term "thyristor valve", used on HVDC systems, denotes a number of thyristors connected in series and parallel to get the required voltage and current ratings.

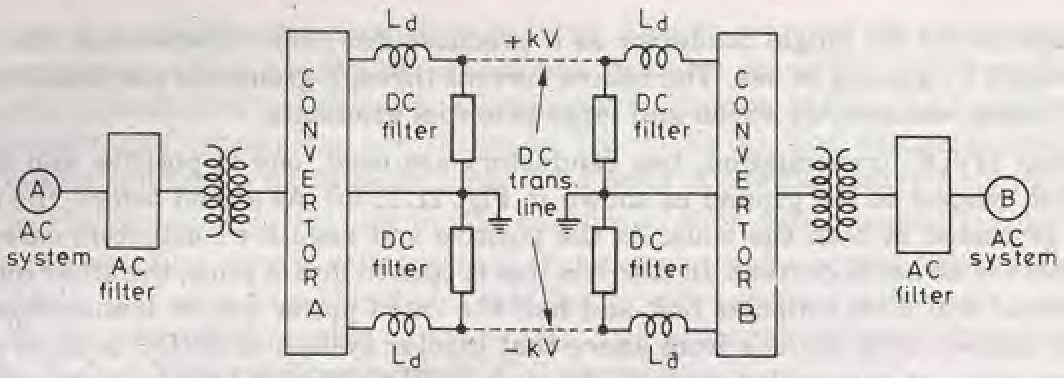


Fig. 11.10. Basic layout for HVDC transmission system.

Fig. 11.10 shows the basic layout of an HVDC transmission system. Two AC systems *A* and *B* are interconnected by the DC line. If power flows from *A* to *B*, converter *A* then operates as a rectifier and *B* as an inverter. Reverse power flow from *B* to *A* is also possible with *B* acting as a rectifier and *A* as an inverter. AC filters reduce the current harmonics generated by the converters from entering into ac systems. DC filters and smoothing inductors $L_d$ reduce the ripple in the dc voltage. Both converters *A* and *B* have 12-pulse configuration. The centre-point of converters *A* and *B* is earthed with one line, or pole, at +kV and the other line, or pole, at –kV with respect to earth for a ± kV system. With both the ends earthed, the power flow can be maintained with +kV line and the ground or with –kV line and the ground.

### 11.3.1. Types of HVDC Link

There are two basic types of HVDC transmission systems. These are *monopolar link* and *bipolar link*.

Monopolar or unipolar link shown in Fig. 11.11 (*a*) offers the simplest arrangement. It uses a single conductor which has either positive, or negative, polarity. It is preferred to have

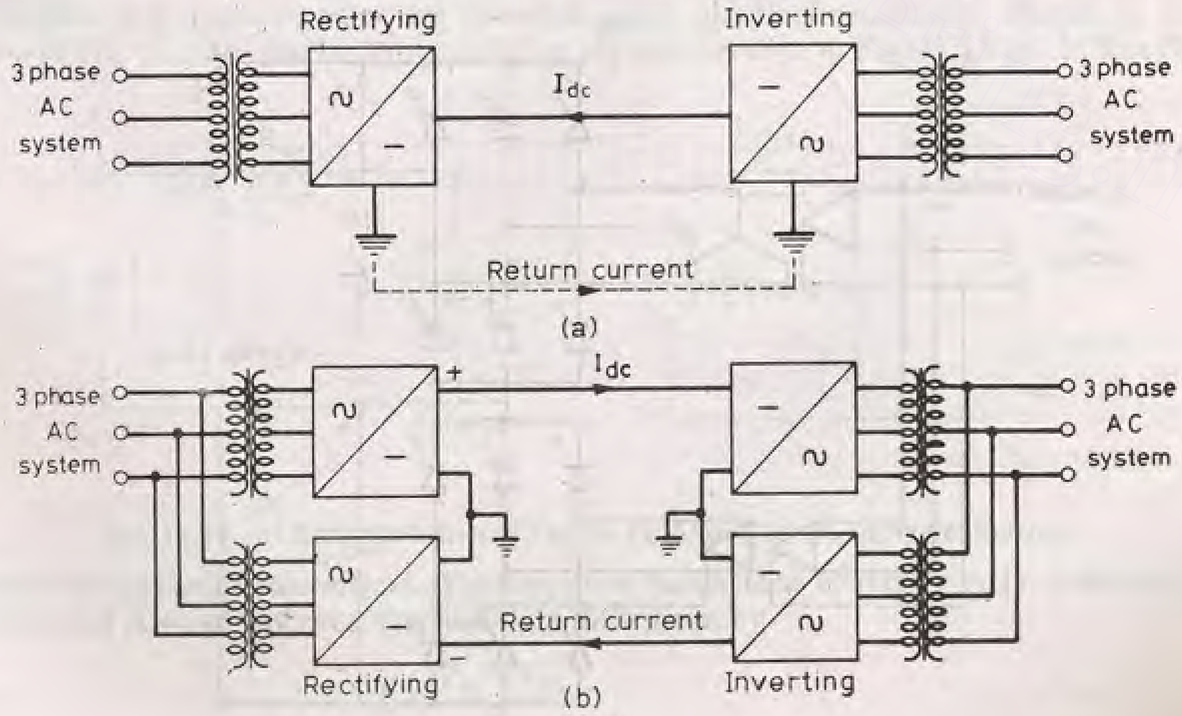


Fig. 11.11. Types of HVDC link (*a*) monopolar link and (*b*) bipolar link.

negative polarity for the single conductor as it produces less radio interference. The return path is provided by ground or sea. The return current through ground or sea leads to higher conduction losses, electrolytic action and large potential gradients.

In bipolar HVDC transmission, two conductors are used, one is positive and other is negative with respect to the ground as shown in Fig. 11.11 (*b*). As stated before, the neutral points are grounded at both the ends. As the positive and negative conductors carry equal currents, there is no earth current. In case one line is opened due to fault, the other conductor and the ground will form unipolar link and half the rated power can be transmitted untill the fault is cleared. It is obvious from above that bipolar system of HVDC is more reliable than the unipolar or monopolar system. As such, HVDC bipolar link is more commonly employed. A typical bipolar HVDC arrangement is described in what follows.

### 11.3.2. Bipolar HVDC System

Three-phase 6-pulse phase-controlled converters were discussed in Chapter 6. Current harmonics generated on the ac side and the voltage ripple produced on the dc side of the

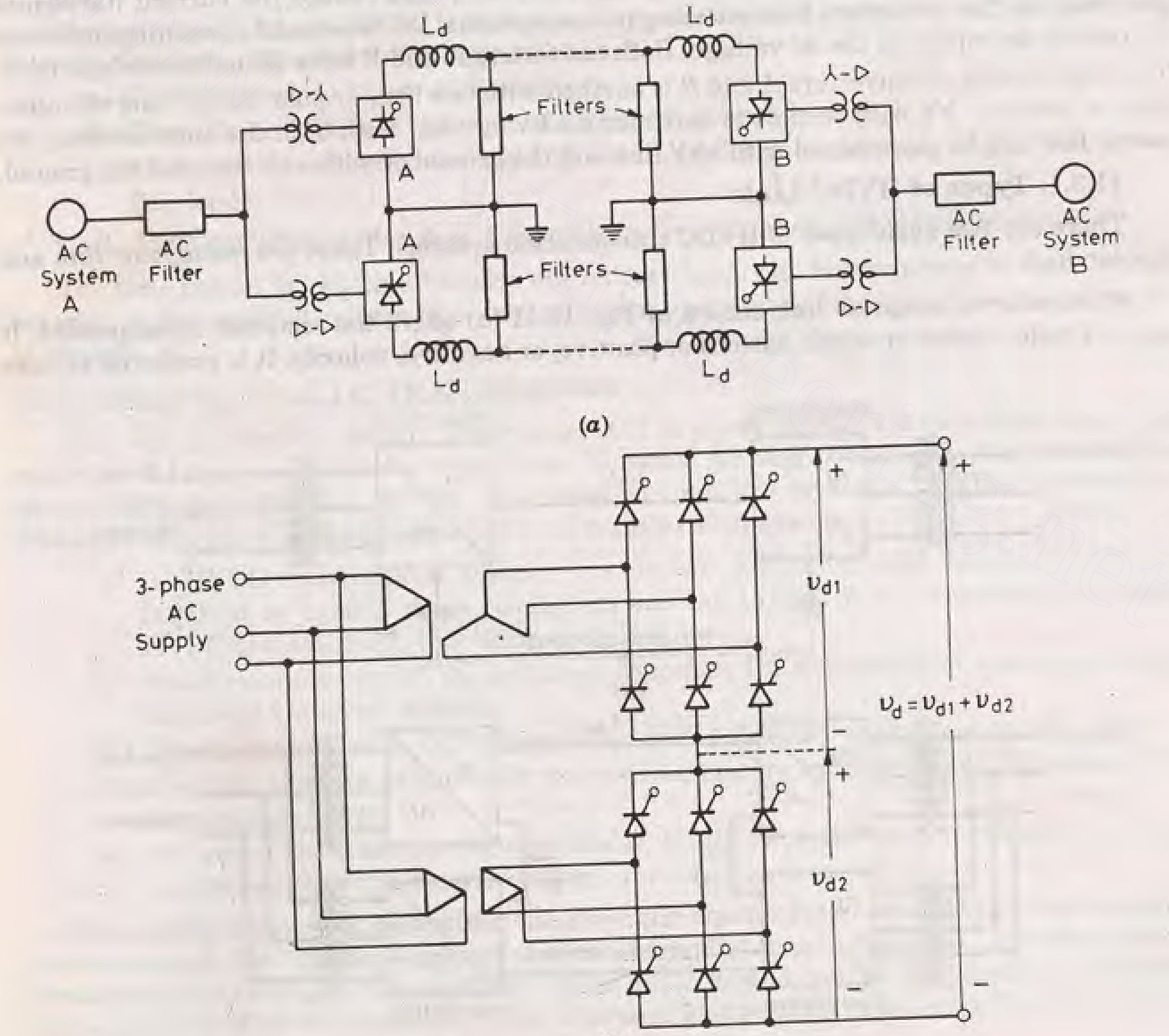


Fig. 11.12. (*a*) Schematic diagram for bipolar HVDC system
(*b*) Twelve-pulse converter obtained by connecting two six-pulse converters.

converter used in HVDC system must be reduced. This is achieved by using twelve-pulse converter operation which require the use of two six-pulse converters fed from delta-delta and delta-star transformers as shown in the schematic diagram of Fig. 11.12 (*a*). The details of the two converter connections are shown in Fig. 11.12 (*b*). The delta-star bridge gives six-pulse output voltage $v_{d1}$ whereas the other delta-delta bridge also delivers six-pulse output voltage $v_{d2}$. The two secondaries, one in star and the other in delta, cause a displacement of 30° in the two six-pulse output voltages such that a twelve-pulse output voltage is obtained from Fig. 11.12. It is seen from this figure that the two six-pulse converters are connected in series on the dc side and in parallel on the ac side. The series connection on the dc side helps to meet the high-voltage requirement in HVDC systems.

When the power flow is from system $A$ to system $B$, converters $A$ operate as rectifiers. The average value of converters $A$ is as under :

Average value of $v_{d1}$ = average value of $v_{d2}$

or
$$V_{d1} = V_{d2} = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha - \frac{\omega L_s}{\pi} I_d$$

where $V_{ml}$ = maximum value of line to line input voltage to each of the two six–pulse converters

$L_s$ = transformer leakage inductance per phase referred to the converter side

$I_d$ = dc current

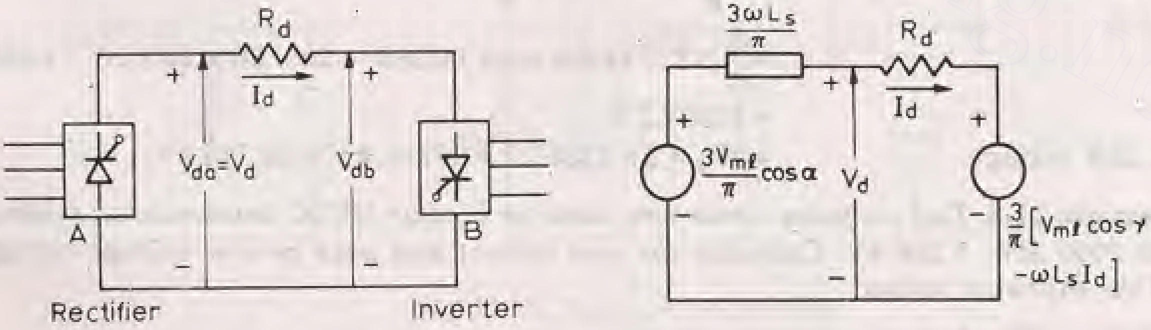
$\alpha$ = firing angle delay.

The average voltage available across both the series-connected converters, *i.e.* *dc* link voltage is given by

$$V_d = 2V_{d1} = 2V_{d2} = \frac{6V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha - \frac{6\omega L_s}{\pi} I_d = \frac{6}{\pi}[V_{ml}\cos\alpha - \omega L_s I_d] \qquad ...(11.8)$$

### 11.3.3. Control of HVDC Converters

Positive and negative poles are operated under identical conditions. Therefore, HVDC system of Fig. 11.12(*a*) can be represented on per pole basis as in Fig. 11.13 (*a*). In this figure, $A$ and $B$ are six-pulse converters. Further, it is taken that converter $A$ is operating as a rectifier and $B$ as an inverter. Current $I_d$ is then given by



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 11.13. (*a*) Representation of Fig. 11.12 (*a*) and (*b*) its equivalent circuit.

$$I_d = \frac{V_{da} - V_{db}}{R_d}$$

where $R_d$ = resistance of one transmission line conductor.

In practice, one converter is made to control the transmission line voltage and the other to control the current $I_d$. The inverter is usually made to operate at a constant margin angle $\gamma = \pi - \alpha - \mu$ from commutation considerations. It, therefore, follows that inverter is assigned the job of controlling $V_d$. The current $I_d$ and therefore power level is controlled by the rectifier.

At constant extinction angle γ, the inverter dc voltage is given by

$$V_{db} = \left[\frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\gamma - \frac{3\omega L_s}{\pi} I_d\right] = \frac{3}{\pi}\left[V_{ml}\cos\gamma - \omega L_s I_d\right]$$

and the rectifier output voltage $V_d$ is

$$V_d = V_{da} = V_{db} + I_d R_d = \frac{3}{\pi}\,[V_{ml}\cos\gamma - \omega L_s I_d] + I_d R_d \qquad \text{...(11.9}a)$$

Also,

$$V_d = \frac{3}{\pi}\,[V_{ml}\cos\alpha - \omega L_s I_d] \qquad \text{...(11.9}b)$$

Eq. (11.9) leads to the equivalent circuit of HVDC system as shown in Fig. 11.13(*b*).

**Example 11.1.** *Two six-pulse converters are used in bipolar HVDC transmission system. The ac systems are 3-phase, 11000V, 50Hz. The input transformers have a leakage inductance of 10 mH per phase. The current in dc line is 300A. The inverter marginal angle is 20°. Resistance of each dc transmission line is 1 Ω. Calculate firing angle of the rectifier, its output voltage and dc link voltage.*

**Solution.** It is seen from the equivalent circuit of Fig. 11.13 (*b*) that

$$\frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha - \frac{3\omega L_s \cdot I_d}{\pi} = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\gamma - \frac{3\omega L_s \cdot I_d}{\pi} + I_d \cdot R_d$$

or

$$\cos\alpha = \cos\gamma + \frac{\pi}{3V_{ml}} \cdot I_d \cdot R_d$$

$$= \cos 20° + \frac{\pi}{3\sqrt{2} \times 11000} \times 300 \times 1$$

or

$$\alpha = 16.283°$$

Rectifier output voltage,

$$V_d = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha - \frac{3\omega L_s \cdot I_d}{\pi}$$

$$= \frac{3}{\pi}\,[\sqrt{2} \times 11000 \times \cos 16.283° - 2\pi \times 50 \times 10 \times 10^{-3} \times 300]$$

$$= 13357.2\ V$$

DC link voltage

$$= 2V_d = 2 \times 13357.2 = 26714.4\ V = 26.714\ \text{kV}.$$

**Example 11.2.** *Two six-pulse converters, used for bipolar HVDC transmission system, are rated at 1000 MW, ± 200 kV. Calculate the rms current and peak reverse voltage ratings for each of the thyristor valves.*

**Solution.** The dc transmission voltage

$$= 200 + 200 = 400\ \text{kV}$$

Direct current in the transmission lines,

$$I_d = \frac{1000 \times 10^3}{400} = 2500\ \text{A}$$

It is seen from the working of a 3 phase full converter that each thyristor conducts for 120° for a periodicity of 360°.

∴ Rms current rating of thyristor

$$= I_d \sqrt{\frac{120}{360}} = 2500 \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} = 1443.38 \text{ A}$$

Also, $\frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi} \cos \alpha = 200 \text{ kV}$

For extreme cases, $\alpha = 0°$ and $\frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi} = 200 \text{ kV}$

or $V_{ml} = \frac{200 \times \pi}{3} = 209.44 \text{ kV}$

Since there are two SCRs conducting simultaneously in a six-pulse converter, the peak reverse voltage across each thyristor valve $= \frac{209.44}{2} = 104.72 \text{ kV}$.

## 11.4. STATIC SWITCHES

A switch having no moving parts is called a static switch. Power semiconductor devices which can be turned on and off within a few microseconds can be used as fast-acting static switches. For high-power applications, thyristors are being used as static switches whereas for low-power applications, power transistors are preferred. Static switches are now replacing mechanical and electromechanical switches because of several advantages listed below :

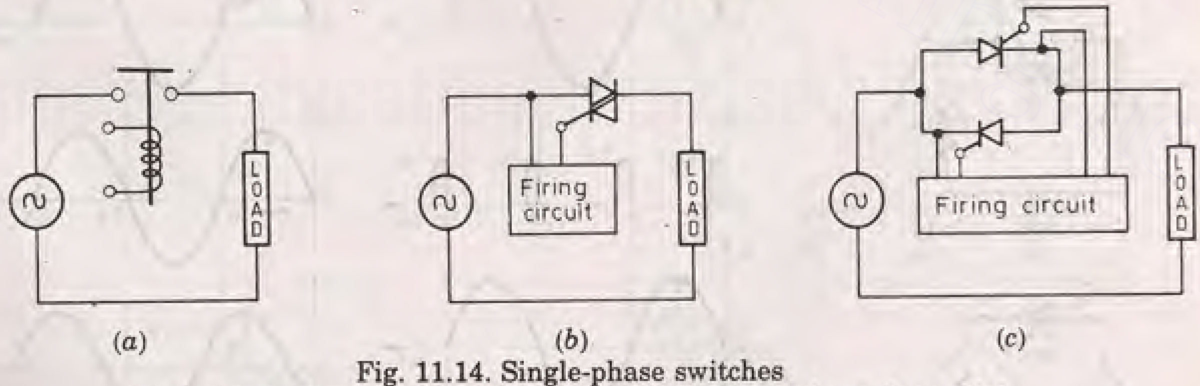
(*i*) On time of a static switch (SS) is of the order of 3 μs, it has therefore very high switching speed.

(*ii*) SS has no moving parts, its maintenance is therefore very low.

(*iii*) SS has no bouncing at the time of turning on.

(*iv*) SS has long operational life.

In static switches, however, attention must be paid to leakage current during their off periods.



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 11.14. Single-phase switches
(*a*) electromechanical (*b*) triac and (*c*) two-thyristors in anti-parallel.

An electromechanical switch shown in Fig. 11.14(*a*) is actuated by magnetic coil or plunger. The static switches using triac and two thyristors in anti-parallel are shown in Fig. 11.14 (*b*) and (*c*) respectively. Static switches are now being used for relays, circuit breakers, fuses, flashers, UPS, automobile blinkers etc.

It may be observed that circuit of Fig. 11.14(*c*) is the same as that of Fig. 9.4(*a*) for single-phase ac voltage controller. But these two circuits are operated differently. Note that static means changeless. In other words, this implies that static switch merely connects a load to the supply or disconnects a load from the supply. Static switch does not change or control the power delivered to load as it is done in a single-phase voltage controller. In static switches, the semiconductor switches are turned on at zero-crossing of load current, whereas it is not so in single-phase voltage controllers.

Static switches can also be used for latching, current and voltage detection, time-delay circuits, transducers etc.

Static switches are of two types : (*i*) ac switches and (*ii*) dc switches. If the input is ac, ac SSs are used and for dc input, dc SSs are used. Switching speed for ac switches is governed by the supply frequency and turn-off time of thyristors. For dc static switches, the switching speed depends on the commutation circuitry and turn-off time of fast thyristors. AC switches may be single-phase or three-phase. Static switches are discussed in what follows:

### 11.4.1. Single-phase AC Switches

The circuit diagram of a single-phase ac switch is shown in Fig. 11.15 (*a*). Here two thyristors are connected in anti-parallel. For resistive load in Fig. 11.15 (*a*), the waveforms for source voltage $v_s$, triggering pulse $i_{g1}$ for T1 and pulse $i_{g2}$ for T2, load voltage $v_0$ and load current $i_0$ are shown in Fig. 11.15(*c*). Note that T1 is triggered at $\omega t = 0°$, $\omega t = 2\pi$, ..... and T2 is triggered at $\omega t = \pi, 3\pi$ ..... when the load current waveform is passing through zero. For *RL* load, output or load current $i_0$ lags $v_0$ by load power-factor angle $\phi = \tan^{-1}\frac{\omega L}{R}$. For *RL* load, T1 must be triggered at $\omega t = \phi, 2\pi + \phi$,.... and T2 at $\pi + \phi$, $3\pi + \phi$ and so on, Fig. 11.15(*d*). A triac *TR* can replace two anti-parallel thyristors as shown in Fig. 11.15(*b*). For triac, only one pulse $i_g = i_{g1} = i_{g2}$ in each half cycle will be required.

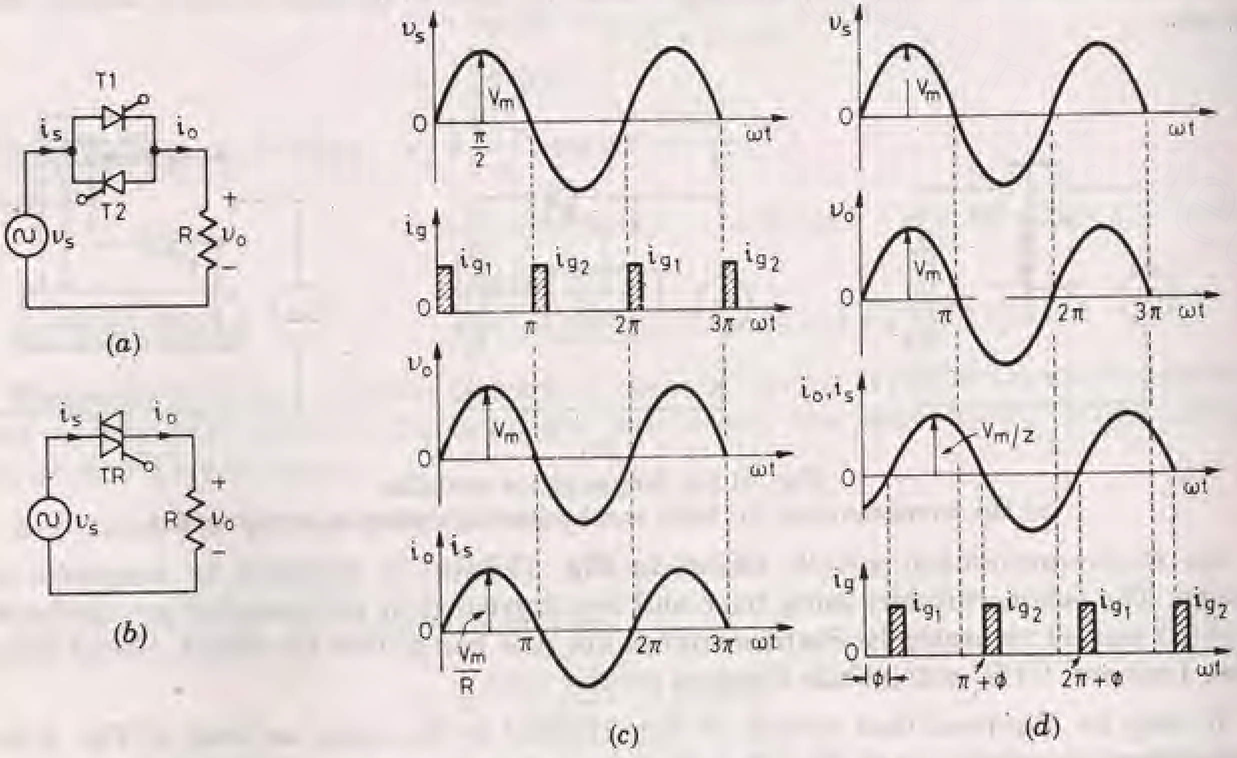


Fig. 11.15. Circuit diagram for single-phase *ac* switch (*a*) using two thyristors (*b*) using one triac (*c*) waveforms for *R* load (*d*) waveforms for *RL* load.

As load current waveform $i_0$ is a sine wave, it can be expressed as

$$i_0 = I_m \sin \omega t$$

Rms value of load current $i_0$, or source current $i_s$, in Fig. 11.15 (*c*) and (*d*) is

$$I_{or} = I_{sr} = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} I_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2} = \frac{I_m}{\sqrt{2}} \qquad \text{...(11.10)}$$

Note that each thyristor carries current for 180° for each cycle of load current. Therefore, average value of thyristor current is

$$I_{TA} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi} I_m \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{I_m}{\pi} \qquad \text{...(11.11)}$$

and rms value of thyristor current,

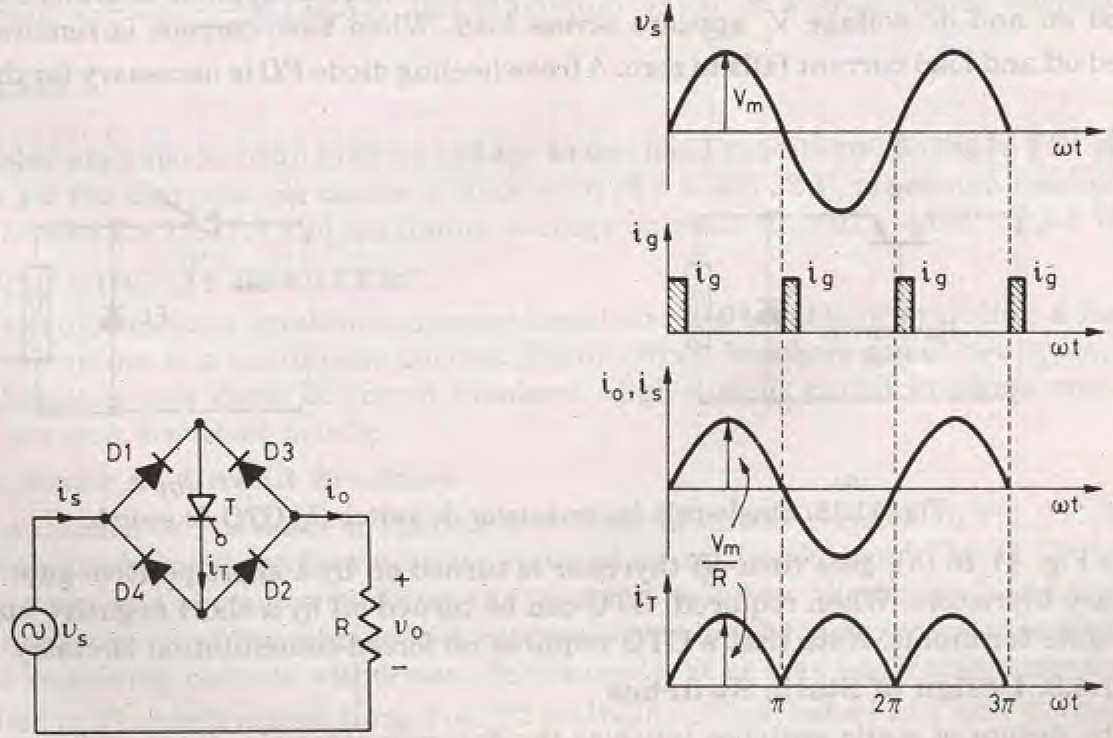
$$I_{Tr} = \left[\frac{1}{2\,\pi}\int_0^{\pi} I_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2} = \frac{I_m}{2} \qquad \text{...(11.12)}$$

A bi-directional switch, using four diodes and one thyristor (or a triac or a GTO) is shown in Fig. 11.16(*a*). This circuit, in performance, is similar to that of Fig. 11.15(*a*). The waveforms for source voltage $v_s$, triggering pulse $i_g$ for thyristor $T$, load current $i_0$ or source current $i_s$ and thyristor current $i_T$ are shown in Fig. 11.16(*b*). It is seen from this figure that *rms* value of thyristor current,

$$I_{Tr} = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} I_m^2 \sin^2 \omega t \cdot d(\omega t)\right]^{1/2} = \frac{I_m}{\sqrt{2}} \qquad \text{...(11.13)}$$

and average value of thyristor current,

$$I_{TA} = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} I_m \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{2I_m}{\pi} \qquad \text{...(11.14)}$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 11.16. (*a*) Single-phase *ac* bi-directional switch (*b*) its waveforms.

### 11.4.2. DC Switches

As stated before, in dc switches the input voltage is dc. Power semiconductor devices used in a dc switch may be transistors, thyristors or GTOs.

When thyristor is used, it must have forced commutation circuitry as an integral part of dc switch. One such circuit giving the principle of operation of a dc switch is shown in Fig. 11.17(*a*). Here T1 is the main thyristor and *TA* is the auxiliary thyristor. Capacitor *C* is charged to source voltage $V_s$ with lower plate positive. When T1 is on, normal load current $I_0$ flows from source to load through T1. For breaking the dc circuit, auxiliary thyristor *TA* is turned on. Capacitor *C* at once applies a reverse voltage across T1 turning it off at once. After this, load current flows as shown in Fig. 11.17(*b*). Capacitor now gets charged from $+V_s$ to $-V_s$ and current through *TA* falls below its holding current to turn it off. Subsequently, freewheeling diode takes over and load current eventually decays to zero. For further details, refer to Figs. 7.21 to 7.23.

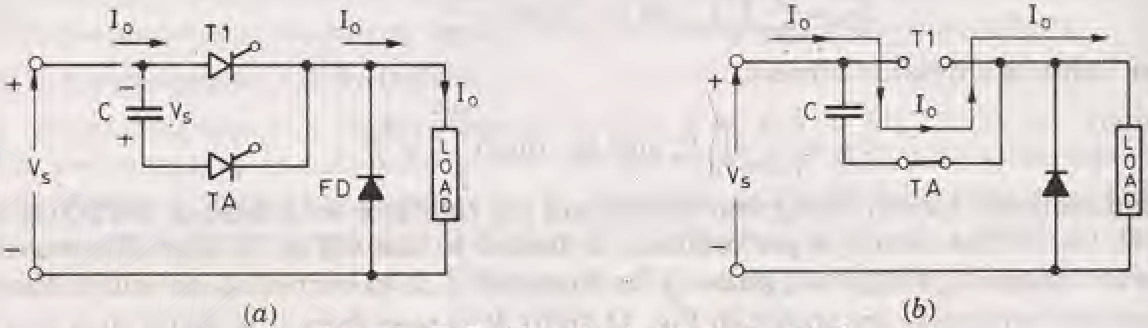


Fig. 11.17. Single-pole thyristor dc switch.

Single-pole dc switches using a transistor and a GTO are shown in Fig. 11.18(*a*) and (*b*) respectively. In Fig. 11.18(*a*), when forward base current is applied to transistor, *TR* gets turned on and dc voltage $V_s$ appears across load. When base current is removed, *TR* gets turned off and load current falls to zero. A freewheeling diode *FD* is necessary for the inductive load.

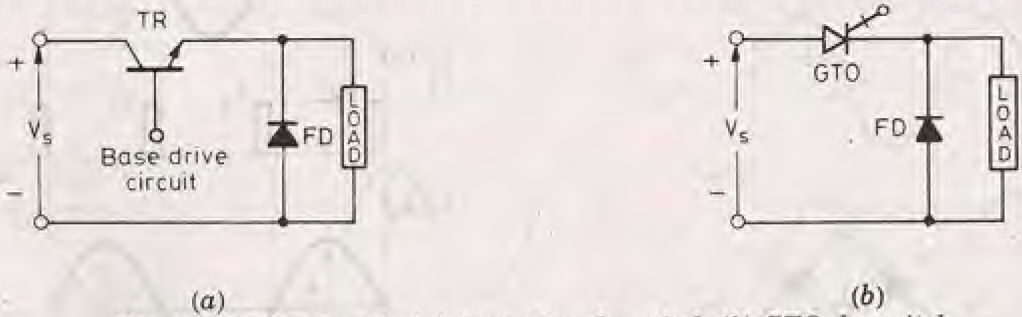


Fig. 11.18. Single-pole (*a*) transistor dc switch (*b*) GTO dc switch.

In Fig. 11.18 (*b*), gate turn-off thyristor is turned on by a short positive gate pulse as in ordinary thyristors. When required, GTO can be turned off by a short negative pulse applied to its gate terminals. Note that a GTO requires no forced-commutation circuitry.

### 11.4.3. Design of Static Switches

The design of static switches involves the determination of voltage and current ratings of power semiconductor devices employed. Their design is illustrated with an example.

**Example 11.3.** *A single-phase ac switch of Fig. 11.16 (a) is used in between a 230–V, 50 Hz source and a load of 2 kW at pf of 0.8 lagging. Determine the voltage and current ratings of (a) the thyristor and (b) diodes of the bridge. Take a factor of safety of two.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Peak value of load current,

$$I_m = \frac{2000\sqrt{2}}{230 \times 0.8} = 15.37 \text{ A}$$

Rms value of thyristor current, from Eq. (11.13) is

$$I_{Tr} = \frac{I_m}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{15.37}{\sqrt{2}} = 10.87 \text{ A}$$

Average value of thyristor current, from Eq. (11.14), is

$$I_{TA} = \frac{2I_m}{\pi} = \frac{2 \times 15.37}{\pi} = 9.785 \text{ A}$$

Maximum, value of rms current for SCR

$$= 10.87 \times 2 = 21.74 \text{ A}$$

Maximum value of average current for SCR

$$= 9.785 \times 2 = 19.57 \text{ A}$$

For the configuration of Fig. 11.16(*a*), thyristor is always on, therefore it is subjected to almost zero inverse voltage. However, PIV for this SCR may be taken as $V_m = \sqrt{2} \times 230 = 325.22$ V.

So choose a thyristor with PIV = 325.22 *V*, maximum rms on-state current 21.74 *A* and maximum average on-state current = 19.57 *A*.

(*b*) Each diode conducts for 180° for a periodicity of 360°. This gives maximum value of diode current $= \frac{I_m}{2} = \frac{15.37}{2} = 7.685$ A and maximum value of average diode current $= \frac{I_m}{\pi} = \frac{15.37}{\pi} = 4.892$ A.

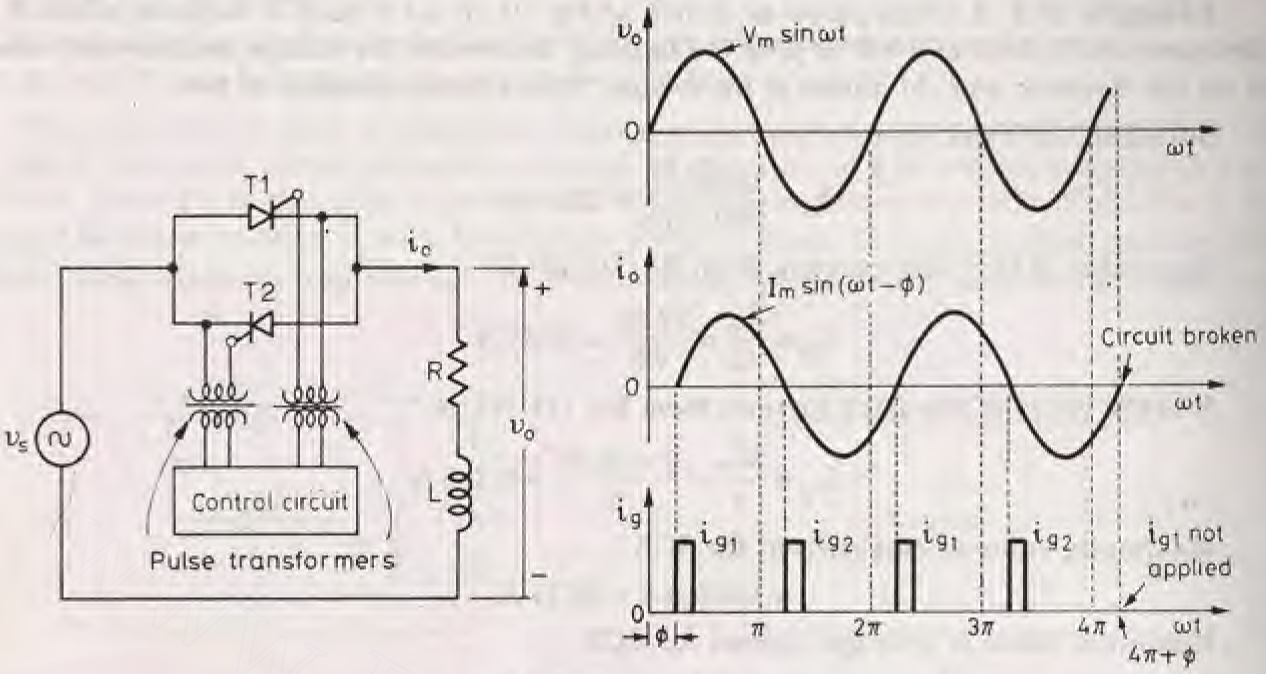
Diode also experiences zero inverse voltage under ideal conditions. So diode PIV may be selected as for the thyristor. So choose a diode with PIV = 325.22 *V*, maximum rms on-state current = 7.685 × 2 = 15.37 *A* and maximum average on-state current = 4.892 × 2 = 9.784 *A*.

## 11.5. STATIC CIRCUIT BREAKERS

Static circuit breakers are semiconductor-based circuits capable of providing a fast and reliable interruption to a continuous current. Static circuit breakers are of two types; static ac circuit breakers and static dc circuit breakers. High-current circuit breakers employing thyristors are now discussed briefly.

### 11.5.1. Static AC Circuit Breakers

Static ac switch can be made to operate as a static ac circuit breaker. In Fig. 11.19 (*a*) is shown a simplified circuit configuration for static ac circuit breaker and Fig. 11.19 (*b*) gives relevant voltage and current waveforms. As in static switches, thyristors 1 and 2 in Fig. 11.19(*a*) are turned on at the instant load current is passing through zero. For breaking the circuit, the triggering pulse is withdrawn. For example, at $\omega t = 4\pi + \phi$, if triggering pulse $i_{g1}$ is not applied to T1, it will not get turned on. T2 is already off just before $\omega t = 4\pi + \phi$. Therefore, the continuity of the circuit is broken. So when turn-off command is received by the control circuit due to some system fault, the gating pulse is withdrawn from T1 or T2 and eventually



(a) (b)

Fig. 11.19. (a) Static *ac* circuit breaker and (b) its relevant voltage and current waveforms.

the circuit is broken. In case turn-off command is received just after $3\pi + \phi$, load current will be broken only at $4\pi + \phi$, *i.e.* a delay of $\pi$ radians or half-cycle is a must. If turn-off command is received at the instant $(3\pi + \phi) < \omega t < (4\pi + \phi)$, even then the circuit is broken at the instant $\omega t = 4\pi + \phi$ only. This shows that maximum time delay for breaking the circuit is one half-cycle *i.e.* $\frac{\pi}{\omega}$ seconds after turn-off command is accepted by the control circuit due to some exigencies in the system.

### 11.5.2. Static DC Circuit Breakers

A simple arrangement of static dc circuit breaker is shown in Fig. 11.20. This circuit is similar to that shown in Fig. 5.4(*a*), pertaining to class-C commutation. As stated before, when input voltage to a circuit consisting of thyristors is dc, forced commutation is essential for turning off a thyristor. For complete analysis, refer to section 5.3. Here only brief discussion is given.

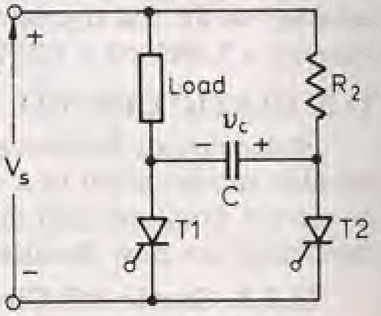


Fig. 11.20.
Static dc circuit breaker.

When main thyristor T1 is turned on, load voltage becomes equal to source voltage $V_s$ and capacitor $C$ begins to charge through the circuit $V_s$, $R_2$, $C$ and T1. Eventually capacitor $C$ gets charged with right hand plate positive. For breaking the circuit, auxiliary thyristor T2 is turned on. Capacitor voltage $v_c$ at once applies a reverse voltage $V_s$ across SCR T1 and turns it off. After T1 is force commutated, capacitor will charge from $+V_s$ to $-V_s$ through the circuit $V_s$, load, $C$ and T2. When $C$ is fully charged to $-V_s$ (left hand plate positive), current through load will be zero and at the same time current through $R_2$ will be less than the holding current of SCR T2. As a result, T2 will get turned off naturally. From this, the value of $R_2$ can be determined.

**Example 11.4.** *For the static dc circuit breaker shown in Fig. 11.20, the supply voltage is 200 V dc and load current required is 10A. SCR T1 has a turn-off time of 20 μs and SCR T2 has a holding current of 5mA. Find the values of parameters $R_2$, C and load resistance. Take a factor of safety of 2.*

**Solution.** Load resistance, $R_L = \frac{200}{10} = 20\ \Omega$

Holding current determines the value of $R_2$. Therefore,

$$R_2 = \frac{200}{5 \times 10^{-3}} = 40\ k\ \Omega.$$

It is seen from Eq. (5.9) that voltage $v_{T1}$ across T1, after T2 is turned on, is given by

$$v_{T1} = -v_c = V_s\,[1 - 2e^{-t/RC}] \qquad \text{...(11.15)}$$

The turn-off time $t_c$ for T1 can be obtained from Eq. (11.15) by calculating the period during which $v_{T1}$ falls from $-V_s$ to zero. Therefore, from Eq. (11.15),

$$0 = V_s\,[1 - 2\exp(-t_c/R_L \cdot C)]$$

or

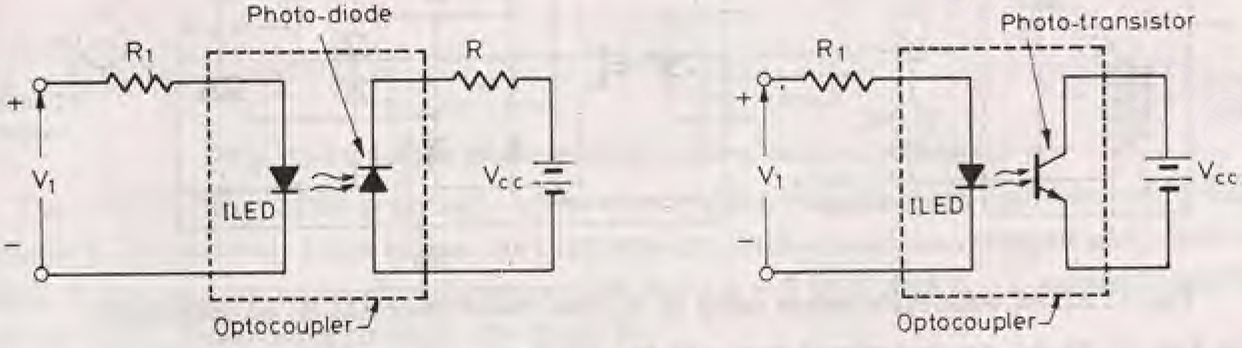
$$t_c = R_L\,C \ln 2$$

$\therefore$

$$C = \frac{t_c}{R_L \ln 2} = \frac{20 \times 2 \times 10^{-6}}{20 \times 10^3 \ln 2} = 2.885\ \mu\text{F}.$$

## 11.6. SOLID STATE RELAYS

AC and dc static switches can be used as solid state relays (SSRs) in ac and dc circuits respectively. In ac circuits, thyristors or triacs are used whereas in dc circuits transistors are preferred. Solid state relays have no contacts or moving parts. These are now being used extensively and are replacing the conventional contact-type electromagnetic relays in applications like control of motor drives, resistance heating etc. SSRs need electrical isolation between control circuit and the load circuit by means of optocouplers or pulse transformers.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 11.21. Optocouplers using (*a*) a photo-diode and (*b*) a photo-transister.

An optocoupler consists of infra-red light emitting diode (ILED) and a photo-diode or a photo-transistor. An optocoupler having ILED and photo-diode is shown in Fig. 11.21 (*a*). A short pulse $V_1$ applied to ILED will cause it to emit light on to photo-diode which will then begin to conduct in the reverse direction as shown. An optocoupler using photo-transistor is shown in Fig. 11.21 (*b*). As before, a short pulse $V_1$ applied to ILED will throw light on the base of photo-transistor and turn it on. As photo-transistor is more sensitive than a photo-diode, optocouplers based on opto-transistors are more common.

### 11.6.1. DC Solid State Relays

A dc solid state relay using opto-coupler for isolation purposes is shown in Fig. 11.22. When control pulse $V_C$ is applied to ILED, it emits light and turns on the photo-transistor. The current output from the photo-transistor acts as the base current for transistor *TR*. Consequently *TR* is turned on and source voltage $V_s$ is applied to load.

When control pulse $V_C$ is absent, *TR* gets turned off and load voltage is zero.

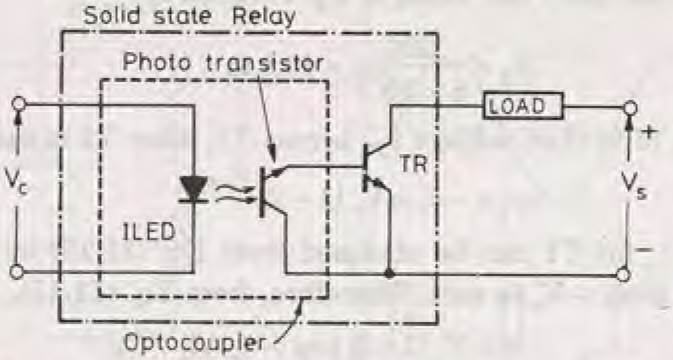


Fig. 11.22. DC solid-state relay using an optocoupler.

### 11.6.2. AC Solid State Relays

Fig. 11.23 shows two basic circuits for ac solid-state relays. Fig. 11.23 (*a*) uses a pulse transformer for isolation purposes and in Fig. 11.23 (*b*), isolation is provided by an optocoupler. When control signal appears across the primary of pulse transformer, its secondary applies a triggering pulse to turn on the triac. As a result, circuit is completed through $v_s$, load and triac and therefore, source voltage is applied to the load.

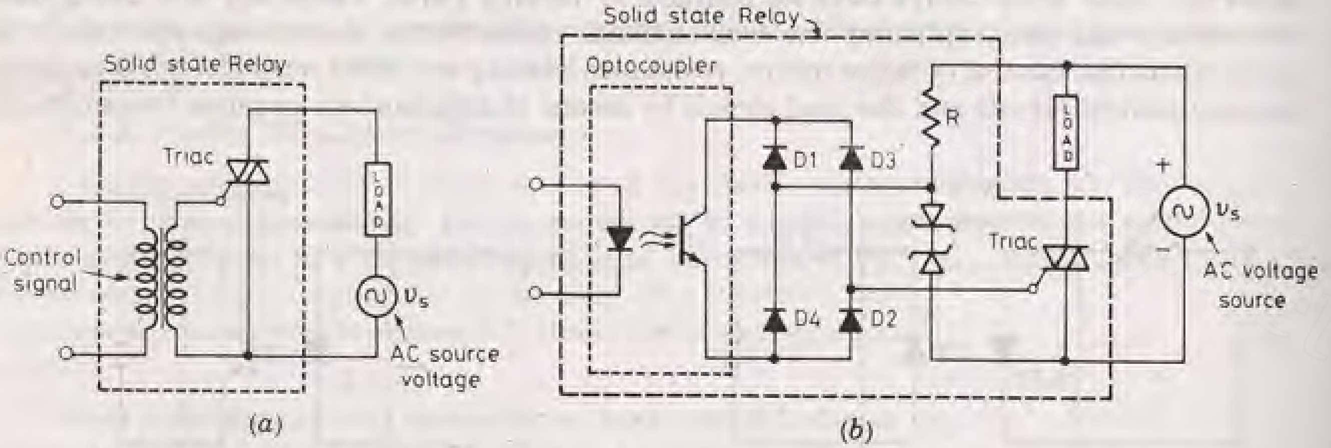


Fig. 11.23. AC solid-state relays using (*a*) a pulse transformer and (*b*) an optocoupler.

In Fig. 11.23 (*b*), control signal turns on the photo-transistor. If the ac supply has upper terminal positive as shown in Fig. 11.23(*b*), the current will flow through *R*, D1, photo-transistor, D2, triac gate and source. This current will turn on the triac and load gets energised by source voltage $v_s$. The function of *R* is to limit the flow of gate current of triac. If lower terminal of ac supply is positive, the current will flow through triac gate, D3, photo-transistor, D4, *R* and source $v_s$. Triac gets turned on and source voltage is applied to load.

## 11.7. RESONANT CONVERTERS

In SMPSs discussed in Art. 11.1 and in the PWM inverters described in Chapter 8, the switching devices are made to turn-on and turn-off the entire load current at high *di/dt*. The devices handling high $di/dt$ also experience high-voltage stresses across them; due to these two effects, there are increased power losses in the switching devices. In case size and weight of the converter components is to be reduced, switching frequencies are increased. At these high frequencies, switching losses and high-voltage stresses are further aggravated. Another major drawback of high $di/dt$ and high $dv/dt$ caused by rapid on and off of the switching devices is the electromagnetic interference.

The shortcomings enunciated above can be minimised if each switch in a converter is turned on and off when the voltage across it and/or current through it is zero at the instant of switching. The converter circuits which employ zero-voltage and/or zero-current switching are called *resonant converters*. In most of these converters, some form of $L$-$C$ resonance is used, that is why these are known as resonant converters.

In this section, resonant converters employing zero-current switching (ZCS) and zero-voltage switching (ZVS) are described.

### 11.7.1. Zero-Current Switching Resonant Converters

There are two types of ZCS resonant converters, $L$-type and $M$-type. Both of these circuit topologies use $L$ and $C$ as a series resonant circuit; in addition $L$ also limits $di/dt$ of the switching current. Here first $L$-type and then $M$-type ZCS resonant converters are presented.

**11.7.1.1. L-type ZCS Resonant Converters.** An $L$-type ZCS resonant converter is shown in Fig. 11.24. The switching device $S$ in the figure can be a GTO, thyristor, BJT, power MOSFET or IGBT. At low kilohertz range; GTO, thyristor, transistor or IGBT is used whereas for megahertz range, power MOSFETs are preferred. Inductor $L$ and capacitor $C$ near the dc source $V_s$ form a resonant circuit whereas $L_1, C_1$ near the load constitute a filter circuit. Direction of currents and plarities of voltages as marked in Fig. 11.24 are treated as positive.

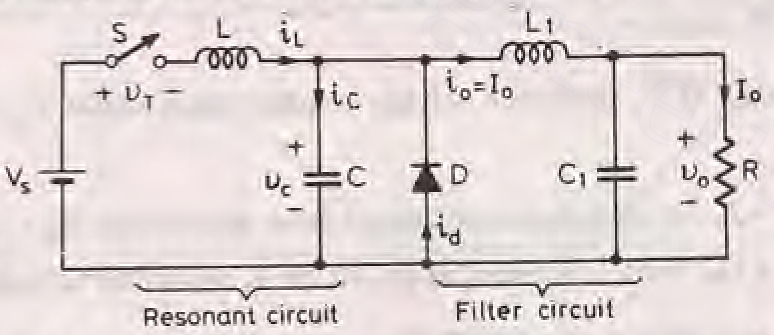


Fig. 11.24. $L$-type zero-current-switching resonant converter.

The circuit of Fig. 11.24 is initially in the steady state with constant load current $I_0$. Filter inductor $L_1$ is relatively large to assume that current $i_0$ in $L_1$ is almost constant at $I_0$. Initially, switch $S$ is open; resonant circuit parameters have $i_L = 0$ in $L$ and $v_c = 0$ across $C$ and the load current $I_0$ freewheels through the diode $D$.

For the sake of convinience, working of this converter is divided into five modes as under. For all these modes, time $t$ is taken as zero at the beginning of each mode.

**Mode I. ($0 \le t \le t_1$).** At $t = 0$, switch $S$ is turned on. As $I_0$ is freewheeling through diode $D$, voltage across ideal diode $v_D = 0$ and also $v_C = 0$, Fig. 11.25($a$). It implies that source voltage $V_s$ gets applied across $L$ and the switch current $i_L$ begins to flow through $V_s$, switch $S$, $L$ and diode $D$, Fig. 11.25($a$). Therefore, $V_s = L\, di/dt$. It gives $i_L = \frac{V_s}{L} t$. It shows that inductor or switch current $i_L$ rises linearly from its zero initial value. The diode current $i_D$ is given by

$$i_D = I_0 - i_L = I_0 - \frac{V_s}{L}\,t \qquad \text{...(11.15)}$$

At $t = t_1$, $\quad i_L = \frac{V_s}{L} \cdot t_1 = I_0$. This gives

$$t_1 = \frac{I_0 \cdot L}{V_s}$$

Also, at $t = t_1$, $i_D = I_0 - I_0 = 0$. Soon after $t_1$, as $i_D$ tends to reverse, diode $D$ gets turned off. As a result of this, short circuit across $C$ is removed.

**Mode II ($0 \le t \le t_2$).** Switch $S$ remains on. As $D$ turns off at $t = 0$, current $I_0$ flows through $V_s$, $L$, $L_1$ and $R$. In Figs. 11.25($a$) and ($b$), constant current through $L_1$ and $R$ is represented by current source $I_0$. Also, a current $i_C$ begins to build up through resonant circuit consisting of $V_s$, $L$ and $C$ in series. The inductor current $i_L$ is, therefore, given by

$$i_L = I_0 + i_C = I_0 + I_m \sin \omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(11.16)}$$

where $I_m = V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} = \frac{V_s}{Z_0}$ and $\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$. Here $Z_0 = \sqrt{\frac{L}{C}}$ is the characteristic impedance of the resonant circuit.

The capacitor current is $i_c = I_m \sin \omega_0 t$ and capacitor voltage $v_c$ is given by

$$v_c(t) = V_s (1 - \cos \omega_0 t) \qquad \text{...(11.17)}$$

The peak value of current $i_L$ is $I_p = I_0 + I_m$ and it occurs at $t = \frac{\pi}{2\omega_0} = \frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{LC}$. At this instant, $v_c = V_s\,[1 - \cos \pi] = 2V_s$ and $i_c = I_m$.

When $t = t_2 = \frac{\pi}{\omega_0} = \pi\sqrt{LC}$, capacitor voltage reaches peak value $V_{cp} = V_s\,[1 - \cos \pi] = 2V_s$ and $i_c = 0$.

Also, at $t = t_2$, $i_L = I_0$, $i.e.$ switch current drops from peak value $(I_0 + I_m)$ to $I_0$.

**Mode III ($0 \le t \le t_3$).** Switch $S$ remains on. At $t = 0$, capacitor voltage is $2V_s$. As $i_c$ tends to reverse at $t = 0$, capacitor begins to discharge and force a current $i_c = V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \sin \omega_0 t$ opposite to $i_L$, Fig. 11.25($c$), so that inductor or device current $i_L$ is given by

$$i_L = I_0 - i_c = I_0 - I_m \sin \omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(11.18)}$$

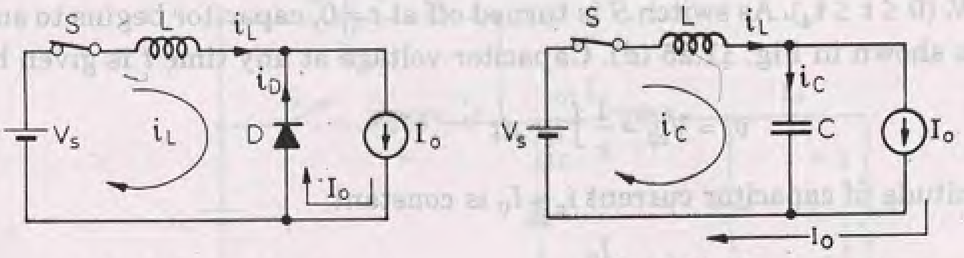
and capacitor voltage $v_c = 2V_s \cos \omega_0 t$. Current $i_L$ falls to zero when $t = t_3$,

$i.e.$ $\quad i_L = 0 = I_0 - I_m \sin \omega_0 t_3$

or $\quad t_3 = \sqrt{LC}\,\sin^{-1}(I_0/I_m)$

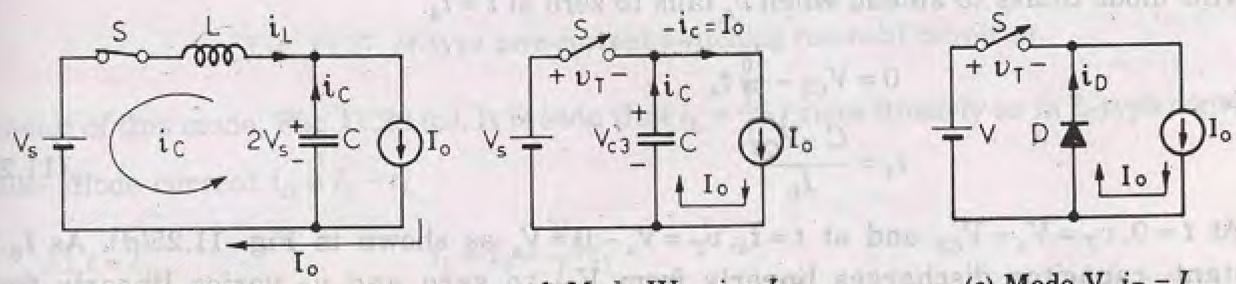
At $t = t_3$, $\quad v_c = 2V_s \cos \omega_0 t_3 = 2V_s \left[\frac{\sqrt{I_m^2 - I_0^2}}{I_m}\right] = V_{c3}$

During this mode, $i_c = I_m \sin \omega_0 t$ and as $i_L$ falls to zero at $t_3$, switching device $S$ gets turned off. Note that current $i_c$ in this mode flows opposite to its positive direction, it is therefore shown negative in Fig. 11.25($c$) and in Fig. 11.26. At $t = t_3$, the value of $i_c = -I_0$.



(*a*) Mode I, $i_D = I_o - i_L$

(*b*) Mode II, $i_L = I_o + i_c$



(*c*) Mode III, $i_L = I_o - i_c$

(*d*) Mode IV, $-i_c = I_o$

(*e*) Mode V, $i_D = I_o$

Fig. 11.25. Equivalent circuits for the operating modes of *L*-type ZCS resonant converter.

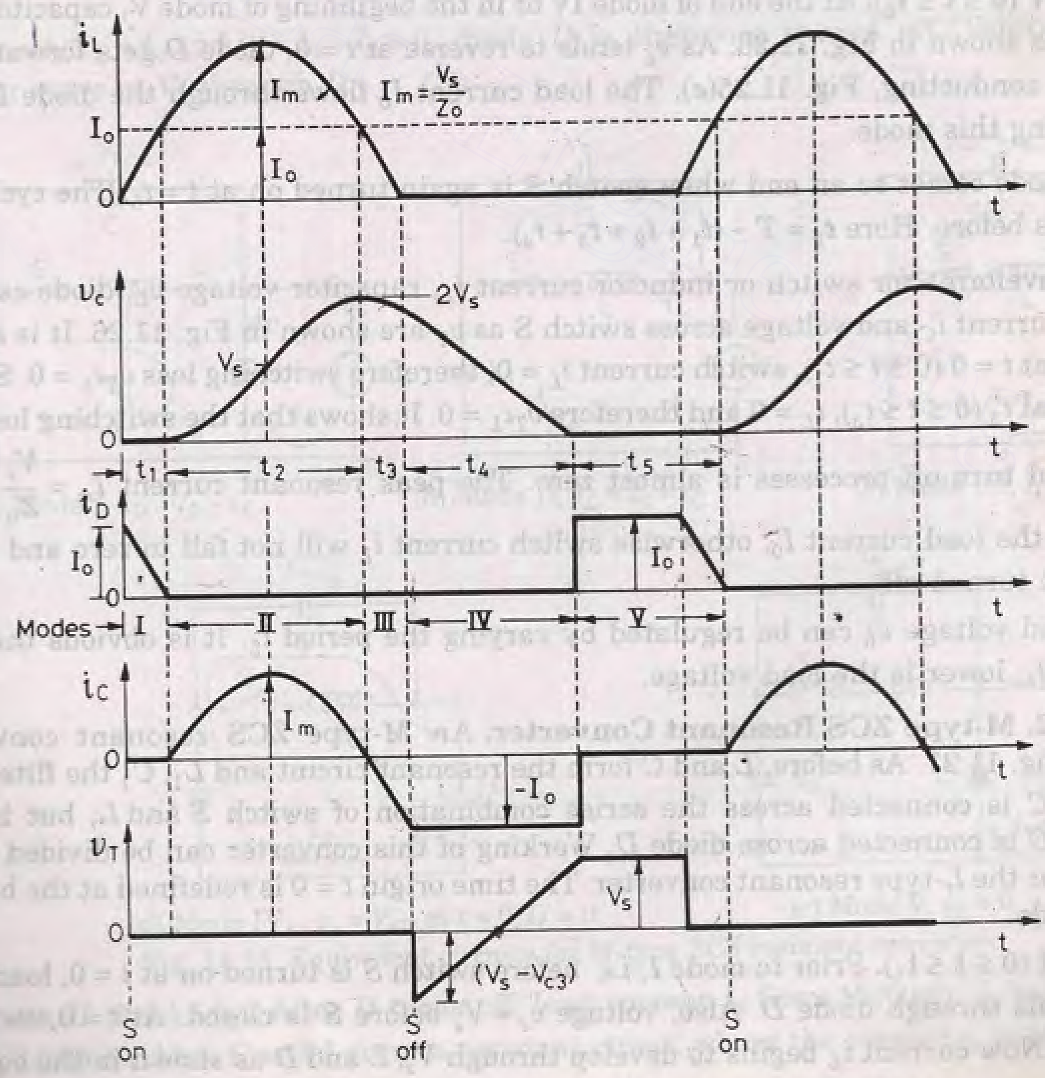


Fig. 11.26. Waveforms for *L*-type ZCS resonant converter.

**Mode IV.** ($0 \le t \le t_4$). As switch $S$ is turned off at $t = 0$, capacitor begins to supply the load current $I_0$ as shown in Fig. 11.25 (*d*). Capacitor voltage at any time $t$ is given by

$$v_c = V_{c3} - \frac{1}{c}\int i_c \cdot dt$$

As magnitude of capacitor current $i_c = I_0$ is constant,

$$v_c = V_{c3} - \frac{I_0}{C}t \qquad \text{...(11.19)}$$

This mode comes to an end when $v_c$ falls to zero at $t = t_4$.

or
$$0 = V_{C3} - \frac{I_0}{C}t_4$$

or
$$t_4 = \frac{C \cdot V_{C3}}{I_0} \qquad \text{...(11.20)}$$

At $t = 0$, $v_T = V_s - V_{C3}$ and at $t = t_4$, $v_T = V_s - 0 = V_s$ as shown in Fig. 11.25(*d*). As $I_0$ is constant, capacitor discharges linearly from $V_{C3}$ to zero and $v_T$ varies linearly from $(V_s - V_{C3})$ to $V_s$ as shown in Fig. 11.26.

**Mode V** ($0 \le t \le t_5$). At the end of mode IV or in the beginning of mode *V*, capacitor voltage $v_c$ is zero as shown in Fig. 11.26. As $v_c$ tends to reverse at $t = 0$, diode $D$ gets forward biased and starts conducting, Fig. 11.25(*e*). The load current $I_0$ flows through the diode $D$ so that $i_D = I_0$ during this mode.

This mode comes to an end when switch $S$ is again turned on at $t = t_5$. The cycle is now repeated as before. Here $t_5 = T - (t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4)$.

The waveforms for switch or inductor current $i_L$, capacitor voltage $v_L$, diode current $i_D$, capacitor current $i_C$ and voltage across switch S as $v_T$ are shown in Fig. 11.26. It is seen that at turn-on at $t = 0$ ($0 \le t \le t_1$), switch current $i_L = 0$, therefore switching loss $v_T i_L = 0$. Similarly, at turn-off at $t_3$ ($0 \le t \le t_3$), $i_L = 0$ and therefore $v_T i_L = 0$. It shows that the switching loss during turn-on and turn-off processes is almost zero. The peak resonant current $I_m = \frac{V_s}{Z_0}$ must be more than the load current $I_0$, otherwise switch current $i_L$ will not fall to zero and switch $S$ will not get turned off.

The load voltage $v_0$ can be regulated by varying the period $t_5$. It is obvious that longer the period $t_5$, lower is the load voltage.

**11.7.1.2. M-type ZCS Resonant Converter.** An *M*-type ZCS resonant converter is shown in Fig. 11.27. As before, $L$ and $C$ form the resonant circuit and $L_1$, $C_1$ the filter circuit. Capacitor $C$ is connected across the series combination of switch $S$ and $L$; but in $L$-type converter, $C$ is connected across diode $D$. Working of this converter can be divided into five modes as for the $L$-type resonant converter. The time origin $t = 0$ is redefined at the beginning of each mode.

**Mode I** ($0 \le t \le t_1$). Prior to mode *I*, *i.e.* before switch $S$ is turned on at $t = 0$, load current $I_0$ freewheels through diode $D$. Also, voltage $v_c = V_s$ before $S$ is closed. At $t = 0$, switch $S$ is turned on. Now current $i_L$ begins to develop through $V_s$, $L$ and $D$ as shown in the equivalent

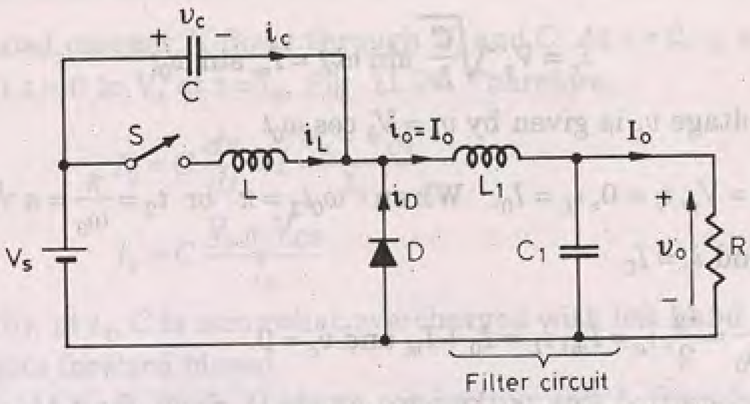


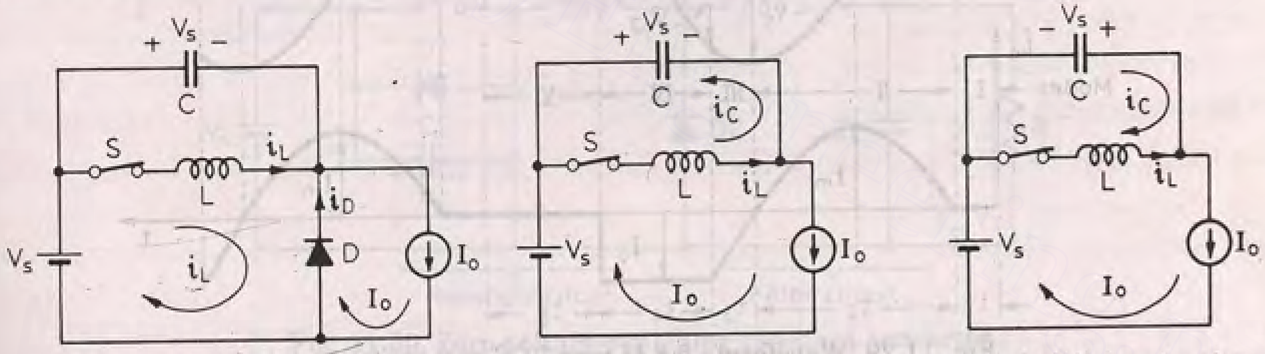
Fig. 11.27. *M*-type zero-current-switching resonant converter.

circuit of this mode, Fig. 11.28 (*a*). It is seen that $i_L = \frac{V_s}{L} t$ rises linearly as in *L*-type converter. Also, diode current $i_D = I_0 - i_L$

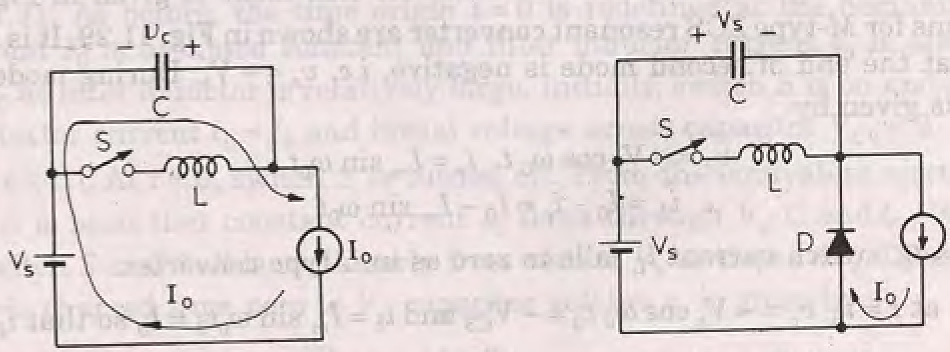
$$\text{At } t = t_1, \qquad i_L = I_0 = \frac{V_s}{L} t_1$$

$$\text{or} \qquad t_1 = \frac{I_0 \cdot L}{V_s} \qquad \text{...(11.21)}$$

At $t = t_1$, $i_L = I_0$ and $i_D = I_0 - I_0 = 0$, diode *D* is therefore turned off. Voltage $v_c$ across capacitor stays at $V_s$ through *D*.



(*a*) Mode I, $i_D = I_0 - i_L$ (*b*) Mode II, $i_L = I_0 + i_C$ (*c*) Mode III, $i_L = I_0 - i_C$



(*d*) Mode IV, $v_c = V_{C3}$ at $t = 0$, $i_L = 0$ (*e*) Mode V, $i_L = 0$

Fig. 11.28. Equivalent circuits for *M*-type ZCS resonant converter.

**Mode II** $(0 \le t \le t_2)$. After *D* turns off, load current $I_0$ flows through $V_s$ and *L* as shown in Fig. 11.28(*b*). Also, *C* and *L* form a resonant circuit where the current $i_c$ is given by

$$i_c = V_s \sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \sin \omega_0 t = I_m \sin \omega_0 t$$

and capacitor voltage $v_c$ is given by $v_c = V_s \cos \omega_0 t$

At $t = 0$, $v_c = V_s$, $i_c = 0$, $i_L = I_0$. When $\omega_0 t_2 = \pi$ or $t_2 = \frac{\pi}{\omega_0} = \pi\sqrt{LC}$, capacitor voltage $v_c = -V_s$, $i_c = 0$ and $i_c = I_0$.

When $t = \frac{\pi}{2\omega_0} = \frac{t_2}{2}$, $i_c = I_m$, $i_L = I_0 + I_m$ and $v_c = 0$.

During this mode, $i_L = I_0 + I_c = I_0 + I_m \sin \omega_0 t$ and capacitor gets charged from $V_s$ to $-V_s$ as shown in Fig. 11.29.

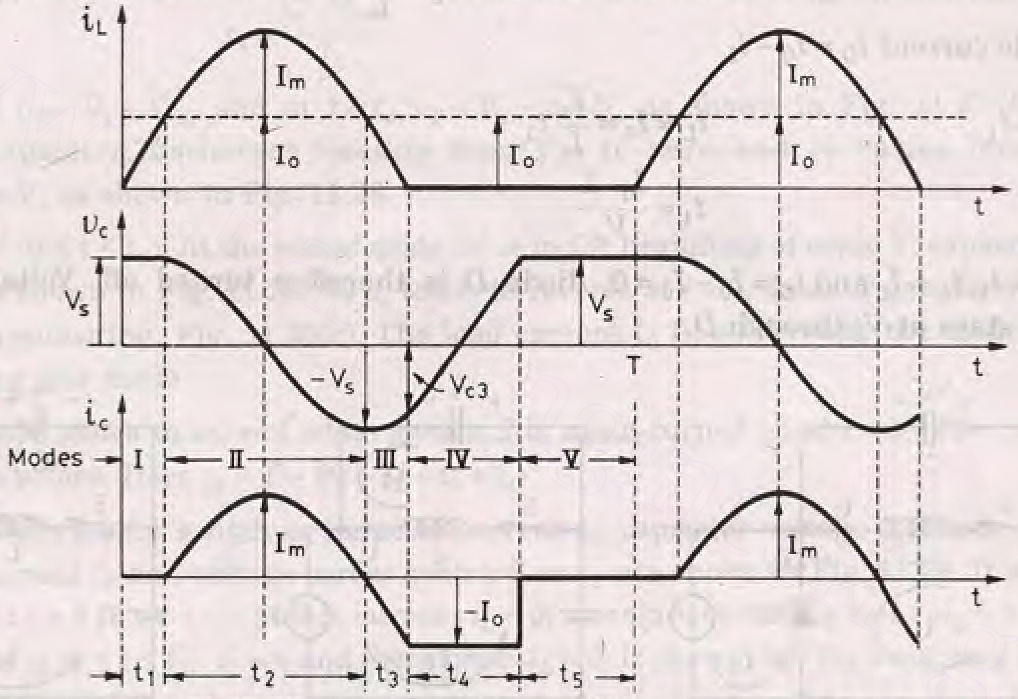


Fig. 11.29. Waveforms for *M*-type ZCS resonant converter.

**Mode III ($0 \le t \le t_3$).** Equivalent circuit for this mode is given in Fig. 11.28(*c*). Various waveforms for *M*-type ZCS resonant converter are shown in Fig. 11.29. It is seen that capacitor voltage at the end of second mode is negative, *i.e.* $v_c = -V_s$. During mode III, the capacitor voltage is given by

$$v_c = -V_s \cos \omega_0 t, \quad i_c = I_m \sin \omega_0 t$$

and

$$i_L = I_0 - i_c = I_0 - I_m \sin \omega_0 t$$

At $t = t_3$, switch current $i_L$ falls to zero as in *L*-type converter.

Also at $t = t_3$, $v_c = -V_s \cos \omega_0 t_3 = -V_{C3}$ and $i_c = I_m \sin \omega_0 t_3 = I_0$ so that $i_L = 0$. This gives

$$t_3 = \frac{1}{\omega_0} \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{I_0}{I_m}\right) = \sqrt{LC} \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{I_0}{I_m}\right) \qquad \text{...(11.22)}$$

**Mode IV ($0 \le t \le t_4$).** In the previous mode, as $i_L$ falls to zero and tends to reverse, switch *S* is naturally turned off. In this mode, therefore, *S* remains off and the equivalent circuit of

Fig. 11.28($d$) applies. Load current $I_0$ flows through $V_s$ and $C$. At $t = 0$, $v_c = -V_{C3}$. Current $I_0$ charges $C$ from $-V_{C3}$ at $t = 0$ to $V_s$ at $t = t_4$, Fig. 11.29. Therefore,

$$I_0 = C\frac{dv}{dt} = I\frac{V_s + V_{C3}}{t_4}$$

or
$$t_4 = C\frac{V_s + V_{C3}}{I_0} \qquad \text{...(11.23)}$$

At $t_4$, $v_c = V_s$. Actually, at $t_4$, $C$ is somewhat overcharged with left hand plate positive and consequently diode $D$ gets forward biased.

**Mode V ($0 \le t \le t_5$).** At $t = 0$, diode $D$ starts conducting and $I_0$ freewheels through $D$ as shown in Fig. 11.28 ($e$). Switch $S$ is open and voltage $v_c$ stays at $V_s$ through $D$. Switch current $i_L$ remains zero as $S$ is open. At time $t = T$, switch $S$ is again turned on and the cycle repeats.

### 11.7.2. Zero-Voltage-Switching Resonant Converters

A zero-voltage-switching (ZVS) resonant converter is shown in Fig. 11.30. It consists of diode D1 and capacitor $C$ connected across the switch $S$. As in ZCS converter, ZVS resonant converter has $L, C$ as the resonant circuit components and $L_1, C_1$ as the filter circuit components. The function of resonant capacitor $C$ is to produce zero voltage across the switch $S$. Diode D2 provides a free wheeling path to load current $I_0$. As the name suggests, the switch $S$ in ZVS resonant converter is turned on and off at zero-voltage across the switch.

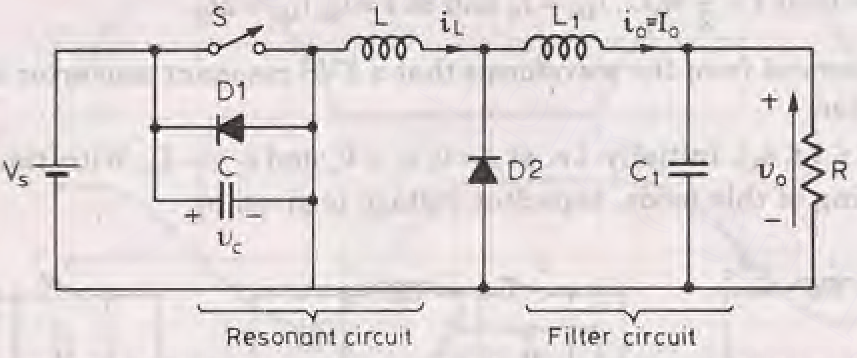


Fig. 11.30. Zero-voltage-switching resonant converter.

The working of this converter can be divided into five modes with equivalent circuits as shown in Fig. 11.31. As before, the time origin $t = 0$ is redefined at the beginning of each mode. Load current $I_0$ is assumed constant and filter inductor current $i_0$ is also taken to remain level at $I_0$ as filter inductor is relatively large. Initially, switch $S$ is on and conducting $I_0$. Therefore, inductor current $i_L = I_0$ and initial voltage across capacitor $V_{C0} = 0$.

**Mode I ($0 \le t \le t_1$).** At $t = 0$, switch $S$ is turned off. From the equivalent circuit of mode $I$, Fig. 11.31($a$), it is seen that constant current $I_0$ flows through $V_s$, $C$ and $L$. As a result, voltage across switch $S$ *or* $C$ builds up linearly from zero to $V_s$ at time $t = t_1$. Diode D2 is off. As the capacitor is charged from zero to $V_s$, capacitor voltage $v_c$ is given by

$$I_0 = C\frac{dv}{dt}$$

or
$$v_c = \frac{I_0}{C}t$$

At time $t = t_1$,
$$v_c = \frac{I_0}{C}t_1 = V_s \quad \text{or} \quad t_1 = \frac{CV_s}{I_0} \qquad \text{...(11.24)}$$

Note that voltage across diode D2 is $v_{D2} = V_s$ at $t = 0$ and $v_{D2} = 0$ at $t = t_1$.

Also, at $t = 0$, $v_c = 0$; therefore switch $S$ is turned off at zero voltage as required.

**Mode II** $(0 \le t \le t_2)$. At $t = 0$, actually capacitor is somewhat overcharged, *i.e.* $v_c > V_s$; therefore diode D2 becomes forward biased. Now a resonant current $i_L$ is set up in series circuit $V_s$, $C$, $L$ and D2, Fig. 11.31($b$), where $i_L$ is given by

$$i_L = I_0 \cos \omega_0 t$$

The capacitor voltage $v_c$ is given by

$$v_c = V_s + V_m \sin \omega_0 t \qquad \text{...(11.25)}$$

where $V_m = I_0 \sqrt{\dfrac{L}{C}} = I_0 Z_0$ and $Z_0 = \sqrt{\dfrac{L}{C}}$ is the characteristic impedance of the circuit in ohms. The peak switch or capacitor voltage $V_{pk}$ occurs when $\omega_0 t = \pi/2$ or $t = \dfrac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{LC}$ and its value is

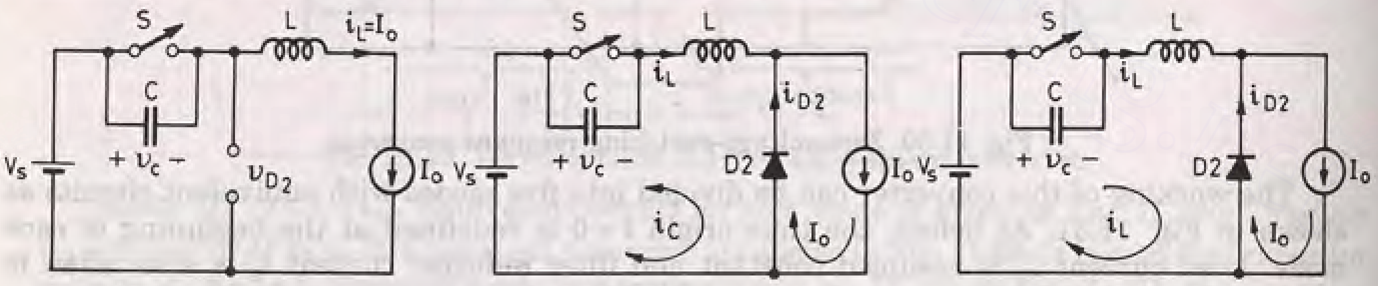
$$V_{pk} = V_s + V_m = V_s + I_0 Z_0$$

At $t = t_2$, $i_L = -I_0$ where $\omega_0 t_2 = \pi$ or $t_2 = \pi\sqrt{LC}$ and capacitor voltage is $v_c = V_s$. Diode D2 current is given by $i_{D2} = I_0 - I_0 \cos \omega_0 t$.

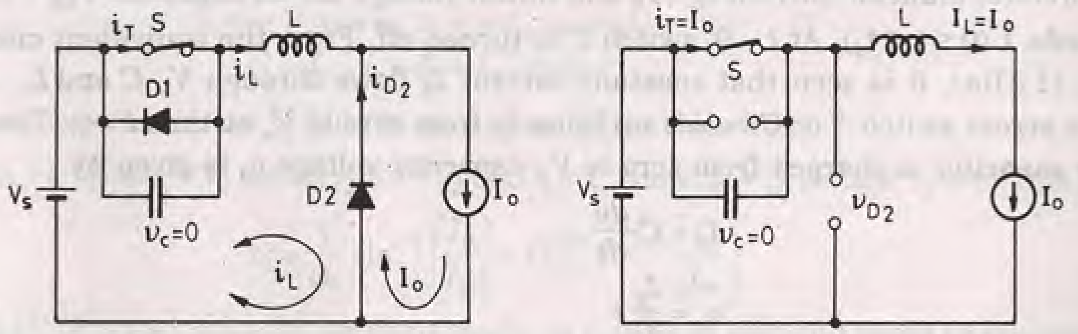
At $t = 0$, $i_{D2} = 0$, at $t = \dfrac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{LC}$, $i_{D2} = I_0$ and at $t = t_2$, $i_{D2} = 2I_0$.

It may be observed from the waveforms that a ZVS resonant converter is the dual of ZCS resonant converter.

**Mode III** $(0 \le t \le t_3)$. Initially, *i.e.* at $t = 0$, $v_c = V_s$ and $i_L = -I_0$. With time $t$ reckoned zero from the beginning of this mode, capacitor voltage is given by



($a$) Mode I, $i_L = I_0$ ($b$) Mode II, $i_L = I_0 \sin \omega_0 t$ ($c$) Mode III, $v_c = V_s$ at $t = 0$



($d$) Mode IV, $i_L = -I_{L3} + \dfrac{V_s}{L}t$ ($e$) Mode V, $i_T = i_L = I_0$

Fig. 11.31. Equivalent circuit for ZVS resonant converter.

$$v_c = V_s - V_m \sin \omega_0 t$$

and $$i_L = -I_0 \cos \omega_0 t$$

so that $$i_{D2} = I_0 - I_0 \cos \omega_0 t$$

At time $t = t_3$, $v_c = 0$, $i_L = I_{L3}$ and $i_{D2} = I_0 - I_{L3}$. This gives

$$0 = V_s - V_m \sin \omega_0 t_3$$

or $$t_3 = \sqrt{LC} \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{V_s}{I_0}\right)\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}} \qquad ...(11.26)$$

At the end of this mode, *i.e.* at $t = t_3$, $v_c = 0$; as a result reverse bias across D1 vanishes and $i_L$ begins to flow through D1.

**Mode IV ($0 \le t \le t_4$).** During this mode, capacitor voltage is clamped to zero by diode D1 conducting negative current $i_L$. As soon as antiparallel diode D1 begins to conduct at $t = 0$, gate drive is applied to switch $S$. The inductor current $i_L$ rises linearly from $-I_{L3}$ to zero. At this instant, reverse bias of D1 vanishes and already gated switch $S$ turns on. This shows that switch $S$ turns on at zero voltage and zero current. After this, current rises linearly to $I_0$ in the circuit formed by $V_s$, $S$, $L$ and D2. The linear variation of current from $I_{L3}$ is given by

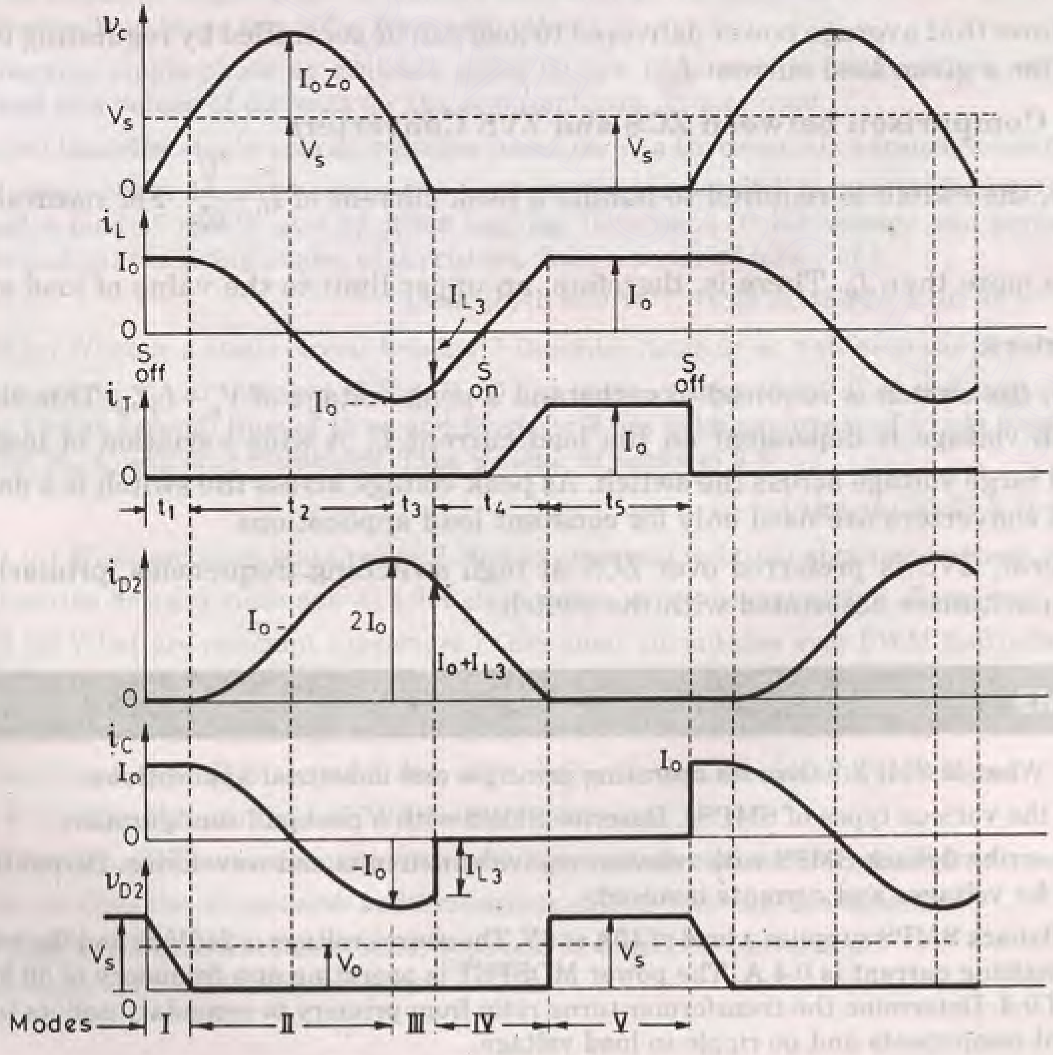


Fig. 11.32. Waveforms for ZVS resonant converter.

$$i_L = -I_{L3} + \frac{V_s}{L} t$$

At $t = t_4,\ i_L = I_0 = -I_{L3} + \frac{V_s}{L} t_4.$ This gives

$$t_4 = (I_0 + I_{L3}) \left(\frac{L}{V_s}\right) \qquad ...(11.27)$$

Diode current $i_{D2} = I_0 + i_L$. At $t = 0$, $i_{D2} = I_0 + I_{L3}$ and time $t = t_4$, $i_{D2} = 0$. During modes II, III and IV, diode D2 is in conduction, therefore $v_{D2} = 0$, as shown in the waveforms of Fig. 11.32.

**Mode V** ($0 \le t \le t_5$). At the end of mode IV, or in the beginning of mode V at $t = 0$, $i_L$ reaches $I_0$ and therefore diode D2 turns off. Switch S continues conducting $I_0$ as shown in Fig. 11.31(*e*). Note that voltage $v_{D2} = V_s$ during this mode. Mode V ends at $t = t_5$ when switch *S* is turned off again at zero voltage. The cycle now repeats as before.

The various waveforms for these five modes are now sketched in Fig. 11.32. It is seen from these waveforms that for a ZVS resonant converter :

(*i*) switch, or inductor, current is limited to $I_0$

(*ii*) average value of output voltage $V_0$ can be controlled by controlling the interval $t_5$.

This shows that average power delivered to load can be controlled by regulating the output voltage $V_0$ for a given load current $I_0$.

### 11.7.3. Comparison between ZCS and ZVS Converters

In ZCS, the switch is required to handle a peak current of $I_0 + \frac{V_s}{Z_0}$. For natural turn-off, $\frac{V_s}{Z_0}$ must be more than $I_0$. There is, therefore, an upper limit to the value of load current in ZCS converters.

In ZVS, the switch is required to withstand a peak voltage of $V_s + I_0 Z_0$. This shows that peak switch voltage is dependent on the load current $I_0$. A wide variation of load current would need large voltage across the switch. As peak voltage across the switch is a dominating factor, ZVS converters are used only for constant load applications.

In general, ZVS is preferred over ZCS at high switching frequencies, primarily due to internal capacitances associated with the switch.

## PROBLEMS

**11.1** (*a*) What is SMPS ? Give its operating principle and industrial applications.

(*b*) List the various types of SMPSs. Describe SMPS with a pushpull configuration.

**11.2.** Describe flyback SMPS with relevant equivalent circuits and waveforms. Derive the various expressions for voltages and currents involved.

**11.3.** A flyback SMPS supplies a load of 40A at 5V. The source voltage is 240V dc and the transformer initial magnetizing current is 0.4 A. The power MOSFET is operating at a frequency of 50 kHz with a duty cycle of 0.4. Determine the transformer turns ratio from primary to secondary and its inductance. Assume ideal components and no ripple in load voltage.

Find also the open-circuit voltage across the semiconductor device.

[**Ans.** 32, $L = 0.5714$ mH, 400 V]

**11.4.** Describe SMPSs using half-bridge and full-bridge configurations. Enumerate the advantages and disadvantages possessed by SMPSs.

**11.5.** What is an UPS ? Give its industrial applications. Describe rotating-type, short-break static and no-break static UPS configurations.

Why are nickel-cadmium batteries preferred over lead-acid type batteries in UPSs ?

**11.6.** (*a*) Give the merits and demerits of HVDC transmission system over ac transmission system.

(*b*) Describe both types of HVDC links with relevant circuits.

Derive the equivalent circuit of an HVDC system.

**11.7.** (*a*) Two six-pulse converters are used in bipolar HVDC transmission system. The ac systems are 3 phase, 11 kV, 50 Hz. The input transformers have a leakage inductance of 8 mH per phase. Resistance of each transmission line is 0.8 Ω. The inverter marginal angle is 18° and rectifier firing angle is 15°. Calculate current in dc line, rectifier output voltage and dc link voltage.

(*b*) An HVDC transmission system, using two six-pulse converters for bipolar transmission, is rated at 1000 MW, ± 250 kV. Determine the rms current and peak reverse voltage ratings for each of the thyristor valves. [**Ans.** (*a*) 276.07 A, 13684.3 V, 27.368 kV (*b*) 1633 A, 130.9 kV]

**11.8.** (*a*) What is a static switch ? List the merits of static switches over mechanical switches.

(*b*) The circuit of single-phase ac voltage controller is the same as that used for single-phase ac switch. Discuss how these two differ from each other.

(*c*) Describe single-phase ac switches using (*i*) one triac and (*ii*) bidirectional switches. Derive average and rms values of currents for the semiconductor devices used.

**11.9.** (*a*) Describe single-pole dc switches based on (*i*) a thyristor (*ii*) a transistor and (*iii*) a GTO.

(*b*) A single-phase ac switch, using two thyristors in antiparallel, is inserted between 230 V, 50 Hz source and a load of 10 kW at a *pf* of 0.8 lagging. Determine (*i*) the voltage and current ratings of thyristors and (*ii*) the firing angles of thyristors. Take a factor of safety of 2.

[**Ans.** (*b*) (*i*) 650.44 V, 76.85 A, 48.924 A (*ii*) 36.87° and 216.87°]

**11.10** (*a*) What is a static circuit breaker ? Describe statis ac as well as static dc circuit breakers.

(*b*) A static dc circuit breaker of Fig. 11.20 has input voltage of 220 V dc and load current of 5 A. Thyristor T1 has turn-off time of 15 μs and thyristor 2 has holding current of 6 mA. Find the values of parameters $R_2$, $C$ and load resistance. Take a factor of safety of 2.5.

[**Ans.** (*b*) 36.67 k Ω, 1.23 μF, 44 Ω]

**11.11** (*a*) What are solid state relays ? How is electrical isolation obtained in these relays ?

(*b*) Describe dc solid state and ac solid state relays with relevant circuit diagrams.

**11.12** (*a*) What are resonant converters ? Give their advantages over PWM controlled converters.

(*b*) Describe *M*-type ZCS resonant converter with relevant circuits and waveforms.

**11.13.** (*a*) Give the advantages and limitations of ZCS resonant converters.

(*b*) Describe *L*-type ZCS resonant converter with relevant circuits and waveforms.

**11.14.** (*a*) Give the principle of ZVS resonant converter.

(*b*) Describe a ZVS resonant converter with appropriate circuits and waveforms.

**11.15.** (*a*) Give the advantages and limitations of ZVS resonant converters.

(*b*) What is the difference between *L*-type and *M*-type ZCS converters ?

(*c*) Compare ZCS and ZVS converters.

# TWELVE

# Electric Drives

In this chapter, first the concept of electric drive is given and then dc and ac drives are described. The object of this chapter is not to discuss electric drives exhaustively but at an introductory level.

## 12.1. CONCEPT OF ELECTRIC DRIVE

In many of the industrial applications, an electric motor is the most important component. A complete production unit consists primarily of three basic components; an electric motor, an energy-transmitting device and the working (or driven) machine.

An electric motor is the source of motive power. An energy transmitting device delivers power from electric motor to the driven machine (or the load); it usually consists of shaft, belt, chain, rope etc. A working machine is the driven machine that performs the required production process. Examples of working machines are lathes, centrifugal pumps, drilling machines, lifts, conveyer belts, food-mixers etc. An electric motor together with its control equipment and energy-transmitting device forms an *electric drive* (10). An electric drive together with its working machine constitutes an *electric-drive system* (10). A ceiling-fan motor with its speed regulator but without blades is an example of electric drive. Other examples of electric drives are : a food-mixer without food to be processed, a motor and conveyer-belt without any material on its belt. Some examples of electric-drive systems are : a ceiling-fan motor with regulator and also with blades, a food-mixer with food to be processed, a motor and conveyer-belt with material on its belt and so on.

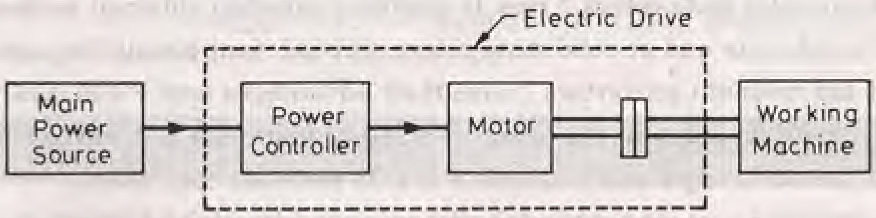


Fig. 12.1. An electric-drive system.

Fig. 12.1 shows an electric drive system. The electric drive, consisting of electric motor, its power controller and energy-transmitting shaft is also indicated in Fig. 12.1. A modern electric drive system using a feedback loop is illustrated in Fig. 12.2. In this chapter, electric drives controlled through power-electronic converters are only described.

Electric drives are mainly of two types : dc drives and ac drives. The two types differ from each other in that the motive power in dc and ac drives is provided by dc motors and ac motors respectively.

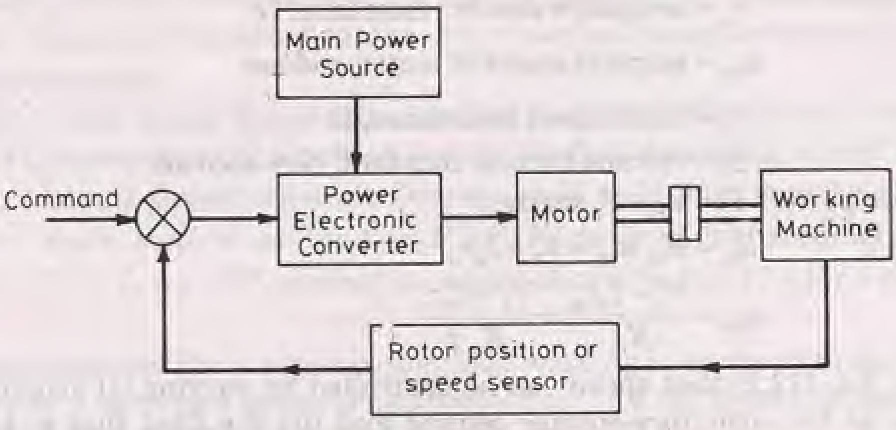


Fig. 12.2. Block diagram for a modern electric drive system using power electronic converter.

## 12.2. DC DRIVES

DC motors are used extensively in adjustable-speed drives and position control applications. Their speeds below base speed can be controlled by armature-voltage control. Speeds above base speed are obtained by field-flux control. As speed control methods for dc motors are simpler and less expensive than those for ac motors, dc motors are preferred where wide- speed control range is required.

Phase-controlled converters provide an adjustable dc output voltage from a fixed ac input voltage. DC choppers also provide dc output voltage from a fixed dc input voltage. The use of phase-controlled rectifiers and dc choppers for the speed control of dc motors have revolutionized the modern industrial controlled systems.

The dc motors used in conjunction with power-electronic converters are *dc separately excited motors* or *dc series motors*. These motors will, therefore, be studied here. Depending upon the type of ac source or the method of voltage control, dc drives are classified as under:

1. Single-phase dc drives
2. Three-phase dc drives
3. Chopper drives.

First the basic operating characteristics of dc motors are presented and then three speed control strategies as mentioned above are described.

### 12.2.1. Basic Performance Equations of DC Motors

Equivalent circuit and basic performance equations for a separately-excited dc motor and a dc series motor are presented in what follows.

(*a*) **Separately-excited dc motor.** The equivalent circuit for a separately-excited dc motor coupled with a load is shown in Fig. 12.3 (*a*) under steady-state conditions. The load torque $T_L$ opposes the electromagnetic torque $T_e$. For field circuit, $V_f = I_f \cdot r_f$

For armature circuit, $V_t = E_a + I_a r_a$ ...(12.1)

Motor back e.m.f. or motor armature e.m.f.,

$$E_a = K_a \phi \omega_m = K_m \omega_m$$

$$T_e = K_a \phi I_a = K_m I_a$$

Also, $T_e = D \omega_m + T_L$

where $V_t$ = motor terminal voltage, V

$I_a$ = armature current, A

$K_m = K_a \phi$ = torque constant, Nm/A or, emf constant, V-sec/rad

$r_a$ = armature circuit resistance, Ω

$\omega_m$ = angular speed of motor, rad/sec

$r_f$ = field circuit resistance, Ω

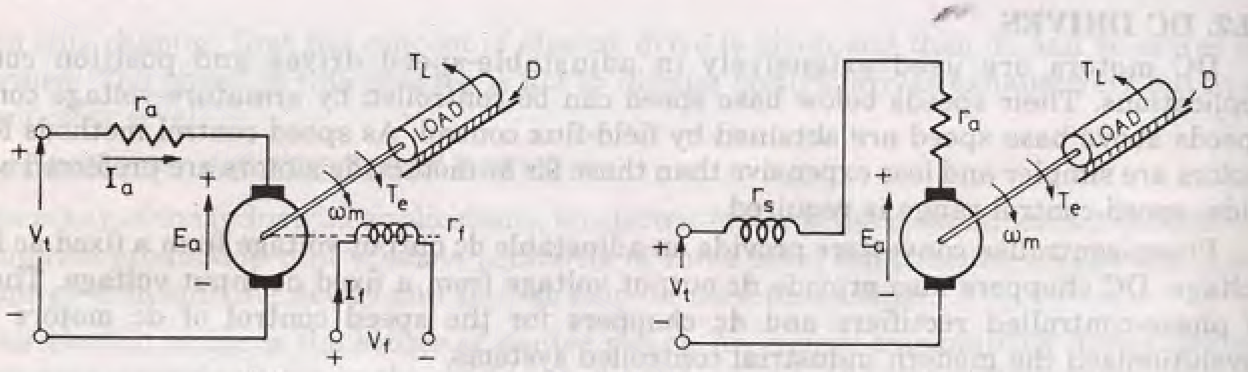
$D$ = viscous friction constant, Nm-sec/rad.

Electromagnetic power, $P = \omega_m \cdot T_e$ watts

From Eq. (12.1), $E_a = K_m\,\omega_m = V_t - I_a r_a$

or
$$\omega_m = \frac{V_t - I_a r_a}{K_m} = \frac{V_t - I_a r_a}{K_a\,\phi} \qquad ...(12.2)$$

It is seen from Eq. (12.2) that speed can be controlled by varying (*i*) armature terminal voltage $V_t$, known as the *armature-voltage control* and (*ii*) the filed flux $\phi$, known as the *field-flux control*.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 12.3. Equivalent circuit of a (*a*) separately-excited dc motor and (*b*) dc series motor.

Base speed is defined as the speed at which motor runs under rated armature voltage, rated field current and rated armature current. Speeds below base speed are obtained by armature-voltage control. During this control, armature current and field flux (or field

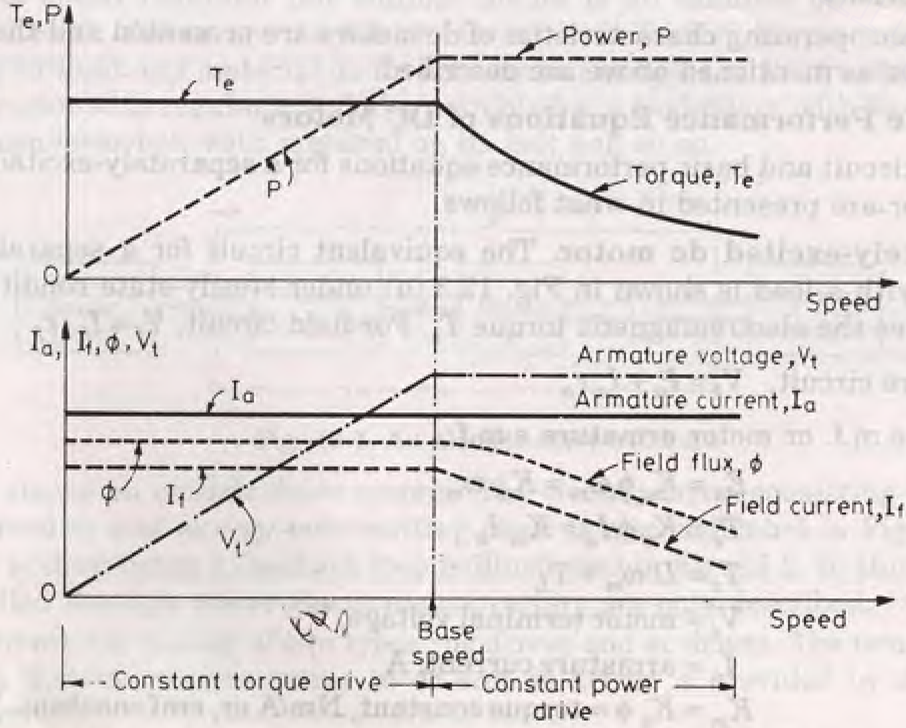


Fig. 12.4. Characteristics of a separately-excited dc motor.

current) are kept constant so as to meet the torque demand. So the armature voltage control method is also termed as *constant-torque drive method* because motor torque $T_e = K_a \phi I_a$ remains almost constant.

Speeds above base speed are obtained by varying the field current or field flux and by keeping $V_t$ and $I_a$ constant at their rated values. As flux decreases, speed increases so that motor e.m.f. $E_a$ remains almost constant. Consequently, field-flux control method is also called *constant-power drive method* as power $P = E_a I_a$ remains substantially constant. The variations of $Te$, $P$, $I_a$, $I_f$, $\phi$ and $V_t$ against speed are shown in Fig. 12.4 for a separately-excited dc motor.

(*b*) **DC series motor.** For a series motor, field winding in series with the armature circuit is designed to carry the rated armature current. Fig. 12.3 (*b*) gives the equivalent circuit of a dc series motor driving a load torque $T_L$.

For the armature circuit in Fig. 12.3 (*b*),

$$V_t = E_a + I_a (r_a + r_s) \qquad \text{...(12.3)}$$

$$T_e = K_a \phi I_a$$

For no saturation in the magnetic circuit, $\phi = CI_a$

$\therefore$ $$T_e = K_a C I_a^2 = k I_a^2$$

Also $$E_a = K_a \phi \omega_m = K_a C I_a \omega_m = k I_a \omega_m$$

From Eq. (12.3), $$V_t = k I_a \omega_m + I_a (r_a + r_s)$$

$$V_t = I_a [k \omega_m + (r_a + r_s)]$$

or speed, $$\omega_m = \frac{V_t - I_a (r_a + r_s)}{k I_a}$$

$$= \frac{V_t}{k I_a} - \frac{(r_a + r_s)}{k} \qquad \text{....(12.4)}$$

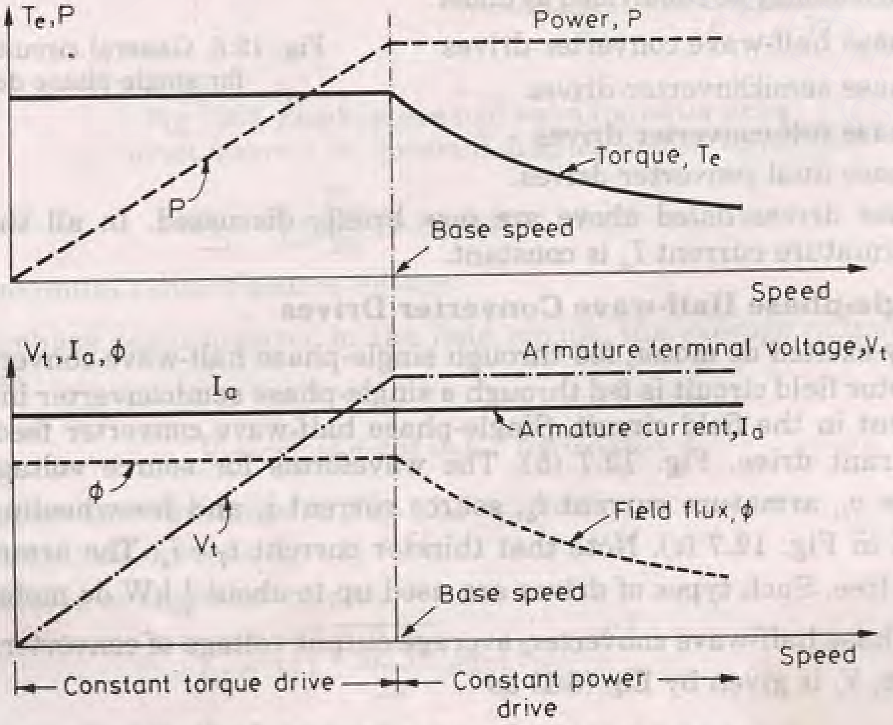


Fig. 12.5. Characteristics of a dc series motor.

where $r_s$ = series–field resistance, $\Omega$

$k = K_a C$ = a constant in Nm/A$^2$ or in V-s/A. rad.

For speed control up to base speed, armature terminal voltage $V_t$ is varied with $I_a$ kept constant. Therefore, $P\ (= V_t\ I_a)$ varies linearly and torque $T_e = k\ I_a^2$ remains constant. For speeds above base speed, series field flux is decreased by the use of diverter or tapped-field control and $I_a$ is kept constant. Therefore, torque $T_e = K_a\ \phi\ I_a$ decreases but power $P = E_a\ I_a$ remains substantially constant.

Speed control of dc motors, when fed through single-phase or three-phase converters, is now studied in what follows.

## 12.3. SINGLE-PHASE DC DRIVES

Fig. 12.6 illustrates the general circuit arrangement for the speed control of a separately-excited dc motor from a single- phase source. The firing angle control of converter 1 regulates the armature voltage applied to dc motor armature. Thus, the variation of delay angle $\alpha_1$ of converter 1 gives speed control below base speed. The variation of the firing angle $\alpha_2$ of converter 2 installed in the field circuit gives speeds above base speed. At low values of $\alpha_1$ for converter 1, armature current may become discontinuous. The discontinuous armature current causes (*i*) more losses in the armature and (*ii*) poor speed regulation. It is usual to insert an inductor *L* in series with the armature circuit to reduce the ripple in the armature current and to make the armature current continuous for low values of motor speeds. Depending upon the type of power-electronic converter used in the armature circuit, single-phase dc drives may be subdivided as under:

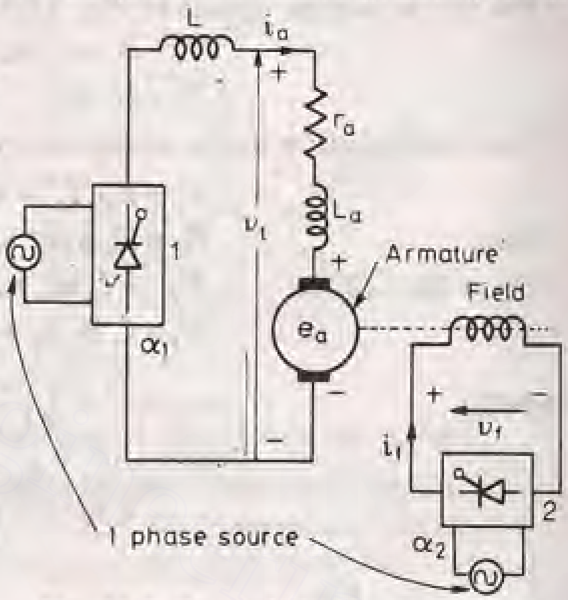


Fig. 12.6. General circuit arrangement for single-phase dc drives.

1. Single-phase half-wave converter drives
2. Single-phase semiconverter drives
3. Single-phase full-converter drives
4. Single-phase dual converter drives.

The converter drives listed above are now briefly discussed. In all these types, it is assumed that armature current $I_a$ is constant.

### 12.3.1. Single-phase Half-wave Converter Drives

A separately-excited dc motor, fed through single-phase half-wave converter, is shown in Fig. 12.7 (*a*). Motor field circuit is fed through a single-phase semiconverter in order to reduce the ripple content in the field circuit. Single-phase half-wave converter feeding a dc motor offers one-quadrant drive, Fig. 12.7 (*b*). The waveforms for source voltage $v_s$, armature terminal voltage $v_t$, armature current $i_a$, source current $i_s$ and freewheeling diode current $i_{fd}$ are sketched in Fig. 12.7 (c). Note that thirstor current $i_T = i_s$. The armature current is assumed ripple free. Such types of drives are used up to about $\frac{1}{2}$ kW dc motors.

For single-phase half-wave converter, average output voltage of converter, $V_0$ = armature terminal voltage, $V_t$ is given by Eq. (6.1) as

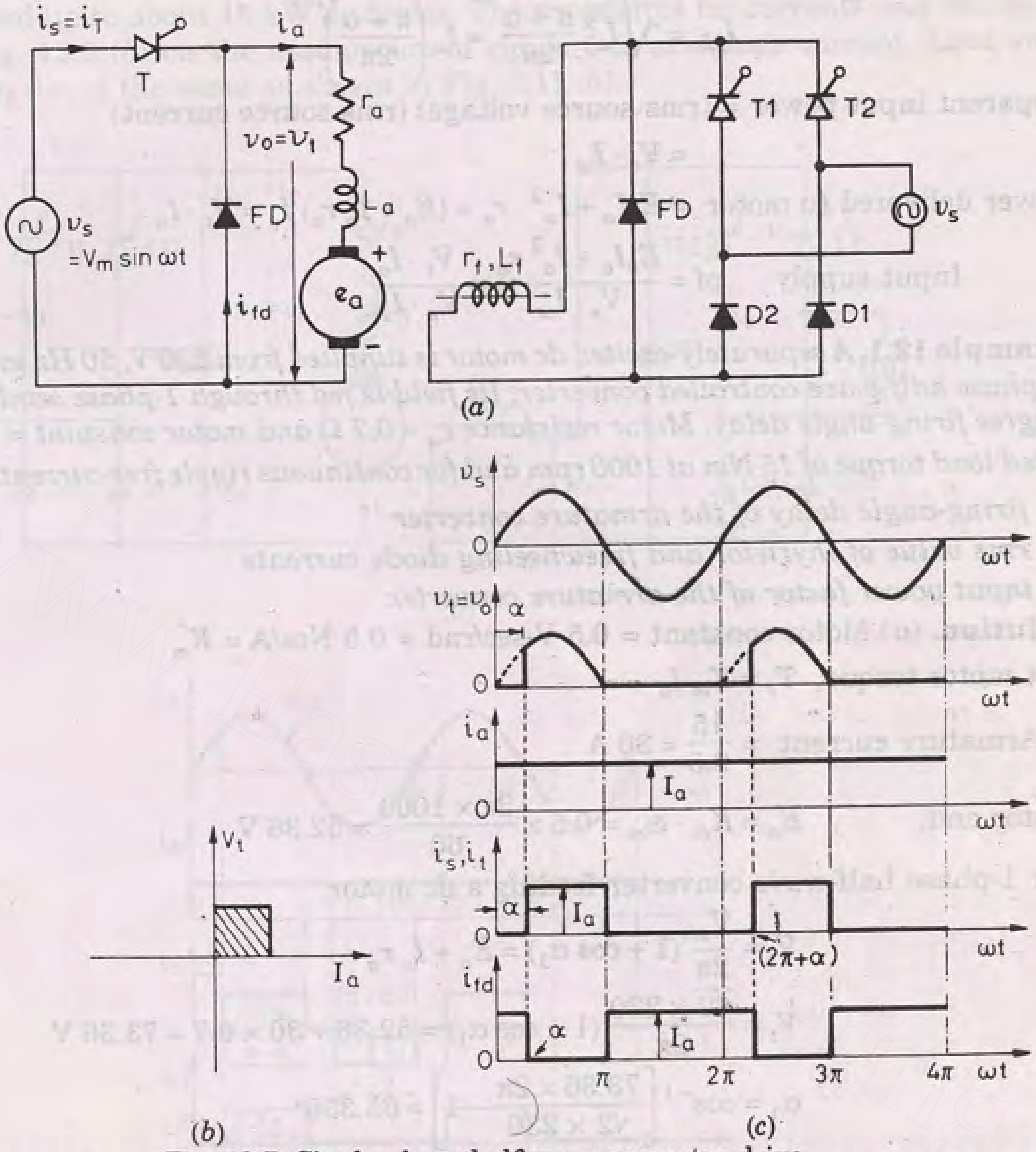


Fig. 12.7. Single-phase half-wave converter drive
(*a*) circuit diagram (*b*) quadrant diagram and (*c*) waveforms.

$$V_0 = V_t = \frac{V_m}{2\pi}(1 + \cos \alpha_1) \quad \text{for } 0 < \alpha_1 < \pi \qquad \text{...(12.5)}$$

where $V_m$ = maximum value of source voltage.

For single-phase semiconverter in the field circuit, the average output voltage is given by Eq. (6.29) as

$$V_f = \frac{V_m}{\pi}(1 + \cos \alpha_2) \quad \text{for } 0 < \alpha_2 < \pi \qquad \text{...(12.6)}$$

It is seen from the waveforms of Fig. 12.7 (*c*) that

rms value of armature current, $I_{ar} = I_a$

rms value of source or thyristor current,

$$I_{sr} = \sqrt{I_a^{\,2}\,\frac{\pi - \alpha}{2\pi}} = I_a \left(\frac{\pi - \alpha}{2\pi}\right)^{1/2} \qquad \text{...(12.7)}$$

rms value of freewheeling-diode current,

$$I_{fdr} = \sqrt{I_a^2 \frac{\pi + \alpha}{2\pi}} = I_a \left(\frac{\pi + \alpha}{2\pi}\right)^{1/2} \qquad \text{...(12.8)}$$

Apparent input power = (rms source voltage) (rms source current)

$$= V_s \cdot I_{sr}$$

Power delivered to motor $= E_a I_a + I_a^2 \cdot r_a = (E_a + I_a r_a) I_a = V_t \cdot I_a$

$$\text{Input supply} \quad \text{pf} = \frac{E_a I_a + I_a^2 r_a}{V_s \cdot I_{sr}} = \frac{V_t \cdot I_a}{V_s \cdot I_{sr}} \qquad \text{...(12.9)}$$

**Example 12.1.** *A separately-excited dc motor is supplied from 230 V, 50 Hz source through a single-phase half-wave controlled converter. Its field is fed through 1-phase semiconverter with zero degree firing-angle delay. Motor resistance $r_a = 0.7\ \Omega$ and motor constant = 0.5 V-sec/rad. For rated load torque of 15 Nm at 1000 rpm and for continuous ripple free currents, determine*

(*a*) *firing-angle delay of the armature converter*

(*b*) *rms value of thyristor and freewheeling diode currents*

(*c*) *input power factor of the armature converter.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Motor constant = 0.5 V-sec/rad = 0.5 Nm/A = $K_m$

But motor torque, $T_e = K_m I_a$

$\therefore$ Armature current $= \dfrac{15}{0.5} = 30$ A

Motor emf, $E_a = K_m \cdot \omega_m = 0.5 \times \dfrac{2\pi \times 1000}{60} = 52.36$ V

For 1-phase half-wave converter feeding a dc motor,

$$V_t = \frac{V_m}{2\pi}(1 + \cos\alpha_1) = E_a + I_a r_a$$

or

$$V_t = \frac{\sqrt{2} \times 230}{2\pi}(1 + \cos\alpha_1) = 52.36 + 30 \times 0.7 = 73.36 \text{ V}$$

$\therefore$

$$\alpha_1 = \cos^{-1}\left[\frac{73.36 \times 2\pi}{\sqrt{2} \times 230} - 1\right] = 65.336°$$

Thus, firing-angle delay of converter 1 is 65.336°

(*b*) Rms value of thyristor current, from Eq. (12.7), is

$$I_{Tr} = I_a \left(\frac{\pi - \alpha}{2\pi}\right)^{1/2} = 30\left(\frac{180 - 65.336}{360}\right)^{1/2} = 16.931 \text{ A} = I_{sr}$$

Rms value of free wheeling-diode current, from Eq. (12.8), is

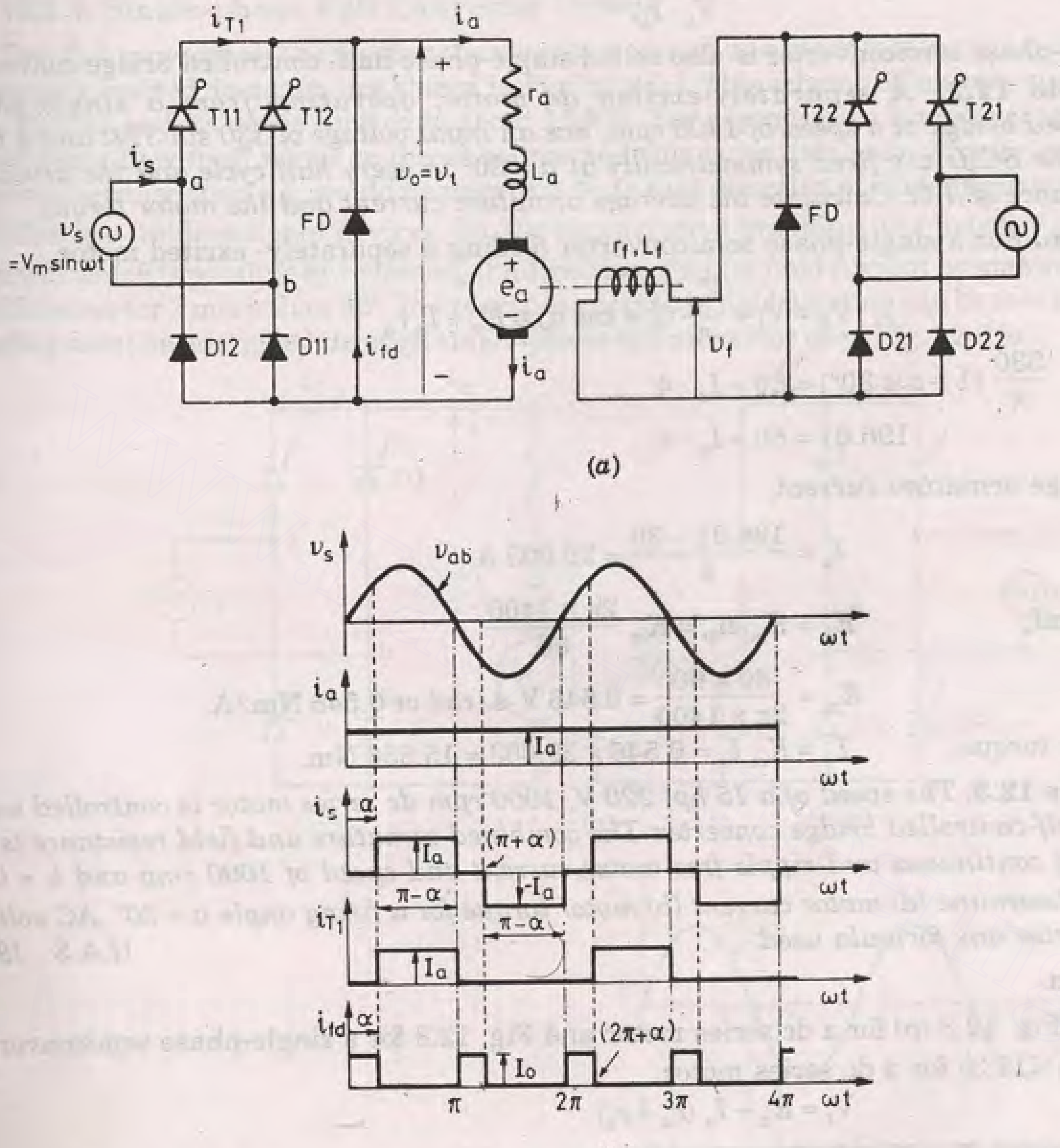
$$I_{fd \cdot r} = I_a \left(\frac{\pi + \alpha}{2\pi}\right)^{1/2} = 30\left(\frac{180 + 65.336}{360}\right)^{1/2} = 24.766 \text{ A}$$

(*c*) From Eq. (12.9), input power factor of armature converter

$$= \frac{V_t \cdot I_a}{V_s \cdot I_{sr}} = \frac{73.36 \times 30}{230 \times 16.931} = 0.5651 \text{ lag.}$$

### 12.3.2. Single-phase Semiconverter Drives

A separately-excited dc motor, fed through two single-phase semiconverters, one for the armature circuit and the other for the field circuit, is shown in Fig. 12.8 (*a*). Both converters 1 and 2 are connected to the same single-phase source. This converter also offers one-quadrant drive and is used up to about 15 kW dc drives. The waveforms for currents and voltages are sketched in Fig. 12.8 (*b*) on the assumption of ripple free armature current. Load voltage waveform for $v_0 = v_t$ is the same as shown in Fig. 6.11 (*b*).



(*a*)

(*b*)

Fig. 12.8. Single-phase semiconverter drive (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) waveforms.

For a single-phase semiconverter, average output voltage, from Eq. (6.29), is given by

$$V_0 = V_t = \frac{V_m}{\pi}(1 + \cos\alpha_1) \qquad \text{...(12.10 } a\text{)}$$

For field circuit, $$V_f = \frac{V_m}{\pi}(1 + \cos\alpha_2) \qquad \text{...(12.10 } b\text{)}$$

It is seen from the waveforms in Fig. 12.8 (*b*) that

rms value of source current, $$I_{sr} = I_a\left[\frac{\pi-\alpha}{\pi}\right]^{1/2} \qquad \text{...(12.11)}$$

rms value of freewheeling-diode current, $$I_{fdr} = I_a\left[\frac{\alpha}{\pi}\right]^{1/2} \qquad \text{...(12.12)}$$

rms value of thyristor current, $I_{Tr} = I_a \left( \frac{\pi - \alpha}{2\pi} \right)^{1/2}$ ...(12.13)

Input pf $= \frac{V_t \cdot I_a}{V_s \cdot I_{sr}}$

A single-phase semiconverter is also called single-phase half- controlled bridge converter.

**Example 12.2.** *A separately-excited dc motor, operating from a single-phase half-controlled bridge at a speed of 1400 rpm, has an input voltage of 330 sin 314t and a back emf 80 V. The SCRs are fired symmetrically at $\alpha = 30°$ in every half cycle and the armature has a resistance of 4 Ω. Calculate the average armature current and the motor torque.*

**Solution.** For a single-phase semiconverter feeding a separately- excited motor,

$$V_0 = V_t = \frac{V_m}{\pi}(1 + \cos\alpha) = E_a + I_a r_a$$

$$\frac{330}{\pi}(1 + \cos 30°) = 80 + I_a \cdot 4$$

$$196.01 = 80 + I_a \cdot 4$$

∴ Average armature current,

$$I_a = \frac{196.01 - 80}{4} = 29.003 \text{ A}$$

Motor emf, $E_a = K_m \omega_m = K_m \frac{2\pi \times 1400}{60}$

or $K_m = \frac{80 \times 60}{2\pi \times 1400} = 0.546$ V–s/rad or 0.546 Nm/A.

∴ Motor torque, $T_e = K_m I_a = 0.546 \times 29.003 = 15.836$ Nm.

**Example 12.3.** *The speed of a 15 hp, 220 V, 1000 rpm dc series motor is controlled using a 1-phase half-controlled bridge converter. The combined armature and field resistance is 0.2 Ω. Assuming continuous and ripple free motor current and speed of 1000 rmp and k = 0.03 Nm/amp$^2$, determine (a) motor current (b) motor torque for a firing angle $\alpha = 30°$. AC voltage is 250 V. Derive any formula used.* (*I.A.S., 1991*)

**Solution.**

Refer to Fig. 12.3 (*b*) for a dc series motor and Fig. 12.8 for a single-phase semiconverter. From Eq. (12.3) for a dc series motor,

$$V_t = E_a + I_a (r_a + r_s)$$

Motor torque, $T_e = K_a \phi I_a$. For no saturation, $\phi = C I_a$

∴ $T_e = K_a C I_a^2 = k I_a^2$

where $k$ is a constant in Nm/amp$^2$.

Also $E_a = \underset{\smile}{K_a \phi}\, \omega_m = K_a C I_a \omega_m = k I_a \omega_m$

Constant $k$ in the expressions for $T_e$ and $E_a$ is the same.

(*a*) From above, $V_t = V_0 = E_a + I_a (r_a + r_s)$

or $V_t = V_0 = \frac{V_m}{\pi}(1 + \cos\alpha) = E_a + I_a (r_a + r_s) = k I_a \omega_m + I_a (r_a + r_s)$

∴ $\frac{\sqrt{2} \times 250}{\pi}(1 + \cos 30°) = 0.03\, I_a \times \frac{2\pi \times 1000}{60} + 0.2\, I_a$

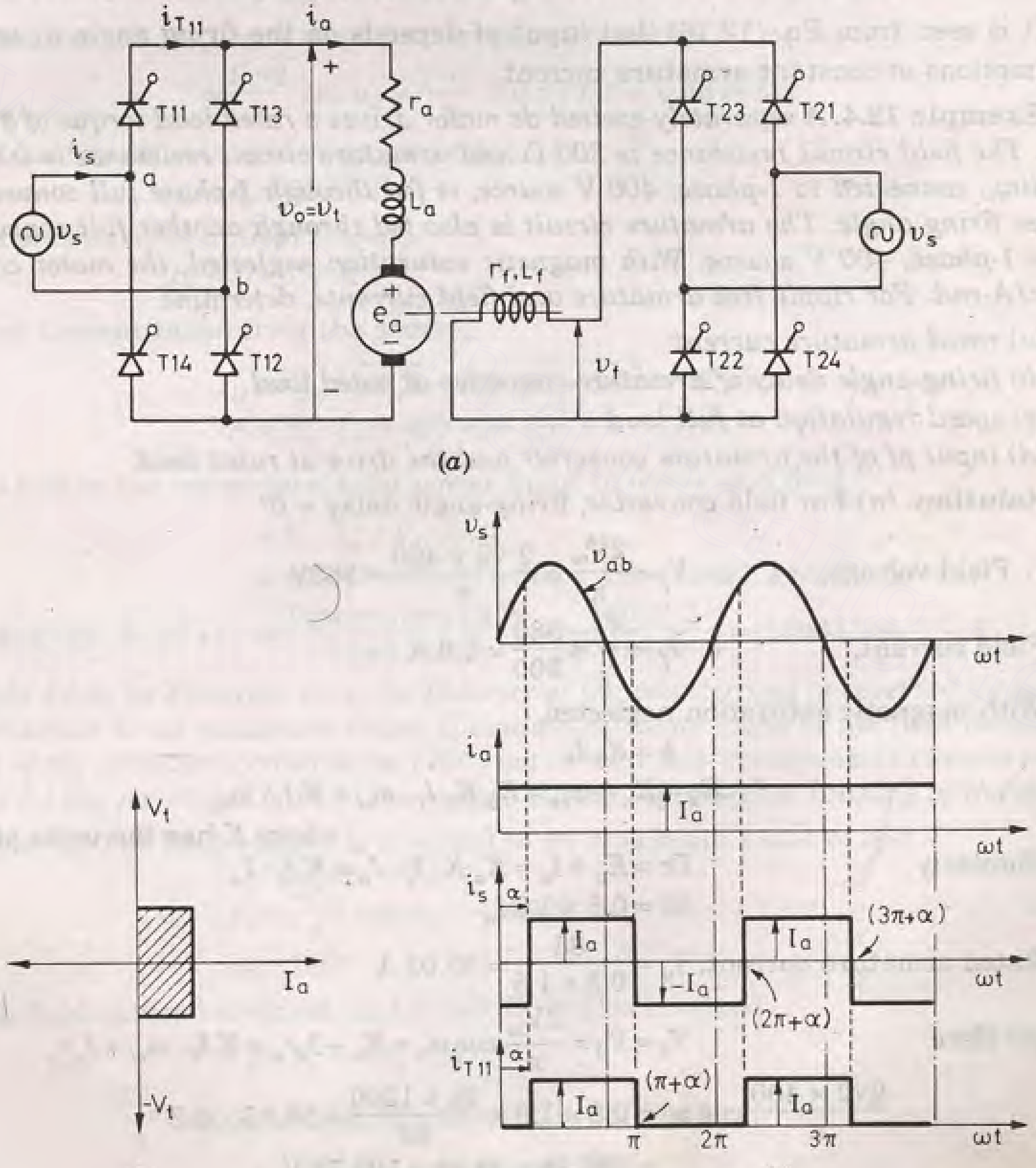
$209.97 = 3.3416\, I_a$

$\therefore$ Motor armature current, $I_a = \dfrac{209.97}{3.3416} = 62.84$ A

(*b*) Motor torque, $T_e = k\,I_a^{\,2} = 0.03\,(62.84)^2 = 118.466$ Nm.

### 12.3.3. Single-phase Full Converter Drives

Two full converters, one feeding the armature circuit and other feeding the field circuit of a separately-excited dc motor, are shown in Fig. 12.9 (*a*). This scheme offers two-quadrant drive, Fig. 12.9 (*b*) and its use is limited to about 15 kW. For regenerative braking of the motor, the power must flow from motor to the ac source and this is feasible only if motor counter emf is reversed because then $e_a i_a$ would be negative. Note that direction of current cannot be reversed as SCRs are unidirectional devices. So, for regenerative breaking, the polarity of $e_a$ must be reversed which is possible by reversing the direction of motor field current by making delay angle of full converter 2 more than 90°. In order that current in field winding can be reversed, the field winding must be energised through single-phase full converter as in Fig. 12.9 (*a*).



(*a*)

(*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 12.9. Single-phase full converter drive
(*a*) circuit diagram (*b*) two-quadrant diagram and (*c*) waveforms.

For the armature converter 1, $V_0 = V_t = \frac{2V_m}{\pi} \cos \alpha_1 \quad \text{for } 0 < \alpha_1 < \pi$ ...(12.14 *a*)

For the field converter 2, $V_f = \frac{2V_m}{\pi} \cos \alpha_2 \quad \text{for } 0 < \alpha_2 < \pi$ ...(12.14 *b*)

From the waveforms in Fig. 12.9 (*c*), it is seen that

rms value of source current, $I_{sr} = \sqrt{I_a^2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{\pi}} = I_a$

rms value of thyristor current, $I_{tr} = \left[ I_a^2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2\pi} \right]^{1/2} = \frac{I_a}{\sqrt{2}}$ ...(12.15)

From Eq. (12.9), input supply $\text{pf} = \frac{V_t \cdot I_a}{V_s \cdot I_{sr}} = \frac{2V_m}{\pi} \cos \alpha_1 \cdot \frac{I_a \cdot \sqrt{2}}{V_m \cdot I_a}$

$$= \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\pi} \cos \alpha_1 \quad \text{...(12.16)}$$

It is seen from Eq. (12.16) that input pf depends on the firing angle $\alpha_1$ only under the assumptions of constant armature current.

**Example 12.4.** *A separately-excited dc motor drives a rated load torque of 85 Nm at 1200 rpm. The field circuit resistance is 200 Ω and armature circuit resistance is 0.2 Ω. The field winding, connected to 1-phase, 400 V source, is fed through 1-phase full converter with zero degree firing angle. The armature circuit is also fed through another full converter from the same 1-phase, 400 V source. With magnetic saturation neglected, the motor constant is 0.8 V-sec/A-rad. For ripple free armature and field currents, determine*

(*a*) *rated armature current*
(*b*) *firing-angle delay of armature converter at rated load*
(*c*) *speed regulation at full load*
(*d*) *input pf of the armature converter and the drive at rated load.*

**Solution.** (*a*) For field converter, firing-angle delay = 0°

∴ Field voltage, $V_f = \frac{2V_m}{\pi} = \frac{2\sqrt{2} \times 400}{\pi} = 360\text{V}$

Field current, $I_f = \frac{V_f}{r_f} = \frac{360}{200} = 1.8 \text{ A}$

With magnetic saturation neglected,

$$\phi = K_1 I_f$$

∴ $E_a = K_a \phi \omega_m = K_a K_1 I_f \cdot \omega_m = K I_f \cdot \omega_m,$

where $K$ has the units of V-sec/A-rad.

Similarly, $Te = K_a \phi I_a = K_a K_1 I_f \cdot I_a = K I_f \cdot I_a$

∴ $85 = 0.8 \times 1.8 I_a$

Rated armature current, $I_a = \frac{85}{0.8 \times 1.8} = 59.03 \text{ A}$

(*b*) Here $V_t = V_0 = \frac{2V_m}{\pi} \cos \alpha_1 = E_a + I_a r_a = K I_f \cdot \omega_m + I_a r_a$

or $\frac{2\sqrt{2} \times 400}{\pi} \cos \alpha_1 = 0.8 \times 1.8 \times \frac{2\pi \times 1200}{60} + 59.03 \times 0.2$

$$= 180.96 + 11.81 = 192.77 \text{ V}$$

or $\alpha_1 = 57.63°$

(*c*) At the same firing angle of 57.63°, motor emf at no load,

$$E_a = V_t = V_0 = 192.77\text{ V} = K\,I_f\,\omega_{m0}$$

$\therefore$ No load speed, $\omega_{m0} = \dfrac{E_a}{K\,I_f} = \dfrac{192.77}{0.8 \times 1.8} = 133.87$ rad/sec

or $N = 1278.35$ rmp

Speed regulation at full load

$$= \frac{\text{No load speed–full–load speed}}{\text{full–load speed}}$$

$$= \left(\frac{1278.35 - 1200}{1200}\right) \times 100 = 6.53\%.$$

(*d*) Input *pf* of the armature converter

$$= \frac{V_t \cdot I_a}{V_s \cdot I_{ar}} = \frac{192.77 \times 59.03}{400 \times 59.03} = 0.4819 \text{ lag.}$$

Also, from Eq. (12.16), input pf of the armature converter

$$= \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\pi}\cos\alpha_1 = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\pi}\cos 57.63^\circ = 0.4819 \text{ lag}$$

Rms value of current in armature converter,

$$I_{ar} = I_a = 59.03\text{ A}$$

Rms value of current in field circuit,

$$I_{fr} = I_f = 1.8\text{ A}$$

Total rms current taken from the source,

$$I_{sr} = \sqrt{I_{ar}^{\,2} + I_{fr}^{\,2}} = \sqrt{59.03^2 + 1.8^2} = 59.06\text{ A}$$

Input $VA = V_s \cdot I_{sr} = 400 \times 59.06$

With no loss in the converters, total power input to motor and field

$$= V_t \cdot I_a + V_f \cdot I_f$$

$$= 192.77 \times 59.03 + 360 \times 1.8 = 12027.2 \text{ watts}$$

Input *pf* of the drive $= \dfrac{\text{Power input in W}}{\text{Input in VA}} = \dfrac{12027.2}{400 \times 59.06} = 0.5091$ lag.

**Example 12.5.** *In Example 12.4, the polarity of the counter emf is reversed by reversing the field excitation to its maximum value. Calculate (a) delay angle of the field converter (b) delay angle of the armature converter at 1200 rpm to maintain the armature current constant at 50 A and (c) the power fed back to the supply during regenerative braking of the motor.*

**Solution.** (*a*) The field voltage is reversed to its maximum value of 360 V.

$$\therefore \quad V_f = \frac{2V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha_2 = -\,360\ V$$

or $\alpha_2 = 180°$

(*b*) With field current reversed, motor emf $E_a$ is also reversed.

$$\therefore \quad V_0 = V_t = -E_a + I_a\,r_a$$

$$\frac{2V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha_1 = -\,180.96 + 50 \times 0.1 = -\,175.96\text{ V}$$

or $\alpha_1 = \cos^{-1}\left[\dfrac{-\,175.96 \times \pi}{2\sqrt{2} \times 400}\right] = 119.254°$

(c) Power fed back to the ac supply

$$= V_t \cdot I_a$$

$$= 175.96 \times 50 = 8798 \text{ watts}$$

**Example 12.6.** *A 220 V, 1500 rpm, 10 A separately-excited dc motor has an armature resistance of 1 ohm. It is fed from a single-phase fully-controlled bridge rectifier with an ac source voltage of 230 V, 50 Hz. Assuming continuous load current, compute*

(a) *motor speed at the firing angle of 30° and torque of 5 Nm*

(b) *developed torque at the firing angle of 45° and speed of 1000 rpm.* *(GATE, 1996)*

**Solution.** Under rated operating conditions of the separately- excited dc motor,

$$V_t = E_a + I_a r_a = K_m \, \omega_m + I_a \cdot r_a$$

or $$220 = K_m \cdot \frac{2\pi \times 1500}{60} + 10 \times 1 = 50 \cdot \pi \cdot K_m + 10$$

∴ Motor constant, $$K_m = \frac{220 - 10}{50\,\pi} = 1.337 \text{ V-s/rad or } 1.337 \text{ Nm/A.}$$

(a) For a torque of 5 Nm, motor armature current,

$$I_a = \frac{5}{1.337} = 3.74 \text{ A}$$

The equation giving the operation of converter-motor is

$$V_0 = V_t = E_a + I_a \, r_a$$

$$\frac{2V_m}{\pi} \cos\alpha = K_m \cdot \omega_m + I_a \, r_a$$

$$\frac{2\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi} \cos 30° = 1.337\, \omega_m + 3.74 \times 1$$

or $$\omega_m = \frac{179.3 - 3.74}{1.337} = 131.31 \text{ rad/sec}$$

or $$\frac{2\pi \cdot N}{60} = 131.31 \text{ rad/sec}$$

∴ $$\text{Motor speed} = \frac{131.31 \times 60}{2\pi} = \mathbf{1253.92 \text{ rpm}}$$

(b) For $\alpha = 45°$,

$$\frac{2\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi} \cos 45° = 1.337 \times \frac{2\pi \times 1000}{60} + I_a \times 1$$

$$146.4 = 140.01 + I_a \times 1$$

or $$I_a = \frac{6.39}{1} = 6.39 \text{ A}$$

Motor developed torque, $$T_e = K_m \, I_a = 1.337 \times 6.39 = \mathbf{8.543 \text{ Nm}}$$

**Examole 12.7.** *A 220V, 1000 rpm, 60A separately-excited dc motor has an armature resistance of 0.1 Ω. It is fed from a single-phase full converter with an ac source voltage of 230V, 50Hz. Assuming continuous conduction, compute*

(a) *firing angle for rated motor torque at 600 rpm*

(b) *firing angle for rated motor torque at (–500) rpm*

(c) *motor speed for α = 150° and half rated-torque.*

**Solution.** Under rated operating conditions of the motor,

$$V_t = E_a + I_a \, r_a = K_m \, \omega_m + I_a \, r_a$$

or
$$220 = K_m \frac{2\pi \times 1000}{60} + 60 \times 0.1$$

$$K_m = \left[\frac{220 - 6}{2\pi \times 1000}\right] \times 60 = 2.044 \text{ V-s/rad or } 2.044 \text{ Nm/A}.$$

(*a*) For rated motor torque, armature current = 60 A

$$\therefore \quad V_0 = V_t = K_m\, \omega_m + I_a\, r_a$$

$$\frac{2\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi} \cos \alpha = 2.044\, \frac{2\pi \times 600}{60} + 60 \times 0.1 = 134.43 \text{ V}$$

or
$$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left[\frac{134.43 \times \pi}{2\sqrt{2} \times 230}\right] = 49.512°$$

(*b*) At (–500) rpm,

$$\frac{2\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi} \cos \alpha = 2.044\, \frac{2\pi\,(-500)}{60} + 60 \times 0.1$$

$$= -107.024 + 6 = -101.024 \text{ V}$$

$$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left[\frac{-101.024 \times \pi}{2\sqrt{2} \times 230}\right] = 119.274°$$

(*c*) At half-rated torque, motor armature current

$$= \frac{1}{2} \times \text{rated current} = \frac{1}{2} \times 60 = 30 \text{ A}$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{2\sqrt{2} \times 230}{\pi} \cos (150°) = 2.044 \times \omega_m + 30 \times 0.1$$

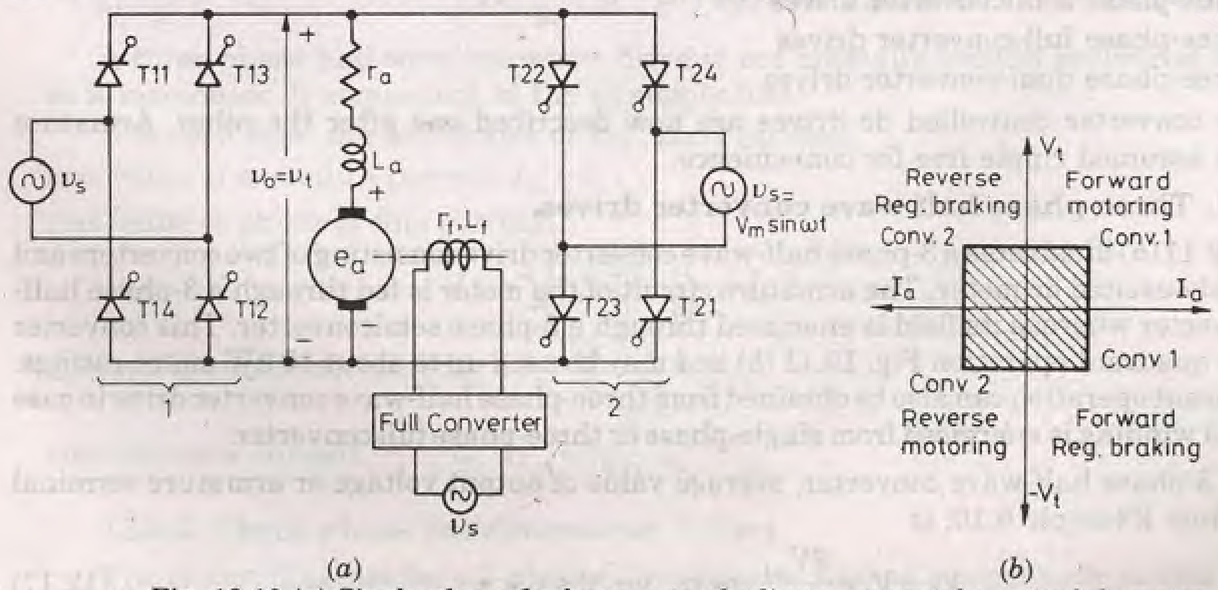
$$-179.30 = 2.044\, \omega_m + 3$$

$$\omega_m = \frac{-182.3°}{2.044} = -89.188 \text{ rad/sec}$$

$$\therefore \text{ Speed,} \quad N = -\frac{89.188 \times 60}{2\pi} = -851.683 \text{ rpm}.$$

### 12.3.4. Single-phase Dual Converter Drives

A single-phase dual converter, obtained by connecting two full-converters in anti-parallel, is shown feeding a separately- excited dc motor in Fig. 12.10 (*a*). Its use is limited to about 15 kW dc drives. It offers four-quadrant operation, Fig. 12.10 (*b*). For working in first and



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 12.10 (*a*) Single-phase dual converter feeding a separately-excited dc motor (*b*) four-quadrant diagram.

fourth quadrants, converter 1 is in operation. For operation in second and third quadrants, converter 2 is energised. Four-quadrant operation demands that field winding of the motor is energised from a single-phase, or three-phase, full converter.

For converter 1 in operation, $V_t = \frac{2V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha_1$ for $0 \le \alpha_1 \le \pi$

For converter 2 in operation, $V_t = \frac{2V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha_2$ for $0 \le \alpha_2 \le \pi$

where $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = \pi$

For field converter, $V_f = \frac{2V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha_3$ for $0 \le \alpha_3 \le \pi$

Note that in Fig. 12.10,

(*i*) Converter 1 with $\alpha_1 < 90°$ operates the motor in forward motoring mode in quadrant 1.

(*ii*) Converter 1 with $\alpha_1 > 90°$ and with field excitation reversed operates the motor in forward regenerative braking mode in quadrant 4.

(*iii*) Converter 2 with $\alpha_2 < 90°$ operates the motor in reverse motoring mode in quadrant 3.

(*iv*) Converter 2 with $\alpha_2 > 90°$ and with field excitation reversed operates the motor in reverse regenerative braking mode in quadrant 2.

## 12.4. THREE-PHASE DC DRIVES

Large dc motor drives are always fed through three-phase converters for their speed control. A three-phase controlled converter feeds power to the armature circuit for obtaining speeds below base speed. Another three-phase controlled converter is inserted in the field circuit for getting speeds above base speed.

The output frequency of three-phase converters is higher than those of single-phase converters. Therefore, for reducing the armature current ripple, the inductance required in a three-phase dc drive is of lower value than that in a single-phase dc drive. As the armature current is mostly continuous, the motor performance in 3-phase dc drives is superior to those in single-phase dc drives.

The three-phase dc drives, as in single-phase dc drives, may be subdivided as under :

1. Three-phase half-wave converter drives
2. Three-phase semiconverter drives
3. Three-phase full-converter drives
4. Three-phase dual-converter drives

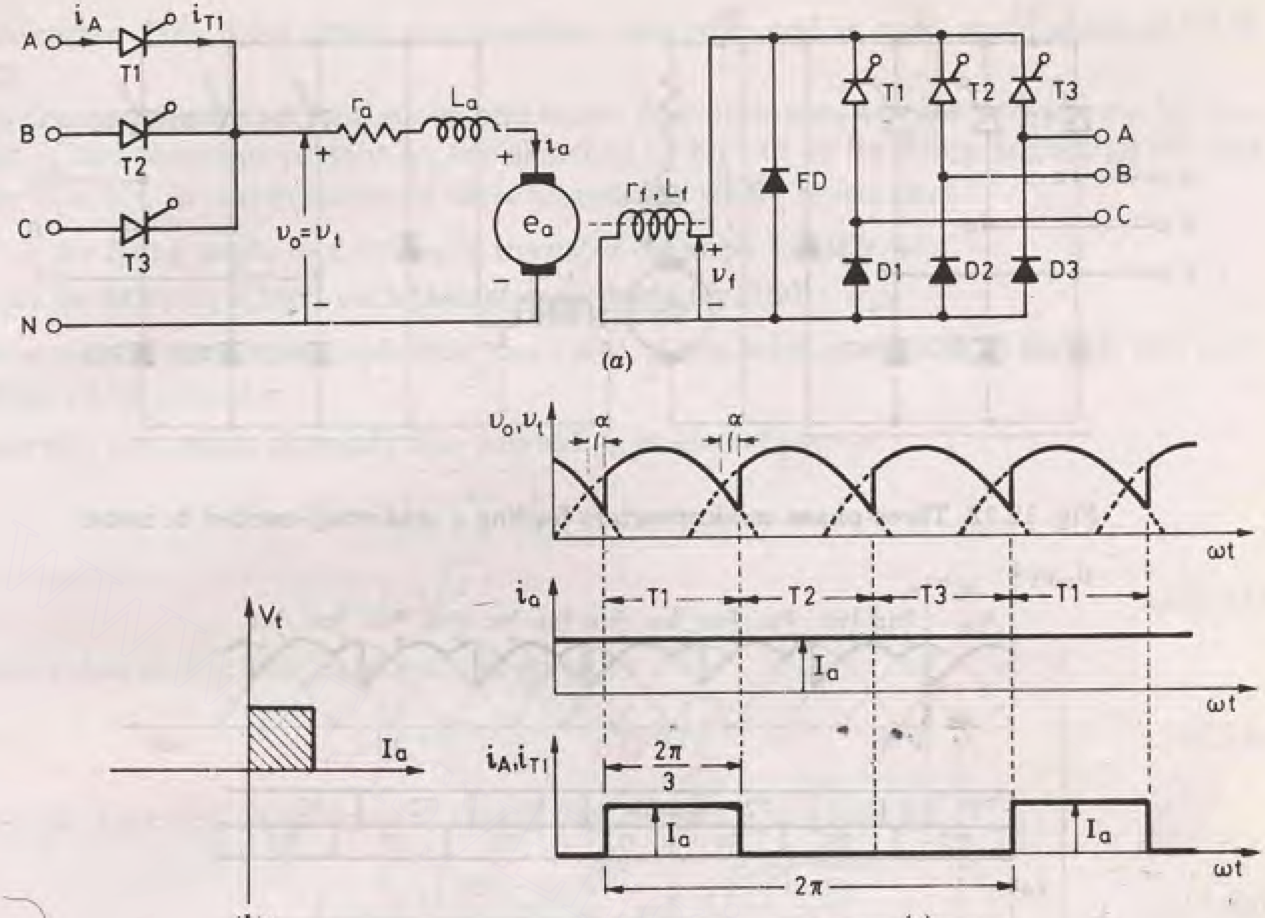
These converter controlled dc drives are now described one after the other. Armature current is assumed ripple free for convenience.

### 12.4.1. Three-phase half-wave converter drives.

Fig. 12.11 (*a*) illustrates a 3-phase half-wave converter drive consisting of two converters and a separately-excited dc motor. The armature circuit of the motor is fed through a 3-phase half-wave converter whereas its field is energised through a 3-phase semiconverter. This converter offers one-quadrant operation Fig. 12.11 (*b*) and may be used up to about 40 kW motor ratings. Two-quadrant operation can also be obtained from three-phase half-wave converter drive in case motor field winding is energised from single-phase or three-phase full converter.

For a 3-phase half-wave converter, average value of output voltage or armature terminal voltage, from Example 6.10, is

$$V_0 = V_t = \frac{3V_{ml}}{2\pi}\cos\alpha_1 \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \le \alpha < \pi \qquad ...(12.17)$$



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 12.11. Three-phase half-wave converter drive (a) circuit diagram (b) quadrant diagram (c) waveforms.

where $V_{ml}$ = maximum value of line voltage and $\alpha_1$ is the firing angle for converter 1. The voltage expression of Eq. (12.17) is valid only for continuous armature current. For three-phase semiconverter, the average value of field voltage, from Eq. (6.39), is given by

$$V_f = \frac{3V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1 + \cos\alpha_2) \quad \text{for } 0 \le \alpha \le \pi \qquad \text{...(12.18)}$$

A three-phase half-wave converter drive is not normally used in industrial applications as it introduces dc component in the ac supply line.

It is seen from the waveforms of Fig. 12.11 (c) that

rms value of armature current, $I_{ar} = I_a$

rms value of phase or line current,

$$I_{sr} = \sqrt{I_a^2 \frac{2\pi}{3} \cdot \frac{1}{2\pi}} = I_a\sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} \qquad \text{...(12.19)}$$

average thyristor current, $I_{TA} = I_a \cdot \frac{2\pi}{3} \cdot \frac{1}{2\pi} = \frac{1}{3} I_a$ ...(12.20)

rms thyristor current, $I_{Tr} = I_{sr} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}}\, I_a$ ...(12.19)

### 12.4.2. Three-phase Semiconverter Drives

The circuit diagram for a 3-phase semiconverter feeding a separately-excited dc motor is shown in Fig. 12.12. The field winding of the motor is also connected to three-phase

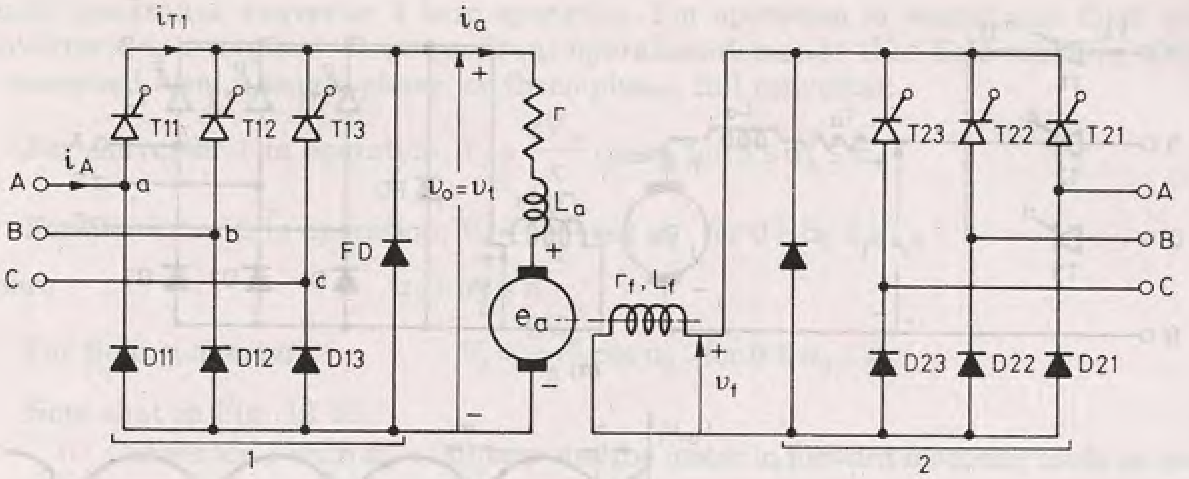


Fig. 12.12. Three-phase semiconverters feeding a separately-excited dc motor.

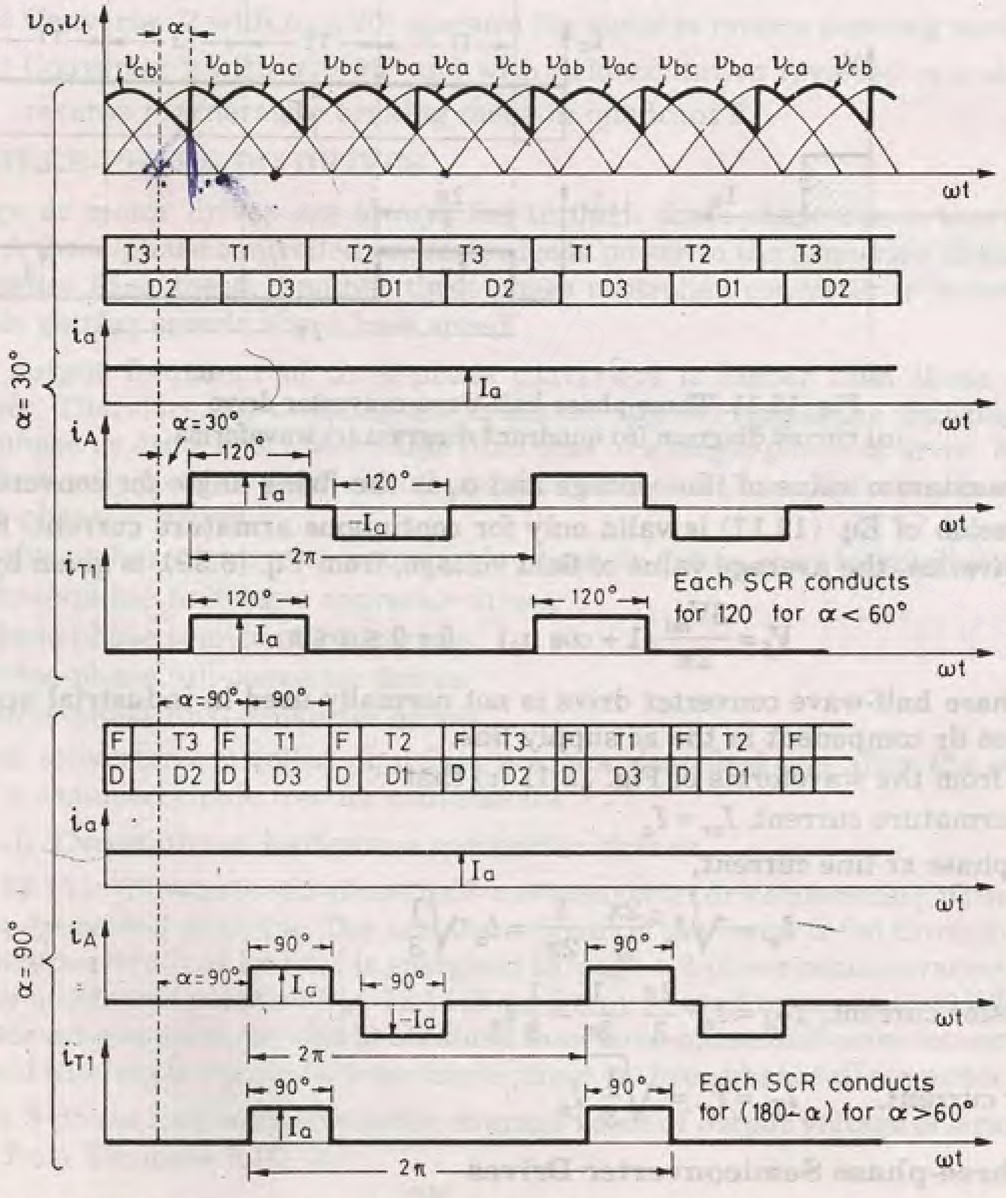


Fig. 12.13. Voltage and current waveforms for a three-phase semiconverter drive of Fig. 12.12.

semiconverter. This drive offers one quadrant operation and is used up to about 115 kW ratings.

On the assumption of continuous and ripple free armature current, waveforms for line current $i_A$ and thyristor current $i_{T1}$ are sketched in Fig. 12.13 for firing angle $\alpha_1 = 30°$ and also for $\alpha_1 = 90°$. An examination of these waveforms would reveal that

(*i*) for firing angle $\alpha_1 \le 60°$, each thyristor conducts for 120° and

(*ii*) for $60° < \alpha_1 < 180°$, each thyristor conducts for $(180° - \alpha_1)$.

As armature current is ripple free, rms value of armature current, $I_{ar} = I_a$. It is also seen from Fig. 12.13 as under :

For $\alpha_1 < 60°$, rms value of supply line current, $i_A$ is given by,

$$I_{sr} = \sqrt{I_a^{\,2}\,\frac{2\pi}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{\pi}}$$

$$= I_a\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \qquad \text{...(12.21)}$$

and rms value of thyristor current $i_{T1}$ is given by

$$I_{Tr} = \left[I_a^{\,2}\,\frac{2\pi}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{2\pi}\right]^{1/2} = I_a\sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} \qquad \text{...(12.22)}$$

For $60° < \alpha < 180°$, rms value of supply line current $i_A$ is given by

$$I_{sr} = \left[I_a^{\,2}\left(\frac{180-\alpha_1}{180}\right)\right]^{1/2} = I_a\sqrt{\frac{180-\alpha_1}{180}} \qquad \text{...(12.23)}$$

and rms value of thyristor current $i_{T1}$ is given by

$$I_{Tr} = I_a\left(\frac{180-\alpha_1}{360}\right)^{1/2} \qquad \text{...(12.24)}$$

From above, it is obvious that average thyristor current is $\frac{1}{3}I_a$ for $\alpha_1 < 60°$ and $\left(\frac{180-\alpha_1}{360}\right)I_a$ for $60° < \alpha_1 < 180°$.

For converter 1, $$V_0 = V_t = \frac{3V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1+\cos\alpha_1) \text{ for } 0 < \alpha_1 < \pi \qquad \text{...(12.25 a)}$$

For converter 2, $$V_f = \frac{3V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1+\cos\alpha_2) \text{ for } 0 < \alpha_2 < \pi \qquad \text{...(12.25 b)}$$

**Example 12.8.** *The speed of a separately-excited dc motor is controlled by means of a 3-phase semiconverter from a 3-phase, 415V, 50 Hz supply. The motor constants are : inductance 10 mH, resistance 0.9 ohm and armature constant 1.5 V/rad/s (Nm/A). Calculate the speed of this motor at a torque of 50 Nm when the converter is fired at 45°. Neglect losses in the converter.*

**Solution.** Armature constant, $K_m = 1.5$ V/rad/s or 1.5 Nm/A.

Motor torque, $T_e = K_m I_a = 50$ Nm

$\therefore$ Motor armature current, $I_a = \frac{50}{1.5} = \frac{100}{3}$ A

The equation for the converter-motor combination is

$$\frac{3V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1+\cos\alpha_1) = E_a + I_a r_a = K_m\,\omega_m + I_a\,r_a$$

$$\frac{3\sqrt{2}\times 415}{2\pi}(1+\cos 45°) = 1.5\times\omega_m + \frac{100}{3}\times 0.9$$

$$478.3 = 1.5\,\omega_m + 30$$

or $$\omega_m = \frac{478.3-30}{1.5} = 298.867 \text{ rad/s}$$

or $$\frac{2\pi N}{60} = \omega_m = 298.867 \text{ rad/s}$$

∴ Motor speed, $$N = \frac{298.867\times 60}{2\pi} = 2853.97 \text{ rpm}$$

**Example 12.9.** *A 600V, 1500 rpm, 80A separately-excited dc motor is fed through a three-phase semiconverter from 3-phase 400V supply. Motor armature resistance is 1 Ω. Armature current is assumed constant.*

(*a*) *For a firing angle of 45° at 1200 rpm, compute the rms values of source and thyristor currents, average value of thyristor current and the input supply power factor.*

(*b*) *Repeat part (a) for a firing angle of 90° at 700 rpm.*

**Solution.** Under rated operating conditions,

$$V_t = E_a + I_a\,r_a = K_m\,\omega_m + I_a r_a$$

$$600 = K_m\frac{2\pi\times 1500}{60} + 80\times 1$$

or Motor constant $$K_m = \frac{520\times 60}{2\pi\times 1500} = 3.31 \text{ V-s/rad (or Nm/A)}.$$

(*a*) For the converter-motor combination,

$$V_t = \frac{3V_{ml}}{2\pi}(1+\cos\alpha_1) = E_a + I_a\,r_a = K_m\,\omega_m + I_a\,r_a$$

$$\frac{3\sqrt{2}\times 400}{2\pi}(1+\cos 45°) = 3.31\times\frac{2\pi\times 1200}{60} + I_a\times 1$$

$$461.01 = 415.95 + I_a$$

∴ Armature current, $I_a = 45.06$ A

From Eq. (12.21), rms value of source current,

$$I_{sr} = I_a\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = 45.06\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = 36.791 \text{ A}$$

From Eq. (12.22), rms value of thyristor current,

$$= I_a\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} = 45.06\,\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} = 26.015 \text{ A}$$

Average value of thyristor current

$$= \frac{1}{3}\times 45.06 = 15.02 \text{ A}$$

Input supply power factor $$= \frac{V_t\cdot I_a}{\sqrt{3}\cdot V_s\cdot I_{sr}} = \frac{461.01\times 45.06}{\sqrt{3}\times 400\times 36.791} = 0.815 \text{ lag}$$

(*b*) $$V_t = \frac{3\sqrt{2} \times 400}{2\pi}(1 + \cos 90°) = 3.31 \times \frac{2\pi \times 700}{60} + I_a \times 1$$

$$270.05 = 242.64 + I_a$$

∴ Armature current, $I_a = 27.41$ A

Rms value of source current, $I_{sr} = 27.41 \cdot \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = 22.38$ A

Rms value of thyristor current, $I_{Tr} = 27.41 \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} = 15.825$ A

Average value of thyristor current $= \frac{27.41}{3} = 9.137$ A

Input supply power factor $= \frac{270.05 \times 27.41}{\sqrt{3} \times 400 \times 22.38} = 0.4774$ lag.

### 12.4.3. Three-phase Full-converter Drives

The circuit diagram, consisting of one three-phase full converter in the armature circuit and another 3-phase (or 1-phase) full converter in the field circuit, is as shown in Fig. 12.14. It offers two-quadrant drive and is used up to about 1500 kW drives. For regenerative purposes, the polarity of counter emf is reversed by reversing the field excitation by making the firing-angle delay of converter 2 more than 90°.

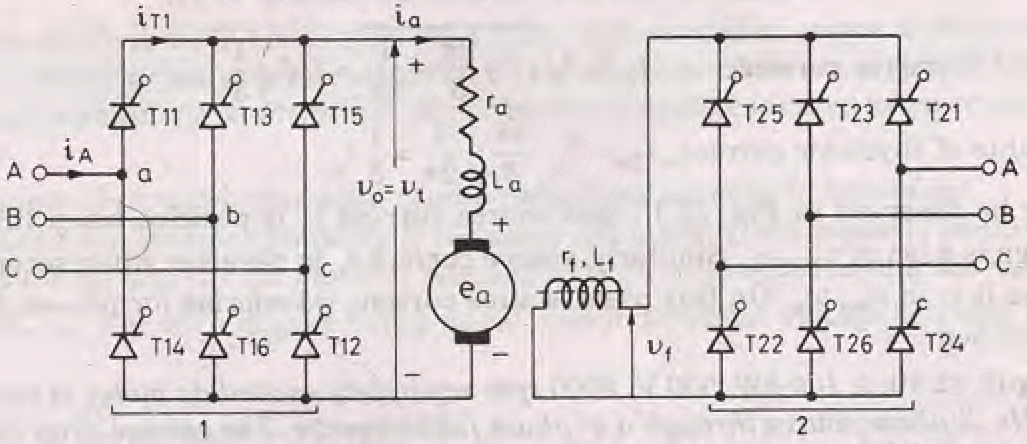


Fig. 12.14. Three-phase full converters feeding a separately-excited dc motor.

For converter 1 in the armature circuit, the average output voltage, from Eq. (6.38), is given by

$$V_0 = V_t = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha_1 \quad \text{for } 0 \le \alpha_1 \le \pi \qquad \text{...(12.26 } a\text{)}$$

For converter 2 in the field circuit,

$$V_f = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha_2 \quad \text{for } 0 \le \alpha_2 \le \pi \qquad \text{...(12.26 } b\text{)}$$

where $V_{ml}$ = maximum value of line voltage.

Voltage and current waveforms for $\alpha = 30°$ and for constant armature current are sketched in Fig. 12.15. It is seen from this figure that each thyristor conducts for 120° for continuous armature current. This gives

rms value of armature current, $I_{ar} = I_a$

rms value of source current, $I_{sr} = \sqrt{I_a^{\,2} \cdot \frac{2\pi}{3} \times \frac{1}{\pi}} = I_a\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}$ ...(12.27)

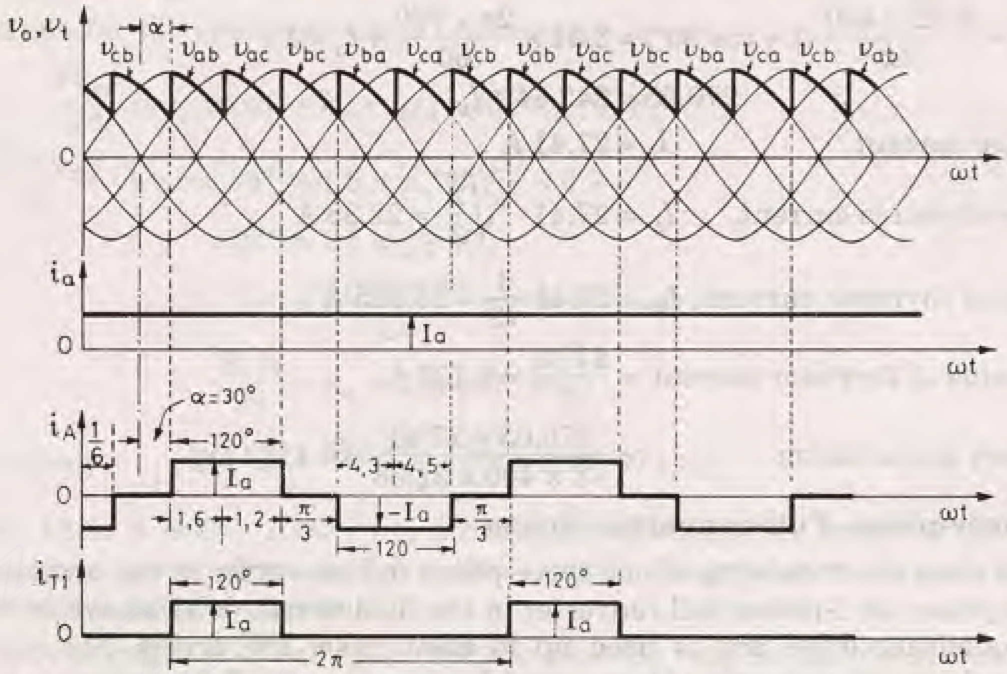


Fig. 12.15. Voltage and current waveforms for firing angle of 30° for a three-phase full-converter drive of Fig. 12.14.

rms value of thyristor current, $$I_{Tr} = \sqrt{I_a^2 \cdot \frac{2\pi}{3} \times \frac{1}{2\pi}} = I_a \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} \qquad \text{...(12.28)}$$

average value of thyristor current, $$I_{TA} = I_a \cdot \frac{2\pi}{3} \times \frac{1}{2\pi} = \frac{1}{3} I_a \qquad \text{...(12.29)}$$

It may be observed in Fig. 12.15 that source current $i_A$ is positive when first subscript with voltage is a, as in $v_{ab}$, $v_{ac}$. Similarly, source current $i_A$ is negative when second subscript is a, just as it is in $v_{ba}$, $v_{ca}$. On this basis, source current waveforms for phases $B$ and $C$ can also be sketched.

**Example 12.10.** *A 100 kW, 500 V, 2000 rpm separately-excited dc motor is energised from 400 V, 50 Hz, 3-phase source through a 3- phase full converter. The voltage drop in conducting thyristors is 2V. The dc motor parameters are as under :*

$$r_a = 0.1\ \Omega,\ K_m = 1.6\ \text{V-s/rad},\ L_a = 8\ \text{mH}.$$

*Rated armature current = 210 A. No-load armature current = 10% of rated current. Armature current is continuous and ripple free.*

*(a) Find the no-load speed at firing angle of 30°.*

*(b) Find the firing angle for a speed of 2000 rpm at rated armature current. Determine also the supply power factor.*

*(c) Find the speed regulation for the firing angle obtained in part (b).*

**Solution.** (*a*) The motor terminal voltage,

$$V_0 = V_t = \frac{3\sqrt{2} \times 400}{\pi} \cos 30° = 467.75 \text{ V}$$

Also $$V_t = E_a + I_a r_a + 2$$

or $$467.75 = K_m\, \omega_m + 21 \times 0.1 + 2$$

$$\therefore \text{ No-load motor speed} = \frac{467.75 - 4.1}{1.6} \text{ rad/sec or } 2767.2 \text{ rpm.}$$

(*b*) At rated armature current and at 2000 rpm,

$$V_0 = V_t = K_m \cdot \omega_m + I_a r_a + 2$$

or $$\frac{3\sqrt{2}\times 400}{\pi}\cos\alpha = 1.6\times\frac{2\pi\times 2000}{60} + 210\times 0.1 + 2 = 358.1 \text{ V}$$

or $$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left[\frac{358.1\times\pi}{3\sqrt{2}\times 400}\right] = 48.47°$$

Rms value of source current, from Eq. (12.27) is

$$I_{sr} = I_a\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = 210\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = 171.46 \text{ A}$$

$\therefore$ Supply pf $$= \frac{V_t \cdot I_a}{\sqrt{3}\, V_s \cdot I_{sr}} = \frac{358.10\times 210}{\sqrt{3}\times 400\times 171.46} = 0.633 \text{ lag}$$

(*c*) At rated load, speed is 2000 rpm, armature terminal voltage $V_t = 358.1$ V and firing angle is 48.47°. At this firing angle, if rated load is reduced to zero, then

$$V_0 = V_t = 358.1 = K_m \cdot \omega_m + 21\times 0.1 + 2$$

or $$\omega_m = \frac{358.1 - 41}{1.6} \text{ rad/sec or } 2112.8 \text{ rpm}$$

$\therefore$ Speed regulation $$= \frac{2112.8 - 2000}{2000}\times 100 = 5.64\%$$

**Example 12.11.** *A 230V, 1500 rpm, 20 A separately-excited dc motor is fed from 3-phase full converter. Motor armature resistance is 0.6 Ω. Full converter is connected to 400 V, 50 Hz source through a delta-star transformer. Motor terminal voltage is rated when converter firing angle is zero.*

(*a*) *Calculate the transformer phase turns-ratio from primary to secondary.*

(*b*) *Calculate the firing angle delay of the converter when (i) the motor is running at 1000 rpm at rated torque and (ii) the motor is running at (– 900) rpm and at half the rated torque.*

**Solution.** (*a*) For zero degree firing angle, motor terminal voltage is rated *i.e.* 230 V. Therefore,

$$\frac{3\sqrt{2}\, V_l}{\pi}\cos 0° = V_t = 230 \text{ V}$$

or $$V_l = \frac{230\times\pi}{3\sqrt{2}\times 1} = 170.34 \text{ V}$$

Here $V_l$ is the line voltage. Per-phase voltage on transformer star side is

$$V_{ph} = \frac{170.34}{\sqrt{3}} = 98.35 \text{ V}$$

Per-phase voltage input to transformer delta = 400 V

$\therefore$ Transformer phase turns ratio from primary to secondary

$$= \frac{400}{98.35} = 4.067.$$

(*b*) (*i*) At 1500 rpm, $E_a = V_t - I_a r_a = 230 - 20\times 0.6 = 218$ V

At 1000 rpm, motor emf $$= \frac{218}{1500}\times 1000 = 145.33 \text{ V}$$

For this motor emf, armature terminal voltage at rated torque is

$$V_t = E_a + I_a r_a = 145.33 + 20\times 0.6 = 157.33 \text{ V}$$

But $$\frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha = V_0 = V_t = 157.33 \text{ V}$$

or $$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left[\frac{157.33\times\pi}{3\sqrt{2}\times 170.34}\right] = 46.84°$$

(*ii*) At half the rated torque, armature current $I_a = \frac{1}{2}\times$ rated current

$$= \frac{1}{2}\times 20 = 10 \text{ A}$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{3\sqrt{2}\times 170.34}{\pi}\cos\alpha = -\frac{900}{1500}\times 218 + 10\times 0.6 = -124.8 \text{ V}$$

or $$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left[\frac{-124.8\times\pi}{3\sqrt{2}\times 170.34}\right] = 122.861°$$

**Example 12.12.** *A 230 V, 10 kW, 1000 rpm separately-excited dc motor has its armature resistance of 0.3 Ω and field resistance of 300 Ω. The speed of this motor is controlled by two 3-phase full converters, one in the armature circuit and the other in the field circuit and both are fed from 400 V, 500 Hz source. The motor constant is 1.1 V-s/A.rad. Armature and field currents are ripple free.*

(*a*) *With field converter setting to maximum field current, calculate firing angle for the armature converter for load torque of 60 Nm at rated speed.*

(*b*) *With the load torque as in part (a) and zero degree firing angle for armature converter, speed is to be raised to 3000 rpm. Determine the firing angle of the field converter.*

**Solution.** (*a*) For maximum field current, firing angle of field converter is zero. Therefore, field voltage,

$$V_f = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi} = \frac{3\sqrt{2}\times 400}{\pi} = 540.1 \text{ V}.$$

Field current, $$I_f = \frac{540.1}{300} = 1.8 \text{ A}$$

Motor emf, $$E_a = K_a\,\phi\,\omega_m$$

With no saturation, $$\phi = KI_f, \qquad \therefore E_a = K_a\,K\,I_f\cdot\omega_m = k\,I_f\cdot\omega_m$$

where $k$ is a constant in V-s/A.rad

Motor torque, $$T_e = K_a\,\phi\,I_a = K_a\,K\,I_f\cdot I_a = k\,I_f\cdot I_a$$

or $$60 = 1.1\times 1.8\times I_a$$

∴ Motor current, $$I_a = \frac{60}{1.1\times 1.8} = 30.30 \text{ A}$$

For the motor converter,

$$V_t = V_0 = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi}\cos\alpha_1 = E_a + I_a\,r_a = k\,I_f\cdot\omega_m + I_a\,r_a$$

$$\frac{3\sqrt{2}\times 400}{\pi}\cos\alpha_1 = 1.1\times 1.8\times\frac{2\pi\times 1000}{60} + 30.30\times 0.3 = 216.435 \text{ V}$$

∴ Firing angle of armature converter,

$$\alpha_1 = \cos^{-1}\left[\frac{216.435\times\pi}{3\sqrt{2}\times 400}\right] = 66.376°$$

(*b*) With zero degree firing angle of the armature converter,

$$\frac{3\sqrt{2}\times 400}{\pi}\cos 0° = 1.1\times I_f\times\frac{2\pi\times 3000}{60} + 30.30\times 0.3$$

or $$I_f = \frac{540.1 - 9.09}{345.58} = 1.5366\text{ A}$$

∴ Field voltage, $$V_f = I_f\cdot r_f = 1.5366\times 300 = \frac{3\sqrt{2}\times 400}{\pi}\cos\alpha_2$$

∴ Firing angle of field converter,

$$\alpha_2 = \cos^{-1}\left[\frac{300\times 1.5366\times\pi}{3\sqrt{\ }\times 400}\right] = 31.406°$$

**Example 12.13.** *In a speed controlled dc drive, the load torque is 40 Nm. At time $t = 0$, the operation is under steady state and the speed is 500 rpm. Under this condition at $t = 0+$, the generated torque is instantly increased to 100 Nm. The inertia of the drive is $0.01\text{ Nm}\cdot\text{sec}^2/\text{rad}$. The friction is neglible.*

(*a*) *Write down the differential equation governing the speed of the drive for $t > 0$.*

(*b*) *Evaluate the time taken for the speed to reach 1000 rpm.* [*GATE, 1998*]

**Solution.** (*a*) At $t = 0$, steady state exists and therefore, generated torque, $T_e = T_L$, load torque

In general, the dynamic equation for the motor-load combination is generated (or motor) torque = inertia torque + friction torque + load torque

or $$T_e = J\frac{d\omega_m}{dt} + D\omega_m + T_L$$

As friction torque is zero, $D\omega_m = 0$. This gives the differential equation, governing the speed of the drive at $t > 0$, as

$$T_e = J\frac{d\omega_m}{dt} + T_L$$

$$100 = 0.01\frac{d\omega_m}{dt} + 40 \quad \text{...}(i)$$

(*b*) From Eq. (*i*), $$\frac{d\omega_m}{dt} = \frac{60}{0.01} = 6000$$

or $$dt = \frac{d\omega_m}{6000}$$

Its integration gives, $$t = \frac{1}{6000}\cdot\omega_m + A \quad \text{...}(ii)$$

Initial speed at $t = 0+$ remains 500 rpm. Therefore

$$\omega_{mo} = \frac{2\pi\times 500}{60} = \frac{100\,\pi}{6}\text{ rad/sec}$$

From Eq. (*ii*), $$0 = \frac{1}{6000}\times\frac{100\,\pi}{600} + A \quad\text{or}\quad A = \frac{-\pi}{360}$$

∴ $$t = \frac{\omega_m}{6000} - \frac{\pi}{360}$$

Final speed $$\omega_m = \frac{2\pi\times 1000}{60} = \frac{200\,\pi}{6}\text{ rad/sec}$$

$$\therefore \qquad t = \frac{200\,\pi}{6000 \times 6} - \frac{\pi}{360} = \frac{\pi}{360} \text{ sec} = 0.0873 \text{ sec}$$

∴ Time taken for the speed to reach 1000 rpm = 0.0873 sec.

**Example 12.14.** *A dc motor driven from a fully-controlled 3-phase converter shown in Fig. 12.16 draws a dc current of 100 A with negligible ripple.*

(*a*) *Sketch the ac line current $i_A$ for one cycle.*

(*b*) *Determine the 3rd and 5th harmonic components of the line current as a percentage of the fundamental current.* [*GATE, 1998*]

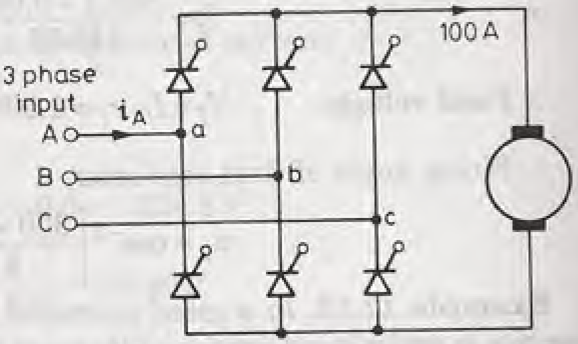


Fig. 12.16. Pertaining to Example 12.14.

**Solution.** (*a*) The ac line current $i_A$ for one cycle is sketched in Fig. 12.15 for a firing angle α under the assumption of negligible ripple in the armature current $I_a = 100$ A.

(*b*) The line current $i_A$ shown in Fig. 12.15 can be expressed in Fourier series as

$$i_{sn} = i_{An} = \sum_{n=1,3,5,-}^{\infty} \frac{4I_a}{n\pi} \cos\frac{n\pi}{6} \sin(n\omega t - n\alpha)$$

Rms value of the $n$th harmonic line current is given by

$$I_{sn} = \frac{4I_a}{\sqrt{2}\cdot n\,\pi}\cos\frac{n\pi}{6} = \frac{2\sqrt{2}\cdot I_a}{n\pi}\cdot\cos\frac{n\,\pi}{6}$$

Rms value of fundamental current,

$$I_{s1} = \frac{2\sqrt{2}\,I_a}{\pi}\cos 30° = \frac{\sqrt{6}}{\pi}I_a$$

Rms value of third-harmonic current,

$$I_{s3} = \frac{2\sqrt{2}\,I_a}{3\,\pi}\cos 90° = 0$$

Rms value of fifth-harmonic current,

$$I_{s5} = \frac{2\sqrt{2}\,I_a}{5\,\pi}\cos 150° = -\frac{\sqrt{6}}{5\,\pi}I_a$$

From above, third harmonic current as a percentage of fundamental current = 0% and fifth harmonic current as a percentage of fundamental current

$$= \frac{I_{s5}}{I_{s1}} \times 100 = -\frac{\sqrt{6}\,I_a}{5\pi} \times \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{6}\cdot I_a} \times 100 = -20\%.$$

**Example 12.15.** *A dc motor driven from a 3-phase full converter shown in Fig. 12.17 draws a dc line current of 60 A with negligible ripple.*

(*a*) *Sketch the line voltage $v_{ab}$ taking it zero-crossing and becoming positive at $\omega t = 0$. Also, sketch the line current $i_A$ for one cycle for $\alpha = 150°$. Indicate also the conduction of devices. Thyristor current $i_T$ should also be sketched.*

(*b*) *Calculate average and rms values of thyristor current.*

(*c*) *Compute power factor at the ac source.*

(*d*) *If motor constant is 2.4 V-sec/rad and armature circuit resistance is 0.5 Ω, calculate the motor speed.*

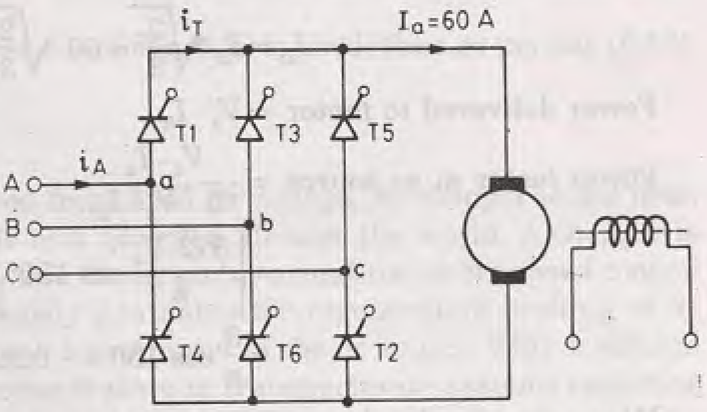


Fig. 12.17. Three-phase full converter feeding a dc motor, Example 12.15.

**Solution.** (*a*) Note that for line voltages $v_{ab}, v_{ac}, v_{bc}, v_{ba}$ etc. and with $v_{ab}$ as shown in Fig. 12.18, firing angle α for thyristor T1 must be measured from $\omega t = \frac{\pi}{3}$. Accordingly, $\alpha = 150°$ is measured from the instant $\omega t = \pi/3$ in Fig. 12.18.

Motor current $I_a = 60$ A is shown constant in Fig. 12.18. At $\alpha = 150°$, T1 is turned on. So voltage $v_{ab}$ will send constant current $I_a$ through T1, T6. Thyristor T1 will conduct for 120°; for the first 60°, T1, T6 conduct together. For the next 60°; T1, T2 conduct together as shown in Fig. 12.18. Voltage $v_{ba}$ will cause T3, T4 to conduct for 60° and $v_{ca}$ will force T5, T4 to conduct for the next 60° as shown. Note that voltages $v_{ba}, v_{ca}$ will cause line current $i_A$ to be negative whereas for $v_{ab}, v_{ac}$, line current $i_A$ is positive. Thyristor current $i_T$ through T1 will flow only when $i_A$ is positive.

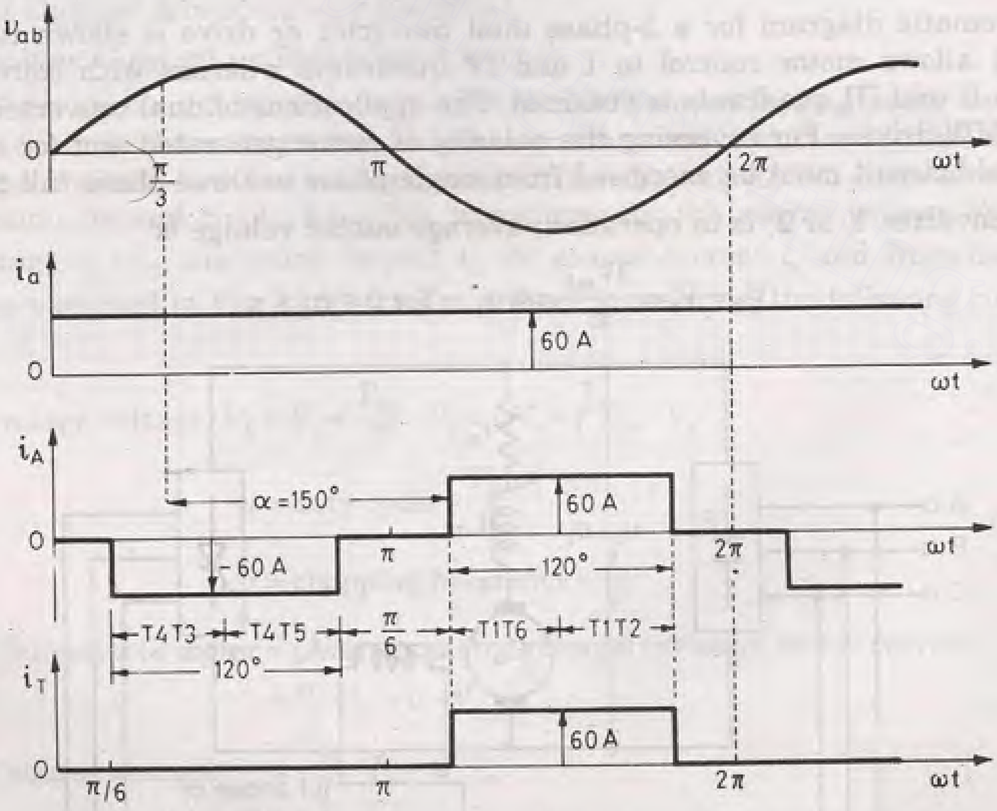


Fig. 12.18. Waveforms for Example 12.15.

(*b*) Average thyristor current, $I_{TA} = \frac{I_a}{3} = \frac{60}{3} = 20$ A

Rms thyristor current, $I_{Tr} = \frac{I_a}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{60}{\sqrt{3}} = 34.642$ A

(*c*) Rms value of source current,

$$I_{sr} = I_a \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = 60\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \text{ A}$$

Power delivered to motor $= V_t \cdot I_a$

$$\text{Power factor at ac source} = \frac{V_t \cdot I_a}{\sqrt{3} \cdot V_s \cdot I_{sr}}$$

$$= \left[\frac{3\sqrt{2}\,V_s}{\pi} \cos 150°\right] \times I_a \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}\,V_s \cdot I_a\sqrt{2}}$$

$$= \frac{3}{\pi} \cos 150 = -0.827.$$

Minus sign for the power factor merely indicates the system to be in the inversion mode.

(*d*) $$V_0 = V_t = \frac{3\sqrt{2} \times 400}{\pi} \cos 150° = K_m\,\omega_m + 60 \times 0.5$$

$$\therefore \qquad \omega_m = \frac{-467.73 - 30}{2.4} = -207.39 \text{ rad/sec or } -1980.43 \text{ rpm.}$$

The motor is in the regenerative braking mode with emf $E_a$ reversed from its motoring mode polarity.

### 12.4.4. Three-phase Dual Converter Drives

The schematic diagram for a 3-phase dual converter dc drive is shown in Fig. 12.19. Converter 1 allows motor control in I and IV quadrants whereas with converter 2, the operation in II and III quadrants is obtained. The applications of dual converter are limited to about 2 MW-drives. For reversing the polarity of motor generated emf for regeneration purposes, field circuit must be energised from single-phase or three-phase full converter.

When converter 1, or 2, is in operation, average output voltage is

$$V_0 = V_t = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi} \cos \alpha_1 \quad \text{for } 0 \le \alpha_1 \le \pi \qquad \text{...(12.30)}$$

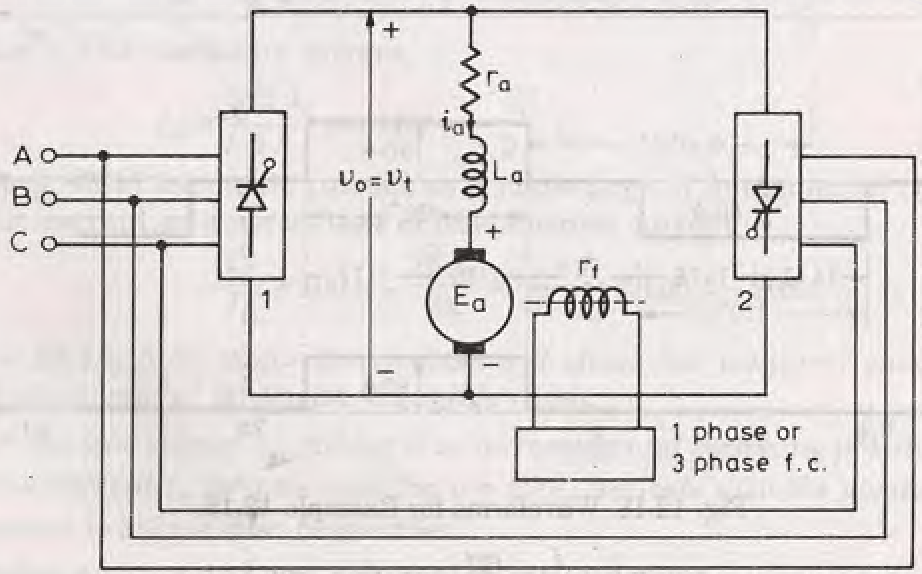


Fig. 12.19. Three-phase dual converter controlled separately-excited dc motor.

With a 3-phase full converter in the field circuit,

$$V_f = \frac{3V_{ml}}{\pi} \cos \alpha_f \qquad \text{for } 0 \le \alpha_f \le \pi \qquad \ldots(12.31)$$

In case circulating current-type dual converter of Fig. 6.39 is used, then as per Eq. (6.53),

$$\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = 180°$$

## 12.5. CHOPPER DRIVES

When variable dc voltage is to be obtained from fixed dc voltage, dc chopper is the ideal choice. Use of chopper in traction systems is now accepted all over the world. A chopper is inserted in between a fixed voltage dc source and the dc motor armature for its speed control below base speed. In addition, chopper is easily adaptable for regenerative braking of dc motors and thus kinetic energy of the drive can be returned to the dc source. This results in overall energy saving which is the most welcome feature in transportation systems requiring frequent stops, as for example in rapid transit systems. Chopper drives are also used in battery-operated vehicles where energy saving is of prime importance.

Though choppers can be used for dynamic braking and for combined regenerative and dynamic control of dc drives, only the following two control modes are described in what follows.

1. Power control or motoring control.
2. Regenerative-braking control.

Both the chopper control methods are now described. In addition, two-quadrant and four-quadrant chopper drives are also described.

### 12.5.1. Power Control or Motoring Control

Fig. 12.20 (*a*) shows the basic arrangement of a dc chopper feeding power to a dc series motor. The chopper is shown to consist of a force-commutated thyristor, it could equally well be a transistor switch. It offers one-quadrant drive, Fig. 12.20 (*b*). Armature current is assumed continuous and ripple free. The waveforms for the source voltage $V_s$, armature terminal voltage $v_t = v_0$, armature current $i_a$, dc source current $i_s$ and freewheeling-diode current $i_{fd}$ are sketched in Fig. 12.20 (*c*). From these waveforms, the following relations can be obtained :

$$\text{Average motor voltage, } V_0 = V_t = \frac{T_{on}}{T} \cdot V_s = \alpha V_s = f\,T_{on} \cdot V_s \qquad \ldots(12.32)$$

where $\alpha = \text{duty cycle} = \dfrac{T_{on}}{T}$

and $f = \text{chopping frequency} = \dfrac{1}{T}$

Power delivered to motor = (Average motor voltage) (average motor current)

$$= V_t \cdot I_a = \alpha \cdot V_s \cdot I_a$$

Average source current $= \dfrac{T_{on}}{T} \cdot I_a = \alpha \cdot I_a$

Input power to chopper = (average input voltage) (average source current)

$$= V_s \cdot \alpha I_a$$

For the motor armature circuit,

$$V_t = \alpha V_s = E_a + I_a (r_a + r_s) = K_m \cdot \omega_m + I_a (r_a + r_s)$$

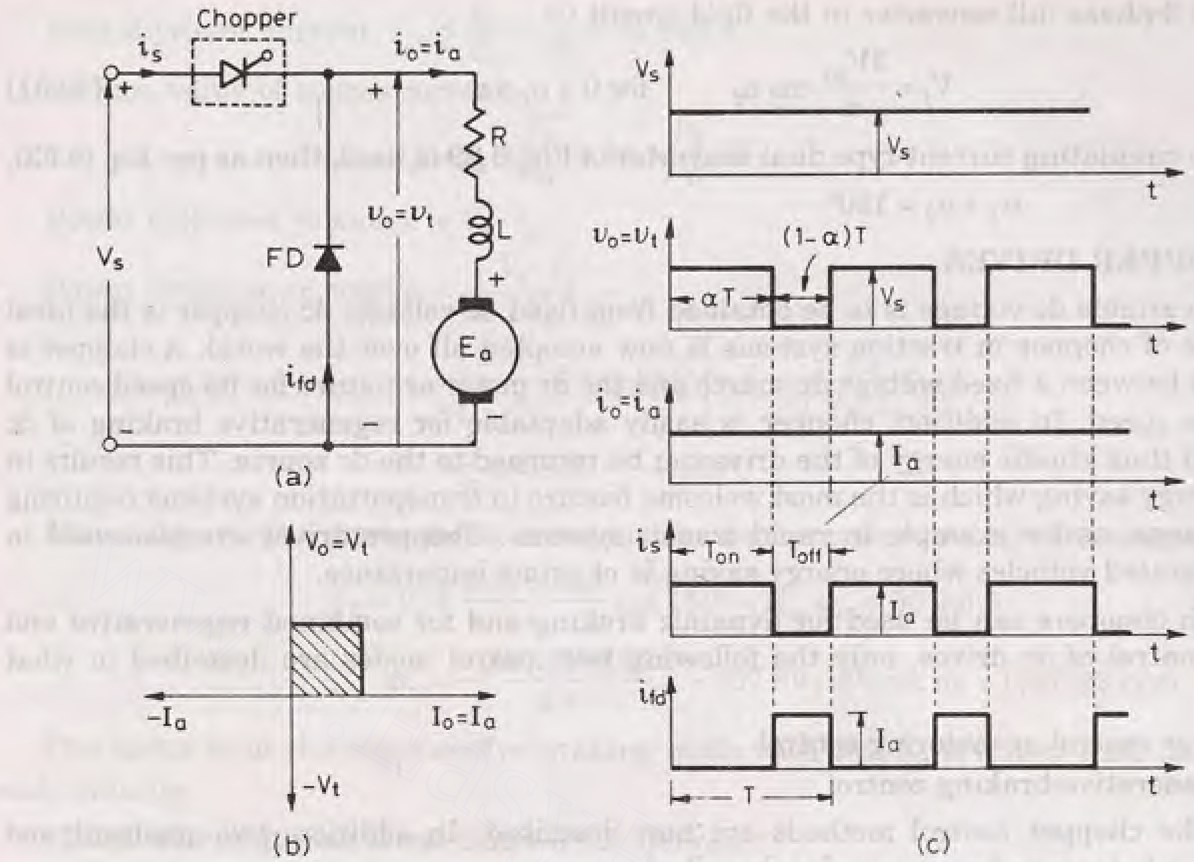


Fig. 12.20 D.C. Chopper for series motor drive (*a*) circuit diagram (*b*) quadrant diagram and (*c*) waveforms.

or $$\omega_m = \frac{\alpha V_s - I_a (r_a + r_s)}{K_m} \quad \text{...(12.33)}$$

It is seen from Eq. (12.33) that by varying the duty cycle α of the chopper, armature terminal voltage can be controlled and thus speed of the dc motor can be regulated.

So far, armature current $i_a$ has been assumed ripple free and accordingly, waveforms in Fig. 12.20 are sketched. Actually, the motor armature current will rise during chopper on period and fall during off period as shown in Fig. 12.21. The current expressions during on and off periods are obtained in Chapter 7 on choppers. By referring to this chopper, armature current $i_a(t)$ during on period, from Eq. (7.10), is given by

$$i_a(t) = \frac{V_s - E_a}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right) + I_{mn}\, e^{-\frac{R}{L}t} \quad \text{...(12.34)}$$

The armature current during the off-period, from Eq. (7.11), is given by

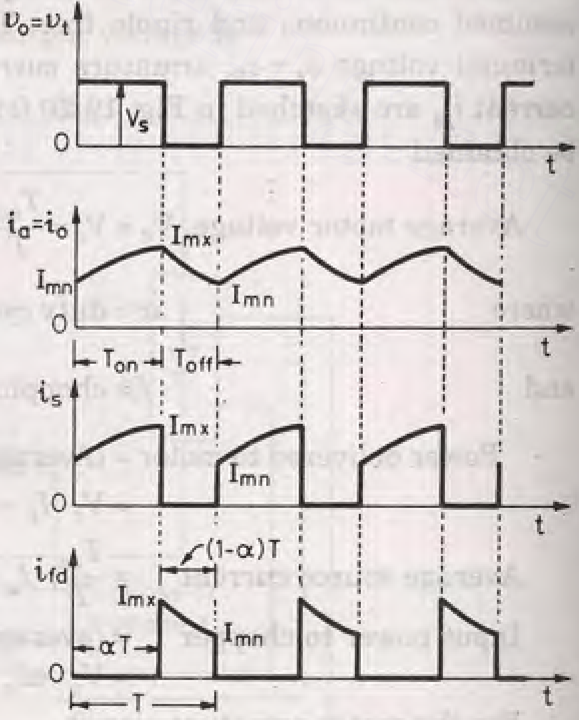


Fig. 12.21. Waveforms for dc chopper drive of Fig. 12.20 (*a*).

$$i_a(t) = -\frac{E_a}{R}\left(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}\right) + I_{mx} \cdot e^{-\frac{R}{L}t} \quad \text{...(12.35)}$$

Here $R = r_a$ (armature resistance) + $r_s$ (series–field resistance)

$L = L_a$ (armature inductance) + $L_s$ (series–field inductance)

Under steady-state operating conditions,

$$V_t = \alpha V_s = E_a + I_a R.$$

**Example 12.16.** *A dc series motor is fed from 600 V dc source through a chopper. The dc motor has the following parameters :*

$$r_a = 0.04\ \Omega, \quad r_s = 0.06\ \Omega, \quad k = 4 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{Nm/amp}^2$$

*The average armature current of 300 A is ripple free. For a chopper duty cycle of 60%, determine :*

*(a) input power from the source*

*(b) motor speed and (c) motor torque.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Power input to motor

$$= V_t \cdot I_a = \alpha\, V_s \cdot I_a$$

$$= 0.6 \times 600 \times 300 = 108\ \text{kW}.$$

(*b*) For a dc series motor,

$$\alpha V_s = E_a + I_a R = k\, I_a\, \omega_m + I_a R$$

$$0.6 \times 600 = 4 \times 10^{-3} \times 300 \times \omega_m + 300\,(0.04 + 0.06)$$

$$\omega_m = \frac{360 - 30}{1.2} = 275\ \text{rad/sec or } 2626.1\ \text{rpm}$$

(c) Motor torque, $T_e = k\, I_a^2 = 4 \times 10^{-3} \times 300^2 = 360$ Nm.

**Example 12.17.** *The chopper used for on-off control of a dc separately-excited motor has supply voltage of 230V dc, an on- time of 10 m sec and off-time of 15 m sec. Neglecting armature inductance and assuming continuous conduction of motor current, calculate the average load current when the motor speed is 1500 rpm and has a voltage constant of $K_v = 0.5$ V/rad per sec. The armature resistance is 3 Ω.* [*I.A.S., 1985*]

**Solution.** Chopper duty cycle

$$\alpha = \frac{T_{on}}{T_{on} + T_{off}} = \frac{10}{10 + 15} = 0.4$$

For the motor armature circuit,

$$V_t = \alpha V_s = E_a + I_a\, r_a = K_m \cdot \omega_m + I_a r_a$$

$$0.4 \times 230 = 0.5 \times \frac{2\pi \times 1500}{60} + I_a \times 3$$

$$\therefore \text{ Motor load current, } I_a = \frac{92 - 25 \times \pi}{3} = 4.487\ \text{A}$$

**Example 12.18.** *A dc chopper is used to control the speed of a separately-excited dc motor. The dc supply voltage is 220 V, armature resistance $r_a$ = 0.2 Ω and motor constant $K_a\,\phi$ = 0.08 V/rpm.*

*This motor drives a constant torque load requiring an average armature current of 25 A. Determine (a) the range of speed control (b) the range of duty cycle α. Assumed the motor current to be continuous.* [*I.A.S., 1990*]

**Solution.** For the motor armature circuit,

$$V_t = \alpha V_s = E_a + I_a r_a$$

As motor drives a constant torque load, motor torque $T_e$ is constant and therefore armature current remains constant at 25 A.

Minimum possible motor speed is $N = 0$. Therefore,

$$\alpha \times 220 = 0.08 \times 0 + 25 \times 2.0 = 5$$

$$\alpha = \frac{5}{220} = \frac{1}{44}$$

Maximum possible motor speed corresponds to $\alpha = 1$, *i.e.* when 220 V dc is directly applied and no chopping is done.

$$\therefore \qquad 1 \times 220 = 0.08 \times N + 25 \times 0.2$$

or

$$N = \frac{220 - 5}{0.08} = 2687.5 \text{ rpm}$$

$\therefore$ Range of speed control : $0 < N < 2687.5$ rpm and corresponding range of duty cycle : $\frac{1}{44} < \alpha < 1$.

**Example 12.19.** *A separately-excited dc motor is fed from 220 V dc source through a chopper operating at 400 Hz. The load torque is 30 Nm at a speed of 1000 rpm. The motor has $r_a = 0$, $L_a = 2$ mH and $K_m = 1.5$ V-sec/rad. Neglecting all motor and chopper losses, calculate*

*(a) the minimum and maximum values of armature current and the armature current excursion,*

*(b) the armature current expressions during on and off periods.*

**Solution.** As the armature resistance is neglected, armature current varies linearly between its minimum and maximum values.

(*a*) Average armature current, $I_a = \frac{T_e}{K_m} = \frac{30}{1.5} = 20$ A

Motor emf, $E_a = K_m \cdot \omega_m = 1.5 \times \frac{2\pi \times 1000}{60} = 157.08$ V

Motor input voltage, $\alpha V_s = V_t = E_a + I_a r_s = 157.08 + 0$

$$\therefore \qquad \alpha = \frac{157.08}{220} = 0.714$$

Periodic time, $T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{400} = 2.5$ ms

On-period, $T_{on} = \alpha\, T = 0.714 \times 2.5 = 1.785$ ms

Off-period, $T_{off} = (1 - \alpha)\, T = 0.715$ ms

During on-period $T_{on,}$ armature current will rise which is governed by the equation,

$$0 + L\frac{di_a}{dt} + E_a = V_s$$

or

$$\frac{di_a}{dt} = \frac{V_s - E_a}{L} = \frac{220 - 157.08}{0.02} = 3146 \text{ A/s}$$

During off period, $\frac{di_a}{dt} = -\frac{E_a}{L} = \frac{-157.08}{0.02} = -7854$ A/s

With current rising linearly, it is seen from Fig. 12.21 that

$$I_{mx} = I_{mn} + \left(\frac{di_a}{dt} \text{ during } T_{on}\right) \times T_{on}$$

$$= I_{mn} + 3146 \times 1.785 \times 10^{-3}$$

or $$I_{mx} = I_{mn} + 5.616 \qquad \ldots(i)$$

For linear variation between $I_{mn}$ and $I_{mx}$, average value of armature current

$$I_a = \frac{I_{mx} + I_{mn}}{2} = 20 \text{ A}$$

or $$I_{mx} = 40 - I_{mn} \qquad \ldots(ii)$$

Solving Eqs. (*i*) and (*ii*), we get $I_{mx} = 22.808$ A

and $$I_{mn} = 17.912 \text{ A.}$$

∴ Armature current excursion $= I_{mx} - I_{mn} = 22.808 - 17.912 = 5.616$ A

(*b*) Armature current expression during turn-on,

$$i_a(t) = I_{mn} + \left(\frac{di_a}{dt} \text{ during } T_{on}\right) \times t$$

$$= 17.192 + 3146\,t \qquad \text{for } 0 \le t \le T_{on}$$

Armature current expression during turn-off,

$$i_a(t) = I_{mx} + \left(\frac{di_a}{dt} \text{ during } T_{off}\right) \times t$$

$$= 22.808 - 7854\,t \qquad \text{for } 0 \le t \le T_{off}$$

**Example 12.20.** *Repeat Example 12.19, in case motor has a resistance of 0.2 Ω for its armature circuit.*

**Solution.** (*a*) From Example 12.19, armature current, $I_a = 20$ A and motor emf, $E_a = 157.08$ V; source voltage, $V_s = 220$ V.

For armature circuit, $\alpha V_s = V_0 = V_t = E_a + I_a r_a = 157.08 + 20 \times 0.2 = 161.08$ V

∴ $$\alpha = \frac{161.08}{220} = 0.7322$$

$$T_{on} = \alpha T = 0.7322 \times 2.5 = 1.831 \text{ ms}$$

$$T_{off} = T - T_{on} = 0.669 \text{ ms}, \; \frac{R}{L} = \frac{0.2}{0.02} = 10$$

During $T_{on}$, from Eq. (12.34), armature current is

$$i_a(t) = \frac{220 - 157.08}{0.2}(1 - e^{-10t}) + I_{mn} \cdot e^{-10t}$$

At $t = T_{on} = 1.831$ ms, current become $I_{mx}$. This gives

$$i_a(t) = I_{mx} = 5.7079 + 0.98187\,I_{mn} \qquad \ldots(i)$$

During $T_{off}$, from Eq. (12.35), armature current is

$$i_a(t) = \frac{-157.08}{0.2}(1 - e^{-10t}) + I_{mx} \cdot e^{-10t}$$

At $t = 0.669$ ms, $i_a(t) = I_{mn}$. This gives

$$i_a(t) = I_{mn} = -5.237 + 0.9933\,I_{mx} \qquad \ldots(ii)$$

Solving Eqs. (*i*) and (*ii*), we get

$$I_{mx} = 5.7079 + 0.98187\,(-5.237 + 0.9933\, I_{mx})$$
$$= 0.5658 + 0.9753\, I_{mx}$$

or
$$I_{mx} = \frac{0.5658}{0.0247} = 22.907 \text{ A}$$
$$I_{mn} = -5.237 + 0.9933 \times 22.907 = 17.516 \text{ A}$$

∴ Armature current excursion

$$= I_{mx} - I_{mn} = 22.907 - 17.516 = 5.39 \text{ A}$$

(*b*) Armature current expression during turn-on period is

$$i_a(t) = 314.6\,(1 - e^{-10t}) + 17.516\, e^{-10t}$$

Armature current expression during turn-off period is

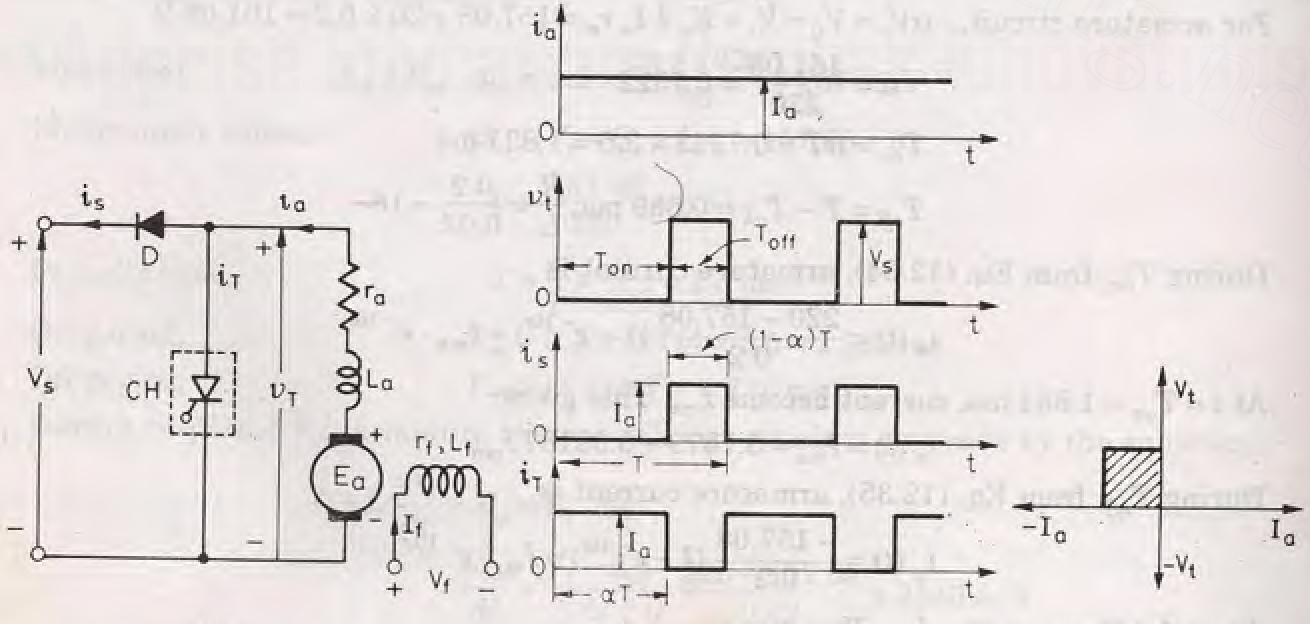
$$i_a(t) = -785.4\,(1 - e^{-10t}) + 22.907\, e^{-10t}$$

### 12.5.2. Regenerative-Braking Control

In regenerative-braking control, the motor acts as a generator and the kinetic energy of the motor and connected load is returned to the supply.

During motoring mode, armature current $I_a = \frac{V_t - E_a}{r_a}$, *i.e.* armature current is positive and the motor consumes power. In case load drives the motor at a speed such that average value of motor counter emf $E_a\ (= K_m \cdot \omega_m)$ exceeds $V_t$, $I_a$ is reversed and power is delivered to the dc bus. The motor is then working as a generator in the regenerative braking mode.

The principle of regenerative braking mode is explained with the help of Fig. 12.22 (*a*), where a separately-excited dc motor and a chopper are shown. For active loads, such as a



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 12.22. Regenerative braking of a separately-excited dc motor (*a*) circuit diagram (*b*) waveforms (*c*) quadrant diagram.

train going down the hill or a descending hoist, let it be assumed that motor counter emf $E_a$ is more than the source voltage $V_s$. When chopper CH is on, current through armature inductance $L_a$ rises as the armature terminals get short circuited through CH. Also, $v_t = 0$ during $T_{on}$. When chopper is turned off, $E_a$ being more than source voltage $V_s$, diode $D$ conducts and the energy stored in armature inductance is transferred to the source. During $T_{off}$, $v_t = V_s$. On the assumption of continuous and ripple free armature current, the relevant voltage and current waveforms are shown in Fig. 12.22 (*b*).

With respect to first quadrant operation as offered by motoring control of Fig. 12.20 (*a*), regenerative braking control offers second quadrant operation as armature terminal voltage has the same polarity but the direction of armature current is reversed, Figs. 12.22 (*a*) and (*c*). From the waveforms of Fig. 12.22 (*b*), the following relations can be derived :

The average voltage across chopper (or armature terminals) is

$$V_t = \frac{T_{off}}{T} \cdot V_s = (1 - \alpha)\, V_s \qquad \text{...(12.36)}$$

Power generated by the motor

$$= V_t \cdot I_a = (1 - \alpha)\, V_s \cdot I_a$$

Motor emf generated, $E_a = K_m\, \omega_m = V_t + I_a\, r_a$

$$= (1 - \alpha)\, V_s + I_a\, r_a \qquad \text{...(12.37)}$$

Motor speed during regenerative braking,

$$\omega_m = \frac{(1 - \alpha)\, V_s + I_a r_a}{K_m}$$

When chopper is on, $E_a - I_a r_a - L_a \dfrac{di_a}{dt} = 0$

or $$(E_a - I_a r_a) = L_a \cdot \frac{di_a}{dt}$$

With chopper on, $L_a$ must store energy and current must rise, *i.e.* $\dfrac{di_a}{dt}$ must be positive or

$$(E_a - I_a r_a) \geq 0 \qquad \text{...(12.38)}$$

When chopper is off, $E_a - I_a r_a - L_a \cdot \dfrac{di_a}{dt} = V_s$

or $$V_s - (E_a - I_a\, r_a) = - L_a \cdot \frac{di_a}{dt}$$

With chopper off, $(E_a - I_a r_a)$ must be more than $V_s$ for regeneration purposes and therefore $[V_s - (E_a - I_a\, r_a)]$ must be negative. This is possible only if current decreases during off period, *i.e.* $\dfrac{di_a}{dt}$ in the above expression must be negative.

$$\therefore \quad [V_s - (E_a - I_a r_a)] \leq 0$$

$$- (E_a - I_a r_a) \leq (- V_s)$$

or $$(E_a - I_a\, r_a) \leq V_s \qquad \text{...(12.39)}$$

Eqs. (12.38) and (12.39) can be combined to give

$$0 \leq (E_a - I_a\, r_a) \leq V_s \qquad \text{...(12.40)}$$

Eq. (12.40) gives the conditions for the two voltages and their polarity for the regenerative braking control of dc separately-excited motor.

Minimum braking speed is obtained when $E_a - I_a r_a = 0$

or
$$K_m \, \omega_{mn} = I_a \, r_e$$

$\therefore$ Minimum braking speed
$$\omega_{mn} = \frac{I_a \, r_a}{K_m} \qquad \ldots(12.41)$$

Maximum possible braking speed is obtained when

$$E_a - I_a r_a = V_s$$

$\therefore$ Maximum braking speed,
$$\omega_{mx} = \frac{V_s + I_a r_a}{K_m} \qquad \ldots(12.42)$$

Thus regenerative braking control is effective only when motor speed is less than $\omega_{mx}$ and more than $\omega_{mn}$. This can be expressed as

$$\omega_{mn} < \omega_m < \omega_{mx}$$

$$\frac{I_a \, r_a}{K_m} < \omega_m < \frac{V_s + I_a \, r_a}{K_m}$$

Therefore, the speed range for regenerative braking is $\frac{V_s + I_a r_a}{K_m} : \frac{I_a \, r_a}{K_m}$ or $(V_s + I_a \, r_a) : I_a r_a$.

Regenerative braking of chopper-fed separately-excited dc motor is stable, it is therefore discussed here. DC series motors, however, offer unstable operating characteristics during regenerative braking. As such, regenerative braking of chopper-controlled series motors is difficult.

**Example 12.21.** *A dc chopper is used for regenerative braking of a separately-excited dc motor. The dc supply voltage is 400V. The motor has $r_a = 0.2\ \Omega$, $K_m = 1.2$ V-s/rad. The average armature current during regenerative braking is kept constant at 300 A with negligible ripple.*

*For a duty cycle of 60% for a chopper, determine*

(*a*) *power returned to the dc supply*

(*b*) *minimum and maximum permissible braking speeds and*

(*c*) *speed during regenerative braking.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Average armature terminal voltage,

$$V_t = (1 - \alpha)\, V_s = (1 - 0.6) \times 400 = 160 \text{ V}.$$

Power returned to the dc supply

$$= V_t I_a = 160 \times 300 \text{ W} = 48 \text{ kW}$$

(*b*) From Eq. (12.41), minimum braking speed is

$$\omega_{mn} = \frac{I_a \cdot r_a}{K_m} = \frac{300 \times 0.2}{1.2} = 50 \text{ rad/s or } 477.46 \text{ rpm}$$

From Eq. (12.42), maximum braking speed is

$$\omega_{mx} = \frac{V_s + I_a \cdot r_a}{K_m} = \frac{400 + 300 \times 0.2}{1.2}$$

$$= 383.33 \text{ rad/s or } 3660.6 \text{ rpm}$$

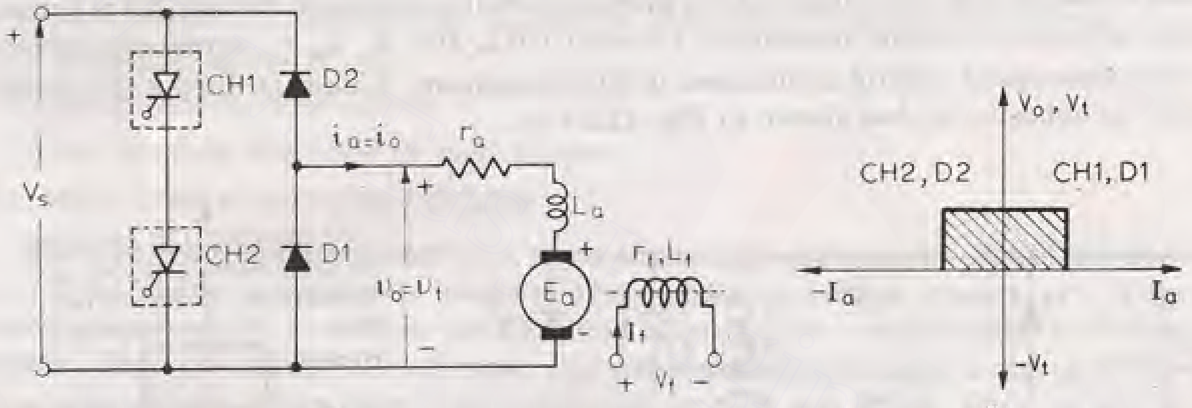
(*c*) When working as a generator during regenerative braking, the generated emf is $E_a = K_m \omega_m = V_t + I_a r_a = 160 + 300 \times 0.2 = 220$ V

$$\therefore \text{ Motor speed, } \omega_m = \frac{220}{1.2} \text{ rad/s or 1750.7 rpm}$$

### 12.5.3. Two-quadrant Chopper Drives

Motoring control circuit for chopper drives offer only first-quadrant drive, because armature voltage and armature current remain positive over the entire range of speed control. In regenerative braking, second-quadrant drive is obtained as armature terminal voltage remains positive but direction of armature current is reversed.

In two-quadrant dc motor drive, both motoring mode as well as regenerative braking mode are carried out by one chopper configuration. One such circuit is shown in Fig. 12.23 (*a*) which consists of two choppers CH1, CH2 and two diodes D1, D2 and a separately-excited dc motor.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 12.23 Two-quadrant dc chopper drive (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) two-quadrant diagram.

**Motoring mode.** When chopper CH1 is on, the supply voltage $V_s$ gets connected to armature terminals and therefore armature current $i_a$ rises. When CH1 is turned off, $i_a$ free wheels through D1 and therefore $i_a$ decays. This shows that with CH1 and D1, motor control in first quadrant is obtained.

**Regenerative mode.** When CH2 is turned on, the motor acts as a generator and the armature current $i_a$ rises and therefore energy is stored in armature inductance $L_a$. When CH2 is turned off, D2 gets turned on and therefore direction of $i_a$ is reversed. Now the energy stored in $L_a$ is returned to dc source and second quadrant operation is obtained, Fig. 12.23 (*b*). In this figure, first-quadrant operation of dc motor is sometimes called *forward-motoring mode* and second-quadrant operation as *forward regenerative-braking mode*.

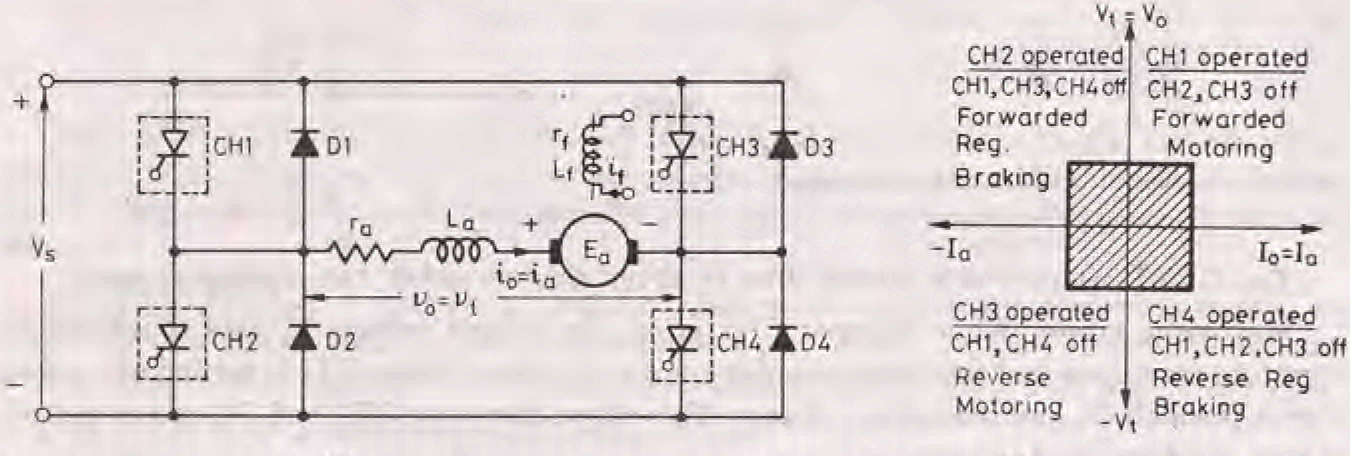
### 12.5.4. Four-quadrant Chopper Drives

In four-quadrant dc chopper drives, a motor can be made to work in forward-motoring mode (first quadrant), forward regenerative braking mode (second quadrant), reverse motoring mode (third quadrant) and reverse regenerative-braking mode (fourth quadrant). The circuit shown in Fig. 12.24 (*a*) offers four-quadrant operation of a separately-excited dc motor. This circuit consists of four choppers, four diodes and a separately-excited dc motor. Its operation in the four quadrants can be explained as under :

**Forward motoring mode.** During this mode or first-quadrant operation, choppers CH2, CH3 are kept off, CH4 is kept on whereas *CH1 is operated.* When CH1, CH4 are on, motor voltage is positive and positive armature current rises. When CH1 is turned off, positive armature current free-wheels and decreases as it flows through CH4, D2. In this manner, controlled motor operation in first quadrant is obtained.

**Forward regenerative-braking mode.** A dc motor can work in the regenerative-braking mode only if motor generated emf is made to exceed the dc source voltage. For obtaining this mode, CH1, CH3 and CH4 are kept off whereas *CH2 is operated.* When CH2 is turned on, negative armature current rises through CH2, D4, $E_a$, $L_a$, $r_a$. When CH2 is turned off, diodes D1, D2 are turned on and the motor acting as a generator returns energy to the dc source. This results in forward regenerative-braking mode in the second-quadrant.

**Reverse motoring mode.** This operating mode is opposite to forward motoring mode. Choppers CH1, CH4 are kept off, CH2 is kept on whereas *CH3 is operated*. When CH3 and CH2 are on, armature gets connected to source voltage $V_s$ so that both armature voltage $V_t$ and armature current $i_a$ are negative. As armature current is reversed, motor torque is reversed and consequently motoring mode in third quadrant is obtained. When CH3 is turned off, negative armature current freewheels through CH2, D4, $E_a$, $L_a$, $r_a$; armature current decreases and thus speed control is obtained in third quadrant. Note that during this mode, polarity of $E_a$ is opposite to that shown in Fig. 12.24 (*a*).



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 12.24. Four-quadrant dc chopper drive (*a*) circuit diagram and (*b*) four-quadrant diagram.

**Reverse Regenerative-braking mode.** As in forward braking mode, reverse regenerative-braking mode is feasible only if motor generated emf is made to exceed the dc source voltage. For this operating mode, CH1, CH2 and CH3 are kept off whereas *CH4 is operated*. When CH4 is turned on, positive armature current $i_a$ rises through CH4, D2, $r_a$, $L_a$, $E_a$. When CH4 is turned off, diodes D2, D3 begin to conduct and motor acting as a generator returns energy to the dc source. This leads to reverse regenerative-braking operation of the dc separately-excited motor in fourth quadrant.

Note that in Fig. 12.24 (*a*), the numbering of choppers is done to agree with the quadrants in which these are operated. For example, CH1 is operated for first quadrant, ...., CH4 for fourth quadrant etc.

## 12.6. A.C. DRIVES

Primarily, electric drives can be divided into two groups, dc drives and ac drives, DC drives have already been discussed in this chapter. Now ac drives are described at their introductory level only. Advantages and disadvantages of ac drives with respect to dc drives are as under :

**Advantages of ac drives**

(*i*) For the same rating, ac motors are lighter in weight as compared to dc motors.

(*ii*) AC motors require low maintenance as compared to dc motors.

(*iii*) AC motors are less expensive as compared to equivalent dc motors.

(*iv*) AC motors can work in hazardous areas like chemical, petrochemical etc. whereas dc motors are unsuitable for such environments because of commutator sparking.

**Disadvantages of ac drives**

(*i*) Power converters for the control of ac motors are more complex.

(*ii*) Power converters for ac drives are more expensive.

(*iii*) Power converters for ac drives generate harmonics in the supply system and load circuit. As a result, ac motors get derated.

The advantages of ac drives outweigh their disadvantages. As such, ac drives are used for several industrial applications. In general, there are two types of ac drives :

1. Induction motor drives
2. Synchronous motor drives.

These are now described in what follows.

## 12.7. INDUCTION-MOTOR DRIVES

Three-phase induction motors are more commonly employed in adjustable-speed drives than three-phase synchronous motors. Three-phase induction motors are of two types, squirrel-cage induction motors (SCIMs) and slip-ring (or wound-rotor) induction motors (SRIMs). Stator windings of both types carry three-phase windings. Rotor of SCIM is made of copper or aluminium bars short-circuited by two end rings. Rotor of SRIM carries three-place winding connected to three slip rings on the rotor shaft.

When 3-phase supply is connected to three-phase stator winding, rotating magnetic field is produced. The speed of this rotating field, called synchronous speed, is given by

$$N_s = \frac{120 f_1}{P} \text{ rpm} \quad \text{or} \quad n_s = \frac{2f_1}{P} \text{ rps} \qquad \text{....(12.43)}$$

Also, $$\omega_s = \frac{4\pi f_1}{P} = \frac{2\omega_1}{P} \text{ rad/sec} \qquad \text{...(12.44)}$$

where $f_1$ = supply frequency in Hz,

$\omega_1$ = supply frequency in rad/s

$P$ = number of stator poles.

Rotor cannot attain synchronous speed. It must run at a speed $N_r$ less than $N_s$, where

$$N_r = N_s(1-s)$$

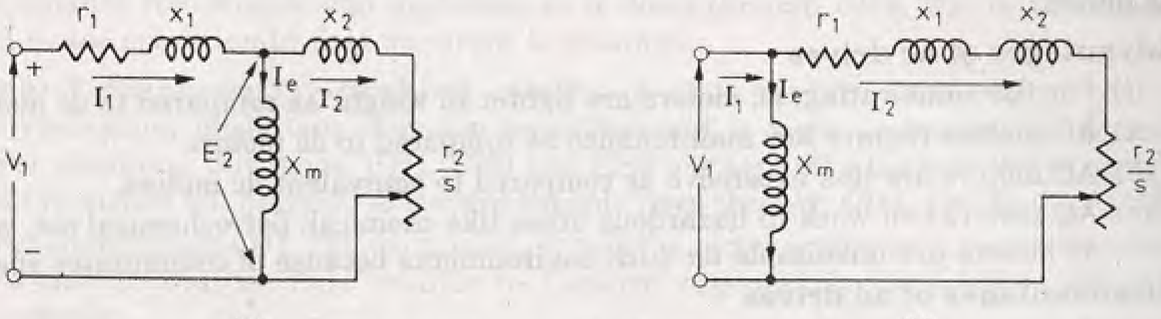
$$\omega_m = \omega_s(1-s)$$

where $N_r$ = rotor speed in rpm

$\omega_m$ = rotor speed in rad/s

$$s = \text{slip} = \frac{N_s - N_r}{N_s} = \frac{\omega_s - \omega_m}{\omega_s}$$

**Analysis and performance.** Per-phase equivalent circuit of a three-phase induction motor is shown in Fig. 12.25. In this circuit, $r_2$ = rotor resistance referred to stator, $x_2$ = rotor



(a) (b)

Fig. 12.25. Per-phase equivalent circuit of a three-phase induction motor referred to stator.

leakage reactance referred to stator. $r_1 + jx_1$ is the stator leakage impedance and $X_m$ = magnetizing reactance. In this figure, core-loss resistance $R_c$ is not shown. But, for determining the shaft power or shaft torque, the core loss must be taken into consideration. In case stator impedance drop is assumed negligible as compared to terminal voltage $V_1$, $X_m$ can be moved to stator terminals to get the simplified equivalent circuit of Fig. 12.25 (b). From this per-phase circuit model, stator current $I_1$ and rotor current $I_2$ can be calculated. Once $I_1$, $I_2$ are known, the performance parameters of a 3- phase induction motor can be determined as follows :

From Fig. 12.25 (b),
$$I_2 = \frac{V_1}{\left(r_1 + \frac{r_2}{s}\right) + j\,(x_1 + x_2)} \qquad \text{...(12.45)}$$

Air-gap power (power transferred from stator to rotor through the air gap),
$$P_g = 3\, I_2^2 \frac{r_2}{s} \qquad \text{...(12.46)}$$

Rotor ohmic loss $= 3I_2^2 r_2$

Developed power in rotor, $P_m = P_g$ − rotor ohmic loss
$$= 3I_2^2\, r_2 \left(\frac{1-s}{s}\right) \qquad \text{...(12.47)}$$

Developed rotor torque,
$$T_e = \frac{P_m}{\omega_m} = 3I_2^2\, r_2 \left(\frac{1-s}{s}\right) \cdot \frac{1}{\omega_s\,(1-s)}$$
$$= \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot I_2^2 \frac{r_2}{s} \qquad \text{...(12.48)}$$

Also,
$$T_e = \frac{P_g}{\omega_s} \qquad \text{...(12.49)}$$

Substituting the value of $I_2$ from Eq. (12.45), we get
$$T_e = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{V_1^2}{\left(r_1 + \frac{r_2}{s}\right)^2 + (x_1 + x_2)^2} \cdot \frac{r_2}{s} \qquad \text{...(12.50)}$$

Motor power input, $P = P_g$ + stator core loss + stator copper loss

Output, or shaft, power, $P_{sh} = P_m$ − fixed loss (friction and windage loss)

Motor efficiency, $\eta = \dfrac{P_{sh}}{P}$

Output, or shaft, torque,

$$T_{sh} = \frac{P_{sh}}{\omega_m} = \frac{P_{sh}}{\omega_s\,(1-s)} \qquad \text{...(12.51)}$$

Slip at which maximum torque occurs is given by

$$s_m = \frac{r_2}{\sqrt{r_1^{\,2} + (x_1 + x_2)^2}} \qquad \text{...(12.52)}$$

Substituting the value of $s_m$ in Eq. (12.50), we get an expression for maximum torque as

$$T_{e.m} = \frac{3}{2\omega_s}\left[\frac{V_1^{\,2}}{r_1 + \sqrt{r_1^{\,2} + (x_1 + x_2)^2}}\right] \qquad \text{...(12.53)}$$

The maximum torque, also called pull-out or breakdown torque, is independent of rotor resistance. However, $s_m$ is directly proportional to rotor resistance.

It is seen from Eq. (12.50) that if three-phase induction motor is energised from fixed voltage at a constant frequency, motor torque is a function of the slip. For different values of slip, the speed-torque characteristic of a three-phase induction motor is plotted in Fig. 12.26. In motoring mode under normal running ($s < s_m$), as stator current is not high, the air-gap flux remains substantially constant and torque increases with increase in slip from zero to $s_m$. After maximum torque $T_{em}$ at slip $s_m$, as the slip increases, stator current rises much more than the rated current, air-gap flux decreases and therefore torque decreases with an increase in slip.

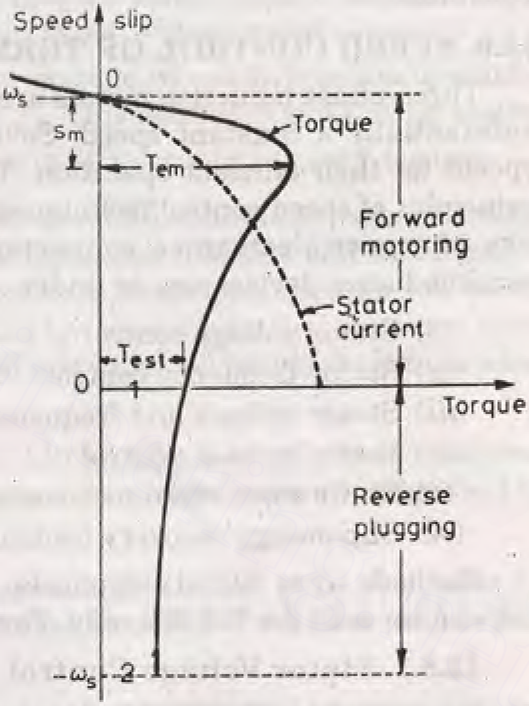


Fig. 12.26. Speed-torque characteristics of a three-phase induction motor.

In case rotor resistance $r_1$ is neglected, which is usually true in large induction motors, the expressions for slip and torque are as under :

$$s_m = \frac{r_2}{x_1 + x_2} \qquad \text{...(12.54)}$$

$$T_e = \frac{3}{\omega_s}\cdot\frac{V_1^{\,2}}{\left(\dfrac{r_2}{s}\right)^2 + (x_1 + x_2)^2}\cdot\frac{r_2}{s} \qquad \text{...(12.55)}$$

$$T_{em} = \frac{3}{\omega_s}\cdot\frac{V_1^{\,2}}{2\,(x_1 + x_2)} \qquad \text{...(12.56)}$$

From Eqs. (12.55) and (12.56), it can be obtained that

$$\frac{T_e}{T_{e.m}} = \frac{2}{\dfrac{s}{s_m} + \dfrac{s_m}{s}} \qquad \text{...(12.57)}$$

If $s < s_m$, then
$$\frac{T_e}{T_{e.m.}} = \frac{2 \cdot s}{s_m} = \frac{2(\omega_s - \omega_m)}{s_m \cdot \omega_s} \qquad \text{...(12.58)}$$

or
$$\frac{\omega_s \cdot s_m \cdot T_e}{2T_{em}} = (\omega_s - \omega_m)$$

or Motor speed,
$$\omega_m = \omega_s \left[1 - \frac{s_m \cdot T_e}{2T_{em}}\right] \qquad \text{...(12.59)}$$

It is seen from Eqs. (12.58) and (12.59) that for small values of slips, motor torque is proportional to slip Eq. (12.58), and motor speed decreases as torque $T_e$ increases, Eq. (12.59).

From Eqs. (12.54) and (12.59),
$$\omega_m = \omega_s \left[1 - \frac{r_2}{x_1 + x_2} \cdot \frac{T_e}{2T_{em}}\right] \qquad \text{...(12.60)}$$

This expression shows that drop in speed from no load to full load depends on rotor resistance.

## 12.8. SPEED CONTROL OF THREE-PHASE INDUCTION MOTORS

Three-phase induction motors are admirably suited to fulfil the demand of loads requiring substantially a constant speed. Several industrial applications, however, need adjustable speeds for their efficient operation. The object of the present section is to describe the basic principles of speed control techniques employed to three-phase induction motors through the use of power-electronics converters. The various methods of speed control through semiconductor devices are as under :

(*i*) Stator voltage control
(*ii*) Stator frequency control
(*iii*) Stator voltage and frequency control
(*iv*) Stator current control
(*v*) Static rotor-resistance control
(*vi*) Slip-energy recovery control.

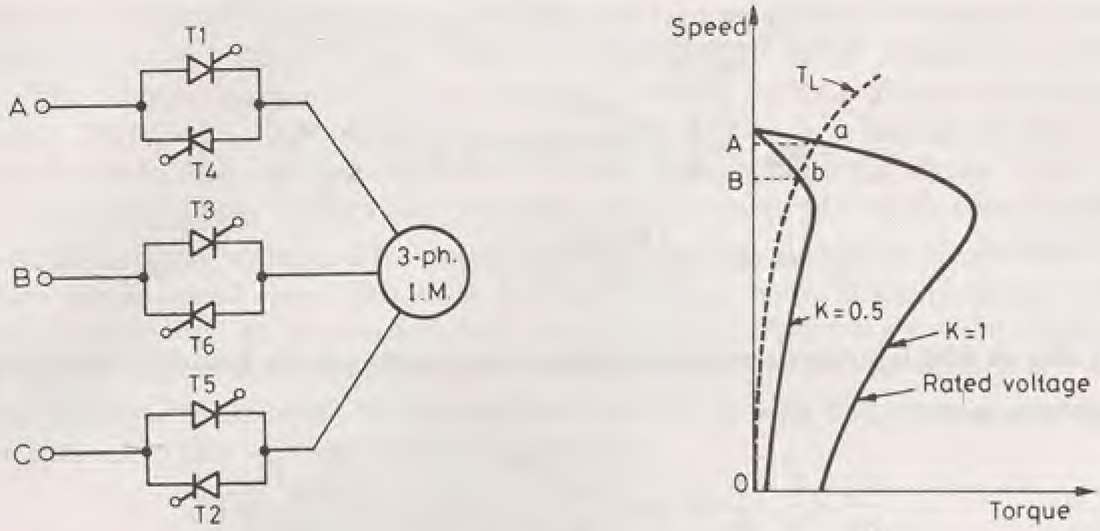
Methods (*i*) to (*iv*) are applicable to both SCIMs and WRIMs whereas methods (*v*) and (*vi*) can be used for WRIMs only. These methods are now described in what follows.

### 12.8.1. Stator Voltage Control

It is seen from Eq. (12.50) that motor torque $T_e$ is proportional to the square of the stator supply voltage. A reduction in the supply voltage will reduce the motor torque and therefore the speed of the drive. If the motor terminal voltage is reduced to $KV_1$ where $K < 1$, then the motor torque is given by

$$T_e = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{(KV_1)^2}{\left(r_1 + \frac{r_2}{s}\right)^2 + (x_1 + x_2)^2} \frac{r_2}{s} \qquad \text{...(12.61)}$$

For the purpose of varying the voltage applied to a 3-phase induction motor so as to achieve a speed control, a 3-phase ac voltage controller is usually employed. Fig. 12.27 (*a*) shows a three-phase ac voltage controller feeding a three-phase induction motor. By controlling the firing angle of the thyristors connected in antiparallel in each phase, the rms value of the stator voltage can be regulated. As a consequence, motor torque and thus speed of the drive is controlled. In Fig. 12.27 (*b*), for load torque $T_L$, a is the operating point at rated



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 12.27. (*a*) Three-phase ac voltage controller feeding a 3-phase induction motor (*b*) Speed-torque characteristics as effected by stator voltage control.

voltage and *OA* is the motor speed. For reduced stator voltage ($K = 0.5$), *b* is the operating point and *OB* is the reduced motor speed for load torque $T_L$. This method is suitable for motors having large value of $s_m$. For low-slip motors, the range of speed control is very narrow.

Stator-voltage-control method offers limited speed range. It is usual to use 3-phase voltage controllers. Their use, however, introduces pronounced harmonic contents and input supply power factor for the voltage controller is quite low. These are, therefore, used for low-power drives like fans, blowers and centrifugal pumps requiring low starting torque. For these types of loads, the load torque is proportional to speed squared and input current is maximum when slip $s = 1/3$, this is proved in Example 12.22.

**Example 12.22.** (*a*) *A three-phase SCIM drives a blower-type load. No-load rotational losses are negligible. Show that rotor current is maximum when motor runs at a slip $s = 1/3$. Find also an expression for maximum rotor current.*

(*b*) *If three-phase SCIM runs at speed of (i) 1455 rpm and (ii) 1350 rpm, determine the maximum current in terms of rated current at these speeds. The IM drives a fan and no-load rotational losses are ignored.*

**Solution.** (*a*) The torque required by a blower-type load is proportional to speed squared.

$$\therefore \qquad T_L = k\omega_m^2$$

Mechanical power developed in motor, $P_m = (1 - s)\, P_g$

As no-load rotational losses are negligible, $P_m$ = power required by load.

or
$$(1 - s)\, P_g = T_L \cdot \omega_m$$

$$3I_2^{\,2}\,\frac{r_2}{s}\,(1 - s) = T_L \cdot \omega_m$$

or
$$I_2 = \left[\frac{\omega_m \cdot T_L \cdot s}{3r_2\,(1 - s)}\right]^{1/2} \qquad \ldots(i)$$

But $\omega_m = \omega_s\,(1 - s)$ and $T_L = k\,\omega_m^{\,2}$. Substituting these in (*i*), we get,

$$I_2 = \left[\frac{\omega_s\,(1-s)\cdot T_L \cdot s}{3r_2\,(1-s)}\right]^{1/2} = \left[\frac{\omega_s \cdot k \cdot \omega_m{}^2 \cdot s}{3r_2}\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \omega_m \left[\frac{s \cdot k \cdot \omega_s}{3r_2}\right]^{1/2} = (1-s)\,\omega_s \left[\frac{s \cdot k \cdot \omega_s}{3r_2}\right]^{1/2}$$

or

$$I_2 = \sqrt{s}\,(1-s)\left[\frac{k \cdot \omega_s{}^3}{3r_2}\right]^{1/2} \qquad ...(ii)$$

The slip at which rotor current $I_2$ becomes maximum can be found by obtaining $\frac{dI_2}{ds}$ and equating it to zero.

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{dI_2}{ds} = \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{\sqrt{s}}\,(1-s)\left[\frac{k\omega_s{}^3}{3r_2}\right]^{1/2} + \sqrt{s}\,(-1)\left[\frac{k\omega_s{}^3}{3r_2}\right] = 0$$

or $\frac{1-s}{2} = s$ or $s = \frac{1}{3}$ ...(iii)

This shows that $I_2$ is maximum at a slip of $\frac{1}{3}$. The maximum value of $I_2$ is obtained by putting $s = \frac{1}{3}$ in Eq. (ii).

$$\therefore \qquad I_{2\,mx} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}}\;\frac{2}{3}\left[\frac{k\omega_s{}^3}{3r_2}\right]^{1/2} = \frac{2}{9}\cdot\omega_s\left[\frac{k\,\omega_s}{r_2}\right]^{1/2} \qquad ...(iv)$$

(b) From Eq. (ii), $I_2 = \sqrt{s}\,(1-s)\left[\frac{k\cdot\omega_s{}^3}{3r_2}\right]$

(i) For 1455, full-load slip

$$s_1 = \frac{1500-1455}{1500} = 0.03$$

From above,

$$\frac{I_{2\cdot mx}}{I_{2\cdot r}} = \frac{\sqrt{\frac{1}{3}}\;\frac{2}{3}}{\sqrt{s_1}\,(1-s_1)} = \frac{\sqrt{\frac{1}{3}}\cdot\frac{2}{3}}{\sqrt{0.03}\,(1-0.03)} = 2.291$$

Here $I_{2r}$ is the rated, or full-load, rotor current.

(ii) For 1350 rpm, full-load slip

$$s_1 = \frac{1500-1350}{1500} = 0.1$$

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{I_{2\cdot mx}}{I_{2\cdot r}} = \frac{\sqrt{\frac{1}{3}}\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)}{\sqrt{0.1}\,(1-0.1)} = 1.352$$

### 12.8.2. Stator Frequency Control

By changing the supply frequency, motor synchronous speed can be altered and thus torque and speed of a 3-phase induction motor can be controlled. For a three-phase induction motor, per-phase supply voltage is $V_1 = \sqrt{2}\,\pi f_1 N_1 \phi\, k_w$. This expression shows that under rated voltage and frequency operation, flux will be rated. In case supply frequency is reduced with constant $V_1$, the air-gap flux increases and the induction motor magnetic circuit gets saturated. The motor parameters will change leading to inaccurate speed-torque characteristics. Further, at low frequencies, reactances will be low leading to high motor currents, more losses and reduced efficiency. In view of this, induction motor (I.M.) speed control with constant supply voltage and reduced supply frequency is rarely used in practice.

With constant supply voltage, if the supply frequency is increased, the synchronous speed and therefore motor speed rises. But, with increase in frequency, flux and torque also get reduced. IM performance at constant voltage and increased frequency can be obtained by neglecting $X_m$ and $r_1$ from the equivalent circuit of Fig. 12.25 (*a*). This assumption is not going to introduce any noticeable error as magnetizing current at high frequency is quite small. Thus, rotor current under this assumption is given by

$$I_2 = \frac{V_1}{\left[\left(\frac{r_2}{s}\right)^2 + (x_1 + x_2)^2\right]^{1/2}} \qquad \text{...(12.62)}$$

Synchronous speed, $\omega_s = \dfrac{4\pi f_1}{P} = \dfrac{2\omega_1}{P}$ rad/s

Motor torque, $T_e = \dfrac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot I_2^{\,2} \dfrac{r_2}{s}$

$$= \frac{3P}{2\omega_1} \cdot \frac{V_1^{\,2}}{\left(\frac{r_2}{s}\right)^2 + (x_1 + x_2)^2} \cdot \frac{r_2}{s} \qquad \text{...(12.63)}$$

Slip, $s = \dfrac{f_2}{f_1} = \dfrac{\omega_2}{\omega_1}$ or $\omega_2 = s\,\omega_1$

Here $f_2$ and $\omega_2$ are the rotor frequencies in *Hz* and rad/s respectively. Substituting the value of slip $s = \dfrac{\omega_2}{\omega_1}$ in Eq. (12.63), we get

$$T_e = \frac{3P}{2\omega_1} \cdot \frac{V_1^{\,2} \cdot \omega_1}{\frac{r_2 \cdot \omega_1^2}{\omega_2^{\,2}} + \omega_1^{\,2}\,(l_1 + l_2)} \cdot \frac{r_2}{\omega_2}$$

$$= \frac{3P}{2\omega_1^{\,2}} \cdot \frac{V_1^{\,2} \cdot \omega_2}{r_2^2 + \omega_2^{\,2}\,(l_1 + l_2)^2} \cdot r_2 \qquad \text{...(12.64)}$$

Slip at which maximum torque occurs is obtained from Fig. 12.25 (*a*) as

$$s_{mt} = \frac{r_2}{x_1 + x_2} \qquad \text{...(12.65)}$$

Rotor frequency in rad/s at which maximum torque occurs is given by

$$\omega_{2m} = s_{mT} \cdot \omega_1 = \frac{\omega_1 \cdot r_2}{\omega_1\,(l_1 + l_2)} = \frac{r_2}{l_1 + l_2}$$

Note that $\omega_{2m}$ does not depend on the supply frequency $\omega_1$. Substituting $r_2 = \omega_{2m} \cdot (l_1 + l_2)$ in Eq. (12.64) gives maximum torque $T_{e.m}$ as

$$T_{e.m} = \frac{3P}{2\omega_1^2} \cdot \frac{V_1^2 \cdot \omega_{2m}^2 \cdot (l_1 + l_2)}{\omega_{2m}^2 (l_1 + l_2)^2 + \omega_{2m}^2 (l_1 + l_2)^2}$$

$$= \frac{3P}{2\omega_1^2} \cdot \frac{V_1^2}{l_1 + l_2} \qquad \text{...(12.66)}$$

Eq. (12.66) indicates that $T_{em}$ is inversely proportional to supply-frequency squared. Also,

$$T_{em} \cdot \omega_1^2 = \frac{3P}{2} \cdot \frac{V_1^2}{l_1 + l_2}$$

At given source voltage $V_1$, $\frac{3P}{2} \cdot \frac{V_1^2}{l_1 + l_2}$ is constant, therefore, $T_{em} \cdot \omega_1^2$ is also constant. As the operating frequency $\omega_1$ is increased, $T_{em} \cdot \omega_1^2$ remains constant but maximum torque at increased frequency $\omega_1$ gets reduced as shown in Fig. 12.28. Supposing rated frequency for a motor is 50 Hz and $T_{e \cdot m} = 100$ Nm. If the motor is now operated at 100 Hz, then $100\,(2\,\pi \times 50)^2$ = (new maximum torque) $(2\pi \times 100)^2$ or the maximum torque at increased frequency of 100 Hz is 25 Nm. Such type of IM behaviour is similar to the working of dc series motors. With constant voltage and increased- frequency operation, air-gap flux gets reduced; therefore, during this control, IM is said to be working in *field-weakening mode*. Constant voltage and variable frequency control of Fig. 12.28 can be obtained by feeding 3-phase IM through three-phase inverters discussed in Chapter 8.

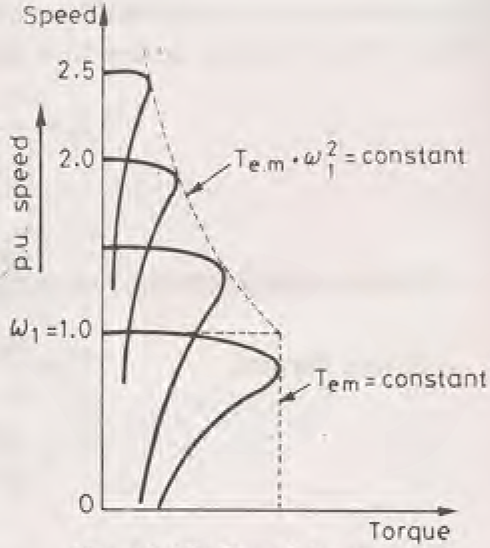


Fig. 12.28. Speed torque characteristics of a 3-phase IM with stator frequency control with constant supply voltage.

**Example 12.23.** *A 3-phase, 400V, 15kW, 1440 rpm, 50 Hz, star- connected induction motor has rotor leakage impedance of 0.4 + j 1.6 Ω. Stator leakage impedance and rotational losses are assumed negligible.*

*If this motor is energised from 120 Hz, 400V, 3-phase source, then calculate*

*(a) the motor speed at rated load*

*(b) the slip at which maximum torque occurs and*

*(c) the maximum torque.*

**Solution.** Full-load torque, $T_{e \cdot fl} = \frac{P}{\omega_m} = \frac{60}{2\pi \times 1440} \times 15000 = 99.472$ Nm

(a) At 120 Hz, synchronous speed,

$$\omega_s = \frac{4\pi f_1}{P} = \frac{4\pi \times 120}{4} = 120\,\pi \text{ rad/s.}$$

Rotor impedance at 120 Hz $= 0.4 + j\,1.6 \times \frac{120}{50} = 0.4 + j\,3.84 \cong j\,3.84\ \Omega$ ✓

$$\therefore \qquad T_{e \cdot fl} = 99.472 = \frac{3}{120\,\pi} \cdot \frac{(400/\sqrt{3})^2}{(3.84)^2} \times \frac{0.4}{s}$$

∴ Full-load slip, $s = \frac{1}{40\pi} \times \frac{0.4}{99.472} \times \left(\frac{400}{\sqrt{3} \times 3.84}\right)^2 = 0.1157$

$$\text{Motor speed} \qquad = \frac{120 \times 120}{4}(1 - 0.1157) = 3183.48 \text{ rpm}$$

(*b*) Slip at which maximum torque occurs is given by

$$s_m = \frac{r_2}{x_2} = \frac{0.4}{3.84} = 0.1042$$

(*c*) Maximum torque, $T_{e\cdot m} = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{V_1^2}{2x_2} = \frac{3}{120\,\pi} \cdot \frac{(400/\sqrt{3})^2}{2 \times 3.84} = 55.262 \text{ Nm}.$

### 12.8.3. Stator Voltage and Frequency Control

For a 3-phase IM, stator voltage per phase is given by

$$V_1 = \sqrt{2}\,\pi f_1 \cdot N_{ph1} \cdot \phi_1 \cdot k_{\omega 1} \qquad \text{...(12.66)}$$

It is seen from above equation that if the ratio of supply voltage $V_1$ to supply frequency $f_1$ is kept constant, the air-gap flux $\phi_1$ remains constant. From Fig. 12.25 (*b*) and Eq. (12.50), the starting torque is given by

$$T_{e.st} = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{V_1^2}{(r_1 + r_2)^2 + (x_1 + x_2)^2} \cdot r_2$$

As $(r_1 + r_2) << (x_1 + x_2)$ and $\omega_s = \frac{2\omega_1}{P}$, we get

$$T_{e\cdot st} = \frac{3P}{2\omega_1} \cdot \frac{V_1^2 \cdot r_2}{\omega_1^2 (l_1 + l_2)^2}$$

$$= \frac{3P}{2\omega_1} \cdot \left(\frac{V_1}{\omega_1}\right)^2 \cdot \frac{r_2}{(l_1 + l_2)^2} \qquad \text{...(12.67)}$$

From Eq. (12.56), maximum torque is given by

$$T_{e.m} = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{V_1^2}{2\,(x_1 + x_2)}$$

$$= \frac{3P}{2\omega_1} \cdot \frac{V_1^2}{2 \cdot \omega_1 (l_1 + l_2)}$$

$$= \frac{3P}{4} \cdot \left(\frac{V_1}{\omega_1}\right)^2 \frac{1}{l_1 + l_2} \qquad \text{...(12.68)}$$

Eq. (12.68) shows that if $V_1/\omega_1$, or air- gap flux $\phi_1$, is kept constant, the maximum torque remains unaltered. Eq. (12.67) indicates that starting torque increases even if air-gap flux is kept constant. At low values of frequencies, the effect of resistances cannot be neglected as compared to the reactances. This has the effect of reducing the magnitude of maximum torque at lower frequencies as shown in Fig. 12.29. In practice, at low frequencies, the supply voltage is increased to maintain the level of maximum torque. This method of speed control is also called *volts/hertz* control.

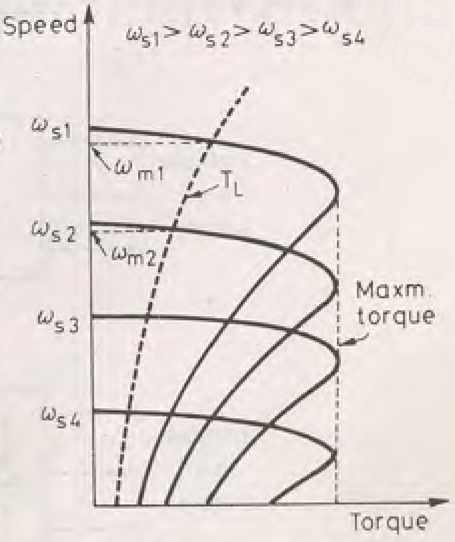


Fig. 12.29. Speed-torque characteristics of a 3-phase IM with volts/hertz control.

If stator resistance is neglected, then from Fig. 12.25 (*b*), the slip at which maximum torque occurs is given by

$$s_m = \frac{r_2}{x_1 + x_2}$$

$$= \frac{r_2}{\omega_1 (l_1 + l_2)} \qquad \text{...(12.69)}$$

As the supply frequency $\omega_1$ is reduced, the slip at maximum torque increases.

In Fig. 12.29, load torque $T_L$ for a certain load is also shown. It is seen from this figure that as both voltage and frequency are varied (usually below their rated values), speed of the drive can be controlled. The control of both voltage and frequency can be carried out (so as to keep $\frac{V}{f}$ constant) through the use of three-phase inverters or cycloconverters. Inverters are used in low and medium power drives whereas cycloconverters are suitable for high-power drives like cement mills, locomotives etc.

Variable voltage and variable frequency can be obtained from voltage-source inverters. Four such circuit configurations are shown in Fig. 12.30. In Fig. 12.30 (*a*), three-phase ac is converted to constant dc by diode rectifier. Voltage and frequency are both varied by PWM inverter. The circuitry between the rectifier and the inverter consists of an inductor *L* and

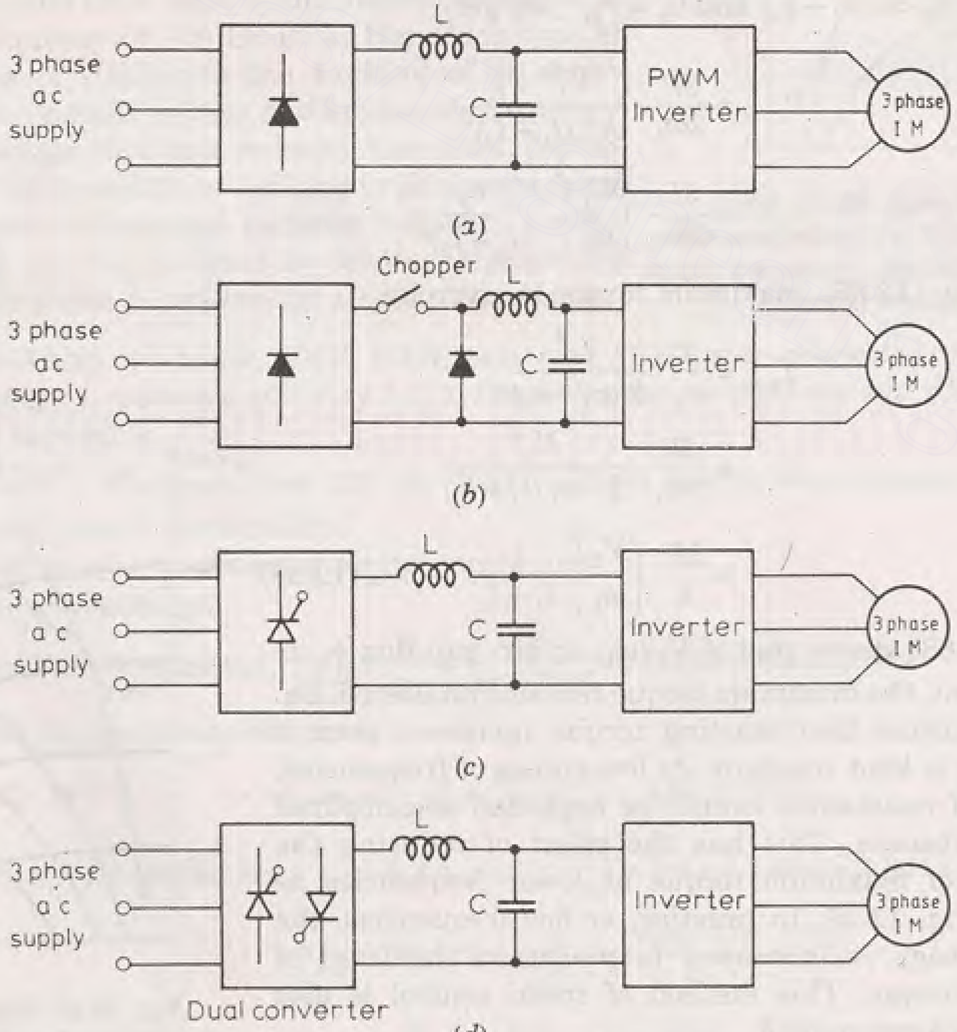


Fig. 12.30. Three-phase induction motor speed control through voltage source inverters.

capacitor $C$, called filter circuit. The function of filter circuit is to smooth dc input voltage to the inverter. This circuitry in between rectifier and inverter is called *dc link*. In Fig. 12.30 (*a*), regeneration is not possible because of diode rectifier. Also, inverter would inject harmonics into the 3-phase ac supply.

In Fig. 12.30 (*b*), three-phase ac is converted to dc by diode rectifier. Chopper varies the dc input voltage to the inverter and frequency is controlled by the inverter. Use of chopper reduces the harmonic injection into the ac supply. Regeneration is not feasible in the scheme of Fig. 12.30 (*b*).

Fig. 12.30 (*c*) uses a 3-phase controlled rectifier, dc link consisting of $L$ and $C$ and a force-commutated VSI. Voltage is regulated by controlled rectifier and frequency is varied within the inverter. Here regeneration is possible if three-phase full converter is used. Regeneration is also feasible in the scheme shown in Fig. 12.30 (*d*). It uses a 3-phase dual converter, L-C filter and inverter. Level of dc input voltage to the inverter is regulated in dual converter whereas frequency is varied within the VSI inverter.

It may be observed from above that volts/hertz control offer speed control from standstill upto rated speed of IM. This method is similar to the armature-voltage control method used for the speed control of a dc motor.

**Example 12.24.** *A 3-phase, 20 kW, 4-pole, 50 Hz, 400 V delta connected induction motor has the following parameters per phase :*

$$r_1 = 0.6\ \Omega,\ r_2 = 0.4\ \Omega,\ x_1 = x_2 = 1.6\ \Omega$$

*Its magnetizing reactance is neglected. If this motor is operated at 200V, 25 Hz with DOL starting, calculate*

(*a*) *current and pf at the instant of starting and under maximum torque conditions; compare the results with normal values,*

(*b*) *starting and maximum torques and compare with normal values.*

**Solution.** The subscripts $n$ and $d$ are used here for normal operation and for reduced-voltage reduced-frequency operation respectively.

(*a*) Starting current :

$$I_n = \frac{V_1}{\left[\left(r_1 + \frac{r_2}{s}\right)^2 + (x_1 + x_2)^2\right]^{1/2}} = \frac{400}{\left[\left(0.6 + \frac{0.4}{1}\right)^2 + (3.2)^2\right]^{1/2}} = 119.31 \text{ A}$$

$$I_d = \frac{400/2}{\left[\left(0.6 + \frac{0.4}{1}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{3.2}{2}\right)^2\right]^{1/2}} = 106 \text{ A}$$

$$(\cos\theta)_n = \frac{1.0}{[1^2 + 3.2^2]^{1/2}} = 0.2983$$

$$(\cos\theta)_d = \frac{1.0}{\left[1^2 + \left(\frac{3.2}{2}\right)^2\right]^{1/2}} = 0.53$$

(*b*) Starting torque :

$$T_{en} = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot I_n^2 \frac{r_2}{s}$$

$$= \frac{3}{50\pi}(119.31)^2\left(\frac{0.4}{1}\right) = 108.75 \text{ Nm}$$

$$T_{ed} = \frac{3}{25\pi}(106)^2 \times \frac{0.4}{1} = 171.673 \text{ Nm}$$

It is seen from above that at reduced-voltage reduced-frequency operation

(*i*) starting current decreases, however, starting torque becomes more,

(*ii*) power factor at starting is improved, therefore power input to motor is more.

It can be inferred from above that with reduced-voltage and reduced-frequency (keeping $v/f$ or flux constant) operation, the performance of IM at starting is improved.

**Maximum torque.** The slip at which maximum torque occurs is given by

$$\frac{0.4}{s_{m \cdot n}} = \sqrt{0.6^2 + 3.2^2}$$

$$\therefore \quad s_{m \cdot n} = \frac{0.4}{\sqrt{0.6^2 + 3.2^2}} = 0.123$$

$$I_n = \frac{400}{\left[\left(0.6 + \frac{0.4}{0.123}\right)^2 + (3.2)^2\right]^{1/2}} = 79.875 \text{ A}$$

$$T_{em \cdot n} = \frac{3}{50\,\pi}(79.875)^2 \times \frac{40}{0.123} = 396.26 \text{ Nm}$$

$$(\cos\theta)_n = \frac{0.6 + \frac{0.4}{0.123}}{\left[\left(0.6 + \frac{0.4}{0.123}\right)^2 + (3.2)^2\right]^{1/2}} = 0.7692 \text{ lag}$$

At reduced voltage and reduced frequency, the calculations are as under :

$$s_{m \cdot d} = \frac{0.4}{\left[0.6^2 + \left(\frac{3.2}{2}\right)^2\right]^{1/2}} = 0.234$$

$$I_d = \frac{200}{\left[\left(0.6 + \frac{0.4}{0.234}\right)^2 + 1.6^2\right]^{1/2}} = 71.187 \text{ A}$$

$$T_{em \cdot d} = \frac{3}{25 \cdot \pi} \cdot (71.187)^2 \times \frac{0.4}{0.237} = 330.885 \text{ A}$$

$$(\cos\,\theta)_d = \frac{0.6 + \frac{0.4}{0.234}}{\left[\left(0.6 + \frac{0.4}{0.234}\right)^2 + 1.6^2\right]^{1/2}} = 0.822 \text{ lag}$$

It is seen from above that at reduced voltage and reduced frequency

(*i*) current gets reduced whereas *pf* is improved under maximum torque conditions,

(*ii*) the maximum torque, however, gets reduced.

### 12.8.4. Stator Current Control

The developed torque and therefore the speed of a 3-phase IM can also be controlled by stator-current control instead of stator-voltage control. The behaviour of a motor with stator-current control is different from that obtained with voltage-source inverter.

Consider a constant current $I_1$ fed into the stator windings of a three-phase IM, Fig. 12.31 (*a*). So far as rotor current $I_2$ is concerned, stator leakage impedance $(r_1 + jx_1)$ plays no role. Therefore, the effect of $(r_1 + jx_1)$ can be omitted when studying constant-current mode of motor operation. However, $(r_1 + jx_1)$ does influence the magnitude of applied stator voltage $V_1$. For stator current $I_1$, the rotor current $I_2$, from Fig. 12.31 (*a*), is given by

$$I_2 = I_1 \frac{jX_m}{\frac{r_2}{s} + j(x_2 + X_m)} \qquad \text{...(12.70)}$$

The internal, or developed, electromagnetic torque $T_e$ is

$$T_e = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot I_2^2 \frac{r_2}{s}$$

$$= \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{(I_1 X_m)^2}{\left(\frac{r_2}{s}\right)^2 + (x_2 + X_m)^2} \cdot \frac{r_2}{s} \qquad \text{...(12.71)}$$

Invoking the principle of maximum power transfer in the equivalent circuit of Fig. 12.31 (*a*) with $r_1 + jx_1 = 0$ and with constant current $I_1$, we get

$$\frac{r_2}{s_m} = x_2 + X_m$$

or
$$s_m = \frac{r_2}{x_2 + X_m} \qquad \text{...(12.72)}$$

Eq. (12.72) gives the slip at which maximum torpue occurs when 3-phase IM is fed from current-controlled source. Maximum torque $T_{em}$ is obtained by substituting $\frac{r_2}{s_m} = x_2 + X_m$ in Eq. (12.71).

$$\therefore \quad T_{e \cdot m} = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{(I_1 \cdot X_m)^2}{2(x_2 + X_m)^2} \cdot (x_2 + X_m)$$

$$= \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{(I_1 X_m)^2}{2(x_2 + X_m)} \qquad \text{...(12.73)}$$

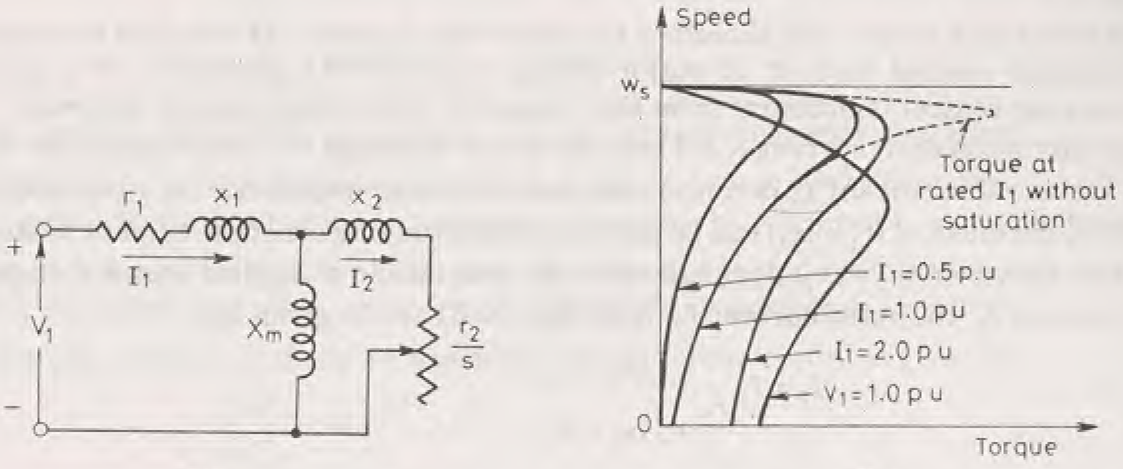
Also,
$$T_{e \cdot m} = \frac{3P}{4\pi f_1} \cdot \frac{(I_1 \cdot 2\pi f_1 \cdot L_m)^2}{2 \cdot 2\pi f_1 \cdot (l_2 + L_m)}$$

$$= \frac{3P}{4} \cdot \frac{L_m^2}{l_2 + L_m} \cdot I_1^2 \qquad \text{...(12.74)}$$

It is seen from Eq. (12.74) that maximum torque is (*i*) proportional to stator-current squared, (*ii*) independent of supply frequency $f_1$ and (*iii*) independent of rotor resistance.

The starting torque, from Eq. (12.71), is

$$T_{e \cdot st} = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{(I_1 \cdot X_m)^2}{r_2^2 + (x_2 + X_m)^2} \cdot r_2 \qquad \text{...(12.75)}$$

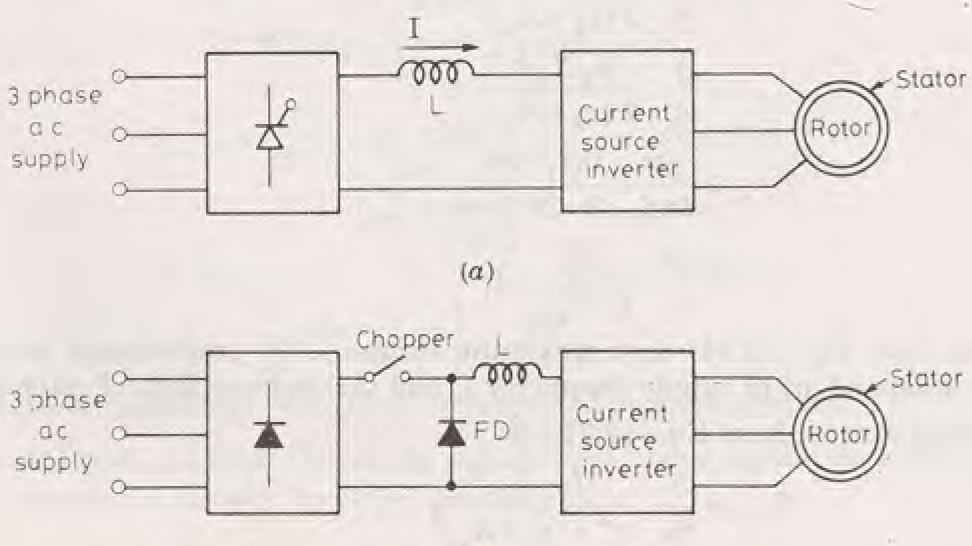


(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 12.31. (*a*) 3-phase I.M. per-phase equivalent circuit
(*b*) speed-torque curves with stator-current control.

The speed-torque characteristics for different stator currents are shown in Fig. 12.31 (*b*). For comparison purposes, speed-torque curve at rated voltage is also sketched. At rated current $I_1 = 1.0$, starting torque is very low as compared to that obtained with rated voltage $V_1 = 1.0$. At starting, slip $s = 1.0$, $r_2 + jx_2$ is quite low in magnitude producing almost a short-circuiting effect leading to very low current through $X_m$ and therefore very low air-gap flux and low stator voltage. As a consequence, starting torque is quite small. As speed rises or slip falls, $\frac{r_2}{s} + j\,x_2$ rises, current through $X_m$ increases and as a result, stator voltage of air-gap flux rises leading to higher torque. With no magnetic saturation, torque rises to quite a high value as shown by dotted line. In practice, the saturation will limit the peaking in maximum developed torque as shown by solid curve for $I_1 = 1.0$. The speed-torque curves for $I_1 = 0.5$ and 2.0 are also shown in Fig. 12.31 (*b*).

A constant current for the 3-phase IM can be obtained from a 3-phase current source inverter (CSI). The advantages of torque and speed control by CSI fed IM are (*i*) fault current level control and (*ii*) current input is almost unaffected by motor parameter variations. The disadvantages of current-fed drives are (*i*) generation of unwanted harmonics in the system and (*ii*) torque pulsations.



(*a*)

(*b*)

Fig. 12.32. (*a*) 3-phase IM speed control through current-source inverter.

Fig. 12.32 shows two circuit configurations for current-fed inverter IM drives. In Fig. 12.32 (*a*), 3-phase controlled rectifier gives out controlled dc voltage. Inductor *L* converts this voltage to constant current. CSI regulates the output frequency and therefore the torque and speed of 3-phase IM. In Fig. 12.32 (*b*), uncontrolled dc voltage is regulated by chopper which is then converted to current source by inductor *L*. As before, CSI then controls the torque and speed of three-phase I.M.

**Example 12.25.** *A 400 V, 4-pole, 50 Hz, 3-phase, star-connected induction motor has* $r_1 = 0$, $x_1 = x_2 = 1\ \Omega$, $r_2 = 0.4\ \Omega$, $X_m = 50\ \Omega$. *This induction motor is fed from (i) a constant-voltage source of 231V per phase and*

*(ii) a constant-current source of 28A.*

*For both parts (i) and (ii), calculate*

*(a) the slip for maximum torque*

*(b) the starting and maximum torques*

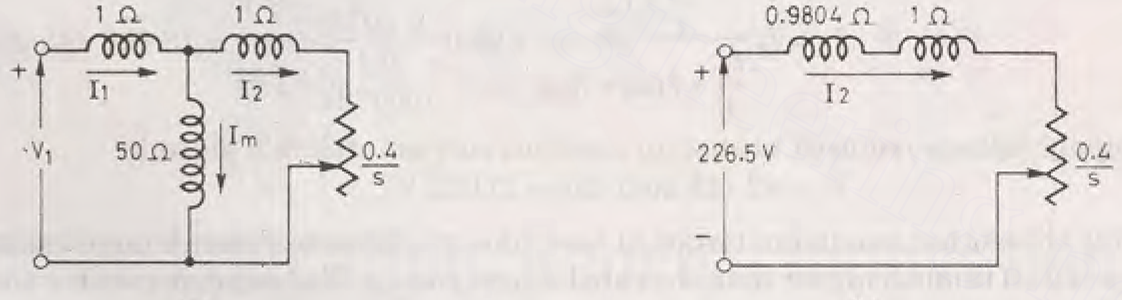
*(c) the supply voltage required to sustain the constant current at the maximum torque.*

**Solution.** The equivalent circuit for this motor is shown in Fig. 12.33 (*a*). Its Thevenin's equivalent circuit is drawn in Fig. 12.33 (*b*) where $X_e$ and $V_e$ are given by

$$X_e = \frac{1 \times 50}{51} = 0.9804\ \Omega$$

and

$$V_e = \frac{231 \times 50}{51} = 226.5\ \text{V}$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 12.33. Induction motor per-phase equivalent circuit, Example 12.25.

(*a*) (*i*) It is seen from the equivalent circuit of Fig. 12.33 (*b*) that the slip at which maximum torque occurs is given by

$$s_m = \frac{0.4}{1.9804} = 0.202$$

(*ii*) For constant-current operation of IM, slip $s_m$ is given by Eq. 12.72.

$$\therefore \qquad s_{mT} = \frac{0.4}{1 + 50} = 0.00784$$

(*b*) (*i*) Synchronous speed, $\omega_s = \dfrac{4\pi f_1}{P} = \dfrac{4\pi \times 50}{4} = 50\pi$ rad/s

For constant voltage input, $T_{e \cdot st}$ is given by

$$T_{e \cdot st} = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot I_{2st}^{\ 2} \cdot r_2$$

$$= \frac{3}{50\pi} \cdot \frac{226.5^2}{0.4^2 + 1.9804^2} \times 0.4 = 96.012 \text{ Nm}$$

$$T_{e \cdot m} = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{V_e^2}{2\,(x_2 + X_e)}$$

$$= \frac{3}{50\pi} \cdot \frac{(226.5)^2}{2\,(1.9804)} = 247.37 \text{ Nm}$$

(*ii*) For constant current input, $T_{e \cdot st}$ from Eq. (12.75) is

$$T_{e \cdot st} = \frac{3}{50\,\pi} \cdot \frac{(28 \times 50)^2}{0.4^2 + 51^2} \times 0.4 = 5.756 \text{ Nm}$$

Maximum torque, from Eq. (12.73) is

$$T_{e \cdot m} = \frac{3}{50\pi} \cdot \frac{(28 \times 50)^2}{2 \times 51} = 366.993 \text{ Nm}$$

It is seen from above that for constant-current mode, $T_{e,st}$ is much smaller (5.756 Nm) as compared to $T_{e \cdot st}$ for constant-voltage mode (96.012 Nm). But maximum torque for constant-current mode is much more (366.993 Nm) than its value for constant-voltage mode (247.37 Nm). Also the slip at which maximum torque occurs is very low (0.00784) for constant-current mode as compared to its value for constant-voltage mode (0.202).

(*c*) At maximum torque, $S_{mT} = 0.00784$. From the equivalent circuit of Fig. 12.33 (*a*), the magnetizing current $I_m$ is given by

$$I_m = I_1 \frac{\frac{r_2}{s} + j\,x_2}{\frac{r_2}{s} + j\,(x_2 + X_m)} = 28.0 \frac{\frac{0.4}{0.00784} + j\,1}{\frac{0.4}{0.00784} + j\,51} = 19.806 \; \underline{/43.865^\circ}$$

Supply voltage required to sustain constant current of 28A is given by

$$V_1 = \sqrt{3}\,(19.806)\,(50) = 1715.2 \text{ V}$$

This shows that maximum torque at low value of slip necessitates a large value of source voltage which is much higher than the rated source voltage. But acquiring such a large voltage is not feasible. Thus, a large value of maximum torque at low slip is not a practical possibility.

In actual practice, saturation occurs and the magnitude of $X_m$ is reduced. As a consequence, the value of maximum torque under constant-current mode has a much lower value than that computed here.

**Summary of Characteristics of Adjustable-frequency Induction-motor Drives.** Speed-torque characteristics of a three-phase induction-motor drives depend upon the methods of control techniques employed. For different stator frequencies, a family of speed-torque characteristics as shown in Fig. 12.34 can be obtained. These characteristics can be subdivided into three regions; constant-torque region, constant-power region and high-speed series-motor region. A summary of these characteristics is reviewed here.

**Constant-torque region.** As explained before, this region of constant torque can be obtained by volts/hertz control as shown in Fig. 12.29. In the low-frequency range of speed, the effect of stator resistance is compensated by a boost in the stator voltage as shown in Fig. 12.35. In this region, stator current is kept constant at its rated value. Power, equal to the product of constant torque and speed, varies linearly with speed as shown. Slip frequency remains constant during this region.

**Constant-power region.** When maximum speed, called base speed, is attained in the constant-torque region, stator voltage reaches its rated value. Motor speeds beyond base (or rated) speed are obtained by keeping stator voltage constant and lowering the stator frequency.

Torque in a 3-phase induction motor is given by

$$T_e = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \text{ (Power input to rotor)}$$

$$= \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot E_2 I_2 \cos\theta_2$$

At low rotor frequency, $\cos\theta_2 \left( = \frac{r_2}{\sqrt{{r_2}^2 + (2\pi f_2 l_2 s)^2}} \right)$ is almost nearer to unity.

$$\therefore \quad T_e = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot E_2 I_2 \qquad \text{...(12.76)}$$

But rotor current, $I_2 = \dfrac{E_2}{\dfrac{r_2}{s} + j\,x_2}$

At small slips, $\frac{r_2}{s} \gg x_2$. This gives $I_2 = \frac{sE_2}{r_2}$

Substituting this value of $I_2$ in Eq. (12.76), we get

$$T_e = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{s\,{E_2}^2}{r_2}$$

$$= \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{\omega_2}{\omega_1} \cdot \frac{{E_2}^2}{r_2} = \frac{3P}{2\omega_1} \cdot \frac{\omega_2}{\omega_1} \cdot \frac{{E_2}^2}{r_2}$$

$$= \frac{3P}{2r_2} \left( \frac{E_2}{\omega_1} \right)^2 \cdot \omega_2 \qquad \text{...(12.77)}$$

Emf induced in rotor at stand-still,

$$E_2 = \sqrt{2}\pi f_1 \cdot N_{ph2} \cdot \phi_1 \cdot k_{\omega 2}$$

$$= \frac{\omega_1}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot N_{ph2} \cdot \phi_1 \cdot k_{\omega 2}$$

This gives air-gap flux, $\phi_1 \propto \frac{E_2}{\omega_1}$

From Eq. (12.77), $T_e \propto \frac{3P}{2r_2} \cdot {\phi_1}^2 \cdot \omega_2$

or
$$T_e = K \cdot {\phi_1}^2 \cdot \omega_2 \qquad \text{...(12.78)}$$

If stator impedance is neglected, then

$$V_1 = \sqrt{2}\,\pi f_1 \cdot N_{ph1} \cdot \phi_1 \cdot k_{\omega 1}$$

$$= \frac{\omega_1}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot N_{ph1} \cdot \phi_1 \cdot k_{\omega 1}$$

$\therefore$ Air-gap flux, $\phi_1 \propto \frac{V_1}{\omega_1}$

From Eq. (12.78), $$T_e \propto K\left(\frac{V_1}{\omega_1}\right)^2 \cdot \omega_2$$

or $$T_e = K_1 \cdot \frac{V_1^2}{\omega_1}\left(\frac{\omega_2}{\omega_1}\right) \qquad \text{...(12.79)}$$

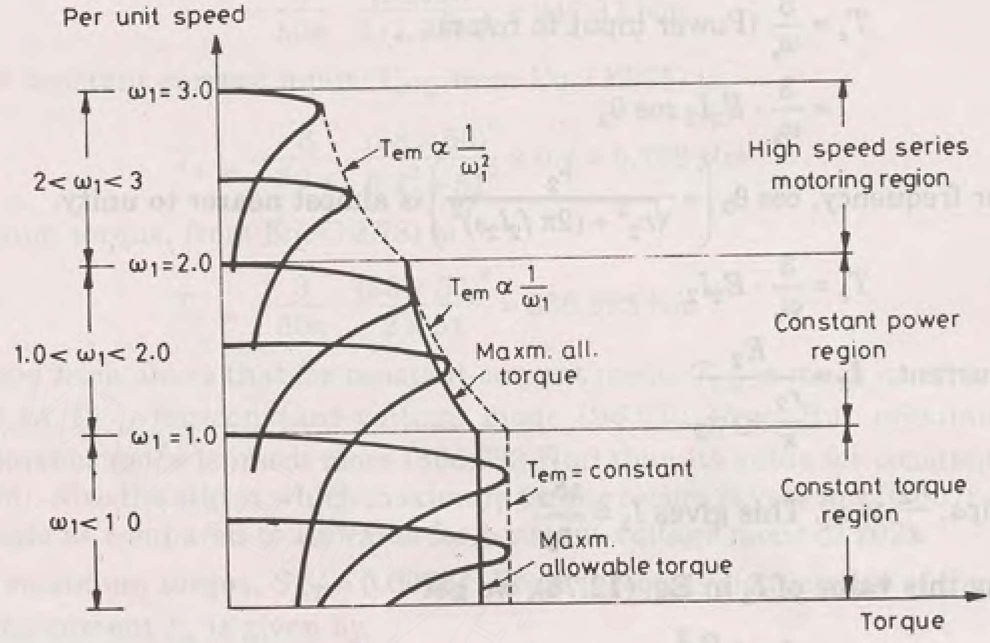


Fig. 12.34. Typical speed-torque characteristics of a 3-phase induction motor with variable-voltage and variable-frequency power supply.

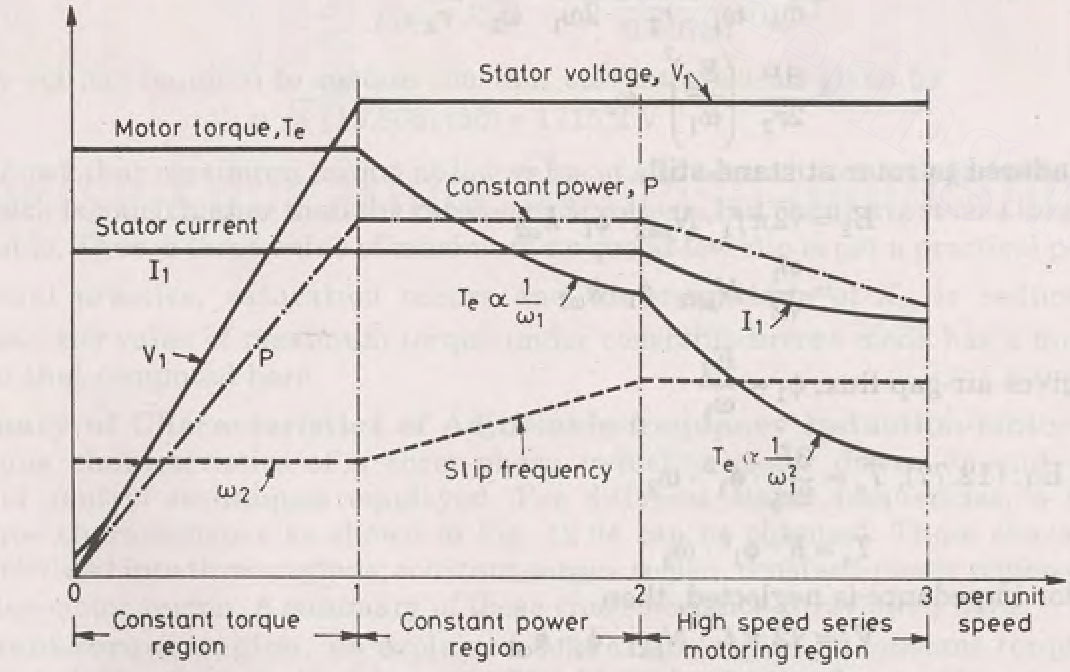


Fig. 12.35. Stator voltage, current, slip-frequency, torque and power variation with speed for speed-torque characteristics of Fig. 12.34.

Eq. (12.79) gives approximate value of motor torque for a 3-phase IM working in the low-slip range. It shows that if IM is operated at constant stator voltage $V_1$ and constant rotor frequency $\omega_2$, the motor torque is inversely proportional to supply-frequency squared. In case slip (or rotor) frequency $\omega_2$ is increased linearly as $\omega_1$ is increased to obtain hign-operating speed $\left(= \frac{2\omega_1}{P} \text{ rad/s}\right)$, then $\frac{\omega_2}{\omega_1}$ is constant and therefore $T_e \cdot \omega_1 = K \cdot V_1^2 \left(\frac{\omega_2}{\omega_1}\right)$ remains constant giving a constant power characteristic. During constant power operation, stator voltage is kept constant but stator frequency is raised. As a result, stator flux decreases or air-gap flux is weakened. In view of this, constant-power mode of a 3-phase IM is also called field- weakening mode of an IM.

The upper limit of constant-power mode is reached when maximum working value of rotor frequency is reached.

**High-speed series-motoring region.** From Eq. (12.79),

$$T_e = K_1 \cdot \frac{V_1^2 \cdot \omega_2}{\omega_1^2} \qquad \text{...(12.79)}$$

After the constant-power region, high-speed series-motoring region is obtained. In this region, stator voltage $V_1$ and rotor frequency $\omega_2$ are maintained constant at their maximum values. It is seen from Eq. (12.79) that under constant $V_1$ and $\omega_2$ operation of a 3-phase IM, output torque $T_e$ is inversely proportional to supply frequency squared or $T_e$ varies inversely as speed squared. In other words, $T_e \cdot \omega_1^2$ remains constant and series-type characteristics are thus obtained. As this region corresponds to high-speed series-type characteristics, operation under constant $V_1$, $\omega_2$ and variable $\omega_1$ is usually referred to as high-speed series-motoring region.

In Fig. 12.34, speed-torque characteristics at different stator frequencies in the constant-torque, constant-power and high-speed series-motoring regions are shown. The maximum torque, indicated by dashed line, is constant below base speed and decreases inversely with speed above base speed and upto $\omega_1 = 2.0$. In the constant-torque and constant-power regions, maximum allowable torque is shown somewhat lower than the maximum or breakdown torque $T_{em}$ just as a matter of precaution because inverter current carrying capability is limited. Maximum allowable torque is indicated by solid line in the constant-torque region and by solid-curve in the constant-power region.

**Example 12.26.** *Is it possible to obtain Ward-Leonard type of characteristics from a 3-phase induction motor ? Discuss.*

**Solution.** Word-Leonard system of speed control for a separately-excited dc motor gives torque-speed and power-speed characteristics as shown in Fig. 12.36. A comparison of Figs. 12.35 and 12.36 shows that Ward-Leonard type of characteristics as obtained in a dc motor can be obtained from a 3-phase induction motor.

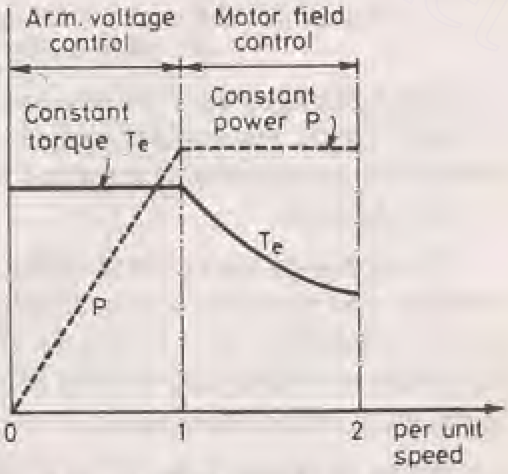


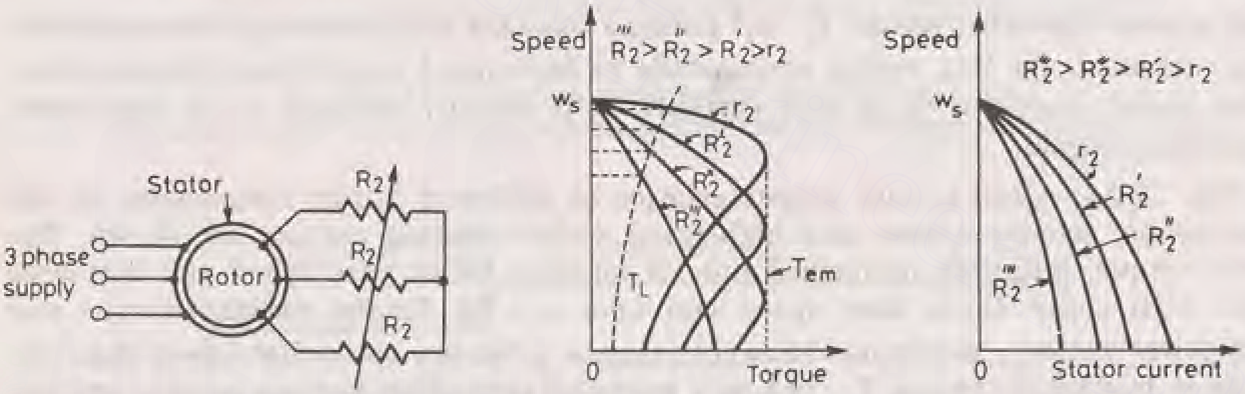
Fig. 12.36. Torque-speed and power-speed characteristics for Ward-Leonard system of speed control.

From base speed down to zero speed, the speed control is obtained by (*i*) armature voltage control in a dc motor and (*ii*) stator voltage and frequency control in a 3-phase induction motor. In both, the flux is kept constant by keeping (*i*) field current constant in a dc motor and (*ii*) $V/f$ constant in a 3-phase IM. Armature current in a dc motor and stator current in IM are kept constant at their rated values. In both, constant torque and variable power characteristics are obtained from zero to base speed.

Above base speed, the speed control is obtained by field-weakening method in both dc and ac motors. Constant power and variable torque characteristics are obtained in both types of motors as shown. Armature current in dc motor and stator current in 3-phase IM are kept constant. In dc motor, armature voltage is kept constant whereas field flux is weakened by decreasing the field current. In IM, stator voltage is kept constant and air-gap flux is weakened by increasing stator frequency but by keeping $\frac{\omega_2}{\omega_1}$ constant.

### 12.8.5. Static Rotor-resistance Control

In a slip-ring induction motor (SRIM), a 3-phase variable resistor $R_2$ can be inserted in the rotor circuit as shown in Fig. 12.37 (*a*). By varying the rotor circuit resistance $R_2$, the motor torque can be controlled as shown in Fig. 12.37 (*b*). The starting torque and starting current can also be varied by controlling the rotor circuit resistance, Fig. 12.37 (*b*) and (*c*). The disadvantages of this method of speed control are : (*i*) reduced efficiency at low speeds (*ii*) speed changes very widely with load variation (*iii*) unbalances in voltages and currents if rotor circuit resistances are not equal. In spite of these, this method of speed control is used when speed drop is required for a short time, as for example in overhead cranes, in load equalization etc.



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Fig. 12.37. Three-phase IM speed control by rotor resistance (*a*) circuit arrangement (*b*) effect on developed torque (*c*) effect on stator current.

The three-phase resistor of Fig. 12.37 (*a*) may be replaced by a three-phase diode rectifier, chopper and one resistor as shown in Fig. 12.38 (*a*). In this figure, the function of inductor $L_d$ is to smoothen the current $I_d$. GTO chopper allows the effective rotor circuit resistance to be varied for the speed control of SRIM. Diode rectifier converts slip-frequency input power to dc at its output terminals.

When chopper is on, $V_{dc} = V_d = 0$ and resistance $R$ gets short-circuited. When chopper is off, $V_{dc} = V_d$ and resistance in the rotor circuit is $R$. This is shown in Fig. 12.38 (*b*). From this figure, effective external resistance $R_e$ is

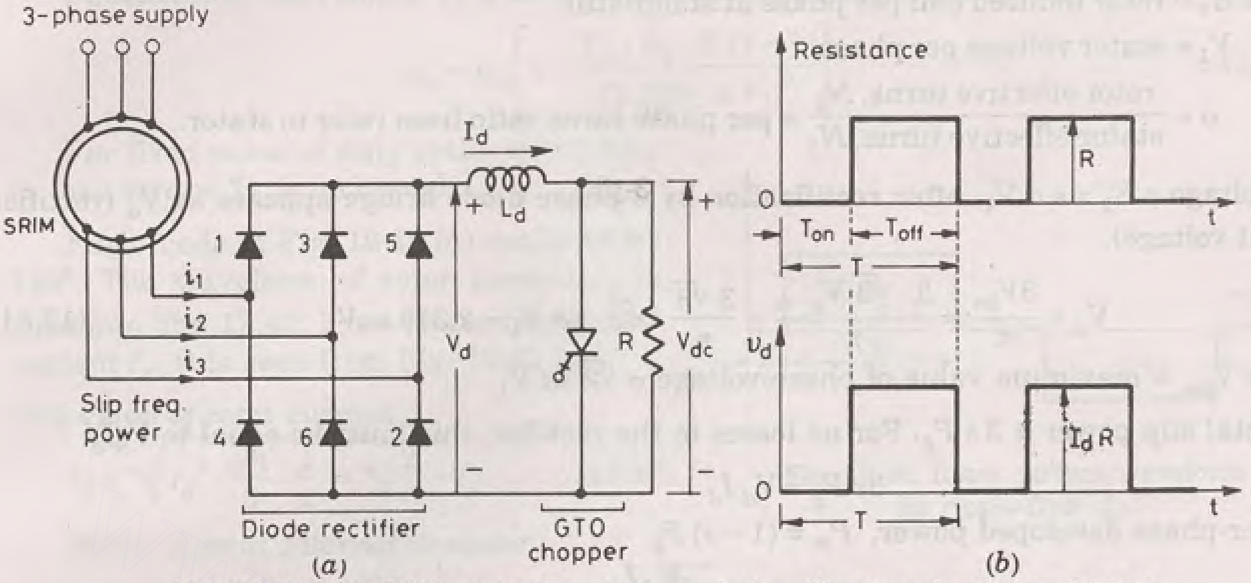


Fig. 12.38. (*a*) SRIM control by static variation of external rotor resistance (*b*) waveforms pertaining to Fig. (*a*).

$$R_e = \frac{R \cdot T_{off}}{T} = \frac{R\,(T - T_{on})}{T} = R\,(1 - k) \qquad \text{...(12.80)}$$

where $k = \dfrac{T_{on}}{T}$ = duty cycle of chopper.

**Analysis of induction motor with chopper control.** The equivalent circuit for 3-phase IM, diode rectifier and chopper circuit of Fig. 12.38 (*a*) is as shown in Fig. 12.39 (*a*).

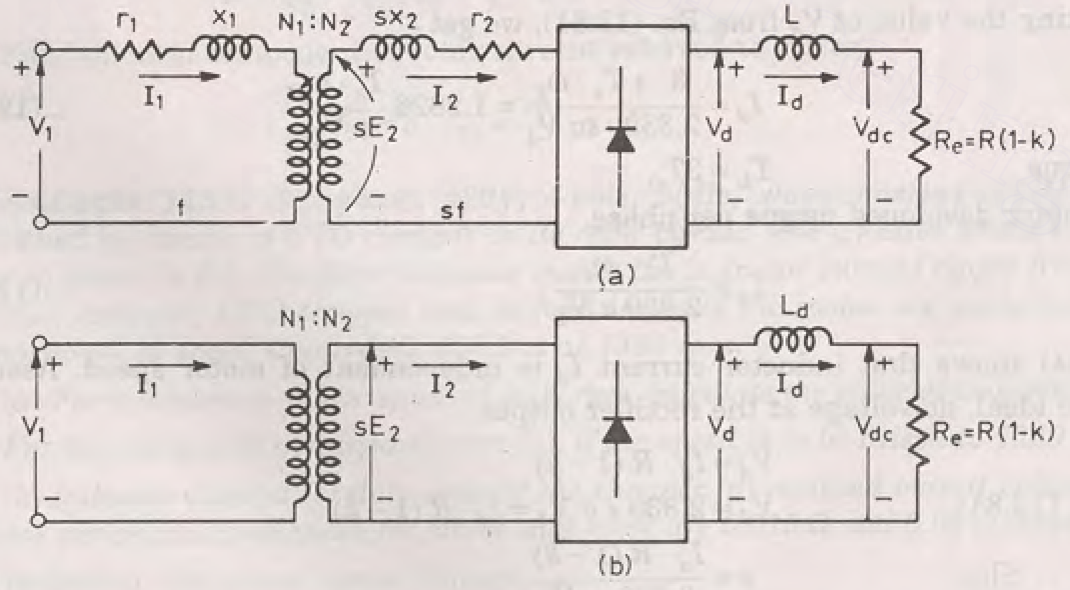


Fig. 12.39 (*a*). Equivalent circuit for Fig. 12.38 (*a*), (*b*) its approximate equivalent circuit.

If stator and rotor leakage impedances are neglected as compared to inductor $L_d$, equivalent circuit of Fig. 12.39 (*b*) is obtained. Stator voltage $V_1$ when referred to rotor circuit gives slip-frequency voltage as

$$s \cdot \frac{V_1}{N_1} \cdot N_2 = s\,a\,V_1 = s\,E_2$$

where $E_2$ = rotor induced emf per phase at stand-still

$V_1$ = stator voltage per phase

$$a = \frac{\text{rotor effective turns, } N_2}{\text{stator effective turns, } N_1} = \text{per phase turns ratio from rotor to stator.}$$

Voltage $s\,E_2 = s\,a\,V_1$, after rectification by 3-phase diode bridge appears as $V_d$ (rectifier output voltage).

$$\therefore \quad V_d = \frac{3V_{lm}}{\pi} = \frac{3\cdot\sqrt{3}\,V_{p\cdot m}}{\pi} = \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{\pi}\cdot\sqrt{2}\cdot sa\,V_1 = 2.339\,saV_1 \qquad \text{...(12.81)}$$

where $V_{pm}$ = maximum value of phase voltage = $\sqrt{2}\,sa\,V_1$

Total slip power = $3\,s\,P_g$. For no losses in the rectifier, this must be equal to $V_dI_d$.

$$\therefore \quad 3s\,P_g = V_d\,I_d$$

Per-phase developed power, $P_m = (1-s)\,P_g$

$$= (1-s)\,\frac{V_d\,I_d}{3s} \qquad \text{...(12.82)}$$

Also, $$P_m = T_e\cdot\omega_m = T_e\cdot\omega_s\,(1-s) \qquad \text{...(12.83)}$$

From Eqs. (12.82) and (12.83), we get

$$V_d\,I_d\,\frac{(1-s)}{3s} = T_e\cdot\omega_s\,(1-s)$$

or $$I_d = \frac{T_e\cdot\omega_s\cdot 3s}{V_d}$$

Substituting the value of $V_d$ from Eq. (12.81), we get

$$I_d = \frac{3\cdot s\,T_e\cdot\omega_s}{2.339\cdot sa\,V_1} = 1.2826\,\frac{T_e\cdot\omega_s}{a\,V_1} \qquad \text{...(12.84 a)}$$

Load torque $T_L = 3T_e$,

where $T_e$ = motor developed torque per phase.

$$\therefore \quad I_d = \frac{T_L\cdot\omega_s}{2.339\,a\,V_1} \qquad \text{...(12.84 b)}$$

Eq. (12.84) shows that inductor current $I_d$ is independent of motor speed. Assuming inductor to be ideal, dc voltage at the rectifier output,

$$V_d = I_d\cdot R\,(1-k)$$

From Eq. (12.81), $$V_d = 2.339\,s\,a\,V_1 = I_d\cdot R\,(1-k)$$

$$\therefore \quad \text{Slip,} \quad s = \frac{I_d\cdot R\,(1-k)}{2.339\cdot aV_1} \qquad \text{...(12.85)}$$

Motor speed, $$\omega_m = \omega_s\,(1-s)$$

$$= \omega_s\left[1 - \frac{I_d\cdot R\,(1-k)}{2.339\cdot a\,V_1}\right] \qquad \text{...(12.86 a)}$$

Also $$N_r = N_s\left[1 - \frac{I_d\cdot R\,(1-k)}{2.339\cdot a\,V_1}\right]$$

Substituting the value of $I_d$ from Eq. (12.84 *b*) in Eq. (12.86 *a*), we get

$$\omega_m = \omega_s \left[ 1 - \frac{T_L \cdot \omega_s \cdot R\,(1-k)}{(2.339 \cdot a\, V_1)^2} \right] \qquad \text{...(12.86 } b\text{)}$$

For fixed value of duty cycle, speed falls as load torque $T_L$ is increased.

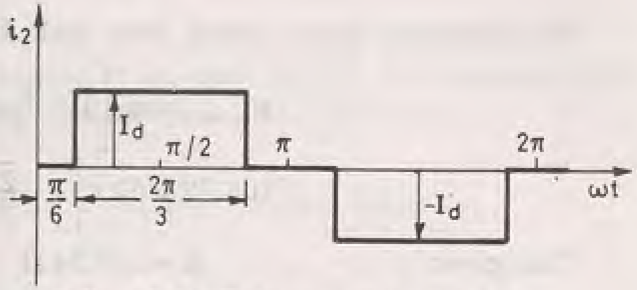


Fig. 12.40. Rotor current waveform for ripple-free $I_d$.

Each diode in Fig. 12.38 (*a*) conducts for 120°. The waveform of rotor current $i_2$ is shown in Fig. 12.40. For a ripple-free output current $I_d$, it is seen from Fig. 12.40 that

rms value of rotor current,

$$I_2 = \sqrt{I_d^{\,2} \cdot \frac{2\pi}{3} \cdot \frac{1}{\pi}} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \cdot I_d \qquad \text{...(12.87)}$$

Rotor current referred to stator,

$$I_1 = \frac{N_2}{N_1} I_2 = a I_2 = a \cdot I_d \cdot \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \qquad \text{...(12.88)}$$

Fourier analysis of the waveform in Fig. 12.40 can be obtained from Eq. (8.61).

$$\therefore \qquad A_1 = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_{\pi/6}^{5\pi/6} I_d \sin \omega t \cdot d\,(\omega t) = \frac{2}{\pi} I_d \Big| -\cos \omega t \Big|_{\pi/6}^{5\pi/6} = \frac{2\sqrt{3}}{\pi} I_d$$

This gives fundamental component of rotor current as

$$I_{21} = \frac{A_1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{2\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{2} \cdot \pi} = \frac{\sqrt{6}}{\pi} I_d \qquad \text{...(12.89)}$$

Fundamental component of rotor current referred to stator

$$I_{11} = \frac{N_2}{N_1} I_{21} = a \cdot I_{21} = \frac{\sqrt{6}}{\pi} \cdot a \cdot I_d \qquad \text{...(12.90)}$$

**Example 12.27.** *A 3-phase, 420V, 4-pole, 50Hz, star-connected SRIM has its speed controlled by means of GTO chopper in its rotor circuit. The effective phase turns ratio from rotor to stator is 0.8. The filter inductor makes the inductor current ripple free. Losses in the rectifier, inductor, GTO chopper and no-load losses of the motor are neglected. Load torque, proportional to speed squared, is 450 Nm at 1440 rpm.*

(*a*) *For a minimum motor speed of 1000 rpm, calculate the value of chopper resistance R.*

*For the value of R obtained in part (a), if the speed is to be raised to 1320 rpm, calculate.*

(*b*) *inductor current (c) duty cycle of the chopper (d) rectified output voltage (e) efficiency in case per-phase resistances for stator and rotor are 0.015 Ω and 0.02 Ω respectively.*

**Solution.** Per-phase stator voltage,

$$V_1 = \frac{420}{\sqrt{3}} = 242.5 \text{ V}$$

Load torque at 1000 rpm, $T_L = 450 \left( \frac{1000}{1440} \right)^2 = 217.01$ Nm

Synchronous speed, $\omega_s = \frac{2\pi \times 1500}{60} = 50\,\pi$ rad/s

Minimum motor speed, $\omega_{m\cdot mn} = \dfrac{2\pi \times 1000}{60} = 104.72 \text{ rad/s}$

(*a*) From Eq. (12.84 *b*), the inductor current,

$$I_d = \frac{217.01 \times 50\,\pi}{2.339 \times 0.8 \times 242.5} = 75.122 \text{ A}$$

For minimum motor speed, duty cycle $k = 0$ in Eq. (12.86 *a*).

$$\therefore \qquad \omega_{m\cdot mn} = \omega_s \left[1 - \frac{I_d \cdot R\,(1-0)}{2.339\,aV_1}\right]$$

$$104.72 = 50\,\pi \left[1 - \frac{75.122 \times R}{2.339 \times 0.8 \times 242.5}\right]$$

This gives $\qquad R = 2.0134\ \Omega$

(*b*) New load torque at 1320 rpm, $T_L = 450\left(\dfrac{1320}{1440}\right)^2 = 378.125 \text{ Nm}$

Inductor current from Eq. (12.84 *b*) is

$$I_d = \frac{378.125 \times 50\,\pi}{2.339 \times 0.8 \times 242.5} = 130.895 \text{ A}$$

(*c*) $\qquad \omega_m = \dfrac{2\pi \times 1320}{60} = 138.23 \text{ rad/s.}$

From Eq. (12.86 *a*), $138.23 = 50\pi\left[1 - \dfrac{130.895 \times 2.0134 \times (1-k)}{2.339 \times 0.8 \times 242.5}\right]$

$$= 50\,\pi\,[1 - 0.5808\,(1-k)]$$

$\therefore$ Duty cycle of chopper, $k = 0.7934$

(*d*) $\qquad$ Slip, $s = \dfrac{1500 - 1320}{1500} = 0.12$

From Eq. (12.31), $\qquad V_d = 2.339 \times 0.12 \times 0.8 \times 242.5 = 54.452 \text{ V}$

(*e*) Power loss in chopper resistance

$$= V_d\,I_d = 54.452 \times 130.895 = 7127.5 \text{ W}$$

Also, power loss in chopper resistance

$$= I_d^{\,2} \cdot R\,(1-k)$$

$$= (130.895)^2 \times 2.0134\,(1 - 0.7934) = 7127 \text{ W}$$

From Eq. (12.87), inductor current referred to rotor,

$$I_2 = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \cdot I_d = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \times 130.895 = 106.88 \text{ A}$$

Total rotor ohmic loss $\qquad = 3I_2^{\,2}\,r_2 = 3 \times 106.88^2 \times 0.02 = 685.4 \text{ W}$

From Eq. (12.88), stator current,

$$I_1 = aI_2 = 0.8 \times 106.88 = 85.504 \text{ A}$$

Total stator ohmic loss $\qquad = 3I_1^{\,2}r_1 = 3 \times 85.504^2 \times 0.015 = 329 \text{ W}$

Power output $\qquad = T_L \cdot \omega_m = 378.125 \times \dfrac{2\pi \times 1320}{60} = 52268.25 \text{ W}$

Power input $\qquad = 52268.25 + 7127.5 + 685.4 + 329 = 60410.15 \text{ W}$

$$\text{Efficiency} = \frac{52268.25}{60410.15} \times 100 = 86.52$$

**Example 12.28.** *A 3-phase, 400 V, 50 Hz, 960 rpm, star- connected SRIM has the following per-phase parameters referred to stator :*

$$r_1 = 0.1\ \Omega,\ r_2 = 0.08\ \Omega,\quad x_1 = x_2 = 0.3\ \Omega,\ X_m = 0$$

*Per-phase turns ratio from rotor to stator = 0.7*

*Speed of this motor is controlled by a GTO chopper in its rotor circuit. For a speed of 800 rpm, the inductor current is 110 A and the chopper resistance is 2 Ω. Calculate*

*(a) the value of chopper duty cycle*

*(b) efficiency for a power output of 20 kW and for negligible no-load losses.*

*(c) the input power factor.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Per-phase voltage $= \frac{400}{\sqrt{3}} = 230.9$ V

Synchronous speed, $N_s = 1000$ rpm

From Eq. (12.86 *a*), $800 = 1000\left[1 - \frac{110 \times 2\,(1-k)}{2.339 \times 0.7 \times 230.9}\right]$

This gives chopper dirty cycle, $k = 0.656$

(*b*) Power loss in chopper $= I_d^2 \cdot R\,(1-k) = 110^2 \times 2\,(1 - 0.656) = 8324.8$ W

Rms value of rotor current referred to stator, from Eq. (12.88), is

$$I_1 = a \cdot I_d \cdot \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = 0.7 \times 110 \times \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = 62.87\text{ A}$$

Power loss in stator and rotor resistances

$$= 3\,(62.87)^2 \times (0.1 + 0.08) = 2134.4\text{ W}$$

Power input $= 20{,}000 + 8324.8 + 2134.4 = 30459.2$ W

Efficiency $= \frac{20{,}000}{30459.2} \times 100 = 65.66\%$

(*c*) From Eq. (12.90), fundamental component of rotor current referred to stator is

$$I_{11} = \frac{\sqrt{6}}{\pi} \cdot a \cdot I_d = \frac{\sqrt{6}}{\pi} \cdot (0.7) \times 110 = 60.04\text{ A}$$

Power input $= \sqrt{3} \times 400 \times 60.04 \times \cos\theta = 30459.2$ W

∴ Input $pf = \frac{30459.2}{\sqrt{3} \times 400 \times 60.04} = 0.7323$ lag

### 12.8.6. Slip-Power Recovery Schemes

In chopper method of speed control for SRIM, the slip power is dissipated in the external resistance and it leads to poor efficiency of the drive. However, instead of wasting the slip power in the rotor circuit resistance, it can be conveniently converted by various schemes for the speed control of SRIM. Two important slip-power recover schemes are static Kramer drive and static Scherbius drive. These are now discussed in what follows.

**12.8.6.1. Static Kramer Drive.** The circuit configuration for static Kramer drive is shown in Fig. 12.41. The slip-frequency power from the rotor circuit is converted to dc voltage which is then converted to line frequency and pumped back to the ac source. As the slip power can flow only in one direction, static Kramer drive offers speed control below synchronous speed only.

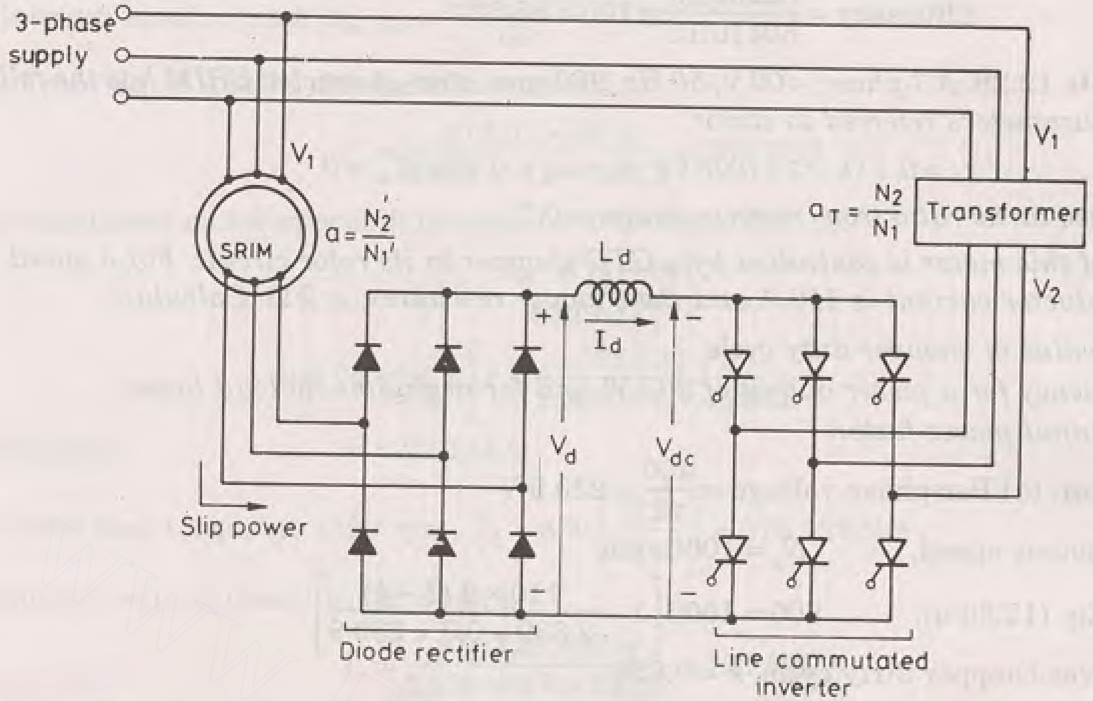


Fig. 12.41. Static Kramer drive.

The slip power from rotor is rectified to dc voltage by diode bridge. Inductor $L_d$ smoothens the ripples in the rectified voltage $V_d$. This voltage $V_d$ is then converted to ac voltage at line frequency by line-commutated inverter. As the power flow is from rotor circuit to supply, static Kramer drive offers *constant-torque drive*. As stated before, this scheme offers speed control below synchronous speed only. Simplified torque and speed expressions for this drive can be derived as follows.

Rotor voltage per phase $= sE_2$

where $E_2 =$ per phase rotor e.m.f. at standstill

and $s =$ slip

Voltage $sE_2$ is rectified to $V_d$ by diode bridge. Uncontrolled output voltage of diode rectifier, from Eq. (6.37), is

$$V_d = \frac{3 \times \text{maximum value of input line voltage}}{\pi}$$

$$= \frac{3\sqrt{2}\,(\sqrt{3}\,sE_2)}{\pi} = \frac{3\sqrt{6}}{\pi}\,s\,E_2$$

But $\dfrac{E_2}{N_2'} = \dfrac{V_1}{N_1'}$ or $E_2 = V_1 \dfrac{N_2'}{N_1'} = a\,V_1$

where $a = \dfrac{\text{effective rotor turns per phase, } N_2'}{\text{effective stator turns per phase, } N_1'}$

$V_1 =$ supply voltage per phase.

$$\therefore \quad V_d = \frac{3\sqrt{6}}{\pi}\,saV_1 = 2.339\,saV_1 \qquad \text{...(12.91)}$$

For three-phase line-commutated inverter, average dc output voltage (with no transformer) is

$$V_{dc} = -\frac{3\sqrt{6}}{\pi} V_1 \cdot \cos\alpha \qquad 90° \le \alpha \le 180°$$

$$= -2.339\, V_1 \cdot \cos\alpha \qquad \text{...(12.92)}$$

Here negative sign is used to confirm to the firing angle range.

At no load, electric torque $T_e$ is negligible and dc link current $I_d$ is almost zero. Consequently, the two direct voltages of Eqs. (12.91) and (12.92) must balance. Thus,

$$2.339\, SaV_1 = -2.339\, V_1 \cos\alpha$$

or Slip, $$s = -\frac{1}{a}\cos\alpha \qquad \text{...(12.93)}$$

If $a = 1$, slip $s = -\cos\alpha$. For $\alpha = 90°$, $s = 0$ (speed synchronous) and for $\alpha = 180°$, $s = 1$ (speed zero). This shows that no-load speed of the motor can be controlled from near stand-still to full speed as firing angle $\alpha$ is varied from almost 180° to 90°.

In practice, rotor circuit voltage is less than stator voltage and therefore, $a < 1$. Thus, a 3-phase transformer is often required between the ac supply network and the inverter in order to step down the supply voltage to a level that is appropriate to $V_d$. Let the transformer turn-ratio be $a_T$ where

$$a_T = \frac{\text{per phase input voltage to inverter, } V_2}{\text{per phase supply voltage, } V_1}$$

AC voltage across inverter terminals, $V_2 = a_T \cdot V_1$. The inverter dc voltage $V_{dc}$, from Eq. (12.92), is given by

$$V_{dc} = -\frac{3\sqrt{6}}{\pi} \cdot a_T \cdot V_1 \cos\alpha$$

$$= -2.339 \cdot a_T \cdot V_1 \cos\alpha \qquad \text{...(12.94)}$$

With the use of transformer, from Eqs. (12.91) and (12.94), we get

$$2.339\, saV_1 = -2.339\, a_T \cdot V_1 \cos\alpha$$

or $$\text{slip, } s = -\frac{a_T}{a}\cos\alpha \qquad \text{...(12.95)}$$

In order to develop motor torque, a rotor current $I_2$ is required and the rectifier rotor voltage $V_d$ must force a current $I_d$ against the inverter dc voltage $V_{dc}$. When the motor is loaded, speed falls and the increased rotor voltage $sE_2$ can overcome the voltage drops in the rotor windings, in the dc link circuit and the converters.

If resistance of the rotor circuit and inductor $L_d$ are neglected, then

total slip power, $$3sP_g = V_{dc} \cdot I_d$$

$$3s \cdot \omega_s \cdot T_e = V_{dc} \cdot I_d$$

or $$T_e = \frac{V_{dc} \cdot I_d}{3s \cdot \omega_s} \qquad \text{...(12.96)}$$

Substituting in Eq. (12.96), the values of $s$ from Eq. (12.93) and $V_{dc}$ from Eq. (12.92), we get

$$T_e = \frac{2.339\, V_1 \cdot \cos\alpha \cdot I_d}{3 \cdot \frac{1}{a} \cdot \cos\alpha \cdot \omega_s} = \frac{2.339}{3} \cdot \frac{a\, V_1 \cdot I_d}{\omega_s} \qquad \text{...(12.97)}$$

When a transformer is used in Fig. 12.41, then substitute in Eq. (12.96), the values of $s$ from Eq. (12.95) and $V_{dc}$ from Eq. (12.94) and we get

$$T_e = \frac{2.339 \cdot a_T \cdot V_1 \cos\alpha \cdot I_d}{3 \cdot \frac{a_T}{a} \cdot \cos\alpha \cdot \omega_s} = \frac{2.339}{3} \cdot \frac{a\,V_1\,I_d}{\omega_s} \qquad \text{...(12.98)}$$

An examination of Eqs. (12.97) and (12.98) reveal that these equations are valid whether a transformer is used in the static Kramer drive circuit or not. It is observed from Eq. (12.97) or Eq. (12.98) that steady state torque is

(*i*) proportional to dc link current, $I_d$

(*ii*) proportional to stator supply voltage, $V_1$

(*iii*) proportional to effective rotor to stator turns ratio, a

and (*iv*) inversely proportional to synchronous speed, $\omega_s$.

The dc link current $I_d$ is given by

$$I_d = \frac{V_d - V_{dc}}{\text{resistance of dc link inductor, } R_d}$$

or
$$V_d = V_{dc} + I_d \cdot R_d = 2.339\, saV_1$$

∴ Slip,
$$s = \frac{V_{dc} + I_d \cdot R_d}{2.339\, a\, V_1}$$
$$= \frac{-\,2.339 \cdot a_T \cdot V_1 \cos\alpha}{2.339\, aV_1} + \frac{I_d R_d}{2.339\, aV_1}$$
$$= -\frac{a_T}{a}\cos\alpha + \frac{I_d \cdot R_d}{2.339\, aV_1}$$

Motor speed $\omega_m$ is given by

$$\omega_m = \omega_s\,(1 - s)$$
$$= \omega_s\left[1 + \frac{a_T}{a}\cos\alpha - \frac{I_d \cdot R_d}{2.339 \cdot aV_1}\right] \qquad \text{...(12.99)}$$

Under steady state, from Eq. (12.98), total torque $3T_e$ is given by

$$3T_e = T_L = 2.339\,\frac{aV_1 \cdot I_d}{\omega_s}$$

or
$$I_d = \frac{\omega_s \cdot T_L}{2.339\, a\, V_1} \qquad \text{...(12.100)}$$

Substituting this value of $I_d$ in Eq. (12.99), we get

$$\omega_m = \omega_s\left[1 + \frac{a_T}{a}\cos\alpha - \frac{\omega_s \cdot R_d}{(2.339\, aV_1)^2} \cdot T_L\right] \qquad \text{...(12.101)}$$
$$= \omega_s\left[1 + \frac{a_T}{a}\cos\alpha - K\,T_L\right] \qquad \text{...(12.102)}$$

where
$$K = \frac{\omega_s \cdot R_d}{(2.339.\, aV_1)^2}$$

From Eq. (12.101) or (12.102), the no-load speed of the drive is given by

$$\omega_m = \omega_s \left[ 1 + \frac{a_T}{a} \cos \alpha \right] \quad ...(12.103)$$

From Eq. (12.101), the speed-torque characteristics of static Kramer drive shown in Fig. 12.41 are plotted, for different firing angles, in Fig. 12.42. It is seen that these characteristics are similar to a separately excited dc motor with armature voltage control.

Static Kramer drive systems are used in large power-pumps and compressor type loads where speed control is within narrow range and below synchronous speed.

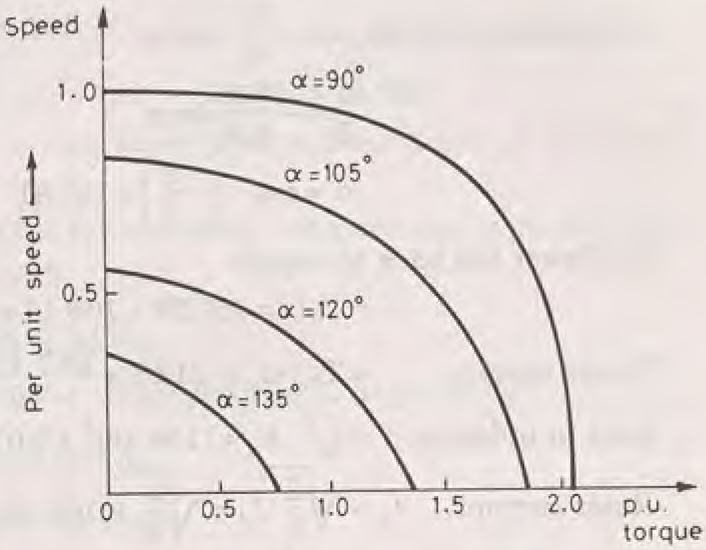


Fig. 12.42. Speed-torque characteristics of static Kramer drive for open loop system.

**Example 12.29.** *A 3-phase, 420 V, 4-pole, 50 Hz, star-connected SRIM has its speed controlled by means of static Kramer drive. The effective phase turns ratio from rotor to stator is 0.8 and transformer has phase turns ratio from l.v. to h.v. as 0.4. The inductor current is ripple free. Losses in diode rectifier, inductor, inverter and transformer are neglected. The load torque is proportional to speed squared and its value at 1200 rpm is 450 Nm. For a motor operating speed of 1000 r.pm, calculate.*

(*a*) *rotor rectified voltage* (*b*) *inductor current* (*c*) *delay angle of the inverter* (*d*) *efficiency, in case inductor resistance is 0.01 Ω and per-phase resistances for stator and rotor are 0.015 Ω and 0.02 Ω respectively.*

(*e*) *For the firing angle obtained in part* (*c*), *the load torque is increased to 500 Nm, find the motor speed.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Per-phase stator voltage,

$$V_1 = \frac{420}{\sqrt{3}} = 242.5 \text{ V}$$

∴ Slip, $$s = \frac{1500 - 1000}{1500} = \frac{1}{3}$$

Turns ratio from rotor to stator, $a = 0.8$

From Eq. (12.91), rectified voltage,

$$V_d = 2.339\, saV_1$$

$$= 2.339 \times \frac{1}{3} \times 0.8 \times 242.5 = 151.26 \text{ V}$$

(*b*) Load torque at 1000 rpm, $T_L = 450 \times \left(\frac{1000}{1200}\right)^2 = 3T_e = 312.5 \text{ Nm}$

Synchronous speed, $$\omega_s = \frac{4\pi f_1}{P} = \frac{4\pi \times 50}{4} = 50\,\pi \text{ rad/s}$$

From Eq. (12.100), inductor current is

$$I_d = \frac{\omega_s \cdot T_L}{2.339\, aV_1} = \frac{50\pi \times 312.5}{2.339 \times 0.8 \times 242.5} = 108.18 \text{ A}$$

(c) FromEq. (12.95), $s = -\frac{a_T}{a} \cdot \cos\alpha$

or $$\frac{1}{3} = -\frac{0.4}{0.8}\cos\alpha$$

$$\therefore \quad \alpha = \cos^{-1}\left(-\frac{2}{3}\right) = 131.81°$$

(d) Power fed back to supply

$$= V_d I_d = 151.26 \times 108.18 = 16363.31 \text{ W}$$

Power output $= T_L \cdot \omega_m = 312.5 \times \frac{2\pi \times 1000}{60} = 32724.92$ W

Loss in inductor $= I_d^{\,2} \cdot R_d = (108.18)^2 \times 0.01 = 117.03$ W

Rotor current, $I_2 = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}\, I_d = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \times 108.18 = 88.33$ A

Rotor ohmic loss $= 3I_2^{\,2}\, r_2 = 3\,(88.33)^2 \times 0.02 = 468.13$ W

Stator current, $I_1 = a\, I_2 = 0.8 \times 88.33 = 70.664$ A

Stator ohmic loss $= 3\,(70.664)^2 \times 0.015 = 224.70$ W

Power input $= 32724.92 + 468.13 + 224.70 + 117.03 = 33534.78$ W

Efficiency $= \frac{32724.92}{33534.78} \times 100 = 97.58\%$

(e) From Eq. (12.101), we get motor speed as under :

$$\omega_m = 50\pi\left[1 + \frac{0.4}{0.8}\cos 131.81° - \frac{50\pi \times 0.01 \times 500}{(2.339 \times 0.8 \times 242.5)^2}\right]$$

$$= 104.121 \text{ rad/s} \quad \text{or} \quad 994.3 \text{ rpm.}$$

**Example 12.30.** *A static Kramer drive is used for the speed control of a 4-pole SRIM fed from 415 V, 50 Hz supply. The inverter is connected directly to the supply. If the motor is required to operate at 1200 rpm, find the firing advance angle of the inverter. Voltage across the open-circuited slip rings at stand-still is 700 V. Allow a voltage drop of 0.7 V and 1.5 V across each of the diodes and thyristors respectively. Inductor drop is neglected.*

**Solution.** Rotor induced emf at stand-still = 700 V (line)

$$\therefore \quad E_2 = \frac{700}{\sqrt{3}} \text{ V}$$

Slip, $$s = \frac{1500 - 1200}{1500} = 0.2$$

DC voltage across the diode rectifier is

$$V_d = \frac{3\sqrt{6}\, sE_2}{\pi} - 2 \times 0.7 = \frac{3\sqrt{2} \times 0.2 \times 700}{\pi} - 1.4$$

Inverter dc voltage is given by

$$V_{dc} = -\left[\frac{3\sqrt{2} \times 415}{\pi}\cos\alpha - 2 \times 1.5\right]$$

With no voltage drop in inductor, $V_{dc} = V_d$

$$-\frac{3\sqrt{2} \times 415}{\pi}\cos\alpha + 3 = \frac{3\sqrt{2} \times 0.2 \times 700}{\pi} - 1.4$$

or $$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left[\frac{-184.6379 \times \pi}{3\sqrt{2} \times 415}\right] = 109.24°$$

$\therefore$ Firing advance angle of inverter $= 180 - \alpha = 180° - 109.24° = \mathbf{70.76°}$

**Example 12.31.** *Repeat Example 12.30 in case there is an overlap angle of 18° in the rectifier and 4° in the inverter.*

**Solution.** Average output voltage for 1-phase full converter, with overlap, is given by Eq. (6.45), which is reproduced here, for convenience.

$$V_0 = \frac{V_m}{\pi}\,[\cos\alpha + \cos(\alpha + \mu)]$$

Similar expression for a 3-phase full converter with overlap will be given by

$$V_0 = \frac{3V_{ml}}{2\pi}\,[\cos\alpha + \cos(\alpha + \mu)]$$

For uncontrolled rectifier bridge, dc output voltage is

$$V_d = \frac{3\sqrt{6}\,sE_2}{2\pi}\,[\cos 0° + \cos(0° + 18°)] - 2 \times 0.7$$

$$= \frac{3\sqrt{6} \times 0.2 \times 700}{2\pi \times \sqrt{3}}\,[1 + \cos 18°] - 1.4 = 183.012 \text{ V}$$

Similarly, inverter dc voltage is

$$V_{dc} = -\left[\left\{\frac{3V_{ml}}{2\pi}(\cos\alpha + \cos(\alpha + \mu)\right\} - 2 \times 1.5\right]$$

$$= -\left[\left\{\frac{3\sqrt{2} \times 415}{2\pi}(\cos\alpha + \cos(\alpha + 4°)\right\} - 3\right]$$

$$= -280.18\,[\cos\alpha + \cos(\alpha + 4°)] + 3$$

With no-voltage drop in inductor,

$$V_{dc} = V_d$$

$\therefore$ $$-280.18\,[\cos\alpha + \cos(\alpha + 4°)] + 3 = 183.012 \text{ V}$$

or $$\cos\alpha + \cos(\alpha + 4°) = -0.6425$$

$$\cos\alpha + \cos\alpha \cdot \cos 4° - \sin\alpha \sin 4° = -0.6425$$

$$1.9976\cos\alpha - 0.07\sin\alpha = -0.6425 \qquad \ldots(i)$$

Note that $$A\cos\alpha - B\sin\alpha = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}\,\cos(\alpha + \theta)$$

where $$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{B}{A}$$

Eq. (*i*) gives $$1.9976\cos\alpha - 0.07\sin\alpha = \sqrt{1.9976^2 + 0.07^2}\left[\cos\left(\alpha + \tan^{-1}\frac{0.07}{1.9976}\right)\right]$$

$$= -0.6425$$

or $$1.999\cos(\alpha + 2°) = -0.6425$$

or $$\alpha = 106.75°$$

Firing angle of advance of inverter $= 180 - 106.75° = \mathbf{73.25°}$.

**Example 12.32.** *Using the data of Example 12.30, find the voltage ratio of the transformer to be interposed between supply and the inverter for a minimum speed of 1200 rpm.*

**Solution.** Here $V_d = \dfrac{3\sqrt{6}\,sE_2}{\pi}$ and $V_{dc} = -\dfrac{3\sqrt{6}}{\pi} \cdot a_T \cdot V_1 \cdot \cos\alpha$

For an ideal inductor, $V_d = V_{dc}$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{3\sqrt{6}\, sE_2}{\pi} = -\frac{3\sqrt{6}}{\pi} \cdot a_T \cdot V_1 \cdot \cos\alpha \quad \text{or} \quad s = -\frac{a_T \cdot V_1}{E_2} \cdot \cos\alpha$$

Minimum speed means maximum slip. Here $s$ would be maximum in magnitude when firing angle of the inverter $\alpha = 180°$.

$$\therefore \quad s = \frac{a_T \cdot V_1}{E_2} \quad \text{or} \quad a_T = \frac{s\,E_2}{V_1} = \frac{0.2 \times 700}{415} = \frac{140}{415}$$

∴ Transformer voltage ratio per phase from h.v. to l.v. is 415/140 or $a_T = 0.3373$.

**12.8.6.2. Static Scherbius Drive.** In static Kramer drive, speed of SRIM can be controlled below synchronous speed only. For the speed control both below and above synchronous speed, static Scherbius drive scheme is used. There are two possible configurations to obtain such a drive; these are (*i*) DC link static Scherbius drive and (*b*) cycloconverter static Scherbius drive. These are discussed briefly as under.

**DC link Scherbius Drive.** In subsynchronous speed control of WRIM, slip power is removed from the rotor circuit and is pumped back into the ac supply. In supersynchronous speed control, the additional power is fed into the rotor circuit at slip frequency. The circuit diagram of Fig. 12.43 allows both subsynchronous and supersynchronous speed control. It consists of one WRIM, two phase-controlled bridges, smoothing inductor and a transformer as shown.

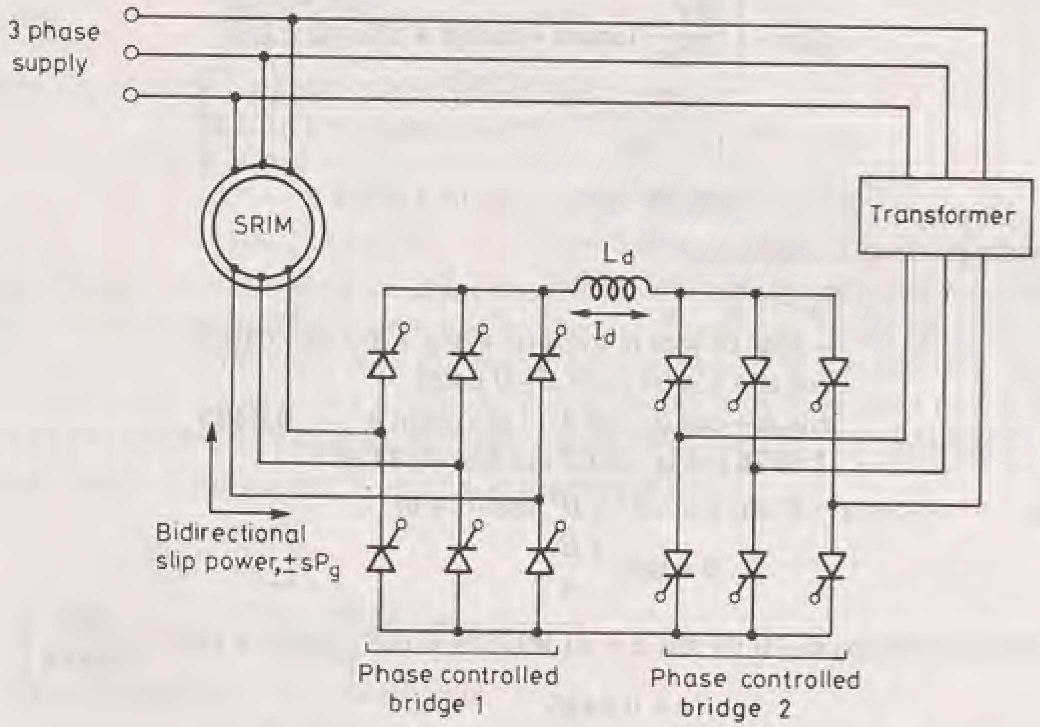

3 phase supply
SRIM
Transformer
$L_d$
$I_d$
Bidirectional slip power, $\pm sP_g$
Phase controlled bridge 1
Phase controlled bridge 2

Fig. 12.43. DC link static Scherbius drive.

For subsynchronous speed control, bridge 1 has firing angle less than 90° whereas bridge 2 has firing angle more than 90°. In other words, bridge 1 works as rectifier and bridge 2 as line-commentated inverter for subsynchronous motor control. The slip power flows from rotor circuit to bridge 1, bridge 2, transformer and to the supply.

For supersynchronous motor control, bridge 1 is made to work as line-commutated inverter with firing angle more than 90° and bridge 2 as a rectifier with firing angle less than 90°. The power flow is now from the supply to transformer, bridge 2, bridge 1 and to the rotor circuit.

Near synchronous speed, slip frequency emfs are insufficient for natural commutation of thyristors. This difficulty can, however, be overcome by using forced commutation. Thus, the provision of both subsynchronous and supersynchronous speed operation complicates the static converter system and nullifies the advantages of simplicity and economy which are inherent in a purely subsynchronous drive. In addition, static Scherbins drive is expensive than static Kramer drive because six diodes are replaced by six thyristors and their controlled circuitry.

**Cycloconverter Scherbius Drive.** The dual controlled converter system used in dc link Scherbius drive is now replaced by one phase-controlled line-commutated cycloconverter as shown in Fig. 12.44. Such schemes are used for very high-power pumps and blower-type drives. Cycloconverter permits the slip-power flow in either direction and the machine can, therefore, be controlled in both subsynchronous and supersynchronous ranges with motoring and regeneration features. As the slip power is either returned to, or taken from, the supply mains, cycloconverter static Scherbins drive offers constant-torque drive scheme.

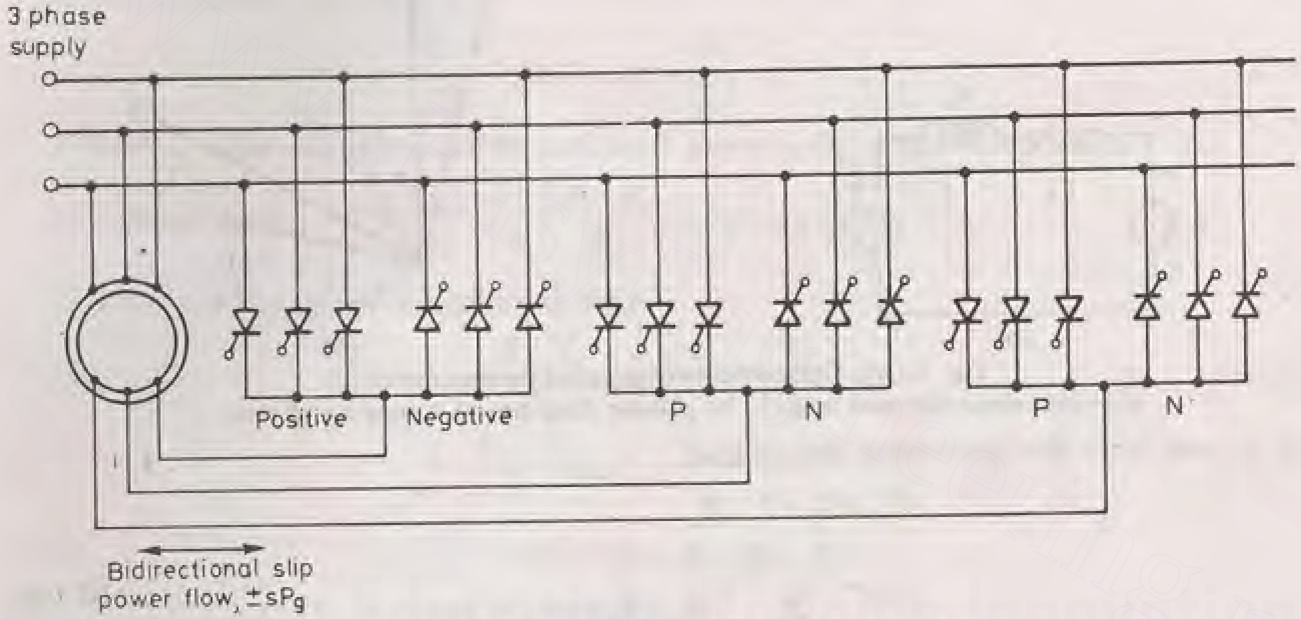


Fig. 12.44. Cycloconverter static Scherbius drive.

## 12.9. SYNCHRONOUS MOTOR DRIVES

Synchronous motors have two windings, one on the stator is three-phase armature winding and the other on the rotor is the field winding. The three-phase winding on its stator is similar to the 3-phase winding on the stator of a 3-phase IM. Field winding is excited with dc and it produces its own mmf called field mmf. Three-phase stator winding carrying three-phase balanced currents creates its own rotating armature mmf. The two mmfs combine together to produce resultant mmf. The field mmf interacts with the resultant mmf to produce electromagnetic torque. A synchronous motor runs always with zero slip, *i.e.* at synchronous speed given by Eq. (12.43). Power factor of synchronous motors can be controlled by varying its field current.

For the speed control of synchronous motors, both inverter and cyclonverters are employed. The various types of synchronous motors are :

(*i*) Cylindrical rotor motors
(*ii*) Salient-pole motors

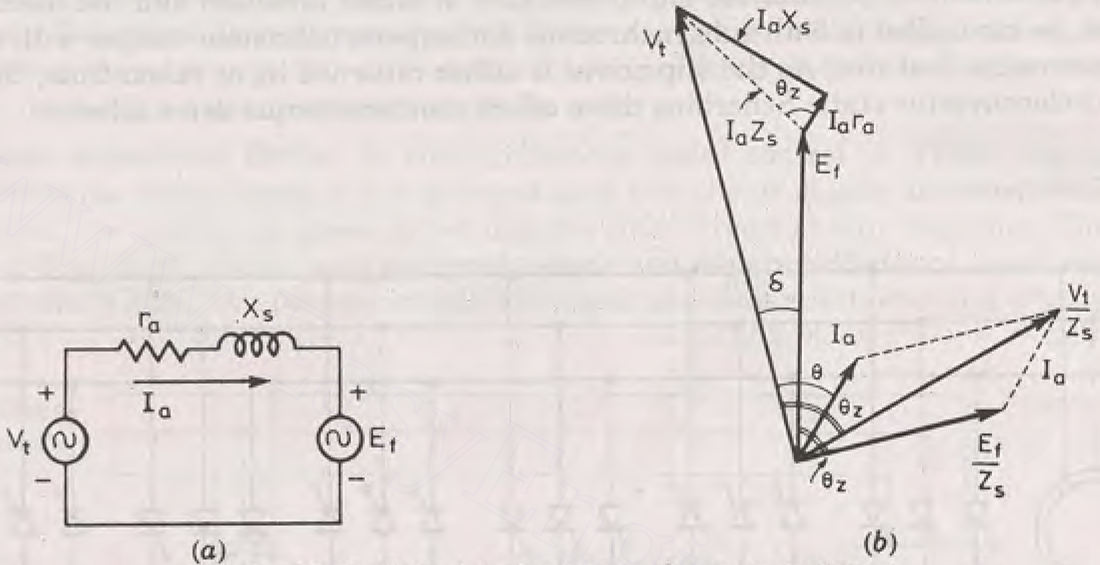
(*iii*) Reluctance motors

(*vi*) Permanent-magnet motors.

These are now described briefly in the following lines.

### 12.9.1. Cylindrical Rotor Motors

These motors have uniform air gap. The per-phase equivalent circuit for a cylindrical-rotor synchronous motor is given in Fig. 12.45 (*a*). In this circuit, $E_f$ = excitation voltage = $\sqrt{2} \cdot \pi \cdot f \,\phi_f \cdot N_{ph} \cdot k_\omega$, $V_t$ = armature terminal voltage, $r_a$ = armature resistance, $X_s$ = synchronous reactance and $Z_s = \sqrt{r_a^{\,2} + X_s^{\,2}}$ is called the synchronous impedance.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 12.45. Cylindrical-rotor synchronous motor (*a*) equivalent circuuit and (*b*) its phasor diagram at a lagging pf load.

It is seen from the equivalent circuit that

$$\overline{V}_t = \overline{E}_f + \overline{I}_a \cdot \overline{Z}_s$$

or

$$I_a = \frac{\overline{V}_t - \overline{E}_f}{\overline{Z}_s} = \frac{\overline{V}_t}{\overline{Z}_s} - \frac{\overline{E}_f}{\overline{Z}_s} \qquad \text{...(12.104)}$$

Eq. (12.104) shows that armature current $I_a$ is the difference of two currents $\dfrac{\overline{V}_t}{\overline{Z}_s}$ and $\dfrac{\overline{E}_f}{\overline{Z}_s}$, lagging behind their respective voltages by impedance angle $\theta_z$ as shown in Fig. 12.45 (*b*). Here impedance angle $\theta_z$ is given by

$$\theta_z = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{X_s}{r_a}\right)$$

Power input to the motor is given by

$$P_{im} = V_t \ [\text{Component of } I_a \text{ in phase with } V_t]$$

In the above expression, subcripts *i* and *m* denote input and motor respectively.

It is seen from Eq. (12.104) and Fig. 12.45 (*b*) that the component of $I_a$ in phase with $V_t$ is $\left[\dfrac{V_t}{Z_s}\cos\theta_z - \dfrac{E_f}{Z_s}\cos(\delta + \theta_z)\right]$.

$$\therefore \quad P_{im} = V_t\left[\frac{V_t}{Z_s}\cos\theta_Z - \frac{E_f}{Z_s}\cos(\delta+\theta_Z)\right]$$

$$= \frac{V_t^2}{Z_s}\cos\theta_Z - \frac{V_t\cdot E_f}{Z_s}\cos(\delta+\theta_Z) \qquad \text{...(12.105)}$$

Now $\cos\theta_Z = \frac{r_a}{Z_s}$ and $\theta_z = (90 - \alpha_z)$. Substituting these in Eq. (12.105), we get

$$P_{im} = \frac{V_r^2}{Z_s^2}\cdot r_a - \frac{E_f\cdot V_t}{Z_s}\cos\{(\delta-\alpha_z)+90°\}$$

$$= \frac{E_f\cdot V_t}{Z_s}\sin(\delta-\alpha_z) + \frac{V_t^2}{Z_s^2}\cdot r_a \qquad \text{...(12.106)}$$

Power output from the motor, $P_{o.m} = E_f$ [component of $I_a$ in phase with $E_f$]

It can be proved similarly that

$$P_{om} = \frac{E_f\cdot V_t}{Z_s}\sin(\delta+\alpha_z) - \frac{E_f^2}{Z_s^2}\cdot r_a \qquad \text{...(12.107)}$$

Here $P_{om}$ is the developed power and shaft power = $P_{om}$ − rotational losses.

Developed torque, $T_e = \frac{P_{o.m}}{\omega_s} = \frac{1}{\omega_s}\left[\frac{E_f\cdot V_t}{Z_s}\sin(\delta+\alpha_z) - \frac{E_f^2}{Z_s^2}\cdot r_a\right]$

If armature resistance is neglected, then

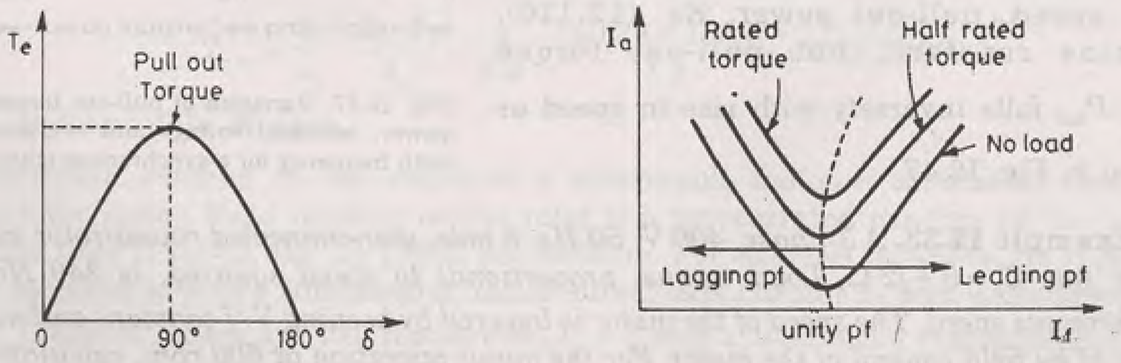
$$P_{im} = P_{om} = \frac{E_f\cdot V_t}{X_s}\sin\delta \qquad \text{...(12.108)}$$

and $$T_e = \frac{1}{\omega_s}\cdot\frac{E_f\cdot V_t}{X_s}\sin\delta \qquad \text{...(12.109)}$$

where $\omega_s = \frac{4\pi f}{P}$ = synchronous speed in rad/s.

and $\delta$ = load, or power, angle

The torque versus load angle characteristic for a cylindrical-rotor synchronous motor is shown in Fig. 12.46 (*a*). For stable operation of synchronous motor, the load angle δ should never exceed 90°.



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 12.46. Cylindrical-rotor synchronous motor
(*a*) torque- angle characteristic and (*b*) its V-curves.

Power factor of a synchronous motor depends on the field current. The variation of armature current with respect to field current for different loads on the synchronous motor is shown in Fig. 12.46 (*b*). As the shape of these curves resemble the letter V, these are called *V-curves* of a synchronous motor. Note that V-curves are obtained for constant shaft load and for constant terminal voltage. Unity pf curve is shown dotted. For low values of field current (under-excitation), synchronous motor operates at a lagging pf. As the field current is increased, it would start operating at unity pf (normal excitation). If the field current is still increased beyond the unity pf point (over-excitation), synchronous motor begins to operate at a leading pf.

The power given by Eqs. (12.107) and (12.108) and torque of Eq. (12.109) have per-phase values. For $\delta = 90°$, pull-out power $P_{mx}$ and pull-out (or maximum) torque $T_{e \cdot m}$ are obtained.

$$\therefore \qquad P_{mx} = \frac{E_f \cdot V_t}{X_s} \qquad \text{...(12.110)}$$

and

$$T_{e \cdot m} = \frac{1}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{E_f \cdot V_t}{X_s} \qquad \text{...(12.111)}$$

For fixed field excitation, the excitation emf $E_f$ is directly proportional to supply frequency. The synchronous reactance $X_s$ is also directly proportional to frequency. This shows that $\frac{E_f}{X_s}$ in Eqs. (12.110) and (12.111) is independent of frequency variation. If supply voltage $V_t$ is varied in proportion to frequency so that $V_{t/f}$ or $\frac{V_t}{\omega_s}$ is constant, then pull-out torque, Eq. (12.111) remains constant. Pull-out power $P_{mx} = T_{e.m} \times \omega_s$, however, rises linearly with speed as shown in Fig. 12.47.

At base speed ($\omega_s = 1.0$), rated voltage and rated frequency are reached. Beyond base speed, rated voltage is kept constant, but inverter frequency can be increased to obtain higher operating speeds of synchronous motor.

With constant field excitation, increase in frequency keeps $\frac{E_f}{X_s}$ constant as stated before. With supply voltage remaining constant above base speed, pull-out power, Eq. (12.110), remains constant, but pull-out torque $= \frac{1}{\omega_s} \cdot P_{mx}$ falls inversely with rise in speed as shown in Fig. 12.47.

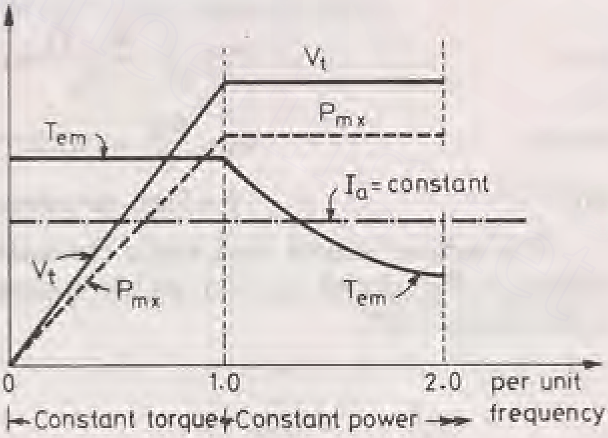


Fig. 12.47. Variation of pull-out torque, pull-out power, terminal voltage and armature current with frequency for a synchronous motor.

**Example 12.33.** *A 3-phase, 400 V, 50 Hz, 6 pole, star-connected round-rotor synchronous motor has $Z_s = 0 + j2\ \Omega$. Load torque, proportional to speed squared, is 340 Nm at rated synchronous speed. The speed of the motor is lowered by keeping V/f constant and maintaining unity pf by field control of the motor. For the motor operation at 600 rpm, calculate (a) supply voltage (b) the armature current (c) the excitation voltage (d) the load angle and (e) the pull-out torque. Neglect rotational losses.*

**Solution.** (*a*) For 600 rpm, the supply frequency,

$$f = \frac{P \cdot N_s}{120} = \frac{6 \times 600}{120} = 30 \text{ Hz.}$$

As $\frac{V}{f}$ is constant, the supply voltage $V_t$ is given by

$$\frac{V_t}{30} = \frac{400}{50} \quad \text{or} \quad V_t = 30 \times 8 = 240 \text{ V}$$

(*b*) Load torque at 600 rpm,

$$T_L = 340 \left(\frac{600}{1000}\right)^2 = 122.4 \text{ Nm}$$

Power output, $$P = T_e \cdot \omega_s = T_L \cdot \omega_s = 122.4 \times \frac{2\pi \times 600}{60} = 7690.62 \text{ W}$$

As rotational losses are neglected, $\sqrt{3}\, V_t I_a \cos\theta = P$

$\therefore$ Armature current, $I_a = \frac{7690.62}{\sqrt{3} \times 240 \times 1} = 18.50$ A

(*c*) $$X_s = \frac{30}{50} \times 2 = 1.2\ \Omega$$

Per-phase supply voltage, $V_t = \frac{240}{\sqrt{3}} = 138.57$ V

Per-phase armature current, $I_a = 18.50$ A

From the phasor diagram, excitation voltage is

$$E_f = \sqrt{V_t^2 + (I_a X_s)^2}$$
$$= \sqrt{138.57^2 + (18.5 \times 1.2)^2}$$
$$= 140.34 \text{ V per phase}$$

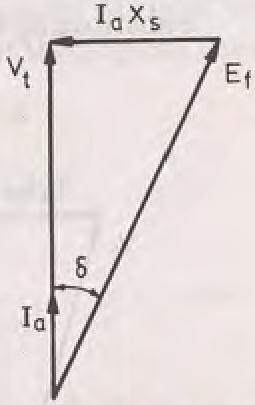


Fig. 12.48. Phasor diagram pertaining to Example 12.33.

Line value of excitation voltage

$$= \sqrt{3} \times 140.34 = 243.07 \text{ V}$$

(*d*) From the phasor diagram of Fig. 12.48, we get load angle δ as

$$\delta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{I_1 X_s}{V_t}\right) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{18.5 \times 1.2}{138.57}\right) = 9.10°$$

(*e*) $$T_{e.m} = \frac{3}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{E_f \cdot V_t}{X_s} = \frac{3}{20\pi} \cdot \frac{140.34 \times 138.57}{1.2} = 773.77 \text{ Nm.}$$

### 12.9.2. Salient-pole Motors

The armature winding on the stator of a salient-pole motor is similar to that of a cylindrical-rotor motor. Field winding on the rotor is a concentrated winding on the salient poles. In this type of motor, the air gap is not uniform. For analysis purposes, its armature current is resolved into two components, called direct-axis current $I_d$ and quadrature-axis current $I_q$. Likewise, there are two reactances, $X_d$ = *d*-axis synchronous reactance and $X_q$ = *q*-axis synchronous reactance.

The phasor diagram of a salient-pole synchronous motor with negligible armature resistance is shown in Fig. 12.49 (*a*). It is seen from this phasor diagram that

$$\bar{V}_t = \bar{E}_f + j\bar{I}_d X_d + j\,\bar{I}_q X_q \qquad \text{...(12.112)}$$

$$I_d = I_a \sin(\theta - \delta),\ I_q = I_a \cos(\theta - \delta)$$

Also,
$$V_t \sin\delta = I_q \cdot X_q = X_q \cdot I_a \cos(\theta - \delta)$$
$$= X_q I_a [\cos\theta \cdot \cos\delta + \sin\theta \sin\delta]$$
$$\sin\delta\,[V_t - I_a X_q \sin\theta] = X_q \cdot I_a \cos\theta \cdot \cos\delta$$

$\therefore$
$$\tan\delta = \frac{I_a X_q \cos\theta}{V_t - I_a \cdot X_q \sin\theta} \qquad \text{...(12.113)}$$

Power $P$ is given by $P = V_t \cos\delta$ (current along $q$-axis) $+ V_t \cdot \sin\delta$ (current along $d$-axis)

$$= V_t \cdot \cos\delta \cdot I_q - V_t \cdot \sin\delta \cdot I_d \qquad \text{...(12.114)}$$

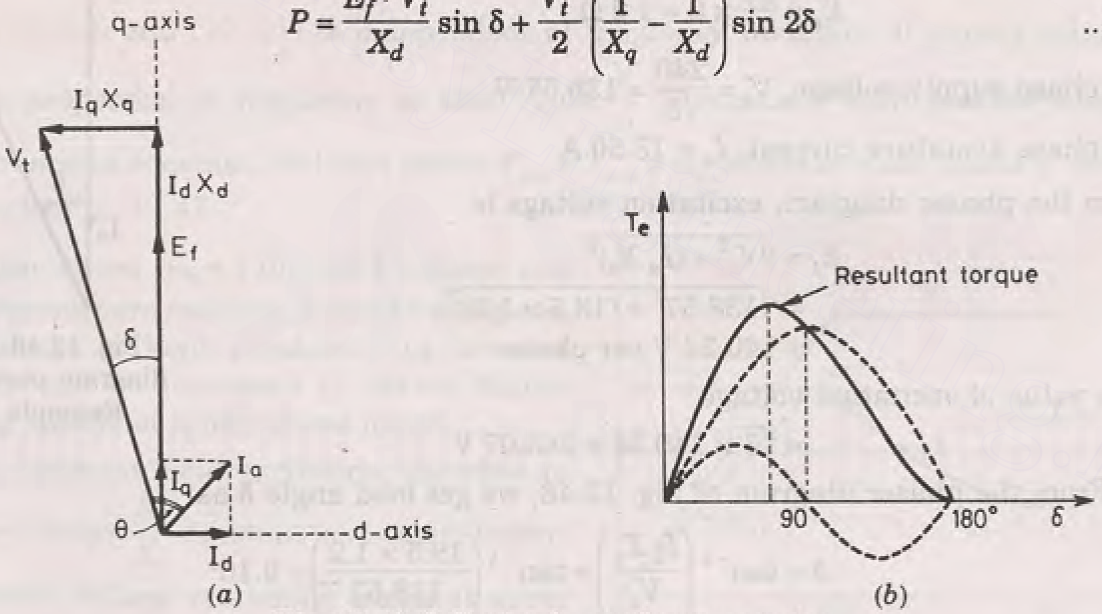
But
$$I_d X_d = V_t \cos\delta - E_f$$

or
$$I_d = \frac{V_t \cos\delta - E_f}{X_d}$$

$$I_q X_q = V_t \sin\delta \quad \text{or} \quad I_q = \frac{V_t \sin\delta}{X_q}$$

Substituting these values of $I_d, I_q$ in Eq. (12.114), we get

$$P = \frac{E_f \cdot V_t}{X_d} \sin\delta + \frac{V_t^2}{2}\left(\frac{1}{X_q} - \frac{1}{X_d}\right) \sin 2\delta \qquad \text{...(12.115)}$$



(a) (b)

Fig. 12.49. Salient-pole synchronous motor.
(a) its phasor diagram and (b) its torque versus load angle characteristics.

The power in Eq. (12.115) has two components. The first component $\frac{E_f \cdot V_t}{X_d} \sin\delta$, similar to that of round-rotor motor, is called electromagnetic power. The other component $\frac{V_t^2}{2}\left(\frac{1}{X_q} - \frac{1}{X_d}\right) \sin 2\delta$ is called the reluctance power, as it is present due to different reluctances along direct axis and quadrature axis.

Developed torque $T_e$ is given by

$$T_e = \frac{P}{\omega_s} = \frac{1}{\omega_s}\left[\frac{E_f \cdot V_t}{X_d} \sin\delta + \frac{V_t^2}{2}\left(\frac{1}{X_q} - \frac{1}{X_d}\right) \sin 28\right] \qquad \text{...(12.116)}$$

As for power, the first and second components in Eq. (12.116) are called respectively the electromagnetic torque and the reluctance torque.

The torque $T_e$ versus load angle $\delta$ characteristics are drawn in Fig. 12.49 (*b*) with the help of Eq. (12.116). It is seen that torque is maximum at a load angle less than 90°.

### 12.9.3. Reluctance Motors

A salient-pole synchronous motor connected to a voltage source runs at synchoronous speed. If its field current is switched off, it continues running at synchronous speed as a reluctance motor. Thus, a machine designed to operate as a reluctance motor is similar to a salient-pole motor with no field winding on the rotor. Three-phase armature winding produces rotating magnetic field in the air gap. This rotating flux induces a field in the rotor which tends to align itself with the armature field, thus producing a reluctance torque at synchronous speed.

Reluctance motors are used for low power drives where constant-speed operation is required and where more than one motor is needed for the job so that number of motors can run in synchronism.

With zero field current, $E_f = 0$ and the phasor diagram for a reluctance motor cab be drawn from Fig. 12.49 (*a*) by making $E_f = 0$, this is shown in Fig. 12.50 (*a*). From this figure, power $P$ is given by

$$P = V_t \cdot \cos\delta \cdot I_q - V_t \cdot \sin\delta \, I_d$$

It is seen from Fig. 12.50 (*a*) that

$$I_q = \frac{V_t \sin\delta}{X_q} \quad \text{and} \quad I_d = \frac{V_t \cdot \cos\delta}{X_d}$$

Substituting the values of $I_d$ and $I_q$, we get power $P$ as

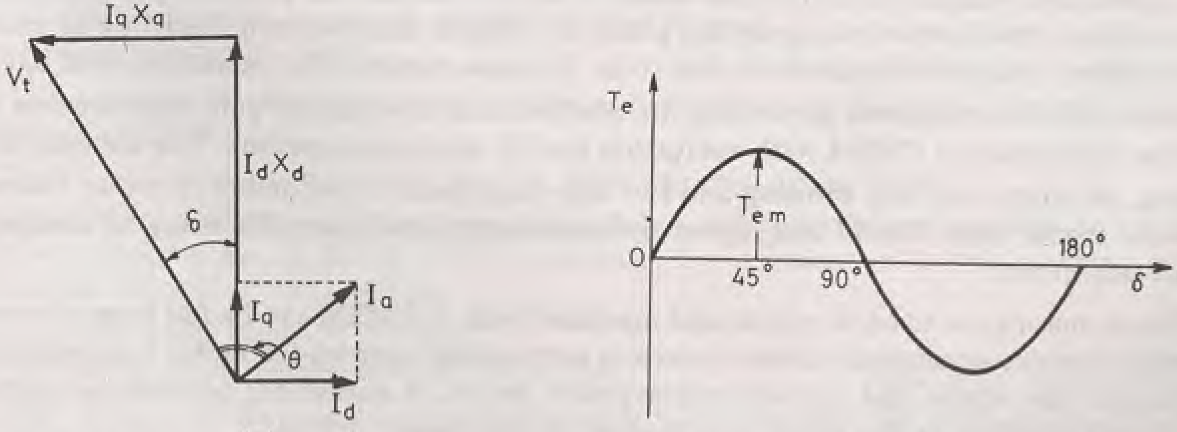
$$P = \frac{V_t^2}{2}\left(\frac{1}{X_q} - \frac{1}{X_d}\right)\sin 2\delta \qquad \text{...(12.117)}$$

Phasor diagram of Fig. 12.50 (*a*) reveals that

$$V_t \cdot \sin\delta = I_q X_q = X_q \cdot I_a \cos(\theta - \delta).$$

This gives

$$\delta = \tan^{-1}\frac{I_a X_q \cos\theta}{V_t - I_a X_q \sin\theta} \qquad \text{...(12.118)}$$



(*a*) (*b*)

Fig. 12.50. Reluctance motor (*a*) its phasor diagram and (*b*) its torque-angle characteristics.

Reluctance torque, from Eq. (12.117) is

$$T_e = \frac{1}{\omega_s} \cdot \frac{V_t^2}{2}\left(\frac{1}{X_q} - \frac{1}{X_d}\right)\sin 2\,\delta \qquad \text{...(12.119)}$$

Pull-out torque $T_{em}$ is obtained when $\delta = 45°$

$$\therefore \qquad T_{e\cdot m} = \frac{V_t^2}{2\omega_s}\left(\frac{1}{X_q} - \frac{1}{X_d}\right) \qquad \text{...(12.120)}$$

Variation of reluctance torque with load angle is shown in Fig. 12.50 (*b*).

**Example 12.34.** *A 3-phase, 400 V, 50 Hz, 4 pole, star-connected reluctance motor, with negligible armature resistance, has* $X_d = 8\,\Omega$ *and* $X_q = 2\,\Omega$. *For a load torque of 80 Nm, calculate (a) the load angle (b) the line current and (c) the input power factor. Neglect rotational losses.*

**Solution.** (*a*) Synchronous speed, $\omega_s = \frac{4\pi f}{P} = \frac{4\pi \times 50}{4} = 50\pi$ rad/s

From Eq. (12.117) $\quad P = T_e \cdot \omega_s = 80 \times 50\pi = \frac{3}{2}\left(\frac{400}{\sqrt{3}}\right)^2\left[\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{8}\right]\sin 2\delta$

$$\delta = \sin^{-1}\left[\frac{80 \times 50\pi \times 8}{80000 \times 3}\right] = 12.383°$$

(*b*) Per phase voltage, $V_t = \frac{400}{\sqrt{3}} = 230.95$ V

$$I_d = \frac{V_t \cos\delta}{X_d} = \frac{230.95 \times \cos 12.382°}{8} = 28.197 \text{ A}$$

$$I_q = \frac{V_t \sin\delta}{X_q} = \frac{230.95 \times \sin 12.383°}{2} = 24.761 \text{ A}$$

$\therefore$ Armature current, $I_a = \sqrt{I_d^2 + I_q^2} = \sqrt{28.197^2 + 24.761^2} = 37.53$ A

(*c*) $\qquad \sqrt{3}\, V_t I_a \cos\theta = T_e \cdot \omega_s$

$$\sqrt{3} \times 400 \times 37.53 \times \cos\theta = 80 \times 50\pi \text{ W}$$

$\therefore$ Input pf $\qquad = \frac{4000 \times \pi}{\sqrt{3} \times 400 \times 37.53} = 0.4833$ lagging.

### 12.9.4. Permanent-magnet Motors

A permanent-magnet synchronous motor (PMSM) is similar to a salient-pole synchronous motor without the field winding on the poles. In PMSM, the required field flux is produced by permanent magnets mounted on the rotor. In these motors, the excitation emf $E_f$ cannot be varied. All the equations governing the performance of a salient-pole synchronous motor are also applicable to PMSM with excitation emf $E_f$ taken as constant. The absence of field winding, dc supply to field winding and two slip rings leads to reduction in motor losses. For the same frame size, PMSM has higher pull-out torque and more efficiency as compared to salient-pole motor.

These motors are used in robots and machine tools. A PMSM can be fed from rectangular current source or sinusoidal current source. A rectangular current-fed motor has concentrated winding on the stator and is used in low-power drives. A sinusoidal current-fed motor has distributed winding on the stator and is used in high-power drives.

## PROBLEMS

**12.1.** (*a*) Give the concept of electric drive. Illustrate yore answer with examples.

(*b*) Give two methods of speed control normally employed for dc motors. Hence, sketch the characteristics of a separately-excited dc motor based on these two methods. Indicate clearly constant-torque drive and constant-power drive regions.

(*c*) Write down the basic performance equations for a dc series motor. Sketch also the characteristics of this motor indicating the two regions of constant-torque mode and constant-power mode.

**12.2.** (*a*) Give the general circuit layout for single-phase dc drives. Enumerate the various 1-phase dc drives used.

(*b*) Describe single-phase half-wave converter feeding a separately-excited dc motor. Illustrate your answer with waveforms and appropriate expressions.

(*c*) The speed of a separately-excited dc motor is controlled through single-phase half-wave controlled converter from 230-V mains. The motor armature resistance is 0.5 Ω and motor constant is $K = 0.4$ V-s/rad. For load torque of 20 Nm at 1500 rpm and for constant armature current, calculate (*i*) firing-angle delay of the converter (*ii*) rms value of thyristor current and (*iii*) input pf of the motor.

[**Ans.** (*c*) 45.821°, 30.52 A, 0.6255 lag]

**12.3.** (*a*) Describe the working of a single-phase semiconverter fed dc separately-excited motor with relevant waveforms and expressions. State the assumptions made.

(*b*) A single-phase semiconverter feeds a separately-excited dc motor. If armature current is ripple free, then shown that input supply power factor is given by

$$(1 + \cos \alpha)\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi(\pi - \alpha)}}$$

where α = firing-angle delay of semiconverter feeding the armature circuit of the motor.

**12.4.** A separately-excited dc motor has its armature circuit connected to one semiconverter and field winding to another semiconverter. The supply for both the converters is single-phase, 230 V, 50 Hz. Resistance for the field circuit is 100 Ω and that for the armature circuit is 0.2 Ω. Rated load torque is 80 Nm at 1000 rpm. The motor constant is 0.8 V-s/A-rad and magnetic saturation is neglected. For ripple free armature and field currents and with zero degree firing angle for field converter, determine (*a*) rated armature current (*b*) firing-angle delay of armature converter at rated load (*c*) speed regulation at full load (*d*) input pf of the armature converter and the drive at rated load.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 48.31 A (*b*) 39.78° (*c*) 5.571% (*d*) 0.769 lag, 0.8338 lag]

**12.5.** A separately-excited dc motor is fed from two single-phase semiconverters, one in the armature circuit and the other in the field circuit. Field current is constant at 2A. Motor armature resistance is 0.8 Ω and motor constant is $k = 0.5$ V-s/A-rad. AC voltage is 230V, 50Hz. For a ripple-free armature current and speed of 1500 rpm, calculate.

(*a*) motor current and torque for a firing angle of 30° and

(*b*) input supply power factor. [**Ans.** (*a*) 45.12 A, 45.12 Nm (*b*) 0.92 lag]

**12.6.** (*a*) Describe, with appropriate voltage and current waveforms, the working of a single-phase full-converter fed dc drive.

Derive also an expression for its input pf. State the assumptions made.

(*b*) A 200 V, 1000 rpm, 10A separately-excited dc motor is fed from a single-phase full converter with ac source voltage of 230 V, 50 Hz. Armature circuit resistance is 1 Ω. Armature current is continuous. Calculate firing angle for

(*i*) rated motor torque at 500 rpm.

(*ii*) half the rated motor torque at (– 500) rpm. [**Ans.** (*b*) (*i*) 59.526° (*ii*) 115.766°]

**12.7.** The speed of a separately-excited dc motor is controlled by two single-phase full converters, one in the armature circuit and the other in the field circuit. Both converters are fed from the same single-phase, 230 V, 50 Hz source. Armature resistance is 0.5 Ω and field circuit resistance is 200 Ω. Firing angle for field converter is zero and motor constant is 0.8 V- s/A-rad. Armature and field currents are continuous and ripple free. If armature current is 30 A for a firing angle of 45°, then calculate

(*a*) motor speed (*b*) motor torque (*c*) input pf of the armature converter and (*d*) input pf of the drive.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 1515.1 rpm (*b*) 24.845 Nm (*c*) 0.6365 lag (*d*) 0.6672 lag]

**12.8.** Describe the use of a three-phase semiconverter for the speed control of a dc series motor. Illustrate your answer with appropriate waveforms.

Derive expressions for the rms values of source and thyristor currents and the average value of SCR current for (*a*) firing angle $< 60°$ and (*b*) firing angle $> 60°$.

**12.9.** The speed of a dc series motor is controlled by a 3-phase semiconverter connected to 3-phase, 400V, 50Hz source. The motor constant is 0.4 V-s/A. rad. Total field and armature resistance is 1 Ω. Assuming continuous and ripple free armature current at a firing angle of 40° and speed of 1000 rpm, determine

(*a*) motor current and motor torque

(*b*) power delivered to motor

(*c*) reactive power drawn from the supply in VAr.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 11.12 A, 49.462 Nm (*b*) 5303.46 W (*c*) 3383.085 VAr]

**12.10.** (*a*) Describe how the speed of a separately-excited dc motor is controlled through the use of two 3-phase full converters. Discuss how two-quadrant drive can be obtained from this scheme.

Derive expressions for rms values of source and thyristor currents. State the assumptions made.

(*b*) The speed of a 50 kW, 500V, 120 A, 1500 rpm separately excited dc motor is controlled by a three-phase full converter fed from 400V, 50Hz supply. Motor armature resistance is 0.1 Ω. Find the range of firing angle required to obtain speeds between 1000 rpm and (– 1000) rpm at rated torque.

[**Ans.** (*b*) 51.35°, – 125.46°]

**12.11.** The speed of a separately-excited dc motor is controlled by means of two 3-phase full converters, one in the armature circuit and the other in the field circuit and both are fed from 3-phase, 400 V, 50 Hz supply. Resistance of armature and field circuits are 0.2 Ω and 320 Ω respectively. The motor constant is 0.5 V-s/A. rad. Field converter has zero degree firing-angle delay. Armature and field currents have negligible ripple. For rated load torque of 60 Nm at 2000 rpm, calculate (*a*) rated armature current (*b*) firing angle delay of the armature converter (*c*) speed regulation at rated load and (*d*) input pf of the armature converter and the drive at rated load.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 71.10 A (*b*) 69.291° (*c*) 8.045% (*d*) 0.3376 lag, 0.3601 lag]

**12.12.** A dc motor driven from a 3-phase full converter shown in Fig. 12.17 draws a dc line current of 90 A with negligible ripple. (*a*) Sketch the line voltage $v_{ab}$ taking it zero-crossing and becoming positive at $\omega t = 0°$. Also, sketch line current $i_A$ (for one cycle) and thyristor current $i_T$ for a firing angle of 30°.

Conduction of SCRs must also be indicated.

(*b*) Calculate average and rms values of thyristor current.

(*c*) Compute power factor at ac source

(*d*) For motor constant of 2.5 V-s/rad and armature circuit resistance of 0.4 Ω, calculate the motor speed.

**12.13.** (*a*) Describe how the speed of a dc series motor can be controlled by means of a dc chopper.

(*b*) A dc series motor, fed from 400V dc source through a chopper, has the following parameters :

$$r_a = 0.05\ \Omega,\ r_s = 0.07\ \Omega,\ k = 5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{Nm/amp}^2.$$

The average armature current of 200 A is ripple free. For a chopper duty cycle of 50%, determine (*i*) input power from the source (*ii*) motor speed and (*iii*) motor torque.

[**Ans.** (*b*) (*i*) 40 kW (*ii*) 1680.68 rpm (*iii*) 200 Nm]

**12.14.** A 230 V dc source is connected to a separately-excited dc motor through a chopper operating at 500 Hz. The load torque at 1200 rpm is 32.5 Nm. The motor has $r_a = 0$, $L_a = 2mH$ and $K_m = 1.3$ V-s/rad. Motor and chopper losses are neglected.

(*a*) Calculate the minimum and maximum values of armature current and the armature-current excursion.

(*b*) Obtain the expressions for armature current during on and off periods of a chopper cycle.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 22.634 A, 27.366 A, 4.732 A (*b*) 22.634 + 3332 t, 27.366 - 8168 t]

**12.15.** Repeat Prob 12.14 in case armature circuit of the dc motor has a resistance of 0.3 Ω

[**Ans.** (*a*) 14.438 A, 18.95 A, 4.512 A

(*b*) $222.13\,(1 - e^{-15t}) + 14.43\,e^{-15t}$; $-\,544.53\,(1 - e^{-15t}) + 18.95\,e^{-15t}$]

**12.16.** What is regenerative braking ? Describe the regenerative braking of a chopper-fed separately-excited dc motor. Illustrate your answer with circuit diagram and relevant waveforms.

Derive expressions for the minimum and maximum braking speeds for obtaining regenerative braking of the dc motor.

Show that the speed range for regenerative braking is $(V_s + I_a r_a) : I_a r_a$.

**12.17.** A 220 V, 60 A dc series motor, having combined resistance of armature and field of 0.15 Ω, is controlled in regenerative braking mode. The dc source voltage is 220 V. Motor constant is 0.05 V-s/A.rad. The average motor armature current is rated and ripple free. For a duty cycle of 50%, determine

(*a*) the power returned to the supply,

(*b*) minimum and maximum permissible braking speeds and

(*c*) speed during regenerative braking. [**Ans.** (*a*) 6.6 kW (*b*) 28.65 rpm, 728.9 rpm (*c*) 378.82 rpm]

**12.18.** (*a*) Distinguish between two-quadrant and four-quadrant drives.

(*b*) Describe how a four-quadrant drive can be obtained from a chopper-fed separately-excited dc motor.

**12.19.** (*a*) What are ac drives ? Give the merits and demerits of ac drives with respect to dc drives.

(*b*) From the approximate equivalent circuit of a 3-phase induction motor, derive the following expressions :

Torque at any slip, slip at maximum torque, maximum torque, maximum torque and slip at which it occurs in case stator resistance is neglected.

**12.20.** (*a*) Enumerate the various methods of speed control of a 3- phase induction motor when fed through semiconductor devices.

(*b*) Describe stator-voltage-control technique for the speed control of a 3-phase induction motor.

**12.21.** (*a*) For fan-type loads, show that rotor current in a 3- phase induction motor is maxmimum when slip $s = 1/3$. State the assumptions made.

(*b*) A 400 V, 50 Hz, 3-phase SCIM develops full-load torque at 1470 rpm. If supply voltage reduces to 340 V, with load torque remaining constant, calculate the motor speed. Assume speed-torque characteristics of the motor to be linear in the stable region. Neglect stator resistance.

[**Ans.** (*b*) 1458.5 rpm]

**12.22.** (*a*) Induction motor speed control with constant-supply voltage and reduced-supply frequency is rarely used in practice. Justify this statement.

(*b*) Describe stator frequency control for the speed control of a 3-phase induction motor. Derive expressions for motor torque, maximum torque and the slip at which it occurs. State the various assumptions made.

Discuss, why during this method of speed control, an induction motor is said to be working in field-weakening mode.

**12.23.** A 3-phase, 400V, 20 kW, 970 rpm, 50 Hz, delta-connected induction motor has rotor leakage impedance of $0.5 + j\,2.00\ \Omega$. Stator leakage impedance and rotational losses are assumed negligible.

If this motor is energised from a source of 3-phase, 400 V, 90Hz, then compute

(*a*) the motor speed at rated torque

(*b*) the slip at which maximum torque occurs and

(*c*) the maximum torque. [**Ans.** (*a*) 1819.8 rpm (*b*) 0.138 (*c*) 235.785 Nm]

**12.24.** Explain volts/hertz control for a 3-phase induction motor for its speed control. Enumerate its advantages.

Describe at least two inverter circuits used for volts/hertz control.

**12.25.** (*a*) Discuss how volts/hertz control for a 3-phase induction motor is similar to armature-voltage control of a dc motor.

(*b*) In stator-frequency control of a 3-phase induction motor, explain why

(*i*) ratio $V/f$ is maintained constant for speeds below base speed

(*ii*) terminal voltage is maintained constant for speeds above base speed.

**12.26.** A 3-phase, 15kW, 420V, 4-pole, 50Hz, delta-connected induction motor has the following per-phase parameters referred to stator :

$$r_1 = 0.5\ \Omega,\ r_2 = 0.4\ \Omega,\ x_1 = x_2 = 1.5\ \Omega,\ X_m = 0$$

If this motor is operated at 210V, 25Hz with DOL starting, calculate

(*a*) current and pf at the instant of starting and under maximum torque conditions ; compare the results with normal values,

(*b*) starting and maximum torques and compare with normal values.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 120.05 A, 0.5145 lag, 81.862 A, 0.8112 lag
At normal : 134.1 A, 0.2873 lag, 90.486 A, 0.763 lag
(*b*) 220.2 Nm, 404.702 Nm
At normal : 137.38 Nm, 475.662 Nm]

**12.27.** Describe stator-current-control method for the speed control of a 3-phase induction motor. Derive expressions for maximum torque, slip at maximum torque etc. by using approximate equivalent circuit.

Discuss the effect of saturation on the speed-torque characteristics obtained by this method of speed control.

**12.28.** A 420 V, 6-pole, 50Hz, 3-phase, star-connected IM has $r_1 = 0$, $x_1 = x_2 = 1.2\ \Omega$, $r_2 = 0.5\ \Omega$ and $X_m = 50\ \Omega$ as its per-phase parameters referred to stator. This IM is fed from (*i*) constant-voltage source of 242.5 V per phase and (*ii*) constant-current source of 30A.

For both types of sources (*i*) and (*ii*), calculate

(*a*) the slip for maximum torque,

(*b*) the starting and maximum torques and

(*c*) the supply voltage required to sustain the constant current at the maximum torque.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 0.2108, 0.00976 (*b*) 136.71 Nm, 12.293 Nm ; 338.676 Nm, 629.47 Nm (*c*) 1838.1 V]

**12.29.** Sketch speed-torque characteristics of a 3-phase induction motor as influenced by different control techniques employed for its speed control by using semiconductor devices. Explain the three regions into which these characteristics can be subdivided.

Discuss the various methods employed for obtaining the three regions.

**12.30.** Discuss, in detail, how Ward-Leonard type of characteristics can be obtained from a 3-phase induction motor.

Explain also how high-speed series-motoring region is obtained in a 3-phase induction motor.

**12.31.** (*a*) Describe static rotor-resistance control method for the speed control of a 3-phase induction motor.

Derive expressions for inductor current and motor speed in terms of load torque, supply voltage, motor turns ratio, synchronous speed etc.

(*b*) A 3-phase SRIM uses rotor ON-OFF control by means of chopper for its speed control. The effective rotor resistance is increased to 10 times during off period. If the motor develops 0.4 pu torque at a slip of 0.02 for normal operation, calculate the average torque developed at the same slip for 20%, 50% and 80% duty cycles of the static rotor chopper.

[**Hint.** (*b*) At low values of slips,

$$T_e = K\frac{V^2}{r_2}s$$

$$\therefore \qquad T_{e1} = 0.4 = K\frac{V^2}{r_2}\times 0.02 \quad \text{or} \quad K\frac{V^2}{r_2} = 20$$

$$T_{e2} = \frac{KV^2}{10r_2}s = \frac{20\times 0.02}{10} = 0.04\,pu$$

Net torque, $T_{net} = \dfrac{T_{on}\cdot T_{e1} + T_{off}\cdot T_{e2}}{T}$ *etc.*] [**Ans.** (*b*) 0.112 pu, 0.22 pu, 0.328 pu]

**12.32.** A 3-phase, 400V, 6-pole, 50 Hz, star-connected SRIM uses a chopper in its rotor circuit for its speed control. The effective turns ratio from rotor to stator is 0.6. Inductor current is ripple free. Losses in the rectifier, inductor, chopper and no-load losses of the motor are neglected. Load torque, proportional to speed squared, is 360 Nm at 970 rpm.

(*a*) For a minimum motor speed of 600 rpm, calculate the value of chopper resistance *R*.

For the value of R obtained in part (*a*) if the speed is to be raised to 800 rpm, calculate

(*b*) inductor current (*c*) duty cycle of the chopper (*d*) rectified output voltage (*e*) efficiency in case per-phase resistances for stator and rotor are 0.015 Ω and 0.02 Ω respectively.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 3.496 Ω (*b*) 65.93 A (*c*) 0.7187 (*d*) 64.823 V (*e*) 79.285%]

**12.33.** (*a*) In static rotor-resistance control of a 3-phase SRIM, each diode in the rotor circuit conducts for 120°. Assuming ripple free rotor current, derive expressions for rms value of rotor current referred to stator, fundamental component of rotor current and its value referred to stator.

(*b*) A 3-phase, 415V, 50 Hz, 1470 rpm, star-connected SRIM has the following per-phase parameters referred to stator :

$$r_1 = 0.12\ \Omega,\ r_2 = 0.1\ \Omega,\ x_1 = x_2 = 0.4\ \Omega,\ X_m = 0$$

Per-phase turns ratio from rotor to stator = 0.8

Speed of this motor is controlled by rotor ON-OFF control. For a speed of 1200 rpm, the inductor current is 100 A and chopper resistance is 1.8 Ω. Calculate

(*i*) the value of chopper duty cycle

(*ii*) efficiency for a power output of 25 kW and for negligible no-load losses

(*iii*) the input power factor. [**Ans.** (*b*)(*i*) 0.498 (*ii*) 67.84% (*iii*) 0.822 lag]

**12.34.** Describe static Kramer drive and show that steady-state torque is not influenced by whether a transformer is used or not.

Derive appropriate expressions to obtain speed-torque characteristics of static Kramer drive.

**12.35.** Speed of a 400V, 6-pole, 50Hz, star-connected SRIM is controlled by static Kramer drive. The effective phase turns ratio from rotor to stator is 0.6 and transformer has phase turns ratio from l.v. to h.v. as 0.4. The inductor current is ripple free. Losses in diode rectifier, inductor, inverter and transformer are neglected. The load torque is proportional to speed squared and its value is 250 Nm at 800 rpm. For a motor operating speed of 700 rpm, calculate

(*a*) rotor rectified voltage (*b*) inductor current (*c*) delay angle of the inverter (*d*) efficiency in case inductor resistance is 0.01 Ω and per-phase resistances for stator and rotor are 0.015 Ω and 0.02 Ω respectively (*e*) For the firing angle obtained in part (*c*), the load torque is increased to 350 Nm, find the motor speed. [**Ans.** (*a*) 97.23V (*b*) 61.84 A (*c*) 116.743° (*d*) 98.37% (*e*) 696.53 rpm]

**12.36.** (*a*) Describe a static Kramer drive and show that the slip *s* at which it operates is given by

$$s = -\frac{a_T}{a}\cos\alpha$$

where $a$ and $a_T$ pertain to per-phase turns ratio for SRIM and transformer respectively.

(*b*) Speed of a 6-pole SRIM fed from 400 V, 50Hz source is controlled by static Kramer drive. The inverter is directly connected to the supply. If the motor is required to operate at 800 rpm, determine the firing advance angle of the inverter. Voltage across the open-circuited slip rings at stand-still is 600V. There is a voltage drop of 0.7V and 1.5V across each of the diodes and thyristors respectively. Inductor drop is neglected.

In case transformer is to be interposed between supply and the inverter for obtaining a minimum speed of 600 rpm, determine the voltage ratio of the transformer from l.v. to h.v.

[**Ans.** (*b*) 106.97°, 0.6]

**12.37.** Repeat Problem 12.36(*b*) in case there is an overlap angle of 12° in the rectifier and 5° in the inverter. [**Ans.** 76.305°]

**12.38.** Explain, with relevant circuit diagrams, both types of static Scherbius drives for obtaining speeds below as well as above synchronous speed.

**12.39.** (*a*) Enumerate the various types of synchrouous motors. Derive an expression for power developed in a cylindrical-rotor synchronous motor with negligible armature resistance.

(*b*) A 415V, 50Hz, 4-pole, star-connected synchronous motor has $X_s = 1.5\ \Omega$. Load torque, proportional to speed, is 300 Nm. at synchronous speed. The speed of the motor is lowered by keeping $\frac{V}{f}$ constant and maintaining 0.8 pf leading by field control. For the motor operation at 840 rpm, calculate (*a*) supply voltage (*b*) the armature current (*c*) the excitation voltage (*d*) load angle and (*e*) the pull-out torque. Neglect rotational losses.

[**Ans.** (*a*) 232.4 V (*b*) 44.96 A (*c*) 276.635 V (*d*) 10.904° (*e*) 870.15 Nm]

**12.40.** (*a*) Derive the expression for power developed in a salient-pole synchronous motor in terms of excitation voltage, load angle etc. Neglect armature resistance.

(*b*) Explain the working and uses of a permanent-magnet synchronous motor. How does the input-current waveforms effect the constructional features of PMSM ?

# APPENDIX

# OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

In this appendix, objective type questions pertaining to Chapters 2 to 10 are given. In all the chapters, the questions are so framed that the answer for each may be a number, a clause or a sentence. In case four alternatives are provided, there is one correct answer unless otherwise stated in the question.

## POWER SEMICONDUCTOR DIODES AND TRANSISTORS

**1.** For a diode, reverse recovery time is defined as the time between the instant diode current becomes zero and the instant reverse recovery current decays to

(*a*) zero
(*b*) 10% of reverse peak current $I_{RM}$
(*c*) 25% of $I_{RM}$
(*d*) 15% of $I_{RM}$

**2.** In a diode, the cut-in voltage and forward-voltage drop are respectively

(*a*) 0.7 V, 0.7 V
(*b*) 0.7 V, 1 V
(*c*) 0.7 V, 0.6 V
(*d*) 1 V, 0.7 V

**3.** The softness factor for soft-recovery and fast-recovery diodes are respectively

(*a*) 1, > 1
(*b*) < 1, 1
(*c*) 1, 1
(*d*) 1, < 1

**4.** Reverse recovery current in a diode depends upon

(*a*) forward field current
(*b*) storage charge
(*c*) temperature
(*d*) PIV

**5.** In a BJT,

(*a*) $\beta = \dfrac{\alpha}{\alpha + 1}$
(*b*) $\beta = \dfrac{\alpha}{\alpha - 1}$
(*c*) $\alpha = \dfrac{\beta}{\beta - 1}$
(*d*) $\alpha = \dfrac{\beta + 1}{\beta}$

**6.** A power MOSFET has three terminals called

(*a*) collector, emitter and base
(*b*) drain, source and base
(*c*) drain, source and gate
(*d*) collector, emitter and gate

**7.** As compared to power MOSFET, a BJT has

(*a*) lower switching losses but higher conduction loss
(*b*) higher switching losses and higher conduction loss
(*c*) higher switching losses but lower conduction loss
(*d*) lower switching losses and lower conduction loss

**8.** Choose the correct statement :

(*a*) MOSFET has positive temperature coefficient (TC) whereas BJT has negative TC
(*b*) Both MOSFET and BJT have positive TC
(*c*) Both MOSFET and BJT have negative TC
(*d*) MOSFET has negative TC whereas BJT has positive TC

**9.** Choose the correct statement :

(*a*) Both MOSFET and BJT are voltage controlled devices (CDs)
(*b*) Both MOSFET and BJT are current CDs

(*c*) MOSFET is a voltage CD whereas BJT is a current CD
(*d*) MOSFET is a current CD whereas BJT is a voltage CD

**10.** Secondary breakdown occurs in
(*a*) MOSFET but not in BJT (*b*) both MOSFET and BJT
(*c*) BJT but not in MOSFET (*d*) none of these

**11.** At present, the state of the art devices are available as under :

| | *MOSFET* | *BJT* |
|---|---|---|
| (*a*) | 1200 V, 800 A | 500 V, 140 A |
| (*b*) | 500 V, 140 A | 1200 V, 800 A |
| (*c*) | 800 V, 1000 A | 1000 V, 1200 A |
| (*d*) | 200 V, 140 A | 1500 V, 800 A |

**12.** An IGBT has three terminals called
(*a*) collector, emitter and base (*b*) drain, source and base
(*c*) drain, source and gate (*d*) collector, emitter and gate

**13.** An MCT has three terminals called
(*a*) anode, cathode and gate (*b*) collector, emitter and gate
(*c*) drain, source and base (*d*) drain, source and gate

**14.** For the switching waveform shown Fig. A-1 in for a power transistor, the peak instantaneous power loss in watts is
(*a*) 250 (*b*) 500
(*c*) 166.67 (*d*) 333.33

**15.** For the switching waveform shown in Fig. A-1 for a power transistor, the average value of switch-on power loss at a switching frequency of 10 kHz is
(*a*) 1 W (*b*) 2 W
(*c*) 3 W (*d*) 4 W

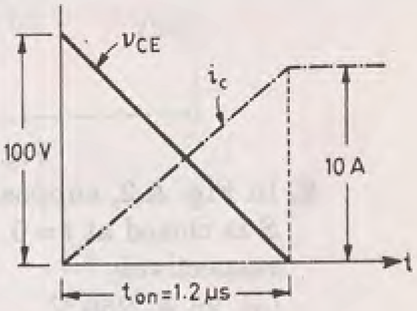
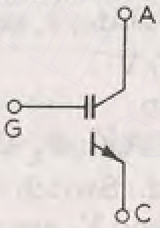


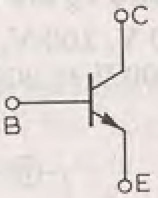
Fig. A-1

**16.** Match the devices on the left hand side with the circuit symbols on right hand side.

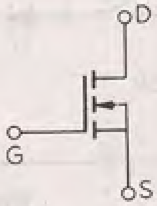
(*A*) BJT

(1)


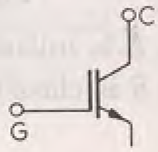
(*B*) MOSFET

(2)


(*C*) IGBT

(3)


(*D*) MCT

(4)


## ANSWERS

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1.** (*c*) | **2.** (*c*) | **3.** (*d*) | **4.** (*a*) | **5.** (*b*) | **6.** (*c*) |
| **7.** (*c*) | **8.** (*a*) | **9.** (*c*) | **10.** (*c*) | **11.** (*b*) | **12.** (*d*) |
| **13.** (*a*) | **14.** (*a*) | **15.** (*b*) | **16.** A-2 ; B-3 : C-4 ; D-1 | | |

## DIODE CIRCUITS AND RECTIFIERS

**1.** In Fig. A.2, capacitor $C$ is charged to $V_0 = 50$ V with upper plate positive. Switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$. Current through the circuit at $t = 0$ and final voltage across $C$ are respectively,

(*a*) 15 A, 200 V (*b*) 20 A, 200 V

(*c*) 25 A, 250 V (*d*) 15 A, 150 V

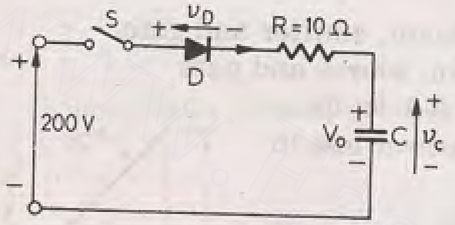


**Fig. A-2**

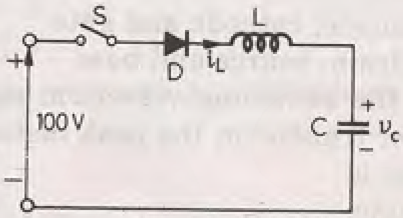


**Fig. A-3**

**2.** In Fig. A.2, suppose capacitor $C$ is charged to 50 V with lower plate positive. Switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$. Current through the diode at $t = 0$ and final voltage across $C$ are respectively

(*a*) 25 A, 250 V (*b*) 25 A, 200 V

(*c*) 20 A, 200 V (*d*) 15 A, 150 V

**3.** In the circuit of Fig. A.3, switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$ with $i_L(0) = 0$ and $v_c(0) = 0$. In steady-state, $v_c$ equals

(*a*) 200 V (*b*) 100 V

(*c*) zero (*d*) − 100 V

**4.** In Fig. A.4 ; $V_1$, $V_2$ and $V_3$ are zero centre PMMC voltmeters. The circuit is initially relaxed. Switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$. In steady state, readings of voltmeters $V_1$, $V_2$ and $V_3$ are respectively

(*a*) 100 V, 100 V, − 100 V (*b*) 100 V, 0, 200 V

(*c*) − 100 V, 0, 200 V (*d*) 100 V, 0, 100 V

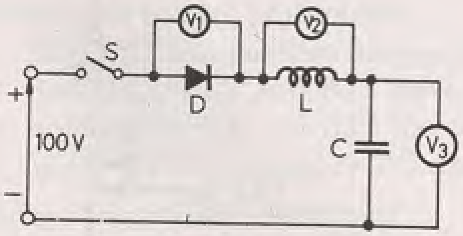


**Fig. A-4**

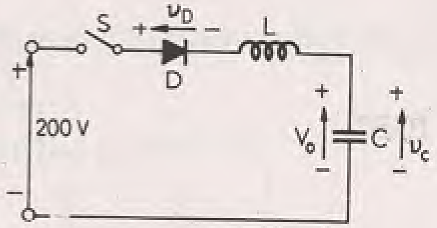


**Fig. A-5**

**5.** In Fig. A.5, initial voltage across capacitor is $V_0 = 50$ V with the polarity as shown Switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$, In steady state, $v_C$ and $v_D$ are respectively given by

(*a*) 400 V, – 200 V (*b*) 350 V, – 150 V
(*c*) 200 V, 0 (*d*) 450 V, – 250 V

**6.** In Fig. A.5, if $C = 8\ \mu F$ and $L = 0.2$ mH, the peak current handled by diode is
(*a*) 40 A (*b*) 50 A
(*c*) 10 A (*d*) 30 A

**7.** In Fig. A.6, initial voltage across capacitor is $V_0 = 50$ V with the polarity as shown. Switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$. In steady-state, $v_C$ and $v_D$ are respectively given by
(*a*) 400 V, – 200 V (*b*) 350, – 150 V
(*c*) 200 V, 0 (*d*) 450 V, – 250 V

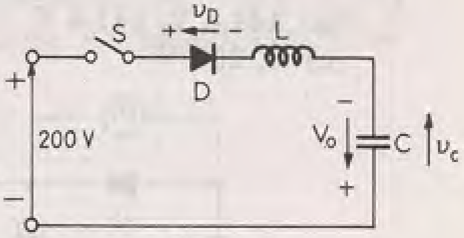


Fig. A-6

**8.** In Fig. A.6, if $C = 8\ \mu F$ and $L = 0.2$ mH, the peak current through diode is given by
(*a*) 40 A (*b*) 50 A
(*c*) 10 A (*d*) 30 A

**9.** In Fig. A.7, capacitor $C$ is initially charged with voltage $V_0$ with upper plate positive. Switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$. At $t = 0+$, $v_c$ and $i$ are given by

(*a*) $0, \dfrac{V_0}{R}$ (*b*) $-V_0, \dfrac{V_0}{R}$

(*c*) $-V_0, -\dfrac{V_0}{R}$ (*d*) $V_0, \dfrac{V_0}{R}$

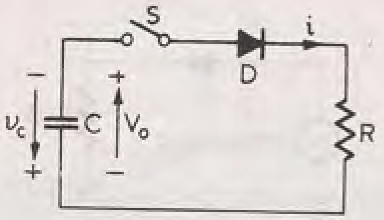


Fig. A-7

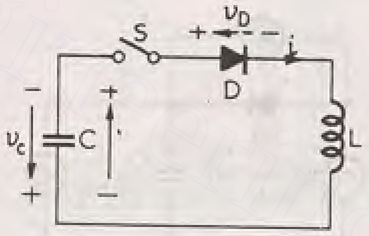


Fig. A-8

**10.** In Fig. A.8, capacitor $C$ is initially charged with voltage $V_0$. Switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$. In steady state, $v_C$ and $v_D$ are respectively given by
(*a*) $V_0, -V_0$ (*b*) $0, -V_0$
(*c*) $-V_0, 0$ (*d*) $V_0, V_0$

**11.** Each diode in Fig. A.9 can be described by a cut-in voltage and zero resistance. If the cut-in voltage of diode D1 is 0.2 V and of diode D2 is 0.6 V, the magnitude of current $I_1$ through D1 is ...... mA and magnitude of current through D2 is ...... mA.

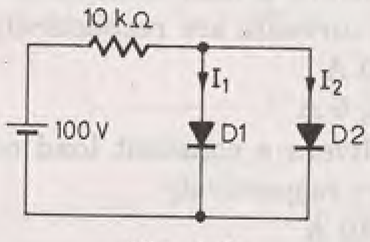


Fig. A-9

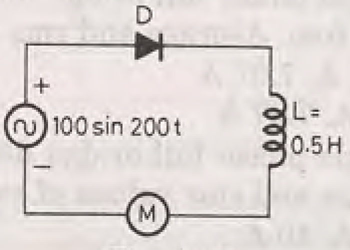


Fig. A-10

**12.** In Fig. A.10, ideal PMMC ammeter $M$ will read (*a*) zero (*b*) 1.414 A

(*c*) 0.707 A (*d*) 1 A

**13.** In Fig. A.10, if ammeter *M* is an ideal *MI* ammeter, then it will read

(*a*) 0.707 A (*b*) 1.414 A

(*c*) 1.225 A (*d*) 1 A

**14.** In Fig. A.11, ideal moving iron voltmeters M1 and M2 will respectively read

(*a*) 141.4 V, 141.4 V (*b*) 0, 141.4 V

(*c*) 0, 200 V (*d*) 141.4 V, 0

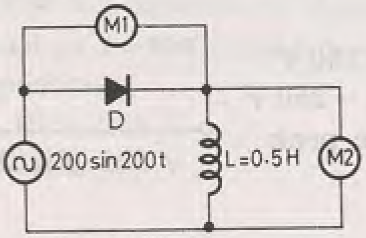


Fig. A-11

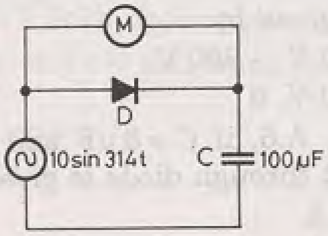


Fig. A-12

**15.** In Fig. A.12, an ideal moving iron voltmeter *M* will read

(*a*) 7.07 V (*b*) 12.25 V

(*c*) 14.14 V (*d*) 20.0 V

**16.** In Fig. A.13, zero-centre and ideal PMMC voltmeters M1 and M2 will read

(*a*) – 10 V, 10 V (*b*) 0, 10 V

(*c*) – 10 V, 7.07 V (*d*) 10 V, 7.07 V

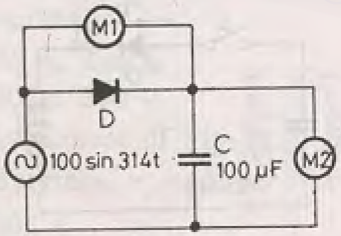


Fig. A-13

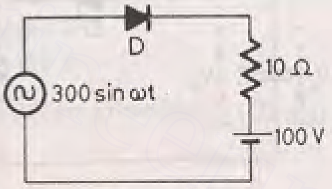


Fig. A-14

**17.** In Fig. A.14, PIV required for the diode is

(*a*) 300 V (*b*) 100 V

(*c*) 200 V (*d*) 400 V

**18.** A single-phase one-pulse diode rectifier is feeding an RL load with freewheeling diode across the load. For conduction angle β, the main diode and freewheeling diode would, respectively, conduct for

(*a*) π, π – β (*b*) π, β – π

(*c*) β, π (*d*) β – π, π

**19.** A single-phase full-bridge diode rectifier delivers a load current of 10 A, which is ripple free. Average and rms values of diode currents are respectively

(*a*) 10 A, 7.07 A (*b*) 5 A, 10 A

(*c*) 5 A, 7.07 A (*d*) 7.07 A, 5 A

**20.** A single-phase full-bridge diode rectifier delivers a constant load current of 10 A Average and rms values of source current are respectively

(*a*) 5 A, 10 A (*b*) 10 A, 10 A

(*c*) 5 A, 5 A (*d*) 0, 10 A

**21.** A voltage $v = 4 \sin \omega t$ is applied to the terminals $A$ and $B$ of the circuit shown in Fig. A.15. The diodes are assumed to be ideal. The impedance offered by the circuit across the terminals $A$ and $B$ in kilo-ohms is

(*a*) 5 (*b*) 20
(*c*) 10 (*d*) none of these

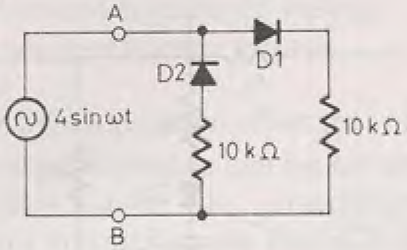


Fig. A-15

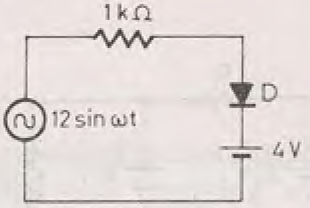


Fig. A-16

**22.** The peak current through the resistor of circuit of Fig. A.16, assuming the diodes to be ideal, is

(*a*) 12 mA (*b*) 4 mA
(*c*) 16 mA (*d*) 8 mA

**23.** In Fig. A.17, V1 and V2 are zero-centre PMMC voltmeters. When a sinusoidal signal is applied, V2 reads + 20 V. The reading of the voltmeter V1 is ...... volts.

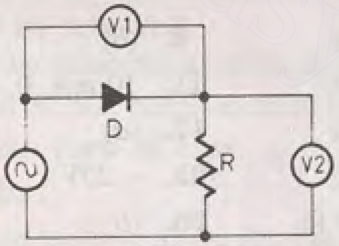


Fig. A-17

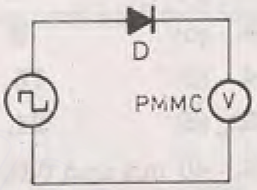


Fig. A-18

**24.** For a symmetrical square wave of 800 V peak to peak and for ideal diode, the voltmeter in Fig. A.18 will read

(*a*) 200 V (*b*) 400 V
(*c*) 800 V (*d*) zero

**25.** The circuit in Fig. A.19 shows zener-regulated dc power supply. The zener-diode is ideal. The minimum value of $R_L$ down to which the output voltage remains constant is

(*a*) 27 Ω (*b*) 45 Ω
(*c*) 15 Ω (*d*) 24 Ω

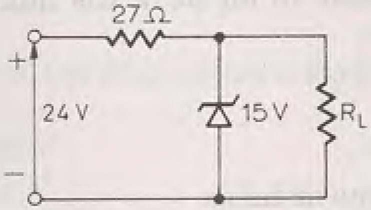


Fig. A-19

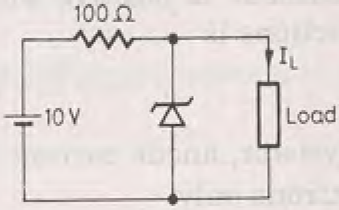


Fig. A-20

**26.** In the circuit of Fig. A.20, the 5V zener diode requires a minimum current of 10 mA. For obtaining a regulated output of 5 V, the maximum permissible load current $I_L$ is ...... mA and the minimum power rating of zener diode is ...... W.

**27.** Fig. A.21 shows an electronic voltage regulator. The zener diode may be assumed to require a minimum current of 25 mA for satisfactory operation. The value of $R$ required for satisfactory operation is ...... ohms.

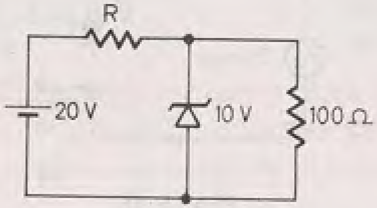


Fig. A-21

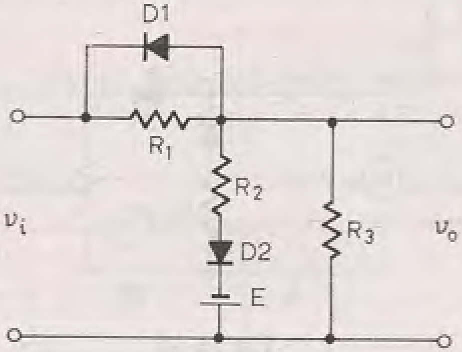


Fig. A-22

**28.** In the circuit of Fig. A.22, the diode states at the extremely large negative value of the input voltage $v_i$ are

(*a*) D1 off, D2 off (*b*) D1 on, D2 off
(*c*) D1 off, D2 on (*d*) D1 on, D2 on

## ANSWERS

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1.** (*a*) | **2.** (*b*) | **3.** (*a*) | **4.** (*c*) | **5.** (*b*) | **6.** (*d*) |
| **7.** (*d*) | **8.** (*b*) | **9.** (*b*) | **10.** (*a*) | **11.** 10 mA, 0 | **12.** (*d*) |
| **13.** (*c*) | **14.** (*b*) | **15.** (*b*) | **16.** (*a*) | **17.** (*d*) | **18.** (*b*) |
| **19.** (*c*) | **20.** (*d*) | **21.** (*c*) | **22.** (*d*) | **23.** – 20V | **24.** (*a*) |
| **25.** (*b*) | **26.** 40 mA and 0.05 W | | **27.** 80 Ω | **28.** (*b*) | |

## THYRISTORS

**1.** The number of $p$–$n$ junctions in a thyristor is

(*a*) 1 (*b*) 2
(*c*) 3 (*d*) 4.

**2.** When anode is positive with respect to cathode in an SCR, the number of blocked $p$–$n$ junctions is

(*a*) 1 (*b*) 2
(*c*) 3 (*d*) 4

**3.** When cathode is positive with respect to anode in an SCR, the number of blocked $p$–$n$ junctions is

(*a*) 1 (*b*) 2
(*c*) 3 (*d*) 4.

**4.** In a thyristor, anode current is made up of

(*a*) electrons only (*b*) electrons or holes
(*c*) electrons and holes (*d*) holes only.

**5.** A thyristor, when triggered, will change from forward blocking state to conduction state if its anode to cathode voltage is equal to

(*a*) peak repetitive off-state forward voltage
(*b*) peak working off-state forward voltage

(*c*) peak working off-state reverse voltage
(*d*) peak non-repetitive off-state forward voltage.

**6.** An SCR can be brought to forward conducting state with gate-circuit open when the applied voltage exceeds
(*a*) the forward breakover voltage
(*b*) reverse breakdown voltage
(*c*) 1.5 V
(*d*) peak non-repetitive off-state voltage.

**7.** A conducting thyristor can be turned-off by ....(decreasing/increasing) the anode current...(below/above) the ...(latching/holding) current and applying a ...(reverse/forward/zero) voltage across the SCR for a short interval.

**8.** In a thyristor, holding current is
(*a*) more than latching current $I_L$
(*b*) less than $I_L$
(*c*) equal to $I_L$
(*d*) very small.

**9.** When a thyristor gets turned on, the gate drive
(*a*) should not be removed as it will turn-off the SCR
(*b*) may or may not be removed
(*c*) should be removed
(*d*) should be removed in order to avoid increased losses and higher junction temperature.

**10.** For normal SCRs, turn-on time is
(*a*) less than turn-off time, $t_q$ (*b*) more than $t_q$
(*c*) equal to $t_q$ (*d*) half of $t_q$.

**11.** The forward voltage drop during SCR on-state is 1.5 V. This voltage drop
(*a*) remains constant and is independent of load current
(*b*) increases slightly with load current
(*c*) decreases slightly with load current
(*d*) varies linearly with load current.

**12.** During forward blocking state, a thyristor is associated with
(*a*) large current, low voltage
(*b*) low current, large voltage
(*c*) medium current, large voltage
(*d*) low current, medium voltage.

**13.** In a thyristor, ratio of latching current to holding current is
(*a*) 0.4 (*b*) 1.0
(*c*) 2.5 (*d*) 6.0.

**14.** On-state voltage drop across a thyristor used in a 250-V supply system is of the order of
(*a*) 100-110 V (*b*) 240-250 V
(*c*) 1 to 1.5 V (*d*) 0.5 to 1 V.

**15.** Once SCR starts conducting a forward current, its gate loses control over
(*a*) anode circuit voltage only
(*b*) anode circuit current only
(*c*) anode circuit voltage and current
(*d*) anode circuit voltage, current and time,

**16.** In a thyristors

(*a*) latching current $I_L$ is associated with turn-off process and holding current $I_H$ with turn-on process

(*b*) both $I_L$ and $I_H$ are associated with turn-off process

(*c*) $I_H$ is associated with turn-off process and $I_L$ with turn-on process

(*d*) both $I_L$ and $I_H$ are associated with turn-on process.

**17.** The SCR ratings, *di/dt* in A/μsec and *dv/dt* in V/μsec, may vary, respectively, between

(*a*) 20 to 500, 10 to 100 (*b*) both 20 to 500

(*c*) both 10 to 100 (*d*) 50 to 300, 20 to 500.

**18.** A thyristor can be termed as

(*a*) DC switch (*b*) AC switch

(*c*) either(*a*) or (*b*) (*d*) square-wave switch.

**19.** In a thyristor, the magnitude of anode current will

(*a*) increase if gate current is increased

(*b*) decrease if gate current is decreased

(*c*) increase if gate current is decreased

(*d*) not change with any variation in gate current.

**20.** Static *V–I* characteristics of an SCR with different gate drives applied to the gate are indicated by

(*a*) $I_{g2} > I_{g1} > I_{go}$ (*b*) $V_{g2} > V_{g1} > V_{g0}$

(*c*) $P_{g2} > P_{g1} > P_{g0}$ (*d*) either (*a*) or (*b*).

**21.** Turn-on time of an SCR can be reduced by using a

(*a*) rectangular pulse of high amplitude and narrow width

(*b*) rectangular pulse of low amplitude and wide width

(*c*) triangular pulse

(*d*) trapezoidal pulse.

**22.** Turn-on time of an SCR in series with *RL* circuit can be reduced by

(*a*) increasing circuit resistance *R*

(*b*) decreasing *R*

(*c*) increasing circuit inductance *L*

(*d*) decreasing *L*.

**23.** For an SCR with turn-on time of 5 microsecond, an ideal trigger pulse should have

(*a*) short rise time with pulse width = 3 μsec

(*b*) long rise time with pulse width = 6 μsec

(*c*) short rise time with pulse width = 6 μsec

(*d*) long rise time with pulse width = 3 μsec.

**24.** A forward voltage can be applied to an SCR after its

(*a*) anode current reduces to zero (*b*) gate recovery time

(*c*) reverse recovery time (*d*) anode voltage reduces to zero.

**25.** Turn-off time of an SCR is measured from the instant

(*a*) anode current becomes zero (*b*) anode voltage becomes zero

(*c*) anode voltage and anode current become zero at the same time

(*d*) gate current becomes zero.

**26.** Turn-on time for an SCR is 10 μsec. If an inductance is inserted in the anode circuit, then the turn-on time will be

(*a*) 10 μsec (*b*) less than 10 μsec
(*c*) more than 10 μsec (*d*) about 10 μsec.

**27.** In an SCR, anode current flows over a narrow region near the gate during
(*a*) delay time $t_d$ (*b*) rise time $t_r$ and spread time $t_p$
(*c*) $t_d$ and $t_p$ (*d*) $t_d$ and $t_r$.

**28.** Gate characteristic of a thyristor
(*a*) is a straight line passing through origin
(*b*) is of the type $V_g = a + b\, I_g$
(*c*) is a curve between $V_g$ and $I_g$
(*d*) has a spread between two curves of $V_g - I_g$.

**29.** The average on-state current for an SCR is 20 A for a conduction angle of 120°. Its average on-state current for 60° conduction angle would be
(*a*) 20 A (*b*) 10 A
(*c*) less than 20 A (*d*) 40 A.

**30.** The average on-state current for an SCR is 20 A for a resistive load. If an inductance of 5 mH is included in the load, then average on-state current would be
(*a*) more than 20 A (*b*) less than 20 A
(*c*) 15 A (*d*) 20 A.

**31.** Specification sheet for an SCR gives its maximum rms on-state current as 35 A. This rms rating for a conduction angle of 120° would be
(*a*) more than 35 A (*b*) less than 35 A
(*c*) 35 A (*d*) 52.5 A.

**32.** Surge current rating of an SCR specifies the maximum
(*a*) repetitive current with sine wave
(*b*) non-repetitive current with rectangular wave
(*c*) non-repetitive current with sine wave
(*d*) repetitive current with rectangular wave.

**33.** The *di*/*dt* rating of an SCR is specified for its
(*a*) decaying anode current (*b*) decaying gate current
(*c*) rising gate current (*d*) rising anode current.

**34.** For an SCR , *dv*/*dt* protection is achieved through the use of
(*a*) *RL* in series with SCR (*b*) *RC* across SCR
(*c*) *L* in series with SCR (*d*) *RC* in series with SCR.

**35.** For an SCR, *di*/*dt* protection is achieved through the use of
(*a*) *R* in series with SCR (*b*) *RL* in series with SCR
(*c*) *L* in series with SCR (*d*) *L* across SCR.

**36.** The function of snubber circuit connected across an SCR is to
(*a*) suppress *dv*/*dt*(*b*) increase *dv*/*dt*
(*c*) decrease *dv*/*dt*(*d*) keep transient overvoltage at a constant value.

**37.** The object of connecting resistance and capacitance across gate circuit is to protect the SCR gate against
(*a*) overvoltages (*b*) *dv*/*dt*
(*c*) noise signals (*d*) overcurrents.

**38.** Thermal resistance in SCRs has the units of..... (W/°C, or ohms or °C/W) and heat sinks are made from......(copper/steel/aluminium).

**39.** Who string efficiency for $n$ series/parallel connected SCRs is defined, in general, as

$$\frac{\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots}{[\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots] \times n}$$

**40.** Practical way of obtaining static voltage equalization in series-connected SCRs is by the use of

(*a*) one resistor across the string
(*b*) resistors of different values across each SCR
(*c*) resistors of the same value across each SCR
(*d*) one resistor in series with the string.

**41.** For series connected SCRs, dynamic equalizing circuit consists of

(*a*) resistor $R$ and capacitor $C$ in series but with a diode $D$ across $C$
(*b*) series $R$ and $D$ circuit but with $C$ across $R$
(*c*) series $R$ and $C$ circuit but with $D$ across $R$
(*d*) series $C$ and $D$ circuit but with $R$ across $C$.

**42.** For dynamic equalizing circuit used for series connected SCRs, the choice of $C$ is based on

(*a*) reverse recovery characteristic
(*b*) turn-on characteristics
(*c*) turn-off characteristics
(*d*) rise-time characteristics.

**43.** In an UJT, with $V_{BB}$ as the voltage across two base terminals, the emitter potential at peak point is given by

(*a*) $\eta V_{BB}$ (*b*) $\eta V_D$
(c) $\eta V_{BB} + V_D$ (*d*) $\eta V_D + V_{BB}$.

**44.** An UJT exhibits negative resistance region

(*a*) before the peak point (*b*) between peak and valley points
(*c*) after the valley point (*d*) both (*a*) and (*c*).

**45.** In an UJT, maximum value of charging resistance is associated with

(*a*) peak point
(*b*) valley point
(*c*) any point between peak and valley points
(*d*) after the valley point.

**46.** When an UJT is used for triggering an SCR, the waveshape of the voltage obtained from UJT circuit is a

(*a*) sine wave (*b*) saw-tooth wave
(*c*) trapezoidal wave (*d*) square wave.

**47.** For an UJT employed for the triggering of an SCR, stand-off ratio $\eta = 0.64$ and dc source voltage $V_{BB}$ is 20 V. The UJT would trigger when the emitter voltage is

(*a*) 12.8 V (*b*) 13.1 V
(*c*) 10 V (*d*) 5 V.

**48.** An SCR can withstand a maximum junction temperature of 120°C with an ambient temperature of 75°C. If this SCR has thermal resistance from junction to ambient as 1.5°C/W, the maximum internal power dissipation allowed is

(*a*) 30 W (*b*) 60 W
(*c*) 80 W (*d*) 50 W.

**49.** In synchronized UJT triggering of an SCR, voltage $v_c$ across capacitor reaches UJT thresh-hold voltage thrice in each half cycle so that there are three firing pulses during each half cycle. The firing angle of the SCR can be controlled

(*a*) once in each half cycle (*b*) thrice in each half cycle
(*c*) twice in each half cycle (*d*) four times in each half cycle.

**50.** The function of connecting a zener diode in an UJT circuit, used for the triggering of SCRs, is to

(*a*) expedite the generation of triggering pulses
(*b*) delay the generation of triggering pulses
(*c*) provide a constant voltage to UJT to prevent erratic firing
(*d*) provide a variable voltage to UJT as the source voltage changes.

**51.** A metal oxide varistor (MOV) is used for protecting

(*a*) gate circuit against overcurrents
(*b*) gate circuit against overvoltages
(*c*) anode circuit against overcurrents
(*d*) anode circuit against overvoltages.

**52.** The functions of connecting a resistor in series with gate-cathode circuit and a zener-diode across gate-cathode circuit are, respectively, to protect the gate circuit from

(*a*) overvoltages, overcurrents (*b*) overcurrents, overvoltages
(*c*) overcurrents, noise signals (*d*) noise signals, overvoltages.

**53.** In a GTO, anode current begins to fall when gate current

(*a*) is negative peak at time $t = 0$
(*b*) is negative peak at $t =$ storage period $t_s$
(*c*) just begins to become negative at $t = 0$
(*d*) is negative peak at $t = (t_s + \text{fall time})$.

**54.** For a pulse transformer, the material used for its core and the possible turn-ratio from primary to secondary are, respectively,

(*a*) ferrite ; 20 : 1 (*b*) laminated iron ; 1 : 1
(c) ferrite ; 1 : 1 (*d*) powdered iron ; 1 : 1.

**55.** The capacitance of a reverse biased junction of a thyristor is 20 picofarad. The charging current of this thyristor is 4 mA. The limiting value of $\frac{dv}{dt}$ is ...... V/μs.

**56.** This question has five subquestions. Amongst the four alternatives provided, one or more are correct. Write down all the correct answers unambiguously.

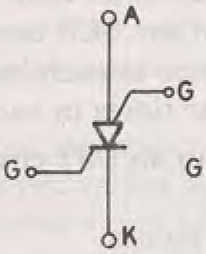
**56.1.** SCR can be turned on by

(*a*) applying anode voltage at a sufficiently fast rate
(*b*) applying sufficiently large anode voltage
(*c*) increasing the temperature of SCR to a sufficiently large value
(*d*) applying sufficiently large gate current.

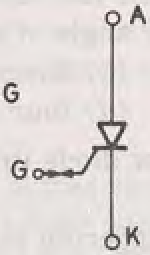
**56.2.** During forward blocking of two series connected SCRs, a thyristor with

(*a*) high leakage impedance shares lower voltage
(*b*) high leakage impedance shares higher voltage
(*c*) low leakage impedance shares higher voltage
(*d*) low leakage impedance shares lower voltage.

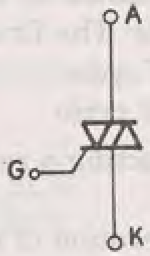
**56.3.** The circuit symbol for a GTO is



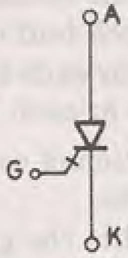
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

**56.4.** Thyristors *A* has rated gate current of 2 *A* and thyristor *B* a rated gate current of 100 mA.

(*a*) *A* is a GTO and *B* is a conventional SCR
(*b*) *B* is a GTO and *A* is a conventional SCR
(*c*) *A* may operate as a transistor
(*d*) *B* may operate as a transistor.

**56.5.** A resistor connected across the gate and cathode of an SCR increases its

(*a*) *dv/dt* rating (*b*) holding current
(*c*) noise immunity (*d*) turn-off time.

## ANSWERS

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1.** | (*c*) | **2.** | (*a*) | **3.** | (*b*) | **4.** | (*c*) | **5.** | (*b*) | **6.** | (*a*) |
| **7.** | decreasing, below, holding, reverse | | | | | **8.** | (*b*) | **9.** | (*d*) | **10.** | (*a*) |
| **11.** | (*b*) | **12.** | (*b*) | **13.** | (*c*) | **14.** | (*c*) | **15.** | (*c*) | **16.** | (*c*) |
| **17.** | (*b*) | **18.** | (*a*) | **19.** | (*d*) | **20.** | (*a*) | **21.** | (*a*) | **22.** | (*d*) |
| **23.** | (*c*) | **24.** | (*b*) | **25.** | (*a*) | **26.** | (*c*) | **27.** | (*d*) | **28.** | (*d*) |
| **29.** | (*c*) | **30.** | (*a*) | **31.** | (*c*) | **32.** | (*c*) | **33.** | (*d*) | **34.** | (*b*) |
| **35.** | (*c*) | **36.** | (*a*) | **37.** | (*c*) | **38.** | °C/W, Aluminium | | | | |
| **39.** | See the book | | | **40.** | (*c*) | **41.** | (*c*) | **42.** | (*a*) | **43.** | (*c*) |
| **44.** | (*b*) | **45.** | (*a*) | **46.** | (*b*) | **47.** | (*b*) | **48.** | (*a*) | **49.** | (*a*) |
| **50.** | (*c*) | **51.** | (*d*) | **52.** | (*b*) | **53.** | (*b*) | **54.** | (*c*) | **55.** | 200 |
| **56.1** | (*a*), (*b*), (*c*), (*d*) | | | **56.2.** | (*b*), (*d*) | **56.3.** | (*b*), (*d*) | **56.4** | (*a*), (*c*) | **56.5.** | (*a*), (*b*), (*c*) |

## THYRISTOR COMMUTATION TECHNIQUES

**1.** For the circuit shown in Fig. A.23, the conduction time for thyristor in microseconds is

(*a*) 0.393 (*b*) 2.546
(*c*) 25.133 (*d*) 8.0

**2.** For the circuit in Fig. A.23, the capacitor voltage after SCR gets self-commutated is

(*a*) 200 V (*b*) 400 V
(*c*) 300 V (*d*) 100 V

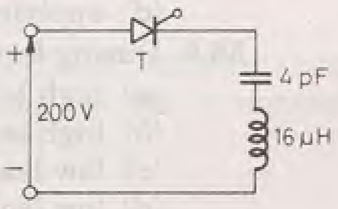


Fig. A-23

**3.** For the circuit shown in Fig. A.23, the voltage across thyristor, after it is self-commutated is

(*a*) zero (*b*) – 1.5 V
(*c*) – 200 V (*d*) – 400 V

**4.** For the circuit in Fig. A.23, the peak thyristor current is
(*a*) 100 A (*b*) 50 A
(*c*) 400 A (*d*) 800 A

**5.** In the circuit of Fig. A.24, the maximum value of current through thyristors T1 and TA can respectively be

(*a*) $\frac{V_s}{R}, \frac{V_s}{R} + V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}$

(*b*) $\frac{V_s}{R} + V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}, V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}$

(*c*) $V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}, \frac{V_s}{R}$

(*d*) $\frac{V_s}{R}, V_s\sqrt{\frac{C}{L}}$

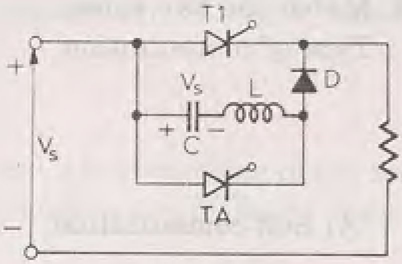


Fig. A-24

**6.** For the circuit shown in Fig. A.24, peak value of resonant current is twice the load current. In case $V_s = 200$ V, the magnitude of voltage across main thyristor, when it gets turned-off, is ...... V.

**7.** For the circuit in Fig. A.24, the peak value of current through auxiliary SCR is twice that through the main SCR. In case $V_s = 100$ V, $C = 10$ μF and load current = 40 A, the circuit turn-off time for main SCR is ...... microsecond.

**8.** In the circuit of Fig. A.25, *C* is charged to $V_s$ with polarity as shown. Tick the correct statement/statements from the following :
(*a*) In order to turn-off T1, turn on T2
(*b*) In order to turn-off T2, turn on T1
(*c*) At the time of turn on of SCR, initial thyristor current is $V_s\left[\frac{2}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2}\right]$
(*d*) At the time of turn on of SCR, initial thyristor current is $V_s\left[\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{2}{R_2}\right]$

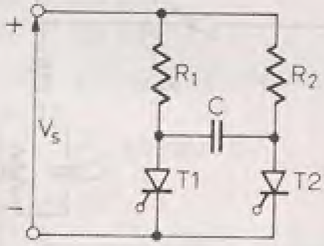


Fig. A-25

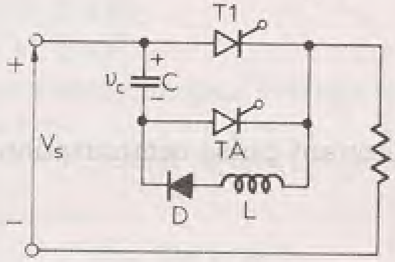


Fig. A-26

**9.** In the circuit shown in Fig. A.25, $R_1 = 50\ \Omega$, $R_2 = 100\ \Omega$ and $V_s = 100$ V. The possible peak values of current through T1 is ...... *A* and through T2 is ...... *A*.

**10.** In the circuit shown in Fig. A.26, $V_s = 200$ V, $C = 4$ μF, $L = 16$ μH and $R = 20\ \Omega$. The peak value of current through T1 and D can respectively be
(*a*) 110 A, 100 A
(*b*) 10 A, 110 A
(*c*) 110 A, 10 A
(*d*) 100 A, 110 A

**11.** In the circuit of Fig. A.26, and for the parameters given in Prob 10, the circuit turn-off time for main and auxiliary thyristors are respectively ...... μs and ...... μs.

**12.** In the circuit configuration shown in Fig. A.27, the circuit turn-off time for main thyristor is 34.657 μs. The value of capacitor $C$ required in this circuit is ...... μF.

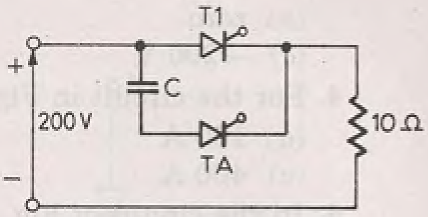
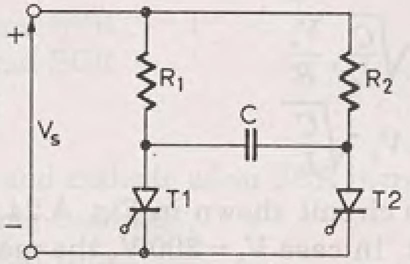
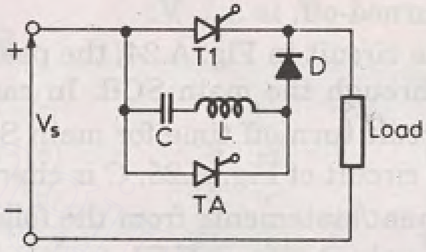
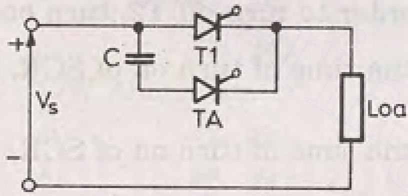
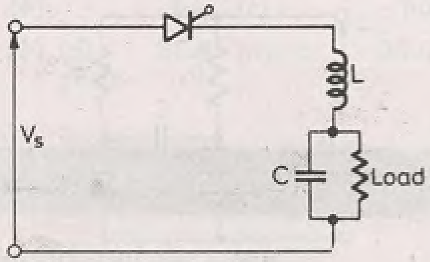


Fig. A-27

**13.** Match the two sides.

| *Type of commutation* | | *Power Circuit Diagram* |
|---|---|---|
| (*A*) Self-commutation | (1) |  |
| (*B*) Complementary commutation | (2) |  |
| (*C*) Impulse commutation | (3) |  |
| (*D*) Resonant-pulse commutation | (4) |  |

## ANSWERS

**1.** (*c*) **2.** (*b*) **3.** (c) **4.** (*a*) **5.** (*d*) **6.** 173.2 V

**7.** 21.65 **8.** (*a*), (*c*) **9.** 4A, 5A **10.** (*a*) **11.** 80, 12.566 **12.** 5

**13.** A → 4, *B* → 1, *C* → 3, *D* → 2.

## PHASE CONTROLLED RECTIFIERS

**1.** A single-phase half-wave controlled rectifier has 400 sin 314 $t$ as the input voltage and $R$ as the load. For a firing angle of 60° for the SCR, the average output voltage is

(*a*) 400/π (*b*) 300/π
(*c*) 240/π (*d*) 200/π.

**2.** A single-phase one-pulse controlled circuit has resistance and counter emf load and 400 sin 314 $t$ as the source voltage. For a load counter emf of 200 V, the range of firing angle control is

(*a*) 30° to 150° (*b*) 30° to 180°
(*c*) 60° to 120° (*d*) 60° to 180°

**3.** In a single-phase half-wave circuit with $RL$ load, and a freewheeling diode across the load, extinction angle β is more than π. For a firing angle α, the SCR and freewheeling diode would conduct, respectively, for

(*a*) $\pi - \alpha, \beta$ (*b*) $\beta - \alpha, \pi - \alpha$
(*c*) $\pi - \alpha, \beta - \pi$ (*d*) $\pi - \alpha, \pi - \beta$.

**4.** In a single-phase one-pulse circuit with $RL$ load and a freewheeling diode, extinction angle β is less than π. For a firing angle α, the SCR and freewheeling diode would, respectively, conduct for

(*a*) $\beta - \alpha, 0°$ (*b*) $\pi - \alpha, \pi - \beta$
(*c*) $\alpha, \beta - \alpha$ (*d*) $\beta - \alpha, \alpha$.

**5.** A single-phase full-wave mid-point thyristor converter uses a 230/200 V transformer with center tap on the secondary side. The P.I.V. per thyristor is

(*a*) 100 V (*b*) 141.4 V
(*c*) 200 V (*d*) 282.8 V.

**6.** A single-phase two-pulse bridge converter has an average output voltage and power output of 500 V and 10 kW respectively. The SCRs used in the two-pulse bridge converter are now re-employed to form a single-phase two-pulse mid-point converter. This new controlled converter would give, respectively, an average output voltage and power output of

(*a*) 500 V, 10 kW (*b*) 250 V, 5 kW
(*c*) 250 V, 10 kW (*d*) 500 V, 5 kW.

**7.** In a single-phase full converter bridge, the average output voltage is given by

(*a*) $\frac{1}{\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi+\alpha} V_m \cos\theta \, d\,\theta$ (*b*) $\frac{1}{\pi}\int_{0}^{\alpha+\pi} V_m \cos\theta \cdot d\,\theta$

(*c*) $\frac{1}{\pi}\int_{\alpha-(\pi/2)}^{\alpha+(\pi/2)} V_m \cos\theta \cdot d\,\theta$ (*d*) $\frac{1}{\pi}\int_{(\pi/2)-1}^{(\pi/2)+\alpha} V_m \cos\theta \cdot d\,\theta$

**8.** In a single-phase semiconverter, the average output voltage is given by

(*a*) $\frac{1}{\pi}\int_{\alpha}^{\pi} V_m \cos\theta \cdot d\,\theta$ (*b*) $\frac{1}{\pi}\int_{(\pi/2)-\alpha}^{(\pi/2)+\alpha} V_m \cos\theta \cdot d\,\theta$

(*c*) $\frac{1}{\pi}\int_{\alpha-(\pi/2)}^{\pi/2} V_m \cos\theta \cdot d\,\theta$ (*d*) $\frac{1}{\pi}\int_{\alpha-(\pi/2)}^{\pi} V_m \cos\theta \cdot d\,\theta$

**9.** In a single-phase full converter, for continuous conduction, each pair of SCRs conduct for

(*a*) $\pi - \alpha$ (*b*) $\pi$
(*c*) $\alpha$ (*d*) $\pi + \alpha$.

**10.** In a single-phase full converter, for discontinuous load current and extinction angle $\beta > \pi$, each SCR conducts for
(*a*) $\alpha$ (*b*) $\beta - \alpha$
(*c*) $\beta$ (*d*) $\alpha + \beta$

**11.** In a single-phase semi-converter, for continuous conduction, each SCR conducts for
(*a*) $\alpha$ (*b*) $\pi$
(*c*) $\alpha + \pi$ (*d*) $\pi - \alpha$

**12.** In a single-phase semiconverter, for discontinuous conduction and extinction angle $\beta > \pi$, each SCR conducts for
(*a*) $\pi - \alpha$ (*b*) $\beta - \alpha$
(*c*) $\alpha$ (*d*) $\beta$.

**13.** In a single-phase semiconverter, for discontinuous conduction and extinction angle $\beta < \pi$, each SCR conducts for
(*a*) $\pi - \alpha$ (*b*) $\beta - \alpha$
(*c*) $\alpha$ (*d*) $\beta$

**14.** In a single-phase semiconverter, for continuous conduction, freewheeling diode conducts for
(*a*) $\alpha$ (*b*) $\pi - \alpha$
(*c*) $\pi$ (*d*) $\pi + \alpha$

**15.** In a single-phase semiconverter, with discontinuous conduction and extinction angle $\beta > \pi$, freewheeling diode conducts for
(*a*) $\alpha$ (*b*) $\beta - \pi$
(*c*) $\pi + \alpha$ (*d*) $\beta$.

**16.** In a single-phase semiconverter, with discontinuous conduction and extinction angle $\beta < \pi$, freewheeling diode conducts for
(*a*) $\alpha$ (*b*) $\pi - \beta$
(*c*) $\beta - \pi$ (*d*) zero degree.

**17.** In a single-phase full converter, if $\alpha$ and $\beta$ are firing and extinction angles respectively, then the load current is
(*a*) discontinuous if $(\beta - \alpha) < \pi$ (*b*) discontinuous if $(\beta - \alpha) > \pi$
(c) discontinuous if $(\beta - \alpha) = \pi$ (d) continuous if $(\beta - \alpha) < \pi$.

**18.** In a single-phase full converter with resistive load and for a firing angle $\alpha$,the load current is zero and non-zero, respectively, for
(*a*) $\alpha, \pi - \alpha$ (*b*) $\pi - \alpha, \alpha$
(*c*) $\alpha, \pi + \alpha$ (*d*) $\alpha, \pi$.

**19.** In a single-phase semiconverter with resistive load and for a firing angle $\alpha$, each SCR and freeweeling diode conduct, respectively, for
(*a*) $\alpha, 0°$ (*b*) $\pi - \alpha, \alpha$
(*c*) $\pi + \alpha, \alpha$ (*d*) $\pi - \alpha, 0°$.

**20.** In controlled rectifiers, the nature of load current, i.e. whether load current is continuous or discontinuous
(*a*) does not depend on type of load and firing angle delay
(*b*) depends both on the type of load and firing angle delay
(*c*) depends only on the type of load
(*d*) depends only on the firing angle delay.

**21.** In a single-phase full converter, if output voltage has peak and average values of 325 V and 133 V respectively, then the firing angle is

(*a*) 40° (*b*) 140°

(*c*) 50° (*d*) 130°.

**22.** In a single-phase semiconverter, if output voltage has peak and average values of 325 and 133 V respectively, the firing angle is

(*a*) 40° (*b*) 140°

(*c*) 73.40° (*d*) 80°.

**23.** Each diode of a 3-phase half-wave diode rectifier conducts for

(*a*) 60° (*b*) 120°

(*c*) 180° (*d*) 90°.

**24.** Each diode of a 3-phase, 6-pulse bridge diode rectifier conducts for

(*a*) 60° (*b*) 120°

(*c*) 180° (*d*) 90°.

**25.** In a 3-phase half-wave diode rectifier, if per phase input voltage is 200 V, then the average output voltage is

(*a*) 233.91 V (*b*) 116.95 V

(*c*) 202.56 V (*d*) 101.28 V.

**26.** In a 3-phase half-wave diode rectifier, the ratio of average output voltage to per-phase maximum ac voltage is

(*a*) 0.955 (*b*) 0.827

(*c*) 1.654 (*d*) 1.169.

**27.** For a 3-phase, six-pulse diode rectifier, the average output voltage in terms of maximum value of line voltage $V_m$ is

(*a*) $\frac{3\sqrt{2}}{\pi} V_m$ (*b*) $\frac{3\,V_m}{\pi}$

(*c*) $\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2\pi} V_m$ (*d*) $\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{\pi} V_m$.

**28.** In a 3-phase half-wave rectifier, dc output voltage is 230 V. The peak inverse voltage across each diode is

(*a*) 481.7 V (*b*) 460 V

(*c*) 345 V (*d*) 230 V.

**29.** In a 3-phase full-wave diode rectifier, the peak inverse voltage in terms of average output voltage is

(*a*) 1.571 (*b*) 0.955

(*c*) 1.047 (*d*) 2.094.

**30.** In a 3-phase half-wave diode rectifier, if $V_m$ is the maximum value of per phase voltage, then each diode is subjected to a peak inverse voltage of

(*a*) $V_m$ (*b*) $\sqrt{3}\,V_m$

(*c*) $2V_m$ (*d*) $3V_m$.

**31.** In a 3-phase full-wave diode rectifier, if $V_m$ is the maximum value of line voltage, then each diode is subjected to a peak inverse voltage of

(*a*) $V_m$ (*b*) $\sqrt{3}\,V_m$

(*c*) $2V_m$ (*d*) $3V_m$

**32.** In a 3-phase full-wave diode rectifier, if *V* is the per phase input voltage, then average output voltage is given by

(*a*) 0.955 V (*b*) 1.35 V
(*c*) 2.34 V (*d*) 3 V.

**33.** A converter which can operate in both 3-pulse and 6-pulse modes is a
(*a*) 1-phase full converter (*b*) 3-phase half-wave converter
(*c*) 3-phase semiconverter (*d*) 3-phase full converter.

**34.** In a 3-phase semi-converter, for firing angle less than or equal to 60°, each thyristor an diode conduct, respectively, for
(*a*) 60°, 60° (*b*) 90°, 30°
(*c*) 120°, 120° (*d*) 180°, 180°.

**35.** In a 3-phase semiconverter, for firing angle less than or equal to 60°, freewheeling diode conducts for
(*a*) 30° (*b*) 60°
(*c*) 90° (*d*) zero degree

**36.** In a 3-phase semiconverter, for a firing angle equal to 90° and for continuous conduction, each SCR and diode conduct, respectively, for
(*a*) 30°, 60° (*b*) 60°, 30°
(*c*) 60°, 60° (*d*) 30°, 30°.

**37.** In a 3-phase semiconverter, for a firing angle equal to 90° and for continuous conduction, freeweeling diode conducts for
(*a*) 30° (*b*) 60°
(*c*) 90° (*d*) zero degree.

**38.** In a 3-phase semiconverter, for firing angle equal to 120° and extinction angle equal to 110°, each SCR and diode conduct, respectively, for
(*a*) 30°, 60° (*b*) 60°, 60°
(*c*) 90°, 30° (*d*) 110°, 30°.

**39.** In a 3-phase semiconverter, for firing angle equal to 120° and extinction angle equal to 110°, freewheeling diode conducts for
(*a*) 10° (*b*) 30°
(*c*) 50° (*d*) 110°.

**40.** In a 3-phase semiconverter, for firing angle equal to 120° and extinction angle equal to 100°, none of the bridge elements conduct for
(*a*) 10° (*b*) 20°
(*c*) 30° (*d*) 60°.

**41.** A 3-phase semiconverter can work as
(*a*) converter for $\alpha = 0°$ to 180° (*b*) converter for $\alpha = 0°$ to 90°
(*c*) inverter for $\alpha = 90°$ to 180° (*d*) inverter for $\alpha = 0°$ to 90°.

**42.** In a 3-phase semiconverter, the three SCRs are triggered at an interval of
(*a*) 60° (*b*) 90°
(*c*) 120° (*d*) 180°.

**43.** In a 3-phase full converter, the six SCRs are fired at an interval of
(*a*) 30° (*b*) 60°
(*c*) 90° (*d*) 120°.

**44.** In a 3-phase full converter, three SCRs pertaining to one group are fired at an interval of
(*a*) 30° (*b*) 60°
(*c*) 90° (*d*) 120°.

**45.** For a single-phase phase-controlled rectifier, with a freewheeling diode across the load,

(*a*) the instantaneous output voltage $v_0$ is always positive

(*b*) $v_0$ may be positive or zero

(*c*) $v_0$ may be positive, zero or negative

(*d*) $v_0$ is always zero or negative.

**46.** The frequency of the ripple in the output voltage of a 3-phase semiconverter depends upon

(*a*) firing angle and load resistance

(*b*) firing angle and load inductance

(*c*) the load circuit parameters

(*d*) firing angle and the supply frequency.

**47.** In a single-phase full converter, if load current is $I$ and ripple free, than average thyristor current is

(*a*) $\frac{1}{2}I$ (*b*) $\frac{1}{3}I$

(*c*) $\frac{1}{4}I$ (*d*) $I$.

**48.** In a 3-phase full converter, if load current is $I$ and ripple free, then average thyristor current is

(*a*) $\frac{1}{2}I$ (*b*) $\frac{1}{3}I$

(*c*) $\frac{1}{4}I$ (*d*) $I$.

**49.** The effect of source inductance on the performance of single-phase and three-phase full converters is to

(*a*) reduce the ripples in the load current

(*b*) make discontinuous current as continuous

(*c*) reduce the output voltage

(*d*) increase the load voltage.

**50.** In a single-phase full converter, the number of SCRs conducting during overlap is

(*a*) 1 (*b*) 2

(*c*) 3 (*d*) 4.

**51.** In a single-phase full converter, the output voltage during overlap is equal to

(*a*) zero

(*b*) source voltage

(*c*) source voltage minus the inductance drop

(*d*) inductance drop.

**52.** In a 3-phase full converter, the output voltage during overlap is equal to

(*a*) zero

(*b*) source voltage

(*c*) source voltage minus the inductance drop

(*d*) average value of the conducting-phase voltages.

**53.** The total number of SCRs conducting simultaneously in 3-phase full converter with overlap considered has the sequence of

(*a*) 3, 3, 2, 2 (*b*) 3, 3, 3, 2

(*c*) 3, 2, 3, 2 (*d*) 2, 2, 2, 3.

**54.** A 3-phase full converter has an average output voltage of 200 V for zero degree firing angle and for resistive load. For a firing angle of 90°, the output voltage would be

(*a*) zero (*b*) 50 V

(*c*) 100 V (*d*) 26.8 V.

**55.** A four quadrant operation requires

(*a*) two full converters in series

(*b*) two full converters connected back to back

(*c*) two full converters connected in parallel

(*d*) two semiconverters connected back to back.

**56.** In a 3-phase full converter, the output voltage pulsates at a frequency equal to

(*a*) supply frequency, $f$ (*b*) $2f$

(*c*) $3f$ (*d*) $6f$.

**57.** In circulating-current type of dual converter, the nature of voltage across reactor is

(*a*) alternating (*b*) pulsating

(*c*) direct (*d*) triangular.

**58.** The peak inverse voltage in ac to dc converter systems is highest in

(*a*) single-phase full wave mid-point converter

(*b*) single-phase full converter

(*c*) 3-phase bridge converter

(*d*) 3-phase half-wave converter.

**59.** The three-phase ac to dc converter which requires neutral point connection is

(*a*) 3-phase semiconverter (*b*) 3-phase full converter

(*c*) 3-phase half-wave converter (*d*) 3-phase full converter with diodes.

**60.** This question has five subuestions. Amongst the four alternatives provided, one or more are correct. Write down all the correct answers unambiguously.

**60.1.** A 3-phase full converter can function as

(*a*) converter for $\alpha = 0°$ to $180°$

(*b*) converter for $\alpha = 0°$ to $90°$

(*c*) inverter for $\alpha = 90°$ to $180°$

(*d*) inverter for $\alpha = 0°$ to $90°$.

**60.2.** In a 3-phase full converter, the number of SCRs working during overlap is

(*a*) 1 from positive group, 1 from negative group

(*b*) two from positive group, 1 from negative group

(*c*) 1 from positive group, 2 from negative group

(*d*) 2 from positive group, 2 from negative group.

**60.3.** In a 3-phase semiconverter, frequency of the ripple in the output voltage may be

(*a*) 3 times the supply frequency $f$ for firing angle $\alpha < 60°$

(*b*) $3f$ for $\alpha > 60°$

(*c*) $6f$ for $\alpha < 60°$

(*d*) $6f$ for $\alpha > 60°$.

**60.4.** In a dual converter, converters 1 and 2 work as under :

(*a*) 1 as rectifier, 2 as inverter

(*b*) 1 as inverter, 2 as rectifier

(*c*) both as rectifiers

(*d*) both as inverters.

**60.5.** For the same ac voltage and load impedance which of the following statements about rectifiers are correct ?

(*a*) The average load current in a full-wave rectifier is twice that in a half wave rectifier

(*b*) The average load current in a full-wave rectifier is $\pi$ times that in a half-wave rectifier

(*c*) Half-wave rectifier will have bigger sized transformer compared to full-wave rectifier

(*d*) Half-wave rectifier will have a smaller sized transformer compared to a full-wave rectifier.

**61.** This question contains four sub-questions each having two columns. Match every item on the left side with the most appropriate item on the right side. Give your answers as shown in the example below :

**Example.** (*A*)–(*P*) (*B*)–(*Q*)
(*C*)–(*R*) (*D*)–(*S*).

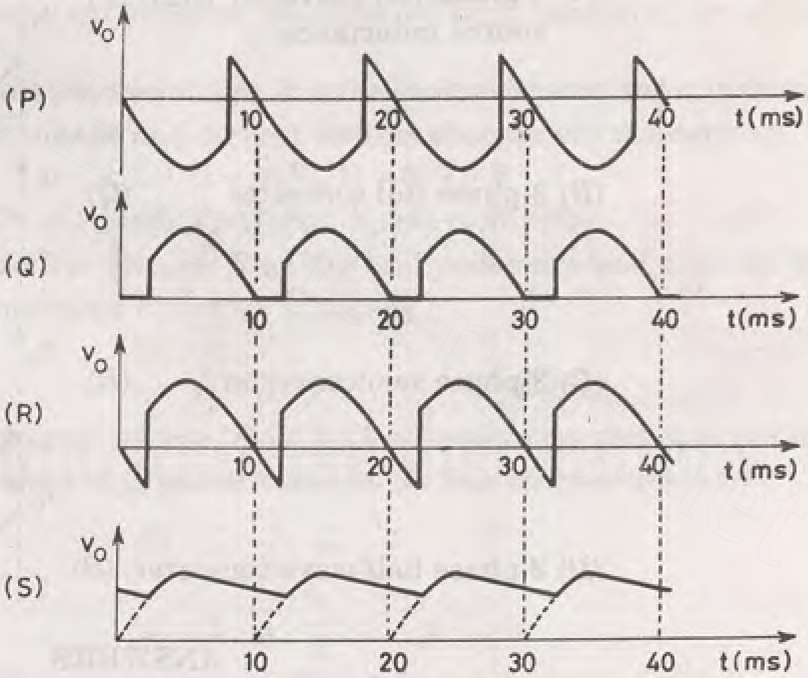
**61.1.** Single-phase full converter with 50 Hz supply — Output voltage waveforms

(*A*) R-C (parallel) load

(*B*) Continuous conduction mode

(*C*) Resistance load

(*D*) Inverter mode.



**61.2.** *Controlled rectifiers* — *Output voltage expressions*

| *Controlled rectifiers* | *Output voltage expressions* |
|---|---|
| (*A*) 1-phase full converter | (*P*) $\frac{3V_m}{2\pi}(1+\cos\alpha)$ |
| (*B*) 1-phase semiconverter | (*Q*) $\frac{2V_m}{\pi}\cos\alpha$ |
| (*C*) 3-phase half-wave converter | (*R*) $\frac{V_m}{\pi}(1+\cos\alpha)$ |
| (*D*) 3-phase semiconverter | (*S*) $\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2\pi}V_m\cos\alpha$ |

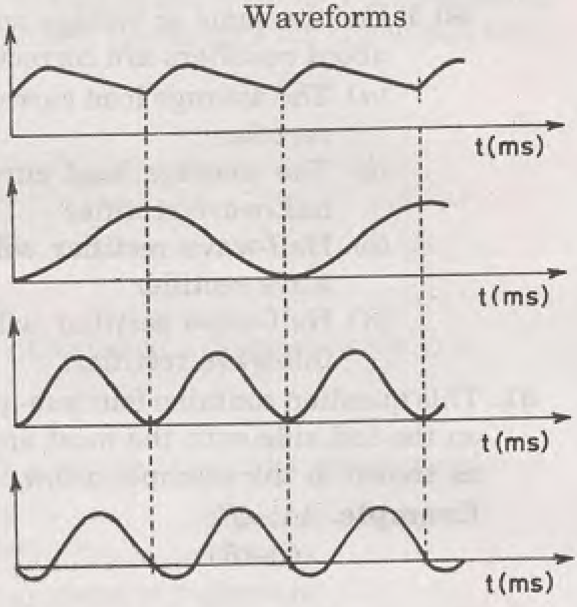
**61.3.** 50-Hz system measurements : Waveforms

(*A*) Voltage across an *R*–*C* (parallel) load connected through a full-wave bridge (*P*)

(*B*) Instantaneous power consumed by a resistor. (*Q*)

(*C*) Output voltage of a positive clamped circuit. (*R*)

(*D*) Instantaneous power consumed by an *R*–*L* circuit. (*S*)



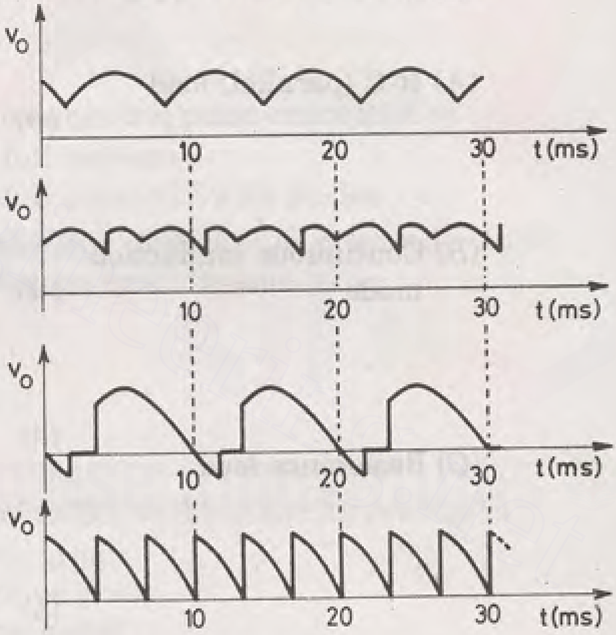
**61.4.** Controlled rectifiers with 50 Hz supply Output voltage waveforms

(*A*) 1-phase full converter with source inductance (*P*)

(*B*) 3-phase full converter (*Q*)

(*C*) 3-phase semiconverter (*R*)

(*D*) 3-phase half-wave converter. (*S*)



## ANSWERS

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1.** (*b*) | **2.** (*a*) | **3.** (*c*) | **4.** (*a*) | **5.** (*d*) | **6.** (*b*) |
| **7.** (*c*) | **8.** (*c*) | **9.** (*b*) | **10.** (*b*) | **11.** (*d*) | **12.** (*a*) |
| **13.** (*b*) | **14.** (*a*) | **15.** (*b*) | **16.** (*d*) | **17.** (*a*) | **18.** (*a*) |
| **19.** (*d*) | **20.** (*b*) | **21.** (*c*) | **22.** (*c*) | **23.** (*b*) | **24.** (*b*) |
| **25.** (*a*) | **26.** (*b*) | **27.** (*b*) | **28.** (*a*) | **29.** (*c*) | **30.** (*b*) |
| **31.** (*a*) | **32.** (*c*) | **33.** (*c*) | **34.** (*c*) | **35.** (*d*) | **36.** (*c*) |
| **37.** (*a*) | **38.** (*b*) | **39.** (*c*) | **40.** (*b*) | **41.** (*a*) | **42.** (*c*) |
| **43.** (*b*) | **44.** (*d*) | **45.** (*b*) | **46.** (*d*) | **47.** (*a*) | **48.** (*b*) |
| **49.** (*c*) | **50.** (*d*) | **51.** (*a*) | **52.** (*d*) | **53.** (*c*) | **54.** (*d*) |
| **55.** (*b*) | **56.** (*d*) | **57.** (*a*) | **58.** (*a*) | **59.** (*c*) | |

**60.1.** (*b*), (*c*) **60.2.** (*b*), (*c*) **60.3.** (*b*), (*c*) **60.4.** (*a*), (*b*) **60.5.** (*a*), (*d*)

**61.1.** (A)-(S) ; (B)-(R) ; (C)-(Q) ; (D)-(P) **61.2.** (A)-(Q) ; (B)-(R) ; (C)-(S) ; (D)-(P)

**61.3.** (A)-(P) ; (B)-(R) ; (C)-(Q) ; (D)-(S) **61.4.** (A)-(R) ; (B)-(S) ; (C)-(Q) ; (D)-(P).

## CHOPPERS

**1.** In dc choppers, if $T_{on}$ is the on-period and $f$ is the chopping frequency, then output voltage in terms of input voltage $V_s$ is given by

(*a*) $V_s \cdot T_{on}/f$ (*b*) $V_s \cdot f/T_{on}$

(*c*) $V_s/f \cdot T_{on}$ (*d*) $V_s \cdot f \cdot T_{on}$

**2.** In dc choppers, the waveforms for input and output voltages are respectively

(*a*) discontinuous, continuous (*b*) both continuous

(*c*) both discontinuous (*d*) continuous, discontinuous.

**3.** In PWM method of controlling the average output voltage in a chopper, the on-time is .....(varied/kept constant) but the chopping frequency is....(varied/kept constant).

**4.** In FM method of controlling the average output voltage in a chopper, chopping period is....(varied/kept constant) but on-time is....(varied/kept constant) or off-time is....(varied/kept constant).

**5.** For type-*A* chopper, $V_s$ is the source voltage, $R$ is the load resistance and $\alpha$ is the duty cycle. The average output voltage and current for this chopper are respectively

(*a*) $\alpha V_s, \alpha \cdot (V_s/R)$ (*b*) $(1-\alpha) V_s, (1-\alpha) V_s/R$

(*c*) $V_s/\alpha, V_s/\alpha R$ (*d*) $V_s/(1-\alpha), V_s/(1-\alpha)R$.

**6.** A chopper has $V_s$ as the source voltage, $R$ as the load resistance and $\alpha$ as the duty cycle. For this chopper, rms value of output voltage is

(*a*) $\alpha V_s$ (*b*) $\sqrt{\alpha} \cdot V_s$

(*c*) $V_s/\sqrt{\alpha}$ (*d*) $\sqrt{1-\alpha} \cdot V_s$.

**7.** For a chopper, $V_s$ is the source voltage, $R$ is the load resistance and $\alpha$ is the duty cycle. Rms and average values of thyristor currents for this chopper are

(*a*) $\alpha \cdot \frac{V_s}{R}, \sqrt{\alpha} \cdot \frac{V_s}{R}$ (*b*) $\sqrt{\alpha} \cdot \frac{V_s}{R}, \sqrt{\alpha} \cdot \frac{V_s}{R}$

(*c*) $\sqrt{\alpha}\, \frac{V_s}{R}, \alpha \frac{V_s}{R}$ (*d*) $\sqrt{1-\alpha} \cdot \frac{V_s}{R}, (1-\alpha) V_s/R$.

**8.** In dc choppers, per unit ripple is maximum when duty cycle $\alpha$ is

(*a*) 0.2 (*b*) 0.5

(*c*) 0.7 (*d*) 0.9.

**9.** In the circuit shown in Fig. A-28, $L = 5\ \mu$H and $C = 20\ \mu$F. $C$ is initially charged to 200 V. After the switch $S$ is closed at $t = 0$, the maximum value of current and the time at which it reaches this value are, respectively,

(*a*) 400 A, 15.707 μs (*b*) 50 A, 30 μs

(*c*) 100 A, 62.828 μs (*d*) 400 A, 31.414 μs.

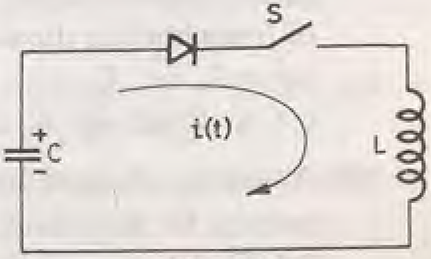


Fig. A-28

**10.** A voltage commutated chopper has the following parameters :

$V_s = 200$ V, Load circuit parameter : 1 Ω, 2 mH, 50 V
Commutation circuit parameters, $L = 25$ μH, $C = 50$ μF
$T_{on} = 500$ μs, $T = 2000$ μs

For a constant load current of 100 A, the effective on period and peak current through the main thyristor are respectively

(*a*) 1000 μs, 200 A (*b*) 700 μs, 382.8 A
(*c*) 700 μs, 282.8 A (*d*) 1000 μs, 382.8 A.

**11.** For the voltage-commutated chopper of Prob. 10, the turn-off times for main and auxiliary thyristors are, respectively,

(*a*) 120 μs, 60 μs (*b*) 100 μs, 0.5 μs
(*c*) 120 μs, 55 μs (*d*) 100 μs, 55.54 μs.

**12.** In the current-commutated chopper shown in Fig. A-29, thyristor T1 is conducting a load current. When thyristor TA is turned off with capacitor polarity as shown the capacitor current $i_c$ would flow through....(thyristor T1/diode D1), because..........

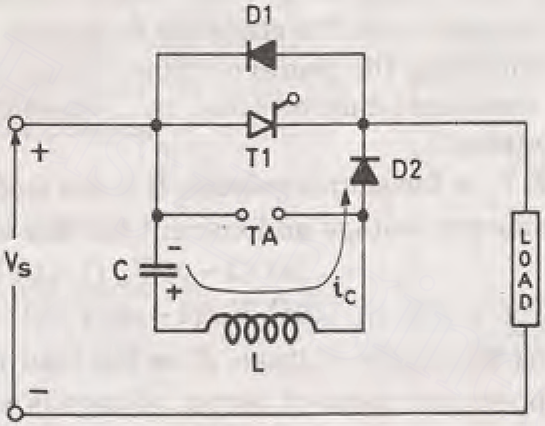


Fig. A-29

**13.** A load commutated chopper, fed from 200 V dc source, has a constant load current of 50 A. For a duty cycle of 0.4 and a chopping frequency of 2 kHz, the value of commutating capacitor and the turn-off time for one thyristor pair are respectively

(*a*) 25 μF, 50 μs (*b*) 50 μF, 50 μs
(*c*) 25 μF, 25 μs (*d*) 50 μF, 25 μs.

**14.** A dc battery is charged from a constant dc source of 200 V through a chopper. The dc battery is to be charged from its internal emf of 90 to 120 V. The battery has internal resistance of 1 Ω. For a constant charging current of 10 A, the range of duty cycle is......to......

**15.** For type-A chopper ; $V_s$, $R$, $I_0$ and α are respectively the dc source voltage, load resistance, constant load current and duty cycle. For this chopper, average and rms values of freewheeling diode currents are

(*a*) $\alpha I_0, \sqrt{\alpha} \cdot I_0$ (*b*) $(1-\alpha) I_0, \sqrt{1-\alpha} \cdot I_0$
(*c*) $\alpha \cdot V_s/R, \sqrt{\alpha} \cdot V_s/R$ (*d*) $(1-\alpha) I_0, \sqrt{\alpha} \cdot I_0$.

**16.** A step-up chopper has $V_s$ as the source voltage and α as the duty cycle. The output voltage for this chopper is given by

(*a*) $V_s(1+\alpha)$ (*b*) $V_s/(1-\alpha)$
(*c*) $V_s(1-\alpha)$ (*d*) $V_s/(1+\alpha)$.

**17.** A dc chopper is fed from 100 V dc. Its load voltage consists of rectangular pulses of duration 1 msec in an overall cycle time of 3 msec. The average output voltage and ripple factor for this chopper are respectively

(*a*) 25 V, 1 (*b*) 50 V, 1 (*c*) 33.33 V, $\sqrt{2}$ (*d*) 33.33 V, 1

**18.** When a series *LC* circuit is connected to a dc supply of *V* volts through a thyristor, then the peak current through thyristor is

(*a*) $V \cdot \sqrt{LC}$ (*b*) $V/\sqrt{CL}$

(*c*) $V \cdot \sqrt{C/L}$ (*d*) $V \cdot \sqrt{L/C}$

**19.** For the arrangement shown in Fig. A-30, the circuit is initially in steady state with thyristor *T* off. After thyristor *T* is turned on, the peak thyristor current would be

(*a*) 2 A (*b*) 22 A

(*c*) 40 A (*d*) 42 A.

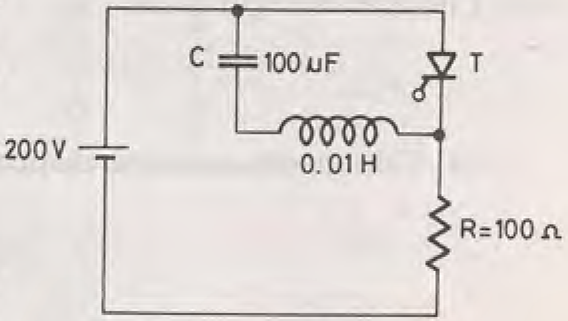


Fig. A-30

**20.** In type-A chopper, source voltage is 100 V dc, on-period = 100 μs, off-period = 150 μs and load RLE consists of $R = 2\ \Omega$, $L = 5$ mH, $E = 10$ V. For continuous conduction, average output voltage and average output current for this chopper are respectively:

(*a*) 40 V, 15 A (*b*) 66.66 V, 28.33 A

(*c*) 60 V, 25 A (*d*) 40 V, 20 A.

**21.** Refer to the circuit in Fig. A-31. The maximum current in the main SCR *M* can be

(*a*) 200 A (*b*) 170.7 A

(*c*) 141.4 A (*d*) 70.7 A.

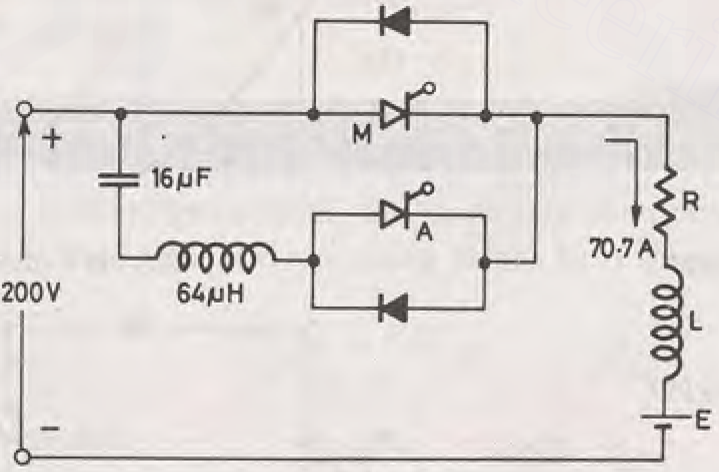


Fig. A-31

**22.** Refer to the circuit in Fig. A-31. The maximum turn-off time of the main SCR *M* to ensure its proper commutation, in μs, is

(*a*) 2π (*b*) 4π (*c*) 6π (*d*) 8π

**23.** This question has two subquestions. Amongst the four alternatives provided, one or more are correct. Write down all the correct answers unambiguously.

**23.1.** In dc choppers, if *T* is the chopping period, then output voltage can be controlled by PWM by varying

(*a*) *T* keeping $T_{on}$ constant (*b*) $T_{on}$ keeping *T* constant

(*c*) $T_{off}$ keeping *T* constant (*d*) *T* keeping $T_{off}$ constant.

**23.2.** In dc choppers, for chopping period $T$, the output voltage can be controlled by FM by varying

(a) $T$ keeping $T_{on}$ constant (b) $T$ keeping $T_{off}$ constant

(c) $T_{on}$ keeping $T$ constant (d) $T_{off}$ keeping $T$ constant.

**24.** This question contains two subquestions, each having two columns. Match every item on the left side with the most appropriate item on the right side. Give your answers as shown in the example below :

**Example.** (A)–(P) ; (B)–(Q) ; (C)–(R) ; (D)–(S).

**24.1.** Chopper configurations Output Voltage Waveforms

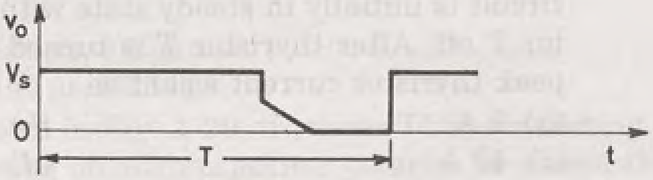
(A) Voltage-commutated chopper

(B) Load-commutated chopper

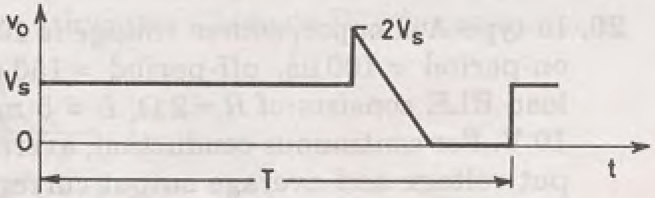
(C) Current-commutated chopper

(D) Ideal dc chopper

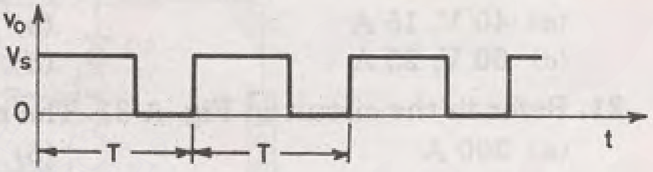
(P)



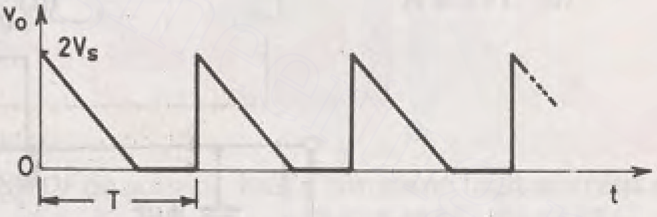
(Q)



(R)



(S)

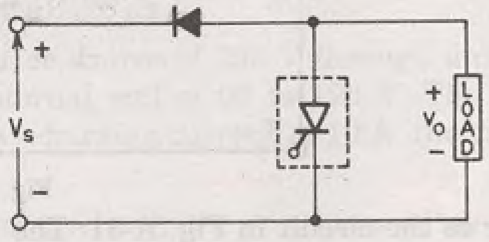


**24.2.** Types of choppers Circuit Configurations

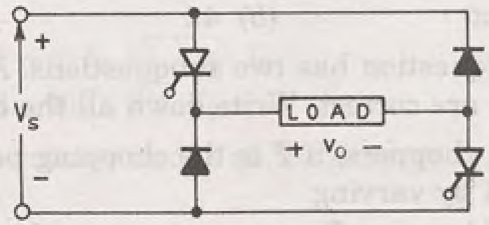
(A) Type-$A$ chopper

(B) Type-$B$ chopper

(P)

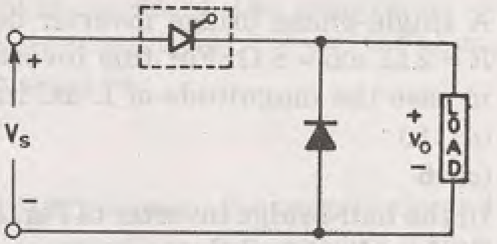


(Q)



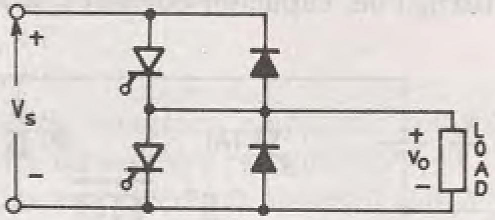
(*C*) Type-*C* chopper

(R)



(*D*) Type-*D* chopper

(S)



## ANSWERS

**1.** (*d*) **2.** (*d*) **3.** varied, kept constant

**4.** varied, kept constant, kept constant **5.** (*a*) **6.** (*b*) **7.** (*c*)

**8.** (*b*) **9.** (*a*) **10.** (*b*) **11.** (*d*)

**12.** Thyristor T1, diode D1 is reverse biased by a voltage drop of about 1.5 V across conducting thyristor T1.

**13.** (*a*) **14.** 0.5 to 0.65 **15.** (*b*) **16.** (*b*) **17.** (*c*)

**18.** (*c*) **19.** (*b*) **20.** (*a*) **21.** (*b*) **22.** (*d*) **23.1.** (*b*), (*c*)

**23.2.** (*a*), (*b*) **24.1.** (*A*)–(*Q*) ; (*B*)–(*S*) ; (*C*)–(*P*) ; (*D*)–(*R*)

**24.2.** (*A*)–(*R*) ; (*B*)–(*P*) ; (*C*)–(*S*) ; (*D*)–(*Q*).

## INVERTERS

**1.** If, for a single-phase half-bridge inverter, the amplitude of output voltage is $V_s$ and the output power is $P$, then their corresponding values for a single-phase full-bridge inverter are

(*a*) $V_s, P$ (*b*) $V_s/2, P/2$

(*c*) $2\,V_s, 2P$ (*d*) $2\,V_s, P$.

**2.** In voltage source inverters

(*a*) load voltage waveform $v_0$ depends on load impedance $Z$, whereas load current waveform $i_0$ does not depend on $Z$

(*b*) Both $v_0$ and $i_0$ depend on $Z$

(*c*) $v_0$ does not depend on $Z$ whereas $i_0$ depends on $Z$

(*d*) both $v_0$ and $i_0$ do not depend upon Z.

**3.** A single-phase full bridge inverter can operate in load-commutation mode in case load consists of

(*a*) *RL* (*b*) *RLC* underdamped

(*c*) *RLC* overdamped (*d*) *RLC* critically damped.

4. A single-phase bridge inverter delivers power to a series connected $RLC$ load with $R = 2\ \Omega$, $\omega L = 8\ \Omega$. For this inverter-load combination, load commutation is possible in case the magnitude of $1/\omega C$ in ohms is

(*a*) 10 (*b*) 8
(*c*) 6 (*d*) zero.

5. In the half-bridge inverter of Fig. A-32, main thyristor T1 is conducting a load current. With polarity of the capacitor voltage as shown, when auxiliary thyristor TA1 is turned on, capacitor current $i_c$ would flow through (thyristor T1/diode D1) because....

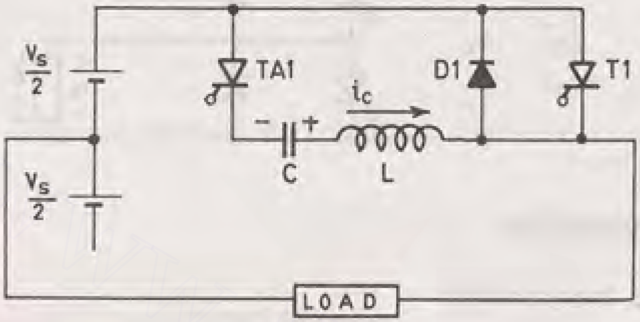


Fig. A-32

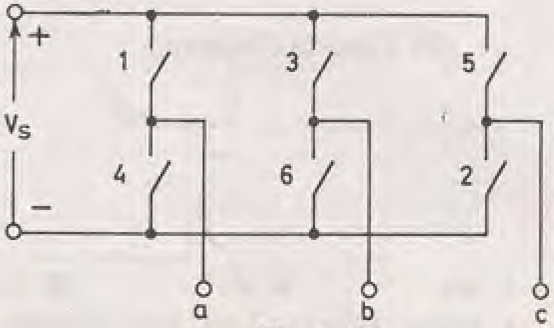


Fig. A-33

6. For a 3-phase bridge inverter in 180° conduction mode, Fig. A-33, the sequence of SCR conduction in the first two steps, beginning with the initiation of thyristor 1, is

(*a*) 6, 1, 2 and 2, 3, 1 (*b*) 2, 3, 1 and 3, 4, 5
(*c*) 3, 4, 5, and 5, 6, 1 (*d*) 5, 6, 1 and 6, 1, 2.

7. For a 3-phase bridge inverter in 120° conduction mode, Fig. A-33, the sequence of SCR conduction in the first two steps, beginning with the initiation of thyristor 1, is

(*a*) 6, 1 and 1, 2 (*b*) 1, 2 and 2, 3
(*c*) 1, 6 and 5, 6 (*d*) 1, 3 and 3, 4.

8. In single-pulse modulation of PWM inverters, third harmonic can be eliminated if pulse width is equal to

(*a*) 30° (*b*) 60°
(*c*) 120° (*d*) 150°

9. In single-pulse modulation of PWM inverters, fifth harmonic can be eliminated if pulse width is equal to

(*a*) 30° (*b*) 72°
(*c*) 36° (*d*) 108°.

10. In single-pulse modulation of PWM inverters, the pulse width is 120°. For an input voltage of 220 V dc, the r.m.s. value of output voltage is

(*a*) 179.63 V (*b*) 254.04 V
(*c*) 127.02 V (*d*) 185.04 V.

11. In single-pulse modulation used in PWM inverters, $V_s$ is the input dc voltage. For eliminating third harmonic, the magnitude of rms value of fundamental component of output voltage and pulse width are respectively

(*a*) $\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\pi} V_s$, 120° (*b*) $\frac{4\ V_s}{\pi}$, 60°

(*c*) $\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\pi} V_s$, 60° (*d*) $\frac{4\ V_s}{\pi}$, 120°.

**12.** In multiple-pulse modulation used in PWM inverters, the amplitudes of reference square wave and triangular carrier wave are respectively 1 V and 2 V. For generating 5 pulses per half cycle, the pulse width should be
(*a*) 36° (*b*) 24°
(*c*) 18° (*d*) 12°.

**13.** In multiple-pulse modulation used in PWM inverters, the amplitude and frequency for triangular carrier and square reference signals are respectively 4 V, 6 kHz and 1 V, 1 kHz. The number of pulses per half cycle and pulse width are respectively
(*a*) 6, 90° (*b*) 3, 45°
(*c*) 4, 60° (*d*) 3, 40°.

**14.** In sinusoidal-pulse modulation used in PWM inverters, amplitude and frequency for triangular carrier and sinusoidal reference signals are respectively 5 V, 1 kHz and 1 V, 50 Hz. If zeros of the triangular carrier and reference sinusoid coincide, then the modulation index and order of significant harmonics are respectively
(*a*) 0.2, 9 and 11 (*b*) 0.4, 9 and 11
(*c*) 0.2, 17 and 19 (*d*) 0.2, 19 and 21.

**15.** Which of the following statement/statements is/are correct in connection with inverters:
(*a*) VSI and CSI both require feedback diodes
(*b*) Only CSI requires feedback diodes
(*c*) GTOs can be used in CSI
(*d*) Only VSI requires feedback diodes.

**16.** In a CSI, if frequency of output voltage is *f* Hz, then frequency of voltage input to CSI is
(*a*) *f* (*b*) 2*f*
(*c*) *f*/2 (*d*) 3*f*.

**17.** In sinusoidal-pulse modulation used in PWM inverters, amplitude and frequency of triangular carrier and sinusoidal reference signals are respectively 5 V, 1 kHz and 1 V, 50 Hz. If peak of the triangular carrier coincides with the zero of the reference sinusoid, then the modulation index and order of significant harmonics are
(*a*) 0.2, 9 and 11 (*b*) 0.4, 9 and 11
(*c*) 0.2, 17 and 19 (*d*) 0.2, 19 and 21.

**18.** In sinusoidal PWM, there are '*m*' cycles of the triangular carrier wave in the half cycle of reference sinusoidal signal. If zero of the reference sinusoid coincides with zero/peak of the triangular carrier wave, then number of pulses generated in each half cycle are respectively
(*a*) $(m-1)/m$ (*b*) $(m-1)/(m-1)$
(*c*) $m/m$ (*d*) $m/(m-1)$.

**19.** In an inverter with fundamental output frequency of 50 Hz, if third harmonic is eliminated, then frequencies of other components in the output voltage wave, in Hz, would be
(*a*) 250, 350, 450, high frequencies
(*b*) 50, 250, 350, 450
(*c*) 50, 250, 350, 550
(*d*) 50, 100, 200, 250.

**20.** A single-phase CSI has capacitor *C* as the load. For a constant source current, the voltage across the capacitor is

(*a*) square wave (*b*) triangular wave
(*c*) step function (*d*) pulsed wave.

**21.** A single-phase full bridge VSI has inductor $L$ as the load. For a constant source voltage, the current through the inductor is
(*a*) square wave (*b*) triangular wave
(*c*) sine wave (*d*) pulsed wave.

## ANSWERS

**1.** (*c*) **2.** (*c*) **3.** (*b*) **4.** (*a*)
**5.** thyristor T1, diode D1 is reverse biased by the voltage drop across T1
**6.** (*d*) **7.** (*a*) **8.** (*c*) **9.** (*b*) **10.** (*a*) **11.** (*a*)
**12.** (*c*) **13.** (*b*) **14.** (*c*) **15.** (*d*) **16.** (*b*) **17.** (*d*)
**18.** (*a*) **19.** (*c*) **20.** (*b*) **21.** (*b*)

## SINGLE-PHASE VOLTAGE CONTROLLERS

**1.** A single-phase voltage controller feeds an induction motor (A) and a heater (B)
(*a*) In both the loads, fundamental and harmonics are useful
(*b*) In *A* only fundamental and in *B* only harmonics are useful
(*c*) In *A* only fundamental and in *B* harmonics as well as fundamental are useful
(*d*) In *A* only harmonics and in *B* only fundamental are useful.

**2.** A load resistance of 10 Ω is fed through a 1-phase voltage controller from a voltage source of 200 sin 314 $t$. For a firing angle delay of 90°, the power delivered to load in kW, is
(*a*) 0.5 (*b*) 0.75
(*c*) 1 (*d*) 2.

**3.** A single-phase voltage controller is employed for controlling the power flow from 260 V, 50 Hz source into a load consisting of $R = 5\ \Omega$ and $\omega L = 12\ \Omega$. The value of maximum rms load current and the firing angle are respectively
(*a*) 20 A, 0° (*b*) $\frac{260}{10.91}$ A, 0°
(*c*) 20 A, 90° (*d*) $\frac{260}{10.91}$ A, 90°.

**4.** A load, consisting of $R = 10\ \Omega$ and $\omega L = 10\ \Omega$, is being fed from 230 V, 50 Hz source through a 1-phase voltage controller. For a firing angle delay of 30°, the rms value of load current would be
(*a*) 23 A (*b*) $\frac{23}{\sqrt{2}}$ A
(*c*) $> \frac{23}{\sqrt{2}}$ A (*d*) $< \frac{23}{\sqrt{2}}$ A.

**5.** In a single-phase voltage controller with $RL$ load, ac output power can be controlled if
(*a*) firing angle $\alpha > \phi$ (load phase angle) and conduction angle $\gamma = \pi$
(*b*) $\alpha > \phi$ and $\gamma < \pi$
(*c*) $\alpha < \phi$ and $\gamma = \pi$
(*d*) $\alpha < \phi$ and $\gamma > \pi$.

**6.** A single-phase voltage controller feeds power to a resistance of 10 Ω. The source voltage is 200 V rms. For a firing angle of 90°, the rms value of thyristor current in amperes is

(*a*) 20 (*b*) 15
(*c*) 10 (*d*) 5.

**7.** A single-phase voltage controller is connected to a load of resistance 10 Ω and a supply of 200 sin 314*t* volts. For a firing angle of 90°, the average thyristor current in amperes is

(*a*) 10 (*b*) $10/\pi$
(*c*) $5\sqrt{2}/\pi$ (*d*) $5\sqrt{2}$.

**8.** A single-phase voltage controller, using two SCRs in antiparallel, is found to be operating as a controlled rectifier. This is because

(*a*) load is *R* and pulse gating is used
(*b*) load is *R* and high-frequency carrier gating is used
(*c*) load is *RL* and pulse gating is used
(*d*) load is *RL* and continuous gating is used.

**9.** A single-phase ac voltage controller (or regulator) fed from 50 Hz system supplies a load having resistance and inductance of 2.0 Ω and 6.36 mH respectively. The control range of firing angle for this regulator is

(*a*) $0° < \alpha < 180°$ (*b*) $45° < \alpha < 180°$
(*c*) $90° < \alpha < 180°$ (*d*) $0° < \alpha < 45°$.

**10.** For a single-phase voltage controller using two thyristors in antiparallel and with load *R*, draw the output voltage waveform and the voltage variation across each SCR for a firing angle of about 30°. Voltage variation across each SCR should also contain thyristor voltage drop in Fig. A-34.

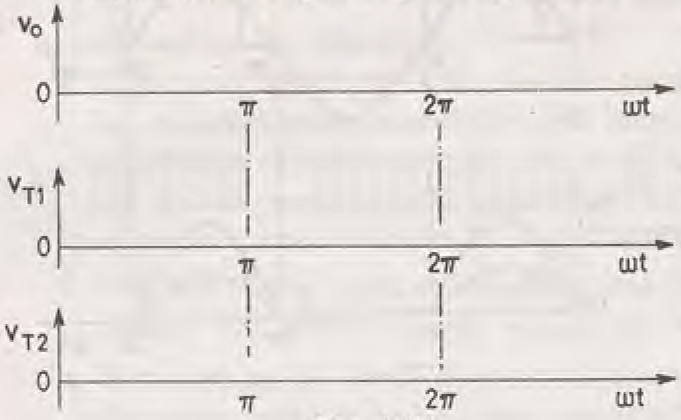


Fig. A-34

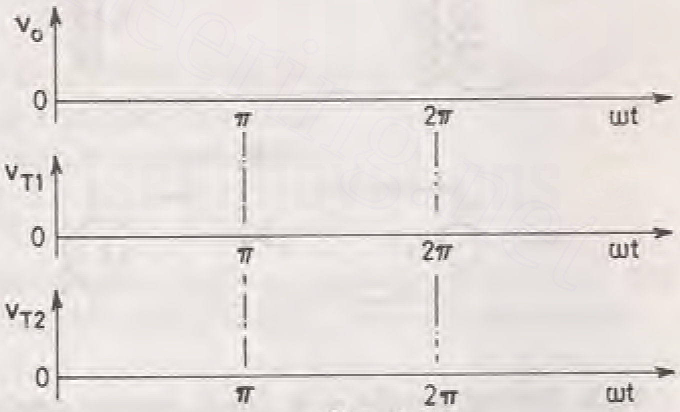


Fig. A-35

**11.** For a single-phase voltage controller using two thyristors in antiparallel and with *RL* load, draw in Fig. A-35 the output voltage waveform and the voltage variation across each SCR for a firing angle of about 30° which is greater than the load phase angle. Voltage variation across each SCR should also contain thyristor voltage drop in Fig. A-35.

**12.** This question has two subquestions. Amongst the four alternatives provided, one or more are correct. Write down all the correct answers unambiguously.

**12.1.** In a single-phase voltage controller with *RL* load, when

(*a*) firing angle $\alpha < \phi$ (load phase angle), load voltage $v_0$ is sinusoidal
(*b*) $\alpha < \phi$, $v_0$ is non-sinusoidal

(*c*) $\alpha > \phi$, $v_0$ is non-sinusoidal

(*d*) $\alpha > \phi$, $v_0$ is sinusoidal.

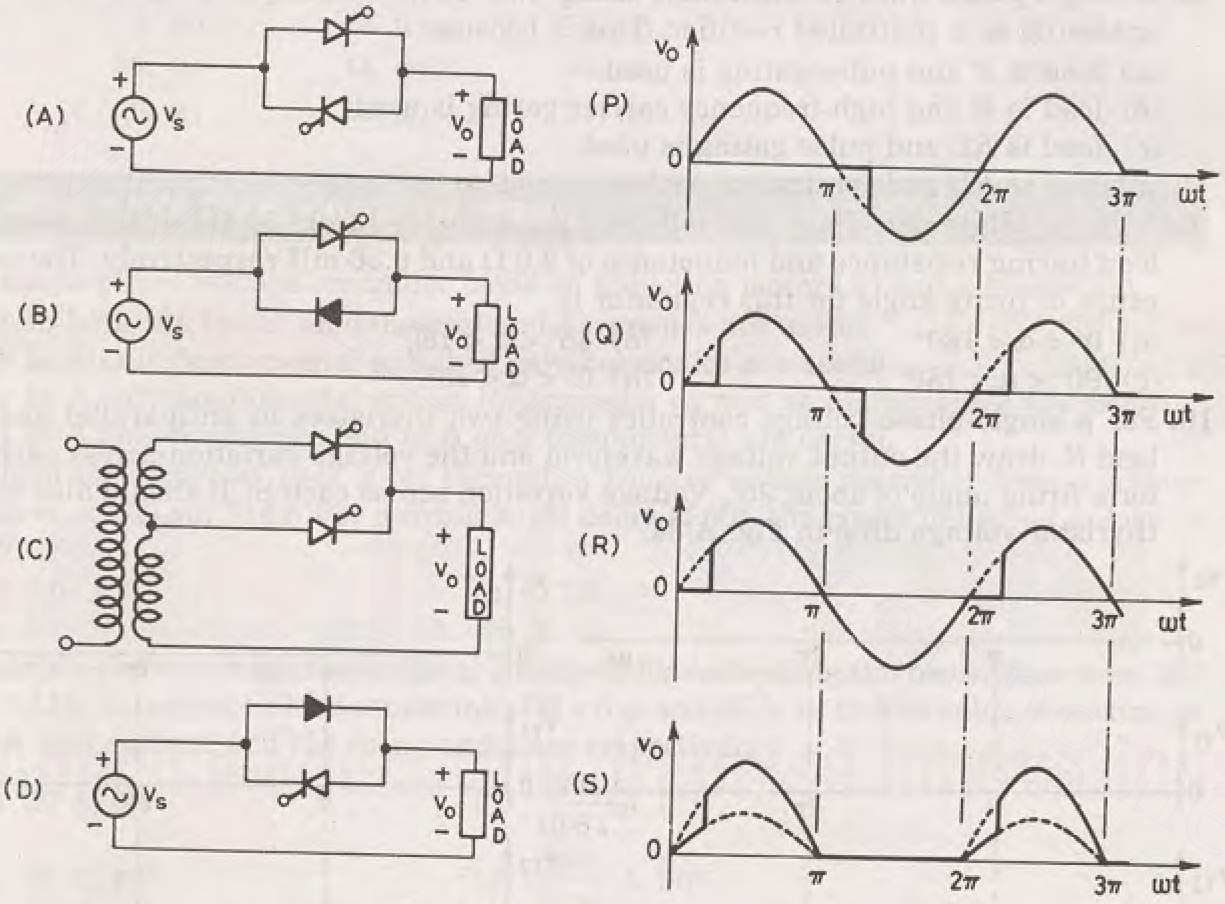
**12.2.** In a single-phase voltage controller with *RL* load, $\alpha$ is the firing angle, $\phi$ is the load phase angle and $\beta$ is the extinction angle. For this voltage controller, output power can be controlled if $\alpha > \phi$ and

(*a*) $(\beta - \alpha) = \pi$ (*b*) $(\beta - \alpha) < \pi$

(*c*) $\beta > \pi$ (*d*) $\beta < \pi$.

**13.** This question contains two subquestions, each having two columns. Match every item on the left side with the most appropriate item on the right side.

**13.1.** Power circuit diagrams Output voltage waveforms

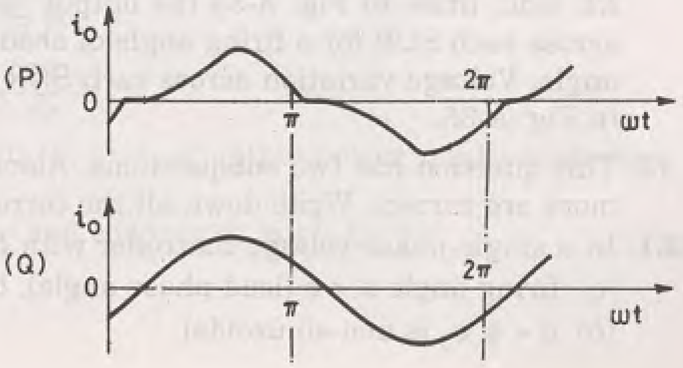


**13.2.** Firing angle = $\alpha$, load phase angle = $\phi$. Nature of load on single-phase voltage controllers

Load Current Waveforms

(*A*) *R* load

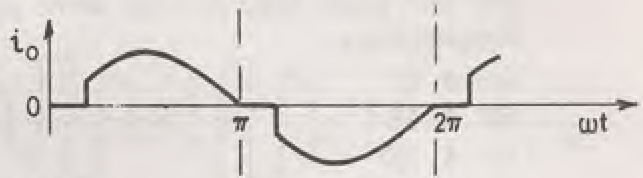
(*B*) *RL* load, $\alpha > \phi$



Load Current Waveforms

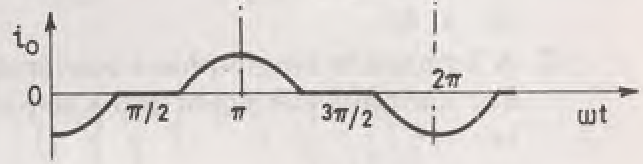
(*C*) *RL* load, $\alpha < \phi$

(R)



(*D*) *L* load, $\alpha > \phi$

(S)



## ANSWERS

**1.** (*c*) **2.** (*c*) **3.** (*a*) **4.** (*b*) **5.** (*b*) **6.** (*c*)
**7.** (*b*) **8.** (*c*) **9.** (*b*) **10.** See the book
**11.** See the book **12.1.** (*a*), (*c*) **12.2.** (*b*), (*c*)
**13.1.** (*A*)–(*Q*) ; (*B*)–(*R*) ; (*C*)–(*S*) ; (*D*)–(*P*) **13.2.** (*A*)–(*R*) ; (*B*)–(*P*) ; (*C*)–(*Q*) ; (*D*)–(*S*).

## CYCLOCONVERTERS

**1.** A cycloconverter is a
(*a*) frequency changer ($f_c$) from higher to lower frequency with one-state conversion
(*b*) $f_c$ from higher to lower frequency with two-stage conversion
(*c*) $f_c$ from lower to high frequency with one-state conversion
(*d*) either (*a*) or (c).

**2.** The cycloconverters (CCs) require natural or forced commutation as under :
(*a*) natural commutation in both step-up and step-down CCs
(*b*) forced commutation in both step-up and step-down CCs
(*c*) forced commutation in step-up CCs
(*d*) forced commutation in step-down CCs.

**3.** For converting 3-phase supply at one frequency to single-phase supply at a lower frequency, the basic principle is to....(vary/keep) the firing angle..... (constant/gradually).

**4.** Three-phase to three-phase cycloconverters employing 18 SCRs and 36 SCRs have the same voltage and current ratings for their component thyristors. The ratio of VA rating of 36-SCR device to that of 18-SCR device is
(*a*) $\frac{1}{2}$
(*b*) 1
(*c*) 2
(*d*) 4.

**5.** Three-phase to 3-phase cycloconverters employing 18 SCRs and 36 SCRs have the same voltage and current ratings for their component thyristors. The ratio of power handled by 36-SCR device to that handled by 18-SCR device is
(*a*) 4 (*b*) 2
(*c*) 1 (*d*) $\frac{1}{2}$.

**6.** The number of thyristors required for single-phase to single-phase cycloconverter of the mid-point type and for three phase to three-phase 3-pulse type cycloconverter are respectively

(*a*) 4, 6
(*b*) 8, 18
(*c*) 4, 18
(*d*) 4, 36.

**7.** A 3-phase to single-phase conversion device employs a 6-pulse bridge cycloconverter. For an input voltage of 200 V per phase, the fundamental rms value of output voltage is

(*a*) $600/\pi$ V
(*b*) $300\sqrt{3}/\pi$ V
(*c*) $300/\pi$ V
(*d*) $600\sqrt{3}/\pi$ V.

**8.** The question has three subquestions. Amongst the four alternatives provided, one or more are correct. Write down all the correct answers unambiguously.

**8.1.** A three-phase to single-phase cycloconverter consists of positive and negative group of converters. In this device one of the two component converters would operate as a

(*a*) rectifier if the output voltage $V_0$ and output current $I_0$ have the same polarity
(*b*) inverter if $V_0$ and $I_0$ have the same polarity
(*c*) rectifier if $V_0$ and $I_0$ are of opposite polarity
(*d*) inverter if $V_0$ and $I_0$ are of opposite polarity.

**8.2.** A 3-phase to 3-phase cycloconverter requires

(*a*) 18 SCRs for 3-phase device (*b*) 18 SCRs for 6-pulse device
(*c*) 36 SCRs for 3-pulse device (*d*) 36 SCRs for 6-pulse device.

**8.3.** Which of the following statements are correct for cycloconverters ?

(*a*) Step-down cycloconverter (cc) works on natural commutation
(*b*) Step-up cc requires forced commutation
(*c*) Load commutated cc works on line commutation
(*d*) Load commutated cc requires a generated emf in the load circuit.

**9.** This question contains four subquestions, each having two columns. Match every item on the left side with the most appropriate item on the right side.

**9.1.**

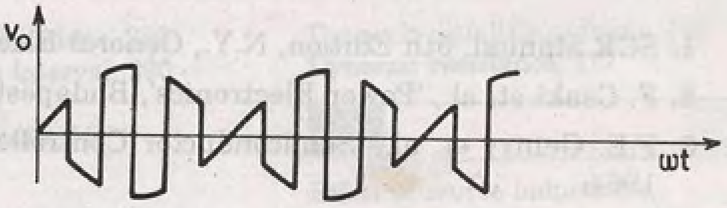
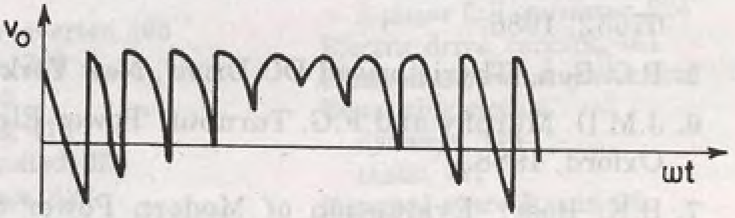
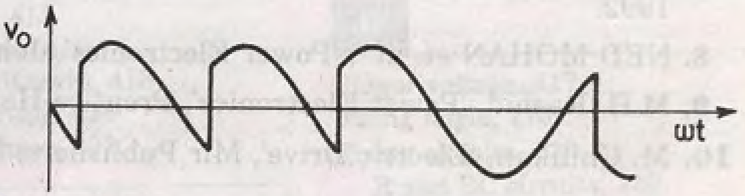
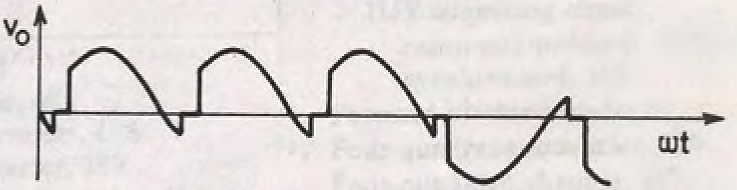
| Power electronic controller | Applications |
|---|---|
| (*A*) Controlled rectifier | (*P*) Aircraft supplies |
| (*B*) Chopper | (*Q*) Electric car |
| (*C*) Cycloconverter | (*R*) Induction heating |
| (*D*) Inverter | (*S*) Rolling mill drive. |

**9.2.**

| Power electronic controller | Applications |
|---|---|
| (*A*) Controlled rectifier | (*P*) High-power ac drive |
| (*B*) Voltage controller | (*Q*) Solar cells |
| (*C*) Cycloconverter | (*R*) Ceiling fan drive |
| (*D*) Inverter | (*S*) Magnet power supply. |

**9.3.**

| Power electronic controller | Applications |
|---|---|
| (*A*) Inverter | (*P*) Fork-lift truck |
| (*B*) Controlled rectifier | (*Q*) Illumination control |
| (*C*) Voltage controller | (*R*) Uninterruptible power supply |
| (*D*) Chopper | (*S*) Hydrogen production. |

| **9.4.** Types of cycloconverters | | Output Voltage Waveforms |
|---|---|---|
| (*A*) 1-phase to 1-phase with continuous conduction | (P) |  |
| (*B*) 1-phase to 1-phase with discontinuous conduction | (Q) |  |
| (*C*) Step-up device | (R) |  |
| (*D*) 3-phase to 1-phase device | (S) |  |

## ANSWERS

**1.** (*d*) **2.** (*c*) **3.** vary, gradually **4.** (*c*) **5.** (*a*)

**6.** (*c*) **7.** (*a*) **8.1.** (*a*), (*d*) **8.2.** (*a*), (*d*) **8.3.** (*a*), (*b*), (*d*)

**9.1.** (*A*)–(*S*) ; (*B*)–(*Q*) ; (*C*)–(*P*) ; (*D*)–(*R*) **9.2.** (*A*)–(*S*) ; (*B*)–(*R*) ; (*C*)–(*P*) ; (*D*)–(*Q*)

**9.3.** (*A*)–(*R*) ; (*B*)–(*S*) ; (*C*)–(*Q*) ; (*D*)–(*P*) **9.4.** (*A*)–(*R*) ; (*B*)–(*S*) ; (*C*)–(*P*) ; (*D*)–(*Q*).

## REFERENCES

1. SCR Manual, 5th Edition, N.Y., General Electric Company, 1972.
2. F. Csaki et. al., 'Power Electronics', Budapest : Akademiai Kiado, 1975.
3. F.E. Gentry et. al. 'Semiconductor Controlled Rectifiers', Prentice-Hall of India New Delhi, 1964.
4. B.K. Bose, 'Power Electronics and AC Drives', Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey 07632, 1986.
5. P.C. Sen, 'Thyristorised DC Drive', New York : Wiley Interscience, 1981.
6. J.M D. Murphy and F.G. Turnbull 'Power Electronic Control of AC Motors', Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1988.
7. B.K. Bose, 'Evaluation of Modern Power Semiconductor Devices and Future Trends of Converters', IEEE Trans. Industry Applications, vol. 28, No. 2, pp. 403 – 413, March/April, 1992.
8. NED MOHAN et. al. , 'Power Electronics', John Wiley and Sons, 1989.
9. M.H. Rashid, 'Power Electronics', Prentice-Hall of India, New Delhi, 1993.
10. M. Chilikan, 'Electric Drive', Mir Publishers, Moscow, 1970.

# Index

## A

- AC drives, 496
- AC voltage controller, 392
  - harmonics, 398
  - integral cycle control, 393
  - power factor, 400
  - sequence control, 407
  - single-phase, 396, 402
    - multistage, 409
    - two-stage, 408
  - sinusoidal, 410
  - types, 392
- Angle of extinction, 179
- Angle of overlap, 222
- Anode, 62
- ASCR, 125

## B

- Breakover voltage, 65

## C

- Cathode, 62
- Choppers, 248
  - control strategies, 250
  - extinction time, 265
  - forced commutation, 274
  - Fourier analysis, 266
  - load commutation, 293
  - principle of operation, 249
  - steady-state analysis, 259
  - step-up, 251
  - types, 254
- Chopper drives, 487
  - four-quadrant, 495
  - motoring control, 487
  - regenerative braking control, 492
  - two-quadrant, 495
- Commutation techniques, 160
  - commutation
    - class-B, 162
    - class-C, 165
    - class-D, 167
    - class-E, 169
    - class-F, 170
    - load, 160
- Converters, ac to dc
  - single-phase, 176, 187
  - three-phase, 203
- Cosine firing scheme, 150
- Current-commutated chopper, 285
  - design considerations, 289
  - commutation interval, 290
- Current ratings,
  - average on-state, 84
  - rms, 86
  - surge, 88
  - $I^2t$, 89
- Current source inverter, 363
  - single-phase, 363
    - ASCI, 369
- Cycloconverters, 414
  - load-commutated, 425
  - output voltage, 423
  - principle of operation, 414
  - single-phase to single-phase
    - step-up, 415
    - step-down, 416
  - 3-phase half-wave, 418
    - 3-to 1-phase, 418
    - 3-to 3-phase, 421

## D

- DC drives, 461
  - single-phase, 464
    - dual converter, 473
    - full converter, 469
    - half-wave converter, 464
    - semiconverter, 466
  - three-phase, 474
    - dual converter, 486
    - full converter, 479
    - half-wave converter, 474
    - semiconductor, 475
- Diac, 122
- Diode circuits, 32
- Diode rectifier,
  - single-phase half-wave, 43
  - single-phase full-wave,
    - mid-point, 53
    - bridge, 54
- Discontinuous load current,
  - single-phase
    - full converter, 200
    - semiconverter, 201
  - 3-phase semiconverter, 216
- *di/dt*,
  - protection, 94
  - rating, 89
- *dv/dt*,
  - protection, 94
  - rating, 84
- Dual converters, 229
  - ideal, 230
  - with circulating current, 232
    - waveforms, 233
  - without circulating current, 231
- Dynamic equalizing circuit, 114
- Dynamic resistance, 117

## E

- Effect of source inductance,
  - 1-phase full converter, 222
  - 3-phase full converter, 224
- Electric drive, concept, 461
- Electronic crowbar protection, 101
- Equalizing circuit,
  - dynamic, 114
  - static, 111
- External overvoltages, 98
- Extinction time, 179

## F

- Finger voltage, 117
- Firing angle, 176
- Firing circuits, 129
  - R and RC circuits, 130
  - UJT triggering circuit,
    - ramp-and-pedestal, 139
    - synchronized, 138
- Forward blocking mode, 64
- Four-quadrant converter, 229
- Four-quadrant chopper, 257
- Freewheeling diode, 41
- Fully-controlled converter, 191
- Full-wave controlled converters
  - single-phase, 188
    - full converter, 191
    - mid-point, 189
    - semiconverter, 194

## G

- Gate characteristics, 72
- Gate pulse amplifier, 148
- Gate trigger circuit, 73
- Gate triggering, 65, 81
- Gate-turn-off thyristor, 126
- Gating circuits,
  - 1-phase converters, 146
  - pulse-train, 149

## H

- Half-controlled converter, 191
- Half-wave thyristor circuit,
  - R-load, 176
  - RL-load, 176
    - freewheeling diode, 180

- RLE load, 182
- High voltage DC transmission, 436
- Holding current, 66

## I

- IGBT, 24
- Induction motor drives, 497
  - speed control, 500
- $I^2t$ rating, 89
- Intellegent module, 6
- Intrinsic-stand-off ratio, 135
- Inverters, 309
  - single-phase
    - full-bridge, 310
    - half-bridge, 310
  - harmonic reduction, 359
  - current source, 363
  - force-commutated, 326
  - parallel, 382
  - series, 377

## J

- Junction capacitance, 94
- Junction temperature, 104

## L

- Latching current, 66
- Light-activated SCR, 122
- Line commutated inverter, 193
- Line commutation, 170, 175
- Load commutated
  - chopper, 293
  - cycloconverter, 425
  - inverter, 313

## M

- McMurray-Bedford inverter, 332
- Methods of turning-on SCRs, 65
- Modified Mc Murray inverter,
  - half-bridge, 326
  - full-bridge, 332
- MOS-controlled thyristor, 27
- Multiphase chopper, 296

## N

- Non-circulating current
  - dual converter, 231

## O

- Overcurrent protection, 100
- Overlap angle, 222
- Overvoltage protection, 98

## P

- Parallel operation of SCRs, 116
- Parallel inverter, 382
- Power diodes,
  - characteristics, 7
  - types, 10
- Power electronic,
  - modules, 5
  - systems, 3
  - types of converters, 4
- Power electronics,
  - concept, 1
  - applications, 1, 2
- Power MOSFETs, 20
- Power transistor, 10
- Principle of phase control, 176
- Protection of SCRs, 93
- Pulse transformer, 141
- Pulse-width modulation
  - chopper, 250
  - inverter, 349
- PUT, 120
- PWM inverters,
  - modulation, 349
  - single-pulse, 350
  - multiple-pulse, 351
  - sinusoidal-pulse, 354

## R

- Ramp triggering, 138
- Ramp and pedestal triggering, 139
- RCT, 126
- Realization of PWM
  - full-bridge inverter, 356
  - half-bridge inverter, 357
- Relaxation oscillator, 136
- Resonant converter, 448
- Reverse blocking mode, 63
- Reverse recovery time, 70
- Rise time, 69

## S

- SCRs,
  - series operation, 111
  - parallel operation, 116
- Series inverter, 377
- Single-phase half-wave circuit,
  - R load, 176
  - RL load, 178
  - RLE load, 182
  - RL load and FD, 180
- Single-phase full-wave,
  - bridge converters, 191
    - full converters, 191
    - semiconverters, 194
- Single-phase inverter,
  - steady-state analysis, 311
  - Fourier analysis, 319
  - voltage control, 347
  - PWM, 349
    - single-pulse, 350
    - multiple-pulse, 351
    - sinusoidal-pulse, 354
  - reduction of harmonics, 359
- Single-phase parallel inverter, 382
- SIT Hs, 122
- Slip power recovery schemes, 521
- Smart power, 6
- Snubber circuit, 94
- Solid state relays, 447
- Static circuit breakers, 445
- Static Kramer drive, 521
- Static rotor-resistance control, 516
- Static Scherbius drive, 528
- Static switches, 441
  - DC switches, 444
  - Design of, 444
  - 1-phase ac, 442
- Step-up, choppers, 251
  - cycloconverters, 415
- Surge current, 88
- SUS, 120
- Switched mode power supply, 428
- Synchronous motor drives, 529
  - cylindrical-rotor motors, 530
  - permanent magnetic motors, 536
  - reluctance motors, 535
  - salient-pole motors, 533

## T

- Temperature,
  - case, junction, 105
- Thermal, resistance, 104
  - equivalent circuit, 104
- Three-phase bridge inverter, 337
  - 180° mode, 338
  - 120° mode, 342
- Three-phase diode rectifier,
  - half wave, 203
  - full-wave bridge, 206
- Three-phase thyristor converter,
  - full converter, 210
  - semiconverter, 214
- Thyristors,
  - dynamic characteristics, 68
    - turn-off, 70
    - turn-on, 68
  - firing circuits, 129
  - gate characteristics, 72
  - heating, cooling and mounting, 103
  - parallel operation, 116
  - protection, 93
    - gate, 101
    - overcurrent, 100
    - overvoltage, 98
  - pulse triggering, 75
  - ratings, 82
    - current, 84

        surge current, 88
        voltage, 63
    series operation, 111
    switching characteristics, 68
        turn-off, 70
        turn-on, 68
    terminal characteristics, 62
    triggering methods, 129
    turn-on methods, 65
    two-transistor model, 79
Transformer tap changers, 407
Triac, 123
    firing circuit, 144
Types of commutation
    complementary, 165
    external pulse, 169
    impulse, 167
    line, 170
    load, 160
    resonant-pulse, 162

**U**

Uncontrolled converter, 191
Unijunction transistor, 134
Uninterruptible power supplies, 434
UJT oscillator triggering, 135

**V**

Valley point, 135
Vernier winding, 410
Voltage clamping device, 99
Voltage-commutated chopper, 276
Voltage control,
    1-phase inverters, 347
Voltage controller, ac, 392

**Z**

Zener diode, 57
Zero-current switching resonant converters, 449
    L-type, 449
    M-type, 452
Zero-voltage switching resonant converters, 455

ናዝሬት የቴክኒክ መምህራን ት/ኮሌጅ
Nazareth College of Technical
Teacher Education
ቤተ መጻሕፍት
LIBRARY

# Power Electronics

This text book provides a lucid and comprehensive treatment of the subject, Power Electronics. Characteristics of power diodes, power transistors and thyristors and also other related topics, giving an up-to-date account, have been discussed first. Then each chapter begins at an introductory level and is so developed progressively that an average student can comprehend the subject matter easily. The topics covered in this volume include diode circuits and rectifiers, phase-controlled rectifiers, inverters, ac voltage controllers, etc.

A large number of illustrative figures and a wide variety of worked examples add to the clarity of presentation. A sufficient number of unsolved problems with answers, conceptual questions and hints to the relatively difficult ones are given at the end of each chapter. This book will serve the students as a textbook during their academic career and as a reference text during their professional career.

Dr. P.S. BIMBHRA is professor of Electrical and Electronics Engineering with Thapar Institute of Engg. and Technology (Deemed University) Patiala. A graduate of Punjab Engg College, Chandigarh, he received his M.E. (Hons.) and Ph.D. from University of Roorkee, Roorkee. He is a fellow of the Institution of Engineers (India), a member of I.E.E. (U.K.) and a life member of ISTE. He has published several papers in reviewed journals. His other two books, "Electrical Machinery" and "Generalized Theory of Electrical Machines" have been well received by the technical fraternity for over a decade. His areas of current interest include Electrical Machines, Power Electronics and Electric Drives.

**KHANNA PUBLISHERS**
2-B, NATH MARKET, NAI SARAK, DELHI-110006
Phones : 2912380, 7224179 ★ Fax : 2980311